



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>













A

4

# GRAMMAR

OF THE

# LATIN LANGUAGE;

FOR THE

USE OF SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES.

BY

*thence*  
E. A. ANDREWS AND S. STODDARD.

THREE HUNDRED AND SIXTY EIGHTH THOUSAND.

REVISED WITH CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS,

BY E. A. ANDREWS, LL. D.

BOSTON:  
HOUGHTON, MIFFLIN AND COMPANY.

The Riverside Press, Cambridge.

1882.

*21*

2.  
6868.  
3

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1867

BY CROCKER AND BREWSTER,

In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of Massachusetts.

The Riverside Press, Cambridge:

Printed by H. O. Houghton and Company.

## P R E F A C E .

---

As more than twenty years have elapsed, since the first publication of this Grammar, it can scarcely be necessary, in offering to the public a revised edition of the work, to make more than a passing allusion to its original plan or to the circumstances to which it owed its origin.

For some years previous to the date of its publication, the progress of classical learning in Europe, and particularly in Germany, had been such, as plainly to indicate the necessity of a corresponding advance in the manuals of Latin grammar employed in the schools of this country. Their deficiencies had indeed become so apparent, that various attempts had already been made to furnish a remedy by means of translations of German grammars; but none of these, however excellent in many respects, had seemed to be fully adapted to the purpose for which they were intended.

To unite the acknowledged excellencies of the older English manuals and of the more recent German grammars was the special aim of the authors of this work; and to this end their attention was directed, first to the preparation of more extended rules for the pronunciation of the language, secondly to a clearer exposition of its inflectional changes, thirdly to the proper basis of its syntax, and fourthly to greater precision in its rules and definitions.

The system of rules for the division and accentuation of Latin words, prepared in pursuance of the plan which has just been specified, was accordingly more copious than any previously found in the Latin grammars in common use in this country. For the purpose also of preventing the formation of erroneous habits of pronunciation in the early part of the student's course, the penultimate quantities of all Latin words occurring in the Grammar were carefully marked, unless determinable by some general rule, and the paradigms were divided and accented in such a manner as to indicate their true pronunciation.

In their treatment of Latin etymology, the authors aimed to render its study less a mere exercise of memory, and in a greater degree an efficient aid in the general cultivation of the mental powers. The principal means adopted for this purpose consisted in the practical distinction, every where made in treating affected words, between the root, or ground-form, and the termination.

The third prominent peculiarity of the original work was its direct derivation of the rules of Syntax from the logical analysis of sentences, and its distinct specification of the particular use of each of the several words of which a sentence is composed. This method of treating syntax—a method previously unknown in the schools of this country—has, since that period, been extensively adopted, and in some instances greatly extended, particularly in a portion of the English grammars recently published in this country, and has probably contributed more to the advancement of grammatical science, than any other innovation of modern times.

The errors noticed in the original work have been corrected, as successive editions have issued from the press, but no opportunity has occurred, until the present, of thoroughly revising it in every part. Two years of continuous labor have now been devoted to its revision, and to the purpose of rendering it conformable in all respects to the advanced position which it originally aspired to occupy.

In all the modifications which have now been made, I have aimed to accomplish these two purposes—to preserve, as far as possible, the identity of the work, and at the same time to bring it as near, as should be practicable, to the present state of philological science. Hence, while I have made no changes either in language or arrangement, but such as appeared to me quite necessary, I have omitted none which logical accuracy or requisite fulness of explanation seemed to demand. In doing even this it soon became evident, that the changes and additions must be more numerous, than would well consist with the convenient use of the old and the new editions in the same classes. Though not insensible of the trouble occasioned to the teacher by alterations in a familiar text-book, I could not but suppose, that such modifications as the progress of the last twenty years had rendered necessary, would still be welcomed by him, notwithstanding the personal inconvenience arising from the disturbance of his previous associations. To his pupils, who will have known no other form of the Grammar, than that in which it now appears, the work, it is believed, will not only be as easy of comprehension in its new, as in its old form, but in its practical application far more satisfactory.

Of the minor changes and additions occurring on almost every page, and even of the occasional rearrangement of small portions of the materials, it is unnecessary to speak particularly. The student familiar with former editions will at once detect these slight modifications, and note them in his memory for future use; and though he may fail to find a rule, exception, or remark on the page where he has been wont to see it, he will still meet with it in the same relative position,—in the same section and subdivision of the section in which it formerly appeared.

In the department of Orthography will now be found some account of the Continental mode of pronouncing Latin; and, by means of the joint exhibition o

this and of the English methods, the student will be able to use the Grammar with equal facility, whether choosing to adhere to the usual pronunciation of English and American scholars, or preferring that of the continental schools.

In the Etymology of nouns, no other alteration need be specified, except the introduction, in the third declension, of "Rules for forming the nominative singular from the root." These are copied, in a modified form, from the editor's First Latin Book. In themselves they are of considerable utility in showing the mutual relations between the sounds of certain letters, and they are also closely connected with corresponding changes in some of the verbal roots. In the Etymology of adjectives, besides the minor modifications already alluded to, a few changes in arrangement have been made in those sections which relate to Comparison. To pronouns have been added some remarks on Pronominal Adjectives, which seemed to require a more particular notice, than they had heretofore received, both in their relation to each other and to the Adverbial Correlatives. The Etymology of particles has been treated somewhat more fully than in former editions—a fulness especially observable in relation to adverbs and conjunctions, and which was rendered necessary by the more extended treatment of those particles in the revised Syntax.

In almost every section of the Syntax the student will meet with modifications and especially with additions, which, as in other parts of the work, are introduced in such a manner as seldom to interfere with the references made to former editions in the series based upon this Grammar. The principal exception to the latter remark is to be found in sections 247—251, which relate to certain uses of the ablative.

A comparison of the Prosody in the present and former editions will show, that it has been revised with minute care in every part. Similar attention has also been given to the Appendix, in which will be found some additions relating to Roman Money, Weights and Measures. For the greater convenience of the student the Index in this edition has been much enlarged.

In conclusion, I would briefly indicate the principal sources from which have been derived the various additions and corrections, to which allusion has been made. In preparing the original work, the earlier editions of Zumpt's Grammar were consulted at almost every step, and while frequent use was made of the grammars of Scheller, Grant, Adam, Ruddiman, Hickie and others, the treatises of Zumpt were even then regarded as the most valuable embodiment of the principles of Latin philology. It was therefore natural and almost unavoidable, in revising a work which had in so many points received both its form and its substance from the earlier labors of that distinguished grammarian, to look to his maturer works for many of the materials by means of which our original sketch should be made more complete. Accordingly I have constantly consulted the last edition of his Grammar translated by Dr. Schmitz, and have freely incorporated in this edition such

of its materials, as were suited to my purpose. In most cases his ideas have been either expressed in my own language, or in language so modulated as to suit the general plan of my work. In the Etymology, and not unfrequently in the Syntax also, the copious Grammar of Ramshorn has furnished valuable materials; and the Grammars of Key and of Kühner, the latter translated by Prof. Champlin, have been consulted with profit and satisfaction. In the sections comprising conjunctions, and especially in those relating to grammatical analysis, I am happy to acknowledge my indebtedness to Prof. S. S. Greene of Brown University. To the sources already specified I must add the Latin Lexicon of Dr. Freund, in editing a translation of which I had frequent occasion to note such matters as promised to be of utility in the revision of this Grammar. The additions in the Appendix relating to Roman money, etc., are taken principally from Dr. Riddle's translation of Dr. Freund's School Dictionary. To these references I will only add, that such other notes relating to Latin philology, as I have made during the past twenty years, so far as they were adapted to my purpose, have either been used in my former occasional corrections, or are incorporated in the present edition.

In taking a final leave of the earliest of the elementary Latin works with which my name has been associated, and with which, in my own mind, must ever be connected the pleasant memory of my early friend and associate, Prof. Stoddard, I trust I shall be pardoned in commending it once more to the kind indulgence of the teachers of this country, and in expressing the hope that, in its present form, it will be deemed not altogether unworthy of a continuance of the favor which it has so long received. I cannot indeed venture to indulge the hope, that all the imperfections of the work have even now been removed, or that, in my attempts to render it more perfect, I may not sometimes have fallen into new errors; but this I can truly say, that since its first publication I have devoted much time to its revision, and have sought to manifest my sense of the kindness with which it has been received, by doing all in my power to render it less unworthy of public favor.

E. A. ANDREWS.

*New Britain, Conn., Oct., 1857.*



# CONTENTS.

	Page.		Page.
<b>ORTHOGRAPHY.</b>		<b>Irregular adjectives . . . . .</b>	
<b>Letters . . . . .</b>	9	Defective adjectives . . . . .	69
<b>Division of letters . . . . .</b>	10	Redundant adjectives . . . . .	69
<b>Diphthongs . . . . .</b>	10	<b>Numeral adjectives . . . . .</b>	70
<b>Punctuation . . . . .</b>	10	<b>Comparison of adjectives . . . . .</b>	74
<b>ORTHOËPY.</b>		Irregular comparison . . . . .	75
<b>Continental pronunciation . . . . .</b>	11	Defective comparison . . . . .	76
<b>English pronunciation . . . . .</b>	11	<b>Derivation of adjectives . . . . .</b>	78
<b>Sounds of the letters . . . . .</b>	11	<b>Composition of adjectives . . . . .</b>	81
— of the vowels . . . . .	11	<b>PRONOUNS . . . . .</b>	82
— of the diphthongs . . . . .	12	<b>Substantive pronouns . . . . .</b>	82
— of the consonants . . . . .	13	<b>Adjective pronouns . . . . .</b>	83
<b>Quantity of syllables . . . . .</b>	14	Demonstrative pronouns . . . . .	83
<b>Accentuation . . . . .</b>	15	Intensive pronouns . . . . .	85
<b>Latin accents . . . . .</b>	15	Relative pronouns . . . . .	86
<b>English accents . . . . .</b>	16	Interrogative pronouns . . . . .	87
<b>Division of words into syllables . . . . .</b>	16	Indefinite pronouns . . . . .	88
<b>ETYMOLOGY.</b>		Possessive pronouns . . . . .	89
<b>NOUNS . . . . .</b>	19	Patrial pronouns . . . . .	90
Gender . . . . .	20	Pronominal adjectives . . . . .	90
Number . . . . .	22	<b>VERBS . . . . .</b>	91
Cases . . . . .	23	Voices . . . . .	91
Declensions . . . . .	23	Moods . . . . .	92
First declension . . . . .	25	Tenses . . . . .	98
Greek nouns . . . . .	26	Numbers . . . . .	95
Second declension . . . . .	26	Persons . . . . .	95
Greek nouns . . . . .	29	Participles, gerunds, and supines . . . . .	96
Third declension . . . . .	29	Conjugation . . . . .	96
Formation of nom. sing. . . . .	30	Table of terminations . . . . .	98
Rules for the gender . . . . .	33	<i>Sum</i> . . . . .	100
— oblique cases . . . . .	36	<i>Prosum, Possum, etc</i> . . . . .	102
Greek nouns . . . . .	45	First conjugation . . . . .	103
Fourth declension . . . . .	45	Second conjugation . . . . .	108
Fifth declension . . . . .	47	Third conjugation . . . . .	111
Declension of compound nouns . . . . .	47	Fourth conjugation . . . . .	116
Irregular nouns . . . . .	48	Deponent verbs . . . . .	120
Variable nouns . . . . .	48	Remarks on the conjugations . . . . .	121
Defective nouns . . . . .	49	Periphrastic conjugations . . . . .	123
Redundant nouns . . . . .	54	General rules of conjugation . . . . .	124
Derivation of nouns . . . . .	56	Formation of second and third roots . . . . .	125
Composition of nouns . . . . .	60	First conjugation . . . . .	125
<b>ADJECTIVES . . . . .</b>	61	Second conjugation . . . . .	129
Adjectives of the first and second declensions . . . . .	62	Third conjugation . . . . .	131
Adjectives of the third declension . . . . .	64	Fourth conjugation . . . . .	139
Rules for the oblique cases . . . . .	67	Irregular verbs . . . . .	140
		Defective verbs . . . . .	145
		Impersonal verbs . . . . .	147

	Page.		Page.
Redundant verbs.....	150	Protasis and apodosis. ....	268
Derivation of verbs.....	152	Subjunctive after particles....	268
Composition of verbs.....	154	— after <i>qui</i> .....	275
Particles.....	155	— in indirect questions	278
<b>ADVERBS</b> .....	155	— in inserted clauses..	278
Derivation of adverbs.....	160	Imperative mood.....	281
Composition of adverbs.....	162	Infinitive mood.....	282
Comparison of adverbs.....	163	Participles.....	292
<b>PREPOSITIONS</b> .....	163	Gerunds and gerundives.....	298
Prepositions in composition....	167	Supines.....	299
<b>CONJUNCTIONS</b> .....	170	Adverbs.....	300
<b>INTERJECTIONS</b> .....	176	Prepositions.....	303
		Conjunctions.....	304
		Interjections.....	306
		Arrangement.....	306
		Arrangement of words.....	306
		— of clauses.....	310
		Analysis.....	312
		Parsing.....	312
		<b>PROSODY.</b>	
		Quantity.....	319
		General rules.....	319
		Special rules.....	322
		First and middle syllables....	322
		Derivative words.....	322
		Compound words.....	324
		Increment of nouns.....	325
		Increment of verbs.....	329
		Penults and antepenults....	331
		Final syllables.....	336
		Versification.....	341
		Feet.....	341
		Metre.....	342
		Verses.....	342
		Figures of prosody.....	343
		Arsis and thesis.....	346
		Cæsure.....	347
		Different kinds of metre.....	347
		Dactylic metre.....	347
		Anapaestic metre.....	350
		Iambic metre.....	351
		Trochaic metre.....	353
		Choriambic metre.....	354
		Ionic metre.....	355
		Compound metres.....	356
		Combination of verses.....	356
		Horatian metres.....	357
		Key to the odes of Horace.....	359
		<b>APPENDIX.</b>	
		Grammatical figures.....	361
		Tropes and figures of rhetoric....	362
		Roman mode of reckoning time....	367
		— money, weight, etc.	370
		Abbreviations.....	374
		Different ages of Roman literature	374
		Writers of the different ages....	375
		<b>INDEX</b> .....	378

## SYNTAX.

Sentences and Propositions.....	177
Subject.....	178
Predicate.....	181
Apposition.....	183
Adjectives.....	184
Relatives.....	189
Demonstratives, etc.....	193
Reflexives.....	198
Noninative.....	200
Subject-nominative and verb..	200
Predicate-nominative.....	205
Genitive.....	206
Genitive after nouns.....	206
— after partitives.....	211
— after adjectives.....	214
— after verbs.....	216
— of place.....	221
— after particles.....	222
Dative.....	222
Dative after adjectives.....	222
— after verbs.....	225
— after particles.....	230
Accusative.....	231
Accusative after verbs.....	231
— after prepositions.....	237
— of time and space.....	239
— of place.....	240
— after adjectives, ad-	
verbs and interjections....	241
Subject-accusative.....	242
Vocative.....	243
Ablative.....	243
Ablative after prepositions....	243
— after certain nouns,	
adjectives and verbs.....	244
— of cause, etc.....	246
— of price.....	252
— of time.....	252
— of place.....	254
— after comparatives.....	255
— absolute.....	258
Connection of tenses.....	261
Indicative mood.....	263
Subjunctive mood.....	267

# LATIN GRAMMAR.

---

§ 1. The Latin language is the language spoken by the ancient Romans. Latin Grammar teaches the principles of the Latin language. These relate,

1. To its written characters;
2. To its pronunciation;
3. To the classification and derivation of its words,
4. To the construction of its sentences;
5. To the quantity of its syllables, and its versification

The first part is called Orthography; the second, Orthoepv the third, Etymology; the fourth, Syntax; and the fifth, Prosody.

---

## ORTHOGRAPHY.

§ 2. Orthography treats of the letters, and other characters of written language, and the proper mode of spelling words.

1. The Latin alphabet consists of twenty-five letters. They have the same names as the corresponding characters in English. They are A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; V, v; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; K, k; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

2. The Romans used only the capital letters.

3. *I* and *j* were anciently but one character, as were likewise *u* and *v*.

4. *W* is not found in Latin words, and *k* occurs only at the beginning of a few words before *a*, and even in these *c* is commonly used, except in their abbreviated form; as, *K* or *Kal.* for *Kalendæ* or *Calendæ*, the Calends.

5. *Y* and *z* are found only in words derived from the Greek.

6. *H*, though called a letter, only denotes a breathing, or aspiration.

## DIVISION OF LETTERS.

§ 3. Letters are divided into *vowels* and *consonants*.

1. The vowels are . . . . . *a, e, i, o, u, y.*
- The consonants are divided into
- |                     |                              |                     |                       |
|---------------------|------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| {                   | Liquids, . . . . .           | <i>l, m, n, r.</i>  |                       |
|                     | Mutes, {                     | Labials, . . . . .  | <i>p, b, f, v.</i>    |
|                     |                              | Palatals, . . . . . | <i>c, g, k, q, j.</i> |
|                     |                              | Linguals, . . . . . | <i>t, d.</i>          |
|                     | Sibilant, . . . . .          | <i>s.</i>           |                       |
|                     | Double consonants, . . . . . | <i>x, z.</i>        |                       |
| Aspirate, . . . . . |                              | <i>h.</i>           |                       |

2. *X* is equivalent to *cs* or *gs*; *z* to *ts* or *ds*; and, except in compound words, the double consonant is always written, instead of the letters which it represents. In some Greek words *x* is equivalent to *chs*.

## DIPHTHONGS.

§ 4. Two vowels, in immediate succession, in the same syllable, are called a *diphthong*.

The diphthongs are *ae, ai, au, ei, eu, oe, oi, ua, ue, ui, uo, uu*, and *yi*. *Ae* and *oe* are frequently written together, *æ, œ*.

## PUNCTUATION.

§ 5. The only mark of punctuation used by the ancients was a point, which denoted pauses of different length, according as it was placed at the top, the middle, or the bottom of the line. The moderns use the same marks of punctuation, in writing and printing Latin, as in their own languages, and assign to them the same power.

Marks of *quantity* and of *accent* are sometimes found in Latin authors, especially in elementary works:—

1. There are three marks of quantity, viz.  $\grave{}$ ,  $\bar{}$ ,  $\circ$ ; the first denotes that the vowel over which it stands is short; the second, that it is long; the third, that it is doubtful, that is, sometimes long and sometimes short.

2. There are also three written accents—the acute ( $\acute{}$ ), the grave ( $\grave{}$ ), and the circumflex ( $\circ$ ). These were used by the old grammarians to denote the rising and sinking of the voice in the Roman mode of pronouncing words. (See §§ 14 and 15.) In modern elementary Latin works, the acute marks the emphatic syllable of a word, (§ 16), the grave distinguishes certain particles from other words spelled in the same manner; as, *quòd*, because; *quod*, which; and the circumflex is placed over certain penultimate and final syllables that are formed by contraction.

The diæresis ( $\ddot{}$ ) denotes that the vowel over which it stands does not form a diphthong with the preceding vowel; as, *aër*, the air. It is used principally with *ae, ai, and oe*.

## ORTHOËPY.

### § 6. Orthoëpy treats of the right pronunciation of words.

The ancient pronunciation of the Latin language being in a great measure lost, the learned, in modern times, have applied to it those principles which regulate the pronunciation of their own languages; and hence has arisen, in different countries, a great diversity of practice.

The various systems now prevalent in Europe, may, however, be reduced to two—the *Continental* and the *English*—the former prevailing, with only slight diversities, in most of the countries of continental Europe, and the latter in England. Their principal difference is found in the pronunciation of the vowels and diphthongs, since, in both methods, the consonants are pronounced in nearly the same manner.

#### THE CONTINENTAL METHOD.

[According to this system, each of the vowels, when standing at the end of a syllable, is considered as having but one sound, which, however, may be either short or long. Thus,

Short <i>ă</i> , as in hat.	Long <i>ō</i> , as in no.
Long <i>ā</i> , as in father.	Short <i>ũ</i> , as in tub.
Short <i>ê</i> , as in met.	Long <i>ū</i> , as in full.
Long <i>ē</i> , as in there.	<i>æ</i> or <i>œ</i> , as <i>e</i> in there.
Short <i>ī</i> , as in sit.	<i>au</i> , as <i>ou</i> in our.
Long <i>î</i> , as in machine.	<i>eu</i> , as in feudal.
Short <i>ô</i> , as in not.	<i>ei</i> , as <i>i</i> in ice.

**REMARK.** These sounds are sometimes slightly modified when followed by a consonant in the same syllable.]

#### THE ENGLISH METHOD.

In the following rules for dividing and pronouncing Latin words, regard has been had both to English analogy and to the laws of Latin accentuation. See § 14 and 16. The basis of this system is that which is exhibited by Walker in his "Pronunciation of Greek and Latin Proper Names." To pronounce correctly, according to this method, a knowledge of the following particulars is requisite:—

1. Of the *sounds* of the letters in all their combinations.
2. Of the *quantities* of the penultimate and final syllables.
3. Of the place of the *accent*, both primary and secondary.
4. Of the mode of dividing words into *syllables*.

### OF THE SOUNDS OF THE LETTERS.

#### I. OF THE VOWELS.

§ 7. A vowel, when ending an accented syllable, has always its long English sound; as,

*pā'-ter*, *dē'-dit*, *vī'-vus*, *tō'-tus*, *tū'-ba*, *Ty'-rus*; in which the accented vowels are pronounced as in *fatal*, *metre*, *vital*, *total*, *tutor* *tyrant*.

1. *A*, at the end of an unaccented syllable, has nearly the sound of *a* in *father* or in *ah*, but less distinct or prolonged; as, *mu'-sa*, *e-pis'-tō-la*, *a-cer'-bus*, *Pal-a-mē-des*; pronounced *mu'-zah*, etc.

2. *E*, *o*, and *u*, at the end of an unaccented syllable, have nearly the same sound as when accented, but shorter and less distinct; as, *re'-te*, *vo'-lo*, *u'-su-i*.

3. (a.) *I* final has always its long sound; as, *qui*, *au'-di*, *le-gā-ti*.

REM. 1. The final *i* of *sibi* and *sibi* has its short sound.

(b.) *I*, at the end of an unaccented syllable not final, has an indistinct sound like short *e*; as, *Fa'-bi-us* (Fa'-be-us), *phi'-los'-ō-phus* (phe-los'-o-phus).

Exc. *I* has its long sound in the first syllable of a word the second of which is accented, when it either stands alone before a consonant, as in *i-dō'-ni us*, or ends a syllable before a vowel, as in *fi-ē'-bam*.

REM. 2. *Y* is always pronounced like *i* in the same situation.

§ 8. A vowel has always its *short* English sound, when followed by a consonant in the same syllable; as,

*mag'-nus*, *reg'-num*, *fin'-go*, *hoc*, *fus'-tis*, *cyg'-nus*, in which the vowels are pronounced as in *magnet*, *seldom*, *finish*, *copy*, *lustre*, *symbol*.

EXCEPTION 1. *A*, when it follows *qu* before *dr* and *rt*, has the sounds of *a* in *quadrant* and in *quart*; as, *qua'-dro*, *quad-ra-gin'-ta*, *quar'-tus*. In other connections *a* before *r* has the sound of *a* in *part*; as, *par-ti'-ceps*, *ar'-ma*; except when followed by another *r*, as in *par-ri-ci'-da*.

Exc. 2. *Es*, at the end of a word, is pronounced like the English word *ease*; as, *ig'-nes*, *au'-des*.

Exc. 3. *Os*, at the end of plural cases, is pronounced like *ose* in *dose*; as, *nos*, *il'-los*, *dom'-i-nos*.

Exc. 4. *Post* is pronounced like the same word in English; so also are its compounds; as, *post'-quam*, *post'-e-a*; but not its derivatives; as, *pos-trē'-mus*.

Exc. 5. *E*, *i* and *y* before final *r*, or before *r* in a syllable not final, when followed in the next syllable by any other consonant, except *r*, have the sound of *e* and *i* in the English words *her* and *fir*; as, *fer*, *fert*, *fer'-ti-lis*; *hir*, *hir'-cus*, *myr'-tus*.

## II. OF THE DIPHTHONGS.

§ 9. *Æ* and *œ* are always diphthongs unless separated by diæresis. They are pronounced as *e* would be in the same situation; as, *æ'-tas*, *œ'-tas*, *pæ'-na*, *as'-trum*.

1. *Ai*, *ei*, *oi*, and *yi*, usually have the vowels pronounced separately. When they are accented, and followed by another vowel, the *i* is pronounced like initial *y*, and the vowel before it has its long sound as, *Maia*, *Pompeius*, *Troia*, *Harpyia*; pronounced *Ma'-ya*, *Pom-pé-yus*, *Tro'-ya*, *Har-py'-ya*.

REMARK 1. *Ei*, when a diphthong and not followed by another vowel, is pronounced like *i*; as in *hei*, *m'-neis*.

2. *Au*, when a diphthong, is pronounced like *aw*; as, *laus*, *au'-rum* pronounced *laws*, etc.

REM. 2. In the termination of Greek proper names, the letters *au* are pronounced separately; as, *Men-e-lā-us*.

3. *Eu*, when a diphthong, is pronounced like long *u*; as, *heu*, *Orpheus* (or'-phuse), *Eu-phrā-tes*.

REM. 3. The letters *eu* are pronounced separately in the terminations *eus* and *eum* of Latin nouns, and of all adjectives, whether Greek or Latin, except *neuter*; as, *ur'-ce-us*, *m'-us*, *m'-um*, *e'-um*. In other situations they form a diphthong; as, *Eu-rō'-pa*, *Thē'-seus*, *e'-heu*.

4. *Ua*, *ue*, *ui*, *uo*, *uu*, when diphthongs, are pronounced like *wa*, *we*, etc.; as, *lin'-gua*, *quē'-ror*, *sua'-de-o*, *quō'-tus*, *ē'-quus*. They are always diphthongs after *q*, usually also after *g*, and often after *s*.

5. *Ui* in *cui* and *huic*, when monosyllables, is pronounced like *wi*, and by some like long *i*.

### III. OF THE CONSONANTS.

§ 10. The consonants have, in general, the same power in Latin as in English words.

The following cases, however, require particular attention.

#### C.

*C* has the sound of *s* before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ*, *œ* and *eu*; as, *cē'-do*, *cī'-bus*, *Cæ'-sar*, *cæ'-lum*, *ceu*, *Cy'-rus*. In other situations, it has the sound of *k*; as, *Ca'-to*, *cru'-dus*, *lac*.

1. *Ck* has always the sound of *k*; as, *charta* (kar'-tah), *machina* (mak'-ē-nah).

Exc. *C*, following or ending an accented syllable, before *i* followed by a vowel, and also before *eu* and *yo*, has the sound of *sh*; as, *socia* (so'-she-ah) *caduceus* (ca-du'she-us), *Sicyon* (sish'-e-on).

REMARK. In the pronunciation of the ancient Romans, the hard sound of *c* and *g* seems to have been retained in all their combinations.

#### G.

*G* has its soft sound, like *j*, before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ* and *œ*; as *ge'-nus*, *ag'-i-lis*, *Gy'-ges*, *Gæ-tū'-li*. In other situations, it has its hard sound, as in *bag*, *go*.

Exc. When *g* comes before *g* soft, it coalesces with it in sound; as, *agger* (aj'-er), *exaggeratic* (ex-aj-e-ra'-she-o).

#### S.

§ 11. *S* has generally its hissing sound, as in *so*, *thus*.

Exc. 1. (*a*.) When *s* followed by a vowel is immediately preceded by a consonant in an accented syllable, the *s* has the sound of *sh*; as, *Per'-si-a* per'-she-a).

## 14 QUANTITIES OF PENULTIMATE AND FINAL SYLLABLES.

(b.) But when *si* or *zi* followed by a vowel is immediately preceded by an accented vowel, the *s* or *z* has the sound of *zh*; as, *As-pa'-si-a* (as-pa'-zhe-ah) *Su-la'-zi-a* (sa-ba'-zhe-sh).

NOTE. In a few proper names, *s* preceded by a vowel in an accented syllable and *i* followed by *i* before another vowel, has the sound, not of *zh*, but of *sh*; as, *A'-si-a* (a'-she-a): so *Sonia*, *Theodosia*, *Lysias*.

Exc. 2. *S*, at the end of a word, after *e*, *æ*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, and *r*, has the sound of *z*; as, *res*, *æs*, *laus*, *trab-*, *hi'-ems*, *lens*, *Mars*.

English analogy has also occasioned the *s* in *Cæ'-sar*, *cæ-sû'-ra*, *mî'-ser*, *mu'-si* *re-sid'-u-un*, *cav'-sa*, *ro'-sa*, and their derivatives, and in some other words, to take the sound of *z*. *Cæs-a-re'-a*, and the oblique cases of *Cæsar*, retain the hissing sound; so likewise the compounds of *trans*; as, *trans'-e-o*.

## T.

§ 12. 1. *T*, following or ending an accented syllable before *i* followed by a vowel, has the sound of *sh*; as, *ratio* (ra'-she-o), *Sulpi-tius* (Sul-pish'-e-us).

Exc. *T*, in such case, retains its hard sound (*a*) after *s*, *t*, or *x*; as, *Sal-lus-ti-us*, *Brut'-ti-i*, *Sex'-ti-us*: (*b*) in proper names in *tion* and *tyon*; as, *Eu-ryt'-i-on*, *Am-phic'-ty-on*; and (*c*) in old infinitives in *er*; as, *flec'-ti-er*, for *flec'-ti*.

## X.

2. *X*, at the beginning of a syllable, has the sound of *z*; at the end, that of *ks*; as, *Xenöphon* (Zen'-o-phon); *axis* (ak'-sis).

Exc. 1. When *ex* or *ux* is followed by a vowel in an accented syllable, *x* has the sound of *gz*; as, *exemplum* (eg-zem'-plum), *ux-o'-ri-us* (ug-zo'-re-us), *in-exhaustus* (in-eg-zaus'-tus).

Exc. 2. *X*, ending an accented syllable before *i* followed by a vowel, and before *u* ending a syllable, has the power of *ksh*; as, *noxius* (nok'-she-us), *pe-xui* ('pek'-shu-i).

REMARK. *Ck* and *ph*, before *th*, in the beginning of a word, are silent; as, *Cithonia* (tho'-ni-a). *Phthia* (thi'-a). Also in the following combinations of consonants, in the beginning of words of Greek origin, the first letter is not sounded:—*mne-mon'-i-ca*, *gna'-rus*, *ime'-sis*, *Cte'-ni-as*, *Ptol-e-mæ'-us*, *psal'-lo*.

## OF THE QUANTITIES OF THE PENULTIMATE AND FINAL SYLLABLES.

§ 13. 1. The *quantity* of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it.

2. A *short* syllable requires, in pronunciation, half the time of a *long* one.

REM. The *penultimate* syllable, or *penult*, is the last syllable but one. The *antepenult* is the last syllable but two.

The quantity of a syllable is generally to be learned from the rules of prosody, §§ 292–301; but for the convenience of the student, the following general rules are here inserted:—

3. A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short.

4. Diphthongs, not beginning with *u*, are long.



5. A vowel before *x, z, j*, or any two consonants, except a mute followed by a liquid, is long by *position*, as it is called.

6. A vowel naturally short before a mute followed by a liquid is common, i. e. either long or short.

In this Grammar, when the quantity of a penult is determined by one of the preceding rules, it is not marked; in other cases, except in dissyllables, the proper mark is written over its vowel.

To pronounce Latin words correctly, it is necessary to ascertain the quantities of their last two syllables only; and the rules for the quantities of final syllables would, for this purpose, be unnecessary, but for the occasional addition of enclitics. As these are generally monosyllables, and, for the purpose of accentuation, are considered as parts of the words to which they are annexed, they cause the final syllable of the original word to become the penult of the compound. But as the enclitics begin with a consonant, the final vowels of all words ending with a consonant, if previously short, are, by the addition of an enclitic, made long by position. It is necessary, therefore, to learn the quantities of those final syllables *only* which end with a vowel.

## OF ACCENTUATION.

### I. OF LATIN ACCENTS.

§ 14. 1. Accent, in Latin, signifies the rising and falling of the voice in pronouncing the syllables of a Latin word. It is a general rule of the Latin language, that every word has its accent. The enclitics, however, have no accent of their own, but they modify the accent of the words to which they are annexed, and prepositions lose their accent, when they precede the cases which they govern.

2. The Latin language has three accents, the acute (´), or rising tone, the grave (`), or falling tone, and the circumflex (˘), composed of the acute and the grave, i. e. of the rising and the falling tone.

3. A monosyllable, when short by nature, takes the acute, when long by nature, the circumflex accent; as, *pīx, ēl, pārs; dōs, jūs, spēs*.

4. In words of two syllables, the penult is always accented; as, *pā'ter, mā'ter, pen'-na*.

REM. 1. Words of two syllables have the circumflex accent, when the vowel of the penult is naturally long and that of the last syllable short; as, *Rō-mā, mī-sā, lū-rē, jū-ris* if otherwise, they have the acute; as, *hō'-mō, dē'as, Rō'-mā* (abl.), and *ar'-tē*, in which *z* is long only by position.

5. In words of more than two syllables, if the *penult* is long, it is accented; but if it is short, the accent is on the *antepenult*; as, *a-mī'-cus, dom'-i-nus*.

REM. 2. When the accent of a word of more than two syllables falls upon the penult, it may be either the circumflex or the acute according as the last syllable is short or long. The antepenult can take no accent except the acute, and in no case can the accent be drawn farther back than to the antepenult.

EXC. Vocatives of the second declension in *i*, instead of *ie*, from nominatives in *ius*, and genitives in *i*, instead of *ū*, are accented as they would be, if the rejected letters were annexed, i. e. with the acute upon the penult, even when it is short; as *Vir-gil-i; Va-lē-ri, in-gē'-ni*. So, also, the compounds of *facio* with words which are not prepositions; as, *cal-e-fā'-cū, tep-e-fā'-cū*.

§ 15. If the penult is common, the accent, in prose, is upon the *antepenult*; as, *vol'-ū-cris, phar'-tē-tra, ib'-i-que*: but genitives in *ius*, in which *i* is common, accent their *penult* in prose; as, *v-nī'-us, is-ā'-us*.

REM. 3. All the syllables of a Latin word, except that on which the acute or circumflex accent falls, are supposed to have the grave accent, and were pronounced with the lower tone.

1. The rules for the *accentuation* of compound and simple words are the same; as, *se'-cum*, *sub'-e-o*.

2. In accentuation, the enclitics *que*, *ne*, *ve*, and also those which are annexed to pronouns,\* are accounted constituent parts of the words to which they are subjoined; as, *i'-ta*, *u'-ā-que*; *vi'-rum*, *vi-rum'-que*.

## II. OF ENGLISH ACCENTS.

§ 16. Accent, in English, is a particular stress of voice upon certain syllables of words. Cf. § 5, 2.

According to the English method of pronouncing Latin, a word may have two, three, or even four accents. That accent which is nearest to the termination of the word, and which always corresponds in position with the Latin accent, is called the *primary* or *principal* accent, and the *secondary* accent is that which next precedes the primary. The *third* and *fourth* accents, in like manner, precede the secondary, and are subject in all respects to the same rules; as, *pī'-ter*, *mā'-ter*, *ser-mō'-nes*, *dōm'-i-nas*; *pe-ric'-ū-lum*, *con'-ju-ra'-ti-o*, *op'-por-tu'-ni-tā'-tes*, *ex-er'''-ci-tā'''-ti-on' i-bus'-que*.

1. If only two syllables precede the primary accent, the secondary accent is on the first; as, *mod'''-e-rā'-tus*, *tol'''-e-rāb'-i-lis*.

2. If three or four syllables stand before the primary accent, the secondary accent is placed, sometimes on the first, and sometimes on the second syllable; as, *de-mon'''-stra-ban'-tur*, *ad'-o-les-cen'-ti-a*.

3. Some words which have only four syllables before the primary accent, and all which have more than four, have *three* accents; as, *mod'''-e-ra'''-ti-ō'-nis*, *tol'''-e-ra-bū'''-i-ō'-rem*, *ex-er'''-ci-tā'''-ti-ō'-nis*.

## DIVISION OF WORDS INTO SYLLABLES.

### VOWELS.

§ 17. Every Latin word is to be divided into as many syllables, as it has separate vowels and diphthongs.

REMARK. In the following rules, the term *vowel* includes not only single vowels, but diphthongs; and when a particular vowel is mentioned, a diphthong, also, ending with that vowel is intended.

### CONSONANTS.

#### SPECIAL RULES.

§ 18. REMARK. The following special rules, relating to particular letters or to particular combinations of letters, are in all cases to be regarded rather than the general rules, §§ 19-23, when the latter are inconsistent with the former.

1. *H*, when standing alone between two vowels, is always joined to the vowel that follows it.

Thus, *mā'-hi*, *tra'-hē-re*, *co'-hors*, *co'''-hor-ta'-ti-o*.

\* These are *te* met, *pte*, *ce* cīne, and *dem*; as, *tute*, *egōmet*, *meapte*, *hicce*, *hiccīne*, *idem*

2. *Ch*, *ph*, and *th*, in the division of words into syllables, are considered, not as separate letters, but as single aspirated mutes, and hence are never separated.

Thus, *A-chil'-les*, *Ach''-ra-dí'-na*, *Neph'-s-le*, *Té'-thys*.

3. *Gl*, *tl*, and *thl*, when standing alone between any two vowels, unless the first be *u*, and *hl* after *u* are always separated.

Thus, *Æg'-le*, *Ag-lau'-rus*, *At'-las*, *ath-let'-i-cus*;—*Pub'-li-us*, *Pub-lic'-o-la*, *res pub'-li-ca*.

4 In writing syllables, *x*, when standing alone between two vowels is united to the vowel before it, but, in pronouncing such syllables, its elementary sounds are separated.

Thus, *sax'-um* (sak'-sum); *ax-il'-la* (ak-síl'-lah); *ex-em'-plum* (eg-zém'plum) *ux-o'-ri-us* (ug-zo'-re-us).

## GENERAL RULES.

### I. SIMPLE WORDS.

#### § 19. A.—A single Consonant between two Vowels.

1. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, between the last two vowels of a word, or between the vowels of any two unaccented syllables, must be joined to the latter vowel.

Thus, *t* in *pá'-ter* and *au'-tem*; *th* in *æ'-ther*; *cl* in *Hi-er'-o-cles*; *q* in *d'-qua*, *cr* in *á'-cris* and *vol'-ú-cris*; *chr* in *a'-chras*; *r* in *tol''-e-ra-bil'-i-us*; *m* in *cl''-y-mo-l'-gi-a*; *l* in *am''-bu-lá-tó'-ri-us*; and *gr* in *per''-e-gri-na'-ti-o*. Respecting *ch* and *th* cf. § 18, 2.

Exc. *Tib'-i* and *sib'-i* are commonly excepted.

§ 20. 2. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, before the vowel of an accented syllable, must be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *t* in *i-tin'-e-ra*, *d* in *vi-dé'-to*; *th* in *æ-the'-ri-us*; *cl* in *Eu-cli'-des* and *Her''-a-clé'-a*; *gr* in *a-gres'-tis* and *a-gric'-o-la*; *pr* in *ca-pre'-o-lus*; *q* in *a-qua'-ri-us*; and *phr* in *Eu-phrā'-tes*.

§ 21. 3. A single consonant after the vowel of any accented syllable, except a penult, must be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *m* in *dom'-i-nus* and *dom''-i-na'-ti-o*; *t* in *put'-e-ra*; *th* in *Scyth'-i-a*, and *q* in *aq'-ui-la* (ak'-we-lah), and *Aq''-ui-ta'-ni-a* (ak''-we-ta'-ne-ah).

4. When a mute with *l* or *r* follows the vowel of any accented syllable, except the penult, the mute is to be joined to the accented vowel.

Thus, *cr* in *ac'-ri-ter*, *ac''-ri-mo'-ni-a*; *tr* in *del''-ri-men'-tum*; *pr* in *cap'-ri-pes*, *cap''-ri-mul'-gus*, *phl* in *Paph''-la-go'-ni-a*; and *phr* in *Aph''-ro-dis'-i-a*. Respecting *phl* and *phr* cf. § 18, 2.

### EXCEPTIONS TO THE 3D AND 4TH RULES

Exc. 1. A single consonant, or a mute with *l* or *r*, after an accented *a*, *e*, or *o*, and before two vowels the first of which is *e*, *i*, or *y* must be joined to the syllable following the accent.

Thus, *d* in *ra'-dī-us*, *lā'-dī-um*, *me''-dī-ā'-tor* *r* in *hā'-re-o*, *lū'-ry-ā'-les*, *ch* in *bra'-chi-um*; *q* in *re'-qui-es*, *re''-qui-es-co* *tr* in *pa'-tri-us* *Œ-nū'-tri-a*, and *r* and *l* in *ce''-re-ā'-li-a*.

Exc. 2. A single consonant or a mute with *l* or *r*, after an accented *u*, must be joined to the vowel following it.

Thus, *r* in *lū'-ri-dus*, *au'-re-us*; *cr* in *Eu'-cri-tus*; *gl* in *ju'-glans*; and *pl* in *Nau'-pli-us*, *du'-pli-co*, and *du''-pli-ca'-ti-o*. Cf. § 18, 3.

## § 22. B.—Two Consonants between two Vowels.

Any two consonants, except a mute followed by *l* or *r* in the cases before mentioned, when standing between two vowels, must be separated.

Thus, *rp* in *cor'-pus*, *rm* in *for'-ma* and *ger-mā'-nus*; *rv* in *ca-ter'-va*; *sc* in *ad-o-les'-cens*; *nn* in *an'-nus*; *plth* in *aph'-thā*; *ch* in *Bac'-chus* and *Bac''-cha-na'-li-a*; and *thl* in *ath-lē'-ta*.

## C.—Three or four Consonants between two Vowels.

1. When three consonants stand between any two vowels, the last, or, if that be *l* or *r* after a mute, the two last, are joined to the latter vowel.

Thus, *mpt* in *emp'-tor*, *ad-emp'-ti-o*; *str* in *fe-nēs'-tra*; *mpl* in *ex-em'-plum*; *rthr* in *arthrī'-tis*.

2. When four consonants stand between two vowels, two are joined to each vowel; as, *nstr* in *trans-trum*.

## II. COMPOUND WORDS.

§ 23. 1. In dividing a compound word into syllables the component parts are to be separated, if the former part ends with a consonant; as, *ab-es'-se*, *in'-ers*, *cir'-cum-er'-ro*, *su'-pēr-est*, *sub'-i-tus*, *præ-ter'-e-a*, *trans'-i-tur*, *sub'-stru-o*. So, also, if a consonant is inserted to prevent hiatus, it is joined to the preceding vowel; as, *prod-e-o*, *red-e-o*, *sed-it' i-o*.

2. But if the former part either ends with a vowel, or has dropped its termination, it is to be divided like a simple word; as, *def'-ē-ro*, *dil'-i-gens*, *be-nev'-o-lus*, *pres'-to*, *eg'-ō-met*;—*po'-tes*, *po-tes'-tis*, *an''-i-mad-ver'-to*, *ve'-ne-o* (from *venum*, *eo*), *mag-nan'-i-mus*, *am-bā'-ges*, *lon-gā'-vus*.

## ETYMOLOGY.

§ 24. 1. Etymology treats of the different classes of words, their derivation, and their various inflections.

2. The classes, into which words are divided in reference to their signification, are called *Parts of Speech*.

3. The parts of speech in Latin are eight—*Substantive* or *Noun*, *Adjective*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Conjunction*, and *Interjection*.

4. The first four are *inflected*; the last four, which are sometimes called *Particles*, are *not inflected*, except that some adverbs change their termination to express comparison.

REM. Substantives, pronouns, and adjectives are often included by grammarians under the general term *nouns*; but, in this Grammar, the word *noun* is used as synonymous with *substantive* only.

§ 25. 1. To verbs belong *Participles*, *Gerunds*, and *Supines*, which partake of the meaning of the verb, and the inflection of the noun.

2. *Inflection*, in Latin grammar, signifies a change in the termination of a word. It is of three kinds—*declension*, *conjugation*, and *comparison*.

3. Nouns, adjectives, pronouns, participles, gerunds, and supines, are *declined*; verbs are *conjugated*, and adjectives and adverbs are *compared*.

## NOUNS.

§ 26. 1. A substantive or noun is the *name* of an object.

2. A *proper* noun is the name of an individual object; as, *Cæsar*; *Rōma*, Rome; *Tibēris*, the Tiber.

3. A *common* or *appellative* noun is the name of a class of objects, to each of which it is alike applicable; as, *hōmo*, man or a man; *avis*, a bird; *quercus*, an oak; *leo*, a lion; *mendacium*, a falsehood.

4. A *collective* noun is one which, in the singular number, denotes a collection of individuals; as, *exercitus*, an army.

REM. 1. The following are examples of nouns used as collectives, viz. *exercitus*, *gens*, *juventus*, *multitudo*, *nobilitas*, *plebs*, *populus*, *turba*, *vis*, and *vulgus*.

5. An *abstract* noun is the name of a quality, action, or other attribute; as, *bonitas*, goodness; *gaudium*, joy; *festinatio*, haste.

REM. 2. A *concrete*, in distinction from an abstract noun, is one which denotes an object that has an actual and independent existence; as, *Rōma*, *hōmo*, *populus*, *ferrum*.

6. A *material* noun is the name of a substance considered in the gross; as, *lignum*, wood; *ferrum*, iron; *cibus*, food.

REM. 3. Proper, abstract, and material nouns become common, when employed to denote one or more of a class of objects. A verb in the infinitive mood is often used as an abstract noun.

7. To nouns belong *gender*, *number* and *case*.

REM. 4. Adjectives and participles have likewise different genders, numbers, and cases, corresponding to those of nouns.

## GENDER.

§ 27. 1. The gender of a noun is its distinction in regard to sex.

2. Nouns have three genders—the *masculine*, the *feminine*, and the *neuter*.

3. The gender of Latin nouns is either *natural* or *grammatical*.

4. Those nouns are naturally masculine or feminine, which are used to designate the sexes; as, *vir*, a man; *mulier*, a woman.

5. Those are grammatically masculine or feminine, which, though denoting objects that are neither male nor female, take adjectives of the form appropriated to nouns denoting the sexes.

Thus, *dominus*, a lord, is naturally masculine, because it denotes a male; but *sermo* speech, is grammatically masculine, because, though not indicative of sex, it takes an adjective of that form which is appropriated to nouns denoting males.

6. The grammatical gender of Latin nouns depends either on their signification, or on their declension and termination. The following are the general rules of gender, in reference to *signification*. Many exceptions to them, on account of *termination*, occur: these will be specified under the several declensions.

§ 28. MASCULINES. 1. Names, proper and appellative, of all male beings are masculine; as, *Homērus*, Homer; *pāter*, a father; *consul*, a consul; *ēquus*, a horse.

As proper names usually follow the gender of the general name under which they are comprehended; hence,

2. Names of rivers, winds, and months, are masculine, because *fluvius*, *ventus*, and *mensis*, are masculine; as, *Tibēris*, the Tiber; *Aquīlo*, the north wind; *Aprilis*, April.

Exc. *Styx* and some names of rivers in *a* and *e* are feminine. §§ 62, and 41, 1

3. Names of mountains are sometimes masculine, because *mons* is masculine; as, *Othrys*, a mountain of Thessaly; but they usually follow the gender of their termination; as, *hic*\* *Atlas*, *hæc* *Ida*, *hoc* *Soracte*.

§ 29. FEMININES. 1. Names, proper and appellative, of all female beings are feminine; as, *Helēna*, Helen; *māter*, a mother; *juvenca*, a heifer.

2. Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, ships, islands, poems, and gems, are feminine; because *terra*, *urbs*, *arbor*, *planta*, *nāvis*, *insula*, *fābula*, and *gemma*, are feminine; as,

*Ægyptus*, Egypt; *Corinthus*, Corinth; *pīrus*, a pear-tree; *nardus*, spikenard; *Centaurus*, the ship Centaur; *Sāmos*, the name of an island; *Eunūchus*, the Eunuch, a comedy of Terence; *amethystus*, an amethyst.

Exc. Names of countries and islands in *um*, *i*, and (plur.) *a*, *drum*, are neuter.—Names of towns in *i*, *drum*; four in *o*, *ōnis*, viz. *Trusino*, *Hijno*, *Narbo*, and *Sulmo*, with *Tunes*, *Tiras*, and *Canopus*, are masculine. Names of towns in *um* or *on*, *i*, and (plur.) *a*, *drum*; those in *e* and *ur* of the third declension, indeclinable nouns in *i* and *y*, and some barbarous names, as *Suthul*, *Hispul* and *Gadir* are neuter.—Names of trees and plants in *er* of the third declension, (§ 60), with *baccar* and *rōbur* are neuter. A few names in *us*, *i*, (§ 50) with *oleaster*, *pinaster*, *Styrax* and *unēdo* are masculine.—A few names of gems in *us*, *i*, are also masculine.

\* To distinguish the gender of Latin nouns, grammarians write *hic* before the masculine, *hæc* before the feminine, and *hoc* before the neuter.

**§ 30.** COMMON AND DOUBTFUL GENDER. Some words are either masculine or feminine. These, if they denote things animate, are said to be of the *common* gender; if things inanimate, of the *doubtful* gender.

Of the former are *pārens*, a parent; *bos*, an ox or cow: of the latter, *finis*, an end

The following nouns are of the common gender:—

<b>Adolescens</b> , a youth.	<b>Exsul</b> , an exile.	<b>Palumbes</b> , a wood-pigeon.
<b>Affinis</b> , a relative by marriage.	<b>Grus</b> , a crane.	<b>Pārens</b> , a parent.
<b>Ales</b> , a bird.	<b>Hospes</b> , a guest, a host.	<b>Par</b> , a mate.
<b>Antistes</b> , a chief priest.	<b>Hostis</b> , an enemy.	<b>Præses</b> , a president.
<b>Auctor</b> , an author.	<b>Index</b> , an informer.	<b>Præsul</b> , a chief priest.
<b>Augur</b> , an augur.	<b>Infans</b> , an infant.	<b>Princeps</b> , a prince or princess.
<b>Bos</b> , an ox or cow.	<b>Interpres</b> , an interpreter.	<b>Serpens</b> , a serpent.
<b>Cānis</b> , a dog.	<b>Jūdex</b> , a judge.	<b>Sacerdos</b> , a priest or priestess.
<b>Civis</b> , a citizen.	<b>Juvēnis</b> , a youth.	<b>Satelles</b> , a life-guard
<b>Cōmes</b> , a companion.	<b>Martyr</b> , a martyr.	<b>Sus</b> , a swine.
<b>Conjux</b> , a spouse.	<b>Miles</b> , a soldier.	<b>Testis</b> , a witness.
<b>Consort</b> , a consort.	<b>Municeps</b> , a burgess.	<b>Vātēs</b> , a prophet.
<b>Conviva</b> , a guest.	<b>Mus</b> , a mouse.	<b>Verna</b> , a slave.
<b>Custos</b> , a keeper.	<b>Nēmo</b> , nobody.	<b>Vindex</b> , an avenger.
<b>Dux</b> , a leader.	<b>Obses</b> , a hostage.	
	<b>Patruēlis</b> , a cousin.	

The following hexameters contain nearly all the above nouns:—

Conjux, atque pārens, princeps, patruēlis, et infans,  
 Affinis, vindex, jūdex, dux, milēs, et hostis,  
 Augūr, et antistes, juvēnis, conviva, sacerdos,  
 Mūnī-que-ceps, vātēs, adolescens, civis, et auctor,  
 Custōs, nēmo, cōmes, testis, sus, bōs-que, cānis-que,  
 Pro consorte lōri par, præsul, verna, sātellen,  
 Mus-que obses, consort, interprēs, et exsul, et hospes.

**§ 31.** 1. When nouns of the common gender denote males, they take a masculine adjective; when they denote females, a feminine.

2. The following are either masculine or feminine in sense, but masculine only in grammatical construction:—

<b>Artifex</b> , an artist.	<b>Fur</b> , a thief.	<b>Lātro</b> , a robber.
<b>Auspex</b> , a soothsayer.	<b>Hēres</b> , an heir.	<b>Libēri</b> , children.
<b>Eques</b> , a horseman.	<b>Hōmo</b> , a man or woman.	<b>Pēdes</b> , a footman.

To these may be added personal appellatives of the first declension; as, *advēna*, a stranger; and some gentile nouns; as, *Persa*, a Persian.

**§ 32.** 1. The following, though masculine or feminine in sense, are feminine only in construction:—

<b>Copīæ</b> , troops.	<b>Opēræ</b> , laborers.	<b>Vigiliæ</b> , Watchmen.
<b>Custodiæ</b> , guards.	<b>Prōles</b> , }	
<b>Excubiæ</b> , sentinels.	<b>Subōles</b> , } offspring.	

2. Some nouns, signifying persons, are neuter, both in their termination and construction; as,

Acroāma, a buffoon	Mancipium, }	Scortum, }
Auxilia, auxiliaries	Servitium, } a slave.	Prostitūlum, } a prostitute.

3. (a.) In some personal appellatives masculines and feminines are distinguished by different terminations affixed to the same root. The masculines end in *us, er, o, tor*, etc.; the feminines in *a* or *trix*, as, *cōquus, cōqua*; *magister, magistra*; *lēno, lēna*; *inventor, inventrix*, *tibicen, tibicīna*; *āvus, avia*; *rex, regīna*; *poēta, poētria*.

(b.) So also in some names of animals; as, *ēquus, ēqua*; *gallus, gallina*; *leo, lea* and *leāna*. Sometimes the words are wholly different; as, *taurus, vacca*.

4. Some names of animals are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine without regard to difference of sex; as, *anguis, serpens, dāma, talpa, tigris, colūber* and *colūbra*, etc.

§ 33. EPICENES. Names of animals which include both sexes, but admit of an adjective of one gender only, are called *epicene*. These commonly follow the gender of their terminations.

Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, *corvus*, a raven, are masculine; *aquila*, an eagle, *vulpes*, a fox, are feminine; though each of them is used to denote both sexes.

NOTE. This class includes the names of animals, in which the distinction of sex is seldom attended to. When it is necessary to mark the sex, *mas* or *femina* is usually added.

§ 34. NEUTERS. Nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine, are said to be of the neuter gender; such are,

1. All indeclinable nouns; as, *fas, nefas, nihil, gummi, pondo*.

2. Names of letters; as, *o longum*, long *o*. But these are sometimes feminine, *litrā* being understood.

3. Words used merely as such, without reference to their meaning, as, *pater est dissyllābum*, *pater* is dissyllabic.

4. All infinitives, imperatives, clauses of sentences, adverbs, and other particles, used substantively; as *scire tuum*, your knowledge; *ultimum vale*, the last farewell; *hoc diu*, this (word) *diu*.

REMARK. 1. Words derived from the Greek retain the gender which they have in that language.

REM. 2. Some nouns have different genders in the singular and plural, and are called *heterogeneous* nouns. See § 92.

## NUMBER.

§ 35. 1. (a.) Number, in nouns, is the form by which they denote whether they represent one object or more than one.

(b.) Latin nouns have two numbers,—the *singular* and the *plural*—which are distinguished by their terminations. The singular number denotes one object; the plural, more than one.



## PERSON.

2. The person of a noun or pronoun is the character sustained by the object which it represents, as being the speaker, the person addressed, or the person or thing spoken of.

Hence there are three persons. The speaker is of the *first* person, the person addressed is of the *second* person, and the person or thing spoken of is of the *third* person.

## CASES.

§ 36. Many of the relations of objects, which, in English, are denoted by prepositions, are, in Latin, expressed by a change of termination.

*Cases* are those terminations of nouns, which denote their relations to other words. Latin nouns have six cases; viz. *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative, and Ablative*.

REMARK. Though there are six cases in each number, no noun has in each number so many different terminations.

§ 37. 1. The nominative denotes the relation of a *subject* to a finite verb; as, *ego scribo, I write. Caius dicit, Caius says.*

2. The genitive denotes *origin, possession*, and many other relations, which, in English, are expressed by the preposition *of* or by the *possessive case*; as, *vita Cæsaris, the life of Cæsar, or Cæsar's life.*

3. The dative denotes that *to* or *for* which any thing is, or is done; as, *ille mihi librum dedit, he gave the book to me.*

4. The accusative is either the *object* of an active verb, or of certain prepositions, or the *subject* of an infinitive.

5. The vocative is the form appropriated to the name of any object which is addressed.

6. The ablative denotes *privation*, and many other relations, especially those expressed in English by the prepositions *with, from, in, or by.*

REMARK. The nominative and vocative are sometimes called *casus recti* i. e. the uninflected cases; and the others, *casus obliqui*; i. e. the oblique or inflected cases.

## DECLENSIONS.

§ 38. The regular forming of the several cases in both numbers, by annexing the appropriate terminations to the root, is called *declension*.

The Latin language has five declensions or modes of declining nouns, distinguished by the termination of the genitive singular, which, in the first declension, ends in *a*, in the second in *i*, in the third in *is*, in the fourth in *us*, and in the fifth in *ei*.

§ 39. The following table exhibits a comparative view of the terminations or case-endings of the five declensions.

## 14 QUANTITIES OF PENULTIMATE AND FINAL SYLLABLES.

(b.) But when *si* or *zi* followed by a vowel is immediately preceded by an accented vowel, the *s* or *z* has the sound of *zh*; as, *As-pu'-si-a* (as-pa'-zhe-ah) *Sa-la'-zi-a* (sa-ba'-zhe-sh).

NOTE. In a few proper names, *s* preceded by a vowel in an accented syllable and *i* followed by *i* before another vowel, has the sound, not of *zh*, but of *sh*; as, *A'-si-a* (a'-she-a): so *Sovia*, *Theodosia*, *Lysias*.

Exc. 2. *S*, at the end of a word, after *e*, *æ*, *au*, *b*, *m*, *n*, and *r*, has the sound of *z*; as, *res*, *æ*s, *laus*, *trab*us, *hi'-ems*, *lens*, *Mars*.

English analogy has also occasioned the *s* in *Cæ'-sar*, *cæ-sû'-ra*, *mî'-ser*, *mu'-si* *re-sid'-u-um*, *cav'-sa*, *ro'-sa*, and their derivatives, and in some other words, to take the sound of *z*. *Cæs-a-re'-a*, and the oblique cases of *Cæsar*, retain the hissing sound; so likewise the compounds of *trans*; as, *trans'-e-o*.

## T.

§ 12. 1. *T*, following or ending an accented syllable before *i* followed by a vowel, has the sound of *sh*; as, *ratio* (ra'-she-o), *Sulpi-tius* (Sul-pish'-e-us).

Exc. *T*, in such case, retains its hard sound (*t*) after *s*, *t*, or *x*; as, *Sal-lus-ti-us*, *Brut'-ti-i*, *Sex'-ti-us*; (*b*) in proper names in *tion* and *tyon*; as, *Eu-ryt'-i-on*, *Am-phic'-ty-on*; and (*c*) in old infinitives in *er*; as, *flec'-ti-er*, for *flec'-ti*.

## X.

2. *X*, at the beginning of a syllable, has the sound of *z*; at the end, that of *ks*; as, *Xenöphon* (Zen'-o-phon); *axis* (ak'-sis).

Exc. 1. When *ex* or *ux* is followed by a vowel in an accented syllable, *x* has the sound of *gz*; as, *exemplum* (eg-zem'-plum), *ux-o'-ri-us* (ug-zo'-re-us), *in-exhaustus* (in-eg-zaus'-tus).

Exc. 2. *X*, ending an accented syllable before *i* followed by a vowel, and before *u* ending a syllable, has the power of *ksh*; as, *noxius* (nok'-she-us), *pæxi* ('pek'-shu-i).

REMARK. *Ch* and *ph*, before *th*, in the beginning of a word, are silent; as, *Chthonia* (tho'-ni-a), *Phthia* (thi'-a). Also in the following combinations of consonants, in the beginning of words of Greek origin, the first letter is not sounded:—*mne-mon'-i-ca*, *gna'-tus*, *ime'-sis*, *Cle'-n-as*, *Ptol-e-mæ'-us*, *psal'-lo*.

## OF THE QUANTITIES OF THE PENULTIMATE AND FINAL SYLLABLES.

§ 13. 1. The *quantity* of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it.

2. A *short* syllable requires, in pronunciation, half the time of a *long* one.

REM. The *penultimate* syllable, or *penult*, is the last syllable but one. The *antepenult* is the last syllable but two.

The quantity of a syllable is generally to be learned from the rules of prosody, §§ 282–301; but for the convenience of the student, the following general rules are here inserted:—

3. A vowel before another vowel or *h* is short.

4. Diphthongs, not beginning with *u*, are long.

5. A vowel before *x, z, j*, or any two consonants, except a mute followed by a liquid, is long by *position*, as it is called.

6. A vowel naturally short before a mute followed by a liquid is common, i. e. either long or short.

In this Grammar, when the quantity of a penult is determined by one of the preceding rules, it is not marked; in other cases, except in dissyllables, the proper mark is written over its vowel.

To pronounce Latin words correctly, it is necessary to ascertain the quantities of their last two syllables only; and the rules for the quantities of final syllables would, for this purpose, be unnecessary, but for the occasional addition of enclitics. As these are generally monosyllables, and, for the purpose of accentuation, are considered as parts of the words to which they are annexed, they cause the final syllable of the original word to become the penult of the compound. But as the enclitics begin with a consonant, the final vowels of all words ending with a consonant, if previously short, are, by the addition of an enclitic, made long by position. It is necessary, therefore, to learn the quantities of those final syllables only which end with a vowel.

## OF ACCENTUATION.

### I. OF LATIN ACCENTS.

§ 14. 1. Accent, in Latin, signifies the rising and falling of the voice in pronouncing the syllables of a Latin word. It is a general rule of the Latin language, that every word has its accent. The enclitics, however, have no accent of their own, but they modify the accent of the words to which they are annexed, and prepositions lose their accent, when they precede the cases which they govern.

2. The Latin language has three accents, the acute (´), or rising tone, the grave (`), or falling tone, and the circumflex (˘), composed of the acute and the grave, i. e. of the rising and the falling tone.

3. A monosyllable, when short by nature, takes the acute, when long by nature, the circumflex accent; as, *pīx*, *ét*, *pārs*; *dōs*, *jūs*, *spēs*.

4. In words of two syllables, the penult is always accented; as, *pā'ter*, *mā'ter*, *pen'-na*.

REM. 1. Words of two syllables have the circumflex accent, when the vowel of the penult is naturally long and that of the last syllable short; as, *Rō-mā*, *mā-sā*, *tū-rē*, *jū-ris*. If otherwise, they have the acute; as, *hō'-mō*, *dē'as*, *Rō'-mā* (abl.), and *ar'-te*, in which *a* is long only by position.

5. In words of more than two syllables, if the penult is long, it is accented; but if it is short, the accent is on the antepenult; as, *a-mī'-cus*, *dom'-i-nus*.

REM. 2. When the accent of a word of more than two syllables falls upon the penult, it may be either the circumflex or the acute according as the last syllable is short or long. The antepenult can take no accent except the acute, and in no case can the accent be drawn farther back than to the antepenult.

EXC. Vocatives of the second declension in *i*, instead of *ie*, from nominatives in *ius*, and genitives in *i*, instead of *ii*, are accented as they would be, if the rejected letters were annexed, i. e. with the acute upon the penult, even when it is short; as *Vir-gil-i*; *Va-lē-rī*, *in-gē-nū*. So, also, the compounds of *jacio* with words which are not prepositions; as, *cal-e-fā'-cūt*, *tep-e-fū'-cūt*.

§ 15. If the penult is common, the accent, in prose, is upon the antepenult; as, *vol'-ū-cris*, *phar'-ē-tra*, *ib'-i-que*: but genitives in *ius*, in which *i* is common, accent their penult in prose; as, *v-nī'-us*, *is-tū'-us*.

*Dea, a goddess.*  
*Filia, a daughter.*

*Equa, a mare.*  
*Mūla, a she mule.*

The use of a similar termination in *anima, asina, liberta, nata, conserva*, and some other words, rests on inferior authority.

### GREEK NOUNS.

§ 44. Nouns of the first declension in *ē, ās*, and *ēs*, and some also in *ū*, are Greek. Greek nouns in *ā* are declined like *musa*, except that they sometimes have *ān* in the accusative singular; as, *Ossu*; acc. *Ossam*, or *Ossan*.

Greek nouns in *e, as*, and *es*, are thus declined in the singular number:—

<i>N.</i> Pe-nel'-ō-pē,	<i>N.</i> Ē-nē'-ās,	<i>N.</i> An-chī'-sēs,
<i>G.</i> Pe-nel'-ō-pēs,	<i>G.</i> Ē-nē'-æ,	<i>G.</i> An-chī'-sæ,
<i>D.</i> Pe-nel'-ō-pæ,	<i>D.</i> Ē-nē'-æ,	<i>D.</i> An-chī'-sæ,
<i>Ac.</i> Pe-nel'-ō-pēn,	<i>Ac.</i> Ē-nē'-ām or ān,	<i>Ac.</i> An-chī'-sēn,
<i>V.</i> Pe-nel'-ō-pē,	<i>V.</i> Ē-nē'-ā,	<i>V.</i> An-chī'-sē or ā,
<i>Ab.</i> Pe-nel'-ō-pē.	<i>Ab.</i> Ē-nē'-ā.	<i>Ab.</i> An-chī'-sā or ē.

§ 45. In like manner decline

<i>Al'-o-e, aloes.</i>	<i>Ti-ā'-ras, a turban.</i>
<i>E-pit'-ō-me, an abridgment.</i>	<i>Co-mē'-tes, a comet.</i>
<i>This'-be.</i>	<i>Dy-nas'-tes, a ruler.</i>
<i>Bo'-rē-as, the north wind.</i>	<i>Pri-am'-ī-des, a son of Priam.</i>
<i>Mī'-das.</i>	<i>Py-rī'-tes, a kind of stone.</i>

1. Most proper names in *es*, except patronymics, follow the third declension; but in the accusative they often have both *em* and *en*, and in the vocative both *es* and *e*. See §§ 80, IV, and 81.

2. Greek nouns of the first declension, which admit of a plural, are declined in that number like the plural of *musa*.

3. The Latins frequently change the terminations of Greek nouns in *ēs* and *ī* into *ā*; as, *Atrides, Atrida*, a son of Atreus; *Perses, Persa*, a Persian; *geomētres, geomētra*, a geometrician; *Circe, Circa*; *epitōme, epitōma*; *grammatices, grammatica*, grammar; *rhetorice, rhetorica*, oratory.—So also *tiāras, tiāra*.

### SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 46. Nouns of the second declension end in *ēr, īr, ūs, ūm, os, on*. Those ending in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns in *er, us*, and *um*, are thus declined:—

#### SINGULAR.

<i>A lord.</i>	<i>A son-in-law.</i>	<i>A field.</i>	<i>A kingdom</i>
<i>N.</i> dōm'-l-nīs,	gē'-nēr,	ā'-gēr,	reg'-nūm,
<i>G.</i> dom'-l-nī,	gen'-ē-rī,	a'-grī,	reg'-nī,
<i>D.</i> dom'-l-nō,	gen'-ē-rō,	a'-grō,	reg'-nō,
<i>Ac.</i> dom'-l-nīm,	gen'-ē-rūm,	a'-grūm,	reg'-nūm,
<i>V.</i> dom'-l-nē,	gē'-nēr,	a'-gēr,	reg'-nūm,
<i>Ab.</i> dom'-l-nō.	gen'-ērō.	a'-grō.	reg'-nō.

PLURAL.

N. dom'-i-nī,	ger'-ē-rī,	a'-grī,	reg'-nā,
G. dom-i-nō'-rūm,	gen-e-rō'-rūm,	a-grō'-rūm,	reg'-nō'-rūm,
D. dom'-i-nis,	gen'-ē-ris,	a'-gris,	reg'-nis,
Ac. dom'-i-nōs,	gen'-ē-rōs,	a'-grōs,	reg'-nā,
V. dom'-i-nī,	gen'-ē-rī,	a'-grī,	reg'-nā,
Ab. dom'-i-nis	gen'-ē-ris.	a'-gris.	reg'-nis.

Like *dominus* decline

An'-i-mus, *the mind*. Fō'-cus, *a hearth*. Nu'-mē-rus, *a number*.  
 Clip'-e-us, *a shield*. Gla'-di-us, *a sword*. O-ce'-ā-nus, *the ocean*.  
 Cor'-vus, *a raven*. Lū'-cus, *a grove*. Trō'-chus, *a trundling-hoop*.

NOTE. Nouns in *us* of the second declension are the only Latin nouns, whose nominative and vocative singular differ in form. See § 40, R. 8.

§ 47. A few nouns in *er*, like *gener*, add the terminations to the nominative singular, as a root. They are the compounds of *gēro* and *fēro*; as, *armīger*, -ēri, an armor-bearer; *Lucifer*, -ēri, the morning star; and the following:—

A-dul'-ter, *an adulterer*. LY'-ber, *Bacchus*. Pu'-er, *a boy*.  
 Cel'-ti-bēr, *a Celtiberian*. Lib'-ē-ri, (*plur.*), *children*. Sō'-cer, *a father-in-law*.  
 I'-ber, *a Spaniard*. Pres'-bȳ-ter, *an elder*. Ves'-per, *the evening*.

*Mul'-ci-ber*, Vulcan, sometimes has this form.

§ 48. 1. All other nouns in *er* reject the *e* in adding the terminations, (§ 322, 4), and are declined like *ager*; thus,

A'-per, *a wild boar*. LI'-ber, *a book*. Al-ex-an'-der.  
 Aus'-ter, *the south wind*. Ma-gis'-ter, *a master*. Is'-ter.  
 Fā'-ber, *a workman*. On'-ā-ger, *a wild ass*. Teu'-cer.

2. *Vir*, a man, with its compounds, and the patrial *Trēvir*, (the only nouns in *ir*.) are declined like *gener*.

Like *regnum* decline

An'-trum, *a cave*. Ex-em'-plum, *an example*. Præ-sid'-i-um, *a defence*.  
 A'-tri-um, *a hall*. Ne-go'-ti-um,\* *a business*. Sax'-um, *a rock*.  
 Bel'-lum, *war*. Nī'-trum, *natron*. Scep'-trum, *a sceptre*.

EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 49. 1. The following nouns in *us* and *os* are feminine:—

Abyssus, *a bottomless pit*. Dialectos, *a dialect*. Miltos, *vermilion*.  
 A'vus, *the bully*. Diphthongus, *a diphthong*. Phārus(os), *a light-house*.  
 Antidōtus, *an antidote*. Dōmus, *a house, home*. Plinthus, *the base of a column*.  
 Arctos(us), *the Northern Bear*. Erēmus, *a desert*. Vannus, *a corn-fan*.  
 Carbāsus, *a sail*. Hūmus, *the ground*.

2. Greek nouns in *odus* (ἡ ὄδος), and *mētros*, are likewise feminine; as *synōdus*, an assembly; *diamētros*, a diameter.

\* Pronounced ne-go'-sho-um. See § 12.

§ 50. Names of countries, towns, trees, plants, etc. are feminine. See § 29, 2

Yet the following names of plants are masculine:—

<i>Acanthus</i> , bear's-foot.	<i>Ebŭlus</i> , an elder.	<i>Răbus</i> , a blackberry-bush.
<i>Amarantus</i> , amaranth.	<i>Hellebŏrus</i> , hellebore.	<i>Tribŭlus</i> , a caltrop.
<i>Asparăgus</i> , asparagus.	<i>Intŭbus</i> , entwine.	
<i>Calămus</i> , a reed.	<i>Juncus</i> , a bulrush.	And sometimes
<i>Carduus</i> , a thistle.	<i>Raphănus</i> , a radish.	<i>Amarăcus</i> , marjoram.
<i>Dămus</i> , a bramble.	<i>Rhamnus</i> , buck-thorn.	<i>Cytisus</i> , snail-clover.

*Oleaster* and *pinaster*, names of trees, are also masculine.

The following names of gems are also masculine:—

<i>Beryllus</i> , a beryl.	<i>Chrysoprăsus</i> , chrysoprase.	So also,
<i>Carbuncŭlus</i> , a carbuncle.	<i>Opălus</i> , opal.	<i>Pyrŏpus</i> , gold-bronze.

*Chrysŏlthus*, *chrysolite*, and *smaragdus*, an emerald, are doubtful.

Names of females in *um* are feminine: § 29, 1; as, *mea Glycerium*, Ter.

Names of trees and plants in *um* are generally neuter; as, *apium*, parsley; *aconitum*, wolf's bane.

*Cinŏpus*, *Pontus*, *Hellespontus*, *Isthmus*, and all plural names in *i* of countries and towns are masculine. *Abŭdus*(os) is doubtful.

Names of countries and towns ending in *um*, or, if plural, in *a*, are neuter as, *Ilium* or *Iliŭm*; *Ecbătăna*, *ŏrum*.

§ 51. The following are doubtful, but more frequently masculine:—

<i>Balănus</i> , a date.	<i>Grossus</i> , an unripe fig.	<i>Phasēlus</i> , a light vessel.
<i>Barbitos</i> , a lute.	<i>Pampinus</i> , a vine-leaf.	

*Atŏmus*, an atom, and *cŏlus*, a distaff, are doubtful, but more frequently feminine.

*I'elăgus*, the sea, and *virus*, poison, are neuter.

*Vulgus*, the common people, is neuter, and rarely masculine.

### EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 52. *Genitive singular*. When the genitive singular ends in *i*, the poets frequently contract it into *t*; as, *ingēnī*, for *ingenti*.

*Vocative singular*. The vocative of nouns in *us* is sometimes like the nominative, especially in poetry; as, *fluvius*, *Latinus*, in Virgil. So, *audi tu*, *popŭlus Albănus*. Liv.

Proper names in *ius* omit *e* in the vocative; as, *Horatius*, *Horăti*, *Virgilius*, *Virgīli*.

*Filius*, a son, and *genius*, a guardian angel, make also *fili* and *geni*. Other nouns in *ius*, including patricians and possessives derived from proper names, form their vocative regularly in *e*; as, *Delius*, *Delie*; *Tirynthius*, *Tirynthie*; *Laertius*, *Laertie*.

§ 53. *Genitive plural*. The genitive plural of some nouns of the second declension, especially of those which denote money, weight and measure, is commonly formed in *um*, instead of *ŏrum*: § 322, 4.

Such are particularly *nummum*, *sestertium*, *denarium*, *medimnum*, *jugŕum modium*, *talentum*. The same form occurs in other words, especially in poetry as, *deum*, *libŕum*, *Danaum*; etc., and sometimes *om* is found instead of *um* as, *Achivom*. Virg. Cf. § 322, 8.

*Deūs, a god, is thus declined :—*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> de'-us,	<i>N.</i> di'-i, di, or de'-i,
<i>G.</i> de'-i,	<i>G.</i> de-ō'-rum,
<i>D.</i> de'-o,	<i>D.</i> di'-is, dia, or de'-is,
<i>Ac.</i> de'-um,	<i>Ac.</i> de'-os,
<i>V.</i> de'-us,	<i>V.</i> di'-i, di, or de'-i,
<i>Ab.</i> de'-o.	<i>Ab.</i> di'-is, dis, or de'-is.

*Jēsus, or Iēsus, the name of the Savior, has um in the accusative, and u in all the other oblique cases.*

### GREEK NOUNS.

§ 54. 1. *Os* and *on*, in the second declension, are Greek terminations, and are commonly changed, in Latin, into *us* and *um* : but sometimes both forms are in use ; as, *Alphēos*, and *Alphēus* ; *Ilion* and *Ilum*. Greek names in *ros* after a consonant commonly change *ros* into *er* ; as, *Alexandros*, *Alexander* ; *Teucros*, *Teucer*. In a few words *ros* is changed to *rus* ; as, *Codrus*, *hydrus*, and once in Virgil, *Teucrus*

Greek nouns are thus declined in the singular number :—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Barbiton, a lyra.</i>
<i>N.</i> Dē'-lōs,	<i>An-drō'-ge-ōs,</i>	<i>N.</i> bar'-bi-tōn,
<i>G.</i> Dē'-li,	<i>An-dro'-ge-ō, or i,</i>	<i>G.</i> bar'-bi-ti,
<i>D.</i> Dē'-lō,	<i>An-dro'-ge-ō,</i>	<i>D.</i> bar'-bi-tō,
<i>Ac.</i> Dē'-lōn or ūm,	<i>An-dro'-ge-ō, or ōn,</i>	<i>Ac.</i> bar'-bi-tōn,
<i>V.</i> Dē'-lē,	<i>An-dro'-ge-ōs,</i>	<i>V.</i> bar'-bi-tōn,
<i>Ab.</i> Dē'-lō.	<i>An-dro'-ge-ō.</i>	<i>Ab.</i> bar'-bi-tō.

2. The plurals of Greek nouns in *os* and *on* are declined like those of *dominus* and *regnum* ; but the nominative plural of nouns in *os* sometimes ends in *i* ; as, *canephōræ*.

3. In early writers some nouns in *os* have a genitive in *u* (*ou*) ; as, *Menandri*. Ter.

4. A genitive plural in *ōn*, instead of *ōrum*, occurs in the titles of books and in some names of places ; as, *Georgicōn* ; *Philōnōn aræ*. Sall.

5. Greek proper names in *eus* (see § 9, R. 3), are declined like *dominus*, except that the vocative ends in *eu* ; but sometimes in the genitive, dative, and accusative also, they retain the Greek form, viz. gen. *ēos*, dat. *ēi* (contracted *ēi*), acc. *ēā* or *ēā*, and are of the third declension. See §§ 86, and 306, (1.) So in Lucretius the neuter *pelāgus* (Greek *πῆλαγος*, *soe*) has an accusative plural *pelāgē* for *pelagea* after the third declension. § 83, 1.—See also respecting a genitive in *i* of some proper nouns in *es*, § 73, Rem.—*Panthū* occurs in Virgil, A. 2 322, as the vocative of *Panthūs*. Cf. § 81.

### THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 55. The number of final letters, in this declension, is twelve. Five are vowels—*a, e, i, o, y* ; and seven are consonants—*c, l, n, r, s, t, x*. The number of its final syllables exceeds fifty.

REM. The following terminations belong exclusively to Greek nouns ; viz *ua, i, y, ān, in, ōn, yn, ēr, yr, ys, eus, ex, inx, ynx*, and plurals in *e*.

*Mode of declining Nouns of the Third Declension.*

To decline a word properly, in this declension, it is necessary to know its gender, its nominative singular, and one of its oblique cases; since the root of the cases is not always found entire and unchanged in the nominative. The case usually selected for this purpose is the genitive singular. The formation of the accusative singular, and of the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, depends upon the gender; if it is masculine or feminine, these cases have one form; if neuter, another.

**§ 56.** The student should first fix well in his memory the terminations of one of these forms. He should next learn the nominative and genitive singular of the word which is to be declined. If it be removed from the genitive, the remainder will always be the root of the oblique cases, and by annexing their terminations to this root, the word is declined; thus, *rupes* genitive (found in the dictionary) *rupis*, root *rup*, dative *rupi*, etc.: as *ars*, gen. *artis*, root *art*, dat. *arti*, etc.; *opus* gen. *operis*, root *oper*, dat. *operi*, etc.

**RULES FOR FORMING THE NOMINATIVE SINGULAR OF THE THIRD DECLENSION FROM THE ROOT.**

**I.** Roots ending in *c, g; b, m, p; u, t, d*, and some in *r*, add *s* to form the nominative; as, *trābis*, *trabs*; *hiēmis*, *hiems*; *gruis*, *grus*.

REMARK 1. *T, d* and *r* before *s* are dropped; as, *nepōtis*, *nepos*; *laurās*, *laus*; *floris*, *flos*. So *Jovis*, *bos*, drops *v*.

REM. 2. *C* and *g* before *s* form *x*; as, *vocis*, *vox*; *regis*, *rex*. So *vs* forms *x* in *nivis*, *nix*. Cf. §§ 3, 2, and 171, 1.

REM. 3. Short *i* in the root before *c, b, p, t*, is commonly changed to *ē*; as, *pollicis*, *pollex*; *calābis*, *calebs*; *principis*, *princeps*; *comitis*, *comes*. - So *ū* is changed to *ē* in *aucūpis*, *auceps*.

REM. 4. Short *ē* or *ō* before *r* in neuters is changed to *ū*; as, *genēris*, *genūs*; *tempōris*, *tempūs*.

REM. 5. Short *ē* before *r* is changed to *i* in the masculines *cinēris*, *cinis*; *cucumēris*, *cucūmis*; *pulvērīs*, *pulvis*; *vomērīs*, *vōmis*.

REM. 6. A few and those mostly monosyllabic roots of masculines and feminines, not increasing in the genitive, add *es* or *is*, instead of *s* alone; as, gen. *rūpis*, nom. *rūpes*; gen. *auris*, nom. *auris*.

REM. 7. A few neuters add *ē* to the root to form the nominative; as, *rēis*, *rētē*; *māris*, *mārē*.

**II.** To roots ending in *l* and *n*, to some in *r* and *s*, and to those of most neuters in *t*, no addition is made in forming the nominative; as, *animālis*, *animal*; *canōnis*, *cānon*; *honōris*, *hōnor*; *assis*, *as*.

REMARK 1. Final *ōn* and *īn* in the roots of masculines and feminines, become *o* in the nominative; as, *sermōnis*, *sermo*; *arundinis*, *arundo*.

REM. 2. Final *īn* in the roots of neuters becomes *ēn* in the nominative; as, *fluminis*, *flūmēn*. So also in the masculines, *ascen*, *pecten*, *tibicen* and *tubicen*.

REM. 3. *Tr* and *br* at the end of a root, take *ē* between them in the nominative; as, *patris*, *pāter*; *imbris*, *imber*. Cf. §§ 108, 48, and 106.

REM. 4. Short *ō* is changed to *ū* in *ebōris*, *ēbūr*; *femōris*, *fēmūr*; *jecōris*, *jē-ūr*; and *robōris*, *rōbūr*.

REM. 5. In the roots of neuters *at* drops *t*, and *ūt* becomes *ut* in the nominative; as, *poemātis*, *poēma*; *capitis*, *caput*.

REM. 6. Roots of this class ending in repeated consonants drop one of them in the nominative; as, *fellis*, *fel*; *farris*, *far*; *assis*, *as*; *beasis*, *bea*.



The following are the two forms of termination in this declension:—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural</i>		
<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	*	*	<i>N.</i>	ēs,	ā, (iā),
<i>G.</i>	īs,	īs,	<i>G.</i>	ūm, (iūm),	ūm, (iūm),
<i>D.</i>	ī,	ī,	<i>D.</i>	ībūs,	ībūs,
<i>Ac.</i>	ēm, (īm),	*	<i>Ac.</i>	ēs,	ā, (iā),
<i>V.</i>	*	*	<i>V.</i>	ēs,	ā, (iā),
<i>Ab.</i>	ē, (ī).	ē, (ī).	<i>Ab.</i>	ībūs.	ībūs.

The asterisk stands for the nominative, and for those cases which are like it.

§ 57. The following are examples of the most common forms of nouns of this declension, declined through all their cases.

Hönor, honor ; masc.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ho'-nor,	ho-nō'-res,
<i>G.</i> ho-nō'-ris,	ho-nō'-rum,
<i>D.</i> ho-nō'-ri,	ho-nor'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ho-nō'-rem,	ho-nō'-res,
<i>V.</i> ho'-nor,	ho-nō'-res,
<i>Ab.</i> ho-nō'-re.	ho-nor'-i-bus.

Rüpes, a rock ; fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ru'-pes,	ru'-pes,
<i>G.</i> ru'-pis,	ru'-pi-um,
<i>D.</i> ru'-pi,	ru'-pi-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ru'-pem,	ru'-pes,
<i>V.</i> ru'-pes,	ru'-pes,
<i>Ab.</i> ru'-pe.	ru'-pi-bus.

Ars, art ; fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ars,	ar'-tes,
<i>G.</i> ar'-tis,	ar'-ti-um,*
<i>D.</i> ar'-ti,	ar'-ti-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ar'-tem,	ar'-tes,
<i>V.</i> ars,	ar'-tes,
<i>Ab.</i> ar'-te.	ar'-ti-bus.

Sermo, speech ; masc.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ser'-mo,	ser-mō'-nes,
<i>G.</i> ser-mō'-nis,	ser-mō'-num,
<i>D.</i> ser-mō'-ni,	ser-mon'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ser-mō'-nem,	ser-mō'-nes,
<i>V.</i> ser'-mo,	ser-mō'-nes,
<i>Ab.</i> ser-mō'-ne.	ser-mon'-i-bus.

Turris, a tower ; fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> tur'-ris,	tur'-res,
<i>G.</i> tur'-ris,	tur'-ri-um,
<i>D.</i> tur'-ri,	tur'-ri-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> tur'-rim, rem,	tur'-res,
<i>V.</i> tur'-ris,	tur'-res,
<i>Ab.</i> tur'-ri, or re.	tur'-ri-bus.

Nox, night ; fem.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> nox,	noc'-tes,
<i>G.</i> noc'-tis,	noc'-ti-um,*
<i>D.</i> noc'-ti,	noc'-ti-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> noc'-tem,	noc'-tes,
<i>V.</i> nox,	noc'-tes,
<i>Ab.</i> noc'-te.	noc'-ti-bus.

Miles, a soldier ; com. gen.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> mi'-les,	mil'-i-tes,
<i>G.</i> mil'-i-tis,	mil'-i-tum,
<i>D.</i> mil'-i-ti,	mi-lit'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> mil'-i-tem,	mil'-i-tes,
<i>V.</i> mi'-les,	mil'-i-tes,
<i>Ab.</i> mil'-i-te.	mi-lit'-i-bus.

Päter, a father ; masc.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> pa'-ter,	pa'-tres,
<i>G.</i> pa'-tris,	pa'-trum,
<i>D.</i> pa'-tri,	pat'-ri-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> pa'-trem,	pa'-tres,
<i>V.</i> pa'-ter,	pa'-tres,
<i>Ab.</i> pa'-tre.	pat'-ri-bus.

\* Pronounced ar'-she-um, noc'-she-um. See § 12.

*Sēdile, a seat; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> se-dī'-le,	se-dil'-i-a,
<i>G.</i> se-dī'-lis,	se-dil'-i-um,
<i>D.</i> se-dī'-li,	se-dil'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> se-dī'-le,	se-dil'-i-a,
<i>V.</i> se-dī'-le,	se-dil'-i-a,
<i>Ab.</i> se-dī'-li.	se-dil'-i-bus.

*Carmen, a verse; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> car'-men,	car'-mī-na,
<i>G.</i> car'-mī-nis,	car'-mī-num,
<i>D.</i> car'-mī-ni,	car-min'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> car'-men,	car'-mī-na,
<i>V.</i> car'-men,	car'-mī-na,
<i>Ab.</i> car'-mī-ne.	car-min'-i-bus.

*Iter, a journey; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ī'-ter,	i-tin'-ē-ra,
<i>G.</i> i-tin'-ē-ris,	i-tin'-ē-rum,
<i>D.</i> i-tin'-ē-ri,	it-i-ner'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ī'-ter,	i-tin'-ē-ra,
<i>V.</i> ī'-ter,	i-tin'-ē-ra,
<i>Ab.</i> i-tin'-ē-re.	it-i-ner'-i-bus.

*Lāpis, a stone; masc.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> la'-pis,	lap'-i-des,
<i>G.</i> lap'-i-dis,	lap'-i-dum,
<i>D.</i> lap'-i-di,	la-pid'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> lap'-i-dem,	lap'-i-des,
<i>V.</i> la'-pis,	lap'-i-des,
<i>Ab.</i> lap'-i-de.	la-pid'-i-bus.

*Virgo, a virgin; fem.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> vir'-go,	vir'-gī-nes,
<i>G.</i> vir'-gī-nis,	vir'-gī-num,
<i>D.</i> vir'-gī-ni,	vir-gin'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> vir'-gī-nem,	vir'-gī-nes,
<i>V.</i> vir'-go,	vir'-gī-nes,
<i>Ab.</i> vir'-gī-ne.	vir-gin'-i-bus.

*Animal, an animal; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ān'-ī-mal,	an-i-mā'-li-a,
<i>G.</i> an-i-mā'-lis,	an-i-mā'-li-um,
<i>D.</i> an-i-mā'-li,	an-i-mal'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> an'-ī-mal,	an-i-mā'-li-a,
<i>V.</i> an'-ī-mal,	an-i-mā'-li-a,
<i>Ab.</i> an-i-mā'-li.	an-i-mal'-i-bus.

*Opus, work; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ō'-pus,	op'-ē-ra,
<i>G.</i> op'-ē-ris,	op'-ē-rum.
<i>D.</i> op'-ē-ri,	o-per'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> o'-pus,	op'-ē-ra,
<i>V.</i> o'-pus,	op'-ē-ra,
<i>Ab.</i> op'-ē-re.	o-per'-i-bus.

*Cāput, a head; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> ca'-put,	cap'-i-ta,
<i>G.</i> cap'-i-tis,	cap'-i-tum,
<i>D.</i> cap'-i-ti,	ca-pit'-i-bus,
<i>Ac.</i> ca'-put,	cap'-i-ta,
<i>V.</i> ca'-put,	cap'-i-ta,
<i>Ab.</i> cap'-i-te.	ca-pit'-i-bus.

*Poēma, a poem; neut.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> po-ē'-ma,	po-em'-ā-ta,
<i>G.</i> po-em'-ā-tis,	po-em'-ā-tum,
<i>D.</i> po-em'-ā-ti,	po-e-mat'-i-bus, or po-em'-ā-tis,
<i>Ac.</i> po-ē'-ma,	po-em'-ā-ta,
<i>V.</i> po-ē'-ma,	po-em'-ā-ta,
<i>Ab.</i> po-em'-ā-te.	po-e-mat'-i-bus, or po-em'-ā-tis,

## RULES FOR THE GENDER OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION

§ 58. Nouns whose gender is determined by their signification, according to the general rules, § 28—34, are not included in the following rules and exceptions.

## MASCULINES.

Nouns ending in *o*, *er*, *or*, *es* increasing in the genitive, *os*, and *n*, are masculine; as,

*sermo*, speech; *dolor*, pain; *flos*, a flower; *carcer*, a prison; *pes*, a foot; *calron*, a rule.

## Exceptions in O.

§ 59. 1. Abstract and collective nouns in *io* are feminine; as, *ratio*, reason; *legio*, a legion.

REM. 1. But numerals in *io*; as, *binio*, *trinio*, etc., except *unio*, unity, are masculine.

2. Nouns in *do* and *go*, of more than two syllables, are feminine, as, *arundo*, a reed; *imāgo*, an image. So also *granulo*, hail. But *comēdo*, a glutton; *unēdo*, the arbute tree; and *harpāgo*, a grappling hook, are masculine.

REM. 2. *Margo*, the brink of a river, is doubtful. *Cupido*, desire, is often masculine in poetry, but in prose is always feminine.

3. *Uro*, flesh, and Greek nouns in *o*, are feminine; as, *ēcho*, an echo. *Bubo*, the owl, is once feminine, Virg. A. 4, 482.

## Exceptions in ER.

§ 60. 1. *Laver*, a water plant, and *tüber*, the tuber tree, are feminine, but when the latter denotes the fruit, it is masculine. *Linter*, a boat, is feminine, and once, in Tibullus, masculine. *Siser*, skirret, is neuter in the singular, but masculine in the plural.

2. The following, in *er*, are neuter:—

Acer, a maple-tree.	Papāver, a poppy.	Tüber, a swelling.
Cadāver, a dead body.	Piper, pepper.	Uber, a teat.
Cicer, a vetch.	Siler, an osier.	Ver, the spring.
Iter, a journey.	Spinther, a clasp.	Verber, a scourge.
Lāser, assafetida.	Süber, a cork-tree.	Zingiber, ginger.

## Exceptions in OR.

§ 61. *Arbor*, a tree, is feminine; *ādor*, spelt; *æquor*, the sea; *marmor* marble; and *cor*, the heart, are neuter.

## Exceptions in ES increasing in the genitive.

1. The following are feminine:—

Compes, a fether.	Quies, and Requies, rest.	Tēges, a mat.
Merces, a reward.	Inquiries, restlessness.	
Merges, a sheaf of corn.	Sēges, growing corn.	

2. *Ales*, a bird; *cōmes*, a companion; *hospes*, a guest; *interpres*, an interpreter; *miles*, a soldier; *obses*, a hostage; *præses*, a president; and *satelles*, a life-guard, are common, § 30. *Æs*, brass, is neuter.

*Exceptions in OS.*

8. *Arbos*, a tree; *cos*, a whetstone; *dos*, a dowry; *es*, the morning; and rarely *nēpos*, a grandchild, are feminine: *sacerdos*, *custos*, and *dos* are common, § 80: *os*, the mouth, and *os*, a bone, are neuter; as are also the Greek words *ēpos*, epic poetry; and *mēlos*, melody.

*Exceptions in N.*

4. Nouns in *men* with four in *n* are neuter—*glūten*, glue; *inguen*, the groin; *pollen*, fine flour; and *unguen*, ointment.

5. Four nouns in *on* are feminine—*ādon*, a nightingale; *halcyon*, a kingfisher; *icon*, an image; and *sindon*, muslin.

## FEMININES.

§ 62. Nouns ending in *as*, *es* not increasing in the genitive, *is*, *ys*, *aus*, *s* preceded by a consonant, and *x*, are feminine; as,

*atlas*, age; *nubes*, a cloud; *avis*, a bird; *chlamys*, a cloak; *laus*, praise; *trabe* a beam; *pax*, peace.

*Exceptions in AS.*

1. *Mas*, a male; *vas*, a surety, and *as*, a piece of money, or any unit divisible into twelve parts, are masculine. Greek nouns in *as*, *antis*, are also masculine; as, *adamas*, adamant. So also *Mēlas*, the name of a river, § 28, 2. *Arcas* and *Nōmas* are common.—2. *Vas*, a vessel, the indeclinable nouns, *fas* and *nēfas*, and Greek nouns in *as*, *ātis*, are neuter; as, *artocreas*, a meat-pie; *bucēras*, a species of herb.

*Exceptions in ES not increasing in the genitive.*

8. *Acināces*, a scimitar, and *cōles* or *cōlis*, a stalk, are masculine. *Antistes*, *pulumbes*, *vātes*, and *vepres*, are masculine or feminine. *Cacoēthes*, *hippomānes*, *neperthes*, and *panāces*, Greek words, are neuter.

*Exceptions in IS.*

§ 63. 1. Latin nouns in *nis* are masculine or doubtful.

(1.) Masc. *Crinis*, hair; *ignis*, fire; *pānis*, bread; *mānes*, (plur.), departed spirits.—(2.) Masc. or fem. *Annis*, a river; *cinis*, ashes; *finis*, an end; *clūnis* the haunch; *cānis*, a dog; *fūnis*, a rope. The plurals, *cinēres*, the ashes of the dead, and *fines*, boundaries, are always masculine.

2. The following are common or doubtful:—

Anguis, a snake.	Corbis, a basket.	Tigris, a tiger.
Callis, a path.	Pollis, fine flour.	Torquis, a chain.
Canālis, a conduit pipe.	Pulvis, dust.	
Contubernālis, a comrade.	Scrōbis, a ditch.	

3. The following are masculine:—

Axis, an axle.	Cenchris, a serpent.	Follis, a pair of bellows.
Aquālis, a water-pot.	Collis, a hill.	Fustis, a club.
Cassis, a net.	Cucūmis, a cucumber.	Glis, a dormouse.
Caulis, or ) a stalk.	Ensis, a sword.	Lāpis, a stone.
Cōlis,	Fascis, a bundle.	Leimūres, pl., spectres.

Mensis, <i>a month.</i>	Sanguis, <i>blood.</i>	Sentis, <i>a brier.</i>
Mugilis, <i>a mullet.</i>	Sēmis, <i>or</i>	Sodālis, <i>a companion.</i>
Orbis, <i>a circle.</i>	Semissis,	Torris, <i>a firebrand.</i>
Piscis, <i>a fish.</i>	Bessis,	Unguis, <i>a nail.</i>
Postis, <i>a post.</i>	Centussis,	Vectis, <i>a lever.</i>
Quiris, <i>a Roman.</i>	Decussis,	Vermis, <i>a worm.</i>
Samnis, <i>a Samnite.</i>	Tressis,	Vōnis, <i>a ploughshare.</i>

4. Names of male beings, rivers, and months in *is* are masculine as, *Dis*, Pluto; *Anūbis*, an Egyptian deity; *Tigris*, the river Tigris; *Aprīlis*, April. See § 28.

### Exceptions in YS.

Names of rivers and mountains in *ys* are masculine; as, *Hālys*, *Othrys*. See § 28, 2 and 3

### Exceptions in S preceded by a consonant.

§ 64. 1. *Dens*, a tooth; *fons*, a fountain; *mons*, a mountain; and *pons*, a bridge, are masculine. So also are *auceps*, a bird-catcher; *chalybs*, steel; *cliens*, a client; *elops*, a kind of fish; *ēpops*, a hoopoe; *gryps*, a griffin; *hydrops*, the dropsy; *mērops*, a kind of bird. *Rūdēns*, a rope, is masculine and very rarely feminine.

2. The following nouns also are masculine, viz. (a.) these which are properly adjectives—*confluens* and *torrens*, scil. *amnis*; *occidens* and *oriens*, scil. *sol*; (b.) compounds of *dens*—*tridens*, a trident, and *bidens*, a two-pronged mattock;—but *bidens*, a sheep, is feminine; (c.) the parts of *as* ending in *ns*; as, *sectans*, *quadrans*, *triens*, *dadrans*, and *dextans*.

8. The following are common or doubtful:—

Adeps, <i>grease.</i>	Seps, <i>a kind of serpent</i>	Serpens, <i>a serpent.</i>
Forceps, <i>pincers.</i>	Scrobs, <i>a ditch.</i>	Stirps, <i>the trunk of a tree.</i>

*Animans* an animal, which is properly an adjective, is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

### Exceptions in X.

§ 65. 1. AX. *Anthrax*, cinnabar; *cōrax*, a raven; *cordax*, a kind of dance; *drōpax*, an ointment; *stīrax*, a kind of tree; *thōrax*, a breast-plate; and *Atax*, the river Aude, are masculine; *līmax*, a snail, is common.

2. EX. Nouns in *ex* are masculine, except *fax*, *forfex*, *lex*, *nex*, *prex*, (obsolete in nom. and gen. sing.), and *supellex*, which are feminine; to which add (§ 29) *cārex*, *īlex*, *mūrex*, *pellex*, and *vilex*. *Atriplex* is neuter and very rarely masculine or feminine. *Alex*, a fish-pickle; *cortex*, bark; *imbrex*, a gutter-tile; *ōbez*, a bolt; and *silex*, a flint, are doubtful: *sēnex*, an old person; *grex*, a herd; *rūmex*, sorrel; and *pūmex*, pumice-stone, are masculine and very rarely feminine.

8. IX. *Cūlix*, a cup; *formix*, an arch; *phoenix*, a kind of bird; and *spādix*, a palm-branch, are masculine; *līrix*, the larch-tree; *perdix*, a partridge; and *vērix*, a swollen vein, are masculine or feminine.

4. OX. *Box* and *ēsox*, names of fishes, are masculine.

5. UX. *Trādūx*, a vine-branch, is masculine.

6. YX. *Bombyx*, a silk-worm; *cālyx*, the bud of a flower; *coccyx*, a cuckoo; *tryx*, a wild goat, and names of mountains in *yx*, as *Eryx*, are masculine. *Onyx*, a box made of the onyx-stone, and *sardōnyx*, a precious stone; also, *salx*, the heel, and *calx*, lime; *lynx*, a lynx, and *sandyx*, a kind of color, are masculine or feminine.

NOTE. *Bombyx*, when it signifies silk, is doubtful.

7. *Quincunx*, *septunx*, *dēcunx*, *duemx*, parts of *as*, are masculine.

## NEUTERS.

§ 66. Nouns ending in *a, e, i, y, c, ĭ, t, ar, ur, us*, and *men* are neuter; as,

*diadēma*, a crown; *rēte*, a net; *hydromēli*, mead; *lac*, milk; *vestigal*, revenue; *caput*, the head; *calcar*, a spur; *guttur*, the throat; *pectus*, the breast; and *flūmen*, a river.

## Exceptions in L, C, and E.

*Māgil*, a mullet, and *sol*, the sun, are masculine. *Sal*, salt, is masculine or neuter in the singular; but, in the plural, it is always masculine. *Lac* is neuter and rarely masculine. *Praneste* is neuter, and once in Virgil feminine.

## Exceptions in AR and UR.

§ 67. *Furfur*, bran; *ālar*, a trout; *turtur*, a turtle dove; and *vultur*, a vulture, are masculine.

## Exceptions in US.

1. *Lēpus*, a hare; and Greek nouns in *pus* (πῶς), are masculine; as, *tripus*, a tripod; but *lagōpus*, a kind of bird, is feminine.

2. Nouns in *us*, having *ūtis*, or *ūdis*, in the genitive, are feminine as, *juventus*, youth; *incus*, an anvil.

3. *Pecus*, *-ūdis*, a brute animal, and *tellus*, the earth, are feminine. *Pessimus*, and *Selinus*, names of towns, are also feminine. See § 29.

4. *Grus*, a crane; *mus*, a mouse; and *sus*, a swine, are masculine or feminine.

5. *Rhus*, sumach, is masculine, and rarely feminine.

## RULES FOR THE OBLIQUE CASES OF NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

## GENITIVE SINGULAR.

§ 68. 1. The genitive singular of the third declension of *Latin* nouns always ends in *is*; in *Greek* nouns it sometimes ends in *os* and *us*.

## A.

2. Nouns in *a* form their genitive in *ātis*; as, *di-a-dē-ma*, *di-a-dem'-ā-tis*, a crown; *dog'-ma*, *dog'-mā-tis*, an opinion.

## E.

3. Nouns in *e* change *e* into *is*; as, *rē-te*, *rē-tis*, a net; *se-dē-le*, *se-dē-lis*, a seat.

## I.

4. Nouns in *i* are of Greek origin, and are generally indeclinable; but *hydromēli*, mead, has *hyd-ro-mel'-i-tis* in the genitive.

## O.

§ 69. Nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ōnis*; as, *ser'-mo*, *ser-mō-nis*, speech; *pā-vo*, *pa-vō-nis*, a peacock.

REMARK. Patrials in *o* have *ōnis*; as, *Macēdo, -ōnis*; but some have *ōnis*, as, *Eburōnes*, etc. See 3d exception to increments in *O*, § 27.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *do* and *go* form their genitive in *inis*; as, *a-run'do, a-run'-dī-nis*, a reed; *i-mā'-go, i-mag'-i-nis*, an image.

But four dissyllables—*cūdo, ūdo, ſigo* and *mango*; and three trisyllables—*comēdo, unēdo*, and *harpāgo*, have *ōnis*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns, also, have *inis*:—*Apollo*; *hōmo*, a man; *nēmo*, nobody; and *turbo*, a whirlwind.

*Citrō*, flesh, has, by syncope, *carnis*. *Anio*, the name of a river, has *Aniēnis*; *Nerio*, the wife of Mars, *Neriēnis*; from the old nominatives, *Anien*, and *Neriēnes*.

Exc. 3. Some Greek nouns in *o* form their genitive in *ūs*, and their other cases singular, in *o*; as, *Dido*, gen. *Didus*, dat. *Dido*, etc.; *Argo*, *-us*; but they are sometimes declined regularly; as, *Dido, Didōnis*.

## Y.

Greek nouns in *y* have their genitive in *ys*; as, *misy, misjōs*, or, by contraction, *misys*.

## C.

§ 70. The only nouns in *c* are *d'-lec, a-lē'-cis*, fish-brine, and *lac, lac'-tis*, milk.

## L. N. R.

Nouns in *l, n*, and *r*, form their genitive by adding *is*; as, *con'-sul, con'-sū-lis*, a consul; *cā'-non, can'-ō-nis*, a rule; *hō'-nor, ho-nō'-ris*, honor.

So, *An'-i-mal, an-i-mā'-lis*, an animal.

*Vi'-gil, vig'-i-lis*, a watchman.

*Ti'-tan, Ti-tā'-nis*, Titan.

*Si'-ren, Si-rē'-nis*, a Siren.

*Del'-phin, del-phī'-nis*, a dolphin.

*Cal'-car, cal-cā'-ris*, a spur.

*Car'-cer, car'-cē-ris*, a prison.

*A'-mor, a-mō'-ris*, love.

*Gut'-tur, gut'-tū-ris*, the throat.

*Mar'-tyr, mar'-tŷ-ris*, a martyr.

## Exceptions in L.

*Fel*, gall, and *mel*, honey, double *l* before *is*, making *fellis* and *mellis*.

## Exceptions in N.

§ 71. 1. Neuters in *en* form their genitive in *inis*; as, *flū'-men, flū'-mī-nis*, a river; *glū'-ten, glu'-tī-nis*, glue.

The following masculines, also, form their genitive in *inis*:—*oscen*, a bird which foreboded by its notes; *pecten*, a comb; *tibicen*, a piper; and *tubicen*, a trampeter.

2. Some Greek nouns in *on* form their genitive in *ontis*; as, *Laomēdon, Laomēdontis*. Some in *in* and *yn* add *is* or *os*; as, *Trāchin*, or *Trāchyn*, *Trāchinis* or *Trāchynos*.

## Exceptions in R.

1. Nouns in *ter* drop *e* in the genitive; as, *pā'-ter, pa'-tris*, a father. So also *inber*, a shower, and names of months in *ber*; as, *Octōber, Octōbris*.

But *crâter*, a cup; *sôter*, a savior; and *lêter*, a brick, retain *e* in the genitive.

2. *Far*, a kind of corn, has *farris*; *hêpar*, the liver, *hepâtis*; *Lar* or *Lara*, *Lartis*; *îter*, a journey, has *itinêris* from the old nominative *îitner*; *Jupiter Jovis*; and *cor*, the heart, *cordâs*.

3. These four in *ur* have *oris* in the genitive:—*êbur*, ivory; *fêmur*, the thigh; *jêcur*, the liver; *rôbur*, strength.

*Fêmur* has also *feminis*, and *jêcur*, *jecinôris*, and *jocinôris*.

## AS.

§ 72. Nouns in *as* form their genitive in *âtis*; as, *æ'-tas*, *æ-tâ-tis*, age; *pî-ê-tas*, *pî-e-tâ-tis*, piety.

Exc. 1. *As* has *assis*; *mâs*, a male, *mâris*; *vas*, a surety, *vâdis*; and *vâs*, a vessel, *vâsis*. *Anas*, a duck, has *anitis*.

Exc. 2. Greek nouns in *as* form their genitive according to their gender; the masculines in *antis*, the feminines in *adis* or *ados*, and the neuters in *âtis*; as, *adimûs*, *-antis*, adamant; *lampûs*, *-idis*, a lamp; *Pallûs*, *-adis* or *-ados*; *bucôrus*, *-âtis*, a species of herb. *Arcas*, an Arcadian, and *Nômas*, a Numidian, which are of the common gender, form their genitive in *adis*. *Mêlas*, the name of a river, has *Melinis*.

## ES.

§ 73. 1. Nouns in *es* form their genitive by changing *es* into *is*, *itis*, *êtis*, or *êtis*; as, *rû-pes*, *ru'-pis*, a rock; *mî'-les*, *mil'-i-tis*, a soldier; *æ'-ges*, *seg'-ê-tis*, growing corn; *qui'-es*, *qui-ê-tis*, rest.

REMARK. A few Greek proper names in *es* (gen. *is*) sometimes form their genitive in *ei*, or, by contraction, *i*, after the second declension; as, *Achilles*, *is*, *ei* or *-i*; and a few in *æ* after the first declension; as, *Orestes*, *is* or *æ*.

2. Those which make *itis* are,

Ales, a bird.	Gurges, a whirlpool.	Poples, the ham.
Ames, a fowler's staff.	Hospes, a guest.	Satelles, a lifeguard.
Antistes, a priest.	Lîmes, a limit.	Stipes, the stock of a tree.
Cæspes, a turf.	Merges, a sheaf of corn.	Termes, an olive bough.
Cônes, a companion.	Mîles, a soldier.	Trâmes, a by-path.
Eques, a horseman.	Palmes, a vine-branch.	Vêles, a skirmisher.
Fômes, touchwood.	Pêdes, a foot-soldier.	

3. The following have *êtis*:—*abies*, a fir-tree; *aries*, a ram; *indêges*, a man deified; *interprees*, an interpreter; *paries*, a wall; *sêges*, a corn-field; and *têges*, a mat.

4. The following have *êtis*:—*Cêbes*; *Cres*, a Cretan; *lêbes*, a caldron; *magnes*, a loadstone; *quies* and *requies*, rest; *inquies*, restlessness; and *tâpes* (used only in acc. and abl.), tapestry.—Some Greek proper names have either *êtis* or *is* in the genitive; as, *Chrêmes*, *-êtis*, or *-is*. *Dâres*, *-êtis*, or *-is*.

Exc. 1. *Obses*, a hostage, and *præses*, a president, have *idîs*. *Hêres*, an heir and *merces*, a reward, have *êdis*; *pes*, a foot, and its compounds, have *êdis*.

Exc. 2. *Cêres* has *Cerêris*; *bes*, *bessis*; *præes*, *prædis*; and *æ*, *avis*.

## IS.

§ 74. Nouns in *is* have their genitive the same as the nominative; as, *au'-ris*, *ar-ris*, the ear; *â-vis*, *â'-vis*, a bird.



Exc. 1. The following have the genitive in *ēris*:—*cīnus*, ashes; *pubēs*, dust *vōmus* or *vōmer*, a ploughshare. *Cucūmis*, a cucumber, has *ēris* and rarely *is*.

Exc. 2. The following have *īdis*:—*cāpis*, a cup; *cassis*, a helmet; *cupis*, a point; *lapis*, a stone; and *prōmulsis*, an antepast.

Exc. 3. Two have *inis*:—*pollis*, fine flour, and *sanguis* or *sanguen*, blood.

Exc. 4. Four have *itis*:—*Dis*, Pluto; *lis*, strife; *Quiris*, a Roman; and *Samnis*, a Samnite.

Exc. 5. *Glīs*, a dormouse, has *gliris*.

## GREEK NOUNS.

1. Greek nouns in *is*, whose genitive ends in *ios* or *eos*, (*ios* or *sac*), form their genitive in Latin in *is*; as (a.) verbals in *is*; as, *basis*, *mathesis*, etc. (b.) compounds of *polis* (*πόλις*); as, *metropōlis*, *Neapōlis*, etc.; and (c.) a few other proper names, as *Charybdīs*, *Lachēsīs*, *Syriis*, etc. In some nouns of this class the Greek genitive is sometimes found; as, *Nemēsīs*, *Nemesios*.

2. Greek nouns in *is*, whose Greek genitive is in *īdos* (*ιδος*), form their Latin genitive in *īdis*; as, *agis*, *aspis*, *ephemēris*, *pyrāmis*, *tyrannis*, *Ænēis*, *īris*, *Nerēis*, etc. *Tigris* has both *is* and *īdis*; and in some other words of this class later writers use *is* instead of *īdis*.

3. *Chāris* has *Charītis*; *Salāmis*, *Salamītis*, and *Simōis*, *Simōentis*.

## OS.

§ 75. Nouns in *os* form their genitive in *ōris* or *ōtis*; as, *flos*, *flō-ris*, a flower; *nē-pos*, *ne-pō-tis*, a grandchild.

The following have *ōris*:—

<i>Flos</i> , a flower.	<i>Lābos</i> or <i>lābor</i> , labor.	<i>Os</i> , the mouth.
<i>Glos</i> , a husband's sister.	<i>Lēpos</i> or <i>lēpor</i> , wit.	<i>Ros</i> , dew.
<i>Hōnos</i> or <i>hōnor</i> , honor.	<i>Mos</i> , a custom.	

*Arbos* or *arbor*, a tree, has *ōris*.

The following have *ōtis*:—

<i>Cos</i> , a whetstone.	<i>Monocēros</i> , a unicorn.	<i>Nēpos</i> , a grandchild.
<i>Dos</i> , a dowry.	<i>Rhinocēros</i> , a rhinoceros.	<i>Sacerdos</i> , a priest.

Exc. 1. *Custos*, a keeper, has *custōdis*; *bos*, an ox, *bōvis*; and *os*, a bone, *ossis*.

Exc. 2. Some Greek nouns in *os* have *ōis* in the genitive; as, *hēros*, a hero; *Mīnos*; *Tros*, a Trojan; and some Greek neuters in *os* are used in the third declension in the nominative and accusative only; as, *Argos*, *cētos*, *ēpos*, *mēlos*.

## US.

§ 76. 1. Nouns in *ūs* form their genitive in *ēris* or *ōris*; as, *gēnus*, *gēn'-ēris*, a kind; *tem'-pus*, *tem'-pō-ris*, time.

2. Those which make *ēris* are, *ācus*, (chaff), *factus*, *fūnus*, *gēnus*, *glōmus*, *lūtus*, *mānus*, *ōlus*, *ōnus*, *opus*, *pomūs*, *rūdus*, *scēlus*, *sidus*, *ulcus*, *vellus*, *viscus* and *vulnus*. In early writers *pignus* has sometimes *pignēris*.

3. Those which make *ōris* are, *corpus*, *dēcus*, *dedēcus*, *factus*, *finus*, *frigus*, *lēpus*, *litus*, *nēmus*, *pectus*, *pēcus*, *pēnus*, *pignus*, *stercus*, *tempus*, and *tergus*.

Exc. 1. These three in *ūs* have *ūtis*:—*incūs*, an anvil; *piliūs*, a morass; and *subscūs*, a dove-tail. *Pēciūs*, a brute animal, has *pecēdis*.

Exc. 2. These five have *ūtis*:—*juventūs*, youth; *salūs*, safety; *senectūs*, old age; *servitūs*, slavery *virtūs*, virtue.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *ūs* have *āris*; as, *crūs*, the leg; *jūs*, right; *jūs*, broth; *mus*, a mouse; *pus*, matter; *rus*, the country; *tus*, frankincense; except *grus* and *sus*, which have *gruis*, and *suis*; and *rhus*, which has *rhois* or *roris*. *Tellus* the earth, has *tellūris*; and *Ligus* or *Ligur*, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris*.

Exc. 4. *Fraus*, fraud, and *laus*, praise, have *fraudis*, *laudis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *pūs* (πῦς) have *ōdis*; as, *tripus*, *tripōdis*, a tripod, *Œdipus*, *Œdis*; but this is sometimes of the second declension.

Exc. 6. Some Greek names of cities in *us* have *untis*; as, *Amāthus*, *Amathuntis*. So *Trapēzus*, *Opus*, *Pessinus*, and *Selinus*.

Exc. 7. Greek nouns ending in *eus* are all proper names, and have their genitive in *eos*; as, *Orpheus*, *-eos*. But these nouns are found also in the second declension; as, *Orpheus*, *-ē* or *-i*. Cf. § 64, 5.

## YS.

§ 77. 1. Nouns in *ys* are Greek, and make their genitive in *ŷis* (contracted *ŷs*), or, as in Greek, *yos* (υος); as,

*Cōtys*, gen. *Cōtŷis* or *Cōtys*; *Trīthys*, *-ŷis* or *ŷos*. So *Atys*, *Cāpys*, *Erinnyes*, *Hālys*, *Ōthrys*. A few have *ŷdis*; as, *chlāmys*, *chlāmŷdis*.

## S preceded by a consonant.

2. Nouns in *s*, with a consonant before it, form their genitive by changing *s* into *is* or *tis*; as, *trabs*, *trā'-bis*, a beam; *hī-ems*, *hī'-ē-mis*, winter; *pars*, *par'-tis*, a part; *frons*, *fron'-tis*, the forehead.

(1.) Those in *bs*, *ms*, and *ps*; as, *scrobs*, *hiems*, *surps*, change *s* into *is*; except *gryps*, a griffin, which has *grŷphis*.

REMARK. Compounds in *ceps* from *cāpio* have *tipis*; as, *princeps*, *principis* a prince. But *auceps* has *aucūpis*.

(2.) Those in *ls*, *ns*, and *rs*, as, *puls*, *gens*, *ars*, change *s* into *tis*.

Exc. 1. The following in *ns* change *s* into *dis*:—*frons*, foliage: *glans*, an acorn; *juglans*, a walnut; *lens*, a nit; and *libripens*, a weigher.

Exc. 2. *Tiryns*, a town of Argolis, has *Tirynthis* in the genitive.

## T.

§ 78. 1. Nouns in *t* form their genitive in *ŷtis*. They are, *cāput*, the head, gen. *cap'-t-is*; and its compounds, *occiput* and *sinciput*.

## X.

2. Nouns in *x* form their genitive by resolving *x* into *xs* or *gs*, and inserting *i* before *s*; as, *vox* (*vocs*) *vō'-cis*, the voice; *lex* (*legs*) *lē'-gis*, a law.

(1.) Latin nouns in *ax* have *ācis*; as, *formax*, *formācis*, except *fax*, *fācis*. Most Greek nouns in *ax* have *ācis*; as, *thōrax*, *thorācis*; a few have *ācis*; as, *corax*, *corācis*; and Greek names of men in *nax* have *nactis*; as, *Astyānax*, *Astyanactis*.

(2.) Nouns in *ex* have *icis*; as, *jūdex*, *judicis*; *obex* has *obicis* or *obŷicis*; and *vibex*, *vibicis*. *Nex*, *prex*, (nom. obs.), *resex* and *fenitsex* have *ēcis*; *ālex*, *narhex*, and *vervex* have *ēcis*, and *fāx*, *fācis*. *Lex* and *rex* have *ēgis*; *aquilex* and *grēx* have *ēgis*; *rēmex* has *remigis*; *sēnex*, *sēnis*; and *supellex*, *supellectilis*.

(2.) Nouns in *ix* have *icis*; as, *cervix*, *cervicis*; and less frequently *icis*; as, *collis*, *collis*. But *nix* has *nivis*; *strix*, foreign names of men, and gentile nouns in *ix* have *igis*; as, *Bitūrix*, *Dumnōrix*, etc.

(4.) Nouns in *ox* have *ōcis*; as, *vox*, *vōcis*; but *Cappadox* has *Cappadōcis*, *Allōbrox*, *Allōbrōgis*; and *nox*, *noctis*.

(5.) Of nouns in *uz*, *cruz*, *duz*, *trāduz*, and *nuz* have *ūcis*; *lux* and *Polhuz*, *icis*.—*Onyuz* has *conjugis*, *fruz* (nom. obs.) *frūgis*, and *fauz*, *faucis*.

(6.) *Yz*, a Greek termination, has *ycis*, *ycis*, or *ygis*, *ygis*. *Onyz* and *sar dōnyz*, in which *z* is equivalent to *chs* (§ 3, 4) have *ychis*; as, *ōnyz*, *onychis*.

### DATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 79. The dative singular ends in *i*; as, *sermo*, dat. *sermōni*.

Anciently it also ended in *e*; as, *morte datus*. Varro in Gellius. So *are* in *ari*, Cic. and Liv.; and *jure* for *jūri*. Liv.

### ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

(a.) The accusative singular of all neuter nouns is like the nominative.

(b.) The accusative singular of masculines and feminines, ends in *em*. Yet some Latin nouns in *is*, which do not increase in the genitive, have *in*, and some Greek nouns have *im*, *in*, or *a*.

1. Many proper names in *is*, denoting places, rivers, or gods, have the accusative singular in *in*; as, *Hispālis*, *Tibēris*, *Anābis*; so also *Albis*, *Athēsis*, *Bætis*, *Arar* or *Arāris*, *Biblis*, *Apis*, *Osiris*, *Syrts*, etc. These sometimes, also, make the accusative in *in*; as, *Albin*. *Scaldis* has *in* and *em*, and *Liris*, *im*, *in*, and *em*. *Liger* has *Ligērim*.

2. The following also have the accusative in *im* :—

Amussis, a mason's rule.	Mephitis, foul air.	Sināpis, mustard.
Būris, a plough-tail.	Pelvis, a basin.	Sitis, thirst.
Cannābis, hemp.	Rāvis, hoarseness.	Tussis, a cough.
Cucūmis, (gen. -is), a cucumber.	Secūris, an axe.	Vis, strength.

3. These have *im*, and sometimes *em* :—

Febris, a fever. Puppis, the stern. Restis, a rope. Turris, a tower.

But these have *em*, and rarely *im* :—

Bipennis, a battle-axe.	Nāvis, a ship.	Sementis, a sowing.
Clāvis, a key.	Præsēpis, a stall.	Strigilis, a flesh-brush.
Messis, a harvest.		

4. *Lens* and *pars* have rarely *lentim* and *partim*; and *crātim* from *crates*, as found in Plautus.

5. Early writers formed the accusative of some other nouns in *im*.

### Accusative of Greek Nouns.

§ 80. The accusative singular of masculine and feminine Greek nouns sometimes retains the Greek terminations *in* and *a*, but often ends, as in Latin, in *em* or *im*.

1. Masculine and feminine Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os*, *impure*, that is, with a consonant going before, have their accusative in *em* or *a*; as, *lampas*, *lampadis* (Greek -δος) *lampāda*; *chlāmya*, *chlāmýdis*, *chlāmýdem*, or *ýta*; *Helicon*, *Helicōnis*, *Helicōna*.

REMARK. In like manner these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive—*Trōs*, *Trōis*, *Trōem*, and *Trōa*, a Trojan; *hērōs*, a hero; and *Mīnos*, a king of Crete.—*Aēr*, the air; *æther*, the sky; *delphīn*, a dolphin; and *peān*, a hymn, have usually *a*; as, *aëra*, *athēra*, *delphīna*, *peāna*. *Pan*, a god, has only *a*.

Exc. 1. Masculines in *is*, whose genitive increases in *is* or *os* impure, have their accusative in *im* or *m*; sometimes in *idem*; *Pāris*, *Paridis*; *Parim*, or *Paridem*.

Exc. 2. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, though they usually follow the rule, have sometimes *im* or *m*; as, *Elis*, *Elidis*; *Elin* or *Elidem*. So *tigris*, gen. *is* or *idis*; acc. *tigrim* or *tigrin*.

II. Masculine and feminine Greek nouns in *is* not increasing, and in *ys*, gen. *ys*, form their accusative by changing the *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *Charybdis*, (gen. Lat. *-is*, Gr. *-ος*), acc. *Charybdim* or *-in*; *Hálys*, *-ys* or *-yos*, *Hálym* or *-ym*. So *rhus*, gen. *rhois*, has *rhum* or *rhum*.

III. Proper names ending in the diphthong *eus*, gen. *ēi* and *ēos*, have the accusative in *ea*; as, *Thēseus*, *Thesea*; *Týdeus*, *Tydea*. See § 54, 5.

IV. Some Greek proper names in *es*, whose genitive is in *is*, have in Latin, along with the accusative in *em*, the termination *en*, as if of the first declension; as, *Achilles*, *Achillen*; *Xerxes*, *Xerxen*; *Sophócles*, *Sophóclen*. Cf. § 45, 1. Some also, which have either *ētis* or *is* in the genitive, have, besides *etem*, *ēta*, or *em*, the termination *en*; as, *Chrēmes*, *Tháles*.

## VOCATIVE SINGULAR.

### § 81. The vocative is like the nominative.

REMARK. Many Greek nouns, however, particularly proper names, drop *s* of the nominative to form the vocative; as, *Daphnis*, *Daphni*; *Téthys*, *Tetky*; *Melampus*, *Melampu*; *Orpheus*, *Orpheu*. Proper names in *es* (gen. *is*) sometimes have a vocative in *e*, after the first declension; as, *Socrátes*, *Socráte*. § 45, 1.

## ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

### § 82. The ablative singular commonly ends in *e*.

Exc. 1. (a.) Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have the ablative in *i*; as, *sedile*, *sedili*; *animal*, *animáli*; *calcar*, *calcári*.

(b.) But names of towns in *e*, and the following neuters in *ar*, have *e* in the ablative; viz. *baccar*, an herb; *far*, corn; *hēpar*, the liver; *jūbar*, a sunbeam; *nectar*, nectar; *par*, a pair. So, *sal*, salt, *Rēte*, a net has either *e* or *i*; *māre*, the sea, has sometimes in poetry *mare* in the ablative.

Exc. 2. (a.) Nouns which have *im* alone, or both *im* and *in* in the accusative, and names of months in *er* or *is*, have *i* in the ablative; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi*; *Tibēris*, *-im*, *i*; *December*, *Decembri*; *Aprilis*, *Aprili*.

(b.) But *Betis*, *cannābis*, and *sināpis*, have *e* or *i*. *Tigris*, the tiger, has *tigrīde*; as a river it has both *Tigrīde* and *Tigri*.

Exc. 3. (a.) Nouns which have *em* or *im* in the accusative, have their ablative in *e* or *i*; as, *turris*, *turre* or *turri*.

(b.) So *Elis*, acc. *Elidem* and *Elin*, has *Elīde* or *Elī*. But *restis*, and most Greek nouns with *idis* in the genitive, have *e* only; as, *Pāris*, *-idis*, *-īde*.

Exc. 4. (a.) Adjectives in *is*, used as nouns, have commonly *i* in the ablative, but sometimes *e*; as, *familiāris*, a friend; *natālis*, a birthday; *sodālis*, a companion; *trirēmis*, a trireme.—Participles in *as*, used as nouns, have commonly *e* in the ablative; but *contīnens* has *i*.

(b.) When adjectives in *is* become proper names, they always have *e*; as *Juvenālis*, *Juvenāle*. *Affinis* and *cētilis* have generally *e*; as have always *juvēnis*, a youth; *rādīs*, a rod; and *volūcris*, a bird.

Exc. 5. (a.) The following, though they have only *em* in the accusative have *e* or *i* in the ablative, but most of them have oftener *e* than *i*:—

Amnis,	Collis,	Ignis,	Pars,	Supellex,
Anguis,	Convallis,	Imber,	Postis,	Tridens,
Avis,	Corbis,	Mugilis,	Pūgil,	Unguis,
Bilis,	Finis,	Orbis,	Sordes,	Vectis,
Civis,	Fustis,	Ovis,	Sora,	Vesper.
Classis,				

(b.) *Occiput* has only *i*, and *rus* has either *e* or *i*; but *rurs* commonly signifies from the country, and *ruri*, in the country. *Mel* has rarely *i*.

(c.) So also names of towns, when denoting the place where any thing is said to be, or to be done, have the ablative in *i*; as, *Carthaginī*, at Carthage; so, *Anaziri* and *Lacedemōnis*, and, in the most ancient writers, many other nouns occur with this termination in the ablative. *Cunālis* has *i*, and very rarely *e*.

Exc. 6. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* or *yn* in the accusative, have their ablative in *ye* or *y*; as, *Atys*, *Atye*, or *Aty*.

### NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

§ 83. I. The nominative plural of masculines and feminines ends in *es*; as, *sermōnes*, *rūpes*:—but neuters have *a*, and those whose ablative singular ends in *i* only, or in *e* and *i*, have *ia*; as, *cāpul*, *capitā*; *sedile*, *sedilia*; *rete*, *retia*. *Aplustre* has both *a* and *ia*.

1. Some Greek neuters in *os* have *ē* in the nominative plural; as, *mēlos*; nom. plural, *mele*; (in Greek μέλας, by contraction μέλα).

### GENITIVE PLURAL.

II. The genitive plural commonly ends in *um*; sometimes in *ium*.

1. Nouns which, in the ablative singular, have *i* only, or both *e* and *i*, make the genitive plural in *iur*; as, *sedile*, *sedili*, *sedilium*; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium*.

2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have *ium*; as, *nūbes*, *nubium*; *hostis*, *hostium*.

Exc. *Cānis*, *juvēnis*, *fōris*, *mugilis*, *prōles*, *strues*, and *vātes*, have *um*; so oftener have *āpis*, *strigilis*, and *volūcris*; less frequently *mensis*, *sēdes*, and, in the poets *am̄y*, *ambages*, *cōdes*, *clādes*, *vepres*, and *cēlestis*.

3. Monosyllables ending in two consonants have *ium* in the genitive plural; as, *urbs*, *urbium*; *gens*, *gentium*; *arx*, *arcium*.

Exc. *Lynx*, *sphinx*, and *ops* (nom. obsolete) have *um*.

Most monosyllables in *s* and *x* pure have *um*, but the following have *ium*; *dos*, *mas*, *glis*, *lis*, *os* (*ossis*), *fauz*, (nom. obs.) *niz*, *noz*, *strix*, *vis*, generally *fraus* and *mus*; so also *fur* and *ren*, and sometimes *lar*.

4. Nouns of two or more syllables, in *ns* or *rs*, and names of nations in *as*, have commonly *ium*, but sometimes *um*; as, *cliens*, *clientum* or *clientum*, *Arpinas*, *Arpinatium*.

(1.) Other nouns in *us* generally have *um*, but sometimes *ium*; as, *celus*, *celum* or *celitum*. *Penātes* and *optimātes* have usually *ium*.

5. The following have *ium*:—*cāro*, *compes*, *linter*, *imber*, *ūter*, *venter*, *Samsnis*, *Quiris*, and usually *Insūber*. *Formuz* and *pālus* have sometimes *ium*.

6. Greek nouns have generally *um*; as, *gtgas*, *gigantum*; *Arabs*, *Arābum*; *Thraz*, *Thracum*:—but a few, used as titles of books, have sometimes *on*; as, *Epigramma*, *epigrammāton*; *Metamorphosis*, *-eōn*. The patricial *Maledon* also is found in Curtius, 4, 13.

REMARK 1. *Bos* has *boves* in the genitive plural.

REM. 2. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete; as, *mānes*, *manium*; *cēlites*, *celitum*; *iliā*, *ilium*; as if from *mānis*, *cēles*, and *ile*. So also names of feasts in *alia*; as, *Saturnalia* *Saturnaliūm*; but these have sometimes *orum* after the second declension. *Ales* has sometimes, by epenthesis, *alium*. See § 322, 3.

## DATIVE AND ABLATIVE PLURAL.

§ 84. The dative and ablative plural end in *ibus*.

Exc. 1. *Bos* has *bōbus* and *būbus*, by contraction, for *bovibus*; *sus* has *sūbus* by syncope, for *sūibus*. § 322, 5, and 4.

Exc. 2. Greek nouns in *ma* have the dative and ablative plural more frequently in *is* than in *ibus*; as, *poēma*, *poēmātis*, or *poēmātibus*.

Exc. 3. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns, that increase in the genitive, in *si*, and, before a vowel, in *sin*; as, *herōis*, *herōidis*; *herōsi*, or *herōisin*. Ovid. So in Quintilian, *Metamorphosēsi*.

## ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

§ 85. The accusative plural ends, like the nominative, in *ēs*, *ā*, *iā*.

Exc. 1. The accusative plural of masculines and feminines, whose genitive plural ends in *ium*, anciently ended in *is* or *ēs*, instead of *ēs*; as, *partes*, gen. *partium*, acc. *partēs* or *partēs*.

Exc. 2. Greek masculines and feminines, whose genitive increases in *is* or *is* impure, have their accusative in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampādīs*, *lampādas*. So also *hēros*, *herōis*, *herōas*, and some barbarian names of nations have a similar form; as, *Brigēmas*, *Allobrogas*.

*Jupīter*, and *vis*, strength, are thus declined:—

Singular.	Singular.	Plural.
N. Ju'-pī-ter,	N. vis,	vī'-res,
G. Jō'-vis,	G. vis,	vir'-i-um,
D. Jō'-vi,	D. —	vir'-i-bus,
Ac. Jō'-vem,	Ac. vim,	vī'-res,
V. Ju'-pī-ter,	V. vis,	vī'-res,
Ab. Jō'-ve.	Ab. v.	vir'-i-bus.

§ 86. The following table exhibits the principal forms of Greek nouns of the third declension :—

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abt.</i>
<i>S.</i>	Lampas,	{ -ādis, -ādos, }	-ādi,	{ -ādem, -āda, }	-as,	-āde.
<i>Pl.</i>	-ādes,	-ādum,	-adibus,	{ -ādes, -adas, }	-ādes,	-adibua.
<i>S.</i>	Hēros,	-ōis,	-ōi,	{ -ōem, -ōa, }	-os,	-ōe.
<i>Pl.</i>	-ōes,	-ōum,	-oibus,	{ -ōes, -ōas, }	-ōes,	-oibua.
	Chēlys,	{ -ŷis, ŷos, }	-ŷi,	{ -ym, -yn, }	-y,	-ŷe or y
	Poēsis,	{ -is, -ios, -ēos, }	-i,	{ -im, -in, }	-i,	-i.
	Achilles,	{ -is, -ei, -i, -ēos, }	-i,	{ -em, -ēa, ēn, }	-es, -ē,	-e or -i.
	Orpheus,	-ēos,	-ēi,	-ēa,	-eu,	See § 54.
	Aēr,	-ēris,	-ēri,	-ēra,	-er,	-ēre.
	Didō,	-ūs,	-ō,	-ō,	-ō,	-ō.

## FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 87. Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*. Those in *us* are masculine; those in *u* are neuter, and, except in the genitive, are indeclinable in the singular.

Nouns of this declension are thus declined :—

Fructus, <i>fruit</i> .		Cornu, <i>a horn</i> .	
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i> fruc'-tūs,	fruc'-tūs,	<i>N.</i> cor'-nū,	cor'-nu-ā,
<i>G.</i> fruc'-tūs,	fruc'-tu-ūm,	<i>G.</i> cor'-nūs,	cor'-nu-ūm,
<i>D.</i> fruc'-tu-i,	fruc'-ti-būs,	<i>D.</i> cor'-nū,	cor'-ni-būs,
<i>Ac.</i> fruc'-tūm,	fruc'-tūs,	<i>Ac.</i> cor'-nū,	cor'-nu-ā,
<i>V.</i> fruc'-tūs,	fruc'-tūs,	<i>V.</i> cor'-nū,	cor'-nu-ā,
<i>Abt.</i> fruc'-tū.	fruc'-ti-būs.	<i>Ab.</i> cor'-nū.	cor'-ni-būs.

In like manner decline

Can'-tūs, <i>a song.</i>	Fluc'-tus, <i>a wave.</i>	Se-rā'-tus, <i>the senate.</i>
Cur'-rus, <i>a chariot.</i>	Luc'-tus, <i>grief.</i>	Gē'-lu, <i>ice.</i> (in sing.)
Ex-er'-ci-tus, <i>an army.</i>	Mō'-tus, <i>motion.</i>	Vē'-ru, <i>a spit.</i>

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

§ 88. 1. The following are feminine :—

Acus, <i>a needle.</i>	Ficus, <i>a fig.</i>	Porticus, <i>a gallery.</i>
Dōnu, <i>a house.</i>	Mānus, <i>a hand.</i>	Tribus, <i>a tribe.</i>

*Obolus*, a distaff, and the plurals *Quinquātrus*, a feast of Minerva, and *litus*, the *Idea*, are also feminine. So *noctu*, by night, found only in the ablative singular.

*Pēnus*, a store of provisions, when of the fourth declension, is masculine or feminine. *Sēcus*, sex, is neuter; see § 94. *Spēcus*, a den, is masculine and rarely feminine or neuter.

2. Some personal appellatives, and names of trees, are feminine by signification; as,

*Anus*, *nūrus*, *socrus*;—*cornus*, *laurus*, and *quercus*. *Myrtus* also is feminine and rarely masculine. See § 29, 1 and 2.

### EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

§ 89. *Dōmus*, a house, is partly of the fourth declension, and partly of the second. It is thus declined:—

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.</i> dō'-mūs,	dō'-mūs,
<i>G.</i> dō'-mūs, or dō'-mī,	dom'-u-ūm, or do-mō'-rūm,
<i>D.</i> dom'-u-i, or dō'-mō.	dom'-i-būs,
<i>Ac.</i> dō'-mūm,	dō'-mūs, or dō'-mōs,
<i>V.</i> dō'-mūs,	dō'-mūs,
<i>Ab.</i> dō'-mō.	dom'-i-būs.

(a.) *Domūs*, in the genitive, signifies, of a house; *domi* commonly signifies at home. The ablative *domu* is found in Plautus, and in ancient inscriptions. In the genitive and accusative plural the forms of the second declension are more used than those of the fourth.

(b.) *Cornus*, a cornel-tree; *figus*, a fig, or a fig-tree; *laurus*, a laurel; and *myrtus*, a myrtle, are sometimes of the second declension. *Pēnus* is of the second, third or fourth declension.

(c.) Some nouns in *u* have also forms in *us* and *um*; as, *cornu*, *cornus*, or *cornum*. Adjectives, compounds of *manus*, are of the first and second declensions.

REMARK 1. Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were formed by contraction, thus:—

Singular.	Plural.
<i>N.</i> fructūs,	fructuēs, -ūs,
<i>G.</i> fructuls, -ūs,	fructuūm, -ūm,
<i>D.</i> fructui, -ū,	fructulbūs, -ūbūs, or -ibūs,
<i>Ac.</i> fructuē, -ūm,	fructuēs, -ūs,
<i>V.</i> fructūs,	fractuēs, -ūs,
<i>Ab.</i> fructuē, -ū.	fructulbūs, -ūbūs, or -ibūs

2. The genitive singular in *is* is sometimes found in ancient authors; as, *amūs*, Ter. A genitive in *i*, after the second declension, also occurs; as, *senātus*, *senātī*; *tumulus*, *tumultī*. Sall.

3. The contracted form of the dative in *u* is not often used; yet it sometimes occurs, especially in Cæsar, and in the poets.

4. The contracted form of the genitive plural in *um* rarely occurs.

5. The following nouns have *ūbus* in the dative and ablative plural:—

<i>Acus</i> , a needle.	<i>Artus</i> , a joint.	<i>Partus</i> , a birth.	<i>Spēcus</i> , a den.
<i>Arcus</i> , a bow.	<i>Lācus</i> , a lake.	<i>Pēcu</i> , a flock.	<i>Tribus</i> , a tribe.

*Gēnu*, a knee; *portus*, a harbor; *tonitrus*, thunder; and *vērū* a spit, have *ibūs*, or *ūbus*.



## FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 90. Nouns of the fifth declension end in *ēs*, and are of the feminine gender.

They are thus declined:—

Res, a thing.		Dies, a day.	
Singular.	Plural.	Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>rēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	N. <i>dī-ēs</i> ,	<i>dī-ēs</i> .
G. <i>rē'-ī</i> ,	<i>rē'-rūm</i> ,	G. <i>dī-ē'-ī</i> ,	<i>dī-ē'-rūm</i> ,
D. <i>rē'-ī</i> ,	<i>rē'-būs</i> ,	D. <i>dī-ē'-ī</i> ,	<i>dī-ē'-būs</i> ,
Ac. <i>rēm</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	Ac. <i>dī-ēm</i> ,	<i>dī-ēs</i> ,
V. <i>rēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	V. <i>dī-ēs</i> ,	<i>dī-ēs</i> ,
Ab. <i>rē</i> .	<i>rē'-būs</i> .	Ab. <i>dī-ē</i> .	<i>dī-ē'-būs</i> .

REMARK. Nouns of this declension, like those of the fourth, seem to have belonged originally to the third declension.

## EXCEPTIONS IN GENDER.

1. *Dies*, a day, is masculine or feminine in the singular, and always masculine in the plural; *meridies*, mid-day, is masculine only.

NOTE. *Dies* is seldom feminine, in good prose writers, except when it denotes duration of time, or a day fixed and determined.

## EXCEPTIONS IN DECLENSION.

2. The genitive and dative singular sometimes end in *ē* or in *ī*, instead of *ei*; as, gen. *diē* for *diēi*, Virg.; *fide* for *fidei*, Hor.; *acie* for *aciēi*, Cæs.—gen. *plēbi* for *plēbi*, Liv.—dat. *fide* for *fidei*, Hor., *perniciē*, Liv., and *perniciū*, Nep., for *perniciēi*. The genitive *rabiēs* contracted for *rabiēs*, after the third declension is found in Lucretius.

REMARK 1. There are only about eighty nouns of this declension, and of these only two, *res* and *dies*, are complete in the plural. *Acies*, *effigies*, *cluvies*, *facies*, *glacies*, *progenies*, *series*, *species*, *spes*, want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and the rest want the plural altogether.

REM. 2. All nouns of this declension end in *ies*, except four—*fides*, faith; *res*, a thing; *spes*, hope; and *plēbes*, the common people;—and all nouns in *ies* are of this declension, except *abies*, *aries*, *paries*, *quies*, and *requies*, which are of the third declension.

## DECLENSION OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

§ 91. When a compound noun consists of two nominatives, both parts are declined; but when one part is a nominative, and the other an oblique case, the nominative only is declined. Of the former kind are *respublica*, a commonwealth, and *jusjurandum*, an oath; of the latter, *materfamilias*, a mistress of a family Cf. § 43, 2.

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>V. res-pūb'-li-ca</i> ,	N. <i>V. res-pūb'-li-cæ</i> ,
G. <i>D. re-i-pūb'-li-cæ</i> ,	G. <i>re-rum-pūb-li-cā-rum</i> ,
Ac. <i>rem-pūb'-li-cam</i> ,	D. <i>Ab. re-bus-pūb'-li-cis</i> ,
Ab. <i>re-pūb'-li-cā</i> .	Ac. <i>res-pūb'-li-cas</i> ,

<i>Singular</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>
<i>N.</i> jus-ju-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da,	<i>N.</i> ma-ter-fa-mil'-i-as,
<i>G.</i> ju-ri-ju-rai'-di,		<i>G.</i> ma-tris-fa-mil'-i-as,
<i>D.</i> ju-ri-ju-ran'-do,		<i>D.</i> ma-tri-fa-mil'-i-as,
<i>Ac.</i> jus-ju-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da,	<i>Ac.</i> ma-trem-fa-mil'-i-as,
<i>V.</i> jus-ju-ran'-dum,	ju-ra-ju-ran'-da,	<i>V.</i> ma-ter-fa-mil'-i-as,
<i>Ab.</i> ju-re-ju-ran'-do.		<i>Ab.</i> ma-tre-fa-mil'-i-as, etc.

**NOTE.** The preceding compounds are divided and pronounced like the simple words of which they are compounded.

## IRREGULAR NOUNS.

§ 92. Irregular nouns are divided into three classes—*Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

### I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

A noun is variable, which, in some of its parts, changes either its gender or declension or both.

Nouns which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*; those which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*.

#### *Heterogeneous Nouns.*

1. Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as, *Avernus*, *Dindymus*, *Ismdrus*, *Massicus*, *Mænâlus*, *Pangæus*, *Tartârus*, *Taygêtus*; plur. *Averna*, etc.
2. Masculine in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural; as, *jocus*, a jest; plur. *joci*, or *joca*;—*locus*, a place; plur. *loci*, passages in books, topics, places; *loca*, places;—*sibilus*, a hissing; plur. *sibila*, rarely *sibili*;—*intâbus*, endive; plur. *intâbi* or *intâba*.
3. Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural; as, *carbâsus*, a species of flax; plur. *carbâsa*, very rarely *carbâsi*, sails, etc., made of it;—*Hierosolyma*, -æ, Jerusalem; plur. *Hierosolyma*, -drum.
4. Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural; as, *cælum*, heaven; plur. *cæli*;—*Elysium*; plur. *Elysii*;—*Argos*; plur. *Argi*. So *sister*, neut., plur. *sistres*, masc.
5. Neuter in the singular, and masculine or neuter in the plural as, *frënum*, a bridle; plur. *frëni* or *frëna*;—*rastrum*, a rake; plur. *rastri*, or more rarely, *rastra*;—*pugillar*, a writing tablet; plur. *pugillâres* or *pugillaria*.
6. Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural; as, *epûlum*, a feast; plur. *epûlæ*;—*balneum*, a bath; plur. *balneæ* or *balneæ*;—*nundinum*, a market-day; plur. *nundinæ*, a fair.
7. Feminine or neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural as, *delicia* or *delicium*, delight; plur. *delicia*.

*Heteroclites.*

§ 93. 1. Second or third declension in the singular, and third in the plural; *as*,

*nom.* and *acc.* *jugērum*, an acre; *gen.* *jugēri* or *jugēris*; *abl.* *jugēro* and *jugēre*; *plur., nom.*, and *acc.* *jugēra*; *gen.* *jugērum*; *abl.* *jugēris* and *jugēribus*.

2. Third declension in the singular, and second in the plural; *as*,

*vās*, a vessel; *plur. vāsa, ōrum*. *Ancile*, a shield, has sometimes *anciliŕum*, in the genitive plural.

NOTE. Variable nouns seem anciently to have been redundant, and to have retained a part of each of their original forms. Thus, *vāsa, ōrum*, properly comes from *vāsum, -i*, but the latter, together with the plural of *vas*, *vāsīs*, became obsolete.

## II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

§ 94. Nouns are defective either in case or in number.

1. Nouns defective in case may want either one or more cases. Some are altogether indeclinable, and are called *aptotes*.

Such are *pondo*, a pound; most nouns in *i*; *as, gummi*, gum; foreign words *as, Aaron, Jacob: sēnis*, a half; *gil*, a kind of plant; the singular of *mille*, a thousand; words put for nouns; *as, velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination; and names of the letters of the alphabet.

A noun which is found in one case only, is called a *Monoptote*, if found in two cases, a *Diptote*; if in three, a *Triptote*; if in four, a *Tetraptote*; and if in five, a *Pentaptote*.

The following list contains most nouns defective in case. Those which occur but once in Latin authors are distinguished by an asterisk:—

\**Abactus, acc. pl.*; a driving away.

*Accitu, abl.*; a calling for.

*Admissu, abl.*; admission.

*Admonitu, abl.*; admonition.

*Æs*, not used in *gen. pl.*

*Affātu, abl.*; an addressing;—*pl. affātus, -ibus*.

*Algus, nom.*; *algum, acc.*; *algu, abl.*; cold.

*Ambāge, abl.*; a going around;—*pl. entire*.

\**Anissum, acc.*; a loss.

*Aplustre, nom.* and *acc.*; the flag of a ship;—*pl. aplustria, or aplustra*.

*Arbitritus, nom.*;—*um, acc.*;—*u, abl.*; judgment.

*Arcessitu, abl.*; a sending for.

*Astu, num., acc.*; a city.

*Astus, nom.*; *astu, abl.*; craft;—*astus, acc. pl.*

*Cacoēthes, nom., acc.*; an evil custom;—*cacoēte, num. pl.*;—*e, and -es, acc. pl.*

*Cantities, num. -em, acc.*;—*e, abl.*

*Cētos, acc.*; a whale;—*cēte, nom.* and *acc. pl.*; *cetis, dat.*

*Chāos, num. acc.*; *chao, abl.*; chaos.

*Cassem, acc.*; *casse, abl.*; a net;—*pl. entire*.

*Circumspectus, nom.*;—*um; -u, a looking around*.

*Coactu, abl.*; constraint.

*Cœllite, abl.*; *pl. entire*; inhabitants of heaven.

\**Commutātum, acc.*; an alteration.

*Compēdis, gen.*; *compēde, abl.*; a fetter;—*pl. compēdes, -ium, -ibus*.

*Concessu, abl.*; permission.

*Condiscipulātu, abl.*, companionship at school.

*Crātim, or -em, acc.*;—*e, abl.*; a hurdle;—*pl. crātes, -ium, -ibus*.

*Cupressu, abl.*; a cypress.

*Daps, num.*, scarcely used; *dāpis, gen.* etc. *pl. dapes, -ibus*; a feast.

\**Dātu, abl.*; a giving.

*Derisus, -ui, dat.*;—*um, acc.*;—*u, abl.*; ridicule.

- Despicatui, *dat.*; *contempt.*  
 Dica, *nom.*; dicam, *acc.*; a *legal process*;—dicas, *acc. pl.*  
 Dicis, *gen.*; as, dicis gratiā, *for form's sake.*  
 Ditionis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; *power.*  
 Diu, *abl.*; *in the day time.*  
 Divisui, *dat.*; a *dividing.*  
 Elur, *ivory*;—not used in the plural.  
 \*Efflagitātui, *abl.*; *importunity.*  
 \*Ejectus, *nom.*; a *throwing out.*  
 Epos, *nom.* and *acc.*; *an epic poem.*  
 Ergo, *abl.* (or *adv.*); *for the sake.*  
 Lāsēdas, *acc. pl.*; *war chariots.*  
 Evectus, *nom.*; a *carrying out.*  
 Fœx, *arēs*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Fāmē, *abl.*; *hunger.*  
 Far, *corn*, not used in the *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*  
 Fas, *nom.*; *acc.*; *right.*  
 Fauce, *abl.*; *the throat*;—*pl. entire.*  
 Fœx, a *torch*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Fel, *gall*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Feminis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -e, *abl.*; *the thigh*;—*pl. femina*, -ibus.  
 Flictu, *abl.*; a *striking.*  
 Fōris, *nom.* and *gen.*; -em, *acc.*; -e, *abl.*; a *door*;—*pl. entire.*  
 Fors, *nom.*; -tis, *gen.*; -tem, *acc.*; -te, *abl.*; *chance.*  
 \*Frustratui, *abl.*; a *deceiving.*  
 Frux, *fruit*, *nom.* scarcely used;—frūgis, *gen.*, etc.  
 Fulgetras, *acc. pl.*; *lightning.*  
 Gausāpe, *nom.*, *acc.*, *abl.*; a *rough garment*;—gūsāpa, *acc. pl.*  
 Glos, *nom.*; a *husband's sister.*  
 Grātes, *acc. pl.*;—gratibus, *abl.*; *thanks.*  
 Hebdomādum, *acc.*; a *week.*  
 Hiems, *winter*, not used in *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*  
 Hippomānes, *nom.* and *acc.*  
 \*Hir, *nom.*; *the palm of the hand.*  
 Hortātu, *abl.*; *an exhorting*;—*pl. hortatibus.*  
 Impētis, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; a *shock*;—*pl. impetibus.*  
 Incitas, or -a, *acc. pl.*; as, ad incitas redactus, *reduced to a strait.*  
 \*Inconsultui, *abl.*; *without advice.*  
 \*Indultui, *abl.*; *indulgence.*  
 Inferiæ, *nom. pl.*; -as, *acc.*; -is, *abl.*; *sacrifices to the dead.*  
 Infittias, *acc. pl.*; a *denial*; as, ire infittias, *to deny.*  
 Ingratui, *abl. pl.*, (used *adverbially*); *against one's will.*  
 Injassu, *abl.*; *without command.*  
 Inquies, *nom.*; *restlessness.*  
 Instar, *nom.*, *acc.*; a *likeness.*  
 Interdiu, *abl.* (or *adv.*); -as, *acc.*; *sup.*  
 \*Invitātu, *abl.*; *an invitation.*  
 Irrisui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *de rision.*  
 Jōvis, *nom.*, rarely used;—*pl. Joves.*  
 Jugēris, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; *an acre*;—*pl. jugēra*, -um, -ibus.  
 Jussu, *abl.*; *command.*  
 Lābes, a *spot*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Lūcu, *abl.*; *day-light.*  
 \*Ludificatui, *dat.*; a *mockery.*  
 Lux, *light*, wants the *gen. pl.*  
 Mandātu, *abl.*; a *command.*  
 Māne, *nom.*, *acc.*; *mane*, or rarely -i *abl.*; *the morning.*  
 Mel, *honey*, not used in *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*  
 Mēlos, *nom.*, *acc.*; *melo*, *dat.*; *melody*, —mēle, *nom.*, *acc. pl.*  
 Mētus, *fear*, not used in *gen.*, *dat.*, and *abl. pl.*  
 Missu, *abl.*; a *sending*;—*pl. missus*, -ibus.  
 Monitu, *abl.*; *admonition*;—*pl. monitus.*  
 Nātu, *abl.*; *by birth.*  
 Nauci, *gen.*, with *non*; as, homo non nauci, *a man of no account.*  
 Nēfas, *nom.*, *acc.*;  *wickedness.*  
 Nēmo, *nobody*, wants the *voc.* and *the pl.*  
 Nepenthes, *nom.*, *acc.*; *an herb.*  
 Nex, *death*, wants the *voc.*;—*nēces*, *nom.*, *acc. pl.*  
 Nihil, or nihilum, *nom.* and *acc.*; -i, *gen.*; -o, *abl.*; *nothing.*  
 Noctu, *abl.*; *by night.*  
 Nuptui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *marriage.*  
 Obex, *nom.*; -icem, *acc.*; -ice, or -jice, *abl.*; a *bolt*;—*pl. obīces*, -jicibus.  
 Objectum, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; *an interposition*;—*pl. objectum.*  
 Obtentui, *dat.*; -um, *acc.*; -u, *abl.*; a *pretext.*  
 Opis, *gen.*; ōpem, *acc.*; ōpe, *abl.* *help*;—*pl. entire.*  
 Oppositu, *abl.*; *an opposing*;—*pl. oppositus*, *acc.*  
 Opus, *nom.*, *acc.*; *need.*  
 Os, *the mouth*, wants the *gen. pl.*  
 Panāces, *nom.*; -is, *gen.*; -e, *abl.*; *an herb.*  
 Pax, *peace*, wants *gen. pl.*  
 Peccātu, *abl.*; a *fault.*  
 Pecūdis, *gen.*; -i, *dat.*; -em, *acc.*; -e *abl.*;—*pl. entire.*  
 Pelāge, *acc. pl.* of pelāgus; *the sea.*  
 Permissu, *abl.*; -um, *acc.*; *permission.*  
 Piscātus, *nom.*; -i, *gen.*; -um, *acc.* -u, *abl.*; a *fishing.*

**Pix**, *pitch*; *pices*, acc. pl.  
**Pondo**, abl.; *in weight*. Cf. § 94, 1.  
**Præci**, dat.; -em, acc.; -e, abl.; *prayer*.  
 —pl. entire  
**Præcer**; nom.; -em, acc.; *a peer*; —pl. entire.  
**Promptu**, abl., *readiness*.  
**Pus** wants gen. dat. and abl. pl.  
**Relatum**, acc.; —u, abl.; *a recital*.  
**Repetundarum**, gen. pl.; -is, abl.; *money taken by extortion*.  
**Rogatu**, abl.; *a request*.  
**Ros**, dew, wants gen. pl.  
**Rus**, the country, wants gen., dat., and abl. pl.  
**Satias**, nom.; -atem, acc.; ate, abl.; *satiety*.  
**Sæcus**, nom., acc.; *sex*.  
**Situs**, nom.; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; *situation*; —situs, nom. and acc. pl.  
**Situs**, nom.; -us, gen.; -um, acc.; -u, abl.; *rust*; —situs, acc. pl.  
**Sol**, the sun, wants gen. pl.  
**Sordis**, gen.; -em, acc.; -e and -i, abl.; *filth*; —pl. sordes, -ium, etc.  
**Spontis**, gen.; -e, abl.; *of one's own accord*.  
**Suboles**, offspring, wants gen. pl.

**Suppetiæ**, nom. pl.; -as, acc.; *supplies*.  
**Tâbum**, nom.; -i, gen.; -o, abl.; *corrupt matter*.  
**Tempe**, nom. acc. voc. pl.; *a vale in Thessaly*.  
**Tus** wants gen., dat., and abl. pi.  
**Vēnu**, and -o, dat.; um, acc.; -o, abl. sale.  
**Veprem**, acc.; -e, abl.; *a brier*; —pl. entire.  
**Verbëris**, gen.; -e, abl.; *a stripe*; —pl. verbëra, um, ibus.  
**Vesper**, nom.; -um, acc.; -e, -i, or -o abl.; *the evening*.  
**Vespëra**, nom.; -am, acc.; -â, abl.; *the evening*.  
**Vicis**, gen.; -i, dat.; -em, acc.; -e, abl.; *change*; —pl. entire, except gen.  
**Virus**, nom.; -i, gen.; -us, acc.; -o, abl.; *poison*.  
**Vis**, gen. and dat. rare; *strength*; pl. vires, -ium, etc. See § 85.  
**Viscus**, nom.; -ëris, gen.; -ëro, abl.; *an internal organ*. pl. viscëra, etc.  
**Vocatu**, abl.; *a calling*; —vocatus, acc. pl.

REMARK 1. To these may be added nouns of the fifth declension, which either want the plural, as most of them are abstract nouns, or have in that number only the nominative, accusative, and vocative. *Res* and *dies*, however, have the plural entire. Cf. § 90, R. 1.

REM. 2. For the use of the vocative, also, of many nouns, no classical authority can be found.

§ 95. 2. Nouns defective in number, want either the plural or the singular.

(a) Many nouns want the plural from the nature of the things which they express. Such are generally names of persons, most names of places (except those which have only the plural), the names of herbs, of the arts, most material and abstract nouns; but these may have a plural when used as common nouns, (§ 26, R. 3.), and many others.

REM. In Latin the plural of abstract nouns is often used to denote the existence of the quality, attribute, etc. in different objects, or the repetition of an action; and in poetry such plurals are used for the sake of emphasis or metre. See § 98.

The following list contains many of the nouns which want the plural, and also some, marked *p*, which are included in the above classes, but are sometimes used in the plural.

Aconitum, <i>wolfshane</i> , p.	Ævum, <i>age, lifetime</i> , p.	Balaustium, <i>the flower of the pomegranate</i> .
Adorea, <i>a military reward</i>	Album, <i>an album</i> .	Balsamum, <i>balsam</i> , p.
Ær, <i>the air</i> , p.	Allium, <i>garlic</i> , p.	Barathrum, <i>a gulf</i> .
Æs, <i>brass, money</i> , p.	Amicitia, <i>friendship</i> , p.	Callum, <i>hardened skin</i> , p.
Æther, <i>the sky</i> .	Argilla, <i>white clay</i> .	Cälör, <i>heat</i> , p.
	Avëne, <i>oats</i> , p.	

Carduus, *a thistle*, p.  
 Cāro, *flesh*, p.  
 Cōra, *wax*, p.  
 Cestus, *a girdle*.  
 Cicuta, *hemlock*, p.  
 Ccenum, *mud*.  
 Contagium, *contagion*, p.  
 Crōcum, *saffron*.  
 Crōcus, *saffron*, p.  
 Cruor, *blood*, p.  
 Cūtis, *the skin*, p.  
 Diluctum, *the dawn*.  
 Ebur, *ivory*.  
 Electrum, *amber*, p.  
 Far, *corn*, p.  
 Fel, *gall*, p.  
 Fervor, *heat*, p.  
 Fides, *faith*.  
 Flinus, *dung*.  
 Fuga, *flight*, p.  
 Fūmus, *smoke*, p.  
 Fāror, *madness*, p.  
 Gulla, *an oak-apple*, p.  
 Gelu, *frost*.  
 Glarea, *gravel*.  
 Gloria, *glory*, p.  
 Glastum, *wood*.  
 Glūten, *or*.  
 Glutinum, *glue*.  
 Gypsum, *white plaster*.  
 Hēpar, *the liver*.  
 Hesperus, *the evening star*.  
 Hīlum, *a little thing*.  
 Hordeum, *barley*, p.  
 Hūmus, *the ground*.  
 Indoles, *native quality*, p.  
 Ira, *anger*, p.  
 Jūbar, *radiance*.  
 Jus, *justice, law*, p.  
 Iustitium, *a law vacation*.

Lac, *milk*.  
 Lætitia, *joy*, p.  
 Languor, *faintness*, p.  
 Lardum, *bacon*, p.  
 Lātēx, *liquor*, p.  
 Lētum, *death*.  
 Lignum, *wood*, p.  
 Limus, *mud*.  
 Liquor, *liquor*, p.  
 Lues, *a plague*.  
 Lūtum, *clay*, p.  
 Lux, *light*, p.  
 Macellum, *the shambles*.  
 Māne, *the morning*.  
 Marmor, *marble*, p.  
 Mel, *honey*, p.  
 Meridies, *mid-day*.  
 Mors, *death*, p.  
 Munditia, *neatness*, p.  
 Mundus, *female ornaments*.  
 Muscus, *moss*.  
 Nectar, *nectar*.  
 Nēmo, *no man*.  
 Nequitia, *wickedness*, p.  
 Nihilum, nihil, *or nil, nothing*.  
 Nitrum, *natron*.  
 Oblivio, *forgetfulness*, p.  
 Omāsum, *bullock's tripe*.  
 Opium, *opium*.  
 Palea, *chaff*, p.  
 Pax, *peace*, p.  
 Pēnum, *and*.  
 Pēnus, *provisions*, p.  
 Piper, *pepper*.  
 Pix, *pitch*, p.  
 Pontus, *the sea*.  
 Prolubium, *desire*.  
 Pūbes, *the youth*.  
 Pulvis, *dust*, p.

Purpūra, *purple*, p.  
 Quies, *rest*, p.  
 Ros, *dew*, p.  
 Rūbor, *redness*, p.  
 Sabūlo and  
 Sabūlum, *gravel*.  
 Sal, *salt*.  
 Sālum, *the sea*.  
 Sālus, *safety*.  
 Sanguis, *blood*.  
 Scrupulum, *a scruple*, p.  
 Senium, *old age*.  
 Siler, *an osier*.  
 Sināpi, *mustard*.  
 Siser, *skirret*, p.  
 Stis, *thirst*.  
 Sol, *the sun*, p.  
 Sōpor, *sleep*, p.  
 Specimen, *an example*.  
 Spūma, *foam*, p.  
 Sulfur, *sulphur*, p.  
 Supellex, *furniture*.  
 Tābes, *a consumption*.  
 Tābum, *corrupt matter*.  
 Tellus, *the earth*.  
 Terror, *terror*, p.  
 Thymum, *thyme*, p.  
 Tribulus, *a thistle*, p.  
 Tristitia, *sadness*.  
 Ver, *spring*.  
 Vespēra, *the evening*.  
 Vēternus, *lethargy*.  
 Vigor, *strength*, p.  
 Vinum, *wine*, p.  
 Virus, *poison*.  
 Viscum, *and*.  
 Viscus, *bird-lime*.  
 Vitruin, *wood*.  
 Vulgus, *the common people*.  
 Zingiber, *ginger*.

§ 96. (b). The names of festivals and games, and several names of places and books, want the singular; as, *Bucchanalia*, a festival of Bacchus; *Olympia*, the Olympic games; *Bucolica*, a book of pastorals; and the following names of places:—

Acrocerania,	Baia,	Fundi,	Locri,	Sūsā,
Amyclæ,	Ceraunia,	Gabii,	Parisi,	Syracusæ,
Artaxātā,	Ecbatāna,	Gādes,	Philippi	Thermopylæ,
Atthēnæ,	Esquilæ,	Gemoniæ,	Puteoli,	Veii.

NOTE. Some of those in *i* properly signify the people.

The following list contains most other nouns which want the singular and also some, marked *s*, which are rarely used in that number:—

Acta, <i>records</i> .	Alpes, <i>the Alps</i> , <i>s</i> .	Apinæ, <i>trifles</i> .
Adversaria, <i>a memorandum-book</i> .	Annāles, <i>annals</i> , <i>s</i> .	Argutiæ, <i>jeiticismes</i> , <i>s</i> .
Estiva, <i>sc. castra summer quarters</i> .	Antæ, <i>door-posts</i> .	Arma, <i>arms</i> .
	Antes, <i>rows</i> .	Artus, <i>the joints</i> , <i>s</i> .
	Antix, <i>a foreloc</i> .	Bellaria, <i>sweetmeats</i> .

Bigæ, a two-horse chariot, s.	Induviæ, clothes.	Palearia, the dewlap, s.
Braccæ, breeches.	Ineptiæ, fooleries, s.	Pandectæ, the panaceæ.
Branchiæ, the gills of fishes.	Inferi, the dead.	Parietinæ, old walls.
Brevia, shallow places.	Inferiæ, sacrifices in honor of the dead.	Partes, a party, s.
Calendæ, the Calends.	Insecta, insects.	Pascua, pastures, s.
Cancelli, balustrades.	Insidiæ, an ambuscade, s.	Penates, household gods, s.
Cani, gray hairs.	Iusta, funeral rites.	Phalærx, trappings.
Casses, a hunter's net, s.	Lactes, small entrails, s.	Philtra, love potions.
Caulæ, sheep-folds.	Lamenta, lamentations.	Pleiades, the Pleiads or seven stars, s.
Celæres, the body-guard of the Roman kings.	Lapidinæ, a stone quarry.	Posteri, posterity.
Cibaria, victuals, s.	Latebræ, a hiding place, s.	Præbia, an amulet.
Clitellæ, a pack-saddle.	Laurices, young rabbits.	Præcordia, the diaphragm, the entrails.
Codicilli, a writing.	Lautia, presents to foreign ambassadors.	Primitiæ, first fruits.
Coelites, the gods, s.	Lemures, hobgoblins.	Procères, nobles, s.
Crepundia, a rattle.	Lendes, nits.	Pugillaria, or -ares, writing-tablets, s.
Cunabula, and	Liberi, children, s.	Quadrigæ, a team of four horses, s.
Cunæ, a cradle.	Lucères, a division of the Roman cavalry.	Quirites, Roman citizens, s.
Cyclades, the Cyclades, s.	Magalia, cottages.	Quisquiliæ, refuse.
Declinæ, tithes, s.	Majores, ancestors.	Reliquiæ, the remains, s.
Diræ, the Furies, s.	Mânes, the shades, s.	Salebræ, rugged roads, s.
Divitiæ, riches.	Manubiæ, spoils of war.	Salinæ, salt pits.
Druides, the Druids.	Mapalia, huts, s.	Scalæ, a ladder, s.
Dryades, the Dryads, s.	Minaciæ, and	Scatebræ, a spring, s.
Epulæ, a banquet, s.	Minæ, threats.	Scopæ, a broom.
Eumenides, the Furies, s.	Minores, posterity.	Scrûta, old stuff.
Excubitiæ, watches.	Mœnia, the walls of a city, s.	Sentes, thorns, s.
Exsequiæ, funeral rites.	Multitia, garments finely wrought.	Sponsalia, espousals.
Extæ, entrails.	Munia, official duties.	Stativa, sc. castra, a stationary camp.
Exuviæ, spoils.	Naiades, water-nymphs, s.	Superi, the gods above.
Facetiæ, pleasantry, s.	Nares, the nostrils, s.	Talaria, winged shoes.
Feriæ, holidays, s.	Natâles, parentage.	Tenebræ, darkness, s.
Fides, a stringed instrument, s.	Nâtes, the haunches, s.	Tesca, rough places.
Flabra, blasts.	Nômæ, corroding sores or ulcers, s.	Thermæ, warm baths.
Frâces, the lees of oil.	Nônæ, the nones of a month, § 326, 1.	Tormina, colic-pains.
Frâga, strawberries, s.	Nûgæ, jests, nonsense.	Transtra, seats for rowers, s.
Gemini, twins, s.	Nundinæ, the weekly market.	Tricæ, trifles, toys.
Gênæ, cheeks, s.	Nuptiæ, a marriage.	Utensilia, utensils.
Gerræ, trifles.	Oblivia, forgetfulness, s.	Valvæ, folding doors, s.
Grâtes, thanks.	Officiæ, cheats, s.	Vepres, brambles, s.
Habênæ, reins, s.	Optimâtes, the aristocratic party, s.	Vergiliæ, the seven stars.
Hiberna, sc. castra, winter quarters.		Vindiciæ, a legal claim, s.
Hyades, the Hyades, s.		Virgulta, bushes.
Idus, the ides of a month.		
Ilia, the flank.		
Incunabula, a cradle.		
Indutiæ, a tunic.		

§ 97. The following usually differ in meaning in the different numbers.

Ædes, -is, a temple.	Bönum, a good thing.	Castra, a camp.
Ædes, -ium, a house.	Böna, property.	Comitium, a part of the Roman forum.
Aqua, water.	Carcer, a prison.	Comitia, an assembly for election.
Aquæ, medicinal springs.	Carcères, the barriers of a race-course.	Copia, plenty.
Auxilium, aid.	Castrum, a castle.	
Auxilia, auxiliary troops.		

Copiae, *troops, forces.*  
 Cupedia, -æ, *daintiness.*  
 Cupedia, -arum, *and*  
 Cupedia, -orum, *dainties.*  
 Facultas, *ability.*  
 Facultates, *property.*  
 Fastus, -ūs, *pride.*  
 Fastus, -uum, *and*  
 Fasti, -orum, *a calendar.*  
 Fortuna, *Fortune.*  
 Fortunæ, *wealth.*  
 Furfur, *bran.*  
 Furfures, *dandruff.*  
 Gratia, *favor.*  
 Gratiae, *thanks.*

Impedimentum, *a hinder-*  
*ance.*  
 Impedimenta, *baggage.*  
 Littera, *a letter of the al-*  
*phabet.*  
 Litteræ, *an epistle.*  
 Lūdus, *pastime.*  
 Lūdi, *public games.*  
 Lustrum, *a morass.*  
 Lustra, *a haunt or den of*  
*wild beasts.*  
 Mos, *custom.*  
 Mōres, *manners.*  
 Nāris, *a nostril.*  
 Nāres, *the nose.*

Natālis, *a birthday.*  
 Natāles, *birth, lineage.*  
 Opēra, *work, labor.*  
 Opēre, *workmen.*  
 Opis, *gen. power.*  
 Opes, -um, *means, wealth.*  
 Plāga, *a region, tract.*  
 Plāgæ, *nets, toils.*  
 Principium, *a beginning.*  
 Principia, *the general*  
*quarters.*  
 Rostrum, *a beak, prow.*  
 Rostra, *the Rostra.*  
 Sal, *salt.*  
 Sāles, *witticisms.*

§ 98. The following plurals, with a few others, are sometimes used in poetry, especially in the nominative and accusative, instead of the singular, for the sake of emphasis or metre.

Æquora, *the sea.*  
 Alta, *the sea.*  
 Animi, *courage.*  
 Auræ, *the air.*  
 Carinæ, *a keel.*  
 Cervices, *the neck.*  
 Colla, *the neck.*  
 Cōmæ, *the hair.*  
 Connubia, *marriage.*  
 Corda, *the heart.*  
 Corpōra, *a body.*  
 Crepuscula, *twilight.*  
 Currus, *a chariot.*  
 Exsilia, *banishment.*  
 Frigōra, *cold.*  
 Gaudia, *joy.*  
 Gramina, *grass.*  
 Gutturā, *the throat.*

Hymenæi, *marriage.*  
 Ignes, *love.*  
 Inguina, *the groin.*  
 Iræ, *anger.*  
 Jejunia, *fasting.*  
 Jūbæ, *a mane.*  
 Limina, *a threshold.*  
 Litōra, *a shore.*  
 Mensæ, *a service or course*  
*of dishes.*  
 Nenīæ, *a funeral dirge.*  
 Numina, *the divinity.*  
 Odia, *hatred.*  
 Ora, *the mouth, the coun-*  
*tenance.*  
 Oræ, *confines.*  
 Ortus, *a rising, the east.*  
 Otia, *ease, leisure.*

Pectōra, *the breast.*  
 Redītūs, *a return.*  
 Regna, *a kingdom.*  
 Rictūs, *the jaws.*  
 Robōra, *strength.*  
 Silentia, *silence.*  
 Siuūs, *the bosom of a Ro-*  
*man gurnment.*  
 Tædæ, *a torch.*  
 Tempōra, *time.*  
 Terga, *the back.*  
 Thalāni, *marriage or*  
*marriage-bed.*  
 Tōri, *a bed, a couch.*  
 Tūra, *frankincense.*  
 Viæ, *a journey.*  
 Vultus, *the countenance.*

### III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

§ 99. Nouns are redundant either in termination, in declension, in gender, or in two or more of these respects.

1. In termination: (a.) of the nominative; as, *arbor*, and *arbores*, a tree: (b.) of the oblique cases; as, *tigris*; gen. *tigris*, or *-idis*; a tiger.
2. In declension; as, *laurus*; gen. *-i*, or *-ūs*; a laurel.
3. In gender; as, *vulgus*, masc. or neut.; the common people.
4. In termination and declension; as, *senecta*, -æ, and *senectus*, -ūtis; old age.
5. In termination and gender; as *pileus*, masc., and *pileum*, neut.; a hat.
6. In declension and gender; as *pēnus*, -i or *-ūs*, masc. or fem., and *pēnus* *oris*, neut.; a store of provisions. *Spēcus*, -ūs or *-i*, masc. fem. or neut.; a cave.
7. In termination, declension, and gender; as, *mendr*, -æ, fem. and *mendum*, -æ, neut.; a fault.



The following list contains most *Redundant Nouns* of the above classes:—

- Acinus, -um, and -a, a *berry*.  
 Adagium, and -io, a *proverb*.  
 Admonitio, -um, and -us, *us*, a *remin-  
 ding*.  
 Æther, and æther, the *clear sky*.  
 Affectio, and -us, *us*, *affection*.  
 Agamemno, and -on, *Agamemnon*.  
 Alabaster, *tri*, and *pl.* -tra, *brun* an  
*alabaster box*.  
 Alimonia, and -um, *aliment*.  
 Aliuvio, and -es, a *flood*.  
 A'tearium, and -ære, a *bee-hive*.  
 Amarâcus, and -um, *marjoram*.  
 Amygdala, and -um, an *almond*.  
 Anfractum, and -us, *us*, a *winding*.  
 Angiportum, and -us, *us*, a *narrow lane*  
 or *alley*.  
 Antidôtus, and -um, an *antidote*.  
 Aranea, and -us, *i*, a *spider*.  
 Arar, and Arâris, the *river Arar*.  
 Arbor, and -os, a *tree*.  
 Architectus, and -on, an *architect*.  
 Arcus, -us, and *i*, a *bow*.  
 Attagena, and -gen, a *moor-hen*.  
 Avaritia, and -ies, *avarice*.  
 Augmentum, and -inen, an *increase*.  
 Baccar, and -âris, a *kind of herb*.  
 Bacûlus, and -um, a *staff*.  
 Balteus, and -um, a *belt*.  
 Barbaria, and -ies, *barbarism*.  
 Barbitus, and -on, a *harp*.  
 Batillus, and -um, a *fire-shovel*.  
 Blanditia, and -ies, *flattery*.  
 Buccina, and -um, a *trumpet*.  
 Bûra, and -is, a *plough-tail*.  
 Buxta, and -um, the *box-tree*.  
 Cæpa, and cæpe, an *onion*.  
 Calamister, *tri*, and -trum, a *crisping-  
 pin*.  
 Calus, and -um, *hardened skin*.  
 Cancer, *cri*, or *ëris*, a *crab*.  
 Canitia, and -ies, *hoariness*.  
 Câpus, and câpo, a *capon*.  
 Carrus, and -um, a *kind of waggon*.  
 Cassida, and -cassis, a *helmet*.  
 Catinus, and -um, a *bowl, dish*.  
 Curogrâphus, and -um, a *hand-writ ng*.  
 Gîngûla, -us, and -um, a *girdle*.  
 Clip-ces, and -um, a *shield*.  
 Cochlearium; -ar, and -ære, a *spoon*.  
 Colluvio, and -ies, *filth*.  
 Commentarius, and -um, a *journal*.  
 Compâges, and -go, a *joining*.  
 Conâtum, and -us, *us*, an *attempt*.  
 Concinnitas, and -tûdo, *neatness*.  
 Consortium, and -io, *partnership*.  
 Contagium, -io, and -es, *contact*.  
 Cornum, -us, *i*, or *us*, a *cornel tree*.  
 Costos, *i*, and -um a *kind of shrub*.  
 Cratêra, and crâter, a *bowl*.  
 Crôcus, and -um, *saffron*.  
 Crystallus, and -um, *crystal*.  
 Cubitus, and -um, the *elbow*.  
 Cupiditas, and -pido, *desire*.  
 Cupressus, *i*, or *us*, a *cypress-tree*.  
 Delicia, and -um, *delight*.  
 Delphinus, and *delphin*, a *dolphin*.  
 Dictamnus, and -um, *dictamn*.  
 Diluvium, -o, and -ies, a *deluge*.  
 Dômus, *i*, or *us*, a *house*.  
 Dorsus, and -um, the *back*.  
 Duritia, and -ies, *hardness*.  
 Effigia, and -ies, an *image*.  
 Elegia, and -on, *i*, an *elegy*.  
 Elephantus, and -phas, an *elephant*.  
 Epitôma, and -e, an *abridgment*.  
 Essêda, and -um, a *chariot*.  
 Evander, *tri*, and -drus, *Evander*.  
 Eventum, and -us, *us*, an *event*.  
 Exemplar, and -ære, a *pattern*.  
 Ficus, *i*, or *us*, a *fig-tree*.  
 Fimus, and -um, *dung*.  
 Frêtum, and -us, *us*, a *strait*.  
 Fulgetra, and -um, *lightning*.  
 Galêrus, and -um, a *hat, cap*.  
 Ganea, and -um, an *eating-house*.  
 Gausâpa, -es, -e, and -um, *frieze*.  
 Gibba, -us, and -er, *ëri*, a *hump*.  
 Glutinum, and -ten, *glue*.  
 Gobius, and -io, a *gudgeon*.  
 Grammatica, and -e, *grammar*.  
 Grus, *gruis*, and *gruis*, *is*, a *crane*.  
 Hebdomâda, and -mas, a *week*.  
 Hellebôrus, and -um, *hellebore*.  
 Hônor, and hônos, *honour*.  
 Hyssôpus, and -um, *hyssop*.  
 Ilios, -um, and -on, *Troy*.  
 Incestum, and -us, *us*, *incest*.  
 Intûbus, and -um, *endive*.  
 Jugûlus, and -um, the *throat*.  
 Juventa, -us, *ûtis*, and -as, *youth*.  
 Lâbor, and lâbos, *labor*.  
 Lacerta, and -us, a *lizard*.  
 Laurus, *i*, or *us*, a *laurel*.  
 Lêpor, and lêpos, *wit*.  
 Lîgur, and -us, *ûris*, a *Ligurian*.  
 Lupinus, and -um, a *lupine*.  
 Luxuria, and -ies, *luxury*.  
 Mæander, -dros, and -drus, *Mæander*.  
 Margarita, and -um, a *pearl*.  
 Materia, and -ies, *materials*.  
 Medimnus, and -um, *i* measure.  
 Menda, and -um, a *j. nult*.  
 Modius, and -um, a *measure*.  
 Mollitia, and -ies, *softness*.  
 Momentum, and -men, *influence*.  
 Mûgil, and -ilis, a *mullet*.  
 Mulciber, *ëri*, or *ëris*, *Vulcan*.

Multra, and -um, a milk-pail.	Rictum, and -us, ūs, the open mouth.
Munditia, and -ies, neatness.	Sævitia, -tudo and -ies, ferocity.
Muria, and -ies, brine or pickle.	Sagus, and -um, a military cloak.
Myrtus, i or ūs, a myrtle.	Sanguis, and sanguen, blood.
Nardus, and -um, nard.	Satrāpes, and satraps, a satrap.
Nāsus, and -um, the nose.	Scabritia, and -ies, roughness.
Necessitas, and -tudo, necessity.	Scorpius, -os, and -io, a scorpion.
Nequitia, and -ies, worthlessness.	Segmentum, and -men, a piece.
Notitia, and -ies, knowledge.	Segnitia, and -ies, sloth.
Oblivium, and -io, forgetfulness.	Senecta, and -us, old age.
Obsidium, and -io, a siege.	Sequester, tri, or tris, a trustee.
Œdīpus, i, or ōdis, (Edipus).	Se-ama, and -um, sesame.
Ostrea, and -um, an oyster.	Sibillus, and -a, ōrum, a hissing.
Palātus, and -um, the palate.	Sināpi, and -is, mustard.
Palumba, -us, and -es, a pigeon.	Sinus, and -um, a goblet.
Papȳrus, and -um, papyrus.	Spārus, and -a, ōrum, a spear.
Paupertas, and -ies, poverty.	Spurcitia, and -ies, filthiness.
Pāvus, and pāvo, a peacock.	Stramentum, and -men, straw.
Pēnus, i, -ōris, or ūs, and pēnum, provisions.	Suffimentum, and -men, fumigation.
Paplus, and -um, a veil.	Suggestus, and -um, a pulpit, stage.
Perseus, ei, or eos, Perseus.	Suppārus, and -um, a linen garment.
Pileus, and -um, a hat.	Supplicium, -icamentum, and -icatio, a public supplication.
Pīnus, i, or ūs, a pine-tree.	Tapētum, -ēte, and -es, tapestry.
Pistrina, and -um, a bake-house.	Tenēritas, and -tudo, softness.
Planitia, and -ies, a plain.	Tergum, and -us, ōris, the back.
Plāto, and Plāton, Plato.	Tiāra, and -as, a turban.
Flebs, and plēbes, ei, the common people.	Tignus, and -um, a beam, timber.
Porrus, and -um, a leak.	Tigris, is, or idis, a tiger.
Postulātum, and -io, a request.	Titānus, and Titan, Titan.
Præsēpia, -ium, -es, or -is, and -e, a stable.	Tonitruum, and -trus, ūs, thunder.
Prætextum, and -us, ūs, a pretext.	Torāle, and -al, a bed-covering.
Prosapia, and -ies, lineage.	Trābes, and trabs, a beam.
Rāpa, and -um, a turnip.	Tribūla, and -um, a threshing sledge.
Requies, ētis or ēt, rest.	Vespēra, -per, ēri and ēris, the evening.
Rēte, and rētis, a net.	Vinacēus, and -a, ōrum, a grape-stone.
Reticūlus, and -um, a small net.	Viscus, and -um, the mistletoe.
	Vulgus, masc. and neut., the common people.

REMARK 1. To these may be added some other verbals in *us* and *io*, and Greek nouns in *o* and *on*; as, *Dio* and *Dion*; also some Greek nouns in *es* and *e*, which have Latin forms in *a*; as, *Atrides* and *Atrida*. See § 45.

REM. 2. Some proper names of places also are redundant in number; as, *Argos* and *Argi*; *Fidēna* and *Fidēnz*; *Thēbe* and *Thēb*.

NOTE. The different forms of most words in the above list are not equally common, and some are rarely used, or only in particular cases.

## DERIVATION OF NOUNS.

§ 100. Nouns are derived from other nouns, from adjectives, and from verbs.

### I. FROM NOUNS.

From nouns are derived the following classes:—

1. A *patronymic* is the name of a person, derived from that of his father or other ancestor, or of the founder of his nation.

NOTE 1. Patronymics are properly Greek nouns, and have been borrowed from that language by the Latin poets.

(a.) Masculine patronymics end in *ides*, *ides*, *ādes*, and *īdes*.

(1.) Nouns in *us* of the second declension, and those nouns of the third declension, whose root ends in a short syllable, form their patronymics in *ides*, as, *Priānus*, *Priamides*; *Agamemnōn*, gen. *ōnis*, *Agamemnōnides*.

(2.) Nouns in *ēs* and *cles* form their patronymics in *ides*; as, *A-trēs*, *Atrides*, *Heracles* (i. e. Hercules,) *Heracledes*.

REM. 1. *Ænides*, in Virg. A. 9, 653, is formed in like manner, as if from *Ænēs*, instead of *Ænās*.

(3.) Nouns in *ās* and *ēs* of the first declension form their patronymics in *ādes*, as *Ænās*, *Ænēādes*; *Hippōtēs*, *Hippōtādes*.

(4.) Nouns in *ius* of the second declension, and those nouns of the third declension, whose root ends in a long vowel, form their patronymics in *tādes*; as, *Thestius*, *Thestīādes*; *Amphitryō* (gen. *ōnis*), *Amphitryōnīādes*.

REM. 2. A few nouns also of the first declension have patronymics in *tādes*: as, *Anchises*, *Anchistādes*.

(b.) Feminine patronymics end in *is*, *ēs*, and *ias*, and correspond in termination to the masculines, viz. *is* to *ides*, *ēs* to *ides*, and *ias* to *īdes*; as, *Tyndārus*, masc. *Tyndārūles*, fem. *Tyndārīs*; *Nēreus*, masc. *Nereūdes*, fem. *Nerēs*; *Thestius*, masc. *Thestīādes*, fem. *Thestīas*.

REM. 3. A few feminines are found in *ine*, or *ione*; as, *Nerine*, *Acrisiōne*, from *Nereus* and *Acrisius*.

NOTE 2. Patronymics in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension; those in *is* and *as*, of the third.

2. A *patrial* or *gentile* noun is derived from the name of a country; and denotes an inhabitant of that country; as,

*Trōs*, a Trojan man; *Trōas*, a Trojan woman; *Macedō*, a Macedonian; *Samnis*, a Samnite; from *Trōja*, *Macedonia*, and *Samnium*.

NOTE 3. Most patrials are properly adjectives, relating to a noun understood; as, *homo*, *civis*, etc. See § 128, 6.

3. A *diminutive* signifies a small thing of the kind denoted by the primitive; as, *liber*, a book; *libellus*, a little book.

Diminutives generally end in *ulus*, *ula*, *ulum*, or *cūlus*, *cūla*, *cūlum*, according as the primitive is masculine, feminine, or neuter.

A. 1. If the primitive is of the first or second declension, or its root ends in *c*, *g*, *d*, or *t* after a vowel, the diminutive is formed by annexing *ulus*, *a*, *um* to the root; as, *arūla*, *servulus*, *puerulus*, *scutulum*, *cornicula*, *regulus*, *capitulum*, *mercedula*; from *āra*, *servus*, *puer*, *scutum*, *cornix*, (*-icis*), *rex*, (*rēgis*), *caput*, (*-itis*), *merces*, (*-ēdis*).

2. Primitives of the first or second declension whose root ends in *e* or *i*, instead of *ulus*, *a*, *um*, add *olus*, *a*, *um*; as, *filioles*, *glorioles*, *horreolum*; from *filius*, *gloria*, *horreum*.

3. Primitives of the first or second declension whose root ends in *l*, *n* or *r*, form diminutives by contraction in *ellus*, *a*, *um*, and some in *illus*, *a*, *um*; as, *ocellus*, *asellus*, *libellus*, *lucellum*; from *oculus*, *asina*, *liber*, *lucrum*; and *sigillum*, from *signum*, *tignum*.

B. 1. If the primitive is of the third, fourth, or fifth declension, the diminutive is formed in *cūlus*, (or *icūlus*), *a*, *um*.

2. Primitives of the third declension whose nominative ends in *r*, or in *as* or *us* from ending in roots *r*, annex *cūlus* to the nominative; as, *fratercūlus*, *soror-*

*cūla oscūlum, corpuscūlum*; from *j-āter, sōror, ōs, (ōris), corpus, (-ōris)*.—So also primitives in *es* and *is*, but these drop the *s* of the nominative; as, *ignicūlus, nubecūla, diecūla*; from *ignis, nubes, dies*.

8. Primitives of other terminations of the third declension, and those of the fourth, add *icūlus* to the root; as, *ponticūlus, coticūla, ossicūlum, versicūlus, cornicūlum*; from *pons, cos, ōs, (ossis), versus, cornu*.

4. Primitives in *o*, (*inis* or *ōnis*), in adding *cūlus, a, um*, change the final vowel of the root (*i* or *o*) into *u*; as, *homuncūlus, sermuncūlus*; from *hōmo* and *sermo*; and a few primitives of other terminations form similar diminutives; as, *avuncūlus, domuncūla*; from *āvus* and *dōmus*.

C. 1. A few diminutives end in *uleus*, as, *equuleus, aculeus*; from *ēquus* and *ācus*; and a few also in *io*; as, *homuncio, senecio*, from *hōmo* and *sēnex*.

2. Diminutives are sometimes formed from other diminutives; as, *asellūlus*, from *asellus*; sometimes two or more diminutives with different terminations are formed from the same primitive, as, *homuncūlus, homullus*, and *homuncio*; from *hōmo*; and sometimes the primitive undergoes euphonic changes; as *rumscūlus*, from *rūmor*.

REM. Some diminutives differ in gender from their primitives; as *ramuncūlus, scamillus*, from *rāna* and *scamnum*.

4. (a.) An amplificative is a personal appellation denoting an excess of that which is expressed by its primitive; as,

*Crypto*, one who has a large head: so *nāso, labeo, bucco, fronto, mento*, one who has a large nose, lips, or cheeks, a broad forehead or long chin; from *caput, nāsus, lubia, bucca, frons*, and *mentum*.

(b.) A few personal appellatives in *io* denote the trade or profession to which a person belongs; as, *ludio*, an actor; *pellio*, a furrier; from *ludus*, and *pellis*.

5. The termination *ium* added to the root of a noun, indicates the office or condition, and often, derivatively, an assemblage of the individuals denoted by the primitive; as, *collegium*, colleagueship, and thence an assembly of colleagues; *servitium*, servitude, and collectively the servants; so *sacerdotium*, and *ministerium*; from *collēga, servus, sacerdos*, and *minister*.

6. The termination *imonium* is added to the root of a few nouns, denoting something derived from the primitives, or imparting to it its peculiar character; as, *testimonium*, testimony; so *vidimonium, patrimonium, matrimonium*; from *testis, vās (vādis), pater*, and *māter*.

7. The termination *etum*, added to the root of names of plants, denotes a place where they grow in abundance; as, *quercetum, laurētum, olivētum*, from *quercus, laurus*, and *oliva*.

So, also, *asculētum, dumētum, myrtētum*, and by analogy *saxētum*. But some drop *e*; as, *carectum, salictum, virgultum*, and *arbustum*.

8. The termination *arium*, added to the root of a noun, denotes a receptacle of the things signified by the primitive; as, *aviarium*, an aviary; *plantarium*, a nursery; from *avis*, a bird, and *planta*, a plant.

9. The termination *ile*, added to the root of names of animals, marks the place where they are kept; as, *bovile*, a stall for oxen; so *caprile, ovile*; from *bōs*, an ox, *cāper*, a goat, and *ōvis*, a sheep.

NOTE 1. This class and the preceding are properly neuter adjectives.

NOTE 2. Abstract nouns are derived either from adjectives or from verbs. See § 26, 5.

## II. FROM ADJECTIVES.

§ 101. 1. Abstract nouns are formed by adding the termination *itas, itūdo, ia, ūia* or *ūies, ēdo*, and *inōnia* to the root of the primitive

2. Abstracts in *itas*, (equivalent to the English *ty* or *ity*), are formed from adjectives of each declension ; as, *cupīditas*, *teneritas*, *celeritas*, *crudelitas*, *felicitas*; from *cupīdus*, *tēner*, *cēler*, *crudēlis*, and *fēlix*.

(1.) When the root ends in *i*, the abstract is formed in *itas*; as, *pietas*, from *pīus*; and when it ends in *t*, as only is added; as, *honestas* from *honestus*.

(2.) In a few abstracts *i* before *itas* is dropped; as, *libertas*, *juventas*, from *liber*, *juvēnis*. In *facultas* and *difficultas*, from *facilis*, *difficilis*, there is a change also in the root-vowel from *i* to *u*.

(3.) A few abstracts are formed in *itus* or *tus*, instead of *itas*; as, *servitus*, *juvencus*, from *servus* and *juvēnis*. See § 76, Exc. 2.

3. Abstracts in *itudo* are formed from adjectives in *us*, and some from adjectives of the third declension of two or three terminations; as, *magnitudo*, *altitudo*, *fortitudo*, *acritudo*, from *magnus*, *altus*, *fortis*, *acer*. Polysyllabic adjectives in *tus*, generally form their abstracts by adding *udo* instead of *itudo* to their root; as, *consuetudo*, from *consuetus*.

4. Abstracts in *ia* (equivalent to the English *ce* or *cy*), are for the most part formed from adjectives of one termination; as, *clementia*, *constantia*, *impudentia*, from *clemens*, *constans*, *impudens*. But some adjectives in *us* and *er*, including verbals in *cundus*, likewise form their verbals in *ia*; as, *miseria*, *angustia*, *facundia*, from *miser*, *angustus*, *facundus*.

5. Abstracts in *itia* and *ities* are formed from adjectives in *us* and *is*; as, *justitia*, *tristitia*, *duritia*, and *durities*, *segnitia* and *segitities*, from *justus*, *tristis*, *durus*, and *segnis*.

6. A few abstracts are formed in *edo*, and a few in *imonia*; and sometimes two or more abstracts of different terminations are formed from the same adjective; as, *acritas*, *acritudo*, *acredo*, and *acrimonia*, from *acer*. In such case those in *itudo* and *imonia* seem to be more intensive in signification than those in *itas*.

REMARK. Adjectives, as distinguished from the abstracts which are formed from them, are called *concretes*.

### III. FROM VERBS.

## § 102. Nouns derived from verbs are called *verbal nouns*.

The following are the principal classes:—

1. Abstract nouns expressing the action or condition denoted by a verb, especially by a neuter verb, are formed by annexing *or* to their first root; as *amor*, love; *favor*, favor; *mæror*, grief; *splendor*, brightness; from *amo*, *faveo*, *mæreo*, and *splendeo*.

2. (a.) Abstracts are also formed from many verbs by annexing *ium* to the first or to the third root; as, *colloquium*, a conference; *gaudium*, joy; *exordium*, a beginning; *exitium*, destruction; *solatium*, consolation; from *colloquor*, *gaudeo*, *exordior*, *exeo* and *solor*.

3. Some verbal abstracts are formed by annexing *ela*, *imonia*, or *imonium*, to the first root of the verb; as, *querela* and *querimonia*, a complaint; *suadeo*, persuasion; from *queror* and *suadeo*.

4. (a.) The terminations *men* and *mentum*, added to the first root of the verb, generally with a connecting vowel, denote the thing to which the action belongs, both actively and passively, or a means for the performance of the action; as, *fulmen* from *fulgeo*, *flumen* from *fluo*, *agmen* from *ago*, *solamen* from *solor*, *documentum* from *dōceo*, *blandimentum* from *blandior*.

(b.) The final consonant of the root is often dropped, and the preceding and connecting vowels contracted into one syllable; as, *ago*, (*āgimen*), *aymen*; *faveo*, (*fōvimentum*), *fōmentum*.

(c.) Some words of this class have no primitive verb in use ; as, *atramentum*, ink ; but, in this case, the connecting vowel seems to imply its reference to such a verb as *atrare*, to blacken.

5. (a.) The terminations *ilum*, *bulum*, *culum* ; *brum*, *crum*, *trum*, annexed to the first root of a verb, denote an instrument for performing the act expressed by the verb, or a place for its performance ; as, *cingulum*, *operculum*, *venculum*, *ventilabrum*, *fulcrum*, *spectrum*, from *cingo*, *opërio*, *vënor*, *ventilo*, *fulcio*, *spëcio*.

(b.) Sometimes *culum* is contracted into *cium* ; as, *vincium* for *vinculum*. Sometimes, also, *s* is inserted before *trum* ; as, *rostrum*, from *rôdo*, and a connecting vowel is placed before this and some of the other terminations ; as, *arâtrum*, *stabulum*, *cubiculum*, from *âro*, *sto*, and *cûbo*.

(c.) Some words of this kind are formed from nouns ; as, *acetabulum*, a vinegar cruet ; *turibulum*, a censer ; from *acëtum* and *tus*.

6. (a.) Nouns formed by adding *or* and *rix* to the third root of the verb, denote respectively the male and female agent of the action expressed by the verb as, *adjuvôr* *adjûtrix*, an assistant ; *fâvor*, *fâvtrix*, a favorer ; *victor*, *victrix*, a conqueror ; from *adjûvo* (*adjût-*), *fâveo* (*fâv-*), *vinco* (*vict-*). They are often likewise used as adjectives. The feminine form is less common than the masculine, and when the third root of the verb ends in *s*, the feminine is sometimes formed in *trix* ; as, *tonleo* (*tons-*) *tonstrix*.

(b.) Some nouns in *or* are formed immediately from other nouns ; as, *viâtôr*, a traveller ; *janîtôr*, a door-keeper ; from *via* and *janua*. In *meretrîx* from *mereo*, *i* of the third root becomes *e*.

(c.) The agent of a few verbs is denoted by the terminations *a* and *o* annexed to the first root ; as, *convîva*, a guest ; *advênâ*, a stranger ; *scribâ*, a scribe ; *erro*, a vagrant ; *bîbo*, a drunkard ; *comêdo*, a glutton, from *convîvo*, *advênio*, etc.

7. Many abstract nouns are formed by annexing *io* and *us* (gen. *ûs*) to the third root of a verb ; as, *actio*, an action ; *lectio*, reading ; from *âgo* (*act-*), *lêgo* (*lect-*) ;—*cantus*, singing ; *visus*, sight ; *ûsus*, use ; from *cânô* (*cant-*), *video* (*vis-*), *ûtor* (*ûs-*).

REMARK 1. Nouns of both forms, and of like signification, are frequently derived from the same verb ; as, *concurzio* and *concursus*, a running together ; *môtio* and *môtus*, etc.

REM. 2. Nouns formed by adding the termination *ûra* to the third root of a verb, sometimes have the same signification as those in *io* and *us*, and sometimes denote the result of an action ; as, *positûra*, position ; *vincûra*, a binding together ; from *pônô*, and *vincio* ; and the termination *êla* has sometimes the same meaning ; as, *querêla*, complaint ; *loquêla*, speech, from *quëror* and *loquor*.

NOTE. One of these forms is generally used to the exclusion of the others, and when two or more are found, they are usually employed in somewhat different senses.

8. The termination *ôrîum*, added to the third root of a verb, denotes the place where the action of the verb is performed ; as, *audîtôrîum*, a lecture-room ; *conâtôrîum*, a repository, from *audio* and *condô*.

## COMPOSITION OF NOUNS.

### § 103. Compound nouns are formed variously :—

1. Of two nouns ; as, *rupicapra*, a wild goat, of *rûpes* and *capra*. In some words, compounded of two nouns, the former is a genitive ; as, *senatûsconsultus*, a decree of the senate ; *jurisconsultus*, a lawyer ; in others, both parts are declined ; as, *respublica*, *jusjurandum*. See § 91.

2. Of a noun and a verb ; as, *artifex*, an artist, of *ars* and *fâcio* ; *fidiculus*, a harper, of *fides* and *cânô* ; *agricôla*, a husbandman, of *âger* and *côlô*.

3. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *æquinocetium*, the equinox, of *æquus* and *cæ*; *millepæda*, a millepede, of *mille* and *pæ*.

In *dunumvir*, *triumvir*, *decumvir*, *centumvir*, the numeral adjective is in the genitive plural.

REMARK 1. When the former part of a compound word is a noun or an adjective, it usually ends in *i*; as, *artifex*, *rupticapra*, *agricola*, etc. If the second word begins with a vowel, an elision takes place; as, *quingennium*, of *quinque* and *annus*; *magnanimus*, of *magnus* and *animus*.

4. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *nefas*, wickedness; *nemo*, nobody; of *ne*, *fas*, and *homo*. So *biduum*, of *bis* and *dies*.

5. Of a preposition and a noun: as, *incuria*, want of care, of *in* and *cæra*. So *intervallum*, an interval; *præcordia*, the diaphragm; *proverbium*, a proverb; *subsellium*, a low seat; *superficies*, a surface.

REM. 2. When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to that which follows it: as, *ignobilis*, *illegitimus*, *imprudens*, *irruptio*, of *in* and *nobilis*, *legitimus*, etc. See § 196.

## ADJECTIVES.

§ 104. An adjective is a word which qualifies or limits the meaning of a substantive.

Adjectives may be divided, according to their *signification*, into various classes; as denoting,

1. Character or quality; as, *bonus*, good; *albus*, white; *amicus*, friendly.
2. State or condition; as, *felix*, happy; *dives*, rich.
3. Possession; as, *herilis*, a master's; *patrius*, a father's.
4. Quantity; as, *magnus*, great; *totus*, entire; *parvus*, small.
5. Number; as, *unus*, one; *secundus*, second; *tot*, so many; *quot*, as many. These are called *numerals*.
6. Time; as, *annuus*, yearly; *hesternus*, of yesterday; *biuus*, of two years; *trimestris*, of three months.
7. Place; as, *altus*, high; *vicinus*, near; *aërius*, aerial; *terrestris*, terrestrial.
8. Material; as, *aureus*, golden; *fagineus*, beechen; *terrëus*, earthen.
9. Part; as, *nullus*, no one; *aliquis*, some one. These are called *partitives*.
10. Country; as, *Românus*, Roman; *Arpinus* of *Arpinum*. These are called *patrials*.
11. Diminution; as, *parvulus*, from *parvus*, small; *misellus*, from *miser*, miserable. These are called *diminutives*.
12. Amplification; as, *vinosus* and *vinolentus*, much given to wine; *auritus*, having long ears. These are called *amplificatives*.
13. Relation; as, *avidus*, desirous of; *mëmor*, mindful of; *insuetus*. These are called *relatives*.
14. Interrogation; as, *quantus*? how great; *qualis*? of what kind; *quot*? how many? *quotus*? of what number? These are called *interrogatives*; and, when not used interrogatively, they are called *correlatives*.
15. Specification; as, *talis*, such; *tantus* so great; *tot*, so many. These are called *demonstratives*.

## DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 105. 1. Adjectives are declined like substantives, and are either of the first and second declensions, or of the third only.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

2. The masculine of adjectives belonging to the first and second declensions, ends either in *us* or in *er*. The feminine and neuter are formed respectively by annexing *a* and *um* to the root of the masculine. The masculine in *us* is declined like *dominus*; that in *er* like *gēner* or *āger*; the feminine always like *mūsa*; and the neuter like *regnum*.

REMARK 1. The masculine of one adjective, *sātur*, *-ūra*, *-ūrum*, full ends in *ur*, and is declined like *gēner*.

Bōnūs, *good*.

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	bo'-nūs,	bo'-nā,	bo'-nūm,
<i>G.</i>	bo'-nī,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nī,
<i>D.</i>	bo'-nō,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nō,
<i>Ac.</i>	bo'-nūm,	bo'-nām,	bo'-nūm,
<i>V.</i>	bo'-nē,	bo'-nā,	bo'-nūm,
<i>Ab.</i>	bo'-nō.	bo'-nā.	bo'-nō.

*Plural.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	bo'-nī,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nā,
<i>G.</i>	bo-nō'-rūm,	bo-nā'-rūm,	bo-nō'-rūm,
<i>D.</i>	bo'-nis,	bo'-nis,	bo'-nis,
<i>Ac.</i>	bo'-nōs,	bo'-nās,	bo'-nā,
<i>V.</i>	bo'-nī,	bo'-næ,	bo'-nā,
<i>Ab.</i>	bo'-nis.	bo'-nis.	bo'-nis.

In like manner decline

Al'-tus, <i>high</i> .	Fī'-dus, <i>faithful</i> .	Lon'-gue, <i>long</i> .
A-vā'-rus, <i>covetous</i> .	Im'-prō-bus, <i>wicked</i> .	Plē'-nus, <i>full</i> .
Be-nig'-nus, <i>kind</i> .	In-ī'-quus, <i>unjust</i> .	Tac'-ī'-tus, <i>silent</i> .

REM. 2. Like *bōnus* are also declined all participles in *us*; as,  
A-mā'-tus. Am-a-tū'-rus. A-man'-dus.

REM. 3. The masculine of the vocative singular of adjectives in *us* is sometimes like the nominative; as, *O vir fortis atque amicus*. Hor. *Meus* has both *mi* and *meus*.

REM. 4. The genitive plural of distributive numerals ends commonly in *am* instead of *orum*; as, *crassitūde binūm digitorūm*. Plin.



3. Tēner, *tender*.

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	te'-nēr,	ten'-ē-rā,	ten'-ē-rūm,
<i>G.</i>	ten'-ē-rī,	ten'-ē-ræ,	ten'-ē-rī,
<i>D.</i>	ten'-ē-rō,	ten'-ē-ræ,	ten'-ē-rō,
<i>Ac.</i>	ten'-ē-rūm,	ten'-ē-rām,	ten'-ē-rūm,
<i>V.</i>	te'-nēr,	ten'-ē-rā,	ten'-ē-rūm,
<i>Ab.</i>	ten'-ē-rō.	ten'-ē-rā.	ten'-ē-rō.

*Plural.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	ten'-ē-rī,	ten'-ē-ræ,	ten'-ē-rā,
<i>G.</i>	ten-e-rō'-rūm,	ten-e-rā'-rūm,	ten-e-rō'-rūm,
<i>D.</i>	ten'-ē-ris,	ten'-ē-ris,	ten'-ē-ris,
<i>Ac.</i>	ten'-ē-rōs,	ten'-ē-rās,	ten'-ē-rā,
<i>V.</i>	ten'-ē-rī,	ten'-ē-ræ,	ten'-ē-rā,
<i>Ab.</i>	ten'-ē-ris.	ten'-ē-ris.	ten'-ē-ris.

In like manner are declined

<b>As'-per,</b> <i>rough.</i>	<b>Lă'-cer,</b> <i>torn.</i>	<b>Pros'-per,</b> <i>prosperous.</i>
<b>Ex'-ter,</b> <i>foreign.</i>	<b>Li'-ber,</b> <i>free.</i>	<b>Să'-tur,</b> <i>full.</i>
<b>Gib'-ber,</b> <i>crook-backed.</i>	<b>Mi'-ser,</b> <i>wretched.</i>	

So also *alter*, except in the genitive and dative singular (see § 107), *semifer* and the compounds of *gēro* and *fēro*; *as*, *laniger*, *opifer*.

NOTE. *Prosper* is less frequent than *prospērus*, and *exter* is scarcely used in the nominative singular masculine.

§ 106. The other adjectives in *er* drop *e* in declension; *as*,

*Piger, slothful.*

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	pi'-gēr,	pi'-grā,	pi'-grūm,
<i>G.</i>	pi'-gri,	pi'-græ,	pi'-gri,
<i>D.</i>	pi'-grō,	pi'-græ,	pi'-grō,
<i>Ac.</i>	pi'-grūm,	pi'-grām,	pi'-grūm,
<i>V.</i>	pi'-gēr,	pi'-grā,	pi'-grūm,
<i>Ab.</i>	pi'-grō.	pi'-grā.	pi'-grō.

*Plural.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	pi'-gri,	pi'-græ,	pi'-grā,
<i>G.</i>	pi-grō'-rūm,	pi-grā'-rūm,	pi-grō'-rūm,
<i>D.</i>	pi'-gris,	pi'-gris,	pi'-gris,
<i>Ac.</i>	pi'-grōs,	pi'-grās,	pi'-grā,
<i>V.</i>	pi'-gri,	pi'-græ,	pi'-grā,
<i>Ab.</i>	pi'-gris.	pi'-gris.	pi'-gris.

## In like manner decline

Æ'-ger, <i>sick</i> .	Mä'-cer, <i>lean</i> .	Scä'-ber, <i>rough</i> .
A'-ter, <i>black</i> .	Ni'-ger, <i>black</i> .	Si-nis'-ter, <i>left</i> .
Crē'-ber, <i>frequent</i> .	Pul'-cher, <i>fair</i> .	Tē'-ter, <i>foul</i> .
Glā'-ber, <i>smooth</i> .	Rū'-ber, <i>red</i> .	Vā'-fer, <i>crafty</i> .
Ln'-tē-ger, <i>entire</i> .	Sä'-cer, <i>sacred</i> .	

*Dexter*, right, has *-tra*, *-trum*, and less frequently *-tēra*, *-tērum*.

§ 107. Six adjectives in *us*, and three in *er*, have their genitive singular in *ius*, and their dative in *i*, in all the genders :—

<i>Alius</i> , <i>another</i> .	<i>Tōtus</i> , <i>whole</i> .	<i>Alter</i> , <i>-tēra</i> , <i>-tērum</i> , <i>the other</i> .
<i>Nullus</i> , <i>no one</i> .	<i>Ullus</i> , <i>any</i> .	<i>Uter</i> , <i>-tra</i> , <i>-trum</i> , <i>which of the two</i> .
<i>Sōlus</i> , <i>alone</i> .	<i>Unus</i> , <i>one</i> .	<i>Neuter</i> , <i>-tra</i> , <i>-trum</i> , <i>neither</i> .

To these may be added the other compounds of *ūter*,—namely, *uterque*, each of two; *utrumque*, *uterlibet*, and *utervis*, which of the two you please; gen. *utriusque*, etc.—also, *alterūter*, one of two; gen. *alterutrius*, and sometimes *alterius utrius*; dat. *alterutri*. So *alteruterque*, and *unusquisque*. See § 138, 4.

*Nullus*, *sōlus*, *tōtus*, *ullus*, and *ūnus* are thus declined :—

	<i>Singular.</i>	
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
<i>N.</i>	ū'-nūs,	ū'-nā,
<i>G.</i>	u-nī'-ūs,*	u-nī'-ūs,
<i>D.</i>	u'-nī,	u'-nī,
<i>Ac.</i>	u'-nūm,	u'-nām,
<i>V.</i>	u'-nē,	u'-nā,
<i>Ab.</i>	u'-nō.	u'-nā.

The plural is regular, like that of *bōnus*.

REMARK 1. *Alius* has *aliud* in the nominative and accusative singular neuter, and in the genitive *alius*, contracted for *alius*.

REM. 2. Except in the genitive and dative singular, *alter* is declined like *tēner* and *ūter* and *neuter* like *piger*.

REM. 3. Some of these adjectives, in early writers, and occasionally even in Cicero, Cæsar, and Nepos, form their genitive and dative regularly, like *bōnus*, *tēner*, or *piger*.

## ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 108. Some adjectives of the third declension have three terminations in the nominative singular; some two; and others only one.

I. Those of three terminations end in *er*, masc.; *is*, fem.; and *e*, neut.; and are thus declined :—

*Acer*, *sharp*.

*Singular.*

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>N.</i>	ā'-cēr,	ā'-cris,	ā'-crē,
<i>G.</i>	a'-cris,	a'-ris,	a'-cris,
<i>D.</i>	a'-cri,	a'-ri,	a'-cri,
<i>Ac.</i>	a'-crēm,	a'-crēm,	a'-crē,
<i>V.</i>	a'-cēr,	a'-cris,	a'-crē,
<i>Ab.</i>	a'-cri.	a'-cri.	a'-cri.

\* See § 15.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i>	<i>a'-crēs,</i>	<i>a'-crēs,</i>	<i>a'-cri-ā,</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>a'-cri-ūm,</i>	<i>a'-cri-um,</i>	<i>a'-cri-ūm,</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>ac'-ri-būs,</i>	<i>ac'-ri-būs,</i>	<i>ac'-ri-būs,</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>a'-crēs,</i>	<i>a'-crēs,</i>	<i>a'-cri-ā,</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>a'-crēs,</i>	<i>a'-crēs,</i>	<i>a'-cri-ā,</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>ac'-ri-būs.</i>	<i>ac'-ri-būs.</i>	<i>ac'-ri-būs.</i>

In like manner are declined the following;—

<i>Al'-acer, cheerful.</i>	<i>Pa-lus'-ter, marshy.</i>	<i>Sil-ves'-ter, woody.</i>
<i>Cam-pes'-ter, champaign.</i>	<i>Pe-des'-ter, on foot.</i>	<i>Ter-res'-ter, terrestrial.</i>
<i>Cel'-ē-ber, famous.</i>	<i>Pū'-ter, rotten.</i>	<i>Vol'-ū-ter, winged.</i>
<i>E-ques'-ter, equestrian.</i>	<i>Sa-lū'-ber, wholesome.</i>	

To these add names of months in *-ber*, used as adjectives; as, *October*, etc. (cf. § 71), and *celer*, swift, which has *celēris*, *celēre*; gen. *celēris*, etc.

REMARK 1. The termination *er* was anciently sometimes feminine; as, *volūcer fama*. Petr.: and, on the other hand, the masculine often ends in *is*; as, *collis silvestris*, Cæs.

REM. 2. *Volūcer* has *um* in the genitive plural.

§ 109. II. Adjectives of two terminations end in *is* for the masculine and feminine, and *e* for the neuter, except comparatives, which end in *or* and *us*.

Those in *is*, *e*, are thus declined:—

*Mitis mild.*

		<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
		<i>N.</i>			<i>N.</i>
<i>M. &amp; F.</i>			<i>M. &amp; F.</i>		
<i>N.</i>	<i>mī'-tis,</i>	<i>mī'-tē,</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>mī'-tēs,</i>	<i>mit'-i-ā,*</i>
<i>G.</i>	<i>mī'-tis,</i>	<i>mī'-tis,</i>	<i>G.</i>	<i>mit'-i-ūm,*</i>	<i>mit'-i-ūm,</i>
<i>D.</i>	<i>mī'-ti,</i>	<i>mī'-ti,</i>	<i>D.</i>	<i>mit'-i-būs,</i>	<i>mit'-i-būs,</i>
<i>Ac.</i>	<i>mī'-tēm,</i>	<i>mī'-tē,</i>	<i>Ac.</i>	<i>mī'-tēs,</i>	<i>mit'-i-ā,</i>
<i>V.</i>	<i>mī'-tis,</i>	<i>mī'-tē,</i>	<i>V.</i>	<i>mī'-tēs,</i>	<i>mit'-i-ā,</i>
<i>Ab.</i>	<i>mī'-ti.</i>	<i>mī'-ti.</i>	<i>Ab.</i>	<i>mit'-i-būs.</i>	<i>mit'-i-būs.</i>

In like manner decline

<i>Ag'-i-lis, active.</i>	<i>Dul'-cis, sweet.</i>	<i>In-col'-ū-mis, safe.</i>
<i>Brē'-vis, short.</i>	<i>For'-tis, brave.</i>	<i>Mi-rab'-i-lis, wonderful.</i>
<i>Cru-dē'-lis, cruel.</i>	<i>Grā'-vis, heavy.</i>	<i>Om'-nis, all.</i>

*Tres*, three, is declined like the plural of *mitis*.

NOTE. Several adjectives of this class have forms also in *us*, *a*, *um*. See § 116.

§ 110. (a.) All comparatives, except *plus*, more, are thus declined:—

\* Pronounced *mish'-e-ā*, etc. See § 12.

Mitior,\* *milder*.*Singular.*

	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	mit'-i-ōr,	mit'-i-ūs,
<i>G.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rīs,	mit-i-ō'-rīs,
<i>D.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rī,	mit-i-ō'-rī,
<i>Ac.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rēm,	mit'-i-ūs,
<i>V.</i>	mit'-i-ōr,	mit'-i-ūs,
<i>Ab.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rē, or -rī.	mit-i-ō'-rē, or -rī.

*Plural.*

	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rēs,	mit-i-ō'-rā,
<i>G.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rūm,	mit-i-ō'-rūm,
<i>D.</i>	mit-i-or'-i-būs,	mit-i-or'-i-būs,
<i>Ac.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rēs,	mit-i-ō'-rā,
<i>V.</i>	mit-i-ō'-rēs,	mit-i-ō'-rā,
<i>Ab.</i>	mit-i-or'-i-būs.	mit-i-or'-i-būs.

In like manner decline

Al-ti-or, <i>higher</i> .	Dul'-ci-or, <i>sweeter</i> .	Gra'-vi-or, <i>heavier</i> .
Au-da'-ci-or, <i>bolder</i> .	Fe-lic'-i-or, <i>happier</i> .	Pru-den'-ti-or, <i>more prudent</i> .
Bre'-vi-or, <i>shorter</i> .	Fe-ro'-ci-or, <i>fiercer</i> .	U-be'-ri-or, <i>more fertile</i> .
Cru-de'-li-or, <i>more cruel</i> .	For'-ti-or, <i>braver</i> .	

Plūs, *more*, is thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
<i>N.</i>	<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> plus,	<i>N.</i> plū'-rēs,	plū'-rā, <i>rarely plu -rī-ā,</i>
<i>G.</i> plū'-rīs,	<i>G.</i> plu'-ri-ūm,	plu'-ri-ūm,
<i>D.</i> _____,	<i>D.</i> plu'-ri-būs,	plu'-ri-būs,
<i>Ac.</i> plus,	<i>Ac.</i> plū'-rēs,	plū'-rā,
<i>V.</i> _____,	<i>V.</i> _____,	_____,
<i>Ab.</i> (plū'-rē, <i>obs.</i> )	<i>Ab.</i> plu'-ri-būs.	plu'-ri-būs.

So, but in the plural number only, *complures*, a great many.

§ 111. III. Other adjectives of the third declension have but one termination in the nominative singular for all genders. They all end in *l*, *r*, *s*, or *x*, and increase in the genitive.

They are thus declined:—

Fēlix, *happy*.*Singular.*

<i>M. &amp; F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> fe'-lix,	fe'-lix,
<i>G.</i> fe-li'-cīs,	fe-li'-cīs,
<i>D.</i> fe-li'-cī,	fe-li'-cī,
<i>Ac.</i> fe-li'-cēm,	fe'-lix,
<i>V.</i> fe'-lix,	fe'-lix,
<i>Ab.</i> fe-li'-cē, or -cī.	fe-li'-cē, or -cī.

\* Pronounced *mish'-e-or*, etc. See § 12.

## Plural.

<i>M. &amp; F.</i>		<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	fe-li'-cēs,	fe-lic'-i-ā,*
<i>G.</i>	fe-lic'-i-ūm,*	fe-lic'-i-ūm,
<i>D.</i>	fe-lic'-i-būs,	fe-lic'-i-būs,
<i>Ac.</i>	fe-li'-cēs,	fe-lic'-i-ā,
<i>V.</i>	fe-li'-cēs,	fe-lic'-i-ā,
<i>Ab.</i>	fe-lic'-i-būs.	fe-lic'-i-būs.

## Præsens, present.

## Singular.

<i>M. &amp; F.</i>		<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	præ'-sens,	præ'-sens,
<i>G.</i>	præ-sen'-tis,	præ-sen'-tis,
<i>D.</i>	præ-sen'-ti,	præ-sen'-ti,
<i>Ac.</i>	præ-sen'-tēm,	præ'-sens,
<i>V.</i>	præ'-sens,	præ'-sens,
<i>Ab.</i>	præ-sen'-tē, or -ti.	præ-sen'-tē, or -ti.

## Plural.

<i>N.</i>	præ-sen'-tēs,	præ-sen'-ti-ā,†
<i>G.</i>	præ-sen'-ti-ūm,	præ-sen'-ti-ūm,
<i>D.</i>	præ-sen'-ti-būs,	præ-sen'-ti-būs,
<i>Ac.</i>	præ-sen'-tēs,	præ-sen'-ti-ā,
<i>V.</i>	præ-sen'-tēs,	præ-sen'-ti-ā,
<i>Ab.</i>	præ-sen'-ti-būs.	præ-sen'-ti-būs.

## In like manner decline

Au'-dax, -ācis, <i>bold.</i>	Par'-ti-ceps, -ipis, <i>part-</i>	Sol'-lers, -tis, <i>sh. evad.</i>
Com'-pos, -itis, <i>master of.</i>	ti-cipant.	Sos'-pes, -itis, <i>safe.</i>
Fē'-rox, -ōcis, <i>fierce.</i>	Præ'-pes, -ētis, <i>swift.</i>	Sup'-plex, -icis, <i>sup-</i>
In'-gens, -tis, <i>huge.</i>	Prū'-dens, -tis, <i>prudent.</i>	pliant.

REMARK. All present participles are declined like *præsens*; as,  
A'-mans. Mō'-nens. Rē'-gens. Ca'-pi-ens. Au'-di-ens.

NOTE. A few adjectives of one termination have redundant forms in *us*, *a*, *um*; see § 116.

## RULES FOR THE OBLIQUE CASES OF ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

## GENITIVE SINGULAR.

§ 112. Most adjectives of the third declension form their genitive singular like nouns of the same termination.

The following may here be specified:—

1. Of those in *es* (cf. § 73) some have *-ētis*; as, *hēbes*, *per-pes*, *præ-pes*, and *tēres*, *-inques* and *luc-uples* have *-ētis*;—some have *-itis*; as, *dives*, *sopes*, and *super-ses*;—some have *-idis*; as, *dīses*, and *rēses*;—*bīpes*, and *tripēs* have *-pēdis*;—*pūbes* has *pu'ēris*, and *impūbes*, *impubēris* and *impūbis*.

\* Pronounced *fe-lish'-e-um* etc See § 10, *Exo.*, and § 7, 3, (b.)

† Pronounced *præ-sen'-shē-a*, etc.

2. *Omphe* and *impos* have *-ōtis*, and *exos*, *exossis*.—*Exlec* has *exlēgia*, *pernox* has *pernoxitis* (§ 78), *præcox*, *præcōcis*, and *reduz*, *reducis*.—*Cæubs* has *cælis* (§ 77); *intercus*, *intercūtis*, and *vētus*, *vetēris*. Those in *ceps* which are compounds of *cāput*, have *-cipitis*; as, *anceps*, *præceps* (§ 78, 1); but the compounds of *ceps* from *cāpio* have *-apis*; as, *particeps*, *participis*.—Those in *cor*, compounds of *cor*, have *-cordis*; as, *concor*, *concordis* (§ 71, Exc. 2).—*Mēmor* and *immēmor* have *-ōris*.

### ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

§ 113. 1. Adjectives which have *e* in the nominative singular neuter have only *i* in the ablative.

Exc. 1. The ablatives *bimestre*, *cæleste*, and *perenne* are found in Ovid, and *cognominē* in Virgil.

2. Comparatives and participles in *ns*, when used as participles, especially in the ablative absolute, have rather *e* than *i*; but participial adjectives in *ns* have rather *i* than *e*.

3. Adjectives of one termination have either *e* or *i* in the ablative.

Exc. 2. The following adjectives of one termination have only *e* in the ablative:—

*Bicorpor*, *bipes*, *cælebs*, *compos*, *dæses*, *discolor*, *hospes*, *impos*, *impubes*, *juvénis*, *locuples*, *pauper*, *princeps*, *pūber* or *pūbes*, *sénex*, *sospes*, *superstes*, *tricorpor*, *tricuspis*, and *tripes*.

Exc. 3. The following adjectives of one termination have only *i* in the ablative:—

*Anceps*, *concor*, *discors*, *hēbes*, *immēmor*, *iners*, *ingens*, *inops*, *mēmor*, *par*, *præceps*, *rérens*, *rēpens*, *vigil*, and most adjectives in *x*, especially those in *plex*.

REM. 1. *Inerte* occurs in Ovid, *recente* in Ovid and Cællus, and *præcipe* in Ennius.

REM. 2. *Præsens*, when used of things, makes the ablative in *i*; when used of persons, it has *e*.

### NOMINATIVE, ACCUSATIVE, AND GENITIVE PLURAL

§ 114. 1. The neuter of the nominative and accusative plural ends in *ia*, and the genitive plural of all genders in *ium*; but comparatives in *or*, with *vētus*, old, and *uber*, fertile, have *a*, and *um*.

2. The accusative plural of masculine and feminine adjectives, whose genitive plural ends in *ium*, anciently ended in *is* or *ēs*, instead of *ēs*. Cf. § 85, Exc. 1.

Exc. 1. Those adjectives that have only *e* in the ablative singular, have *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. Compounds of *fācio*, *cāpio*, and of such nouns as make *um* in their genitive plural, with *celer*, *compar*, *cicur*, *diræ*, *mēmor*, *immēmor*, *præcep*, *supplex*, and *vigil*, make their genitive plural in *um*.

Exc. 3. *Dis*, *locuples*, *sms*, and *insms* have either *um* or *ium*. The poets and the later prose writers sometimes form the genitive plural of other adjectives and of participles in *ns*, by syncope, in *um*, instead of *ium*; as, *cælistum*, Virg. Ovid, etc.

## IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

## § 115. Some adjectives are defective, others redundant

## DEFECTIVE ADJECTIVES.

1. (a.) Many adjectives denoting personal qualities or attributes want the neuter gender, unless when occasionally joined to a neuter substantive used figuratively. Such are the following :—

Bicorpor, bipes, cælebs, compos, consors, degēner, dives, impos, impūbes, industrius, inops, insons, invitus, juvénis, locuples, mēnor, pauper, particeps princeps, pūber, or pūbes, rēdux, sēnex, sons, sospes, superstes, supplex, triecipor, vigil.

(b.) *Victrix* and *ultrix* are feminine in the singular, seldom neuter; in the plural, they are feminine and neuter. Such verbals partake of the nature both of substantives and adjectives, and correspond to masculines in *tor*. See § 102, 6. (u.)

2. The following want the genitive plural, and are rarely used in the neuter gender :—

Concōlor, dēses, hēbes, perpes, rēses, tēres, versicōlor.

3. The names of months, which are properly adjectives, have only the masculine and feminine genders.

4. Some adjectives are wholly indeclinable.

Such are *frūgi*, temperate; *nēquam*, worthless; *sūt* or *sūtis*, sufficient; the plurals *aliquot*, *tōt*, *quōt*, *totidem*, *quotquot*; and the cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum* inclusive, and also *mille*. Cf. § 118, 1, and 6, (b.)

5. The following adjectives are used only in certain cases :—

*Billicem*, acc.; *doubly-tissued*. *Cetēra*, *cetērum*, *the rest*, wants the nom. sing. masc. *Decemplicem*, acc.; *tenfold*. *Exspes*, nom.; *hopeless*. *Inquies*, nom.; *—ētem*, acc.; *—ēte*, abl.; *restless*. *Mactus*, and *inactio*, nom.; *macto*, acc.; *honored*; *—macti*, nom. plur. *Necesse*, and *necessum*, nom., acc.; *necessary*. *Plus*, nom., acc.; *plūris*, gen.; *more*; —pl. *plūres*, -a, nom. acc.; *—ium* gen.; *ibus*, dat., abl. Cf. § 110. *Postēra*, *postērum*, *coming after*, wants the nom. sing. masc. *Pōtis*, nom. sing. and pl., all genders; *able*. *Pōte*, nom. sing., for *potest*; *possible*. *Sep-templēcis*, gen.; *—ce*, abl.; *seven-fold*. *Siremps*, and *sirempse*, nom. and acc., *alike*. *Tantundem*, nom. acc.; *tantidem*, gen.; *tantandem*, acc.; *so much*. *Trilicem*, acc.; *trebly-tissued*; *trilices*, nom. and acc. pl.

## REDUNDANT ADJECTIVES.

§ 116. The following adjectives are redundant in termination and declension. Those marked *r* are more rarely used.

*Aclivis*, and -us, *r*, *ascending*.  
*Auxiliāris*, and -ius, *auxiliary*.  
*Bijūgis*, and -us, *yoked two together*.  
*Declivis*, and -us, *r*, *descending*.  
*Exanimis*, and -us, *r*, *lifeless*.  
*Hilaris*, and -us, *cheerful*.  
*Imbecillis*, *r*, and -us, *weak*.  
*Impūbes*, and -is, *r*, -is or -ēris not  
*grown up*.  
*Inermis*, and -us, *r*, *unarmed*.  
*Unbridled* and -is, *unbridled*.

*Inquies*, and -ētus, *restless*.  
*Joculāris*, and -ius, *r*, *laughable*.  
*Multijūgis*, *r*, and -us, *yoked many to-gether*.  
*Opulens*, and -lentus, *rich*.  
*Præcox*, -cōquis, and -cōquus, *early ripe*.  
*Proclivis*, and -us, *r*, *sloping*.  
*Quadrījūgis*, and -us, *yoked four to-gether*.  
*Semianimis*, and -us, *half alive*.

Semiarmis, and -us, *half armed*.  
 Semisomnis, and -us, r, *half asleep*.  
 Singularis, and -ius, *single*.

Sublimis, and -us, r, *high*.  
 Unanimis, r, and -us, *unanimous*.  
 Violens, r, and -lentus, *violent*.

To these may be added some adjectives in *er* and *is*; as, *saluber* and *-bris* *celeber* and *-bris*. Cf. § 108, R. 1.

### NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ 117. Numeral adjectives are divided into three principal classes—*Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, and *Distributive*.

I. Cardinal numbers are those which simply denote the number of things, in answer to the question *Quot?* 'How many?' They are,

1. Unus,	<i>one.</i>	I.
2. Duo,	<i>two.</i>	II.
3. Tres,	<i>three.</i>	III.
4. Quattuor,	<i>four.</i>	III. or IV.
5. Quinque,	<i>five.</i>	V.
6. Sex,	<i>six.</i>	VI.
7. Septem,	<i>seven.</i>	VII.
8. Octo,	<i>eight.</i>	VIII.
9. Nōvem,	<i>nine.</i>	VIII. or IX.
10. Dēcem,	<i>ten.</i>	X.
11. Undēcim,	<i>eleven.</i>	XI.
12. Duodēcim,	<i>twelve.</i>	XII.
13. Tredēcim,	<i>thirteen.</i>	XIII.
14. Quatuordēcim,	<i>fourteen.</i>	XIII. or XIV.
15. Quindēcim,	<i>fifteen.</i>	XV.
16. Sedēcim, or sexdēcim,	<i>sixteen.</i>	XVI.
17. Septendēcim,	<i>seventeen.</i>	XVII.
18. Octodēcim,	<i>eighteen.</i>	XVIII.
19. Novendēcim,	<i>nineteen.</i>	XVIII. or XIX.
20. Viginti,	<i>twenty.</i>	XX.
21. Viginti unus, or unus et viginti, }	<i>twenty-one.</i>	XXI.
22. Viginti duo, or duo et viginti, etc., }	<i>twenty-two.</i>	XXII.
30. Triginta,	<i>thirty.</i>	XXX.
40. Quadrāginta,	<i>forty.</i>	XXXX. or XL.
50. Quinquaginta,	<i>fifty.</i>	L.
60. Sexaginta,	<i>sixty.</i>	LX.
70. Septuaginta,	<i>seventy.</i>	LXX.
80. Octoginta, or octuaginta,	<i>eighty.</i>	LXXX.
90. Nōnāginta,	<i>ninety.</i>	LXXX. or XC.
100. Centum,	<i>a hundred.</i>	C.
101. Centum unus, or centum et unus, etc., }	<i>a hundred and one</i>	CI.
200. Dūcenti, -æ, a,	<i>two hundred.</i>	CC.
300. Trēcenti, etc.,	<i>three hundred.</i>	CCC.
400. Quadringenti,	<i>four hundred.</i>	CCCC. or CD.
500. Quingenti,	<i>five hundred.</i>	DC. or D.
600. Sexcenti,	<i>six hundred.</i>	DC. or CC.
700. Septingenti,	<i>seven hundred.</i>	DCC. or DCC.
800. Octingenti,	<i>eight hundred.</i>	DCCC. or DCCC.
900. Nongenti,	<i>nine hundred.</i>	DCCC. or DCCC.
1000. Mille,	<i>a thousand.</i>	CI. or M.
2000. Duo millia, or bis mille, }	<i>two thousand.</i>	CICICIC, or MM.



5000	Quinque millia, or quinquies mille,	five thousand.	100
10000	Decem millia, or decies mille,	ten thousand.	CCXXX.
50000	Quinquaginta millia, or quinquagies mille,	fifty thousand.	10000.
100000	Centum millia, or centies mille,	a hundred thousand.	CCCLXXX.

§ 118. 1. The first three cardinal numbers are declined; from four to a hundred inclusive they are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bonus*.

For the declension of *unus* and *tres*, see §§ 107 and 109.

*Duo* is thus declined:—

Plural.

M.	F.	N.
N. <i>du'-o,</i>	<i>du'-æ,</i>	<i>du'-o,</i>
G. <i>du'-ō'-rum,</i>	<i>du'-ā'-rum,</i>	<i>du'-ō'-rum,</i>
D. <i>du'-ī'-bus,</i>	<i>du'-ā'-bus,</i>	<i>du'-ō'-bus,</i>
Ac. <i>du'-os, or du'-o,</i>	<i>du'-as,</i>	<i>du'-o,</i>
V. <i>du'-o,</i>	<i>du'-æ,</i>	<i>du'-o,</i>
Ab. <i>du'-ō'-bus.</i>	<i>du'-ā'-bus.</i>	<i>du'-ō'-bus.</i>

REMARK 1. *Duorum*, *duarum*, are often contracted into *duum*, especially in compounds; as, *duumvir*, and when joined with *millium*.—*Ambo*, both, which partakes of the nature of a numeral and of a pronoun, is declined like *duo*.

2. The cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, are used in the plural only.

REM. 2. The plural of *unus* is used with nouns which have no singular, or whose singular has a different sense from the plural; as, *una nuptia*, one marriage; *una castra*, one camp. It is used also with nouns denoting several things considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of clothes. So also, when it takes the signification of "alone" or "the same"; as, *uni Ubi*, the Ubians alone; *unis moribus vivere*,—with the same manners.

3. (a.) Thirteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, and nineteen, are often expressed by two numbers, the greater of which usually precedes, united by *et*; thus, *decem et tres*, *dñcem et novem*, or, omitting *et*, *decem novem*. *Octodécim* has no good authority. See *infra*, 4.

(b.) From twenty to a hundred, the smaller number with *et* is put first, or the greater without *et*; as, *unus et viginti*, or *viginti unus*. Above one hundred, the greater precedes, with or without *et*; as, *centum et unus*, or *centum unus*; *trecenti sexaginta sex*, or *trecenti et sexaginta sex*. *Et* is never twice used, but the poets sometimes take *ac*, *atque*, or *que*, instead of *et*.

4. For eighteen, twenty-eight, etc., and for nineteen, twenty-nine, etc. (excepting sixty-eight, sixty-nine, and ninety-eight), a subtractive expression is more frequent than the additive form; as, *duodeviginti* two from twenty; *undeviginti*, one from twenty; *duodeviginti*, *undeviginti*, etc. Neither *un* (*unus*) nor *duo* can be declined in these combinations. The additive forms for thirty-eight, etc. to ninety-eight, and for forty-nine, etc. to ninety-nine, except those for sixty-nine, seem not to occur.

5. (a.) Thousands are generally expressed by prefixing the smaller cardinal numbers to *millia*: as, *decem millia*, ten thousand; *ducentia millia*, two hundred thousand. As there is in Latin no unit above *mille*, a thousand, the higher units of modern numeration are expressed by prefixing the numeral adverbs to the

combination *centēna millia*; as, *decies centēna millia*, a million; *centies centēna millia*, ten millions. In such combinations *centēna millia* is sometimes omitted; as, *decies*, scil. *centēna millia*.

(b.) The poets sometimes make use of numeral adverbs in expressing smaller numbers; as, *bis sex* for *duodēcim*; *bis centum* for *ducenti*, etc.

6. *Mille* is used either as a substantive or as an adjective.

(a.) When taken substantively, it is indeclinable in the singular number and, in the plural, has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, etc.; as, *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum*, two thousand men, etc. When *mille* is a substantive, the things numbered are put in the genitive, as in the preceding examples, unless a declined numeral comes between; as, *habuit tria millia trecentos milites*.

(b.) As an adjective, *mille* is plural only, and indeclinable: as, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *cum bis mille hominibus*, with two thousand men.

7. Capitals were used by the Romans to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X., which are, therefore, called *Numeral Letters*. I. denotes *one*; V. *five*; X. *ten*; L. *fifty*; and C. *a hundred*. By the various combinations of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

(a.) The repetition of a numeral letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two*; III. *three*; XX. *twenty*; XXX. *thirty*; CC. *two hundred*, etc. But V. and L. are never repeated.

(b.) When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater value, the less takes away its value from the greater; but being placed after, it adds its value to the greater; thus,

IV. Four.	V. Five.	VI. Six.
IX. Nine.	X. Ten.	XI. Eleven.
XL. Forty.	L. Fifty.	LI. Sixty.
XC. Ninety.	C. A hundred.	CX. A hundred and ten.

(c.) A *thousand* was marked thus, CIO, which, in later times, was contracted into M. *Five hundred* is marked thus, IO, or, by contraction, D.

(d.) The annexing of the *apostrophus* or inverted C (∩) to IO makes its value ten times greater; thus, IO∩ marks *five thousand*; and IO∩∩, *fifty thousand*.

(e.) The prefixing of C, together with the annexing of ∩, to the number CIO, makes its value ten times greater; thus, CCIO∩ denotes *ten thousand*; and CCCIO∩∩, *a hundred thousand*. The Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no further in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, CCCIO∩∩, CCCIO∩∩, signified *two hundred thousand*, etc.

(f.) We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn over the top of the numeral letters. Thus, III. denotes *three thousand*; X̄, *the thousand*.

§ 119. II. *Ordinal numbers* are such as denote order or rank and answer to the question, *Quotus*? Which of the numbers? They all end in *us*, and are declined like *bōnus*; as, *primus*, first; *secundus*, second.

III. *Distributive numbers* are those which indicate an equal division among several persons or things, and answer to the question, *Quotēni*? How many apiece? as, *singūli*, one by one, or, one to each; *bini*, two by two, or two to each, etc. They are always used in the plural, and are declined like the plural of *bōnus*, except that they usually have *um* instead of *orum* in the genitive plural. Cf. § 105, R. 4.

The following table contains the ordinal and distributive numbers, and the corresponding numeral adverbs, which answer to the question, *Quoties? How many times?*—

<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>
1. Primus, <i>first.</i>	Singŭli, <i>one by one.</i>	Semel, <i>once.</i>
2. Sēcundus, <i>second.</i>	Bīni, <i>two by two.</i>	Bis, <i>twice.</i>
3. Tertius, <i>third.</i>	Terni, <i>or trini.</i>	Ter, <i>thrice.</i>
4. Quartus, <i>fourth.</i>	Quaterni.	Quāter, <i>four times.</i>
5. Quintus, <i>fifth.</i>	Quīni.	Quinquies.
6. Sextus, <i>sixth.</i>	Sēni.	Sexies.
7. Septimus, <i>seventh.</i>	Septēni.	Septies.
8. Octāvus, <i>eighth.</i>	Octōni.	Octies.
9. Nōnus, <i>ninth.</i>	Novēni.	Novies.
10. Dēcimus, <i>tenth, etc.</i>	Dēni.	Dēcies.
11. Undecimus.	Undēni.	Undecies.
12. Duodecimus.	Duodēni.	Duodecies.
13. Tertius decimus.	Terni dēni.	Terdecies.
14. Quartus decimus.	Quaterni dēni.	Quatuordecies.
15. Quintus decimus.	Quīni dēni.	Quindecies.
16. Sextus decimus.	Sēni dēni.	Sedecies.
17. Septimus decimus.	Septēni dēni.	Decies et septies
18. Octāvus decimus.	Octōni dēni.	Duodevicies.
19. Nōnus decimus.	Novēni dēni.	Undevicies.
20. { Vicesimus, or } vigesimus. }	Vicēni.	Vicies.
21. Vicesimus primus.	Vicēni singŭli.	Semel et vices.
22. Vicesimus secundus.	Vicēni bini, etc.	Bis et vices, etc.
30. { Tricesimus, or } tricesimus. }	Tricēni.	Tricies.
40. Quadragesimus.	Quadragēni.	Quadrages.
50. Quinquagesimus.	Quinquagēni.	Quinquages.
60. Sexagesimus.	Sexagēni.	Sexages.
70. Septuagesimus.	Septuagēni.	Septuages.
80. Octogesimus.	Octogēni.	Octogies.
90. Nonagesimus.	Nonagēni.	Nonages.
100. Centesimus.	Centēni.	Centies.
200. Ducentesimus.	Ducēni.	Ducenties.
300. Trecentesimus.	Trecēni, or trecentēni.	{ Trecenties, or } tricenties. }
400. Quadringentesimus	{ Quadringēni, or } quadringentēni. }	Quadringenties.
500. Quingentesimus.	Quingēni.	Quingenties.
600. Sexcentesimus.	Sexcēni, or sexcentēni.	Sexcenties.
700. Septingentesimus.	Septingēni.	Septingenties.
800. Octingentesimus.	Octingēni.	Octingenties.
900. Nongentesimus.	Nongēni.	Nongingenties.
1000. Millesimus.	{ Millēni, or } singŭla millia.	Millies.
2000. Bis millesimus.	{ Bis millēni, or } bina millia. }	Bis millies.

§ 120. 1. In the ordinals, instead of *primus*, *prior* is used, if only two are spoken of. *Alter* is often used for *secundus*.

2 (a.) From thirteenth to nineteenth, the smaller number is usually put first, without *et*; as, *tertius decimus*, but sometimes the greater with or without *et*; as, *decimus et tertius*, or *decimus tertius*.

(b.) Twenty-first, thirty-first, etc., are often expressed by *unus et vicesimus*, *unus et tricesimus*, etc., one and twentieth, etc.; and twenty-second, etc., by *duo*, or *alter et vicesimus*, etc., in which *duo* is not changed. In the other compound numbers, the larger precedes without *et*, or the smaller with *et*; as, *vicesimus quartus*, or *quartus et vicesimus*.

(c.) For eighteenth, etc., to fifty-eighth, and for nineteen, etc., to fifty-ninth, the subtractive forms, *duodevicesimus*, etc., and *undevicesimus*, etc., are often used.

8. In the distributives, eighteen, thirty-eight, forty-eight, and nineteen and twenty-nine, are often expressed by the subtractives *duodevicensi*, etc., *undevicensi*, etc.

4. (a.) Distributives are sometimes used by the poets for cardinal numbers; as, *binæ ac icula*, two darts. Virg. So likewise in prose, with nouns that want the singular; as, *binæ nuptiæ*, two weddings.

(b.) The singular of some distributives is used in the sense of multiplicatives; as, *binus*, twofold. So *ternus*, *quinus*, *septēnus*.

5. In the numeral adverbs, for the intermediate numbers 21, 22, etc., the larger number also may be put first, either with or without *et*; and for twenty-eight times and thirty-nine times, *duodevicesies* and *undequadragesies* are found.

### § 121. To the preceding classes may be added the following:—

1. *Multiplicatives*, which denote how many fold, in answer to the question, *quotāplex*? They all end in *plex*, and are declined like *fēlix*; as,

Simplex, *single*.

Quincūplex, *fivefold*.

Dūplex, *twofold, or double*.

Septēplex, *sevenfold*.

Triplex, *threefold*.

Decēplex, *tenfold*.

Quadrūplex, *fourfold*.

Centūplex, *a hundred fold*.

2. *Proportionals*, which denote how many times one thing is greater than another; as, *dūplus*, *a, um*, twice as great; so *tripplus*, *quadrūplus*, *octūplus*, *decēplus*. They are generally found only in the neuter.

3. *Temporals*, which denote time; as, *binus*, *a, um*, two years old; so *trimus*, *quadrīmus*, etc. Also, *biennis*, lasting two years, biennial; so *quadrīennis*, *quinquennis*, etc. So also, *bimestris*, of two months' continuance; *trimestris*, etc., *biduus*, etc. To these may be added certain nouns, compounds of *annus* and *dies* with the cardinal numbers; as, *biennium*, *triennium*, etc., a period of two, etc. years; *biduum*, *triduum*, etc., a period of two, etc. days.

4. Adjectives in *arius*, derived from the distributives, and denoting of how many equal parts or units a thing consists; as, *binarius*, of two parts; *ternarius*, etc.

5. *Interrogatives*; as, *quot*, how many? *quotus*, of what number? *quotēni*, how many each? *quoties*, how many times? Their correlatives are *tot*, *totidem*, so many; *aliquot*, some; which, with *quot*, are indeclinable; and the adverbs, *toties*, so often; *aliquoties*, several times.

6. *Fractional expressions*, which denote the parts of a thing. These are expressed in Latin by *pars* with *dimidia*, *tertia*, *quarta*, etc. Thus,  $\frac{1}{2}$ , *dimidia pars*;  $\frac{1}{3}$ , *tertia pars*, etc. When the number of parts into which a thing is divided exceeds by one only the parts mentioned, as in  $\frac{1}{2}$ , etc. the fraction is expressed simply by *duæ*, *tres*, etc. *partes*, denoting two out of three, three out of four, etc.

## COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 122. 1. Adjectives may be divided into two classes—those which denote a *variable*, and those which denote an *invariable*, quality or limitation.

Thus, *bōnus*, good, *altus*, high, and *opācus*, dark, denote variable attributes; but *cæcus*, brazen, *triplex*, threefold, and *diurnus*, daily, do not admit of different degrees in their signification.

2. The *comparison* of an adjective is the expression of its quality in different degrees.

3. There are three degrees of comparison—the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

4. The positive simply denotes a quality, without reference to other degrees of the same quality; as, *altus*, high; *mitis*, mild.

5. The comparative denotes that a quality belongs to one of two objects, or sets of objects, in a greater degree than to the other; as, *altior*, higher; *mitior*, milder.

6. The superlative denotes that a quality belongs to one of several objects, or sets of objects, in a greater degree than to any of the rest; as, *altissimus*, highest; *mitissimus*, mildest.

REM. 1. Sometimes also the comparative denotes that a quality, at different times or in other circumstances, belongs in different degrees to the same object; as, *est sapientior quam fuit*, he is wiser than he was.

REM. 2. The comparative sometimes expresses the proportion between two qualities of the same object; as, *est doctior quam sapientior*, he is more learned than wise; that is, his learning is greater than his wisdom.

REM. 3. The comparative is also used elliptically instead of our 'too' or 'rather'; as, *vivit liberius*, he lives too freely, or, rather freely. Cf. § 256, R. 9

REM. 4. The superlative, like the positive with *per*, (cf. § 127, 2), often indicates a high degree of a quality without direct comparison with the same quality in other objects; as, *amicus carissimus*, a very dear friend.

§ 123. 1. Degrees of a quality *inferior* to the positive may be denoted by the adverbs *minus*, less; *minime*, least, prefixed to the positive; as, *jucundus*, pleasant; *minus jucundus*, less pleasant; *minime jucundus*, least pleasant.

2. A small degree of a quality is indicated by *sub* prefixed to the positive; as *amarus*, bitter; *subamarus*, bitterish, or, somewhat bitter.

3. An *equal* degree of a quality may be denoted by *tam* followed by *quam*, *æque* followed by *ac*, *sic* followed by *ut*, etc.; as, *hæbes, æque ac pæcus*, as stupid as a brute.

§ 124. 1. The comparative and superlative in Latin, as in English, are denoted either by peculiar terminations, or by certain adverbs prefixed to the positive. Cf. § 127, 1.

2. The terminational comparative ends in *ior*, *ior*, *ius*; the terminational superlative in *issimus*, *issima*, *issimum*.

3. These terminations are added to the root of the positive; as, *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*; high, higher, highest. *mitis*, *mitior*, *mitissimus*; mild, milder, mildest. *felix*, (gen. *felicitis*), *felicior*, *felicissimus*; happy, happier, happiest.

In like manner compare

*Arc'-tus*, strait.

*Cru-dē'-lis*, cruel.

*Ca'-pax*, capacious.

*Ca'-rus*, dear.

*Fer'-ti-lis*, fertile.

*Clē'-mens*, (gen. -tis) merciful.

*Er'-tus*, learned.

*Lē'-vis*, light.

*In'-ers*, (gen. -tis), sluggish.

## IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

§ 125. 1. Adjectives in *er* form their superlative by adding *rimus* to that termination; as, *acer*, active; gen. *acris*; comparative, *acrior*; superlative, *acerrimus*.

In like manner, *pauper*, *pauperimus*. *Vetus* has a similar superlative, *veterrimus*, from the old collateral form *veter*.

2. Six adjectives in *lis* form their superlative by adding *limus* to the root:—

Facilis,	facilior,	facillimus,	easy.
Difficilis,	difficilior,	difficillimus,	difficult.
Gracilis,	gracilior,	gracillimus,	slender.
Humilis,	humilior,	humillimus,	low.
Similis,	similior,	simillimus,	like.
Dissimilis,	dissimilior,	dissimillimus,	unlike.

*Imbecillus* or *imbecillis*, weak, has two forms, *imbecillissimus* and *imbecillimus*.

3. (a.) Five adjectives in *ficus* (from *facio*) derive their comparatives and superlatives from supposed forms in *ens*:—

Beneficus,	beneficentior,	beneficentissimus,	beneficent.
Honorificus,	honorificentior,	honorificentissimus,	honorable.
Magnificus,	magnificentior,	magnificentissimus,	splendid.
Munificus,	munificentior,	munificentissimus,	liberal.
Maleficus,	maleficentior,	maleficentissimus,	hurtful.

(b.) Adjectives in *dicens* and *volens* form their comparatives and superlatives regularly; but instead of those positives, forms in *dicus* and *volus* are more common; as,

*Maledicens* or *dicus*, *maledicentior*, *maledicentissimus*, *slanderosus*.

*Benevolens*, or *volus*, *benevolentior*, *benevolentissimus*, *benevolent*.

4. These five have regular comparatives, but irregular superlatives:—

Dexter,	dexterior,	dextimus,	right.
Extēra, (fem.)	exterior,	extrēmus, or extimus,	outward.
Postēra, (fem.)	posterior,	postrēmus, or postūmus,	hind.
Inferus,	inferior,	infimus, or imus,	below.
Supērus,	superior,	suprēmus, or summus,	above.

REMARK 1. The nominative singular of *postēra* does not occur in the masculine, and that of *extēra* wants good authority.

5. The following are very irregular in comparison:—

Bōnus,	melior,	optimus,	good,	better,	best.
Mālus,	pējor,	pessimus,	bad,	worse,	worst.
Magnus,	mājor,	maximus,	great,	greater,	greatest.
Parvus,	minor,	minimus,	little,	less,	least.
Multus,	—	plurimus,	much, more, most.		
Multa,	—	plurima,			
Multum,	plus,*	plurimum,			
Nēquam,	nequior,	nequissimus,	worthless, etc.		
Frūgi,	frugalior,	frugalissimus,	frugal, etc.		

REMARK 2. All these, except *magnus*, whose regular forms are contracted, either from their comparatives and superlatives from obsolete adjectives, or take them from other words of similar signification.

## DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

§ 126. 1. Seven adjectives want the positive:—

Citior, citissimus,	nearer.	Prior, primus,	former.
Detrior, deterrimus,	worse.	Propior, proximus,	nearer.
Intior, intimus,	inner.	Uterior, ultimus,	farther.
Osior, cississimus,	swifter.		

\* See § 110.

## 2. Eight want the terminational comparative :—

Consultus, consultissimus, *skilful*.  
 Inclutus, inclutissimus, *renowned*.  
 Invictus, invictissimus, *invincible*.  
 Invitus, invitissimus, *unwilling*.  
 Meritus, meritissimus, (very rare,) *deserving*.

Par, parissimus, (very rare), *equal*.  
 Persuâsus, persuasissimum (neuter) *persuaded*.  
 Sâcer, sacerrimus, *sacred*.

## 3. Eight have very rarely the terminational comparative :—

Apricus, apricissimus, *sunny*.  
 Bellus, bellissimus, *fine*.  
 Cômis, comissimus, *courteous*.  
 Diversus, diversissimus, *different*.

Falsus, falsissimus, *false*.  
 Fidus, fidissimus, *faithful*.  
 Nôvus, novissimus, *new*.  
 Vêtus, veterrimus, *old*.

## 4. The following want the terminational superlative :—

Adolescens, adolescentior, *young*.  
 Agrestis, agrestior, *rustic*.  
 Alacer, alacrior, *active*.  
 Ater, atrior, *black*.  
 Cæcus, cæcior, *blind*.  
 Dêses, desidiior, *inactive*.  
 Diurnus, diurnior, *lasting*.  
 Infinitus, infinitior, *unlimited*.  
 Ingens, ingentior, *great*.  
 Jejûnus, jejunior, *fasting*.  
 Juvênis, junior, *young*.  
 Licens, licentior, *unrestrained*.  
 Longinquus, longinquier, *distant*.  
 Opimus, opimior, *rich*.

Proclivis, proclivior, *sloping*.  
 Prônus, pronior, *bending down*.  
 Protervus, protervior, *violent*.  
 — sequior, *worse*.  
 Propinquus, propinquier, *near*.  
 Salutâris, salutariior, *salutary*.  
 Sâtis, sufficiens ; satius, *preferable*.  
 Sâtur, saturior, *full*.  
 Sênex, senior, *old*.  
 Silvestris, silvestrior, *woody*.  
 Sinister, sinisterior, *left*.  
 Supinus, supinior, *lying on the back*.  
 Surdus, surdior, *deaf*.  
 Têres, teretior, *round*.

REMARK 1. The superlative of *juvênis* and *adolescens* is supplied by *minimus nâtu*, youngest ; and that of *sênex* by *maximus nâtu*, oldest. The comparatives *minor nâtu* and *mâior nâtu* sometimes also occur.

REM. 2. Most adjectives also in *ilis*, *ilis*, *âlis*, and *bilis*, have no terminational superlative.

## 5. Many variable adjectives have no terminational comparative or superlative. Such are,

(a.) Adjectives in *bundus*, *imus*, *inus* (except *dirinus*), *orus*, most in *ivus*, and in *us* pure (except *-quus*.) Yet *arbitus*, *assiduus*, *egregius*, *exiguus*, *industrius*, *perpetuus*, *pius*, *strenuus*, and *vacuus*, have sometimes a terminational comparison so, dropping *i*, *noxior*, *innoxior*, *sobrior*.

(b.) The following—*almus*, *calvus*, *cânus*, *cicur*, *claudus*, *degêner*, *delirus*, *dispar*, *egênus*, *impar*, *impiger*, *incitus*, *lîcer*, *mêmor*, *mirus*, *nûdus*, *præcox*, *præditus*, *rûcis*, *salvus*, *sospes*, *superstes*, *vulgâris*, and some others.

§ 127. 1. The comparative and superlative may also be formed by prefixing to the positive the adverbs *mâgis*, more, and *maxîme*, most ; as, *idoneus*, fit ; *magis idoneus*, *maxîme idoneus*.

2. Various degrees of a quality above the positive are expressed by *admôltum*, *aliquanto*, *apprime*, *bêne*, *imprimis*, *multum*, *oppido*, *perquam*, and *valde*, and also by *per* compounded with the positive ; as, *difficilis*, difficult ; *perdifficilis*, very difficult. To a few adjectives *præ* is in like manner prefixed ; as, *prædûrus*, very hard.

3. The force of the comparative is increased by prefixing *etiâ*, even, still, or yet ; and that of both comparative and superlative by

prefixing *longe* or *multo*, much, far; as, *longe nobilissimus*; *longe melior* *iter multo facilius*; *multo maxima pars*.

4. *Vel*, 'even', and *quam*, with or without *possum*, 'as much as possible', before the superlative, render it more emphatic; as, *Cicero vel optimus oratorum Romanorum*. *Quam maximum potest militum numerum colligit*, *quam doctissimus*, extremely learned; *quam celerrime*, as speedily as possible.

NOTE 1. Instead of *quam* with *possum*, *quantus* is sometimes used, in the same case as the superlative; as, *Quantis maximis potuit itineribus contenti*.

NOTE 2. *Unus*, with or without *omnium*, is sometimes added to superlatives to increase their force; as, *Hoc ego uno omnium plurimum utor*. Cic. *Urbem unam mihi amicissimam declinavi*, Id. It is used in like manner with *excello*.

5. All adjectives whose signification admits of different degrees, if they have no terminational comparison, may be compared by means of adverbs.

6. Instead of the comparative and superlative degrees, the positive with the prepositions *prae*, *ante*, *præter*, or *supra*, is sometimes used; as, *præ nobis beatius*, happier than we. Cic. *Ante alius pulchritudine insignis*, most beautiful. Liv. Sometimes the preposition is used in connection with the superlative; as, *Ante alios pulcherrimus omnes*. Virg.

7. Among adjectives which denote an invariable quality or limitation, and which, therefore cannot be compared, are those denoting matter, time, number, possession, country, part, interrogation; also compounds of *jūgun*, *omnis*, *gēro*, and *fēro*, and many others.

## DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 128. Derivative adjectives are formed chiefly from nouns, from other adjectives, and from verbs.

I. Those derived from nouns and adjectives are called *denominatives*. The following are the principal classes:—

1. (a.) The termination *ēns*, added to the root, denotes the material of which a thing is made, and sometimes similarity; as, *aureus*, golden; *argenteus*, of silver; *ligneus*, wooden; *vitreus*, of glass; *virgineus*, maidenly; from *aurum*, *argentum*, etc. See § 9, Rem. 3.

(b.) Some adjectives of this kind have a double form in *neus* and *nus*; as, *burneus* and *eburnus*, of ivory.

(c.) The termination *inus* has the same meaning; as, *adamantinus*, of adamant; *cedrinus*, of cedar; from *adamas* and *cedrus*. So, also, *ēnus*; as, *terrēnus*, of earth, from *terra*.

(d.) The terminations *ēns* or *ius* (Greek *ιος*), and also *teus*, belong to adjectives formed from Greek names of men, and denote 'of' or 'pertaining to'; as, *Achilleus*, *Sophocleus*, *Aristotelius*, *Platonicius*; *Pythagoreus* and *Pythagoricus*; *Homerius* and *Homericius*. Names in *ias* make adjectives in *iacus*; as, *Archias*, *Archiacus*. Sometimes, though rarely in the purest Latin authors, adjectives in *ēus* or *ius* are formed from Latin names; as, *Marcellia* or *-ea*, a festival in honor of the Marcelli.

2. (a.) The terminations *ālis*, *āris*, *ārius*, *ilis*, *atilis*, *teius*, *teus*, *ius*, *ēns*, and *nus*, denote 'belonging' 'pertaining,' or 'relating to'; as, *capitālis*, relating to the life; from *caput*.



So *comitiālis*, *regālīs*; *Apollināris*, *consulāris*, *populāris*; *argentarius*; *ciuitis*, *hostilis*, *iuvēnilis*; *aquatilis*, *fluvialilis*; *tribunicus*, *patricius*; *bellicus*, *civicus*, *Germanicus*; *accusatorius*, *imperatorius*, *regius*; *Hectorius*; *caninus*, *equinus*, *ferinus*; *maeculanus*; from *comitia*, *rex*, *Apollo*, *consul*, *populus*, *argentum*, *civis*, etc.

(b.) The termination *ilis* sometimes expresses character; as, *hostilis*, hostile *puerilis*, boyish; from *hostis* and *puer*.

(c.) The termination *inus* belongs especially to derivatives from names of animals, and other living beings.

3. The termination *arius*, as a substantive, scil. *fāber*, etc., generally denotes profession or occupation; as, *argentarius*, a silversmith; from *argentum*;—*coriarius*, *statuarius*; from *corium* and *status*. When added to numeral adjectives, it denotes how many equal parts a thing contains. See § 121, 4.

4. The terminations *osus* and *lentus* denote abundance, fulness; as, *animosus*, full of courage; *frivolentus*, given to fraud; from *animus* and *fraus*. So *lapidosus*, *vinosus*, *portuosus*, *turbulentus*, *sanguinolentus*, *violentus*. Before *lentus*, a connecting vowel is inserted, which is commonly *u*, but sometimes *o*.

NOTE.—Adjectives of this class are called *amplificatives*. See § 104, 12.

5. From adjectives are formed *diminutives* in *ulus*, *cūlus*, etc., in the same manner as from nouns; as, *dulcicūlus*, sweetish; from *dulcis*. So *lentulus*, *micellus*, *parvulus*, etc. See § 100, 3, and § 104, 11. Diminutives are sometimes formed from comparatives; as, *majorculus*, *duriscūlus*, somewhat great, somewhat hard, etc. Double diminutives are formed from *parvus*, viz *parvulus* and *parvillulus*; and from *bonus*, (*bēnus*) are formed *bellus* and *bellulus*.

6. (a.) From the names of places, and especially of towns, are derived *patrial* adjectives in *ensis*, *inus*, *as*, and *ānus*, denoting of or belonging to such places.

(b.) Thus from *Cannæ* is formed *Cannensis*; from *Sulmo*, *Sulmonensis*. In like manner, from *castra* and *circus* come *castrēnsis*, *circēnsis*. But *Athēna* makes *Athēnsis*; and some Greek towns in *ia* and *ēa* drop *i* and *e* in their adjectives; as, *Antiochēnsis*, *Nicomēdensis*.

(c.) Those in *inus* are formed from names of places ending in *ia* and *ium*; as, *Aricia*, *Aricinus*; *Caudium*, *Caudinus*; *Capitolium*, *Capitolinus*; *Latium*, *Latinus*. Some names of towns, of Greek origin, with other terminations, also form adjectives in *inus*; as, *Tarentum*, *Tarentinus*.

(d.) Most of those in *as* are formed from nouns in *um*; some from nouns in *a*; as, *Arpitum*, *Arpinus*; *Cypēna*, *Cypēnus*.

(e.) Those in *ānus* are formed from names of towns of the first declension, or from certain common nouns; as, *Alba*, *Albānus*; *Rōma*, *Romānus*; *Cumae*, *Cumānus*; *Thēbe*, *Thēbānus*; also from some of the second declension; as, *Tusculum*, *Tusculānus*; *Fundi*, *Fundānus*:—*fons*, *fontānus*; *mons*, *montānus*; *urbs*, *urbānus*; *oppidum*, *oppidānus*.

(f.) Adjectives with the terminations *ānus*, *iānus*, and *inus* are formed from names of men; as, *Sulla*, *Sullānus*; *Tullius*, *Tullianus*; *Jugurtha*, *Jugurthinus*.

(g.) Greek names of towns in *pōlis* form patrial adjectives in *politānus*; as, *Neapōlis*, *Neapolitānus*.

(h.) Greek names of towns generally form patrials in *ius*; as, *Rhodus*, *Rhodiūs*; *Lacedæmon*, *Lacedæmonius*;—but those in *a* form them in *æus*; as, *Larissa*, *Larissæus*; *Smyrna*, *Smyrneus*.

(i.) From many patrials; as, *Britannus*, *Gallus*, *Afer*, *Persa*, *Arabs*, etc., adjectives are formed in *icus* and *ius*; as, *Britannicus*, *Gallicus*, *Africus*, *Perotus*, *Arabicus*; so *Syrus*, *Syrius*; *Thrax*, *Thracius*.

7. A large class of derivative adjectives, though formed from nouns, have the terminations of perfect participles. They generally signify *wearing* or *furnished with*; as,

*alātus*, winged *barbātus*, bearded; *galeātus*, helmeted; *auritus*, long-eared *turritus*, turreted, *cornātus*, horned; from *ala*, *barba*, *galea*, *auris* etc.

8. The termination *aneus*, annexed to the root of an adjective or participle in *us*, expresses a resemblance to the quality denoted by the primitive; as, *supervacaneus*, of a superfluous nature.

§ 129. II. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *verbal* adjectives. Such are the following classes:—

1. The termination *bundus*, added to the first root of the verb, with a connecting vowel, which is commonly that of the verb, (see § 150, 5,) has the general meaning of the present participle; as,

*errābundus*, *moribundus*, from *erro*, *morior*, equivalent to *errans*, *moriens*.

(a.) In many the meaning is somewhat strengthened; as, *gratulābundus*, full of congratulations; *lacrimābundus*, weeping profusely.

(b.) Most verbals in *bundus* are from verbs of the first conjugation, a few from those of the third, and but one from the second and fourth respectively, viz. *rūcibundus* and *lucivibundus*.

(c.) Some verbal adjectives in *cundus* have a similar sense; as, *rubicundus*, *verecundus*, from *rubeo* and *vereor*.

2. The termination *idus*, added to the root, especially of neuter verbs, denotes the quality or state expressed by the verb; as,

*algidus*, cold; *calidus*, warm; *madidus*, moist; *rapidus*, rapid; from *algeo*, *caleo*, *madeo*, *rapio*.

3. The termination *uus*, also, denotes the quality expressed by the verb; and adjectives in *uus* derived from active verbs take a passive meaning; as,

*congruus*, agreeing, from *congruo*; so, *assiduus*, *nocuus*, *innocuus*:—*irriguus*, well watered; *conspiciuus*, visible; from *irrigo*, *conspicio*.

4. (a.) The terminations *ilis* and *bilis*, added to the root of a verb, with its connecting vowel, denote passively, capability, or desert; as,

*amabilis*, worthy to be loved; *credibilis*, deserving credit; *placabilis*, easy to be appeased; *agilis*, active; *ductilis*, ductile; from *amo*, *crēdo*, *plāco*; *āgo*, *dūco*. They are rarely active; as, *horribilis*, *terribilis*, *fertilis*; *aër per cuncta meatilis*. Plin.

(b.) In adjectives of these forms, derived from verbs of the third conjugation, the connecting vowel is *i*; sometimes, also, in those from verbs of the second conjugation, in these and other forms, *i* is used instead of *e*; as, *horribilis*, *terribilis*, from *horreo* and *terreo*.

(c.) These terminations, with the connecting vowel, are sometimes added to the third root; as, *flexilis*, *flexibilis*; *coctilis*, *coctibilis*, from *necto* (*flex-*), etc.

5. The termination *icius* or *itius*, added to the third root of the verb, has a passive sense; as, *facticius*, feigned; *conductitius*, to be hired; from *fin̄go* (*fict-*), etc.

6. The termination *ax*, added to the root of a verb, denotes an inclination, often one that is faulty; as,

*audax*, audacious; *loquax*, talkative; *rapax* rapacious; from *audeo*, *loquor* *rapio*.

7. The termination *ivus*, annexed to the third root of a verb, denotes fitness or ability to produce the action expressed by the verb as, *disjunctivus*, disjunctive, from *disjungo*.

8. Verbals in *tor* and *trix*, (see § 102, 6, (a.)), are often used as adjectives, especially in poetry; as, *victor exercitus*, *victrices littæ*. In the plural they become adjectives of three terminations; as, *victōres*, *victrices*, *victricis*. So also *hospes*, especially by the later poets, is used as an adjective, having *hospita* in the feminine singular and also in the neuter plural.

§ 130. III. Adjectives derived from participles, and retaining their form, are called *participial adjectives*; as, *āmans*, fond of; *doctus*, learned.

IV. Some adjectives are derived from adverbs; as, *crastinus*, of to-morrow; *hodiernus*, of this day; from *cras* and *hodie*.

V. Some adjectives are derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius*, contrary, from *contra*; *postērus*, subsequent, from *post*.

## COMPOSITION OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 131. Compound adjectives are formed variously:—

1. Of two nouns; as, *capripes*, goat-footed—of *cāper* and *pes*; *ignicomus*, having fiery hair—of *ignis* and *cōma*.

NOTE.—See, respecting the connecting short *i*, in case the first part of the compound is a noun or an adjective, § 103, Rem. 1.

2. Of a noun and an adjective; as, *noctivāgus*, wandering in the night—of *nox* and *vāgus*. So *lucifūgax*, shunning the light—of *lux* and *fugax*.

3. Of a noun and a verb; as, *corniger*, bearing horns—of *cornu* and *gēro*; *letifer*, bringing death—of *lētum* and *fēro*. So *carnivōrus*, *causidicus*, *ignivōmus*, *lucifūgus*, *particeps*.

4. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *æquævus*, of the same age—of *ævus* and *vōm*; *celeripes*, swift-footed—of *cēler* and *pes*. So *centimānus*, *decennis*, *magnuminus*, *misericors*, *unanimis*.

5. Of two adjectives; as, *centumgeminus*, a hundred-fold; *multicōvus*, having many cavities; *quintusdecimus*, the fifteenth.

6. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *brevilōquens*, speaking briefly—of *brēvis* and *lōquor*; *magnificus*, magnificent—of *magnus* and *fācio*.

7. Of an adjective and a termination; as, *qualiscumque*, *quotcumque*, *uterque*.

8. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *bicorpor*, two-bodied—of *bis* and *corpus*.

9. Of an adverb and an adjective; as, *maledicax*, slanderous—of *māle* and *cax*. So *antemeridiānus*, before mid-day.

10. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *beneficus*, beneficent—of *bēne* and *fācio*; *malevōlus*, malevolent—of *māle* and *vōlo*.

11. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *āvens*, mad—of *a* and *mens*. So *con-sors*, *decolor*, *deformis*, *implūmis*, *inermis*.

12. Of a preposition and an adjective; as, *concāvus*, concave; *infidus*, un-faithful. So *improvidus*, *percāvus*, *prodivus*, *subalbidus*.

13. Of a preposition and a verb; as, *continuus*, uninterrupted—of *con* and *teneo*; *insciens*, ignorant—of *in* and *scio*. So *præcipuus*, *promiscuus*, *subtilius superstes*.

REMARK. When the former part is a preposition, its final consonant is sometimes changed, to adapt it to the consonant which follows it, as, *imprūdēns*—of *in* and *prātens*. See § 126; and cf. § 103, R. 2.

## PRONOUNS.

§ 132. 1. A pronoun is a word which supplies the place of a noun.

2. There are eighteen simple pronouns:—

Ego, <i>I</i> .	Hic, <i>this, the latter</i> .	Suus, <i>his, hers, its, etc.</i>
Tu, <i>thou</i> .	Is, <i>that or he</i> .	Cujus? <i>whose?</i>
Sui, <i>of himself, etc.</i>	Quis? <i>who?</i>	Noster, <i>our</i> .
Ille, <i>that, the former</i> .	Qui, <i>who</i> .	Vester, <i>your</i> .
Ipse, <i>himself</i> .	Meus, <i>my</i> .	Nostras, <i>of our country</i> .
Iste, <i>that, that of yours</i> .	Tuus, <i>thy</i> .	Cujas? <i>of what country</i>

3. *Ego, tu, and sui*, and commonly also *quis* and its compounds, are substantives: the other pronouns, both simple and compound, are adjectives, but are often by ellipsis used as substantives.

4. *Ego, tu, and sui* are commonly called *personal pronouns*. They are a species of appellatives (§ 26, 3,) of general application. *Ego* is used by a speaker to designate himself; *tu*, to designate the person whom he addresses. Hence *ego* is of the first person, *tu* of the second. (§ 35, 2.) *Sui* is of the third person, and has always a reflexive signification, referring to the subject of the sentence. The oblique cases of *ego* and *tu* are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person.

5. The remaining pronouns, except *quis* and its compounds, are adjectives, as they serve to limit the meaning of substantives; and they are pronouns, because, like substantive pronouns, they may designate any object in certain situations or circumstances.

6. *Meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, and *cujus*, have the same extent of signification as the pronouns from which they are derived, and are equivalent to the genitive cases of their primitives.

7. Pronouns, like substantives and adjectives, are declined; but most of them want the vocative. *Sui*, from the nature of its signification, wants also the nominative in both numbers.

8. The substantive pronouns take the gender of the objects which they denote. The adjective pronouns, like adjectives, have three genders.

## SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 133. The substantive pronouns are thus declined:—

*Singular.*

N. <i>ē-gō, I</i> .	tū, <i>thou</i> .	
G. <i>mē-i, of me</i> .	tu-i, <i>of thee</i> .	{ <i>su-i, of himself, herself, itself.</i> <i>sib-i,* to himself, etc.</i> <i>sē, himself, etc.</i>
D. <i>mī-hī, to me</i> .	tib-i,* <i>to thee</i> .	
A.c. <i>mē, me</i> .	tē, <i>thee</i> .	
V. ———	tū, <i>O thou</i> .	
4b. <i>mē, with me</i> .	tē, <i>with thee</i> .	<i>sē, will himself, etc.</i>

\* See § 19, 1, Exc.

*Plural.*

<i>N.</i> nōs, <i>we.</i>	vōs, <i>ye or you.</i>	
<i>G.</i> { nos'-trum } <i>of us.</i>	ves'-trum or	su'-i, <i>of themselves.</i>
	ves'-tri,	
<i>D.</i> nō'-bis, <i>to us.</i>	vō'-bis, <i>to you.</i>	sīb'-i, <i>to themselves.</i>
<i>Ac.</i> nōs, <i>us.</i>	vōs, <i>you.</i>	sē, <i>themselves.</i>
<i>V.</i> _____	vōs, <i>O ye or you.</i>	
<i>Ab.</i> nō'-bis, <i>with us.</i>	vō'-bis, <i>with you.</i>	sē, <i>with themselves.</i>

REMARK 1. *Mē* and *mī* are ancient forms for *mūi*. So *min'* for *mīhina*, Pers. 1, 2.

REM. 2. The syllable *met* is sometimes annexed to the substantive pronouns, in an intensive sense, either with or without *ipse*; as, *egomet*, I myself; *mihimet ipsi*, for myself. It is not annexed, however, to the genitives plural, nor to *tu* in the nominative or vocative. In these cases of *tu*, *tūlē* or *tūlēmēt* is used. In the accusative and ablative the reduplicated forms *mēmē* and *tētē* in the singular, and *sēsē* in both numbers, are employed intensively. *Mepte*, intensive, *med* and *ted*, for *me* and *te*, and *mis* and *tis* for *mei* and *tui*, occur in the comic writers.

3. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are contracted from *nostrōrūm*, *nostrārūm*, and *vestrōrūm*, *vestrārūm*. Respecting the difference in the use of *nostrum* and *nostrī*, *vestrum* and *vestrī*, see § 212, R. 2, N. 2.

4. The preposition *cum* is affixed to the ablative of these pronouns in both numbers; as, *mēcum*, *nobiscum*, etc. Cf. § 136, R. 1.

ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 134. Adjective pronouns may be divided into the following classes:—*demonstrative*, *intensive*, *relative*, *interrogative*, *indefinite*, *possessive*, and *patrial*.

NOTE. Some pronouns belong to two of these classes.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

Demonstrative pronouns are such as specify what object is meant.

They are *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, and *is*, and their compounds, and are thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i> il'-lē,	il'-lā,	il'-lūd,	il'-li,	il'-læ,	il'-lā,
<i>G.</i> il'-lī'-us,*	il'-lī'-us,	il'-lī'-us,	il'-lō'-rum,	il'-lā'-rum,	il'-lō'-rum,
<i>D.</i> il'-lī,	il'-lī,	il'-lī,	il'-lis,	il'-lis,	il'-lis,
<i>Ac.</i> il'-lūm,	il'-lām,	il'-lūd,	il'-lōs,	il'-lās,	il'-lā,
<i>V.</i> il'-lē,	il'-lā,	il'-lūd,	il'-li,	il'-læ,	il'-lā,
<i>Ab.</i> il'-lō.	il'-lā.	il'-lō.	il'-lis.	il'-lis.	il'-lis.

\* See § 15, 1.

*Iste* is declined like *ille*.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. hic,	hæc,	hœc,	hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G. hū-jūs,	hū-jūs,	hū-jūs,	hō-rum,	hā-rum,	hō-rum,
D. huic*,	huic,	huic,	his,	his,	his,
Ac. hunc,	hanc,	hœc,	hōs,	hās,	hæc,
V. hīc,	hæc,	hœc,	hī,	hæ,	hæc,
Ab. hōc.	hāc.	hōc.	his.	his.	his.

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. is,	e'-ā,	id,	ī'-ī,	e'-æ,	e'-ā,
G. ē'-jūs,	ē'-jūs,	ē'-jūs,	e-ō'-rum,	e-ā'-rum,	e-ō'-rum,
D. e'-ī,	e'-ī,	e'-ī,	ī'-is or e'-is,	ī'-is or e'-is,	ī'-is or e'-is,
Ac. e'-um,	e'-am,	id,	e'-ōs,	e'-ās,	e'-ā,
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
Ab. e'-ō.	e'-ā.	e'-ō.	ī'-is or e'-is.	ī'-is or e'-is.	ī'-is or e'-is.

REMARK 1. Instead of *ille*, *ollus* was anciently used; whence *ollī* masc. plur. in Virgil. *Illæ* fem., for *illius* and *illi*, is found in Lucretius and Cato, as also in Cato, *hæ* for *huic* fem.; *hice* for *hi*, and *hæc* for *hæ* in Plautus and Terence. *Im* for *eum*, is found in the Twelve Tables; *eii* for *ei*, and *ibus* and *ibus* for *is*, in Plautus; *eæ*, fem., for *ei*, and *eabus* for *iis*, in Cato.

REM. 2. From *ecce*, lo! with *ille*, *iste*, and *is*, are formed, in colloquial language, nom., *ecca*; *eccilla*, *eccillud*; acc. sing., *eccum*, *eccam*; *eccillum* (by syncope *ellum*), *eccillam*; *eccistam*; acc. plur., *eccos*, *ecca*.

REM. 3. *Istic* and *illic* are compounded of *iste* *hic*, and *ille* *hic*; or, as some say, of *iste* *ce*, and *ille* *ce*. The former sometimes retains the aspirate, as *isthic*. They are more emphatic than *ille* and *iste*.

*Istic* is thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. is'-tīc,	is'-tæc,	is'-tœc, or is'-tūc,	N. —	is'-tæc,	—
Ac. is'-tunc,	is'-tanc,	is'-tœc, or is'-tūc,	Ac. —	—	is'-tæc.
Ab. is'-tœc.	is'-tâc.	is'-tūc.			

*Illic* is declined in the same manner.

REM. 4. *Ce*, intensive, is sometimes added to the several cases of *hic*, and rarely to some cases of the other demonstrative pronouns; as, *hijusce*, *huncce*, *hancce*, *huice*, *hice*, *hæce* or *hæc*, *horunc*, *hurumce*, *harunce*, or *harunc*, *hosce*, *basce*, *hisce*; *illiusce*, *illæce*, *illosce*, *illasce*, *illisce*; *istæce*, *istisce*; *ejusce*, *iisce*. When *ne*, interrogative, is also annexed, *ce* becomes *ci*; as, *hæccine*, *hoscine*, *hiscine*; *istuccine*, *istaccine*, *istoscine*; *illicine*, *illancine*.

REM. 5. *Mōdi*, the genitive of *mōdus*, annexed to the genitive singular of demonstrative and relative pronoun is, imparts to them the signification of adjectives of quality; as, *hujusmōdi* or *hujuscemōdi*, like *talis*, of this sort, such *illiusmōdi* and *istiusmōdi*, of that sort; *cujusmōdi*, of what sort, like *qualis*; *cu-*

\* See § 9, 5.

*puscenôdi*, *cujusquemôdi*, *cujusmodicumque*, of what kind soever; *cujusdammodi* of some kind. So also *istimôdi*, *cuiomôdi* and *cuiucuiomôdi*, instead of *istiusmôdi*, *cujusmôdi*, etc.

REM. 6. The suffix *dem* is annexed to *is*, forming *idem*, "the same," which is thus declined:—

			Singular.			
	M.		F.		N.	
N.	ī'-dem,		e'-ā-dem,		ī'-dem,	
G.	e-jus'-dem,		e-jus'-dem,		e-jus'-dem,	
D.	e-ī'-dem,		e-ī'-dem,		e-ī'-dem,	
Ac.	e-un'-dem,		e-an'-dem,		ī'-dem,	
V.	_____		_____		_____	
Ab.	e-ō'-dem.		e-ā'-dem.		e-ō'-dem.	
			Plural.			
	M.		F.		N.	
N.	ī-ī'-dem,		e-ae'-dem,		e'-ā-dem,	
C.	e-o-run'-dem,		e-a-run'-dem,		e-o-run'-dem,	
D.	e-is'-dem, or ī-is'-dem,		e-is'-dem, or ī-is'-dem,		e-is'-dem, or ī-is'-dem,	
Ac.	e-os'-dem,		e-as'-dem,		e'-ā-dem,	
V.	_____		_____		_____	
Ab.	e-is'-dem, or ī-is'-dem.		e-is'-dem, or ī-is'-dem.		e-is'-dem, or ī-is'-dem.	

NOTE 1. In compound pronouns, *n* before *d* is changed into *s*; as, *eundem*, *eorundem*, etc.

NOTE 2. In Sallust *isdem*, and in Palladius *hisdem* occur for *iisdem*; and Ennius in Cicero has *eademmet* for *eudem*.

## INTENSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 135. Intensive pronouns are such as serve to render an object emphatic.

To this class belong *ipse*, and the intensive compounds already mentioned. See §§ 133, R. 2, and 134, R. 4.

*Ipse* is compounded of *is* and the suffix *pse*, and is thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ip'-sē,	ip'-sā,	ip'-sum,	ip'-sī,	ip'-sæ,	ip'-sā,
G. ip'-sī-us,	ip'-sī-us,	ip'-sī-us,	ip'-sō-rum,	ip'-sā-rum,	ip'-sō-rum,
D. ip'-sī,	ip'-sī,	ip'-sī,	ip'-sis,	ip'-sis,	ip'-sis.
Ac. ip'-sum,	ip'-sam,	ip'-sum,	ip'-sōs,	ip'-sās,	ip'-sā,
V. ip'-sē,	ip'-sā,	ip'-sum,	ip'-sī,	ip'-sæ,	ip'-sā,
Ab. ip'-sō.	ip'-sā	ip'-sō.	ip'-sis.	ip'-sis.	ip'-sis.

REMARK 1. *Ipse* is commonly subjoined to nouns or pronouns; as, *Jupiter ipse*, *tu ipse*, *Jupiter himself*, etc.; and hence is sometimes called the *adjunctive* pronoun.

REM. 2. A nominative *ipsus*, occurs in early writers, and a superlative *ipsis-simus*, his very self, is found in Plautus.

REM. 3. In old writers the *is* of *ipse* is declined, while *pse* remains undeclined; as, *eipse*, (nom. and abl.), *eampse*, and *copse*, instead of *ipsa*, *ipsam* and *ipso*. So also *reapse*, i. e. *re eapse*, "in fact."

## RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 136. Relative pronouns are such as relate to a preceding noun or pronoun.

1. They are *qui*, who, and the compounds *quicumque* and *quisquis*, whoever. The latter are called *general* relatives.

2. In a general sense, the demonstrative pronouns are often relatives; but the name is commonly appropriated to those above specified. They serve to introduce a proposition, limiting or explaining a preceding noun or pronoun, to which they relate, and which is called the *antecedent*.

*Qui* is thus declined :—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. <i>qui</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	<i>qui</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,
C. <i>cū-jūs</i> ,	<i>cū-jūs</i> ,	<i>cū-jūs</i> ,	<i>quō'-rum</i> ,	<i>quā'-rum</i> ,	<i>quō'-rum</i> ,
D. <i>cui</i> ,*	<i>cui</i> ,	<i>cui</i> ,	<i>qui'-būs</i> ,	<i>qui'-būs</i> ,	<i>qui'-būs</i> ,
Ac. <i>quem</i> ,	<i>quam</i> ,	<i>quod</i> ,	<i>quōs</i> ,	<i>quās</i> ,	<i>quæ</i> ,
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
Ab. <i>quō</i> .	<i>quā</i> .	<i>quō</i> .	<i>qui'-būs</i> .	<i>qui'-būs</i> .	<i>qui'-būs</i> .

REMARK 1. *Qui* is sometimes used for the ablative singular, in all genders and rarely also for the ablative plural. To the ablatives *quo*, *qua*, *qui*, and *quibus*, *cum* is commonly annexed, cf. § 133, 4. Cicero uses *quicum* for *quodcum*, when an indefinite person is meant.

REM. 2. *Quis* (monosyllabic, § 9, R. 1), and *quis* are sometimes used in the dative and ablative plural for *quibus*. *Cūjus* and *cui* were anciently written *quōjus* and *quoi*: and, instead of the genitive *cūjus*, a relative adjective *cūjus*, a, um, very rarely occurs.

3. *Quicumque*, (or *quicunque*), is declined like *qui*.

REM. 3. *Qui* is sometimes separated from *cumque* by the interposition of one or more words; as, *quæ me cumque vocant terræ*. Virg. A similar separation sometimes occurs in the other compounds of *cumque*.

4. *Quisquis* is thus declined :—

Singular.			Plural.
M.	F.	N.	M.
N. <i>quis'-quis</i> ,	<i>quis'-quis</i> ,†	<i>quid'-quid</i> ,	N. <i>qui'-qui</i> ,
Ac. <i>quem'-quem</i> ,	—	<i>quid'-quid</i> ,	D. <i>qui-bus'-qui bus</i> ,
Ab. <i>quō'-quō</i> .	<i>quā'-quā</i> .	<i>quō'-quō</i> .	

REM. 4. *Quicquid* is sometimes used for *quidquid*. *Quisui* for *quisquis* occurs in Plautus; and *quidquid* is used adjectively in Cato R. R. 48.

\* See § 9, 5; and cf. § 306. 1 R. 2.

† Cf. § 137, R. (1)



INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 137. Interrogative pronouns are such as serve to inquire which of a number of objects is intended.

They are

Quis?	} who? what?	Ecquis?	} is any one?	Cūjus? whose?
Quisnam?		Ecquisnam?		Cūjas? of what
Qui?		Numquis?		country?
Quisnam?		Numquisnam?		

1. *Quis* is comr. only used substantively; *qui*, adjectively. The interrogative *qui* is declined like *qui* the relative.

*Quis* is thus declined:—

Singular.			Plural.		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. quis,	quæ,	quid,	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cū-jūs,	cū-jūs,	cū-jūs,	quō'-rum,	quā'-rum,	quō'-rum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	qui'-būs,	qui'-būs,	qui'-būs,
Ac. quem,	quam,	quid,	quōs,	quās,	quæ,
V. —	—	—	—	—	—
Ab. quō.	quā.	quō.	qui'-būs.	qui'-būs.	qui'-būs.

REMARK (1.) *Quis* is sometimes used by comic writers in the feminine, and even in the neuter. *Quisnam*, *quisque* and *quisquam* also occur as feminine.

REM. (2.) *Qui* is used for the ablative of *quis* in all genders, as it is for that of the relative *qui*. Cf. § 136, R. 1.

REM. (3.) *Quis* and *qui* have sometimes the signification of the indefinite pronoun *aliquis* (some one, any one), especially after the conjunctions *ec* (for *en*), *si*, *ne*, *neu*, *nisi*, *num*; and after relatives, as *quo*, *quanto*, etc. Sometimes *quis* and *qui* are used in the sense of *quālis*? what sort?

2. The compounds *quisnam* and *quinam* have respectively the signification and declension of the interrogatives *quis* and *qui*. In the poets *nam* sometimes stands before *quis*. Virg. G. 4, 445.

3. *Ecquis* and *numquis* are declined and used like *quis*; but are sometimes adjectives. Virg. Ecl. 10, 28: Cic. Att. 13, 8.

REM. (4.) *Ecqua* is sometimes found in the nominative singular feminine; and the neuter plural of *numquis* is *numqua*.

REM. (5.) *Ecqui* and *numqui* also occur, declined like the interrogative *qui*, and, like that, used adjectively.

4. *Ecquisnam* and *numquisnam* are declined like *ecquis*; but are found only in the singular;—the former in the nominative in all genders, and in the ablative masculine; the latter in the nominative masculine and accusative neuter. In the nominative feminine and in the ablative, the former is used adjectively.

5. The interrogative *cujus* is also defective :—

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>	<i>F.</i>
<i>N.</i> cū'-jūs,	cū'-jā,	cū'-jum,	<i>N.</i> cū'-jās,
<i>Ac.</i> cū'-jum,	cū'-jam,	_____	<i>Ac.</i> cū'-jās.
<i>Ab.</i> _____	cū'-jā.	_____	

6. *Cūjās* is declined like an adjective of one termination ; *cūjās* *cujāts*. See § 139, 4.

**NOTE** The interrogative pronouns are used not only in direct questions but in such dependent clauses also, as contain only an indirect question ; as, e. g. in the direct question, *quis est?* who is he? in the indirect, *nescio quis sit*, I know not who he is. *Qui*, in this sense, is found for *quis* ; as, *qui sit apertū*, he discloses who he is. Cf. § 265, N.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

§ 138. Indefinite pronouns are such as denote an object in a general manner, without indicating a particular individual. They are

<i>Alīquis</i> , some one.	<i>Quisquam</i> , any one.	<i>Quidam</i> , a certain one.
<i>Siquis</i> , if any.	<i>Quispiam</i> , some one.	<i>Quilibet</i> , } any one you
<i>Nēquis</i> , lest any.	<i>Unusquisque</i> , each.	<i>Quivis</i> , } please.
<i>Quisque</i> , every one.	<i>Aliquipiam</i> , any, some.	<i>Quis and qui</i> , § 137, R. (8.)

**NOTE.** *Siquis* and *nequis* are commonly written separately, *si quis* and *ne quis* : so also *unus quisque*.

1. *Alīquis* is thus declined :—

<i>Singular.</i>			
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	al'-i-quis,	al'-i-qua,	al'-i-quod, <i>or</i> -quid,
<i>G.</i>	al-i-cū'-jus,	al-i-cū'-jus,	al-i-cū'-jus,
<i>D.</i>	al'-i-cui,	al'-i-cui,	al'-i-cui,
<i>Ac.</i>	al'-i-quem,	al'-i-quam,	al'-i-quod, <i>or</i> -quid,
<i>V.</i>	_____	_____	_____
<i>Ab.</i>	al'-i-quo.	al'-i-quā.	al'-i-quo.

<i>Plural.</i>			
	<i>M.</i>	<i>F.</i>	<i>N.</i>
<i>N.</i>	al'-i-qui,	al'-i-quæ,	al'-i-qua,
<i>G.</i>	al-i-quō'-rum,	al-i-quā'-rum,	al-i-quō'-rum,
<i>D.</i>	a-liq'-ui-bus,*	a-liq'-ui-bus,	a-liq'-ui-bus,
<i>Ac.</i>	al'-i-quos,	al'-i-quas.	al'-i-qua,
<i>V.</i>	<hr/>	<hr/>	<hr/>
<i>Ab.</i>	a-liq'-ui-bus.	a-liq'-ui-bus.	a-liq'-ui-bus.

\* Pronounced a-lik'-wē-bus. See §§ 9, 4, and 21, 3

2. *Siquis* and *nēquis* are declined in the same manner; but they sometimes have *que* in the fem. singular and neut. plural.

(a.) *Aliquis*, in the nominative singular masculine, is used both as a substantive and as an adjective;—*aliqui*, as an adjective, but is nearly obsolete. *Aliquæ* in the fem. sing. occurs as an adjective in Lucretius, 4, 2, 64. *Equi*, and *nēqui*, which are properly adjectives, are used also substantively for *siquis* and *nēquis*, and in the nominative singular masculine these two forms are equivalent. The ablatives *aliqui* and *siqui* also occur.

(b.) *Aliquid*, *siquid*, and *nēquid*, like *quid*, are used substantively; *aliquid*, etc., like *quod*, are used adjectively.

3. *Quisque*, *quisquam*, and *quispiam*, are declined like *quis*.

(a.) In the neuter singular, however, *quisque* has *quodque*, *quidque*, or *quicque*; *quisquam* has *quidquam* or *quicquam*; and *quispiam* has *quodpiam*, *quidpiam*, or *quippiam*. The forms *quidque* or *quicque*, *quidpiam* or *quippiam* are used substantively.

(b.) *Quisquam* wants the feminine (except *quamquam*, Plaut. Mil. 4, 2, 68), and also the plural, and, with a few exceptions in Plautus, it is always used substantively, its place as an adjective being supplied by *ullus*. *Quispiam* is scarcely used in the plural, except in the nominative feminine, *quarpiam*.

4. *Unusquisque* is compounded of *unus* and *quisque*, which are often written separately, and both words are declined.

Thus *unusquisque*, *uniuscujusque*, *unicuique*, *unumquemque*, etc. The neuter is *unumquodque*, or *unumquidque*. It has no plural. *Unumquidquid* for *unumquidque* occurs in Plautus and Lucretius.

5. *Quidam*, *quilibet*, and *quivis*, are declined like *qui*, except that they have both *quid* and *quid* in the neuter, the former used adjectively, the latter substantively.

NOTE. *Quidam* has usually *n* before *d* in the accusative singular and genitive plural; as, *quendam*, *quorundam*, etc. Cf. § 134, NOTE 1.

## POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 139. 1. The possessive are derived from the genitives of the substantive pronouns, and of *quis*, and designate something belonging to their primitives.

They are *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noster*, *vester*, and *cujus*. *Meus*, *tuus*, and *suus*, are declined like *bōnus*; but *meus* has in the vocative singular masculine *mi*, and very rarely *meus*. Cf. § 105, R. 3. In late writers *mi* occurs also in the feminine and neuter.

2. *Cujus* also is declined like *bōnus*; but is defective. See § 137, 5. It occurs only in early Latin and in legal phraseology.

3. *Noster* and *vester* are declined like *piger*. See § 106.

REMARK 1. The terminations *pte* and *met* intensive are sometimes annexed to possessive pronouns, especially to the ablative singular; as, *suoapte ponere*, by its own weight; *suoapte manu*, by his own hand. So *nostrapte culpā*; *suamapte amicum*; *meamet culpā*. The suffix *met* is usually followed by *ipse*; as, *Hannibal suamet ipse fraude captus abiit*. Liv.; but Sallust has *meamet facta dicere*.

REM. 2. *Suus*, like its primitive *sui*, has always a reflexive signification, referring to the subject of the sentence. *Meus*, *tuus*, *noster*, and *vester*, are also used reflexively, when the subject of the proposition is of the first or second person. See § 132, 4.

# PATRIAL PRONOUNS.

4. (a.) These are *nostras* and *cūjas*. See §§ 100, 2, and 128, 6. They are declined like adjectives of one termination; as, *nostras*, *nostrātis*, but both are defective.

(b.) *Nostras* is found in the nominative and genitive singular, in the nominative plural, (masc. and fem., *nostrātes*, neut. *nostratia*), and in the ablative, (*nostratibus*). *Cūjas* or *quōjas* occurs in the nominative, genitive and accusative (*cujātem* masc.) singular, and in the nominative plural, masc. (*cujātes*). Cf. § 137, 6.—*Nostrātis* and *cujātis* (or *quojātis*) also occur in the nominative.

## PRONOMINAL ADJECTIVES.

5. To the adjective pronouns may be added certain adjectives of so general a meaning, that they partake, in some degree, of the character of pronouns. Of this kind are:—

(1.) (a.) *Alius*, *ullus*, *nullus*, and *nonnullus*, which answer to the question, who?

(b.) *Alter*, *neuter*, *alterūter*, *utervis*, and *uterlibet*, which answer to the question, *ūter?* which of two?

(2.) Adjectives denoting quality, size, or number, in a general way. These stand in relation to one another, and are hence called *correlatives*.

REMARK. The *relatives* and *interrogatives* of this class begin with *qu*, and are alike in form. The *indefinites* are formed from the relatives by prefixing *ali*. The *demonstratives* begin with *t*, and are sometimes strengthened by *dem*. A *general relative*, having a meaning more general than the relative, is formed by doubling the simple relative, or by affixing to it the termination *cumque*. A *general indefinite* is formed by annexing *libet* or *vis* to the relative.

(3.) Their mutual relation is denoted by the following table, with which may be compared the *adverbial correlatives*, § 191, R. 1.

Interrog.	Demonstr.	Relat.	Relat. general.	Indefin.	Indef. general.
quālis?	tālis,	quālis,	{ qualis-qualis, qualiscumque.	_____	qualislibet,
quantus?	{ tantus, tantundem,	quantus,	{ quantus-quantus, quantuscumque,	aliquantus,	quantuslibet,
quōt?	tōt, totidem,	quōt,	{ quot-quot, quotecumque,	aliquot,	quotilibet,
quōtus?	tōtus,	quōtus,	quotuscumque,	(aliquōtus),	_____.
Diminutives.					
quantūlus?	tantūlus.	_____	quantuluscumque.	aliquantūlum.	_____.

NOTE 1. The suffix *cumque*, which is used in forming general relatives, is composed of the relative adverb *cum* (*quum*) and the suffix *que*, expressive of universality, as in *quisque* and in adverbs, (see § 191). *Cumque*, therefore, originally signified 'whenever.' When attached to a relative, whether a pronoun, adjective, or adverb, it renders the relative meaning more general; as *quis*, who; *quicumque*, whoever; or, every one who.

NOTE 2. *Cujusmodi* is sometimes used for *qualis*, and *hujusmodi*, *istiusmodi*, *ejusmodi* and *ejusdemmodi* for *tālis*. Cf. § 134, R. 5.

## VERBS.

§ 110. A verb is a word by which something is affirmed of a person or thing.

1. That of which any thing is affirmed is called the *subject* of the verb. (2.) That which is affirmed of the subject is called the *predicate*. Cf. § 201.

3. A verb either expresses an action or state; as, *puer legit*, the boy reads; *aqua calet*, the water is warm:—or it connects an attribute with a subject; as, *terra est rotunda*, the earth is round.

4. All verbs belong to the former of these classes, except *sum*, I am, the most common use of which is, to connect an attribute with a subject. When so used, it is called the *copula*.

§ 141. Verbs are either *active* or *neuter*.

NOTE. Active and neuter verbs are sometimes called *transitive* and *intransitive*; and verbs of motion are by some grammarians divided into *active-transitive* and *active-intransitive*, according as they require, or do not require, an object after them.

I. An *active* or *transitive verb* expresses such an action as requires the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, *amo te*, I love thee; *sequitur consulem*, he follows the consul.

II. A *neuter* or *intransitive verb* expresses such an action or state, as does not require the addition of an object to complete the sense; as, *equus currit*, the horse runs; *gradior*, I walk.

REMARK 1. Many verbs, in Latin, are considered as neuter, which are usually translated into English by active verbs. Thus *indulgeo*, I indulge, *noceo*, I hurt, *pareo*, I obey, are reckoned among neuter verbs. In strictness, such Latin verbs denote rather a state than an action, and their sense would be more exactly expressed by the verb *to be* with an adjective; as, 'I am indulgent, I am hurtful,' etc. Some verbs in Latin, which do not usually take an object after them, are yet active, since the object is omitted by ellipsis. Thus *credo* properly signifies *to intrust*, and, in this sense, takes an object; as, *credo tibi salutem meam*, I intrust my safety to you; but by ellipsis it usually means *to believe*; as, *crede mihi*, believe me.

To verbs belong *voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons*.

## VOICES.

(a.) Voice, in verbs, is the form by which they denote the relation of the agent to the action of the verb.

(b.) Most active Latin verbs have, for this purpose, two forms, which are called the *active* and *passive voices*.

1. A verb in the *active voice* represents the agent as *acting upon* some person or thing, called the *object*; as, *puer legit librum*, the boy is reading a book.

2. A verb in the *passive voice* represents the object as *acted upon* by the agent; as, *liber legitur a puëro*, a book *is read* by the boy.

REM. 2. By comparing the two preceding examples, it will be seen that they have the same meaning. The passive voice may thus be substituted at pleasure for the active, by making the object of the active the subject of the passive, and placing the subject of the active in the ablative case, with or without the preposition *a* or *ab*, according as it is a voluntary or involuntary agent. The active form is used to direct the attention especially to the agent as acting; the passive, chiefly to exhibit the object as acted upon. In the one case the object, in the other the agent, is frequently omitted, and left indefinite; as, *puer legit*, the boy is reading, scil. *librum, litéras*, etc., a book, a letter, etc.; *virtus laudátur*, virtue is praised, scil. *ab hominibus*, by men.

The two voices are distinguished from each other by peculiar terminations. Cf. § 152.

§ 142. 1. Neuter verbs have, in general, only the form of the active voice. They are, however, sometimes used impersonally in the passive voice. See § 184, 2.

2. The neuter verbs *audeo*, I dare, *fido*, I trust, *gaudeo*, I rejoice, and *soleo*, I am wont, have the passive form in the perfect and its cognate tenses; as *ausus sum*, I dared. Hence these verbs are called *neuter passives*, or *semi-deponents*.

3. The neuter verbs *vapûlo*, I am beaten, and *vêneo*, I am sold, have an active form, but a passive meaning, and are hence called *neutral passives*.

4. (a.) *Deponent* verbs have a transitive or intransitive signification with only the passive form. They are called *deponent verbs*, from *depôno*, to lay aside, as having laid aside their active form, and their passive signification; as, *séquor*, I follow; *môrior*, I die.

(b.) Some deponent verbs have both an active and a passive signification, especially in the perfect participle. These are sometimes called *common verbs*. Cf. § 162, 17.

## MOODS.

§ 143. (a.) Moods (or modes) are forms of the verb, which denote the relation of the action or state, expressed by the verb, to the mind of the speaker or to some other action.

(b.) Latin verbs have four moods—the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, the *imperative*, and the *infinitive*.

1. The *indicative* mood is used in independent and absolute assertions and inquiries; as, *amo*, I love; *audisne?* dost thou hear?

2. The *subjunctive* mood is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind; as, *si me obsēcret, redibo*; if he entreat me, I will return.

3. The *imperative* mood is used in commanding, exhorting or entreating; as, *ama*, love thou; *amanto*, they shall love.

4. The *infinitive* mood is used to denote an action or state in definitely, without limiting it to any person or thing as its subject; as, *virtus est vitium fugere*, to shun vice is a virtue.

## TENSES.

§ 144. Tenses are forms of the verb, denoting the *time* of the action or state expressed by the verb.

1. Time admits of a threefold division, into present, past and future; and, in each of these times, an action may be represented either as going on, or as completed. From these two divisions arise the six tenses of a Latin verb, each of which is distinguished by its peculiar terminations.

2. They are called the *present*, *imperfect*, *future*, *perfect*, *pluperfect*, and *future perfect* tenses.

Present	{ action	{ <i>amo</i> , I love, or am loving; <i>Present tense</i> .
Past	{ not com-	{ <i>amābam</i> , I was loving; <i>Imperfect tense</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amābo</i> , I shall love, or be loving; <i>Future tense</i> .
Present	{ action	{ <i>amāvi</i> , I have loved; <i>Perfect tense</i> .
Past	{ com-	{ <i>amāveram</i> , I had loved; <i>Pluperfect tense</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amāverō</i> , I shall have loved; <i>Future perfect tense</i> .

3. There is the same number of tenses in the passive voice, in which actions not completed are represented by simple forms of the verb, and those which are completed by compound forms.

Present	{ action	{ <i>amor</i> , I am loved; <i>Present tense</i> .
Past	{ not com-	{ <i>amābar</i> , I was loved; <i>Imperfect tense</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amābor</i> , I shall be loved; <i>Future tense</i> .
Present	{ action	{ <i>amātus sum</i> , or <i>fui</i> , I have been loved; <i>Perfect tense</i> .
Past	{ com-	{ <i>amātus eram</i> , or <i>fuēram</i> , I had been loved; <i>Pluperfect</i> .
Future	{ pleted;	{ <i>amātus ero</i> , or <i>fuēro</i> , I shall have been loved; <i>Future Perfect</i> .

§ 145. I. The *present tense* represents an action as now going on, and not completed; as, *āmo*, I love, or am loving.

1. Any existing custom, or general truth, may be expressed by this tense as, *apud Parthos, signum datur tympano*; among the Parthians, the signal is given by a drum. A general truth is sometimes also expressed by the perfect.

2. The present tense may also denote an action which has existed for some time, and which still exists; as, *tot annos bellum gero*; for so many years I have waged, and am still waging war.

3. The present tense is often in narration used for the perfect indefinite. It is then called the *historical present*; as, *desiliunt ex equis, provolant in primum*; they dismount, they fly forward to the front.

II. The *imperfect tense* represents an action as going on at some past time, but not then completed; as, *amābam*, I was loving.

1. The imperfect sometimes denotes repeated or customary past action; as, *legēbam*, I was wont to read.

2. It may also denote an action which had existed for some time, and which was still existing at a certain past time; as, *audiēbat jamdudum verba*; he had long heard, and was still hearing the words.

8. In letters, and with reference not to the time of their being written, but to that of their being read, the imperfect is sometimes used for the present as, *expectābam*, I was expecting, (i. e. when I wrote).

4. The imperfect also sometimes denotes the *intending*, *preparing*, or *attempting* to act at a definite past time.

III. The *future tense* denotes that an action will be going on hereafter, but without reference to its completion; as, *amābo*, I shall love, or shall be loving.

IV. The *perfect tense* represents an action either as just completed, or as completed in some indefinite past time; as, *amāvī*, I have loved, or I loved.

REMARK. In the former sense, it is called the *perfect definite*; in the latter, the *perfect indefinite*, *historical perfect*, or *aorist*.

V. The *pluperfect tense* represents a past action as completed, at or before the time of some other past action or event; as, *litteras scripsēram*, *quum nunciū vērit*; *I had written* the letter, when the messenger arrived.

VI. The *future perfect tense* denotes that an action will be completed, at or before the time of some other future action or event; as, *quum cœnavēro*, *proficiscar*; when *I shall have supped*, I will go.

NOTE 1. This tense is often, but improperly, called the *future subjunctive*. It has the signification of the indicative mood, and corresponds to the *second future* in English.

NOTE 2. The imperfect, historical perfect, and pluperfect tenses are sometimes called *preterites* or the *preterite tenses*.

NOTE 3. The present, imperfect, and future tenses passive, in English, do not express the exact sense of those tenses in Latin, as denoting an action which is, was, or will be, going on at a certain time. Thus *laudor* signifies, not 'I am praised,' but 'I am in the act of being praised, or, if such an expression is admissible, 'I am being praised.'

REMARK 1. The six tenses above enumerated are found only in the indicative mood.

REM. 2. The subjunctive mood, in the regular conjugation, has the present and past, but no future tenses.

NOTE 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mood have less definiteness of meaning, in regard to time, than those of the indicative. Thus the present and perfect, besides their common signs, *may* or *can*, *may have* or *can have*, must, in certain connections, be translated by *might*, *could*, *would*, or *should*; *might have*, *could have*, etc. The tenses of this mood must often, also, be translated by the corresponding tenses of the indicative. For a more particular account of the signification of each of the tenses of the subjunctive mood, see § 260.

REM. 3. The imperative mood has two tenses—a present and a future; the former for that which is to be done at once, and the latter for that which is to be done in future.

REM. 4. The infinitive mood has three tenses—the present, the perfect, and the future; the first of which denotes an incomplete, the second a completed action, and the last an action to be performed.



## NUMBERS.

§ 146. Number, in verbs, is the form by which the *unity* or *plurality* of their subject is denoted. Hence verbs, like nouns, have two numbers—the *singular* and the *plural*. Cf. § 35, 1.

## PERSONS.

§ 147. Person, in verbs, is the form by which they denote the person of their subject. Hence in each number there are three persons—the *first*, *second*, and *third*. Cf. § 35, 2.

1. The imperative *present* has only the *second* person in both numbers. The imperative *future* has in each number the *second* and *third* persons, but in the singular they have both the same form, *-to* in the active, and *-tor* in the passive voice.

2. As the signification of the infinitive mood is not limited to any subject, it admits no change to express either number or person.

3. The following are the terminations of the different persons of each number, in the indicative and subjunctive moods, in both voices:—

	Active.			Passive.		
Person.	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Singular.	o, i, or m,	s,	t;	r,	ris,	tur;
Plural.	mus,	tis,	nt.	mur,	mini,	ntur.

These may be called *personal* terminations.

REMARK 1. The perfect indicative active is irregular in the *second* person singular and plural, which end in *sti* and *stis*, and in one of the forms of the *third* person plural, which ends in *re*.

REM. 2. The passive form above given belongs to the simple tenses only.

REM. 3. The pronouns of the first and second persons, *ego*, *nos*; *tu* and *vos*, are seldom expressed in Latin as subjects of a finite verb, the several persons being sufficiently distinguished by the terminations of the verb.

## PARTICIPLES, GERUNDS, AND SUPINES.

§ 148. 1. A participle is a word derived from a verb, and partaking of its meaning, but having the form of an adjective.

(1.) Like a verb, it has different *voices* and *tenses*; like an adjective, it has *declension*\* and *gender*; and like both, it has two *numbers*.

(2.) Active verbs have usually *four* participles—two in the active voice, a present and a future; as, *amans*, loving; *amaturus*, about to love;—and two in the passive voice, a perfect and a future; as, *amatus*, loved. or having been loved; *amandus*, to be loved.

\* See §§ 106, R. 2: and 111, R.

(3.) Neuter verbs have usually only the participles of the active voice.

(4.) Deponent verbs, both active and neuter, may have the participles of both voices.

2. (a.) *Gerunds* are verbal nouns, used only in the oblique cases, and expressing the action or state of the verb; as, *amandi*, of loving, etc.

(b.) Like other abstract nouns, they are found only in the singular number, and by their cases supply the place of a declinable present infinitive active.

3. *Supines* also are verbal nouns of the fourth declension in the accusative and ablative singular; as, *amātum*, to love *amātu*, to be loved.

REMARK. These also serve in certain connections to supply the place of the infinitive present both active and passive. The supine in *um* is called the *former* supine; that in *u*, the *latter*. The former is commonly used in an active, the latter in a passive sense.

## CONJUGATION.

§ 149. 1. The conjugation of a verb is the regular formation and arrangement of its several parts, according to their voices, moods, tenses, numbers, and persons.

2. There are four conjugations, which are characterized by the vowel before *re* in the present of the infinitive active.

In the first conjugation, it is *ā* long;

In the second, . . . . *ē* long;

In the third, . . . . *ē* short;

In the fourth, . . . . *i* long.

EXCEPTION. *Do, dare*, to give, and such of its compounds as are of the first conjugation, have *a* short before *re*.

§ 150. A verb, like a noun, consists of two parts—the *root*, and the *termination*. Cf. § 40, 10.

1. The *first* or *general* root of a verb consists of those letters that are found in every part. This root may always be found by removing the termination of the present infinitive.

2. There are also two special roots, the first of which is found in the perfect, and is called the *second* root; the other, found in the supine or perfect participle, is called the *third* root.

3. In regular verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, the *second* root is formed by adding, respectively, *āv*, *u*, and *iv*, to the *general* root; and the *third* root by a similar addition of *āt*, *it*, and *it*.

REMARK. Many verbs, in each of the conjugations, form their second and third roots irregularly.

Perfect. *have been, or was.*

- |                                      |   |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. fu'-i, <i>I have been,</i>        | fu'-i-mūs, <i>we have been,</i>         |
| 2. fu-is'-ti, <i>thou hast been,</i> | fu-is'-tis, <i>ye have been,</i>        |
| 3. fu'-it, <i>he has been;</i>       | fu-ē-runt or rē, <i>they have been.</i> |

Pluperfect.

- |                                       |                                   |
|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. fu'-ē-ram, <i>I had been,</i>      | fu-e-rā'-mūs, <i>we had been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rās, <i>thou hadst been,</i> | fu-e-rā'-tis, <i>ye had been,</i> |
| 3. fu'-ē-rāt, <i>he had been;</i>     | fu'-ē-rant, <i>they had been.</i> |

Future Perfect. *shall or will have.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. fu'-ē-rō, <i>I shall have been,</i>    | fu-er'-i-mūs, <i>we shall have been</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rīs, <i>thou wilt have been,</i> | fu-er'-i-tis, <i>ye will have been,</i> |
| 3. fu' ē-rit, <i>he will have been;</i>   | fu'-ē-rint, <i>they will have been.</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present. *may, or can.*

- |                               |                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. sim, <i>I may be,</i>      | si'-mūs, <i>we may be,</i> |
| 2. sis, <i>thou mayst be,</i> | si'-tis, <i>ye may be,</i> |
| 3. sit, <i>he may be</i>      | sint, <i>they may be.</i>  |

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

- |                                     |                                 |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. es'-sem, <i>I would be,</i>      | es-sē'-mūs, <i>we would be,</i> |
| 2. es'-sēs, <i>thou wouldst be,</i> | es-sē'-tis, <i>ye would be,</i> |
| 3. es'-sēt, <i>he would be;</i>     | es'-sent, <i>they would be.</i> |

Perfect.

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. fu'-ē-rim, <i>I may have been,</i>      | fu-ēr'-i-mūs, <i>we may have been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ē-rīs, <i>thou mayst have been,</i> | fu-ēr'-i-tis, <i>ye may have been,</i> |
| 3. fu'-ē-rit, <i>he may have been;</i>     | fu'-ē-rint, <i>they may have been.</i> |

Pluperfect. *might, could, would, or should have.*

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. fu-is'-sem, <i>I would have been,</i>      | fu-is-sē'-mūs, <i>we would have been,</i> |
| 2. fu-is'-sēs, <i>thou wouldst have been,</i> | fu-is-sē'-tis, <i>ye would have been,</i> |
| 3. fu-is'-sēt, <i>he would have been;</i>     | fu-is'-sent, <i>they would have been.</i> |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- |                                      |                                |
|--------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| Pres. 2. ēs, <i>be thou,</i>         | es'-tē, <i>be ye.</i>          |
| Aut. 2. es'-tō, <i>thou shalt be</i> | es-tō'-tē, <i>ye shall be,</i> |
| 3. es'-tō, <i>let him be;</i>        | sun'-tō, <i>let them be.</i>   |

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present. es'-sē, *to be.*

Perfect. fu-is'-sē, *to have been.*

Future. fū-tū'-rūs (ā, um), es'-sē, or fō'-rē, *to be about to be.*



## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Future.

*I shall or will advise.*

S. mǒ-nē'-tǎ,  
mǒ-nē'-bis,  
mǒ-nē'-bit;  
P. mǒ-nēb'-i-mūs,  
mǒ-nēb'-i-tis,  
mǒ-nē'-bunt.

*I shall or will be advised.*

S. mǒ-nē'-bōr,  
mǒ-nēb'-ē-ris or -rē,  
mǒ-nēb'-i-tūr;  
P. mǒ-nēb'-i-mūr,  
mǒn-ē-bim'-i-ni,  
mǒn-ē-bun'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I advised or have advised.*

S. mǒn'-u-i,  
mǒn-u-is'-tī,  
mǒn'-u-it;  
P. mǒn'-u-i-mūs,  
mǒn-u-is'-tis,  
mǒn-u-ē'-runt or -rē.

*I was or have been advised.*

S. mǒn'-i-tūs sum or fu'-i,  
mǒn'-i-tūs es or fu-is'-tī,  
mǒn'-i-tūs est or fu-it;  
P. mǒn'-i-tī sū'-mūs or fu'-i-mūs,  
mǒn'-i-tī es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
mǒn'-i-tī sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -rē.

## Pluperfect.

*I had advised.*

S. mǒn'-u-ē-ram,  
mǒn'-u-ē-rās,  
mǒn'-u-ē-rāt;  
P. mǒn-u-ē-rā'-mūs,  
mǒn-u-ē-rā'-tis,  
mǒn'-u-ē-rant.

*I had been advised.*

S. mǒn'-i-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,  
mǒn'-i-tūs ē'-rās or fu'-ē-rās,  
mǒn'-i-tūs ē'-rāt or fu'-ē-rāt;  
P. mǒn'-i-tī ē-rā'-mūs or fu-e-rā'-mūs,  
mǒn'-i-tī ē-rā'-tis or fu-e-rā'-tis,  
mǒn'-i-tī ē-rant or fu'-ē-rant.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have advised.*

S. mǒn'-u-ē-rō,  
mǒn'-u-ē-rīs,  
mǒn'-u-ē-rīt;  
P. mǒn-u-ēr'-i-mūs,  
mǒn-u-ēr'-i-tis,  
mǒn'-u-ē-rint.

*I shall have been advised.*

S. mǒn'-i-tūs ē'-rō or fu'-ē-rō,  
mǒn'-i-tūs ē'-ris or fu'-ē-rīs,  
mǒn'-i-tūs ē'-rit or fu'-ē-rīt;  
P. mǒn'-i-tī ēr'-i-mūs or fu-ēr'-i-mūs,  
mǒn'-i-tī ēr'-i-tis or fu-ēr'-i-tis,  
mǒn'-i-tī ē-runt or fu'-ē-rint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can advise.*

S. mǒ'-ne-am,  
mǒ'-ne-ās,  
mǒ'-ne-āt;  
P. mǒ'-ne-ā'-mūs,  
mǒ'-ne-ā'-tis,  
mǒ'-ne-ant.

*I may or can be advised.*

S. mǒ'-ne-ār,  
mǒ'-ne-ā'-ris or -rē,  
mǒ'-ne-ā'-tūr;  
P. mǒ'-ne-ā'-mūr,  
mǒ'-ne-ām'-i-ni,  
mǒ'-ne-an'-tūr.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE

## Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should advise.*

- S. mǎ-ně'-rem,  
mǎ-ně'-rēs,  
mǎ-ně'-rēt;  
P. mǎn-ē-rē'-mūs,  
mǎn-ē-rē'-tis,  
mǎ-ē'-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be advised.*

- S. mǎ-ně'-rēr,  
mǎn-ē-rē'-rīs or -rē,  
mǎn-ē-rē'-tūr;  
P. mǎn-ē-rē'-mūr,  
mǎn-ē-rēm'-l-nī,  
mǎn-ē-ren'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I may have advised.*

- S. mǎ-nu'-è-rim,  
mǎ-nu'-è-rīs,  
mǎ-nu'-è-rit;  
P. mǎn-u-ēr'-l-mūs,  
mǎn-u-ēr'-l-tīs,  
mǎ-nu'-è-rint.

*I may have been advised.*

- S. mǎn'-l-tūs sim or fu'-è-rim,  
mǎn'-l-tūs sis or fu'-è-rīs,  
mǎn'-l-tūs sīt or fu'-è-rit;  
P. mǎn'-l-tī sī'-mūs or fu-ēr'-l-mūs,  
mǎn'-l-tī sī'-tīs or fu-ēr'-l-tīs,  
mǎn'-l-tī sint or fu'-è-rint.

## Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have advised.*

- S. mǎn-u-is'-sem,  
mǎn-u-is'-sēs,  
mǎn-u-is'-sēt;  
P. mǎn-u-is-sē'-mūs,  
mǎn-u-is-sē'-tīs,  
mǎn-u-is'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been advised.*

- S. mǎn'-l-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
mǎn'-l-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,  
mǎn'-l-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;  
P. mǎn'-l-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,  
mǎn'-l-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,  
mǎn'-l-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. S. mǎ'-ně, advise thou;*

*P. mǎ-ně'-tē, advise ye.*

*Fut. S. mǎ-ně'-tǎ, thou shalt advise,*

*mǎ-ně'-tǎ, he shall advise;*

*P. mǎn-ē-tǎ'-tē, ye shall advise,*

*mǎ-nēn'-tǎ, they shall advise.*

*Pres. S. mǎ-ně'-rē, be thou advised,*

*P. mǎ-nēm'-l-nī, be ye advised.*

*Fut. S. mǎ-ně'-tǎr, thou shalt be advised,*

*mǎ-ně'-tǎr, he shall be advised:*

*P. (mǎn-ē-bīm'-l-nī, ye shall be advised.)*

*mǎ-nēn'-tǎr, they shall be advised.*

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres. mǎ-ně'-rē, to advise.*

*Perf. mǎn-u-is'-sē, to have advised.*

*Fut. mǎn-l-tū-rūs es'-sē, to be about to advise.*

*Pres. mǎ-ně'-rī, to be advis-d.*

*Perf. mǎn'-l-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē, to have been advised.*

*Fut. mǎn'-l-tum ī-rī, to be about to be advised.*

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## PARTICIPLES.

Pres. mō'-nens, *advising.*Perf. mōn'-i-tūs, *advised.*Fut. mōn-i-tū'-rūs, *about to advise.*Fut. mō-nen'-dūs, *to be advised.*

## GERUND.

G. mō-nen'-di, *of advising,*D. mō-nen'-dō, *etc.*

Ac. mō-nen'-dum,

Ab. mō-nen'-dō.

## SUPINES.

Former. mōn'-i-tum, *to advise.* | Latter. mōn'-i-tū, *to be advised.*

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *mon*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	moneo, moneor.	
— <i>imperf.</i>	monēbam, monēbar.	
— <i>fut.</i>	monēbo, monēbor.	
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	moneam, monear.	
— <i>imperf.</i>	monērem, monērer.	
<i>Imperat. pres.</i>	mone, monēre.	
— <i>fut.</i>	monēto, monētor.	
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	monere, monēri.	
<i>Part. pres.</i>	monens, monendus.	
— <i>fut.</i>	monendū.	
<i>Gerund.</i>	monendū.	

From the second root, *monu*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	monui, monitus sum, etc.	
— <i>plup.</i>	monuēram, monitus eram, etc.	
— <i>fut. perf.</i>	monuēro, monitus ero, etc.	
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	monuērim, monitus sim, etc.	
— <i>plup.</i>	monuissim, monitus essem, etc.	
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	monuisse, monitus esse, etc.	

From the third root,

<i>Inf. fut.</i>	monitūrus esse, monitum iri.
<i>Part. fut.</i>	monitūrus, monitus.
— <i>perf.</i>	monitus.
<i>Form. Sup.</i>	monitum. Lat. Sup. monita.

## § 158. THIRD CONJUGATION.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Pres. Ind. rē'-gō.  
 Pres. Inf. rēg'-ē-rē.  
 Perf. Ind. rex'-i.  
 Supine. rec'-tum.

Pres. Ind. rē'-gōr.  
 Pres. Inf. rē'-gī.  
 Perf. Part. rec'-tūs.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I rule.*  
*Sing.* rē'-gō,  
 rē'-gīs,  
 rē'-git;  
*Plur.* rēg'-i-mūs,  
 rēg'-i-tīs,  
 rē-gunt.

*I am ruled.*  
*Sing.* rē'-gor, *ou ruled;*  
 rēg'-ē-ris *or ye ruled.*  
 rēg'-i-tūr *is shall be ruled,*  
*Plur.* rēg'-i-mīe *shall be ruled,*  
 rē-gīm'-ni, *ye shall, etc.)*  
 rē-gun', *r, they shall, etc.*

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Imperfect.

*I was ruling*

S. rě-gě'-bam,  
rě-gě'-bās,  
rě-gě'-bāt;  
P. rěg-ē-bā'-mūs,  
rěg-ē-bā'-tis,  
rěg-ē-bant.

*I was ruled.*

S. rě-gě'-bār,  
rěg-ē-bā'-ris or -rě,  
rěg-ē-bā'-tūr;  
P. rěg-ē-bā'-mūr,  
rěg-ē-bām'-l-nī,  
rěg-ē-ban'-tūr.

## Future.

*I shall or will rule.*

S. rě'-gam,  
rě'-gēs,  
rě'-gēt;  
P. rě-gě'-mūs,  
rě-gě'-tis,  
rě'-gent.

*I shall or will be ruled.*

S. rě'-gār,  
rě-gě'-ris or -rě,  
rě-gě'-tūr;  
P. rě-gě'-mūr,  
rě-gēm'-l-nī,  
rě-gen'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I ruled or have ruled.*

S. rex'-i,  
rex-is'-ti,  
rex'-it;  
P. rex'-l-mūs,  
rex-is'-tis,  
rex-ē'-runt or -rě.

*I was or have been ruled.*

S. rec'-tūs sum or fu'-i,  
rec'-tūs es or fu-is'-ti,  
rec'-tūs est or fu-it;  
P. rec'-ti sū'-mūs or fu'-l-mūs,  
rec'-ti es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
rec'-ti sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -re

## Pluperfect.

*I had ruled.*

S. rex'-ē-ram,  
rex'-ē-rās,  
rex'-ē-rāt;  
P. rex-ē-rā'-mūs  
rex-ē-rā'-tis,  
rex'-ē-rant.

*I had been ruled.*

S. rec'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rās or fu'-ē-rās,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rāt or fu'-ē-rāt;  
P. rec'-ti ē-rā'-mūs or fu-ē-rā'-mūs  
rec'-ti ē-rā'-tis or fu-ē-rā'-tis,  
rec'-ti ē'-rant or fu'-ē-rant.

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have ruled*

S. rex'-ē-rō,  
rex'-ē-rīs,  
rex'-ē-rit;  
P. rex-ēr'-l-mūs,  
rex-ēr'-l-tis,  
rex'-ē-rint.

*I shall have been ruled.*

S. rec'-tūs ē'-rō or fu'-ē-rō,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rīs or fu'-ē-rīs,  
rec'-tūs ē'-rit or fu'-ē-rit;  
P. rec'-ti ēr'-l-mūs or fu-ēr'-l-mūs,  
rec'-ti ēr'-l-tis or fu-ēr'-l-tis,  
rec'-ti ē'-runt or fu'-ē-rint.



ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

*I may or can rule.*

*S.* rě'-gam,  
rě'-gas,  
rě'-gāt;  
*P.* rě-gā'-mūs,  
rě-gā'-tis,  
rě'-gant.

*I may or can be ruled.*

*S.* rě'-gār,  
rě-gā'-ris or -rě,  
rě-gā'-tūr;  
*P.* rě-gā'-mūr,  
rě-gām'-i-nī,  
rě-gan'-tūr.

Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should rule.*

*S.* rěg'-ě-rem,  
rěg'-ě-rēs,  
rěg'-ě-rēt;  
*P.* rěg-ě-rě'-mūs,  
rěg-ě-rě'-tis,  
rěg'-ě-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be ruled.*

*S.* rěg'-ě-rēr,  
rěg-ě-rě'-ris or -rě,  
rěg-ě-rě'-tūr;  
*P.* rěg-ě-rě'-mūr,  
rěg-ě-rēm'-i-nī,  
rěg-ě-ren'-tūr.

Perfect.

*I may have ruled.*

*S.* rex'-ě-rim,  
rex'-ě-ris,  
rex'-ě-rit;  
*P.* rex-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
rex-ēr'-ī-tis,  
rex'-ě-rint.

*I may have been ruled.*

*S.* rec'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim,  
rec'-tūs sis or fu'-ě-ris,  
rec'-tūs sit or fu'-ě-rit;  
*P.* rec'-tī si'-mūs or fu-ēr'-ī-mūs,  
rec'-tī si'-tis or fu-ēr'-ī-tis,  
rec'-tī sint or fu'-ě-rint.

Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have ruled.*

*S.* rex-is'-sem,  
rex-is'-sēs,  
rex-is'-sēt;  
*P.* rex-is-sē'-mūs,  
rex-is-sē'-tis,  
rex-is'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been ruled.*

*S.* rec'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
rec'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,  
rec'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;  
*P.* rec'-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,  
rec'-tī es-sē'-tis or fu-is-sē'-tis,  
rec'-tī es'-sent or fu-is-sent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. S.* rě'-gě, rule thou;

*P.* rěg'-ī-tě, rule ye.

*Fut. S.* rěg'-ī-tō, thou shalt rule,

rěg'-ī-tō, he shall rule;

*P.* rěg'-ī-tō-tě, ye shall rule,

rě-gun'-tō, they shall rule.

*Pres. S.* rěg'-ě-rě, be thou ruled;

*P.* rě-gim'-ī-nī, be ye ruled.

*Fut. S.* rěg'-ī-tōr, thou shalt be ruled,

rěg'-ī-tōr, he shall be ruled,

*P.* (rě-gim'-ī-nī, ye shall, etc.)

rě-gun'-tōr, they shall, etc.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* rēg'-ē-rē, to rule.*Perf.* rex-is'-sē, to have ruled.*Fut.* rec-tū'-rūs es'-sē, to be about to rule.*Pres.* rē'-gī, to be ruled.*Perf.* rec'-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-sē, to have been ruled.*Fut.* rec'-tum ī'-rī, to be about to be ruled.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* rē'-gens, ruling.*Fut.* rec-tū'-rūs, about to rule.*Perf.* rec'-tūs, ruled.*Fut.* rē-gen'-dūs, to be ruled.

## GERUND.

*G.* rē-gen'-dī, of ruling.*D.* rē-gen'-dō, etc.*Ac.* rē-gen'-dum,*Ab.* rē-gen'-dō.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* rec'-tum, to rule.*Latter.* rec'-tū, to be ruled.

## FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *reg*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	rego,	regor.
— <i>imperf.</i>	regēbam,	regēbar.
— <i>ful.</i>	regam,	regar.
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	regam,	regar.
— <i>imperf.</i>	regērem,	regērer.
<i>Imperat. pres.</i>	rege,	regere.
— <i>ful.</i>	regito,	regitor.
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	regere,	regi.
<i>Part. pres.</i>	regens,	
— <i>ful.</i>		regendus.
<i>Gerund.</i>	regendū.	

From the second root, *rex*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	rexī,	rectus sum, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	rexēram,	rectus eram, etc.
— <i>ful. perf.</i>	rexēro,	rectus ero, etc.
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	rexērim,	rectus sim, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	rexēssem,	rectus essem, etc.
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	rexiasse,	rectus esse, etc.

From the third root,  
*Inf. ful.* rectūrus esse, rectum iri.  
*Part. ful.* rectūrus.  
 — *perf.* rectus.  
*Form. Sup.* rectum. *Lat. Sup.* rectu.

§ 159. VERBS IN *IO* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation, in tenses formed from the first root, have, as connecting vowels, *ia*, *ie*, *io*, or *iu*, wherever the same occur in the fourth conjugation; but where they have only a single connecting vowel, it is the same which characterizes other verbs of the third conjugation. They are all conjugated like *cāpio*.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* că'-pi-**ḡ**, *to take.**Pres. Inf.* căp'-**ē-rē**.*Perf. Ind.* cē'-pi.*Supine.* cap'-tūm.*Pres. Ind.* că'-pi-**ḡr**, *to be taken.**Pres. Inf.* că'-pi.*Perf. Part.* cap'-tūa.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*S.* că'-pi-**ḡ**,  
că'-pla,  
că'-pl**t**;  
*P.* căp'-l-mūa,  
căp'-l-tis,  
că'-pi-unt.

*S.* că'-pi-**ḡr**,  
căp'-**ē-ris** or -**rē**,  
căp'-l-tūr;  
*P.* căp'-l-mūr,  
că-plm'-l-nī,  
că'-pi-un'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*S.* că'-pi-**ē-bam**,  
că'-pi-**ē-bās**,  
că'-pi-**ē-bāt**;  
*P.* că'-pi-**ē-bā-mūa**,  
că'-pi-**ē-bā-tis**,  
că'-pi-**ē-bant**.

*S.* că'-pi-**ē-bār**,  
că'-pi-**ē-bā-ris** or -**rē**,  
că'-pi-**ē-bā-tūr**;  
*P.* că'-pi-**ē-bā-mūr**,  
că'-pi-**ē-bām-l-nī**,  
că'-pi-**ē-ban'-tūr**.

## Future.

*S.* că'-pi-**am**,  
că'-pi-**ēs**,  
că'-pi-**ēt**;  
*P.* că'-pi-**ē-mūa**,  
că'-pi-**ē-tis**,  
că'-pi-**ent**.

*S.* că'-pi-**ār**,  
că'-pi-**ē-ris** or -**rē**,  
că'-pi-**ē-tūr**;  
*P.* că'-pi-**ē-mūr**,  
că'-pi-**ēm-l-nī**,  
că'-pi-**en'-tūr**.

The parts formed from the second and third roots being entirely regular, only a synopsis of them is given.

*Perf.* cē'-pi.*Plup.* cēp'-**ē-ram**.*Fut. perf.* cēp'-**ē-rō**.*Perf.* cap'-tūs sum or fu'-i.*Plup.* cap'-tūs **ē-ram** or fu'-**ē-ram**.*Fut. perf.* cap'-tūs **ē-rō** or fu'-**ē-rō**.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*S.* că'-pi-**am**,  
că'-pi-**ās**,  
că'-pi-**āt**;  
*P.* că'-pi-**ā-mūa**,  
că'-pi-**ā-tis**,  
că'-pi-**ant**.

*S.* că'-pi-**ār**,  
că'-pi-**ā-ris** or -**re**,  
că'-pi-**ā-tūr**;  
*P.* că'-pi-**ā-mūr**,  
că'-pi-**ām-l-nī**,  
că'-pi-**an'-tūr**.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## Imperfect.

*S.* cǎp'-ě-rem,  
cǎp'-ě-rēs,  
cǎp'-ě-rēt;  
*P.* cǎp'-ě-rē'-mūs,  
cǎp'-ě-rē'-tis,  
cǎp'-ě-rent.

*S.* cǎp'-ě-rēr,  
cǎp'-ě-rē'-ris or -rē,  
cǎp'-ě-rē'-tūr;  
*P.* cǎp'-ě-rē'-mūr,  
cǎp'-ě-rēm'-i-nī,  
cǎp'-ě-ren'-tūr.

*Perf.* cēp'-ě-rim.  
*Plup.* cē-pis'-sem.

*Perf.* cap'-tūs sim or fu'-ě-rim.  
*Plup.* cap'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. 2. S.* cǎ'-pě; *P. 2.* cǎp'-i-tě. | *S.* cǎp'-ě-rě; *P.* cǎ-pim'-i-nī.  
*Fut. 2.* cǎp'-i-tǔ, cǎp'-i-tǔ'-tě, | cǎp'-i-tǔr, (cǎ-pi-ēm'-i-nī,)  
— *3.* cǎp'-i-tǔ; cǎ-pi-un'-tǔ. | cǎp'-i-tǔr; cǎ-pi-un'-tǔr.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* cǎp'-ě-rě.  
*Perf.* cē-pis'-sě.  
*Fut.* cap-tū'-rūs es'-sě.

*Pres.* cǎ'-pī.  
*Perf.* cap'-tūs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě  
*Fut.* cap'-tum í'-rī.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* cǎ'-pi-ens.  
*Fut.* cap-tū'-rūs.

*Perf.* cap'-tūs.  
*Fut.* cǎ-pi-en'-dūs.

## GERUND.

*G.* cǎ-pi-en'-dī, etc.

## SUPINES.

*Former.* cap'-tum.

*Latter.* cap'-tū.

## § 160. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

*Pres. Ind.* au'-di-ō.  
*Pres. Inf.* au-di'-rě.  
*Perf. Ind.* au-di'-vī.  
*Supine.* au-di'-tum.

*Pres. Ind.* au'-di-ōr.  
*Pres. Inf.* au-di'-rī.  
*Perf. Part.* au-di'-tūs.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I hear.*

S. au'-di-ō,  
au'-dis,  
au'dit ;  
P. au-di'-mūs,  
au'-di'-tis,  
au'-di-unt.

*I am heard.*

S. au'-di-ōr,  
au-di'-rīs or -rē,  
au-di'-tūr ;  
P. au-di'-mūr,  
au-dim'-l-nī,  
au-di-un'-tūr.

## Imperfect.

*I was hearing.*

S. au-di-ē'-bam,  
au-di-ē'-bās,  
au-di-ē'-bāt ;  
P. au-di-ē-bā'-mūs,  
au-di-ē-bā'-tis,  
au-di-ē-bant.

*I was heard.*

S. au-di-ē'-bār,  
au-di-ē-bā'-rīs or -rē,  
au-di-ē-bā'-tūr ;  
P. au-di-ē-bā'-mūr,  
au-di-ē-bām'-l-nī,  
au-di-ē-ban'-tūr.

## Future.

*I shall or will hear.*

S. au'-di-am,  
au'-di-ēs,  
au'-di-ēt ;  
P. au-di-ē'-mūs,  
au-di-ē'-tis,  
au'-di-ent.

*I shall or will be heard.*

S. au'-di-ār,  
au-di-ē'-rīs or -rē,  
au-di-ē'-tūr ;  
P. au-di-ē'-mūr,  
au-di-ēm'-l-nī,  
au-di-en'-tūr.

## Perfect.

*I heard or have heard.*

S. au-di'-vi,  
au-di-vis'-ti,  
au-di'-vīt ;  
P. au-div'-l-mūs,  
au-di-vis'-tis,  
au-di-vē'-runt or -rē.

*I have been or was heard.*

S. au-di'-tūs sum or fu'-i,  
au-di'-tūs es or fu-is'-ti,  
au-di'-tūs est or fu-it ;  
P. au-di'-tī sū-mūs or fu-l-mūs,  
au-di'-tī es'-tis or fu-is'-tis,  
au-di'-tī sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -rē.

## Pluperfect.

*I had heard.*

S. au-div'-ē-ram,  
au-div'-ē-rās,  
au-div'-ē-rāt ;  
P. au-div'-ē-rā-mūs,  
au-div'-ē-rā'-tis,  
au-div'-ē-rant.

*I had been heard.*

S. au-di'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram,  
au-di'-tūs ē'-rās or fu'-ē-rās,  
au-di'-tūs ē'-rāt or fu'-ē-rāt ;  
P. au-di'-tī ē-rā'-mūs or fu-ē-rā'-mūs,  
au-di'-tī ē-rā'-tis or fu-ē-rā'-tis,  
au-di'-tī ē'-rant or fu'-ē-rant.

## ACTIVE.

## PASSIVE

## Future Perfect.

*I shall have heard.*

- S. au-div' -ě-rō,  
au-div' -ě-rīs,  
au-div' -ě-rit;  
P. au-di-věr' -ī-mūs,  
au-di-věr' -ī-tīs,  
au-div' -ě-rint.

*I shall have been heard.*

- S. au-di'-tūs ě'-rō or fu' -ě-rō,  
au-di'-tūs ě'-rīs or fu' -ě-rīs,  
au-di'-tūs ě'-rit or fu' -ě-rit;  
P. au-di'-tī ěr' -ī-mūs or fu-ěr' -ī-mūs,  
au-di'-tī ěr' -ī-tīs or fu-ěr' -ī-tīs,  
au-di'-tī ě'-runt or fu' -ě-rint.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## Present.

*I may or can hear.*

- S. au'-di-am,  
au'-di-ās,  
au'-di-āt;  
P. au-di-ā'-mūs,  
au-di-ā'-tīs,  
au'-di-ant.

*I may or can be heard.*

- S. au'-di-ār,  
au-di-ā'-rīs or -rě,  
au-di-ā'-tūr;  
P. au-di-ā'-mūr,  
au-di-ām' -ī-nī,  
au-di-an' -tūr.

## Imperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should hear.*

- S. au-di'-rem,  
au-di'-rēs,  
au-di'-rēt;  
P. au-di-rě'-mūs,  
au-di-rě'-tīs,  
au-di'-rent.

*I might, could, would, or should be heard.*

- S. au-di'-rēr,  
au-di-rě'-rīs or -rě,  
au-di-rě'-tūr;  
P. au-di-rě'-mūr,  
au-di-rēm' -ī-nī,  
au-di-ren' -tūr.

## Perfect.

*I may have heard.*

- S. au-div' -ě-rim,  
au-div' -ě-rīs,  
au-div' -ě-rit;  
P. au-di-věr' -ī-mūs,  
au-di-věr' -ī-tīs,  
au-div' -ě-rint.

*I may have been heard.*

- S. au-di'-tūs sim or fu' -ě-rim,  
au-di'-tūs sis or fu' -ě-rīs,  
au-di'-tūs slit or fu' -ě-rit;  
P. au-di'-tī si'-mūs or fu-ěr' -ī-mūs,  
au-di'-tī si'-tīs or fu-ěr' -ī-tīs,  
au-di'-tī sint or fu' -ě-rint.

## Pluperfect.

*I might, could, would, or should have heard.*

- S. au-di-vis'-sem,  
au-di-vis'-sēs,  
au-di-vis'-sēt;  
P. au-di-vis-sē'-mūs,  
au-di-vis-sē'-tīs,  
au-di-vis'-sent.

*I might, could, would, or should have been heard.*

- S. au-di'-tūs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,  
au-di'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,  
au-di'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;  
P. au-di'-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,  
au-di'-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,  
au-di'-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Pres. S.* au'-dī, *hear thou ;*  
*P.* au-dī'-tē, *hear ye.*  
*Fut. S.* au-dī'-tō, *thou shalt hear,*  
*au-dī'-tō, he shall hear ;*  
*P.* au-dī-tō'-tē, *ye shall hear,*  
*au-di-un'-tō, they shall*  
*hear.*

*Pres. S.* au-di'-rē, *be th u heard ,*  
*P.* au-dim'-i-nī, *be ye heard.*  
*Fut. S.* au-di'-tōr, *thou shalt be*  
*heard,*  
*au-di'-tōr, he shall be*  
*heard ;*  
*P.* (au-di-ēm'-i-nī, *ye shall*  
*be heard,)*  
*au-di-un'-tōr, they shall*  
*be heard.*

INFINITIVE MOOD.

*Pres.* au-dī'-rē, *to hear.*  
*Perf.* au-di-vis'-sē, *to have heard.*  
*Fut.* au-di-tū'-rūs es-sē, *to be*  
*about to hear.*

*Pres.* au-dī'-rī, *to be heard.*  
*Perf.* au-dī'-tūs es'-sē or fu-is'-  
*sē, to have been heard.*  
*Fut.* au-dī'-tum ī'-rī, *to be about*  
*to be heard.*

PARTICIPLES.

*Pres.* au'-di-ēns, *hearing.*  
*Fut.* au-di-tū'-rūs, *about to hear.*

*Perf.* au-dī'-tūs, *heard.*  
*Fut.* au-di-en'-dūs, *to be heard.*

GERUND.

*G.* au-di-en'-di, *of hearing.*  
*D.* au-di-en'-dō, *etc.*  
*Ac.* au-di-en'-dum,  
*Ab.* au-di-en'-dō.

SUPINES.

*Former.* au-dī'-tum, *to hear.* | *Latter.* au-dī'-tū, *to be heard.*

FORMATION OF THE TENSES.

From the first root, *aud*, are de-  
 rived

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. pres.</i>	audio.	audior.
— <i>impe-f.</i>	audiēbam,	audiēbar.
— <i>ful.</i>	audiam,	audiar.
<i>Subj. pres.</i>	audiam,	audiar.
— <i>imperf.</i>	audirem,	audirer.
<i>Imperat. pres.</i>	audi,	audire.
— <i>ful.</i>	audito,	auditor.
<i>Inf. pres.</i>	audire,	audiri.
<i>Part. pres.</i>	audiens,	
— <i>ful.</i>		audiendus.
<i>Gerund.</i>	audiendi.	

From the second root, *audiv*, are derived, *audī*, are derived,

	Active.	Passive.
<i>Ind. perf.</i>	audivī,	auditus sum, etc
— <i>plup.</i>	audivēram,	auditus eram, etc
— <i>ful. perf.</i>	audivēro,	auditus ero, etc.
<i>Subj. perf.</i>	audivērim,	auditus sim, etc.
— <i>plup.</i>	audivissem,	auditus essem, etc
<i>Inf. perf.</i>	audivisse,	auditus esse, etc.

From the third root,  
*Inf. ful.* auditūrus esse, auditum iri.  
*Part. ful.* auditūrus.  
*— perf.* auditus.  
*Form. sup.* auditum *Lat. sup.* auditus

## DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 161. Deponent verbs are conjugated like the passive voice, and have also all the participles and participial formations of the active voice. Neuter deponent verbs, however, want the future passive participle, except that the neuter in *dum* is sometimes used impersonally. See § 184, 3.

The following is an example of an active deponent verb of the first conjugation :—

## PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Mi'-rör, mi-rä'-ri, mi-rä'-tüs, *to admire.*

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	mi'-rör, mi-rä'-ris, etc.	<i>I admire, etc.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	mi-rä'-bär, etc.	<i>I was admiring.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	mi-rä'-bör,	<i>I shall admire.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	mi-rä'-tüs sum or fu'-i,	<i>I have admired.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	mi-rä'-tüs ẽ'-ram or fu'-ẽ-ram,	<i>I had admired.</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	mi-rä'-tüs ẽ'-ro or fu'-ẽ-ro,	<i>I shall have admired.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	mi'-rër, mi-rë'-ris, etc.	<i>I may admire, etc.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	mi-rä'-rër,	<i>I would admire.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	mi-rä'-tüs sim or fu'-ẽ-rim,	<i>I may have admired.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	mi-rä'-tüs es'-sem or fu-is'-sem,	<i>I would have admired.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. S.</i>	mi-rä'-rë, <i>admire thou,</i>	<i>P. mi-räm'-i-ni, admire ye.</i>
<i>Fut. S.</i>	mi-rä'-tör, <i>thou shalt admire,</i>	<i>P. (mir-ä-bim'-i-ni, ye shall, etc.</i>
	mi-rä'-tör, <i>he shall admire ;</i>	<i>mi-ran'-tör, they shall, etc.</i>

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres.</i>	mi-rä'-ri,	<i>to admire.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	mi-rä'-tüs es'-së or fu-is'-së,	<i>to have admired.</i>
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	mir-ä-tü'-rüs es'-së,	<i>to be about to admire.</i>
<i>Fut. Pass.</i>	mi-rä'-tum i'-ri,	<i>to be about to be admired.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i>	mi'-rans,	<i>admiring.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	mi-rä'-tüs,	<i>having admired.</i>
<i>Fut. Act.</i>	mir-ä-tü'-rüs,	<i>about to admire.</i>
<i>Fut. Pass.</i>	mi-ran'-düs,	<i>to be admired.</i>

## GERUND.

G. mi-ran'-di, *of admiring, etc.*

## SUPINES.

*Former* mi-rä'-tum, *to admire.* | *Latter.* mi-rä'-tū, *to be admired.*



## REMARKS ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

*Of the Tenses formed from the First Root.*

§ 162. 1. A few words in the present subjunctive of the first and third conjugations, in the earlier writers and in the poets, end in *im*, *is*, *it*, etc. as, *edim*, *edis*, *edit*, *edimus*; *comedim*, *comedis*, *comedint*; for *edam*, etc. *comedum*, etc.; *duim*, *duis*, *duit*, *duint*; and *perduim*, *perduis*, *perduit*, *perduint*; for *dens*, etc. *perdam*, etc. from old forms *duo* and *perduo*, for *do* and *perdo*: so *creduis*, *creduit*, and also *creduam*, *creduas*, *creduat*, for *credam*, etc. from the old form *creduo*, for *credo*. The form in *im*, etc. was retained as the regular form in *sim* and *velim*, from *sum* and *volo*, and in their compounds.

2. The imperfect indicative in the fourth conjugation, sometimes, especially in the more ancient writers, ends in *ibam* and *ibur*, for *iēbam* and *iēbur*, and the future in *ibo* and *ibor*, for *iam* and *iar*; as, *vestibat*, Virg., *largibar*, Propert. for *vestiēbat*, *largiēbar*; *scibo*, *opperibor*, for *sciam*, *opperiar*. *Ibam* and *ibo* were retained as the regular forms of *eo*, *queo*, and *nequeo*. Cf. § 182.

3. The termination *re*, in the second person singular of the passive voice, is rare in the present, but common in the other simple tenses.

4. The imperatives of *dico*, *dūco*, *fācio*, and *fēro*, are usually written *dīc*, *duc*, *fac*, and *fer*; in like manner their compounds, except those compounds of *fācio* which change *a* into *i*; as, *effice*, *confice*; but *calcāre* also is found in Cicero; and in old writers *dīce*, *edice*, *addice*, *indice*, *dūce*, *abdūce*, *reduce*, *tradūce*, and *fāce*. *Inger* for *ingere* is rare. *Scio* has not *sci*, but its place is supplied by *scito*, and *sciūtē* is preferred to *scite*.

5. In the imperative future of the passive voice, but especially of deponents, early writers and their imitators sometimes used the active instead of the passive form; as, *arbitrāto*, *amplexāto*, *utilo*, *nitto*; for *arbitrātor*, etc.; and *censento*, *utunto*, *tuento*, etc. for *censor*, etc.—In the second and third persons singular occur, also, forms in *-mīno*; as, *hortamīno*, *veremīno*, *fruemīno*; for *hortātor*, etc.

6. The syllable *er* was often added to the present infinitive passive by early writers and especially by the poets; as, *amariet* for *amāri*, *dicier* for *dīci*.

*Of the Tenses formed from the Second Root.*

7. (a.) When the second root ends in *v*, a syncopation and contraction often occur in the tenses formed from it, by omitting *v*, and sinking the first vowel of the termination in the final vowel of the root, when followed, in the fourth conjugation, by *s*, and in the other conjugations, by *s* or *r*; as, *audissem* for *audivissem*, *amasti* for *amavisti*, *implērunt* for *implevērunt*, *noctam* and *nosse* for *noctāram* and *novisse*.

(b.) When the second root ends in *iv*, *v* is often omitted without contraction; as, *audīro* for *audivēro*; *audīsse* for *audivisse*.

(c.) When this root ends in *s* or *x*, especially in the third conjugation, the syllables *is*, *ies*, and *is*, are sometimes omitted in the termination of tenses derived from it; as, *evasti* for *evasisisti*, *extinxisti* for *extinxisisti*, *divisse* for *divisisse*; *extinzem* for *extinzissem*, *surrexe* for *surrexisse*; *accessis* for *accessisisti*, *juvisisti*; *dixisti* for *dixisisti*. So *fazem* for (*facissem*, i. e.) *fecissem*.

(d.) In the perfect of the first, second, and fourth conjugations, a syncope sometimes occurs in the last syllable of the root and the following syllable of the termination, especially in the third person singular; as, *fumāt*, *audīt*, *cupīt*; for *fumāvīt*, *audivīt*, *cupivīt*. So, also, but rarely, in the first person; as, *sepeli*, *enarrāmus*; for *sepelivī*, *enarrāvīmus*.

8. In the third person plural of the perfect indicative active, the form in *erēt* is less common than that in *erunt*, especially in prose.

9. Ancient forms of a future perfect in *so*, a perfect and pluperfect subjunctive in *sim* and *sem*, and a perfect infinitive in *se* sometimes occur. They may, in general, be formed by adding these terminations to the second root of the verb; as, *recepto, emissim, ausim* from the obsolete perfect, *ausi*, from *audeo*, *confecim* and *promissem*: *divisse* and *promisse*. But when the root ends in *a*, and frequently when it ends in *s*, only *o*, *im*, *em*, and *e*, etc. are added; as, *jusso, dixis; intellexes, percepset; surrexe, sunse*. *V*, at the end of the root, in the first conjugation, is changed into *s*; as, *levasso, locassim*. *U*, at the end of the root, in the second conjugation, is changed into *es*; as, *habesso, licessit*. Sometimes the vowel of the present is retained in these forms, though changed in the other parts derived from the second root; as, *capo, faso* (*facso*), *faxim* (*facsim*).

NOTE. *Fazo* expresses determination, 'I will,' or, 'I am resolved, to make, cause,' etc. The subjunctive *faxit*, etc., expresses a solemn wish; as, *dii immortales faxint*. *Ausim*, etc. express doubt or hesitation, 'I might venture,' etc. The perfect in *sim* is used also in connection with the present subjunctive; as, *quaso uti tu calamitates prohibeas, defendas, averruncesque*. Cato.

10. In the ancient Latin a few examples occur of a future passive of similar form; as, *turbassitur, jussitur*, instead of *turbatum fuerit*, and *jussus fuerit*.—A future infinitive active in *ere* is also found, in the first conjugation, which is formed by adding that termination to the second root, changing, as before, *e* into *s*; as, *expugnassere, impetrassere*, for *expugnaturum esse*, etc.

### Of the Tenses formed from the Third Root.

11. The supine in *um*, though called one of the principal parts of the verb, belongs in fact to very few verbs, the whole number which have this supine not amounting to three hundred. The part called in dictionaries the supine in *um* must therefore, in most cases, be considered as the neuter gender of the perfect participle.

12. In the compound tenses of the indicative and subjunctive moods, the participle is always in the nominative case, but it is used in both numbers, and in all genders, to correspond with the number and gender of the subject of the verb; as, *amatus, -a, -um, est*; *amati, -æ, -a, sunt*, etc.

(1.) *Fui, fuëram, fuërim, fuisset*, and *fuisse*, are seldom used in the compound tenses of deponent verbs, and not so often as *sum*, etc., in those of other verbs, but when used they have generally the same sense. It is to be remarked, however, that *fui* with the perfect participle usually denotes that which has been, but which no longer exists. In the pluperfect subjunctive, *fuëram*, etc., for *essem*, etc., are sometimes found.

(2.) But as the perfect participle may be used in the sense of an adjective, expressing a permanent state, (see § 162, 22), if then connected with the tenses of *sum* its meaning is different from that of the participle in the same connection; *epistola scripta est*, when *scripta* is a participle, signifies, the letter has been written, but if *scripta* is an adjective, the meaning of the expression is the letter is written, and *epistola scripta fuit*, in this case, would signify, the letter has been written, or, has existed as a written one, implying that it no longer exists.

13. The participles in the perfect and future infinitive, are used only in the nominative and accusative, but in all genders and in both numbers; as, *amatus, -a, -um, esse* or *fuisse*; *amatum, -am, -um, esse* or *fuisse*; *amati, -æ, -a, esse* or *fuisse*; *amatos, -as, -a, esse* or *fuisse*; and so of the others. With the infinitive *fuisse*, *amatus*, etc. are generally to be considered as participial adjectives.

(1.) These participles in combination with *esse* are sometimes used as indeclinable; as, *cohortes ad me missum facias*. Cic. *Ad me, mea Tarentia, scribis te necum venditurum*. Id.

*Periphrastic Conjugations.*

14. The participle in *rus*, joined to the tenses of the verb *sum*, denotes either *intention*, or *being upon the point of doing something*. This form of the verb is called the *active periphrastic conjugation*.

REMARK 1. As the performance of the act depends either on the will of the subject, on that of others, or upon circumstances, we may say, in English, in the first case, 'I intend,' and in the others, 'I am to,' or 'I am about to' (be or do any thing).

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amatūrus sum,</i>	<i>I am about to love.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amatūrus eram,</i>	<i>I was about to love.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>amatūrus ero,</i>	<i>I shall be about to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amatūrus fui,</i>	<i>I was or have been about to love.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amatūrus fuēram,</i>	<i>I had been about to love.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amatūrus sim,</i>	<i>I may be about to love.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amatūrus essem,</i>	<i>I would be about to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amatūrus fuērim,</i>	<i>I may have been about to love.</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amatūrus fuisset,</i>	<i>I would have been about to love.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amatūrus esse,</i>	<i>to be about to love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amatūrus fuisse,</i>	<i>to have been about to love.</i>

REM. 2. *Fuēro* is scarcely used in connection with the participle in *rus*.

REM. 3. *Amatūrus sim* and *amatūrus essem* serve also as subjunctives to the future *amābo*. The infinitive *amatūrus fuisse* answers to the English, 'I should have loved,' so that in hypothetical sentences it supplies the place of an infinitive of the pluperfect subjunctive.

REM. 4. In the passive, the fact that an act is about to be performed is expressed by a longer circumlocution: as, *in eo est*, or *futūrum est, ut epistola scribatur*, a letter is about to be written. So *in eo erat*, etc., through all the tenses.

15. The participle in *dus*, with the verb *sum*, expresses *necessity* or *propriety*; as, *amandus sum*, I must be loved, or deserve to be loved. With the various moods and tenses of *sum*, it forms a *passive periphrastic conjugation*;—thus :

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus sum,</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amandus eram,</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>amandus ero,</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fui,</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amandus fuēram,</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fuēro.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus sim,</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>amandus essem,</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fuērim,</i>
<i>Plup.</i>	<i>amandus fuisset.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>amandus esse,</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	<i>amandus fuisse.</i>

**REM. 5.** The neuter of the participle in *dus* with *est* and the dative of a person, expresses the necessity of performing the action on the part of that person as, *mihi scribendum est* I must write, etc., and so through all the tenses.

### Participles.

16. The following perfect participles of neuter verbs, like those of active deponents, are translated by active participles:—*cenātus*, having supped; *potus*, having drunk; *pransus*, having dined; and sometimes *jurātus*, having sworn. So also *adultus*, *coalitus*, *conspirātus*, *interitus*, *occāsus*, *obsoletus*, and *crētus*.

For the active meaning of *ōsus* and its compounds, see § 183, 1.

17. (a.) The perfect participles of some deponent verbs have both an active and a passive sense; as, *adeptus libertātem*, having obtained liberty, or *adeptā libertāte*, liberty having been obtained. Cf. § 142, 4, (b.)

So *abominātus*, *comitātus*, *commentātus*, *complexus*, *confessus*, *contestātus*, *de testātus*, *dignātus*, *dimensus*, *effātus*, *emensus*, *ementitus*, *emeritus*, *expertus*, *exsecrātus*, *interpretātus*, *largitus*, *machinātus*, *meditātus*, *mercātus*, *metātus*, *oblitus*, *opinātus*, *orsus*, *pactus*, *partitus*, *perfunctus*, *periclitātus*, *pollicitus*, *populātus*, *repopulātus*, *stipulātus*, *testātus*, *ultus*, *venerātus*.

(b.) The participle in *dus*, of deponent verbs, is commonly passive.

18. The perfect participles of neuter passive verbs have the signification of the active voice; as, *gavisus*, having rejoiced. But *ausus* is used both in an active and a passive sense.

19. The genitive plural of participles in *rus* is seldom used, except that of *futūrus*. *Venturōrum* is found in Ovid, *exiturārum*, *transiturārum* and *periturōrum* in Seneca, and *moriturōrum* in Augustine.

20. In the third and fourth conjugations, the gerund and future passive participle (including deponents) sometimes end in *undum* and *undus*, instead of *endum* and *endus*, especially when *i* precedes; as, *faciundum*, *audiundum*, *scribundus*. *Potior* has usually *potiundus*.

21. Many present and perfect participles are compounded with *in*, signifying *not*, whose verbs do not admit of such composition; they thus become adjectives; as, *insciens*, ignorant; *imparātus*, unprepared.

22. Participles, when they do not express distinctions of time, become adjectives, and as such are compared; as, *amans*, loving; *amantior*, *amantissimus*. They sometimes also become substantives; as, *præfectus*, a commander; *assum*, an attempt; *commisum*, an offence.

**NOTE.** Many words derived from substantives, with the terminations of participles, *ātus*, *itus*, and *ūtus*, are yet adjectives; as, *alātus*, winged; *turritus*, turreted, etc. See § 128, 7.

### GENERAL RULES OF CONJUGATION.

**§ 163.** 1 Verbs which have *a* in the first root have it also in the third, even when it is changed in the second; as, *fācio*, *factum* *lābeo*, *habitum*.

2. The connecting vowel is often omitted in the second root, and in such cases, if *v* follows, it is changed into *u*. This happens in most verbs of the second conjugation.

REMARK. Some verbs of the first, second, and third conjugations prefix to the second root their initial consonant with the vowel which follows it, or with *ē*: as, *curro*, *cūcurri*; *fallo*, *fēfelli*. This prefix is called a *reduplication*.

NOTE 1. *Spondeo* and *sto* lose *s* in the second syllable, making *spōpōndi* and *stēti*. For the verbs that take a reduplication, see §§ 165, R. 2; 168, N. 2; 171, Exc. 1, (b.)

3. Verbs which want the second root commonly want the third root also.

4. Compound verbs form their second and third roots like the simple verbs of which they are compounded; as, *audio*, *audivi*, *auditus*; *exaudio*, *exaudivi*, *exauditus*.

NOTE 2. Some compound verbs, however, are defective, whose simples are complete, and some are complete, whose simples are defective.

Exc. 1. Compound verbs omit the reduplication; but the compounds of *do*, *sto*, *disco*, *posco*, and some of those of *curro*, retain it.

Exc. 2. Verbs which, in composition, change *a* into *e* in the first root, (see § 189, 1,) retain *e* in the second and third roots of the compound; as, *scando*, *scandi*, *scansum*; *descendo*, *descendi*, *descensum*.

Exc. 3. (a.) When *a*, *æ*, or *e*, in the first root of the simple verb, is changed in the compound into *i*, (see § 189, 2,) the same is retained in the second and third roots, in case the third root of the simple verb is a dissyllable; as, *habeo*, *hābui*, *hābitum*; *prohibeo*, *prohibui*, *prohibitum*.

(b.) But if the third root is a monosyllable, the second root of the compound has usually the same vowel as that of the simple, but sometimes changes *a* or *e* into *i*, and the third root has *e*; as, *fācio*, *fēci*, *factum*; *confācio*, *confēci*, *confectum*; *tēneo*, *tēnui*, *tentum*; *retīneo*, *retīnui*, *retentum*; *rāpio*, *rāpui*, *raptum*; *abrīpio*, *abrīpui*, *abreptum*.

NOTE 3. The compounds of *cādo*, *āgo*, *frango*, *pango*, and *tango*, retain *a* in the third root. See § 172.

Exc. 4. The compounds of *pārio*, (*ēre*), and some of the compounds of *do* and *cādo*, are of different conjugations from their simple verbs. See *do*, *cādo* and *pārio* in §§ 165 and 172.

A few other exceptions will be noticed in the following lists.

## FORMATION OF SECOND AND THIRD ROOTS.

### FIRST CONJUGATION.

§ 164. In regular verbs of this conjugation, the second root ends in *āv*, and the third in *āt*; as, *amo*, *amāvi*, *amātum*.

The following list contains such regular verbs of this conjugation as are of most frequent occurrence.

**NOTE.** In this and subsequent lists, those verbs which are marked \* are said to have no perfect participle; those marked † to have no present participle. A dash (—) after the present, denotes that there is no second root. The participles in *rus* and *dus*, and the supines in *um* and *u* which are in use, are indicated respectively by the letters *r*., *d*., *m*., and *u*. *Abundo*, for example, has no perfect participle, no supine, no participles in *dus*: but it has a present participle, and a participle in *rus*.

In the lists of irregular verbs, those compounds only are given, whose conjugation differs from that of their simples.

When *p.* is subjoined to a deponent verb, it denotes that some of the parts which have commonly an active meaning, are used either actively and passively, or passively alone. Such verbs are by some grammarians called *common*. Cf. § 142, 4, (b.)

\* *Abando*, *r.* d. to overflow.

*Accuso*, *m. r. d.* to accuse.

† *Adumbro*, to delineate.

*Edifico*, *r. d.* to build.

*Equo*, *r. d.* to level.

*Estimo*, *r. d.* to value.

\* *Ambulo*, *m. d.* to walk.

*Amo*, *r. d.* to love.

† *Amplio*, *d.* to enlarge.

*Appello*, *d.* to call.

*Apto*, *d.* to fit.

*Aro*, *r. d.* to plough.

\* † *Ausculco*, to listen.

\* † *Autumo*, to assert.

† *Basio*, —, *d.* to kiss.

\* *Bello*, *m. r. d.* to wage war.

† *Beo*, to bless.

\* *Boo*, to bellow.

† *Brevio*, to shorten.

† *Cæco*, to blind.

† *Cælo*, to carve.

† *Calceo*, *d.* to shoe.

\* † *Calettro*, to kick.

*Canto*, *m.* to sing.

*Capto*, *m. r. d.* to seize.

† *Castigo*, *m. d.* to chastise.

*Celebro*, *d.* to celebrate.

*Cælo*, *d.* to conceal.

*Jesso*, *d.* to cease.

*Certo*, *r. d.* to strive.

*Clamo*, to shout.

*Cogito*, *d.* to think.

*Concilio*, *r. d.* to conciliate.

*Considero*, *r. d.* to consider.

*Cræmo*, *d.* to burn.—*concræmo*, *r.*

† *Creo*, *r. d.* to create.

*Crucio*, *d.* to torment.

*Culpo*, *r. d.* to blame.

† *Cuneo*, *d.* to wedge in.

*Curo*, *r. d.* to care for.

*Danno*, *m. r. d.* to commend.

*Decoro*, *d.* to adorn.

\* † *Delineo*, to delineate.

*Desidero*, *r. d.* to desire.

*Destino*, *d.* to design.

*Dico*, *m. r. d.* to dedicate.

*Dicto*, to dictate.

† *Dolo*, to hew.

*Dono*, *r. d.* to bestow.

*Duplico*, *r. d.* to double.

*Duro*, *r.* to harden.

† *Effigio*, to portray.

† *Enucleo*, to explain.

*Equito*, to ride.

*Erro*, to wander.

*Existimo*, *u. r. d.* to think.

*Exploro*, *m. d.* to search.

*Exsulo*, *m. r.* to be banished.

*Fabrico*, *d.* to frame.

† *Fatigo*, *r. d.* to weary.

*Festino*, *r.* to hasten.

*Firmo*, *r. d.* to strengthen.

*Flagito*, *m. d.* to demand.

\* *Flagro*, *r.* to be on fire.—*conflagro*, *r.*—*deflagro*.

*Flo*, *d.* to blow.

*Formo*, *r. d.* to form.

*Foro*, *d.* to bore.

† *Fraudo*, *d.* to defraud.

† *Fræno*, to bridle.

† *Frio*, —, to crumble.

*Fugo*, *r. d.* to put to flight.

† *Fundo*, *r.* to found.

† *Furio*, —, to madden.

† *Galeo*, —, to put on a helmet.

*Gesto*, *d.* to bear.

*Glacio*, —, to congeal.

*Grævo*, *d.* to weigh down.

*Gusto*, *d.* to taste.

*Habito*, *m. d.* to dwell.

\* *Hælo*, —, to breathe.

*Hiemo*, *m.* to winter.

\* *Hio*, *d.* to gape.

† *Illumo*, *r. d.* to bury.

*Ignoro*, *r. d.* to be ignorant of.

*Impéro*, *r. d.* to command.

† *Impetro*, *r. d.* to obtain.

*Inchoo*, *r.* to begin.

*Iudago*, *r. d.* to trace out

*Indico*, *m. r. d.* to show.

† *Inebrio*, —, to inebriate.

*Initio*, to initiate.

*Inquino*, to pollute.

*Instauro*, *d.* to renew.

*Intro*, *r. d.* to enter.

*Invito*, *d.* to invite.

*Irrito*, *r. d.* to irritate.

*Itéro*, *u. d.* to do again.

*Jacto*, *r. d.* to throw.

*Judico*, *r. d.* to judge.

*Jugo*, *d.* to couple.

*Jugulo*, *m. d.* to butcher

*Juro*, *d.* to swear.

*Laboro*, *r. d.* to labor.

*Lacéro*, *d.* to tear.

\* *Lacto*, to suckle.

† *Lanio*, *d.* to tear in pieces.

*Lätro*, to bark.

*Laudo*, *r. d.* to praise.

*Laxo*, *d.* to loose.

† *Légo*, to depute.

*Lévo*, *r. d.* to lighten.

*Libero*, *r. d.* to free.

*Libo*, *d.* to pour out.

*Ligo*, to bind.

† *Liquo*, *d.* to melt.

*Lito*, to appease.

*Loco*, *r. d.* to place.

*Lustro*, *d.* to survey.

*Luxurio*, to be luxuriant

*Macto*, *d.* to sacrifice.

*Maculo*, to spot, stain.

*Mando*, *r. d.* to command

*Manduco*, to chew.

\* *Mäno*, to flow.

*Maturo*, *d.* to ripen.

*Memoro*, *u. d.* to tell.

\* *Meo*, to go.

\* *Migro*, *u. r. d.* to depart

\* *Milito*, *m. r.* to serve as a soldier

† *Minio*, *d.* to paint red.

*Ministro*, *d.* to serve.

*Mitigo*, *d.* to pacify.

*Monstro*, *r.* to show.—

† *demonstro*, *d.*

*Muto*, *r. d.* to change.

Narro, r. d. to tell.  
 Nâto, m. r. to swim.  
 \*Naunéo, to be sea-sick  
 †Navigo, r. d. to sail.  
 Nâve, r. d. to perform.  
 Nêgo, m. r. d. to deny.  
 \*No, to swim.  
 Nomino, r. d. to name.  
 Nôto, d. to mark.  
 Nôvo, r. d. to renew.  
 Nôdo, d. to make bare.  
 Nuncupo, r. d. to name  
 Nuntio, m. r. to tell.—  
 renuntio, d.  
 \*Nôto, r. to nod.  
 Obsecro, m. r. d. to beseech.  
 Oltrunco, r. to kill.  
 Onêro, r. d. to load.  
 Opto, d. to wish.  
 †Orbo, r. to bereave.  
 Orno, r. d. to adorn.  
 Oro, m. r. d. to beg.  
 Pâco, d. to subdue.  
 Pâro, r. d. to prepare.  
 compâro, d. to compare.  
 Patro, r. d. to perform.  
 \*Pecco, r. d. to sin.  
 †Pio, d. to propitiate.  
 Plâco, r. d. to appease.  
 Plôro, m. d. to bewail.  
 Porto, u. r. d. to carry.  
 Postulo, m. r. d. to demand.  
 Privo, d. to deprive.  
 Prôbo, m. u. r. d. to approve.—comprôbo, m.  
 Profligo, d. to rout.  
 Propêro, d. to hasten.  
 \*†Propino, to drink to.  
 Propitio, d. to appease.  
 Pugno, r. d. to fight.  
 Pulso, d. to beat.  
 Pargo, u. r. d. to cleanse.

Pûto, d. to reckon.  
 Quasso, d. to shake.  
 Râdio, to emit rays.  
 Rapto, d. to drag away.  
 Recupêro, m. r. d. to recover.  
 Recûso, r. d. to refuse.  
 Redundo, d. to overflow.  
 Regno, r. d. to rule.  
 †Repûdio, r. d. to reject.  
 Resêro, d. to unlock.  
 \*†Retâlio, —, to retaliate  
 Rigo, to water.  
 Rôgo, m. r. d. to ask.  
 Rôto, to whirl around.  
 Sacrifico, m. to sacrifice.  
 Sacro, d. to consecrate.  
 †Sagino, d. to fatten.  
 Salto, r. to dance.  
 Salûto, m. r. d. to salute.  
 Sâno, r. d. to heal.  
 Sâtio, to satiate.  
 †Satûro, to fill.  
 Saucio, d. to wound.  
 \*Secundo, to prosper.  
 Sêdo, m. d. to allay.  
 Servo, r. d. to keep.  
 \*†Sibilo, to hiss.  
 Sicco, d. to dry.  
 Signo, r. d. to mark out.—  
 assigno, m.  
 Simûlo, r. d. to pretend.  
 Sôcio, d. to associate.  
 \*Somnio, to dream.  
 Specto, m. r. d. to behold.  
 Spêro, r. d. to hope.  
 \*Spiro, to breathe.—conspiro. — expiro, r. —  
 suspiro, d.  
 Spôlio, m. d. to rob.  
 Spûmo, to foam.  
 Stillo, to drop.  
 Stimûlo, to goad.  
 Stipo, to stuff.

Sûdo, to sneal.  
 Suffoco, to strangle.  
 Sugillo, d. to taunt.  
 Supêro, r. d. to overcome  
 Suppedito, to afford.  
 \*Supplico, m. to supplicate.  
 \*Susurro, to whisper.  
 Tardo, to delay.  
 Taxo, d. to rule.  
 Temêro, d. to defile.  
 Tempêro, r. d. to temper  
 —obtempêro, r. to obey.  
 Tento, m. r. d. to try.  
 Terebro, to bore.  
 Termino, r. d. to limit.  
 Titûbo, to stagger.  
 Tolêro, u. r. d. to bear.  
 Tracto, u. r. d. to handle.  
 \*†Tripûdio, to dance.  
 Triumpho, r. to triumph.  
 Trucido, r. d. to kill.  
 Turbo, d. to disturb.  
 \*Vâco, to be at leisure.  
 \*Vapûlo, m. d. to be beat  
 en. Cf. § 142, 3.  
 Vârio, to diversify.  
 Vasto, d. to lay waste.  
 Vellico, to pluck.  
 Verbêro, r. d. to beat.  
 \*Vestigo, to search for  
 Vexo, d. to tease.  
 Vibro, d. to brandish.  
 Vigilo, to watch.  
 Violo, m. r. d. to violate  
 Vitio, d. to vitiate.  
 Vito, u. d. to shun.  
 Ulûlo, to howl.  
 Umbro, r. to shade.  
 Vôco, r. d. to call.  
 \*Vôlo, to fly.  
 Vôro, r. to devour.  
 Vulgo, r. d. to publish.  
 Vulnêro, d. to wound.

§ 165. The following verbs of the first conjugation are either irregular or defective.

\*Crêpo, crepui, to make a noise. \*discrepo, -ui, or -âvi. increpo, -ui or -âvi, -itum or -âtum. \*†erêcrepo, —.  
 \*trecrepo, —.  
 Cûbo, cubui, (perf. subj. cubâris, inf. cubasse), cubitum (sup.). to recline.  
 incûbo, -ui or -âvi, d. Those compounds of cuo which take m before b, are of the third conjugation.  
 Do, d. di, dâtum, m. r. d. to give.—  
 Su circumdo, pessumdo, satisdo, and

venumdo; the other compounds of dc are of the third conjugation. See § 163, Exc. 1.

Dômo, domui, domitum, r. d. to tame.  
 Frico, fricui, frictum or fricâtum, d. to rub. confrico, —, -âtum. So infrico, defrico, —, -âtum or -ctum.  
 Jûvo, jûvi, jûtum, r. d., also juvatûrus, to help. adjûvo, -jûvi, -jûtum m. r. d. also adjuvatûrus.  
 \*Lâbo, labasse, to totter.

Lāvo, lāvi, *rar.* lāvāvi, lavātum, lautum or lōtum; (*sup.*) lautum or lavātum, lavātūrus, d. *to wash.* Lāvo is also sometimes of the third conjugation.

\*Mico, micui, d. *to glitter.* dimico, -āvi or -ui, -atūrus. \*emico, -ui, -atūrus. \*internico, —. \*promico, —, d.

Nēco, necāvi or necui, necātum, r. d. *to kill.* enēco, -āvi or -ui, -ātum, or -ctum, d. *internēco*, —, -ātum.

\*Nexo, —, *to tie.*

Plico, —, plicātum, *to fold.* duplico, -āvi, -ātum, r. d. *multiplico and replico have* -āvi, -ātum. \*supplico, -āvi, m. r. applico, -āvi or -ui, -ātum or -itum, -itūrus. *So* implico. —complico, -ui, -itum or -ātum. explico, -āvi or -ui, -ātum or -itum, -atūrus or -itūrus.

Pōto, potāvi, potātum or pōtum, r. r. m. m. d. *to drink.* tēpōto, -āvi, -um. —\*perpōto, -āvi.

Sēco, secui, sectum, secatūrus, d. *to*

cut.—\*circumsēco, —. \*intorsēco —, d. \*persēco, -ui. præsēco, -ui -tum or -ātum. *So* resēco, d.

\*Sōno, sonui, -atūrus, d. *to sound.* \*consōno, -ui. *So* ex-, in-, per-præ-sōno. \*resōno, -āvi. \*assōno —. *So* circumsōno and dissōno.

\*Sto, stēti, stātūrus, *to stand.* \*antestō, -stēti. *So* circumsto, intersto, supersto.—*Its compounds with monosyllabic prepositions have* stiti; as, \*consto, -stiti, -stātūrus. *So* exsto, insto, obsto, persto. \*præsto, -stiti, -stātūrus, d. \*adsto or asto, -stiti, -stītūrus. \*prosto, -stiti. *So* resto, restiti: *but subj. perf.* restāverit, Propert, 2, 34, 53. \*disto, —. *So* substo and supersto.

\*Tōno, tonui, *to thunder.* *So* circumtōno. attōno, -ui, -itum. intōno, -ui, -ātum. \*retōno, —.

Vēto, vetui, *rarely* āvi, vetitum, *to forbid.*

REMARK 1. The principal irregularity, in verbs of the first and second conjugations, consists in the omission of the connecting vowel in the second root, and the change of the long vowels *ā* and *ē* in the third root into *i*. The *v* remaining at the end of the second root, when it follows a consonant, is pronounced as *u*; as, *cubo*, (*cubāvi*, by syncope *cubi*), i. e. *cubui*; (*cubātum*, by change of the connecting vowel,) *cubitum*. Sometimes in the first conjugation, and very frequently in the second, the connecting vowel is omitted in the third root also; as, *juvo*, (*āre*) *jūvi*, *jūtum*; *tēneo*, (*ēre*) *tēnuī*, *tenum*. In the second conjugation several verbs whose general root ends in *d* and *g*, and a few others of different terminations, form either their second or third root or both, like verbs of the third conjugation, by adding *s*; as, *rideo*, *risi*, *risum*.

REM. 2. The verbs of the first conjugation whose perfects take a reduplication are *do*, *sto*, and their compounds.

REM. 3. The following verbs in *eo* are of the first conjugation, viz. *beo*, *calceo*, *creo*, *cineo*, *enucleo*, *illaqueo*, *collineo*, *delineo*, *meo*, *nauseo*, *acreo*; *eo* and its compounds are of the fourth.

§ 166. All deponent verbs, of the first conjugation, are regular, and are conjugated like *miror*, § 161; as,

Abominor, d. *to abhor.*

Adūlor, d. *to flatter.*

Emūlor, d. *to rival.*

Ancillor, *to be a handmaid.*

\*Apricor, *to bask in the sun.*

Arbitror, r. d. *to think.*

Aspernor, d. p. *to despise.*

Auctūpor, r. p. *to hunt after.*

Auxilior, p. *to help.*

Aversor, d. *to dislike.*

Bacchor, p. *to revel.*

Calumnior, *to censure unfairly.*

Causor, *to allege.*

\*Comissor, m. *to revel.*

Comitor, p. *to accompany.*

Conciōnor, *to harangue.*

\*Confabūlor, m. *to converse together.*

Cōnor, d. *to endeavor.*

\*Conspicor, *to see.*

Contempior, d. p. *to view attentively.*

Crimīnor, m. p. *to complain of.*

Cunctor, d. p. *to delay.*

Deprēcor, m. r. d. p. *to deprecate.*

\*†Diglādiōr, *to fence.*

Dignor, d. p. *to deem worthy.*

Domīnor, p. *to rule.*

Epūlor, r. d. *to feast.*

\*Famūlor, m. *to wait on.*

Fātur, (defect.) u. d. p.

*to speak. See § 188, 6.*

†Fērior, r. *to keep holiday.*

\*Frumentor, m. *to forage.*

Fūror, m. *to steal.*

Glōrior, r. d. *to boast.*

Gratūlor, m. d. *to congratulate.*



<b>Hariōlor</b> , <i>to practise sooth-saying.</i>	<b>Modūlor</b> , <i>d. p. to modulate.</i>	<b>*Rusticor</b> , <i>to live in the country.</i>
<b>Hortor</b> , <i>d. to encourage.</i>	<b>Mōror</b> , <i>r. d. to delury.</i>	<b>Sciscitor</b> , <i>m. p. to inquire.</i>
<b>Imitor</b> , <i>u. r. d. to imitate.</i>	† <b>Mūtuor</b> , <i>p. to borrow.</i>	<b>*Scitor</b> , <i>m. to ask.</i>
<b>Indignor</b> , <i>d. to disdain.</i>	<b>Negōtiōr</b> , <i>r. to traffic.</i>	<b>Scrūtor</b> , <i>p. to search.</i>
<b>Inflitor</b> , <i>d. to deny.</i>	<b>*†Nūgor</b> , <i>to trifle.</i>	<b>Solor</b> , <i>d. to comfort.</i>
<b>Insector</b> , <i>to pursue.</i>	<b>Obsōnor</b> , <i>m. to cater.</i>	<b>Spātiōr</b> , <i>to walk about.</i>
<b>Iraidiōr</b> , <i>r. d. to lie in wait for.</i>	<b>Obtestor</b> , <i>p. to beseech.</i>	<b>Spechīlor</b> , <i>m. r. d. to spy out.</i>
<b>Interprētor</b> , <i>p. to explain.</i>	<b>Opēror</b> , <i>to work.</i>	† <b>Stipūlor</b> , <i>p. to bargain, stipulate.</i>
<b>Jacūlor</b> , <i>p. to hurl.</i>	<b>Opīnor</b> , <i>u. r. d. to think.</i>	† <b>Suāviōr</b> , <i>d. to kiss.</i>
<b>Jācor</b> , <i>to jest.</i>	<b>Opitūlor</b> , <i>m. to help.</i>	<b>Suspīcor</b> , <i>to suspect.</i>
<b>Lætor</b> , <i>r. d. p. to rejoice.</i>	† <b>Ōtiōr</b> , <i>to be at leisure.</i>	<b>Testificor</b> , <i>p. to testify.</i>
<b>Lamentor</b> , <i>d. p. to bewail.</i>	<b>Pabūlor</b> , <i>m. d. to graze.</i>	<b>Testor</b> , <i>d. p. to testify. Sc detestor.</i>
<b>*†Lignor</b> , <i>m. to gather wood.</i>	<b>Pālōr</b> , <i>to wander about.</i>	<b>Tūtor</b> , <i>to defend.</i>
<b>Luctor</b> , <i>d. to wrestle.</i>	<b>Percontor</b> , <i>m. to inquire.</i>	<b>Vāgor</b> , <i>to wander.</i>
<b>Medicor</b> , <i>r. d. p. to heal.</i>	<b>Periclitōr</b> , <i>d. p. to try.</i>	<b>Venitor</b> , <i>d. p. to venerate, worship.</i>
<b>Meditor</b> , <i>p. to meditate.</i>	† <b>Piscor</b> , <i>m. to fish.</i>	<b>Vēnor</b> , <i>m. p. to hunt.</i>
<b>Mercor</b> , <i>m. r. d. p. to buy.</i>	<b>Popūlor</b> , <i>r. d. p. to lay waste.</i>	<b>Versor</b> , <i>to be employed.</i>
<b>Minor</b> , <i>to threaten.</i>	<b>Prædor</b> , <i>m. p. to plunder.</i>	<b>Vociferor</b> , <i>to bawl.</i>
<b>Mīror</b> , <i>u. r. d. to admire.</i>	<b>Præcor</b> , <i>m. u. r. d. to pray.</i>	
<b>Misēror</b> , <i>d. to pity.</i>	<b>Prælior</b> , <i>to fight.</i>	
<b>Modēror</b> , <i>u. d. to govern.</i>	<b>Recordor</b> , <i>d. to recollect.</i>	
	<b>Rimor</b> , <i>d. to search.</i>	
	<b>Rixor</b> , <i>to quarrel.</i>	

**NOTE.** Some deponents of the first conjugation are derived from nouns, and signify *being or practising* that which the noun denotes; as, *ancillāri*, to be a handmaid; *hariolāri*, to practise soothsaying; from *ancilla* and *hariolus*.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 167. Verbs of the second conjugation end in *eo*, and form their second and third roots in *u* and *it*; as, *moneo*, *monui*, *monitum*.

The following list contains most of the regular verbs of this conjugation, and many also which want the second and third roots:—

<b>*Aceo</b> , <i>to be sour.</i>	<b>*Clāreo</b> , —, <i>to be bright.</i>	<b>*†perhībeo</b> , <i>d. to report.</i>
<b>*Egreo</b> , —, <i>to be sick.</i>	<b>*Clueo</b> , —, <i>to be famous.</i>	† <b>posthābeo</b> , <i>to postpone.</i>
<b>*Albeo</b> , —, <i>to be white.</i>	<b>*Denseo</b> , —, <i>to thicken.</i>	<b>præbeo</b> , ( <i>for prahibeo</i> ), <i>r. d. to afford.</i>
<b>*Arceo</b> , <i>d. to drive away;</i> <i>part. adj. arctus or artus.</i> <i>The compounds change a into e; as,</i> <b>coerceo</b> , <i>d. to restrain.</i> <b>exerceo</b> , <i>r. d. to exercise.</i>	<b>*Dirībeo</b> , —, <i>to sort the voting tablets.</i>	<b>*prahibeo</b> , —, <i>debeo</i> ( <i>for dehabeo</i> ), <i>r. d. to owe.</i>
<b>*Areo</b> , <i>to be dry.</i>	<b>*Doleo</b> , <i>r. d. to grieve.</i>	<b>*Habeo</b> , —, <i>to be dull.</i>
<b>*Aveo</b> , —, <i>to covet.</i>	<b>*Egeo</b> , <i>r. to want.</i>	<b>*Horreo</b> , <i>d. to be rough.</i>
<b>*Caleo</b> , <i>r. d. to be warm.</i>	<b>*Emineo</b> , <i>to rise above.</i>	<b>*Hūmeo</b> , —, <i>to be moist.</i>
<b>*Calleo</b> , —, <i>to be hardened.</i> <b>*percalleo</b> , <i>to know well.</i>	<b>*Flacceō</b> , <i>to droop.</i>	<b>*Jaceo</b> , <i>r. to lie.</i>
<b>*Calveo</b> , —, <i>to be bald.</i>	<b>*Flāveo</b> , —, <i>to be yellow.</i>	<b>*Lacteo</b> , —, <i>to suck.</i>
<b>*Candeo</b> , <i>to be white.</i>	<b>*Flūreo</b> , <i>to blossom.</i>	<b>*Langueo</b> , —, <i>to be faint.</i>
<b>*Cāneo</b> , <i>to be hoary.</i>	<b>*Foeteo</b> , —, <i>to be fetid.</i>	<b>*Lateo</b> , <i>to lie hid.</i>
<b>*Cāreo</b> , <i>r. d. to want.</i>	<b>*Frigeo</b> , —, <i>to be cold.</i>	<b>*Lenteo</b> , —, <i>to be slow.</i>
<b>*Cerveo</b> , —, <i>to fawn.</i>	<b>*Frondeo</b> , —, <i>to bear leaves.</i>	<b>*Liceo</b> , <i>to be valued.</i>
	<b>Habeo</b> , <i>r. d. to have. The compounds, except posthabeo, change a into i; as, ad-, ex-, pro-hibeo.</i>	<b>*Liveo</b> , —, <i>to be livid.</i>
	<b>cohībeo</b> , <i>d. to restrain.</i>	<b>*Māceo</b> , —, <i>to be lean.</i>
	<b>inhībeo</b> , <i>d. to hinder.</i>	<b>*Māleo</b> , <i>to be wet.</i>
		<b>*Mæreo</b> , —, <i>to grieve.</i>
		<b>Mæreo</b> , <i>r. to deserve.</i>

- †commēreo, to *fully deserve*. †dēnēreo, d. to *earn*. †emēreo, to *serve out one's time*. \*†permēreo, —, to *go through service*. promēreo, to *deserve*.
- Mōneo, r. d. to *advise*. admōneo, m. r. d. to *re-mind*. commōneo, to *impress upon*. prēmōneo, to *forewarn*.
- \*Mūceo, —, to *be mouldy*. \*Nigreo, —, to *be black*. \*Nifeo, to *shine*. Nōceo, m. r. to *hurt*. \*Oleo, to *smell*. \*Paleo, to *be pale*.
- \*Pāreo, m. r. d. to *obey*. \*Pāteo, to *be open*. Plāceo, to *please*. \*Polleo, —, to *be able*. \*Pūteo, to *stink*. \*Putreo, to *be putrid*. \*Renideo, —, to *glitter*. \*Rigeo, to *be stiff*. \*Rūceo, to *be red*. \*Scāteo, —, to *gush forth*. \*Sēceo, —, to *be old*. \*Sileo, d. to *be silent*. \*Sordeo, —, to *be filthy*. \*Splendeo, —, to *shine*. \*Squāleo, —, to *be foul*. \*Strideo, —, to *creak*. \*Stūdeo, d. to *study*. \*Stūpeo, to *be amazed*.
- \*Sueo, —, to *be wont*. Tāceo, r. d. to *be silent*. \*Tēceo, to *be warm*. Terreo, d. to *terrify*. So deterreo, to *deter*. †absterneo, to *deter*. †conterreo, †texterreo, †perterreo, to *frighten*. \*Timeo, d. to *fear*. \*Torpeo, —, to *be stiff*. \*Tūceo, to *smell*. \*Vāleo, r. to *be able*. \*Vēceo, —, to *arouse*. \*Vicc, —, to *plait*. Pa. viēti, *shriveled*. \*Vigeo, to *flourish*. \*Vireo, to *be green*. \*Uveo, —, to *be moist*.

§ 168. The following verbs of the second conjugation are irregular in their second or third roots or in both.

NOTE 1. As the proper form of verbs of the first conjugation is *o, āvi, ātum*, of the fourth *io, ixi, itum*, so that of the second would be *eo, ēvi, ētum*. Very few of the latter conjugation, however, retain this form, but most of them, as noticed in § 165, Rem. 1, drop in the second root the connecting vowel, *ē*, and those in *reo* drop *vē*; as, *cāreo*, (*cāvēvi*) *cāvi*, (*cāvētum* or *cāritum*) *cautum*. Others, imitating the form of those verbs of the third conjugation whose general root ends in a consonant, add *s* to form the second and third roots. Cf. § 165, Rem. 1, and § 171.

NOTE 2. Four verbs of the second conjugation take a reduplication in the parts formed from the second root, viz. *mordeo*, *pendeo*, *spondeo*, and *tondeo*. See § 163, Rem.

- Abōleo, -ēvi, -itum, r. d. to *efface*. \*Algeo, alsi, to *be cold*. Ardeo, arsi, arsum, r. to *burn*. Audeo, ausus sum, (*rarely ausi, whence ausim*, § 163, R. 1.) r. d. to *dare*. Augeo, auxi, auctum, r. d. to *increase*. Cāveo, cāvi, cautum, m. d. to *beware*. Censeo, censui, censum, d. to *think*. recenseo, -ui, -um or -itum. \*per-censeo, -ui. \*succenseo, -ui, d. Cieo, civi, citum, to *excite*. There is a cognate form, *cio*, of the fourth conjugation, both of the simple verb and of its compounds. The penult of the participles *excitus* and *concitus* is common, and that of *accitus* is always long.
- \*Connīveo, -nīvi, to *wink at*. Dēleo, -ēvi, -ētum, d. to *blot out*. Dōceo, docui, doctum, d. to *teach*. \*Fāveo, fāvi, fauētus, to *favor*. \*Ferveo, ferbui, to *boil*. Sometimes *fervo*, vi, of the third conjugation. Fleo, flēvi, flētum, r. d. to *weep*. Fōveo, fōvi, fōtum, d. to *cherish*.
- \*Fulgeo, fulsi, to *shine*. Fulgo, of the third conjugation, is also in use. Gaudeo, gavissus sum, r. to *rejoice*. § 142, 2. \*Hāreo, hāsi, hāētus, to *stick*. So ad-, co-, in-, ob- hāreo; but \*subhāreo, —. Indulgeo, indulsi, indultum, r. d. to *indulge*. Jūbeo, jussi, jussum, r. d. to *order*. \*Lūceo, luxi, to *shine*. pollūceo, -luxi, -luctum. \*Lūgeo, luxi, d. to *mourn*. \*Māneo, mansi, mansum, m. r. d. to *remain*. Misceo, misui, mistum or mixtum, mistūrus, d. to *mix*. Mordeo, momordi, morsum, d. to *bite*. remordeo, -di, -morsum, r. Mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, r. d. to *move*. Mulceo, mulsi, mulsum, d. to *soothe*. permulceo, permulsi, permulsum *una* permulctum, to *rub gently*. \*Mulgeo, mulsi or mulxi, to *milk*. emulgeo, —, emulsum, to *milk out*.

Neo, nēvi, nētum, *to spin.*

\*Pāveo, pāvi, *d. to fear.*

\*Pendeo, pependi, *to hang.* \*impendeo, —. propendeo, —, propensum.

Pleo, (*obsolete*). compleo, -ēvi, -ētum, *to fill.* *So the other compounds.*

Prandeo, prandi, pransum, *r. to dine.*

Rideo, rī-i, risum, *m. r. d. to laugh.*

\*Sēdeo, sēdi, sessum, *m. r. to sit.*

*The compounds with monosyllabic prepositions change ē into i, in the first root; as, insideo, insēdi, insessum.*

\*dissideo, -sēdi *So præsideo, and rarely circum-sideo.*

Sōleo, solitus sum, and rarely solui, *to be accustomed.* § 142, 2.

\*Sorbeo, sorbui, *to suck in.* *So* \*exsorbeo: *but* \*resorbeo, —. \*absorbeo, -sorbui or -sorpsi.

Spondeo, sponondi, sponsum, *to promise.* See § 163. Rem.

\*Strideo, idi, *to whiz.*

Suādeo, suāsi, suāsum, *r. d. to advise.*

Tēneo, tēnui, tentum, *r. d. to hold.* *The compounds change ē into i in the first and second roots: as, detineo, detinui, detentum.* \*attineo, -tinui. *So pertineo.*

Tergeo, tersi, tersum, *to wipe.* Tergo, *of the third conjugation, is also in use.*

Tondeo, tōtondi, tonsum, *to shear.* *The compounds have the perfect tondi.*

Torqueo, torsi, tortum, *d. to twist.*

Torreo, torrui, tostum, *to roast.*

\*Turgeo, tursi, *to swell.*

\*Urgeo or argueo, ursi, *d. to urge.*

Video, vidi, vīsurā. *m. u. r. d. to see.*

Vōveo, vōvi, vōtum, *d. to vow.*

### § 169. Impersonal Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Dēcet, decuit, *it becomes.*

Lībet, libuit or libitum est, *it pleases, is agreeable.*

Līcet, licuit or licitum est, *it is lawful, or permitted.*

l īquet, liquit, *it is clear, evident.*

Misēret, miseruit or miseritum est, *it moves to pity; misēret me, I pity.*

Oportet, oportuit, *it behooves.*

Pīget, piguit or pigitum est, *d. it troubles, grieves.*

Pœnitet, pœnituit, pœnitūrus, *d. it repents; pœnitet me, I regret.*

Pūdet, puduit or puditum est, *d.; it shames; pudet me, I am ashamed.*

Tædet, tæduit or tæsum est, *it disgusts or wearies.* pertædet, pertæsum est.

NOTE. *Lūbet* is sometimes written for *libet*, especially in the comic writers.

### § 170. Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation.

Fāteor, fassus, *r. d. p. to confess.* *The compounds change ā into i in the first root, and into e in the third; as, confiteor, confessus, d. p. to acknowledge.* \*† diffiteor, *to deny.* profiteor, professus, *d. p. to declare.*

Līceor, licitus, *to bid a price.*

\*Mēdeor, *d. to cure.*

Mēreor, meritus, *to deserve.*

Misēreor, miseritus or misertus, *to pity.*

Polliceor, pollicitus, *p. to promise.*

Reor, rātus, *to think, suppose.*

Tueor, tuitus, *d. p. to protect.*

Vēreor, veritus, *d. p. to fear.*

## THIRD CONJUGATION.

§ 171. In the third conjugation, when the first root ends with a consonant, the second root is regularly formed by adding *s*; when it ends with a vowel, the first and second roots are the same: the third root is formed by adding *t*; as, carpo, carpsi, carptum; arguo, argui, argūtum.

In annexing *s* and *t*, certain changes occur in the final consonant of the root:—

1. The palatal: *c, g, qu*, and also *h*, at the end of the first root, form with *s* the double letter *x* in the second root; in the third root, *c* remains, and the others are changed into *c* before *t*; as, dico, (*dixi*, i. e.), dixi, dictum; rego, (*regi*, i. e.), rexi, rectum; vāho, (*vexi*, i. e.), vextum; cōquo, (*coxi*, i. e.), coctum.

**NOTE.** *P'huo* and *struo* form their second and third roots after the analogy of verbs whose first root ends in a palatal or *h*.

2. *B* is changed into *p* before *s* and *t*; as, *scribo, scripsi, scriptum*.

3. *D* and *t*, before *s*, are either dropped, or changed into *s*; as, *claudio, clausi cēdo, cessi; mitto, misi*. Cf. § 56, I, Rem. 1. After *m*, *p* is sometimes inserted before *s* and *t*; as, *sūmo, sumpsi, sumptum*. *R* is changed to *s* before *s* and *t* in *gēro* and *ūro*.

4. Some other consonants are dropped, or changed into *s*, in certain verbs.

**Exc. 1.** Many verbs whose first root ends in a consonant, do not add *s* to form the second root.

(a.) Of these, some have the second root the same as the first, but the vowel of the second root, if a monosyllable, is long; as,

Bībo,	Excūdo,	Ico,	Mando,	Scābo,	Solvo,	Verro,
Edo,	Fōdio,	Lambo,	Prehendo,	Scando,	Strido,	Verto,
Emo,	Fūgio,	Lēgo,	Psallo,	Sido,	Tollo,	Volvo;

to which add the compounds of the obsolete *cando, fendo*, and *nuo*.

(b.) Some make a change in the first root. Of these, some change a vowel, some drop a consonant, some prefix a reduplication, others admit two or more of these changes; as,

Ago, ēgi.	Cāpio, cēpi.	Fācio, fēci.
Findo, fidi.	Frango, frēgi.	Fundo, fūdi.
Jācio, jēci.	Linquo, liqui.	Rumpo, rūpi.
Scindo, scidi.	Sisto, stiti.	Vinco, vici.

**Those which have a reduplication are**

Cādo, cēcidi.	Cēdo, cēcidi.	Cāno, cēcini.
Curro, cūcurri.	Disco, didici.	Fallo, fēfelli.
Pāgo, (obs.) pēpigi	Parco, pēperci.	Pārio, pēpēri.
and pēgi.	Pēdo, pēpēdi.	Pello, pēpūli.
Pendo, pēpendi.	Posco, pōposci.	Pungo, pūpūgi.
Tango, tētigi.	Tendo, tētēndi.	Tundo, tūtūdi.

**Exc. 2.** Some, after the analogy of the second conjugation, add *u* to the first root of the verb; as,

Alo, alui, etc.	Consūlo,	Gēmo,	Rāpio,	Trēmo,
Cōlo,	Depso,	Gēno, (obs.)	Strēpo,	Vōlo,
Compesco,	Frēmo,	Mōlo,	Texo,	Vōmo.

*Mēto, messui*; and *pōno, pōnui*; add *su*, with a change in the root.

**Exc. 3.** The following, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation, add *iv* to the first root:—

Arcesso,	Cūpio,	Lācesso,	Rūdo,	Tēro, dropping ē.
Cāpresso,	Incesso,	Pēto,	Quāro, with a change of r into s.	

**Exc. 4.** The following add *v*, with a change in the root; those in *no* and *sco* dropping *n* and *sc*, and those having *er* before *n* changing *t* to *rē* or *rā*:—

Cresco,	Pasco,	Scisco,	Sperno,	Lino,	Sēro,
Nosco,	Quiesco,	Cerno,	Sterno,	Sino,	to <i>oro</i> .

**Exc. 5.** (a.) The third root of verbs whose first root ends in *d* or *t*, and some in *g*, add *s*, instead of *t*, to the root, either dropping the *d*, *t*, and *g*, or changing them into *s*; as, *claudio, clausum; dēfendo, dēfensum; cēdo, cessum; flecto, flexum; fingo, fixum*. But the compounds of *lo* add *u*; as, *perdo, perditum*.

(b.) The following, also, add *s*, with a change of the root —

Excello,	Fallo,	Pello,	Spargo,	Verro.
Percello,	Mergo,	Præmo,	Vello,	

Exc. 6. The following add *t*, with a change of the root; those having *n*, *nc*, *ng*, *nqu*, or *mp* at the end of the first root dropping *n* and *m* in the third:—

Cerno,	Fingo,	Gëro,	Sëro,	Sperno,	Stringo,	Uro,
Côlo,	Fraugo,	Ruμπο,	Sisto,	Sterno,	Tëro,	Vinco;

to which add the compounds of *linguo*, and verbs in *sco* with the second root in *v*; the latter drop *sc* before *t*; as, *nosco*, *nôvi*, *nôtum*; except *pusco*, which drops *c* only.

Exc. 7. (a.) The following have *û*:—

Bibo,	Ellicio,	Môlo,	Pôno, with a change of òn into ôs.
Gëno, (obs. form of gigno,)	Vômo,	Sino, dropping <i>n</i> .	

(b.) The following, like verbs of the fourth conjugation, add *û* to the first root:—

Arcesso,	Cûpio,	Pëto,	Tëro, dropping ê.
Fâcesso,	Lâ'esso,	Quæro, with a change of <i>r</i> into <i>s</i> .	

For other irregularities occurring in this conjugation, see § 172-174.

§ 172. The following list contains most of the simple verbs, both regular and irregular, in the third conjugation, with such of their compounds as require particular notice:—

*Acuo*, *âcui*, *âcûtum*, d. to sharpen.

*Ago*, *ëgi*, *actum*, r. d. to drive. So *circumâgo*, *côgo*, and *perâgo*. \**ambigo*, —, to doubt. So *sâtâgo*. The other compounds change *â* into *i*, in the first root; as, *exlgo*, *exëgi*, *exactum*, to drive out. \**prôdigo*, *-ëgi*, to squander. See § 189, 2.

*Alo*, *âlui*, *altum*, and later *âlitum*, d. to nourish.

\**Ango*, *anxi*, to strangle.

*Arguo*, *argui*, *argûtum*, d. to convict.

*Arcesso*, *-cessivi*, *-cessitum*, r. d. to cull for. Pass. inf. *arcessiri* or *arcessi*.

\**Bâtuo*, *bâtui*, d. to beat.

*Bibo*, *bibi*, *bibitum*, d. to drink.

\**Cado*, *cëcidi*, *câsûrus*, to fall. The compounds change *â* into *i*, in the first root, and drop the reduplication; as, *cecido*, *-cidi*, *-câsum*, r. to set.

*Cado*, *cëcidi*, *cæsum*, r. d. to cut. The compounds change *æ* into *i*, and drop the reduplication; as, *occido*, *-cidi*, *-cîsum*.

*Cando*, (obsolete,) synonymous with *candeo* of the second conjugation. Hence *accendo*, *-cendi*, *-censum*, d. to kindle. So *incando*, *succendo*.

\**Cano*, *cëcui*, d. to sing. The compounds change *â* into *i*; as, \**concino*,

*-cînuî*. So *oceîno*, *præcîno*. \**acclino*, —. So *inclino*, *interclino*, *succlino*, *recîno*.

\**Capesso*, *-ivi*, r. d. to undertake.

*Câpio*, *cëpi*, *captum*, r. d. to take. So *antëcâpio*. The other compounds change *â* into *i*, in the first root, and into *e* in the third; as, *dëcipio*, *dëcëpi*, *dëceptum*.

*Carpō*, *carpsî*, *carptum*, d. to pluck. The compounds change *â* into *e*; as, *dëcerpo*, *dëcerpsi*, *dëcerptum*.

*Cëdo*, *cessi*, *cessum*, r. to yield.

*Cello*, (obsolete,) *excello*, *-culsum*, to excel. \**antëcello*, —. So *præcello*, *recello*. *percello*, *-cûll*, *-culsum*, to strike.

*Cerno*, *crëvi*, *crëtum*, d. to decree.

\**Cerno*, —, to see.

*Cingo*, *cînxî*, *cinctum*, d. to gird.

\**Clango*, —, to clang.

*Claudo*, *clausi*, *clausum*, r. d. to shut. The compounds change *au* into *û*; as, *occlûdo*, *occlûsi*, *occlûsum*, to shut up.

\*†*Clauo*, —, to limp.

\*†*Clëpo*, *clëpsi*, rarely *clëpi*, to steal.

*Côlo*, *côlui*, *cultum*, d. to till. †*occulô*, *-cûlui*, *-cultum*, d. to hide.

*Cômo*, *compai*, *comptum*, to deck.

\**Compesco*, *-pescui*, to restrain.

Consûlo, -sûlui, -sultum, *m. r. d. to consult.*  
 Ocoquo, coxi, coctum, *m. d. & cook.*  
 Crêdo, crêdidi, crêditum, *r. d. to believe.*  
 \*Cresco, crêvi, to grow. concresco, -crêvi, -crêtum.  
 Cûbo is of the first conjugation. Cf. § 165. \*accuimbo, -cûbui, to lie down. So the other compounds which insert *m.*  
 \*Cûdo, —, to forge. excûdo, -cûdi, -cûsum, *d. to stamp.*  
 Cûpio, cûpivi, cûptum, *d. to desire.* *Obv. imperf. cûpiret. Lucr. 1, 72.*  
 \*Curro, cûcurri, cursûrus, to run. concurro, succurro, and transcurro, drop the reduplication; the other compounds sometimes drop, and sometimes retain it; as, decurro, decurri, and decûcurri, decûsum. \*antêcurro, —. So circumcurro.  
 \*Dêgo, dêgi, *d. to live.*  
 Dêmo, dempsi, demptum, *r. d. to take away.*  
 †Depso, depsui, depstum, to knead.  
 Dico, dixi, dictum, *u. r. d. to say.*  
 \*Disco, didici, discitûrus, *d. to learn.*  
 \*Dispesco, —, to separate.  
 Divido, divisi, divîsum, *r. d. to divide.*  
 Do is of the first conjugation. abdo, -didi, -ditum, *d. to hide.* So condo, indo. addo, -didi, -ditum, *r. d. to add.* So dêdo, êdo, prôdo, reddo, trâdo, vendo. †didido, -didi, -ditum, to distribute. So abdo, subdo. perdo, -didi, -ditum, *m. r. d. abscondo, -di or -didi, -ditum or -sum.*  
 Dûco, duzi, ductum, *m. r. d. to lead.*  
 Edo, êdi, êsum, *m. u. r. d. to eat.*  
 Exuo, exui, exûtum, *d. to strip off.*  
 Êmo, êmi, emptum, *r. d. to buy.* So cœmo. The other compounds change *ê* to *i*; as, exlino, -êmi, -emptum.  
 Fâcesso, -cessi, -cessitum, to execute.  
 Fâcio, fêci, factum, *m. u. r. d. to do.* Compounded with a preposition, it changes *â* into *i* in the first root, and into *e* in the third, makes -fice in the imperative, and has a regular passive. Compounded with other words, it retains *â* when of this conjugation, makes *fice* in the imperative, and has the passive, fio, factum. See § 180.  
 Fâllo, fêfelli, falsum, *d. to deceive.*  
 \*rêfello, -felli, *d. to refuse.*  
 Fêndo, (obsolete.) dêfendo, -fendi, -fensum, *m. u. r. d. to defend.* offendo, -tendi, -fensum, *d. to offend.*  
 Fêro, tûli, lâtum, *r. d. to bear.* See § 179. A perfect têtuli is rare. Its compounds are effêro attûli, allâtum;

aufêro, abstûli, ablâtum; diffêro distûli, dilâtum; confêro, contûli, collâtum; infêro, intûli, illâtum; offêro, obtûli, oblâtum; effêro, extûli, elâtum; suffêro, sustûli, sublâtum; and circum-, per-, trans-, dê-, prô-, antê-, præfêro, -tûli, -lâtum.  
 \*Fêro, vi, to boil. Cf. ferveo, 2d conj.  
 Fido, —, fîsus, to trust. See § 162, 18. confido, confisus sum or confidi, to rely on. diffido, diffisus sum, to distrust.  
 Figo, fixi, fixum, *r. rarely fîctum, to fix.*  
 Findo, fidi, fissum, *d. to cleave.*  
 Fingo, finxi, fîctum, *d. to feign.*  
 Flecto, flexi, flexum, *r. d. to bend.*  
 \*Fligo, flixi, to dash. So confîgno. affligo, -flixi, -fîctum, to afflict. So infligo. prôfligo is of the first conjugation.  
 Fluo, fluxi, fluxum, (fluctum, obs.) *r. to flow.*  
 Fôdio, fôdi, fôssum, *d. to dig.* Old pres. inf. pass. fôdiri: so also effôdiri.  
 Frango, frêgi, fractum, *r. d. to break.* The compounds change *a* into *i*, in the first root; as, infringo, infrêgi, infractum, to break in upon.  
 \*Frêmo, frêmui, *d. to roar, howl.*  
 Frendo, —, frêsus or fressum, to gnash.  
 Frigo, frixi, frîctum, rarely frîxum, to roast.  
 \*Fûgio, fûgi, fûgtûrus, *d. to flee.*  
 \*Fulgo, —, to flash.  
 Fundo, fûdi, fûsum, *r. d. to pour.*  
 \*Fûro, —, to rage.  
 \*Gêmo, gêmui, *d. to groan.*  
 Gêro, gessi, gestum, *r. d. to bear.*  
 Gigno, (obsolete gêno,) gêmui, gênitum, *r. d. to beget.*  
 \*Glisco, —, to grow.  
 \*Glûbo, —, to peel. deglûbo, —, -gluptum.  
 Gruo, (obsolete.) \*congruo, -grui, to agree. So ingruo.  
 Ico, ici, ictum, *r. to strike.*  
 Imbuo, imbui, imbûtum, *d. to imbue.*  
 \*Incesso, -cessivi or -cessi, to attack.  
 †Induo, indui, indûtum, to put on.  
 Jâcio, jêci, jactum, *d. to cast.* The compounds change *â* into *i* in the first root, and into *e* in the third. (§ 163, Exc. 3); as, rejicio, rejêci, rejectum.  
 Jungo, junxi, junctum, *r. d. to join.*  
 Lâcesso, -cessivi, -cessitum, *r. d. to provoke.*  
 Lâcio, (obsolete.) The compounds change *â* into *i*; as, allicio, -lexi, -lectum, *d. to allure.* So illicio, pellicio. âlicio, -licui, -lêctum, to draw out.



- first and second roots, and into e in the third; as, diripio, -ripui, -reptum, m. r. So eripio and præripio.*
- Rêgo, rexi, rectum, r. d. to rule.** *The compounds change ê into i, in the first root; as, dirigo, direxi, directum.*
- \*pergo, (for perrigo), perrexi, r. to go forward. surgo (for surrigo), surrexi, surrectum, r. d. to rise. So porrigo (for prorigo), to stretch out.**
- \*Rêpo, repsi, to creep.**
- Rôdo, rôsi, rôsum, r. to gnaw. ab-, ar-, e-, ob-, præ-rôdo, want the perfect.**
- \*Rûdo, rudivi, to brag.**
- Rumpo, rûpi, ruptum, r. d. to break.**
- Ruo, rui, rûtum, ruitûrus, to fall. diruo, -rui, -rûtum, d. So obruo.**
- \*corruo, -rui. So irruo.**
- \*Sâpio, sapîvi, to be wise. The compounds change â into i; as, \*respio, -sîpivi or -sîpui. \*despio, —, to be silly.**
- \*†Scâbo, scâbi, to scratch.**
- Scalpo, scalpsi, sculptum, to engrave.**
- Sâlo or sallo, — salsum, to salt.**
- \*Scando, —, d. to climb. The compounds change a into e; as, ascendo, ascendi, ascensum, r. d. descendo, descendi, (anciently descendidi,) descensum.**
- Scindo, scidi, (anciently sciscidi), scissum, d. to cut.**
- Scisco, scivi, scitum, d. to ordain.**
- Scribo, scripsi, scriptum, r. d. to write.**
- Sculpo, sculpsi, sculptum, d. to carve.**
- Sêro, sêvi, sâtum, r. d. to sow. consêro, -sêvi, -sîtum. So insêro, r., and obsêro.**
- Sêro, —, sertum, to entwine. Its compounds have -sêrui; as, assêro, -sêrui, -sertum, r. d.**
- \*Serpo, serpsi, to creep.**
- \*Sîdo, sîdi, to settle. Its compounds have generally sêdi, sessum, from sedeo.**
- \*Sîno, sîvi, sîturus, to permit. desîno, desîvi, desîtum, r. § 284, R. 3, Exc. 2.**
- Sisto, sîtti, sâtum, to stop. \*absisto, -sîtti. So the other compounds; but circumsisto wants the perfect.**
- Solvo, solvi, sôlûtum, r. d. to loose.**
- Spargo, sparsi, sparsum, r. d. to spread. The compounds change a into e; as, respergo, -spersi, -spersum; but with circum and in, a sometimes remains.**
- Spêcio, (obsolete.) The compounds change ê into i, in the first root; as, aspicio, aspexi, aspectum, d. to look at. inspicio, inspexi, inspectum, r. d.**
- Sperno, sprêvi, sprêtum, d. to despise.**
- †Spuo, spui, to spit. \*respuo, respuî, d.**
- Stâtuo, stâtui, stâtûtum, d. to place. The compounds change â into i; as instituo, institui, insîtûtum, to institute.**
- Sterno, strâvi, strâtum, d. to strew.**
- \*Sternuo, sternui, to sneeze.**
- \*Sterto, —, to snore. \*†desterto, destertui.**
- \*Stinguo, —, to extinguish. distinguo, distinxi, distinctum. So exstinguo, r. d.**
- \*Strêpo, strêpui, to make a noise.**
- \*Strido, strîdi, to creak.**
- Stringo, strinxi, strictum, r. d. to bind or tie tight.**
- Struo, struxi, structum, d. to build.**
- Sûgo, suxi, suctum, to suck.**
- Sûmo, sumpsi, sumptum, r. d. to take.**
- Suo, —, sûtum, d. to sew. So consuo, dissuo. insuo, -sui, sûtum. \*as-suo, —.**
- Tâgo, (very rare), to touch. Hence**
- Tango, têtigi, tactum, r. d. to touch. The compounds change a into i in the first root, and drop the reduplication; as, contingo, contigi, contactum, r.**
- Têgo, texi, tectum, r. d. to cover.**
- \*Temno, —, d. to despise. contemno, -tempsi, -temptum, d.**
- Tendo, têtendi, tentum or tensum, to stretch. The compounds drop the reduplication; as, extendo, -tendi, -tentum or -tensum. So in-, os-, and retendo. detendo has tensum. The other compounds have tentum.**
- \*†Tergo, tersi, tersum, to wipe. Tergeo, of the second conjugation has the same second and third roots.**
- Têro, trivi, tritum, d. to rub.**
- Texo, texui, textum, d. to weave.**
- Tingo or tinguo, tinxi, tinctum, r. d. to moisten, tinge.**
- \*Tollo, (anciently têtûli, rarely tolli, d. to raise. The perfect and supine sustûli and sublâtum from suffero take the place of the perfect and supine of tollo and sustollo. \*sustollo, —, r. to raise up, to take away. \*attoilo, —. So extollo.**
- Trâho, traxi, tractum, r. d. to draw.**
- \*Trêmo, trêmui, d. to tremble.**
- Tribuo, tribui, tribûtum, r. d. to ascribe.**
- Trûdo, trûsi, trûsum, to thrust.**
- Tundo, tûtûdi, tunsum or tûsum, to beat. The compounds drop the reduplication, and have tûsum. Yet contunsum, detunsum, obtunsum, and retunsum, are also found.**
- Ungo, (or -guo), unxi, unctum, i. to anoint.**



Uro, assi, ustum, d. *to burn.*

\*Vālo, —, *to go.* So supervādo. *The other compounds have vāsi; as, \*evādo, evāsi, r. So pervādo; also invādo, r. d.*

Vēho, veki, vectum, r. *to carry.*

Vello, velli or vulsi, vulsum, d. *to pluck.* So avello, d., divello, evello, d., revello, revelli, revulsum. *The other compounds have velli only, except intervello, which has vulsi.*

\*Vergo, versi, *to incline.*

Verro, —, versum, d. *to brush.*

Verto, verti, versum, r. d. *to turn.* See § 174, *Note.*

Vinco, vici, victum, r. d. *to conquer.*

\*Viso, —, d. *to visit.*

\*Vivo, vixi, victurus, d. *to live.*

\*Vōlo, vōlui, velle (for vōlère), *to be willing.* See § 178.

Volvo, volvi, vōlūtum, d. *to roll.*

Vōmo, vōmui, vōmitum, r. d. *to vomit.*

**REMARK.** Those verbs in *io* (and deponents in *ior*), of the third conjugation, which are conjugated like *capio* (page 115) are, *cāpio, cūpio, fūcio, fōdio, fāgio, jācio, pārio, quātio, rāpio, sāpio*, compounds of *lacio* and *spicio*, and *grādiōr, mīliōr, pātiōr*, and *mōriōr*: but compare *mōriōr* in § 174, and *ōriōr*, and *pōtiōr* in § 177.

### Inceptive Verbs.

§ 173. Inceptive verbs in general either want the third root, or adopt that of their primitives: (see § 187, II, 2). Of those derived from nouns and adjectives, some want the second root, and some form it by adding *u* to the root of the primitive.

In the following list, those verbs to which *s* is added, have a simple verb in use from which they are formed:—

\*Acesco, ācui, s. *to grow sour.*

\*Egresco, *to grow sick.*

\*Albesco, —, s. *to grow white.*

\*Alesco, —, s. *to grow.* coalesco, -ālui, -ālūtum, *to grow together.*

\*Ardesco, arsi, s. *to take fire.*

\*Aresco, —, s. *to grow dry.* \*exaresco, -arui. So inaresco, peraresco.

\*Augesco, auxi, s. *to increase.*

\*Cālesco, cālui, s. *to grow warm.*

\*Calvesco, —, s. *to become bald.*

\*Candesco, candui, s. *to grow white.*

\*Cānesco, cānui, s. *to become hoary.*

\*Clāresco, clārui, s. *to become bright.*

\*Condormisco, -dormivi, s. *to go to sleep.*

\*Contifesco, -ticui, *to become silent.*

\*Crebroresco, crebrui and crebrui, *to increase.*

\*Crūdesco, crūlui, *to become violent.*

\*Dītesco, —, *to grow rich.*

\*Duicesco, —, *to grow sweet.*

\*Dūresco, dūrui, *to grow hard.*

\*Evīlesco, evīlui, *to become worthless.*

\*Extimesco, -timui, *to fear greatly.*

\*Fātesco, —, *to gape.*

\*Flāresco, flaccui, s. *to wilt.*

\*Fervesco, ferbui, s. *to grow hot.*

\*Flōresco, flōrui, s. *to begin to flourish.*

\*Frāresco, frācui, *to grow rancid.*

\*Frigesco, —, s. *to grow cold.* \*perfrigesco, -frixi. So refrigesco.

\*Frondesco, —, s. *to put forth leaves.*

\*Frūticesco, —, *to put forth shoots.*

\*Gēlasco, —, s. *to freeze.* So \*congelasco, s. *to congeal.*

\*Gēmisco, —, s. *to begin to sigh.*

\*Gemmascō, —, *to begin to bud.*

\*Gēnēresco, —, s. *to be produced.*

\*Grandesco, —, *to grow large.*

\*Grāvesco, —, *to grow heavy.*

\*Hāresco, —, s. *to adhere.*

\*Hēbesco, —, s. *to grow dull.*

\*Horresco, horruī, s. *to grow rough.*

\*Hūmesco, —, s. *to grow moist.*

\*Ignesco, —, *to become inflamed.*

\*Indōlesco, -dōlui, d. *to be grieved.*

\*Insōlesco, —, *to become haughty.*

\*Intēgrasco, — *to be renewed.*

\*Jūvēnesco, —, *to grow young.*

\*Languesco, languī, s. *to grow languid.*

\*Lāpidesco, —, *to become stone.*

\*Lātesco, —, *to grow broad.*

\*Lātesco, *to be concealed.* s. \*delitatesco

-lītui; \*oblitesco, -lītui.

\*Lentescō, —, *to become soft.*

\*Liquesco, —, s. *to become liquid.*

\*dēliquescō, -lītui.

\*Lūcesco, —, s. *to grow light, to dawn.*

\*Lūtesco, —, s. *to become muddy.*

\*Mācesco, —, s. }

\*Macresco, —, } *to grow lean.*

\*remacresco, -macrui.

\*Mādesco, māduī, s. *to grow moist.*

- \***Marcesco**, —, *s. to pine away.*  
 \***Mātūresco**, mātūri, *to ripen.*  
 \***Misēresco**, misērui, *s. to pity.*  
 \***Mitesco**, —, *to grow mild.*  
 \***Mollesco**, —, *to grow soft.*  
 \***Mūtesco**, —, *to become dumb.* \*ob-  
 mūtesco, obmūtui.  
 \***Nigresco**, nigriui, *s. to grow black.*  
 \***Nitescō**, nītui, *s. to grow bright.*  
 \***Nōtesco**, nōtui, *to become known.*  
 \***Obbrūtesco**, —, *to become brutish.*  
 \***Obdormisco**, —, *s. to fall asleep.*  
 \***Obsurdesco**, —surdui, *to grow deaf.*  
 \***Occallesco**, —callui, *to become callous.*  
 \***Olesco**, (*scarcely used.*) \***ābōlesco**,  
 —ōlēvi, *s. to cense.* **ādōlesco**, —ōlēvi,  
 —ultum, *s. to grow up.* **exōlesco**,  
 —ōlēvi, —ōlētum, *to grow out of date.*  
*So obsōlesco.* **Inōlesco**, —ōlēvi, —ōll-  
 tum, *d. to grow in or on.*  
 \***Pallesco**, pallui, *s. to grow pale.*  
 \***Pātesco**, pātui, *s. to be opened.*  
 \***Pāvesco**, pāvi, *s. to grow fearful.*  
 \***Pertimesco**, —timui, *d. to fear greatly.*  
 \***Pinguesco**, —, *to grow fat.*  
 \***Pūbesco**, —, *to come to maturity.*  
 \***Puērasco**, —, *to become a boy.*  
 \***Pūtesco**, —, *s. to become putrid.*  
 \***Putresco**, —, *s. to become putrid.*  
 \***Rāresco**, —, *to become thin.*  
 \***Rēspisco**, —sīpui, *s. to recover one's  
 senses.*  
 \***Rigescō**, rīgui, *s. to grow cold.*  
 \***Rūbesco**, rūbui, *s. to grow red.* \***ērū-  
 besco**, —rūbui, *d.*
- \***Sānescō**, —, *to become sound.* \***com  
 sānescō**, —sānui.  
 \***Sēnescō**, sēnui, *s. d. to grow old.* **Se  
 consēnescō.**  
 \***Sentisco**, —, *s. to perceive.*  
 \***Siccesco**, —, *to become dry.*  
 \***Silesco**, sīlui, *s. to grow silent.*  
 \***Sōlidesco**, —, *to become solid.*  
 \***Sordesco**, sordui, *s. to become filthy.*  
 \***Splendescō**, splendui, *s. to become  
 bright.*  
 \***Spūmesco**, —, *to begin to foam.*  
 \***Stērilesco**, —, *to become barren.*  
 \***Stūpesco**, stūpui, *s. to become aston-  
 ished.*  
**Suesco**, suēvi, suētum, *s. to become ac-  
 customed.*  
 \***Tābesco**, tābui, *s. to waste away.*  
 \***Tēnescō** and —asco, —, *to become  
 tender.*  
 \***Tēpesco**, tēpui, *s. to grow warm.*  
 \***Torpesco**, torpui, *s. to grow torpid.*  
 \***Trēmisco**, —, *s. to begin to tremble.*  
 \***Tūmesco**, tūmui, *s. to begin to swell.*  
 \***Turgesco**, —, *s.*  
 \***Uvesco**, —, *to become moist.*  
 \***Vālesco**, —, *s. to become strong.*  
 \***Vānescō**, —, *to vanish.* \***āvānescō**,  
 —āvānui.  
 \***Vētērasco**, vētērāvi, *to grow old.*  
 \***Viresco**, vīrui, *s. to grow green.*  
 \***Vivesco**, vixi, *s. to come to life.* \***rē-  
 vivisco**, —vixi.

### § 174. Deponent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.

- Apiscor**, aptus, *to get.* The compounds  
 change *ā* into *i* in the first root, and  
 into *e* in the third; as, **ādīpiscor**,  
**ādeptus**. *So indīpiscor.*  
**Expergiscor**, experrectus, *to awake.*  
 \***Fātiscor**, *to gape or crack open.* The  
 compounds change *ā* into *ē*; as, **dēfē-  
 tiscor**, —fessus.  
**Fruor**, frultus or fructus, frutūrus, *d.  
 to enjoy.*  
**Fungor**, functus, *r. d. to perform.*  
**Grādior**, gressus, *to walk.* The com-  
 pounds change *ā* into *ē*; as, **aggrēdior**,  
**aggreasus**, *r. d. Inf. pres. aggrēdi  
 and aggrēdiri*; so, **progrēdi** and **progrē-  
 diri**; and *pres. ind. ēgrēditur*, *Plaut.*  
 \***Irascor**, *to be angry.*  
**Lābor**, lapsus, *r. to fall.*  
 \***Liquor**, *to melt, flow.*  
**Lōquer**, locūtus, *r. d. to speak.*  
**Miniscor**, (*obsolete.*) **comminiscor**, **com-  
 mentus**, *p. to invent.* \***rēminiscor**,  
*to remember.*
- Mōrior**, (mōri, rarely mōriri,) mortuus,  
 mōrtūrus, *d. to die.* *So ēmōriri*, *Plaut.*  
*for emōri.*  
**Nanciscor**, nactus or nactus *to obtain.*  
**Nascor**, nātus, nascitūrus, *u. to be born.*  
**Nitor**, nixus or nisus, nisūrus, *to lean  
 upon.*  
**Obliviscor**, oblitus, *d. p. to forget.*  
**Pāciscor**, pactus, *d. to bargain.* *Se  
 depāciscor.*  
**Pātor**, passus, *r. d. to suffer.* **perpētior**  
 —pessus.  
*From plecto, to twine, come, amplexor*  
*tor, amplexus, d. p. complector, com-  
 plexus, p. So circumplector.*  
**Prōfiscor**, prōfectus, *r. to depart.*  
**Quēror**, questus, *m. u. d. to complain.*  
 \***Ringor**, *to snarl.*  
**Sēquor**, sēcūtus, *r. d. to follow.*  
**Tuor**, tūtus, *to protect.*  
 \***Vescor**, *to eat.*  
**Ulciscor**, ultus, *m. d. p. to avenge.*  
**Utor**, ūsus, *r. d. to use.*

**NOTE.** *Dēvertor, prāvvertor, rēvertor*, compounds of *verto*, are used as deponents in the present and imperfect tenses; *rēvertor* also, sometimes, in the perfect.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.

§ 175. Verbs of the fourth conjugation regularly form their second root in *iv*, and their third in *it*; as, *audio. audivi, auditum*.

The following list contains most regular verbs of this conjugation:—

*Audio, -ivi or -ii, m. u. r. d. to hear.*  
*\*Cio, civi, to excite. Cf. cieo, § 168.*  
*Condio, -ivi or -ii, to season.*  
*Custodio, -ivi or -ii, d. to guard.*  
*\*Dormio, -ivi or -ii, m. r. d. to sleep.*  
*Erudio, -ivi or -ii, d. to instruct.*  
*Expedio, -ivi or -ii, d. to disentangle.*  
*Finio, -ivi or -ii, r. d. to finish.*  
*\*Gestio, -ivi or -ii, to exult; desire.*  
*Impedio, -ivi or -ii, r. d. to entangle.*  
*Insanio, -ivi or -ii, to be mad.*  
*Irratio, -ivi or -ii, to ensnare.*  
*Lenio, -ivi or -ii, d. to mitigate.*  
*Mollio, -ivi or -ii, d. to soften.*

*\*Mugio, -ivi or -ii, to belkno.*  
*Munio, -ivi or -ii, r. d. to fortify.*  
*Mutio, -ivi, to mutter.*  
*Nutrio, -ivi or -ii, d. to nourish.*  
*Partio, -ivi or -ii, r. to divide.*  
*Polio, -ivi, d. to polish.*  
*Punio, -ivi or -ii, d. to punish.*  
*Redimio, -ivi, to crown.*  
*Scio, -ivi, u. r. to know.*  
*Servio, -ivi or -ii, m. r. d. to serve.*  
*Sopio, -ivi or -ii, to lull asleep.*  
*Stabilio, -ivi or -ii, to establish.*  
*Tinnio, -ivi or -ii, r. to tinkle.*  
*Vestio, -ivi or -ii, to clothe.*

§ 176. The following list contains those verbs of the fourth conjugation which form their second and third roots irregularly, and those which want either or both of them.

**REMARK.** The principal irregularity in verbs of the fourth conjugation arises from following the analogy of those verbs of the third conjugation whose first root ends in a consonant; as, *sēpio, sepsi, septum*. A few become irregular by syncope; as, *vēnio, vēni, ventum*.

*Amicio, -ui or -xi, amictum, d. to clothe.*  
*\*Balbütio, —, to stammer.*  
*Bullio, ii, itum, to bubble.*  
*\*Cæcütio, —, to be dim-sighted.*  
*\*Cambio, —, to exchange.*  
*\*Dementio, —, to be mad.*  
*Effütio, —, to babble.*  
*Go, ivi or ii, itum, r. d. to go. The compounds have only ii in the perfect, except öbeo, præeo, and sübeo, which have ivi or ii. All the compounds want the supine and perfect participles, except ädeo, ambio, inco, öbeo, prætereö, sübeo, circümeo or circueo rëdeo, transeo, and \*tvëneo, vëni r. (from vënum eo), to be sold.*  
*\*Farcio, farsii, fartum or fartum, to cram. The compounds generally change ä to e; as, réfarcio, -farsi, -fertum, but con- and ef-, -farcio and -farcio.*

*Fastidio, -ii, -itum, d. to loathe.*  
*\*Fërio, —, d. to strike.*

*\*Fëröcio, —, to be fierce.*  
*Fulcio, fulsi, fultum, d. to prop up.*  
*\*Gannio, —, to yelp, bark.*  
*\*Glöcio, —, to cluck as a hen.*  
*\*Glütio, ivi, or glütii, to scallio.*  
*Grandio, —, to make great.*  
*\*Grunnio, grunnii, to grunt.*  
*Haurio, hausii, rar. haurii, haustum, u. d. to draw.*  
*\*Hinnio, —, to neigh.*  
*\*Ineptio, —, to trifle.*  
*\*Lascivio, lascivii, to be wanton.*  
*\*Ligürio, ligürii, to feed delicately.*  
*\*Ippio, —, r. to be bleary-eyed.*  
*\*Obëdio, obëdii, r. to obey.*  
*Pario is of the third conjugation, but its compounds are of the fourth, changing ä to e; as, äpërio, äpërii, äpertum, r. d. to open. So öpërio, d. compërio compërii, compertum, rarely dep compërior, to find out. So rëpërio r. d.*

**Pāvio**, —, *pāvītum*, to beat.  
**\*Prūrio**, —, to itch.  
**Queo**, *quīvi* or *quii*, *quītum* to be able.  
*So \*nēqueo.*  
**\*Raucio**, —, *r.* to be hoarse.  
**\*Rūgio**, —, to roar as a lion.  
**Sævio**, *sævii*, *itum*, *r.* to rage.  
**\*Sāgio**, —, to perceive keenly.  
**\*Sālio**, *sālui* or *sālii*, to leap. The compounds change *ā* into *i*; as, *\*absilio*, —. *So circumsilio. \*assilio*, -ui. *So dissilio*, *insilio. \*desilio*, -ui or -ii. *So exsilio, resilio, subsilio. \*transilio*, -ui or -ivi, *d.* *So prōsilio.*  
**Sāio**, —, *itum*, *r.* *d.* to salt.  
**Sancio**, *sanxi*, *sancitum* or *sanctum*, *d.* to ratify, sanction.

**Sarcio**, *sarsi*, *sartum*, *d.* to patch.  
**Sarrio**, -ivi or -ui, *sarritum*, *d.* to weed hoe.  
**\*Scātūrio**, —, to gush out.  
**Sentio**, *sensi* *sensum*, *r.* to feel.  
**Sēpēlio**, *sēpeli* or -ii, *rar. sēpeli*, *sēpultum*, *r.* *d.* to bury.  
**Sēpio**, *sepsi*, *septum*, *d.* to hedge in.  
**\*Singultio**, —, to sob, hiccup.  
**\*Siltio**, *sitii*, to thirst.  
**Suffio**, -ii, -itum, *d.* to fumigate.  
**\*Tussio**, —, to cough.  
**\*Vāgio**, *vāgii*, to cry.  
**Vēnio**, *vēni*, *ventum*, *r.* to come.  
**Vincio**, *vinxi*, *vinctum*, *r.* *d.* to bind.

**NOTE.** Desiderative verbs want both the second and third roots, except these three:—*\*ēsūrio*, —, *ēsūritus*, *r.* to desire to eat; *\*nuptūrio*, -ivi, to desire to marry; *\*partūrio*, -ivi, to be in travail. See § 187, II. 3.

### § 177. Deponent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

**Assentior**, *assensus*, *r.* *d.* *p.* to assent.  
**Blandior**, *blanditus*, to flutter.  
**Largior**, *largitus*, *p.* to give, bestow.  
**Mentior**, *mentitus*, *r.* *p.* to lie.  
**Mētor**, *mens* or *mētitus*, *d.* *p.* to measure.  
**Mōlior**, *mōltus*, *d.* to strive, toil.  
**Ordior**, *orsus*, *d.* *p.* to begin.  
**Orior**, *ortus*, *ōritūrus*, *d.* to spring up.  
*Except in the present infinitive, this verb seems to be of the third conjugation.*

**Pērior**, (*obs. whence pēritus.*) *exp.* *pērior*, *expertus*, *r.* *d.* to try. *oppērior*, *oppertus* or *oppēritus*, *d.* to wait for.  
**Partior**, *partitus*, *d.* to divide.  
**Pōtior**, *pōtitus*, *r.* *d.* to obtain, enjoy.  
*In the poets the present indicative and imperfect subjunctive are sometimes of the third conjugation.*  
**Sortior**, *sortitus*, *r.* to cast lots.

## IRREGULAR VERBS.

**§ 178.** Irregular verbs are such as deviate from the common forms in some of the parts derived from the first root.

They are *sum*, *vōlo*, *fĕro*, *ēdo*, *fīo*, *eo*, *queo*, and their compounds.

*Sum* and its compounds have already been conjugated. See § 153. In the conjugation of the rest, the parts which are irregular are fully exhibited, but a synopsis only, of the other parts is, in general, given. Some parts of *volo* and of its compounds are wanting.

1. *Volo* is irregular only in the present of the indicative and infinitive, and in the present and imperfect of the subjunctive.

**REMARK.** It is made irregular partly by syncope, and partly by a change in the vowel of the root. In the present infinitive also and in the imperfect subjunctive, after *ē* was dropped, *r* following *l* was changed into *l*; as, *vellere* (*vetre*) *velle*; *vellērem* (*velrem*) *vellēm*.

<i>Fres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	
<i>vōl-lō,</i>	<i>vel-lē,</i>	<i>vōl-u-i,</i>	<i>to be willing, to wish.</i>

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i>	vô'-lô, vis, vult;	<i>Perf.</i>	vôl'-u-i
<i>P.</i>	vôl'-û-mûs, vul'-tis, vô'-lunt.	<i>Plup.</i>	vô-lu'-ê-ram
<i>Imperf.</i>	vô-lê'-bam, vô-lê'-bâs, etc.	<i>Fut. perf.</i>	vô-lu'-ê-rô.
<i>Fut.</i>	vô'-lam, vô'-lê's, etc.		

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres</i>	<i>S.</i>	vě'-lim, vě'-lis, vě'-lit;	<i>Perf.</i>	vô-lu'-ê-rim.
	<i>P.</i>	vě-li'-mûs, vě-li'-tis, vě'-lint.	<i>Plup.</i>	vôl-u-is'-sem.
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>S.</i>	vel'-lem, vel'-lê's, vel'-lêt;		
	<i>P.</i>	vel-lê'-mûs, vel-lê'-tis, vel'-lent.		

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	vel'-lê.
<i>Perf.</i>	vôl-u-is'-sê.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	vô'-lens.
--------------	-----------

NOTE. *Vôl* and *vôlûs*, for *vult* and *vultis*, and *vin'*, for *viene* are found in Plautus and other ancient authors.

2. *Nôlo* is compounded of the obsolete *nê* (for *non*) and *vôlo*. The *v* of *vôlo* after *nê* is dropped, and the vowels (*ê ô*) are contracted into *ô*.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Inf.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	
nô'-lô,	no'-lê,	nôl'-u-i,	to be unwilling.

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i>	nô'-lô, non'-vis, non'-vult;	<i>Perf.</i>	nôl'-u-i.
<i>P.</i>	nôl'-û-mûs, non-vul'-tis, nô'-lunt.	<i>Plup.</i>	nô-lu'-ê-ram.
<i>Imperf.</i>	nô-lê'-bam, -bâs, -bât, etc.	<i>Fut. perf.</i>	nô-lu'-ê-rô.
<i>Fut.</i>	nô'-lam, -lê's, -lêt, etc.		

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>S.</i>	nô'-lim, nô'-lis, nô'-lit;	<i>Perf.</i>	nô-lu'-ê-rim.
	<i>P.</i>	nô-li'-mûs, nô-li'-tis, nô'-lint.	<i>Plup.</i>	nôl-u-is'-sem.
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>S.</i>	nol'-lem, nol'-lê's, nol'-lêt;		
	<i>P.</i>	nol-lê'-mûs, nol-lê'-tis, nol'-lent.		

## IMPERATIVE.

	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Future.</i>
<i>Sing</i>	2 nô'-li; <i>Plur.</i> nô-li'-tê.	<i>Sing.</i>	2. nô-li'-tô, <i>Plur.</i> nôl-i-tô'-tê,
		3. nô-li'-tô;	nô-lun'-tê

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i>	nol'-lê.
<i>Perf.</i>	nôl-u-is'-sê.

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Pres.</i>	no'-lens.
--------------	-----------

NOTE. In *non-vis*, *non-vult*, etc. of the present, *non* takes the place of *ne*, but *neque* and *nequid* also occur in Plautus.

3. *Mūlo* is compounded of *māgis* and *vōlo*. In composition *māgis* drops its final syllable, and *vōlo* its *v*. The vowels (*ā ō*) are then contracted into *ā*.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>
mā'-lō,	mal'-lē,	māl'-u-i, <i>to prefer.</i>

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> mā'-lō, mā'-vis, mā'-vult;	<i>Perf.</i> māl'-u-i.
<i>P.</i> māl'-ū-mūs, mā-vul'-tis, mā'-lunt.	<i>Plup.</i> māl'-u-ē-ram.
<i>Imperf.</i> mā-lē'-bam, -bās, etc.	<i>Fut. perf.</i> mā-lu'-ē-rō.
<i>Fut.</i> mā'-lam, -lēs, etc.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> mā'-lim, mā'-lis, mā'-lit;	<i>Perf.</i> mā-lu'-ē-rim.
<i>P.</i> mā-li'-mūs, mā-li'-tis, mā'-lint.	<i>Plup.</i> māl-u-is'-sem.
<i>Imperf. S.</i> mal'-lem, mal'-lēs, mal'-lēt;	
<i>P.</i> mal-lē'-mūs, mal-lē'-tis, mal'-lert.	

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres. mal'-lē.</i>	<i>Perf. māl-u-is'-sē.</i>
-----------------------	----------------------------

NOTE. *Māvōlo, māvōlunt; māvōlet; māvēlīm, māvēlīs, māvēlit; and māvellēm; for mālo, mālunt, etc., occur in Plautus.*

§ 179. *Fēro* is irregular in two respects:—1. Its second and third roots are not derived from the first, but from otherwise obsolete verbs, viz. *tūlo* for *tollo*, and *tlao*, sup. *tlātum*, by aphæresis, *lātum*:—2. In the present infinitive active, in the imperfect subjunctive, and in certain parts of the present indicative and imperative, of both voices, the connecting vowel is omitted. In the present infinitive passive, *r* is doubled.

## ACTIVE VOICE.

## PASSIVE VOICE.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i> fē'-rō, ( <i>to bear.</i> )	<i>Pres. Indic.</i> fē'-rōr, ( <i>to be borne.</i> )
<i>Pres. Infin.</i> fer'-rē,	<i>Pres. Infin.</i> fer'-ri,
<i>Perf. Indic.</i> tū'-li,	<i>Perf. Part.</i> lā'-tūs.
<i>Supine.</i> lā'-tum.	

## INDICATIVE.

*Present.*

<i>S</i> fē'-rō, fers, fert;	fē'-rōr, fer'-ris or -rē, fer'-tūr;
<i>P</i> fēr'-i-mūs, fer'-tis, fē'-runt.	fēr'-i-mūr, fē-rim'-i-ni, fē-run'-tūr.

<i>Imperf.</i> fē-rē'-bam.	<i>Imperf.</i> fē-rē'-bār.
<i>Fut.</i> fē'-ram, -rēs, etc.	<i>Fut.</i> fē'-rār -rē'-ris or -rē'-rē, etc.
<i>Perf.</i> tū'-li.	<i>Perf.</i> lā'-tūs sum or fu'-i.
<i>Plup.</i> tū'lē'-ram.	<i>Plup.</i> lā'-tūs ē'-ram or fu'-ē-ram.
<i>Fut. percf.</i> tū'lē'-rō	<i>Fut. perf.</i> lā'-tūs ē'-rō or fu'-ē-rō.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> fě·ram, -rās, etc.	<i>Pres.</i> fě·rār, -ra·ris or -rā·rě, etc.
<i>Imperf</i> fer·rem, -rēs, etc.	<i>Imperf.</i> fer·rēr, -rē·ris, etc.
<i>Perf.</i> tū·lē·rim.	<i>Perf.</i> lā' tūs sim or fu·ē·rim.
<i>Plup.</i> tū·lis·sem.	<i>Plup.</i> lā' tūs es·sem or fu·is·sem.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> fěr ;	<i>P.</i> fer'·tě.	<i>Pres. S.</i> fer'·rě ;	<i>P.</i> fě·rim'·i·nī.
<i>Fut. S.</i> fer·tō,	<i>P.</i> fer·tō'·tě,	<i>Fut. S.</i> fer'·tōr,	<i>F.</i> (fě·rēm'·i·nī.)
	fer·tō ;		fě·run'·tōr.
	fě·run'·tō.		

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> fer'·rě.	<i>Pres.</i> fer'·rī.
<i>Perf.</i> tū·lis·sě.	<i>Perf.</i> lā' tūs es·sě or fu·is·sě.
<i>Fut.</i> lā·tū·rūs es·sě.	<i>Fut.</i> lā' tum i'·rī.

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> fě·rens.	<i>Perf.</i> lā' tūs.
<i>Fut.</i> lā·tu·rūs.	<i>Fut.</i> fě·ren'·dūs.

## GERUND.

fě·ren'·dī, etc.

## SUPINES.

Fo. mer. lā' tum.

Latter. lā' tū.

**NOTE.** In the comic writers the following reduplicated forms are found in parts derived from the second root, viz. *tetuli*, *tetulisti*, *tetulisti*, *tetulerunt*; *tetulero*, *tetulerit*; *tetulissem*, and *tetulisse*.

**§ 180.** *Fio*, 'to become,' is properly a neuter verb of the third conjugation, having only the parts derived from the first root; but it is used also as a passive of *facio*, from which it takes those parts of the passive which are derived from the third root, together with the participle in *dus*. The infinitive present has been changed from the regular form *fiēre* to *fiēri*.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
fī·ō,	fī·ē·rī,	fac'·tūs, to be made or to become.

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> fī·ō, fīs, tīt ;	<i>Perf.</i> fac'·tūs sum or fu'·i.
<i>P.</i> fī·mūs, fī'·tis, fī'·unt.	<i>Plup.</i> fac'·tūs ē·ram or fu'·ē·ram
<i>Imperf.</i> fī·ē·bam, fī·ē·bās, etc.	<i>Fut. perf.</i> fac'·tūs ē·rō or fu'·ē·rō.
<i>Fut.</i> fī·am, fī·ēs, etc.	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> fī·am, fī·ās, etc.	<i>Perf.</i> fac'·tūs sim or fu'·ē·rim.
<i>imp.</i> fī·ē·rem, -ē·rēs, etc.	<i>Plup.</i> fac'·tūs es·sem or fu·-

## IMPERATIVE.

*Pres. Sing.* fī; *Plur.* fī'-tě.

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres.* fī'-ě-rī.*Perf.* fac'-tūs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě.*Fut.* fac'-tum ī'-rī.

## PARTICIPLES.

*Perf.* fac'-tūs.*Fut.* fā-ci-en'-dūs.

## SUPINE.

*Latter.* fac'-tū.

**NOTE.** The compounds of *facio* which retain *a*, have also *fio* in the passive as, *calefacio*, to warm; passive, *calefio*; but those which change *a* into *i* form the passive regularly. (Cf. *facio* in the list, § 172.) Yet *confit*, *dēfit*, and *infit* occur. See § 183, 12, 13, 14.

**§ 181.** *Edo*, to eat, is conjugated regularly as a verb of the third conjugation; but in the present of the indicative, imperative, and infinitive moods, and in the imperfect of the subjunctive, it has also forms similar to those of the corresponding tenses of *sum* :—Thus.

## INDICATIVE.

*Present.*

<i>S.</i> ě'-dō,	ě'-dis,	ě'-dit,
	(or ēs,	est);
<i>P.</i> ěd'-ī-mūs,	ěd'-ī-tīs,	ě'-dunt.
	(or es'-tīs),	

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Imperfect.*

<i>S.</i> ěd'-ě-rem,	ěd'-ě-rēs,	ěd'-ě-rēt,
(or es'-sem,	es'-sēs,	es'-sēt);
<i>P.</i> ěd'-ě-rē'-mūs,	ěd'-ě-rē'-tīs,	ěd'-ě-rent,
(or es-sē'-mūs,	es-sē'-tīs,	es'-sent).

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> ě'-dē,	<i>P.</i> ěd'-ī-tě,
(or ēs;	es'-tē).
<i>Fut. S.</i> ěd'-ī-tō,	<i>P.</i> ěd'-ī-tō'-tē, ě-dun'-tō.
(or es'-tō,	es-tō'-tē).

## INFINITIVE.

*Pres* ěd'-ě-rē, (or es'-sē).

## PASSIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> ěd'-ī-tūr,	(or es'-tūr).
<i>Imperf.</i> ěd'-ě-rē-tūr,	(or es-sē'-tūr).

**NOTE.** (a.) In the present subjunctive, *ēdim*, *ēdis*, etc., are found, for *īdim* *dās*, etc.

(b.) In the compounds of *ēdo*, also, forms resembling those of *sum* occur. *Ambēdo* has the participles *ambēns* and *ambēsus*; *comēdo* has *comēsus*, *comesūrus* and rarely *comestus*; and *adēdo* and *exēdo* have *adēsus* and *exēsus*.



§ 182. *Eo* is irregular in the parts which, in other verbs are formed from the first root, except the imperfect subjunctive and the present infinitive. In these, and in the parts formed from the second and third roots, it is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation

NOTE. *Eo* has no first root, and the parts usually derived from that root, consist, in this verb, of terminations only.

<i>Pres. Indic.</i>	<i>Pres. Infin.</i>	<i>Perf. Indic.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
<i>e'-ð,</i>	<i>ī-rē,</i>	<i>ī-vī,</i>	<i>ī'-tum, to go.</i>

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Pres. S. e'-ð, is, it;</i>	<i>Fut. ī'-bō, ī'-bis, ī'-bit, etc.</i>
<i>P. ī'-mūs, ī'-tis, e'-unt.</i>	<i>Perf. ī'-vī, ī'-vis'-tī, ī'-vit, etc.</i>
<i>Imperf. S. ī'-bam, ī'-bās, ī'-bāt;</i>	<i>Plup. īv'-ē-ram, īv'-ē-rās, etc.</i>
<i>P. ī-bā'-mūs, etc.</i>	<i>Fut perf. īv'-ē-rō, īv'-ē-rīs, etc.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Pres. e'-am, e'-ās, e'-āt, etc.</i>	<i>Perf. īv'-ē-rim, īv'-ē-rīs, etc.</i>
<i>Imperf. ī'-rum, ī'-rēs, ī'-rēt, etc.</i>	<i>Plup. ī-vis'-sem, ī-vis'-sēs, etc.</i>

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. S. ī;</i>	<i>P. ī'-tē.</i>
<i>Fut. 2. ī'-tō, ī'-tō'-tē,</i>	
<i>3. ī'-tō; e-un'-tō.</i>	

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres. ī'-rē.</i>
<i>Perf. ī-vis'-sē.</i>
<i>Fut. ī-tū'-rūs es'-sē.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres. ī'-ens, (gen. e-un'-tis.)</i>
<i>Fut. ī-tū'-rūs, a, um.</i>

## GERUND.

<i>e-un'-di,</i>
<i>e-un'-dō, etc.</i>

REMARK 1. In some of the compounds the forms *eam, ies, iet* occur, though rarely, in the future; as, *redeam, redies, abiet, exiet, prodient. Istis, issem, and isse*, are formed by contraction for *ivistis, vissem, and visse*. See § 162, 7.

REM. 2. In the passive voice are found the infinitive *iri*, and the third persons singular *itur, ibitur, ibitur, itum est, etc.; catur, iritur, eundum est, etc.*, which are used impersonally. See § 184, 2, (a.)

REM. 3. The compounds of *eo*, including *v̄neo*, are conjugated like the simple verb, but most of them have *ū* in the perfect rather than *ī*. See under *eo* in § 176. *Adeo, anteo, in eo, p̄cedeo, sūbeo, and transeo*, being used actively, are found in the passive voice. *Inietur* occurs as a future passive of *ineo*. *Ambio* is regular, like *audio*, but has either *ambibat* or *ambiēbat*.

NOTE. *Queo*, I can, and *nequeo*, I cannot, are conjugated like *eo*, but they want the imperative mood and the gerund, and their participles rarely occur. They are sometimes found in the passive voice, before an infinitive passive.

## DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 183. (1.) Defective verbs are those which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, or persons.

REMARK. There are many verbs which are not found in all the tenses, numbers, and persons, exhibited in the paradigms. Some, not originally defective, are accounted so, because they do not occur in the classics now extant. Others are in their nature defective. Thus, the first and second persons of the passive voice must be wanting in many verbs, from the nature of their signification.

(2.) The following list contains such verbs as are remarkable for wanting many of their parts:—

- |                               |                              |                                   |
|-------------------------------|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. Odi, <i>I hate.</i>        | 6. Fāri, <i>to speak.</i>    | 11. Cēdo, <i>tell, or give me</i> |
| 2. Cœpi, <i>I have begun.</i> | 7. Quæso, <i>I pray.</i>     | 12. Confit, <i>it is done.</i>    |
| 3. Mēmīni, <i>I remember.</i> | 8. Ave, } <i>hail, or</i>    | 13. Dēfit, <i>it is wanting.</i>  |
| 4. Aio, } <i>I say.</i>       | 9. Salve, } <i>farewell.</i> | 14. Infit, <i>he begins.</i>      |
| 5. Inquam, }                  | 10. Apāge, <i>begone.</i>    | 15. Ovat, <i>he rejoices.</i>     |

1. *Odi*, *cœpi*, and *mēmīni* are used chiefly in the perfect and in the other parts formed from the second root, and are thence called *preteritive verbs*. *Odi* has also a deponent form in the perfect:—  
Thus,

IND. *perf.* ō'-di or ō'-sus sum; *plup.* ōd'-ē-ram; *fut. perf.* ōd'-ē-ro.

SUBJ. *perf.* ōd'-ē-rim; *plup.* ō-dis'-sem.

INF. *perf.* ō-dis'-se; *fut.* ō-sū'-rum es'-se.

PART. *fut.* ō-sū'-rus; *perf.* ō'-sus.

NOTE 1. *Exōsus* and *pērōsus*, like *ōsus*, are used actively. *Odiuit*, for *ōdit*, occurs, M. Anton. in Cic. Phil. 13, 19: and *odiendi* in Appuleius.

2. IND. *perf.* cœ'-pi; *plup.* cœp'-ē-ram; *fut. perf.* cœp'-ē-ro.

SUBJ. *perf.* cœp'-ē-rim; *plup.* cœ-pis'-sem.

INF. *perf.* cœ-pis'-se; *fut.* cœp-tū'-rum es'-se.

PART. *fut.* cœp-tū'-rus; *perf.* cœp'-tus.

NOTE 2. In Plautus are found a present, *cœpio*, present subjunctive, *cœpiam*, and infinitive, *cœpere*. Before an infinitive passive, *captus est*, etc., rather than *cœpi*, etc., are commonly used.

3. IND. *perf.* mēm'-l-ni; *plup.* mēm'-l-n'-ē-ram; *fut. perf.* mēm'-l-n'-ē-ro.

SUBJ. *perf.* mēm'-l-n'-ē-rim; *plup.* mēm-l-nis'-sem.

INF. *perf.* mēm-l-nis'-sē.

IMPERAT. 2 *pers.* S. mē-men'-to; P. mēm-en-tō'-tē.

NOTE 3. *Odi* and *mēmīni* have, in the perfect, the sense of the present, and, in the pluperfect and future perfect, the sense of the imperfect and future, as, *fugiet atque odērit*. Cic. In this respect. *nōvi*, I know, the perfect of *nosco*, to learn, and *consuevi*, I am wont, the perfect of *consuesco*, I accustom myself, agree with *ōdi* and *mēmīni*.

4. IND. *pres.* ai'-o,\* a'-is, a'-it; —, —, ai'-unt.\*

— *imp.* ai-ē'-bam, ai-ē'-bās, ai-ē'-bāt; ai-ē-bā'-mūs, ai-ē-bā'-tis, ai-ē'-bant.

SUBJ. *pres.* —, ai'-ās, ai'-āt; —, —, ai'-ant.

IMPERAT. *pres.* a'-i. PART. *pres.* ai'-ens.

NOTE 4. *Ais* with *ne* is contracted to *aīn'*; like *viden'*, *abīn'*, for *vidēna*, *abīsne*. The comic writers use the imperfect *aibas*, *aibat* and *aibant*, which are dissyllabic.

5. IND. *pres.* in'-quam, in'-quis, in'-qult; in'-qui-mūs, in'-qui-tis, in'-qui-unt,

— *imp.* —, —, in-qui-ē'-bāt, and in-qui-bāt; —, —, in-qui-ē'-bant

— *fut.* —, in'-qui-ēs, in'-qui-et; —, —, —.

— *perf.* —, in-quis-tī, in' qult; —, —, —.

SI BJ. *pres.* —, in'-qui-ās, in'-qui-āt; —, in-qui-ā'-tis, in'-qui-ant.

IMPERAT. in'-que, in'-qui-to.

6. IND. *pres.* —, —, fā'-tūr; *fut.* fā'-bōr, — fāb'-i-tūr.

— *perf.* fātus est; *plup.* fātus ēram.

IMPERAT. fā'-rē. PART. *pres.* fāns; *perf.* fā'-ūs; *fut.* fān'-dūs.

INFIN. *pres.* fā'-ri or fā'-ri-ēr. GERUND. *gen* fān'-di; *abl.* fān'-dō.

SUPINE, fā'-tū.

\* Pronounced a'-yo, a'-yunt, etc., wherever the diphthong *ai* is followed by a vowel.  
See § 9, 1.

*Interfāri* has the forms *interfātur*, *interfāta est*, *interfāri*, *interfāns*, and *interfātus*.—*Effāri* has *effābor*, *effabere*, *effātus est*, *effāti sunt*; imperat. *effāre*; *effāri*, *effātus*, *effinulus*, *effundo*; *effātu*.—*Præfāri* occurs in the following forms, *præfātur*, *præfāmur*; *præfabantur*; *præfārer*; *præfarentur*; *præfāti sūmus*; *præfātus fuero*; imperat. *præfāto*, *præfāmino*; *præfāns*, *præfātus*, *præfundus*; *præfundo*.—*Profāri* has *profātur*, *profāta est*, *profāta sunt*, *profātus* and *profāns*.

7. IND. *pres.* quæ'-so, —, quæ'-sit; quæ'-ū-mūs, —, —.  
INF. *pres.* quæ'-ē-rē.
8. IMPERAT. ā'-vē, ā'-vē'-tē; ā'-vē'-to. INF. ā'-vē'-rē.  
NOTE. *Avēre* and *salvēre* are often used with *jūbeo*.
9. IND. *pres.* sal'-vō-o; *fut.* sal'-vē'-bis. INF. *pres.* sal'-vē'-rē.  
IMPERAT. sal'-vē, sal'-vē'-lē; sal'-vē'-to.
10. IMPERAT. āp'-ā-gē. So *āge* with a subject either singular or plural.
11. IMPERAT. *sing.* cē'-do; *pl.* cēt'-tē for cēd'-ī-tē. Hence *cēdodum*.
12. IND. *pres.* con'-fīt; *fut.* con'-fī'-et.  
SUBJ. *pres.* con'-fī'-āt; *imperf.* con'-fī'-ē-rēt. INF. *pres.* con'-fī'-ē-rī.
13. IND. *pres.* dē'-fīt; *pl.* dē'-fī'-unt; *fut.* dē'-fī'-ēt. SUBJ. *pres.* dē'-fī'-āt.  
INF. *pres.* dē'-fī'-ē-rī. So *ef'-fī'-ē-rī*, and *in-ter'-fī'-ē-rī*. *Plaut.*; and *in-ter'-fī'-at*. *Lucr.*
14. IND. *pres.* in'-fīt; *pl.* in'-fī'-unt.
15. IND. *pres.* ō'-vāt. SUBJ. *pres.* ō'-vēt; *imperf.* ō'-vā'-rēt.  
PART. *pres.* ō'-vans; *perf.* ō'-vā'-tūs; *fut.* ōv'-ā-tū'-rūs. GERUND, ō-van'-dl.

REMARK 1. Among defective verbs are sometimes, also, included the following:—*Fōrem*, *fōres*, etc., *f rē*, (see § 154, R. 3.) *Ausim*, *ausis*, *ausit*; *ausint*. *Fazo* and *fazim*, *fazis*, *fazit*; *fazimus*, *fazitis*, *fazint*. *Fazem*. The form in *o* is an old future perfect; that in *im* a perfect, and that in *em* a pluperfect subjunctive. See § 162, 7, (c.), and 9.

REM. 2. In the present tense, the first person singular, *fūro*, to be mad, and *dor* and *der*, from *do*, to give, are not used. So in the imperative *sci*, *cūpe* and *polle*, from *scio*, *cūpio*, and *polleo*, do not occur.

REM. 3. A few words, sometimes classed with defectives, are formed by contraction from a verb and the conjunction *si*; as, *sis* for *si vis*, *sutis* for *si vultis*, *sodes* for *si audes* (for *audies*.)

## IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 184. (a.) Impersonal verbs are those which are used only in the third person singular, and do not admit of a *persona* subject.

(b.) The subject of an impersonal verb in the active voice is, for the most part, either an infinitive, or an infinitive or subjunctive clause; but in English the neuter pronoun, *it*, commonly stands before the verb, and represents such clause; as, *me delectat scribēre*, *it delights me to write*. Sometimes an accusative depending on an impersonal verb takes, in English, the place of a subject; as, *me misēret tui*, *I pity thee*.

1. Impersonal verbs in the active voice are conjugated in the several conjugations like *delectat*, *it delights*; *dēcet*, *it becomes*; *conīngit*, *it happens*; *evēnit*, *it happens*; *th is*—

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
IND. Pres.	delectat,	deceat,	contingit,	evenit,
Imp.	delectābat,	decēbat,	contingēbat,	eveniēbat,
Fut.	delectābit,	decēbit,	continget,	eveniet,
Perf.	delectāvit,	deceit,	contigit,	evenit,
Plup.	delectāverat,	deceuerat,	contigērat,	evenērat,
Fut. perf.	delectāverit.	deceuerit.	contigērit.	evenērit
SUB. Pres.	delectet,	deceat,	contingat,	eveniat,
Imp.	delectāret,	decēret,	contingēret,	eveniēret,
Perf.	delectāverit,	deceuerit,	contigērit,	evenērit,
Plup.	delectāvisset.	deceisset.	contigisset.	evenisset.
INF. Pres.	delectāre,	decēre,	contingēre,	evenire,
Perf.	delectāvisse.	deceisse.	contigisse.	evenisse.

2. (a.) Most *neuter* and many *active* verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, by changing the personal subject of the active voice into an ablative with the preposition *a* or *ab*; as,

*Illi pugnant*; or *pugnātur ab illis*, they fight. *Illi querunt*, or *queritur ab illis*, they ask. Cf. § 141, Rem. 2.

(b.) In the passive form, the subject in English is, commonly, either the *agent*, expressed or understood, or an *abstract* noun formed from the verb; as,

*Pugnātum est*, we, they, etc. fought; or, the battle was fought. *Concurrūtur*, the people run together; or, there is a *concourse*.

(c.) Sometimes the English subject in the passive form is, in Latin, an oblique case dependent on the verb; as, *favētur tibi*, thou art favored.

The following are the forms of impersonal verbs in the several conjugations of the passive voice:—

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

Pres.	pugnātur,	favētur,	curritur,	venitur,
Imp.	pugnabātur,	favebātur,	currebātur,	veniebātur,
Fut.	pugnabitur,	favebitur,	curretur,	venietur,
Perf.	pugnātum est or fuit,	fautum est or fuit,	cursum est or fuit,	ventum est or fuit,
Plup.	pugnātum erat or fuērat,	fautum erat or fuērat,	cursum erat or fuērat,	ventum erat or fuērat,
Fut. p.	pugnātum erit or fuērit.	fautum erit or fuērit.	cursum erit or fuērit.	ventum erit or fuērit.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Pres.	pugnētur,	faveātur,	currātur,	veniātur,
Imp.	pugnārētur,	faverētur,	currerētur,	venirētur,
Perf.	pugnātum sit or fuērit,	fautum sit or fuērit,	cursum sit or fuērit,	ventum sit or fuērit,
Plup.	pugnātum esset or fuisset.	fautum esset or fuisset.	cursum esset or fuisset.	ventum esset or fuisset.

#### INFINITIVE MOOD.

Pres	pugnāri,	favēri,	curri,	veniri,
Perf	pugnātum esse or fuisse,	fautum esse or fuisse,	cursum esse or fuisse,	ventum esse or fuisse,
Fut.	pugnātum iri.	fautum iri.	cursum iri.	ventum iri.

3. In like manner, in the periphrastic conjugation, the neuter gender of the participle in *dus*, both of active and neuter verbs, is used impersonally with *est*, etc., and the *dative* of the person; as, *nihil scribendum fuit*, I have been obliged to write; *moriendum est omnibus*. all must die. See § 162, 15, R. 5.

REMARK 1. Grammarians usually reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, all of which are of the second conjugation, viz. *dēcet*, *libet*, *licet*, *liquet*, *misert*, *oportet*, *piget*, *pōnet*, *pūdet*, and *taedet*. (See § 169.) Four of these, *dēcet*, *libet*, *licet*, and *liquet* occur also in the third person plural, but without personal subjects. There seems, however, to be no good reason for distinguishing the verbs above enumerated from other impersonal verbs. The following are such other verbs as are most commonly used impersonally:—

(a.) In the first conjugation:—

<i>Constat</i> , it is evident.	<i>Vacat</i> , there is leisure.	<i>Pugnātur</i> , a battle is fought.
<i>Juvat</i> , it delights.	<i>Certātur</i> , there is a contention.	<i>Stātur</i> , they stand firm.
<i>Præstat</i> , it is better.	<i>Peccātur</i> , a fault is committed.	
<i>Restat</i> , it remains.		
<i>Stat</i> , it is resolved.		

(b.) In the second conjugation:—

<i>Appāret</i> , it appears.	<i>Pertinet</i> , it pertains.	<i>Persuadētur</i> , he, they, etc. are persuaded.
<i>Attinet</i> , it belongs to.	<i>Plācet</i> , it pleases.	<i>Pertæsum est</i> , he, they, etc. are disgusted with.
<i>Displicet</i> , it displeases.	<i>Flētur</i> , we, etc. weep, or, there is weeping.	<i>Silētur</i> , silence is maintained.
<i>Doleat</i> , it grieves.	<i>Nocētur</i> , injury is inflicted.	
<i>Miserētur</i> , it distresses.		
<i>Pātet</i> , it is plain.		

(c.) In the third conjugation:—

<i>Accidit</i> , it happens.	<i>Miserescit</i> , it distresses.	<i>Desinitur</i> , there is an end.
<i>Conducit</i> , it is useful.	<i>Sufficit</i> , it suffices.	<i>Scribitur</i> , it is written.
<i>Contingit</i> , it happens.	<i>Creditor</i> , it is believed.	<i>Vivitur</i> , we, etc. live.
<i>Fallit</i> , or } it escapes me;	<i>Curritur</i> , people run.	
<i>Fūgit</i> me, } I do not know.		

(d.) In the fourth conjugation:—

<i>Convēnit</i> , it is agreed upon; it is fit.	<i>Expēdit</i> , it is expedient.	<i>Scitur</i> , it is known.
<i>Evēnit</i> , it happens.	<i>Dormitur</i> , we, they, etc. sleep.	<i>Itur</i> , they, etc. go.
		<i>Venitur</i> , they, etc. come.

(e.) Among irregular verbs:—

<i>Fit</i> , it happens.	<i>Præterit</i> me, it is unknown to me.	<i>Rēfert</i> , it concerns.
<i>Intērest</i> , it concerns.	<i>Prōdest</i> , it avails.	<i>Sūbit</i> , it occurs.
<i>Obest</i> , it is hurtful.		<i>Supērest</i> , it remains.

(f.) To these may be added verbs signifying the state of the weather, or the operations of nature. The subject of these may be *Jupiter*, *deus*, or *cælum* which are sometimes expressed. Of this kind are the following:—

<i>Fulget</i> , }	<i>Lapidat</i> , it rains stones.	<i>Tōnat</i> , it thunders.
<i>Fulgurat</i> , } it lightens.	<i>Lucescit</i> , } it grows light.	<i>Vesperascit</i> , } evening
<i>Fulminat</i> , }	<i>Illucescit</i> , }	<i>Advesperascit</i> , } ap-
<i>Fēlat</i> , it f-e-ezes.	<i>Ningit</i> , it snows.	<i>Invesperascit</i> , } proaches.
<i>Frangit</i> , it hails.	<i>Pluit</i> , it rains.	

*Lapidat*, *ningit*, and *pluit* are also used impersonally in the passive voice.

**REM. 2.** Impersonal verbs, not being used in the imperative, take the subjunctive in its stead; as, *delectet*, let it delight. In the passive voice, their perfect participles are used only in the neuter.

**REM. 3.** Most of the impersonal verbs want participles, gerunds, and supines; but *penitet* has a present participle, futures in *rus* and *dus*, and the gerund. *Pūlet* and *piget* have also the gerund and future passive participle.

**REM. 4.** Most of the above verbs are also used personally, but frequently in a somewhat different sense; as, *ut Tibiris inter eos et pons interesset*, so that the Tiber and bridge were between them.

## REDUNDANT VERBS.

**§ 185.** Redundant verbs are those which have different forms to express the same meaning.

Verbs may be redundant in *termination*; as, *fabrīco* and *fabrīcor*, to frame;—in *conjugation*; as, *lāvo*, *-āre*, and *lāvo*, *-ēre*, to wash;—or in certain tenses; as, *ōdi* and *ōsus sum*, I hate.

1. The following deponent verbs, besides their passive form, have an active form in *o*, of the same meaning, but which is, in general, rarely used. A few, however, which are marked *r.*, occur more rarely than the corresponding forms in *o*.

Abominor, to abhor.	Fabrīcor, to frame.	Oscitor, to gape.
Adūlor, to flutter.	Fenēror, to lend on interest.	Pacificor, <i>r.</i> to make a peace.
Altercor, to dispute.	Fluctuor, to fluctuate.	Palpor, to caress.
Amplexor, to embrace.	Frustror, to disappoint.	Partior, to divide.
Arbitror, to suppose.	Fruticor, to sprout.	Popūlor, to lay waste.
Argūtor, to prate.	Impertior, to impart.	Pūnior, to punish.
Assentior, to assent.	Jurgor, to quarrel.	Ruminor, to ruminate.
Auchpor, to hunt after.	Lacrimor, <i>r.</i> to weep.	Sciscitor, to inquire.
Augūror, to foretell.	Ludificor, to ridicule.	Sortior, to cast lots.
Aurigor, to drive a chariot.	Luxūrior, <i>r.</i> to be rank.	Stabūlor, to stable.
Auspīcor, to take the auspices.	Medicor, to heal.	Tueor, to defend.
Cachinnor, <i>r.</i> to laugh aloud.	Mēreor, to deserve.	Tumultuor, to be in confusion.
Comitor, to accompany.	Mētor, to measure.	Tūtor, to defend.
Cominutor, to deliberate.	Misēreor, to commiserate.	Ūtor, to use.
Convivor, to feast together.	Modēror, to moderate.	Ūrinor, to dive.
Cunctor, (cont.), to delay.	Munēror, <i>r.</i> to bestow.	Velificor, to set sail.
Dignor, to deem worthy.	Nictor, <i>r.</i> to wink.	Venēror, to reverence.
Depascor, to feed upon.	Nūtrior, <i>r.</i> to nourish.	Vociferor, to bawl.
Elucubror, to elaborate.	Obsōnor, to cater.	
	Opīnor, to suppose.	

2. The following verbs are redundant in conjugation:—

Boo, -āre, } to roar.	Fulgeo, -ēre, } to shine.	Sōno, -āre, } to sound.
Boo, -ēre, <i>r.</i> }	Fulgo, -ēre, <i>r.</i> }	Sōno, -ēre, }
Bullo, -āre, } to boil.	Lāvo, -āre, }	Strideo, -ēre, } to creak.
Bullio, -ire, }	Lāvo, -ēre, <i>r.</i> }	Strido, -ēre, }
Cleo, -ēre, } to excite.	Lino, -ēre, }	Tergeo, -ēre, } to wipe.
Cio, -ire, <i>r.</i> }	Linio, -ire, <i>r.</i> }	Tergo, -ēre, }
Densao, -āre, }	Nicto, -āre, }	Tueor, -ēri, }
Denseo, -ēre, }	Nicto, -ēre, }	Tuor, -i, <i>r.</i> }
Ferveo, -ēre, }	Sālo, -ēre, }	
Fervo, -ēre, } to boil.	Sālio, -ire, }	
Fōdio, -ēre, }	Scāteo, -ēre, }	
Fōdio, -ire, <i>r.</i> }	Scāto, -ēre, <i>r.</i> }	

Those marked *r.* are rarely used.

*Mōrior, ōrior, and pōrior*, also, are redundant in conjugation in certain parts. See in lists §§ 174 and 177.

§ 186. 1. Some verbs are spelled alike, or nearly alike, but differ in conjugation, quantity, pronunciation, or signification, or in two or more of these respects.

Such are the following:—

Abdico, -āre, to abdicate.	Edo, -ēre, to eat.	Nitor, -i, to strive.
Abdico, -ēre, to refuse.	Edo, -ēre, to publish.	Obsēro, -āre, to lock up
Accido, -ēre, to fall upon.	Edūco, -āre, to educate.	Obsēro, -ēre, to sow.
Accido, -ēre, to cut down.	Edūco, -ēre, to draw out.	Occido, -ēre, to full.
Addo, -ēre, to add.	Effēro, -āre, to make wild.	Occido, -ēre, to kill.
Adeo, -ire, to go to.	Effēro, -re, to carry out.	Opērio, -ire, to cover.
Aggēro, -āre, to heap up.	Excido, -ēre, to fall out.	Opēror, -āri, to work.
Aggēro, -ēre, to heap upon.	Excido, -ēre, to cut off.	Oppōrior, -iri, to wait for
Allego, -āre, to depute.	Ferio, -ire, to strike.	Pando, -āre, to bend.
Allēgo, -ēre, to choose.	Fēro, -re, to bear.	Pando, -ēre, to extend.
Appello, -āre, to call.	Fērior, -āri, to keep holiday.	Paro, -āre, to prepare.
Appello, -ēre, to drive to.	Frigeo, -ēre, to be cold.	Pāreo, -ēre, to appear.
Cālo, -ēre, to fall.	Frigo, -ēre, to fry.	Pārio, -āre, to bring forth
Cādo, -ēre, to cut.	Fūgo, -āre, to put to flight.	Pārio, -ēre, to balance.
Cēdo, -ēre, to yield.	Fūgio, -ēre, to fly.	Pendeo, -ēre, to hang.
Cāleo, -ēre, to be hot.	Fundo, -āre, to found.	Pendo, -ēre, to weigh.
Calleo, -ēre, to be hard.	Fundo, -ēre, to pour out.	Percōlo, -āre, to filter.
Cāno, -ēre, to sing.	Incido, -ēre, to fall into.	Percōlo, -ēre, to adorn.
Cāneo, -ēre, to be gray.	Incido, -ēre, to cut into.	Permāneo, -ēre, to re-
Cāreo, -re, to want.	Indico, -āre, to show.	main.
Cāro, -ere, to card wool.	Indico, -ere, to proclaim.	Permāno, -āre, to float
Cēlo, -āre, to conceal.	Inficio, -ēre, to stain.	through.
Cælo, -āre, to carve.	Infitor, -āri, to deny.	Prædico, -āre, to publish.
Censeo, -ēre, to think.	Intercido, -ēre, to happen.	Prædico, -ire, to foretell.
Sentio, -ire, to feel.	Intercido, -ēre, to cut	Prōdo, -ēre, to betray.
Claudo, -ēre, to shut.	asunder.	Prōdeo, -ire, to come forth.
Claudo, -ēre, to be lame.	Jāceo, -ēre, to lie.	Recēdo, -ēre, to retire.
Colligo, -āre, to bind to-	Jācio, -ēre, to throw.	Recido, -ēre, to fall back
gether.	Lābo, -āre, to totter.	Recido, -ēre, to cut off.
Colligo, -ēre, to collect.	Lābor, -i, to glide.	Reddo, -ēre, to restore.
Cōlo, -ēre, to strain.	Lacto, -āre, to suckle.	Redeo, -ire, to return.
Cōlo, -ēre, to cultivate.	Lacto, -āre, to deceive.	Refēro, -re, to bring back
Compello, -āre, to accost.	Lēgo, -āre, to depute.	Referio, -ire, to strike back
Compello, -ēre, to force.	Lēgo, -ēre, to read.	Relēgo, -āre, to remove.
Concido, -ēre, to cut to	Liceo, -ēre, to be lawful.	Relego, -āre, to read over
pieces.	Liceor, -ēri, to bid for.	Sēdo, -ēre, to allay.
Concido, -ēre, to fall.	Liquo, -āre, to melt.	Sēdeo, -ēre, to sit.
Concēdo, -ēre, to em-	Liqueo, -ēre, to be mani-	Sido, -ēre, to sink.
bar k.	fest.	Sēro, -ēre, to sow.
Conscindo, -ēre, to tear	Liquor, -i, to melt.	Sēro, -ēre, to entwine.
to pieces.	Māno, -āre, to flow.	Succido, -ēre, to fall un-
Consterno, -āre, to terrify.	Māneo, -ēre, to stay	der.
Consternuo, -ēre, to strew	Mando, -āre, to command	Succido, -ēre, to cut down
over.	Mando, -ēre, to eat.	Vādo, -ēre, to go.
Decido, -ēre, to fall down.	Mēto, -ēre, to reap.	Vādor, -āri, to bind over
Decido, -ēre, to cut off.	Mētor, -āri, to measure.	by bail.
Decipio, -ēre, to deceive.	Mētor, -iri, to measure.	Vēneo, -ire, to be sold.
Destipio, -ēre, to dote.	Mētuo, -ēre, to fear.	Vēnio, -ire, to come.
Delligo, -āre, to tie up.	Miseror, -āri, to pity.	Vēnor, -āri, to hunt.
Delligo, -ēre, to choose	Misereor, -ēri, to pity.	Vincio, -ire, to bind.
Diligo, -ēre, to love.	Mōror, -āri, to delay.	Vinco, -ēre, to conquer.
Dico, -ēre, to say.	Mōrior, -i, to die.	Vōlo, -āre, to fly.
Dico, -āre, to dedicate.	Niteo, -ēre, to glitter.	Vōlo, velle, to be wil'ng.

## 2. Different verbs have sometimes the same perfect ; as,

Aceo, acui, <i>to be sour.</i>	Fulcio, fulsi, <i>to prop.</i>	Páveo, pávi, <i>to fear.</i>
Acuo, acui, <i>to sharpen.</i>	Lūceo, luxi, <i>to shine.</i>	Pasco, pávi, <i>to feed.</i>
Cresco, crēvi, <i>to grow.</i>	Lūgeo, luxi, <i>to mourn.</i>	Pendeo, pépendi, <i>to hang</i>
Cerno, crēvi, <i>to decree.</i>	Mulceo, mulsi, <i>to soothe.</i>	Pendo, pépendi, <i>to weigh</i>
Fulgeo, fulsi, <i>to shine.</i>	Mulgeo, mulsi, <i>to milk.</i>	

To these add some of the compounds of *sto* and *sisto*.

## 3 Different verbs have sometimes, also, the same supine or perfect participle ; as,

Frico, frictum, <i>to rub.</i>	Pango, pactum, <i>to drive</i>	Pätior, passus, <i>to suffer.</i>
Frigo, frictum, <i>to roast.</i>	in.	Tëneo, tentum, <i>to hold.</i>
Māneo, mansum, <i>to remain.</i>	Paciscor, pactus, <i>to bargain.</i>	Tendo, tentum, <i>to stretch.</i>
Mando, mansum, <i>to chew.</i>	Pando, passum, <i>to extend.</i>	Verro, versum, <i>to break.</i>
		Verto, versum, <i>to turn.</i>

## DERIVATION OF VERBS.

§ 187. Verbs are derived either from nouns, from adjectives, or from other verbs.

I. Verbs derived from nouns or adjectives are called *denominatives*.

1. (a.) Active denominatives are generally of the first conjugation ; those which are neuter, of the second. They are usually formed by adding respectively *o* and *eo* to the root ; as,

### FROM NOUNS.

#### Actives.

Armo, *to arm*, (arma.)  
 Fraudo, *to defraud*, (fraus.)  
 Nomino, *to name*, (nomen.)  
 Numëro, *to number*, (numërus.)

#### Neuters.

Flōreo, *to bloom*, (flos.)  
 Frondeo, *to produce leaves*, (frons.)  
 Lūceo, *to shine*, (lux.)  
 Vireo, *to flourish*, (vis.)

### FROM ADJECTIVES.

Albo, *to whiten*, (albus.)  
 Celebro, *to frequent*, (celëber.)  
 Libëro, *to free*, (libër.)

Albeo, *to be white*, (albus.)  
 Calveo, *to be bald*, (calvus.)  
 Flāveo, *to be yellow*, (flāvus.)

(b.) Sometimes a preposition is prefixed in forming the derivative ; as,

Coacervo, *to heap together*, (acervus.)      Exstirpo, *to extirpate*, (stirps.)  
 Excāvo, *to excavate*, (cāvus.)      Illāqueo, *to insnare*, (lāqueus.)

2. Many deponents of the first conjugation, derived from nouns, express the exercise of the character, office, etc., denoted by the primitive ; as, *architector*, *to build* ; *comitor*, *to accompany* ; *fūror*, *to steal* ; from *architectus*, *comes*, and *fūr*.

3. Such as denote resemblance or imitation are called *imitatives* ; as, *cornitor*, *to imitate a crow*, from *cornix* ; *Græcor*, *to imitate the Greeks*. Some of these end in *iso* ; as, *patriasso*, *to imitate a father*.

II. Verbs derived from other verbs are either *frequentatives*, *inseptives*, *desideratives*, *diminutives*, or *intensives*.



1. *Frequentatives* express a repetition, or an increase of the action expressed by the primitive.

(a.) They are all of the first conjugation, and are formed by adding *o* to the third root; as, *dōmo*, (*dōmīt-*) *dōmīto*. So *adjūeo*, *adjūto*, *dico*, *dicto*; *gēro*, *gesto*. In verbs of the first conjugation, *āt* of the root is often changed into *ū*; as, *clāmo*, to cry, (*clamāt-*) *clamīto*, to cry frequently.

(b.) A few frequentatives are formed by adding *ī-* to the first root of the primitive; as, *āgo* (*āg-*) *āgīto*. So *lāteo*, *lālīto*; *nosco*, *noīto*; *quæro*, *quæīto*.

(c.) Frequentatives, from primitives of the second, third, and fourth conjugations, sometimes serve again as primitives, from which new frequentatives are formed; as, *dico*, *dicto*, *dictīto*; *curro*, *curso*, *curīto*; *venio*, *vento*, *venīto*. Sometimes the second or intermediate form is not in use.

(d.) Some frequentatives are deponent; as, *minitor*, from *minor* (*mināt-*); *versor*, from *verto* (*vers-*). So *amplexor*, *sector*, *loquitor*, from *amplector*, *sequor*, and *loquor*.

(e.) When verbs of this class express simply an increase of the action denoted by the primitive, they are, by some grammarians, called *intensives*.

2. *Inceptives*, or *inchoatives* mark the beginning of the action or state expressed by the primitive.

(a.) They all end in *sco*, and are formed by adding that termination to the root of the primitive, with its connecting vowel, which, in the third conjugation, is *i*; as, *cāleo*, to be hot; *cālesco*, to grow hot.

So *lābo*, (*āre*), *lābasco*; *ingēmo*, (*ēre*), *ingēmisco*; *obdormio*, (*ire*), *obdormisco*. *Hisco* is contracted for *hiasco*, from *hio*, (*āre*).

(b.) Most inceptives are formed from verbs of the second conjugation.

(c.) Some inceptives are formed from nouns and adjectives by adding *asco* or *esco* to the root; as, *puērasco*, from *puer*; *jūvenēscō*, from *jūvenis*.

NOTE. Inceptives are all neuter, and of the third conjugation. See § 178.

Some verbs in *sco*, which are not inceptives, are active; as, *disco*, *posco*.

3. *Desideratives* express a desire of doing the act denoted by the primitive.

(a.) They are formed from the third root, by adding *ūrio*; as, *cæno*, to sup, (*cænāt-*) *cænātūrio*, to desire to sup.

(b.) Desideratives are all of the fourth conjugation. See § 176, Note.

(c.) Verbs in *ūrio*, having *u* long, are not desideratives; as, *prūrio*, *līgūrio*.

4. *Diminutives* denote a feeble or trifling action. They are formed by adding *illo* to the root of the primitive; as, *conscribīllc*, to scribble, from *conscribo*.

They are few in number, and are all of the first conjugation.

5. *Intensives* denote eager action. They are usually formed by adding *so*, *esso*, or *isso* to the root of the primitive; as, *fācesso*, to act earnestly—from *fācio*.

So *cāpesso*, *incesso*, from *cāpio* and *incēdo*. *Uncūpisco*, to desire greatly, though in form an inceptive, is in its signification, an intensive.

NOTE. Verbs of all these classes have sometimes simply the meaning of their primitives.

## COMPOSITION OF VERBS.

## § 188. Verbs are compounded variously:—

1. Of a noun and a verb; as, *ælifício, belligêro, lucrifácio*. See § 103, R. 1.
2. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *amplifício, multiplico*.
3. Of two verbs; as, *calfácio, mudéfácio, putéfácio*.

REM. In verbs of this class, the first part, which is a verb of the second conjugation, loses its final *o*; the second part is always the verb *fácio*.

4. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *benéfácio, maledico, sātāgo, nōlo, negligo*.
5. Of a preposition and a verb; as, *addūco, excolo, prōdo, subrepto, discerno sejungo*.
6. Of a preposition and a noun, as, *pernocto, irrētio*.

§ 189. In composition with particles, the vowels *a* and *e* and the diphthong *æ* in the radical syllable of the simple verb are often changed in the compound.

1. The following simple verbs in composition change *a* into *e*:—

Arceo,	Carpo,	Farcio,	Jacto,	Pārio,	Patro,	Spargo.
Candeo,	Dainno,	Fāiscor,	Lacto,	Partio,	Sacro,	Tracto.
Capto,	Fallo,	Grādior,	Mando,	Pātiar,	Scando,	

Exc. *A* is retained in *amando, præmando, desacro, and retracto*; *prædammo*, and *pertracto* sometimes also occur. *A* is also changed into *e* in *occenſo* from *canto*, and *anhelo* from *hālo*; *comperco* also is found.

2. The following, in the first root, change *ā* and *ē* into *ī*; viz.

*āgo, cādo, ēgeo, ēmo, frango, pango, prēmo, rēgo, sēdeo, spēcio, tango*.

3. These change *ā* and *ē*, in the first and second roots, into *ī*; viz.

*sālio, to leap, sāpio, tāceo, and tēneo*.

4. These change *ā* into *ī*, and *æ* into *ī*, in all the roots; viz.

*hābeo, lācio, lāteo, plăceo, stātuo; cædo, lædo, and quæro*.

5. The following change *ā*, in the first root, into *ī*, and in the third root into *e*; viz.

*cāno, cāpio, fāteor, jācio, rāpio, and āpiscor*.

Exc. (a.) *A* is retained in *circumāgo, perāgo, sātāgo; antēhābeo, postābeo, lepango, rēpango, complāceo, and perplāceo*. *Occāno* and *rēcāno* also sometimes occur. *E* is retained in *coēmo, circumſēdeo, and superſēdeo*. *Antēcāpio* and *anſcīpio* are both used; so also are *superjācio* and *superjicio*.

(b.) *Cōgo* and *dēgo* are formed, by contraction, from *con, de, and āgo*; *dēmo, prōmo* and *sūmo*, from *de, pro, sub, and ēmo*; *præbeo*, and perhaps *dēbeo*, from *præ, de, and hābeo*; *pergo* and *surgō*, from *per, sub, and rēgo*.

NOTE 1. *Fācio*, compounded with a preposition, changes *ā* into *ī* in the first root, and into *e* in the third; as, *afficio, affici, afflictum*. Some compounds of *fācio* with nouns and adjectives, change *ā* into *ī*, and also drop *ī* before *o*, and are of the first conjugation; as, *significo, latifico, magnifico*. *Spēcio* follows some compounds in the same manner; as, *conspicor* and *suspicio*.

NOTE 2. *Lēgo*, compounded with *con, de, di, e, inter, nec, a, l se*, changes *ē* into *ī*, in the first root; as, *colligo, negligo*, etc.; but with *ad, præ, per, re, sub, and trans*, it retains *ē*; as, *allēgo*.

NOTE 3. *Calco* and *salto*, in composition, change *a* into *u*; as, *incolco, insulto*. *Plaudo* changes *au* into *ō*; as, *explōdo*; except *applaudo*. *Audio* changes *au* into *ē* in *obādio*. *Caruso, claudio*, and *quittio*, drop *a*; as, *accuso, recūdo, percutio*. *Juro* changes *ā* into *e* in *dējuro* and *pējuro*, but *dējūro*, also, is in use.

NOTE 4. In the compounds of *cæveo*, *mæneo*, and *træho*, *æ* remains unchanged and so also does *æ* in the compounds of *hæreo*.

NOTE 5. The simple verbs with which the following are compounded are not used:—

Défendo,	Impêdio,	Confûto	Instigo,	Conniveo,
Offendo,	Imbuo,	Réfûto,	Impleo,	Percello,
Expêrior,	Compello, (-âre,)	Ingruo,	Compleo,	Induo,
Expêdio,	Appello, (-âre,)	Congruo,	Rênideo,	Exuo,
				and some others.

For the changes produced in prepositions by composition with verbs see § 196.

## PARTICLES.

§ 190. 1. *Particles* are those parts of speech which are neither declined nor conjugated. They are divided into four classes—*adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions*, and *interjections*.

NOTE. A word may sometimes belong to two or more of these classes, according to its connection.

## ADVERBS.

2. An adverb is a particle used to modify or limit the meaning of a verb, an adjective, or another adverb; as,

*Bene et sapienter dixit*, he spoke *well* and *wisely*; *Canis ægrégie fidélis*, a remarkably faithful dog; *Nimis valde laudâre*, to praise *too much*. Compare § 277, R. 1.

3. Adverbs, in regard to their *signification*, are divided into various classes; as, adverbs of *place*, *time*, *manner*, etc., and some belong to either class according to their connection.

4. In regard to their *etymology*, adverbs are either *primitive* or *derivative*.

REMARK. Among primitive adverbs are here classed not only such as cannot be traced to any more remote root, but also all which are not included in the regular classes of derivative adverbs hereafter mentioned.

### PRIMITIVE ADVERBS.

§ 191. The primitive adverbs are few in number, when compared with the derivatives, and most of them are contained in the following lists marked I, II, and III

#### I. Adverbs of Place and Order.

ædeo, so far, as far.	âlicûbi, somewhere.	âliquôversum, towards
adhuc, to this place.	âlicundê, from some place.	
adversûs, } opposite,	place.	âliundê, from another
adversum, } over against.	âliô, to another place.	place.
exadversûs,—um, } towards.	âliquâ, in some way.	circâ, } around.
âliâ, by another way.	âliorsum, towards another	circum, }
âliâs in another place.	er place.	circitèr, on every side.
âlbî elsewhere.	âliquô, to some place.	circumcirâ, all around.

citrā, *on this side*  
 citro, *hither*.  
 contrā, *over against*.  
 eōram, *before*.  
 dehinc, *henceforth*.  
 deinceps, *successively*.  
 deindē, *after that*.  
 deniquē, *finally*.  
 dēnuo, *again*.  
 deorsum, *downward*.  
 dextrorsum, *towards the right*.

ēd, *that way*.  
 eōdem, *the same way*.  
 eō, *to that place, thither*.  
 eōdem, *to the same place*.  
 exindē, *after that*.  
 extrā, *without*.  
 extrinsēcūs, *from without*.  
 fōrās, *out of doors*.  
 fōris, *without*.  
 hāc, *this way*.  
 hactēnūs, *thus far*.  
 hic, *here*.  
 hinc, *hence*.  
 hūc, *hither*.  
 hūcuscquē, *thus far*.  
 horsum, *hitherward*.  
 ibi, *there*.  
 ibidem, *in the same place*.  
 illāc, *that way*.  
 illuc, *there*.  
 illinc, *thence*.  
 illō, *thither*.  
 illorsum, *thitherward*.  
 illūc, *thither*.  
 indē, *thence*.  
 indidem, *from the same place*.

infrā, *below, beneath*.  
 Inibi, *in that place*.  
 intrinsēcūs, *from within*.  
 intrā, intro, } *within*.  
 introrsum, }  
 intūs, }  
 istāc, *that way*.  
 istuc, *there*.  
 istinc, *thence*.  
 istō, istūc, *thither*.  
 juxtā, *near, alike*.  
 necūbi, *lest any where*.  
 neutro, *to neither side*.  
 neutrūbi, *to neither place, to neither side*.  
 nullibi, } *no where*.  
 nusquam, }  
 pēnitūs, *within*.  
 pōnē, post, *behind, back*.  
 porro, *onward*.  
 prōcūl, *far*.  
 prōpē, proptēr, *near*.  
 prorsum, *forward*.  
 prōtinūs, *onward*.  
 quā? *in which way?*  
 quāquā, } *what way*  
 quācumquē, } *soever*.  
 quāquē, *wheresoever*.  
 quālibēt, } *in every way*.  
 quāvis, }  
 quō? *whither?*  
 quōād, } *how far*.  
 quousquē, }  
 quōpiam, } *to some place*.  
 quōquam, }  
 quōquō, } *whither*.  
 quōcumquē, } *soever*.  
 quōquōversūs, *toward every side*.

quorsum? *whitherward?*  
 quōvis, } *to every place*.  
 quōlibēt }  
 retro, } *backward*.  
 retrorsum, } *back*.  
 rursum, }  
 sicutibi, *if any where*.  
 sicundē, *if from any place*.  
 sinistrorsum, *towards the left*.  
 subtēr, *beneath*.  
 supēr, suprā, *above, on top*.  
 sursum, *upward*.  
 tum, then, *in the next place*.  
 tūi? *where?*  
 ubicumquē, } *wherever*,  
 ubiūbi, } *wheresoever*.  
 ubilibēt, }  
 ubique, } *any where*.  
 ubivis, } *every where*.  
 ultrā, ultro, *beyond*.  
 unde? *whence?*  
 undēlibēt, } *from every*  
 undēvis, } *where*.  
 undiquē, }  
 undeundē, } *whence*.  
 undēcumquē, } *soever*.  
 uspiam, } *somewhere*.  
 usquam, } *any where*.  
 usquē, *all the way*.  
 usquēquāquē, *in all ways*.  
 utrimquē, *on both sides*.  
 utrō? *which way?*  
 utrōbi? *in which place?*  
 utrōbiquē, *in both places*.  
 utrōquē, *to both sides*.  
 utrōquēversum, *toward both sides*.

REMARK 1. (a.) The interrogative adverbs of place, *ubi?* where? *undē?* whence? *quō?* whither? and *quā?* in what way? have relation to other adverbs formed in a similar manner, thus constituting a system of *adverbial correlatives* similar to that of the pronominal adjectives. See § 139, 5, (8.)

(b.) As in the case of the pronominal correlatives, the *interrogative* and *relative* forms are alike, beginning with *u* or *qu*. The *demonstratives* are formed from *is*, which is strengthened by *dem*, and the *indefinite* from *aliquis*. The *general relatives* and the *general indefinites* or *universals*, like those of the pronominal adjectives, are made, the former by doubling the simple relatives or by appending to them the termination *cumquē*, 'soever,' and the latter by adding *quē, vis, or libēt*. Thus:

Interrog.	Demonstr.	Relat.	Gen. Relat.	Indefin.	Gen. Indefin.
ūbi?	ibi, ibidem,	ūbi,	ūbiūbi, ūbicumquē,	āllcūbi,	ūbiquē, ūbivis, ūbilibēt.
undē?	indē, indidem,	undē,	undeundē, undēcumquē,	āllcundē,	undiquē, undēvis, undēlibēt.
quō?	eō, eōdem,	quō,	quōquō, quōcumquē,	āllquō,	quōvis, quōlibēt.
quā?	eā, eādem.	quā.	quāquā, quācumquē.	āllquā.	quāvis, quālibēt.

(c.) To those answering *o ubi?* may be added *ibi*, *nullibi*, and *inibi*, the latter being a strengthened form of *ibi*. In like manner *aliunde*, *utrimque*, *intrinsicus*, and *extrinsicus* may be added to those answering to *unde?* and *alibi* to those answering to *quò?* So also to *utro?* answer *utroque* and *neutro*.

(d.) The demonstratives *ibi*, *indè*, and *eò* are used only in reference to relative sentences which precede; but more definite demonstratives are formed from the pronouns *hic*, *iste*, and *ille*, answering in like manner to *ubi?* *unde?* and *quò?* These together with the preceding correlatives are, in the following table, arranged respectively under their several interrogatives *ubi?* *unde?* *quò?* *quid?* and *quorsum?*—Thus :

<i>ubi?</i>	<i>undè?</i>	<i>quò?</i>	<i>quā?</i>	<i>quorsum?</i>
<i>hic</i> ,	<i>hinc</i> ,	<i>hūc</i> ,	<i>hāc</i> ,	<i>horsum</i> ,
<i>istic</i> ,	<i>istinc</i> ,	<i>istūc</i> ,	<i>istāc</i> ,	<i>istorsum</i> ,
<i>illic</i> ,	<i>illinc</i> ,	<i>illūc</i> ,	<i>illāc</i> ,	<i>illorsum</i> ,
<i>ibi</i> ,	<i>indè</i> ,	<i>eò</i> ,	<i>eā</i> ,	_____
<i>ibidem</i> ,	<i>indidem</i> ,	<i>eodem</i> ,	<i>eādem</i> ,	_____
<i>alibi</i> ,	<i>aliundè</i> ,	<i>aliò</i> ,	<i>aliā</i> ,	<i>aliorsum</i> ,
<i>alicubi</i> .	<i>alicundè</i> .	<i>aliquò</i> .	<i>aliquā</i> .	<i>aliquoversum</i> .

(e.) *Hic*, *hinc*, *hūc*, refer to the place of the speaker: *istic*, *istinc*, *istūc*, to the place of the second person or person addressed; and *illic*, *illinc*, *illūc*, to that of the third person or the person or thing spoken of. Cf. § 207, R. 23, (a.) and (d.)

(f.) The interrogative adverbs *ubi*, *unde*, *quò*, *quā*, etc. are often used without a question, simply as adverbs of place; as, *In eam partem iuros, atque ibi futuros Helvetios, ubi eos Cæsar constituisset.*

(g.) In consequence of a transfer of their meaning, some of the adverbs of place, as, *hic*, *ibi*, *ulr*, *hinc*, *indè*, *hactenus*, etc., become also adverbs of time, and some of them are used also as conjunctions.

## II. Adverbs of Time.

*actūtum*, immediately.  
*abhinc*, from this time.  
*adeò*, so long (as).  
*adhūc*, until now, still.  
*aliās*, at another time.  
*aliquamdū*, for awhile.  
*aliquandō*, at some time.  
*aliquoties*, several times.  
*antè*, before.  
*antèā*, previously.  
*antehāc*, formerly.  
*bis*, twice. (see § 119).  
*circitèr*, about, near.  
*crās*, tomorrow.  
*cum* or *quum*, when.  
*deinceps*, in succession.  
*inde* or *in*, thereupon.  
*exinde* or *exin*, afterward.  
*déhinc*, from this time.  
*démum*, at length.  
*dénique*, lastly.  
*dū*, long.  
*dūdum*, previously.  
*ousquè*, so long.  
*hèrè* or *hèr*, yesterday.  
*hic*, here, hereupon.  
*hinc*, from this time, since.  
*adidè*, to-day.  
*bi*, then, thereupon.  
*lentidem*, now and then, repeatedly.

*illicò*, immediately.  
*indè*, after that, then.  
*interdum*, sometimes.  
*intèrim*, meanwhile.  
*Itèrum*, again.  
*jam*, now, already.  
*jamdiū*, long ago.  
*jamdūdum*, long ago.  
*jamjam*, presently.  
*jampridem*, long since.  
*mòdo*, just now.  
*mox*, soon after.  
*nondum*, not yet.  
*nonnumquam*, sometimes.  
*nūdius tertius*, three days ago.  
*nunc*, now.  
*numquam*, never.  
*nūpèr*, lately.  
*olim*, formerly.  
*pàrumpèr*, for a short time.  
*paulisper*, time.  
*pendiè*, two days hence.  
*porro*, hereafter, in future.  
*post*, *postea*, afterwards.  
*posthāc*, hereafter.  
*postridiè*, the day after.  
*pridem*, long since.  
*pridiè*, the day before.  
*pròtinus*, instantly.

*quamdū?* how long?  
*quandō?* when?  
*quandocumquè*, whenever.  
*quandocūq*, at some time.  
*quātèr*, four times.  
*quoad?*  
*quousquè?* how long?  
*quondam*, formerly.  
*quòtidè*, daily.  
*quòtiès?* how often?  
*quum* or *cum*, when.  
*rursus*, again.  
*sæpè*, often.  
*semel*, once.  
*sempèr*, always.  
*statim*, immediately.  
*sūbindè*, immediately, now and then.  
*tamdū*, so long.  
*tandem*, at length.  
*tantisper*, for so long.  
*tèr*, thrice.  
*tòtiès*, so often.  
*tum*, tunc, then.  
*ubi*, when, as soon as.  
*umquam*, ever.  
*usquè*, until, ever.  
*ut* or *ut*, as, as soon as when.

## III Adverbs of Manner, Quality, Degree, etc.,

adeo, so, to that degree.  
 a modum, very much.  
 aliter, otherwise.  
 ac, as, like as.  
 cur? why?  
 duntaxat, only, at least.  
 etiam, also, truly, yes.  
 etiamnunc, { also, besides.  
 etiamtunc, {  
 fere, { almost, nearly.  
 formo, {  
 fortasse, perhaps.  
 frustra, in vain.  
 gratis, freely.  
 haud, not.  
 haudquamquam, by no means.  
 hucusque, so far.  
 identidem, constantly.  
 immo, nay, on the contrary.  
 ita, so.  
 item, just so, also.  
 itidem, in like manner.  
 iuxta, equally, alike.  
 magis, more.  
 modo, only.  
 ne or ne, truly, verily.  
 ne, not.  
 nedum, much less.  
 nempè, truly, forsooth.  
 nequaquam, { by no means  
 neutquam, {  
 nimis, certainly, to be sure.

nimis, { too much.  
 nimium, {  
 non, not.  
 omnino, altogether, only.  
 paene, almost.  
 palam, openly.  
 pariter, equally.  
 parum, too little.  
 paulatim, by degrees.  
 penitus, wholly.  
 perinde, { just as,  
 proinde, { as though.  
 perquam, very much.  
 plerumque, for the most part, commonly.  
 potius, rather.  
 porro, moreover, then.  
 præter, beyond, except.  
 præsertim, particularly.  
 profecto, truly.  
 prope, almost, near.  
 proximèdum, almost.  
 prorsus, wholly.  
 quam, how much, as.  
 quamobrem, wherefore.  
 quare? why? wherefore?  
 quasi, as if, as it were.  
 quemadmodum, as.  
 quidem, { indeed.  
 equidem, {  
 quomodo? how? in what manner?  
 quodque, also.  
 rite, duly.  
 saltem, at least.

sane, truly.  
 sat, { enough  
 satis, {  
 satius, rather.  
 scilicet, truly, to wit.  
 si cūs, otherwise.  
 seorsim, { separately.  
 seorsus, {  
 sic, so.  
 sicut, { so as, as.  
 sicūt, {  
 simul, together.  
 singillatim, one by one  
 solum, only, alone.  
 tam, so, so much.  
 tamquam, like, as if.  
 tantopere, so greatly.  
 tantum, so much, only.  
 tantummodò, only.  
 temere, at random.  
 unā, together.  
 usquequaque, in all points in all ways.  
 ut, { as.  
 uti, {  
 utique, at any rate, certainly.  
 utpote, as, inasmuch as.  
 valde, very much.  
 vel, even.  
 velut, { as, like as, for  
 velti, { example.  
 vicissim, in turn, again.  
 videlicet, clearly, to wit.  
 vix, scarcely.

REM. 2. Adverbs denoting quality, manner, etc., are sometimes divided into those of, 1. Quality; as, *benè, malè*. 2. Certainty; as, *certè, planè*. 3. Contingence; as, *fortè*. 4. Negation; as, *haud, non, nē, immò*. 5. Affirmation; as, *ne, quidem, utique, nempè*. 6. Swearing; as, *herclè*. 7. Explaining; as, *videlicet, utpote*. 8. Separation; as, *seorsim*. 9. Joining together; as, *simul, unā*. 10. Interrogation; as, *cūr? quare?* 11. Quantity or degree; as, *satis, adeo*. 12. Excess; as, *perquam, maximè*. 13. Defect; as, *parum, penè*. 14. Preference; as, *potius, satius*. 15. Likeness; as, *ita, sic*. 16. Unlikeness; as, *aliter*. 17. Exclusion; as, *tantum, solum*.

REM. 3. *Non* is the ordinary Latin negation. *Haud* signifies either 'not at all,' or 'not exactly.' It is used by the comic and later writers in all combinations, but in the authors of the best age its use is more especially limited to its connection with adjectives and adverbs denoting a measure; as, *haud multum, haud magnum, haud parvus, haud mediocris, haud paulo, haud procul, haud longe*. especially *haud sâne* in connection with other words; as, *haud sâne facile, res haud sâne difficilis, haud sâne intelligo*; also *haud quisquam, haud umquam, haud quidquam*. With verbs *haud* is scarcely used until Livy and Tacitus, except in the common phrase *haud scio an*, which is equivalent to *nescio an*.—*Nē*, (or *ne*) is the primitive Latin negative particle, signifying *no* or *not*. It is used in this sense and as an adverb, (a) with *quidem* to make an emphatic negation of the word standing between them; as, *nē in oppidis quidem*, not even in the towns; (b) in composition as in *nescio, nefus, neuter* etc.; (c) with imperatives and

subjunctives used as imperatives; as, *Nē puēri, nē tanta animi: inuēscite bella* Virg. So, also, in wishes and asseverations; as, *Nē id Jupiter inēret*, may Jupiter forbid it. Liv. *Nē ricam, si scio*, may I die, if I know. Cic.; and in concessive and restrictive clauses; as, *Nē fūrit*, suppose there was not. Cic. *Sint misericordes in iuribus erarit, ne illis sanguinem nostram largiantur*, only let them not, etc. Cic. So *dum ne, dummodo ne, modo ne, dum quidem ne*; and in intential clauses with *ut*.—*Immo*, as a negative, substitutes something stronger in the place of the preceding statement, which is denied; as, *Causa igitur non bona est? Immo optima, sed*, etc. Cic. It may often be translated by 'nay,' or 'may even.'

REM. 4. *Quidem* gives particular emphasis to a word or an idea, and then answers to our 'certainly' or 'indeed,' but frequently, especially with a pronoun, it merely adds emphasis. *Equidem*, which is considered as a compound of *ego* and *quidem*, is used exclusively in this sense by Cicero, Virgil, and Horace, but 'y other and particularly by later writers it is used like *quidem*.—*Nempe*, 's' rely,' is often used ironically, when we refute a person by concessions which he is obliged to make, or by deductions. In other connections it may be translated 'namely.'

REM. 5. *Sic, itā, tam*, as also *tantopere*, and *adeo* signify 'so.' *Sic* is more particularly the demonstrative 'so,' or 'thus'; as, *sic se res habet*. *Ita* defines or limits more accurately, and is equivalent to our 'in such a manner,' or 'only in so far'; as, *ita defendito, ut neminem ledas*. Frequently, however, *ita* has the signification of *sic*, but *sic* has not the limiting sense of *ita*.—*Tam*, 'so much,' generally stands before adjectives and adverbs, and increases the degree; before vowels *tantopere* is generally used instead of *tam*.—*Adeo*, 'to that degree' or 'point,' increases the expression to a certain end or result. Hence it forms the transition to the conclusion of an argument or to the essential part of a thing; and Cicero employs it to introduce the proofs of what he has previously alleged; as, *Id adeo ex ipso senatus consulto cognoscite*, and always in such case puts *adeo* after a pronoun.

REM. 6. *Unquam*, 'ever,' and *usquam*, 'somewhere,' like *quisquam*, require a negation in the sentence, and thus become equivalent to *nunquam* and *nusquam*. A negative question, however, may supply the place of a negative proposition; as, *nun tu cum unquam vidisti?*—*Uspiam*, like *quispiam*, is not negative, but is the same as *alicubi*, but strengthened, just as *quispiam* is the same as *aliquis*. So, also, *quopiam* is used affirmatively, and *quoquam* negatively.—*Iam*, with a negative, answers to our 'longer'; as, *Nihil iam spero*, I no longer hope for any thing. When used to connect sentences it signifies 'further,' or 'now.'—*Usque* is commonly accompanied by the prepositions *ad, in, ab, or ex*. It rarely signifies 'ever and anon'; as, *Notarum expellis furcā, tamen usque recurret*. Hor.—*Nuper, modo*, and *mox* are relative and in definite.—*Dūdum*, 'previously,' or 'before,' in relation to a time which has just passed away, may often be translated 'just before.'—*Iamdūdum* signifies 'long before,' or 'long since.' With the poets *jamdūdum* contains the idea of impatience, and signifies 'without delay,' 'forthwith'; as, *Jamdūdum sumite penas*. Virg.—*Tandem*, 'at length,' also expresses the impatience with which a question is put.

REM. 7. *Tunc* is 'then,' 'at that time,' in opposition to *nunc*. 'now': *Tum* is 'then,' as the correlative of *quum*, 'when'; as, *quum omnes adessent, tum ille exorsus est dicere*, when all were present, then he began to speak. Without a relative sentence *tum* signifies 'hereupon,' or 'thereupon'; but a relative sentence may always be supplied. The same difference exists between *etiam nunc* and *etiam tum*, 'still,' or 'yet'; and between *nunc ipsum* and *tum ipsum*; *quummaxime* and *tummaxime*, 'just,' or 'even then'; for *etiam nunc, nunc ipsum* and *quum maxime* refer to the present; but *etiam tum, tum ipsum*, and *tum maxime*, to the past.

## DERIVATION OF ADVERBS.

§ 192. Adverbs are derived from nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and participles.

## I. From Nouns.

1. Of these a few end in *im* (generally *ātim*), and denote manner as,

*grēgātīm*, in herds; *membrātīm*, limb by limb; *vicissātīm*, or more frequently *vicissim*, by turns; from *grex*, *membrum*, and *vicis*.

2. Some end in *itus*, and denote origin or manner; as,

*cœlitus*, from heaven; *funditus*, from the bottom; *rādicitus*, by the roots; from *cœlum*, *fundus*, and *rādix*.

3. Some are merely the different cases of nouns used adverbially; as,

(a.) Some adverbs of time; as, *mānē*, *noctū*, *dīū*, *tempōrē* or *tempōri*, *iniūdiō*, *principiō*, *mōdo*.—(b.) Adverbs of place; as, *fōris*, *fōrās*.—(c.) Adverbs of manner; as, *spontē*, *fortē*, *grātis* or *grātūis*, *ingrātūis*, *vulgō*, *partim*.

## II. From Adjectives and Participles.

By far the greater number of derivative adverbs come from adjectives and participles (present and perfect), and end in *ē* and *tēr*.

1. Adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the second declension, are formed by adding *ē* to the root; as,

*ægrē*, scarcely; *altē*, high; *libērē*, freely; *longē*, far; *misērē*, miserably; *plēnē*, fully; *doctē*, learnedly; *ornātē*, elegantly; from *ægēr*, *altus*, *libēr*, *longus*, *misēr*, *plēnus*, *doctus*, and *ornātus*. *Bēnē*, well, is from *bōnus*, or an older form *bēnus*.

REMARK. A few adverbs in *e* differ in meaning from their adjectives; as, *sānē*, certainly; *valdē*, very; from *sānus*, sound, well; and *validus*, strong.

Exc. 1. A few adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the second declension, add *itēr*, *itūs*, *im*, or *ātim* to the root; as,

*nāvitēr*, actively; *antiquitūs*, anciently; *divinitūs*, divinely; *privatim*, privately; *tuatim*, after your manner; *singulatim*, *singillatim*, or *singulim*, severally; *cæsim*, *carptim*, *sensim*, *statim*, etc. from *nāvus*, *antiquus*, *divinus*, *privatus*, *tuus*, *singuli*, *cæsus*, *carptus*, etc.

Exc. 2. Some adverbs are formed with two or more of the above terminations with the same meaning; as, *dūrē*, *duritēr*; *firmē*, *firmitēr*; *nāvē*, *nāvitēr*; *burgē*, *largitēr*; *luculentē*, *luculentitēr*; *turbulentē*, *turbulentitēr*: so *cautē* and *cautim*; *hūmānē*, *hūmānitēr*; and *hūmānitūs*; *publicē* and *publicitūs*.

2. Adverbs derived from adjectives and participles of the third declension, are formed by adding *itēr* to the root, except when it ends in *t*, in which case *ēr* only is added; as.

*acutitēr*, sharply; *fēlicititēr*, happily; *turpiter*, basely;—*ēlegantitēr*, elegantly; *prudentitēr*, prudently; *āmantitēr*, lovingly; *propērantitēr*, hastily; from *acer*, *fēlix*, *turpis*, *ēlegans*, *prudens*, *āmans*, and *propērans*. So also from the obsolete *āctus*, and *propit*, (neuter *propē*), come *acutēr* and *propitēr* for *propititēr*.

Exc. From *audax* comes by syncope *audactitēr*; from *fortis* comes *fortititēr* from *omnis*, *omnino*; from *uber*, *ubertim*; and from *nēquam*, *nēquititēr*.



3. From the cardinal numerals are formed numeral adverbs in *ies*; as,

*quinqüies*, *décies*, from *quinqüē* and *dēcem*. So *toties* and *quoties*, from *tōt* and *quōt*. See § 119.

4. Some adverbs are merely certain cases of adjectives. Such are,

(a.) Ablatives in *ō*, from adjectives and participles of the second declension; as, *citō*, quickly; *continū*, immediately; *falsō*, falsely; *crēbrō*, frequently; *mēritō*, deservedly; *nēcōpinātō*, unexpectedly; *fortuitō*, by chance; *auspiciātō*, auspiciously; *omnibō*, designedly; and a few in *ā* from adjectives of the first declension; as, *rectā*, straight on; *ūnā*, together. In like manner, *rēpēntē*, suddenly, from *rēpens*; and *pēregre* or *pēregri*, from *pēreger*.

(b.) Nominatives or accusatives of the third declension in the neuter singular; as, *facilē*, *difficilē*, *rēvens*, *sublimē*, and *impūnē*; and some also of the second declension; as, *cēterum*, *plērumquē*, *multum*, *plūrimum*, *pōtissimum*, *primum*, *minimū*, *pārum*, and the numeral adverbs, *primum*, *itērum*, *tertium*, *quartum*, etc. which have also the termination in *ō*, and so also *postrēmum* (*ō*), and *ultimum* (*ō*). The neuter plural sometimes occurs also, especially in poetry; as, *multā gēnere*; *tristiā ululāre*; *crēbrā ferire*.

(c.) Accusatives of the first declension; as, *bifariam*, *trifarium*, *multifariam*, *omnifariam*, etc. scil. *partem*.

NOTE 1. The forms in *ē* and *ō* from adjectives of the second declension have generally the same meaning, but *rērē* and *vērō* have a somewhat different sense. *Vērē*, truly, is the regular adverb of *vērūs*, true; but *vērō* is used in answers, in the sense of 'in truth,' or 'certainly.' In this use it is added to the verb used in the question; as, *adfuistiñ hēri in convivio?* The affirmative answer is *ego vērō adfui*, or without the verb, *ego vērō*, and negatively, *minime vērō*; and as *vērō* thus merely indicates a reply, it is often untranslatable into English.—*Certō*, on the other hand, usually takes the meaning of the adjective *certus*, while *certē* often signifies 'at least'; as, *victi sumus, aut, si dignitas vinci non pōtest, fracti certē*; but *certē* is frequently used in the sense of 'certainly,' especially in the phrase *certē scio*.

NOTE 2. Some adjectives, from the nature of their signification, have no corresponding adverbs. Of some others, also, none occur in the classics. Such are *āmens*, *dirūs*, *discors*, *gnārūs*, *rūlis*, *trux*, *imbellis*, *immōbilis*, and similar compounds. In place of the adverbs formed from *vētūs* and *fidūs*, *vētustē* and *antiquē* are used for the former, and *fidelitēr* for the latter, from *vētustūs*, *antiquūs*, and *fidelis*.

III. From the adjective pronouns are derived adverbs of place, etc (See § 191, Rem. 1.)

REMARK. The terminations *ō* and *ūc* denote the place *whither*, instead of the accusative of the pronoun with a preposition; as, *eō* for *ad eum locum*; *hūc* for *ad hunc locum*; the terminations *dē* and *inc* denote the place *from which*; and *ic*, the place *in which*; and *ā* and *āc*, the place *by or through which*; as, *ad*; *viā* or *parte* being understood.

IV (a.) A few adverbs are derived from prepositions; as, *subtūs*, beneath; from *sub*; *prōptēr*, near; from *prōpē*. (b.) *Mundiciūs* and *versūs* are derived from the verbs *mordeo* and *verto*.

REMARK. Diminutives are formed from a few adverbs: as, *clam*, *clancūlū*; *primum*, *primūlū*, *cēlriūs*, *cēlriuscūlē*; *sēpiūs*, *sēpiuscūlē*; *bēnē*, *bellē*, *beliōsimē*,

## COMPOSITION OF ADVERBS.

## § 193. Adverbs are compounded variously:—

1. Of an adjective and a noun; as, *postridiē, quōtidīē, magnōperē, maximōperē, summōperē, quantōperē, tantōperē, tantummodo, solummodo, multimodis, quōtannis*—of *postērō diē, magnō operē*, etc.
2. Of a pronoun and a noun; as, *hodiē, quārē, quōmodo*—of *hōc diē, quā rē*, etc.
3. Of an adverb and a noun; as, *nūtiūs, sepēnūmērō*—of *nunc diēs*, etc.
4. Of a preposition and a noun; as, *comminūs, ēminūs, illico, obiter, extemplo, sōbriū, postmodo, edoctum, propēdiem*—of *con, e, and minūs*; in and *locis*; etc.
5. Of an adjective and a pronoun; as, *aliōquī* or *aliōquin, cētrōquī* or *cēlēroquin*—of *aliūs* and *qui*, i. e. *aliō quō (modo)*, etc.
6. Of a pronoun and an adverb; as, *aliquandīū, ālcūbi*—of *āliquis, diū, and ubi*; *nēquāquam* and *nēquicquam*—of *nē* and *quisquam*.
7. Of two verbs; as, *ilicet, scilicet, videlicet*—of *irē, scire, vidērē, and licet*.
8. Of an adverb and a verb; as, *quōlibet, ubivis, undelibet*. So *deinceps*—from *dein* and *cāpio*; *duntaxat*—from *dum* and *taxo*.
9. Of a participle with various parts of speech; as, *deorsum, dextrorsum, horcum, retrorsum, sursum*—of *dē, dextēr, hic, retro, supēr, and vorsus* or *versus*.
10. Of two adverbs; as, *jamdūdum, quamdiū, tamdiū, cummaximē, tummaximē quousquē, sicut*.
11. Of a preposition and an adjective; as, *dēnuo, imprimis, cumprimis, ap-primē, incassum*—of *dē novō, in primis*, etc.
12. Of a preposition and a pronoun; as, *quapropter, postea, intēreā, praterē, hactenūs, quātēnūs, aliquātēnūs, eātēnūs*—of *proptēr quē, post ea* or *eam*, etc.
13. Of a preposition and an adverb; as, *abhinc, adhuc, dērepentē, intēribi, interdiū, interdum, persēpē*.
14. Of two or three prepositions; as, *insupēr, prōtinūs, indē, dein, deinde, pērinde*.
15. Of a conjunction and an adverb; as, *nēcūbi, sicūbi*—of *nē, si, and ālcūbi*.
16. Of an adverb and a termination scarcely used except in composition as, *ibidem, pārupēr, quāndocumquē, ubiquē, utcumquē*.
17. Of three different parts of speech; as, *forstūn*—of *fors, sit, an, quomāmodum, quāmobrem*, etc.
18. Of an adverb and an adjective; as, *nimirum, ulpōtē*.
19. Of an adjective and a verb; as, *quantumvis, quantumlibet*.

## Signification of certain Compound and Derivative Adverbs.

1. The adverbs *continuo, prōtinus, statim, confestim, subito, repente* and *dērepente, actūm, illico, extemplo*, signify in general 'directly' or 'immediately'; but, strictly, *continuo* means, 'immediately after'; *statim*, 'without delay'; *confestim*, 'directly'; *subito*, 'suddenly, unexpectedly'; *prōtinus*, 'farther,' viz. in the same direction, and hence, 'without interruption'; *repente* and *dērepente*, 'at once,' opposed to *sensim*, 'gradually,' (see Cic. Off. 1. 83); *actūm*, 'instantaneously,' i. q. *eōdem actū*; *illico*, and more rarely *ilicet*, 'forthwith, the instant,' (Virg. Æn. 2, 424, Cic. Mur. 10); so also *extemplo*, (Liv. 41, 1).
2. *Præsertim, præcipue, imprimis, cumprimis, apprime*, are generally translated 'principally,' but, properly, *præsertim* is 'particularly,' and sets forth a particular circumstance with emphasis; *præcipue*, from *præcipio*, has reference to privilege, and signifies 'especially'; *imprimis* and *cumprimis*, signify 'principally,' or 'in preference to others'; and *apprime*, 'before all,' 'very,' is used

In pure Latin to qualify and strengthen only adjectives. *Admodum* properly signifies 'according to measure,' that is, 'in as great a measure as can be,' 'very, exceedingly.' With numerals it denotes approximation, 'about.' *Admodum nihil* and *admodum nullus* signify 'nothing at all' and 'no one at all.'

3. *Modo* is the usual equivalent for 'only.' *Solum*, 'alone,' 'merely,' points to something higher or greater. *Tantum*, 'only,' 'merely,' intimates that something else was expected. The significations of *solum* and *tantum* are strengthened by *modo*, forming *solummodo* and *tantummodo*. *Solummodo* is not joined with verbs. It also signifies 'at least,' denoting a limitation to a particular point. *Saltem* also signifies 'at least,' but denotes the reduction of a demand to a minimum; as, *Eripe mihi hunc dolorem, aut minue saltem*.

4. *Frustrā* implies a disappointed expectation; as in *frustra suscipere labores*. *Neguequam* denotes the absence of success, as in Hor. Carn. 1, 3, 21. *Incasum*, composed of *in* and *casum*, 'hollow' or 'empty,' signifies 'to no purpose'; as, *tela incasum jacere*.

## COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

§ 194. 1. Adverbs derived from adjectives with the terminations *ē* and *tēr*, and most of those in *o*, are compared like their primitives.

2. The comparative, like the neuter comparative of the adjective, ends in *iūs*; the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing *ūs* into *e*; as,

*dūrē, dūriūs, dūrissimē; facillē, faciliūs, facillimē; acriter, acriūs, acerrimē; rārō, rāriūs, rārissimē; maturē, maturiūs, maturissimē or maturrimē.*

3. Some adverbs have superlatives in *ō* or *um*; as, *meritissimō, plurimum, primō or primum, potissimum*.

4. If the comparison of the adjective is irregular or defective, (see §§ 125, 126), that of the adverb is so likewise; as,

*benē, meliūs, optimē; malē, pejūs, pessimē; parum, minūs, minimē; multum, plūs, plurimum; —, priūs, primō or primum; —, ociūs, occissimē; —, detēriūs, deterrimē; —, potius, potissime or potissimum; meritō, —, meritissimo; satis, satius, —. Magnis, maximē, (from magnus,) has no positive; nup̄r, nuperrimē, has no comparative. Prop̄e, prop̄iūs, proximē; the adjective prop̄ior has no positive in use. The regular adverb in the positive degree from *uber* is wanting, its place being supplied by *ubertim*, but *uberiūs* and *uberimē* are used. So instead of *tristiēr*, *tristē*, the neuter of *tristis*, is used, but the comparative *tristiūs* is regular; and from *socors* only *socordiūs*, the comparative, is in use.*

5. *Diū* and *sepe*, though not derived from adjectives, are yet compared;—*diū, diutiūs, diutissimē; sepe, sepiūs, sepiissimē*. A comparative *temperius*, from *temperī* or *tempōri*, also sometimes occurs. So *seciūs, secius*.

6. Adverbs, like adjectives, are sometimes compared by prefixing *magis* and *maximē*; as, *magis apertē, maximē accommodatē*.

## PREPOSITIONS.

§ 195. 1. A preposition is a particle which expresses the relation between a noun or pronoun and some preceding word.

2. Prepositions express the relations of persons or things, either to one another, or to actions and conditions; as, *amor meus erga te*, my love to thee; *eo ad te*, I go to thee

3. Some prepositions have the noun or pronoun which follows them in the accusative, some, in the ablative, and some, in either the accusative or the ablative.

4. Twenty-six prepositions have an accusative after them:—

<i>ad</i> , to, towards, at, for.	<i>extrā</i> , without, beyond.	<i>post</i> , after, since, behind.
<i>adversūs</i> , } against,	<i>infrā</i> , under, beneath.	<i>præter</i> , past, before,
<i>adversum</i> , } towards.	<i>inter</i> , between, among,	against, beyond, besides.
<i>antē</i> , before.	during.	<i>propē</i> , near by, nigh.
<i>apud</i> , at, with, near, be-	<i>intrā</i> , within.	<i>propter</i> , near, on account
fore, in presence of.	<i>juxtā</i> , near to, next to.	of.
<i>circā</i> , } around, about.	<i>ob</i> , for, on account of,	<i>secundum</i> , after, behind,
<i>circum</i> , }	before.	along, next to, accord-
<i>circiter</i> , about, near.	<i>pēnēs</i> , in the power of,	ing to.
<i>cis</i> , } on this side, within.	with.	<i>suprā</i> , above, over.
<i>citrā</i> , }	<i>pēr</i> , through, throughout,	<i>trans</i> , over, beyond.
<i>contrā</i> , against, opposite.	by, during.	<i>ultrā</i> , beyond.
<i>ergā</i> , towards, opposite.	<i>pōnē</i> , behind.	

5. Eleven prepositions have after them an ablative:—

<i>ā</i> , }	<i>dē</i> , from, down from, af-	<i>præ</i> , before, for, on no-
<i>ab</i> , } from, after, by.	ter, of, concerning.	count of, in comparison
<i>abs</i> , }	<i>ē</i> , } out of, from, of, by,	with.
<i>absquē</i> , without, but for.	<i>ex</i> , } after.	<i>prō</i> , before, for, instead
<i>cōram</i> , before, in pres-	<i>pālam</i> , before, in pres-	of, according to.
ence of.	ence of.	<i>sīnē</i> , without.
<i>cum</i> , with.		<i>tētūs</i> , as far as, up to.

6. Five prepositions take after them sometimes an accusative, and sometimes an ablative:—

<i>clam</i> , without the knowl-	<i>sūb</i> , under, about, near.	<i>sūpēr</i> , above, over; upon
edge of.	<i>subtēr</i> , under, beneath.	concerning.
<i>in</i> , in, on; to, into, against.		

REMARK 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally placed before the noun or pronoun whose relation they express. They sometimes, however, stand after it. Cf. § 279, 10.

REM. 2. *A* is used only before consonants; *ab* before vowels, and frequently before consonants, though rarely before labials: *abs* is obsolete, except in the phrase *abs te*.

*E* is used only before consonants, *ex* before both vowels and consonants.

REM 3. *Versūs*, which follows its noun, (cf. § 235, R. 3), *usquē*, and *exadversūs* (*um*), sometimes take an accusative, *sināl* and *prōcūl*, an ablative, and are then by some called prepositions. *Sēcūs*, with an accusative, occurs in Pliny and Cato.

REM. 4. Many of the prepositions, especially those which denote place, are also used as adverbs. Cf. § 191.

### Signification and Use of certain Prepositions.

REM. 5. (a.) *Ad* denotes direction, and answers to the questions Whither? and Till when? as, *Venio ad te*. *Sophocles ad summam senectutem tragedias fecit*. *Cic*. It also denotes a fixed time; as, *ad hōram*, at the hour; *ad tempus aliquid facere*,—at the right time. But sometimes *ad tempus* denotes 'for a time.' Sometimes, also, *ad* denotes the approach of time; as, *ad lucem*, *ad vespērum*, *ad extrēmum*, towards day-break, etc.; and also the actual arrival of a time: as, *ad prima signa vērīs profectus* at the first sign of Spring.

(b.) In answer to the question Where? *ad* signifies 'near' a place; as, *ad urbem esse*; *ad portas urbis*; *pugna navalis ad Tentidum*. It is used like *in*, 'at,' in such phrases as *ad aedem Bellonæ*, or, without *aedem*, *ad Opis*; *negotium habere ad portum*.—With numerals it may be rendered 'to the amount of' or 'nearly'; as, *ad ducentos*. It is also used like *circa* without any case as, *Occisus ad hominum millibus quatuor*.—The phrase *omnes ad unum* signifies, 'all without exception,' 'every one.'

(c.) *Ad* often denotes an object or purpose, and hence comes its signification of 'in respect to'; as, *homo ad labores belli imptus*. It is also used in figurative relations to denote a model, standard, or object of comparison, where we say 'according to,' or 'in comparison with'; as, *ad modum*, *ad effigiem*, *ad similitudinem*, *ad speciem alicujus rei*; *ad normam*, etc. *ad voluntatem alicujus facere aliquid*. *Ad verbum* signifies, 'word for word'; *nihil ad hanc rem*, 'nothing in comparison with this thing.'

REM. 6. *Apud* expresses nearness to, and was primarily used of persons as *ad* was applied to things. *Apud* also denotes rest, and *ad* direction, motion, etc. Hence it signifies 'with,' both literally and figuratively. With names of places it signifies 'near,' like *ad*; as, *Mile pugnatum est apud Cladium*. But in early writers, *apud* is used for *in*; as, *Augustus apud urbem Nolam extinctus est*,—at Nola.—With *me*, *te*, *se*, or the name of a person, it signifies 'at the house' or 'dwelling of'; as, *Fuisti apud Læcam illa nocte*.—Before appellatives of persons having authority in regard to any matter, it is translated 'before,' 'in the presence of'; as, *apud judices*, *apud prætorem*, *apud populum*.—It is also used with names of authors, instead of *in* with the name of their works; as, *Apud Xenophontem*, but we cannot say *in Xenophonte*.

REM. 7. *Adversus*, *contra*, and *erga* signify 'opposite to.' *Contra* denotes hostility, like our 'against'; *erga*, a friendly and figuratively. 'towards'; and *adversus* is used in either sense. But *erga* sometimes occurs in a hostile sense.

REM. 8. *Intra* signifies 'within,' in regard both to time and place. In regard to place it is used in answer to both questions Where? and Whither? It denotes time either as an entire period, when it is equivalent to 'during,' or as unfinished, when it corresponds with 'under,' or 'before the expiration of.'

REM. 9. *Për*, denoting place, signifies, 'through,' and also 'in,' in the sense of 'throughout.'—With the accusative of persons it signifies 'through,' 'by the instrumentality of.' It often expresses the manner; as, *për literas*, by letter; *për injuriam*, *për scelus*, with injustice, criminally; *për iram*, from or in anger; *për simulationem*, *për speciem*, *për causam*, under the pretext; *për occasionem*, on the occasion; *për ridiculum*, in a ridiculous manner.—It sometimes signifies 'on account of'; as, *për valetudinem*, on account of illness.—*Për me* *acet*,—so far as I am concerned.

REM. 10. *A* or *ab*, denoting time, is used with nouns, both abstract and concrete, with the same general meaning; as, *a primâ ætate*, *ab ineunte ætate*, *ab initio ætatis*, *ab infantia*, *a pueritia*, *ab adolescentia*; and, *a puero*, *a pueris*, *ab adolescentulo*, *ab infante*, all of which signify 'from an early age.' So also, *a parvis*, *a parvulo*, *a tenero*, *a teneris ungulâs*, which expressions are of Greek origin.—*Ab initio*, *a principio*, *a primo*, properly denote the space of time from the beginning down to a certain point; as, *Urbem Rômam a principio re-ges habuere*, i. e. for a certain period after its foundation. But frequently *ab initio* is equivalent to *initio*, in the beginning.—The adherents or followers of a school are often named from its head; as, *a Platone*, *ab Aristotèle*, etc.—In comic writers *ab* is sometimes used instead of the genitive; as, *anilla ab Andriâ*.—In a figurative sense it signifies 'with regard to'; as, *ab equitatu firmus*.—With names of persons it also denotes relationship, and signifies 'on the side of'; as, *Augustus a matre Magnum Pompeium artissimo contingebat gradu*,—on his mother's side.—*Stâtim*, *confestim*, *re-cens ab aliquâ re*, 'immediately after.'—*Ab itinere aliquid facere*, to do a thing while on a journey.

REM. 11. *Cum* is used not only to designate accompanying persons but also accompanying circumstances; as, *cum aliquo ire*; *hostes cum detrimento sunt*

*depulsi*. It signifies also 'in,' i. e. 'dressed in'; as, *cum tunicâ pallâ sedere*. With verbs implying hostility, it signifies 'with,' in the sense of 'against'; as, *cum aliquo bellum gerere*; *cum aliquo quæri* to complain of or against.

REM. 12. *Dē* commonly signifies 'concerning,' 'about.' Hence *traditur dē Homēro* is very different from *traditur ab Homēro*; in the former, Homer is the object, in the latter the agent.—In the epistolary style, when a new subject is touched upon, *dē* signifies 'in regard to,' 'as respects'; as, *dē frātē, confide ita esse, ut semper volui*.—It often signifies 'down from'; and also 'cf,' in a partitive sense; as, *hōmō dē plēbe, unus dē populo*.—From its partitive signification arises its use in denoting time; as, *in comitium dē nocte venire*, i. e. even by night, or spending a part of the night in coming; hence *multā dē nocte, mediā dē nocte*, 'in the depth of night,' 'in the middle of the night.'—In other cases, also, it is used for *ex* or *ab*; as, *Aulivi hoc dē parente meo puer*. Cic.; especially in connection with *emere, mercari, conducere*. *Triumphum agere dē Gallis* and *ex Gallis* are used indiscriminately.—Sometimes, like *secundum*, it signifies 'in accordance with,' 'after'; as, *dē consilio meo*:—sometimes it denotes the manner of an action; as, *denuo, dē integro*, afresh; *dē improviso*, unexpectedly; *dē industriā*, purposely:—*quā dē re, quā dē causā, quibus dē causis*, for which reason or reasons.

REM. 13. *Ex*, 'from,' 'out of.' *Ex equo pugnare*, to fight on horseback; so *ex itinere scribere*: *ex adverso*, opposite; *ex omni parte*, in or from all parts.—*Ex vino* or *ex aquā coquere* or *bibere*, i. e. 'with wine,' etc. are medical expressions.—It sometimes denotes manner; as, *ex animo laudare*, to praise heartily; *ex sententiā* and *ex voluntate*, according to one's wish.—It is also, like *dē*, used in a partitive sense; as, *unus ē plēbe, unus ē multis*.

REM. 14. *In*, with the accusative, signifying 'to' or 'into,' denotes the point towards which motion proceeds; as, *in cælem ire*; or the direction in which a thing extends; as, *dēcem pēdes in altitudinem*, in height; so, also, it denotes figuratively the object towards which an action is directed, either with a friendly or a hostile design; as, *amor in patriam, odium in multos civēs, in milites liberālis*; *oratio in aliquem*, a speech against some one.—It also denotes a purpose; as, *pecunia data est in rem militārem*. *Pax data Philippo in has lēges est*, on these conditions.—With words denoting time, it expresses a predetermination of that time, like 'for'; as, *incitare aliquem in postērum diem*, for the following day. *In diem vivere*, to live only for the day; *in futurum, in postērum, in reliquum*, for the future; *in æternum, in perpetuum*, forever; *in præsens*, for the present: with all these adjectives *tempus* may be supplied. *In* with *singulū*, expressed or understood, denotes a distribution, and may be translated 'to,' 'for,' 'on,' 'over.'—*In singulos dies*, or simply *in dies*, with comparatives and verbs denoting increase, signifies 'from day to day.'—In some phrases it denotes the manner of an action; as, *serrilem in modum, mirum in modum*; so *in univēsum*, in general; *in commūne*, in common; *in vicem*, alternately, or, instead of; *in alicujus locum aliquid petere*, in the place, or, instead of.

REM. 15. *In*, with the ablative, signifies 'in,' 'on,' 'upon,' and answers to the question, Where? When a number or quantity is indicated, it signifies 'among,' and is equivalent to *inter*. It may sometimes be translated 'with,' or 'notwithstanding'; as, *In summā copiā oratōrum, nēmo timen Cicerōnis laudem æquārit*.—With nouns which by themselves denote time, such as *seculum, annus, mensis, dies, nox, vesper*, etc., the time, in answer to the question When? is expressed by the simple ablative; but *in* is used with words which acquire the signification of time only by such connection; as, *in consulatū in principio, in bello*; but even with these *in* is sometimes omitted, but is usually retained in connection with the gerund or gerundive; as, *in legendo, in legendis libris*. *In præsentiā*, or *in præsentiā*, signifies 'at the present moment,' 'for the present.'—*Ecce in eo, ut aliquid fiat* signifies that something is or the point of happening.

# PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

§ 196. Most of the prepositions are used also in forming compound words. In composition, they may be considered either in reference to their form, or their force.

I. (a.) Prepositions in composition sometimes retain their final consonants, and sometimes change them, to adapt them to the sound of the initial consonants of the words with which they are compounded. In some words, both forms are in use; in others, the final consonant or consonants are omitted.

1. *A*, in composition, is used before *m* and *v*; as, *amoveo*, *avello*, and sometimes before *f* in *afui* and *afore*, for *abfui* and *abfore*. *Ab* is used before vowels, and before *d*, *f*, *h*, *j*, *l*, *n*, *r*, and *s*; as, *abjuro*, *abrogo*, etc. *Abs* occurs only before *c*, *q*, and *t*; as, *abscondo*, *absque*, *abstineo*. In *aspello*, *aspernor*, and *asporto*, the *b* of *abs* is dropped; in *aufero* and *aufugio*, it is changed into *u*.

2. *Ad* remains unchanged before vowels and before *b*, *d*, *h*, *m*, *v*. It often changes *d* into *c*, *f*, *g*, *l*, *n*, *p*, *r*, *s*, *t*, before those letters respectively; as, *accedo*, *affero*, *aggreddor*, *alligo*, *annitor*, *appono*, *arriigo*, *asséquor*, *attollo*. Its *d* is usually omitted before *s* followed by a consonant, and before *gn*; as, *aspergo*, *aspicio*, *agnosco*, *agnatus*. Before *q*, the *d* is changed into *c*; as, *acquirō*.

3. *Ante* remains unchanged, except in *anticipo* and *antisto*, where it changes *e* to *i*; but *antesto* also occurs.

4. *Circum* in composition remains unchanged, only in *circumveo* and its derivatives the *m* is often dropped; as, *circueo*, *circuitus*, etc.

5. *Cum* (in composition, *com*), retains *m* before *b*, *m*, *p*; as, *combibo*, *committo*, *compōno*: before *l*, *n*, *r*, its *m* is changed into those letters respectively; as, *colligo*, *conmitto*, *corripio*: before other consonants, it becomes *n*; as, *conduco*, *conjungo*. Before a vowel, *gn* or *h*, *m* is commonly omitted; as, *coeo*, *coopto*, *cognosco*, *cogahito*; but it is sometimes retained; as, *comedo*, *cōmes*, *cōmitur*. In *cōgo* and *cōgito* a contraction also takes place; as, *cōgo*, *cōgo*, etc. In *comburo*, *b* is inserted.

6. *Ex* is prefixed to vowels, and to *c*, *h*, *p*, *q*, *s*, *t*; as, *exeo*, *exigo*, *excurro*, *exhibeo*, *expedio*. Before *f*, *x* is assimilated, and also rarely becomes *ec*; as, *effero*, or *ecfēro*. *S* after *x* is often omitted; as, *exsequor*, for *exsequor*; in *excidium* (from *exscindo*), *s* is regularly dropped. *E* is prefixed to the other consonants; as, *ēbibo*, *ēduco*, except in *eclex*. Before these however, with the exception of *n* and *r*, *ex* is sometimes used; as, *exmoveo*. *E* is sometimes used before *p*; as, *ēpōto*.

7. *In* remains unchanged before a vowel. Before *b*, *m*, *p*, it changes *n* into *m*; as, *imbuo*, *immitto*, *inpono*: before *l* and *r*, *n* is assimilated; as, *illigo*, *irritō*: before *gn*, *n* is omitted; as, *ignarus*. Before the other consonants *n* is unchanged. In some compounds, *in* retains *d* before a vowel, from an ancient form *indu*; as, *indigēna*, *indigeo*, *indolesco*. So anciently *induperator*, for *inverator*.

8. *Inter* remains unchanged, except in *intelligo* and its derivatives, in which *r* before *l* is assimilated.

9. *Ob* remains unchanged before vowels and generally before consonants. Its *b* is assimilated before *c*, *f*, *g*, *p*; as, *occurro*, *officio*, *oggnatio*, *oppeto*. In *omitto*, *b* is dropped. An ancient form *obs*, analogous to *abs* for *ab*, is implied in *obsolesco*, from the simple verb *oleo*, and in *ostendo*, for *obstendo*.

10. *Per* is unchanged in composition, except in *pellacio* and sometimes in *pelluceo*, in which *r* is assimilated before *l*. In *pijēro*, *r* is dropped.

11. *Post* remains unchanged, except in *pomerium* and *pomeridianus*, in which *st* is dropped.

12. *Pro* and *præter* in composition remain unchanged, except that *pro* is shortened before a vowel. Cf. § 263, II Ex. 1.

13. *Præ* has sometimes its vowel shortened, (cf. § 285, 2, Exc. 5) and, to avoid hiatus, it sometimes takes *d* before a vowel; as, *prædeo*, *prælesse*, *prædigo*. Before verbs beginning with *r* and *l*, *pro* sometimes becomes *por* and *pol*; as *porrigo*, *polliceor*.

14. *Sub* in composition remains unchanged before a vowel and before *b*, *d*, *g*, *h*, *n*, *s*, *t*, *v*. Before *c*, *f*, *g*, *m*, *p*, *r*, its *b* is regularly assimilated; as, *subcædo*, *sufféro*, *suggéro*, *summôreo*, *supplicô*, *surrîpio*. Before *c*, *p*, and *t*, it sometimes takes the form *sus* from *subs*, analogous to *abs* and *obs*; as, *suscipio*, *suspendo*, *sustollo*: *b* is omitted before *s*, followed by a consonant; as, *suspicio*.

15. *Subter* and *sûper* in composition remain unchanged.

16. *Trans* remains unchanged before a vowel. It omits *s* before *s*; as, *transcendo*: in *trâdo*, *trâducô*, *trâjicio*, and *trâno*, *ns* is commonly omitted.

(b.) The following words are called *inseparable prepositions*, because they are found only in composition:—

*Ambi* or *amb*, (Greek ἀμφί), *around, about*. *Rêd* or *rê*, *again, back*. *Vê*, *not*. *Dis* or *di*, *under*. *Sê*, *apart, aside*.

1. *Amb* is always used before a vowel; as, *ambâges*, *ambarrâlis*, *ambêdo*, *ambigo*, *ambio*, *ambûro*: except *ampulla*, *âmicio*, and *ânhêlo*. Before consonants it has the forms *ambi*; as, *ambidens*, *ambifariam*, *ambivium*: *am*; as, *amplector*, *ampulo*: or *an*; as, *anceps*, *anfractus*, *anguiro*.

2. *Dis* is prefixed to words beginning with *c*, *p*, *q*, *s* before a vowel, *t*, and *h*; as, *discutio*, *dispono*, *disquiro*, *distendo*, *dishiasco*: but *desertus* is formed from *dissero*; before *f*, *s* is changed into *f*; as, *différo*: in *dirimo*, and *diribeo* (from *dis habeo*), *s* becomes *r*. *Di* is prefixed to the other consonants, and to *s* when followed by a consonant; as, *diduco*, *dimitto*, *distinguo*, *dispcio*. But both *dis* and *di* are used before *j*; as, *disjungo*, *dijudico*, and before *r* in *rumpe*.

3. *Rêd* is used before a vowel or *h*; *rê* before a consonant; as, *rêdimo*, *rêdeo*, *rêdhibeo*, *rêdigo*, *rêdleo*, *rêdundo*;—*rêjicio*, *rêpono*, *rêvertor*. But *rêd* is used before *do*; as, *reddo*. The connecting vowel *i* is found in *rêdivivus*; and in the poetical forms *relligio*, *relliquie*, and sometimes in *rectudo* the *d* is assimilated. In later writers *re* is sometimes found before a vowel or *h*.

4. *Sê* and *vê* are prefixed without change; as, *sêcêdo*, *sêcûrus*; *vêgranâis*, *vêcors*.

§ 197. II. Prepositions in composition usually add their own signification to that of the word with which they are united; but sometimes they give to the compound a meaning different from that of its simples. The following are their most common significations:—

1. *A*, or *ab*, *away, from, down; entirely; un-*. With verbs it denotes removal, disappearance, absence; as, *auféro*, *abutor*, *absûm*. With adjectives it denotes absence, privation; as, *âmens*, *absônus*.

2. *Ad*, *to, toward; at, by*. In composition with verbs *ad* denotes (a) *motion to*, (not *into*), as, *accêdo*; (b) *addition*, as, *ascribo*; (c) *nearness*, as, *assideo*; (d) *assent, favor*, as, *annuo*, *arrideo*; (e) *repetition* and hence *intensity*, as, *accidit*; (f) *at, in consequence of*, as, *arrigo*. It is sometimes augmentative, rarely inchoative.

3. *Ambi*, *around, about, on both sides*.

4. *Circum*, *around, about, on all sides*.

5. *Cum* or *côn*, *together, entirely*. In composition with verbs it denotes (a) *union*, as, *concurro*, *consûlo*; (b) *completeness*, as, *combûro*, *conficio*; (c) *with effort*, as, *conjicio*, *conclâmo*; (d) *in harmony*, as, *consôno*, *consentio*; (e) *on or near*, like the English *be-*, as, *collino*, to be *insular*.



6. *Contra*, against, opposite.

7. *Dē*, off, away, through, over, down; entirely; very, extremely. With verbs *dē* denotes (a) *down*; as, *dēmitto*; (b) *removal*; as, *dētondeo*; (c) *absence*; as, *dēsum*, *dēhabeo*; (d) *prevention*; as, *dēhortor*; (e) *unfriendly feeling*; as, *dēspicio*, *dērideo*.—With adjectives *dē* denotes (a) *down*; as, *dēclivis*; (b) *without*; as, *dēmens*.

8. *Dis*, asunder, apart, in pieces, in two; dis-, un-; very greatly. With verbs *dis* denotes (a) *division*; as, *divido*, *dilābor*; (b) *difference*; as, *discrēpo*, *dissentio*; (c) *the reverse of the simple notion*; as, *displiceo*, *diffido*; (d) *intensity*; as, *dilaudo*.—With adjectives *dis* denotes *difference*; as, *discolor*, *discors*.

9. *E*, or *ex*, out, forth, away, upward, without, -less, un-; utterly, completely, very. With verbs it denotes (a) *out*; as, *exeo*, *eximo*, *ēlāboro*; (b) *removal of something*; as, *ēdormio*; (c) *publicity*; as, *ēdico*; (d) *ascent*; as, *exsisto*; (e) *completeness*; as, *ēdisco*, *exūro*; (f) with denominative verbs, *change of character*; as, *expio*, *effēro* (*āre*); (g) *removal of what is expressed by the noun whence the verb is derived*; as *ēnōdo*; (h) *the reversal of the fundamental idea*; as, *explico*; (i) *distance*; as, *exaudio*.—With adjectives formed from substantives it denotes *absence*; as, *exsomnis*.

10. *In*, with verbs, signifies in, on, at; into, against; as, *inhābito*, *induo*, *ingēmo*, *ineo*, *illido*. With adjectives, un-, in-, im-, il-, ir-, not; as, *ignōtus*, *inhospitalis*, *immortalis*. Some of its compounds have contrary significations, according as they are participles or adjectives; as, *intectus*, *part.*, covered, *adj.*, uncovered.

11. *Inter*, between, among, at intervals.

12. *Ob*, with verbs, signifies to, towards; as, *ōbeo*, *ostendo*; against; as, *obluator*, *obuntio*; at, before; as, *ōbambulo*, *obversor*; upon; as, *occulco*; over; as *obdūco*.

13. *Per*, with verbs, denotes, through, thoroughly, perfectly, quite; as, *perdūco*, *perficio*, *perdo*: with adjectives, through, very; as, *pernox*, *perlēvis*.

14. *Post*, after, behind.

15. *Præ* in composition with verbs denotes (a) *before in place*; as, *præmitto*; (b) *by or past*; as, *præluo*; (c) *in command*; as, *præsum*, *præficio*; (d) *superiority*; as, *præsto*; (e) *before in time*; as, *prædico*, *præcerpo*; at the extremity; as, *præūro*.—With adjectives, (a) *before in place or time*; as, *præceps*, *præsciens*; (b) *very*; as, *præaltus*, *præclarus*.

16. *Præter*, past, by, beyond, besides.

17. *Prō*, before, forward, forth, away, down; for; openly; as, *prōlūdo*, *porriq.*, *prōterreo*, *prōlēro*, *prōcūro*, *prōfiteor*.

18. *Rē*, again, against, back, re-, un-, away; greatly; as, *rēfloreſco*, *rēpendo*, *rēfērio*, *rēfigo*, *rēcondo*.

19. *Sē*, without, aside, apart; as, *sēcūro*, *sēpōno*, *sēcēdo*, *sēcūrus*.

20. *Sūb* up, from below upwards, under. With verbs *sūb* also signifies (a) *assistance*; as, *subvenio*; (b) *succession*; as, *succino*; (c) *in place of*; as, *sufficio*; (d) *near*; as, *subsum*; (e) *secretly, clandestinely*; as, *surrūpio*, *subdūco*; (f) *somewhat, a little*; as, *subrideo*, *sūbaccūso*.—With adjectives it signifies, *slightly, rather*; as, *sūbobscurus*, *sūbabsurdus*, *sūbacidus*.

21. *Subter*, beneath, under, from under, secretly, privately.

22. *Sūper*, above, over, left over, remaining, super-; as, *sūpersēdeo*, *sūpersum*, *sūperstes*, *sūpervacāneus*.

23. *Trans*, over, across, through; beyond; as, *trādo*, *transeo*, *transfigo*, *transalpinus*.

24. *Vē*, not, without; very; as, *vēgrandis*, *vēcors*, *vēpalūcus*.

REMARK. In composition the preposition seems often to add nothing to the signification of the word with which it is compounded.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 198. A conjunction is a particle which connects words or propositions.

The most usual conjunctions are,

Atque, { and, as; than.

Ac, si, as if.

Adco, so that, so.

An, { whether.

Anne, { whether or not.

Antequam, before.

At, ast, but.

At enim, but indeed.

Atqui, but.

Etiamen, but yet.

Aut, either, or.

Aut...aut, either...or.

Autem, but.

Ceterum, but, however

Ceu, as like as, as if.

Cum or quum, since.

Donec, as long as, until

dum, provided, while, as long as, until.

dummodo, if but, if only.

Enimvero, in very deed.

Enim, { for.

Et enim, { for.

Eo, therefore.

Equidem, indeed.

Ergo, therefore.

Et, and.

Et...et { both...and;

Et...que, { as well...as.

Et...neque or nec, on the one hand, but not on the other.

Etiam, also.

Etiamsi, { although,

etsi, { though.

iccirco, { therefore.

ideo, { therefore.

igitur, { therefore.

itaque, { therefore.

licet, though, although.

propterea, provided.

nam, namque, for.

nē, lest, that not.

-nē, whether.

neque or nec, neither, nor.

neque...neque, { neither,

nec...nec, { ...nor.

neque...nec, { neither,

nec...neque, { ...nor.

necne, or not.

neque, neither, nor.

neque or nec...et, { not

neque or nec...que, { on

the one hand, but on the other.

neve or neu, nor, and not.

neve...neve, { neither...

neu...neu, { nor.

ni, nisi, unless.

num, whether.

prout, in comparison with.

prout, according as, just as, as.

proinde, hence, therefore.

propterea, therefore, for

that reason.

postquam, after, since.

priusquam, before.

quam, as, than.

quamvis, although.

quando, quandoquidem,

whereas, since.

quamquam, although.

quapropter, { wherefore.

quare, { wherefore.

quobrem, { wherefore.

quocirca, { wherefore.

quantumvis, { although,

quamlibet, { however.

quasi, as if, just as.

-que, and.

-que...et, { both...and;

-que...que, { as well...as.

quia, because.

quoniam, but that, that not.

quippe, because.

quod, in order that.

quoad, as long as, until.

quod, because, but.

quodsi, but if.

quominus, that not.

quoniam, since, because.

quodque, also.

quum or cum, when, since

because.

quum...tum, both...and.

sed, but.

sicut, { so as, just as, as.

sicuti, { so as, just as, as.

si, if.

si modo, if only.

simul, { as soon

simulac (-atque) { as.

sin, but if, if however.

sive or seu, or if.

sive...sive, { whether...or.

seu...seu, { whether...or.

siquidem, if indeed, since.

tamen, however, still.

tametsi, although.

tamquam, as if.

tum...tum, both...and.

unde, whence.

ut, { that, as that, so that,

uti, { to the end that.

ut si, as if.

utrum, whether.

-ve, { either, or.

vel, { either, or.

vel...vel, either...or.

velut, { even as, just as,

veluti, { like as.

vero, truly, but indeed.

verum, but.

veruntamen, yet, notwith-

standing.

verum-enim vero, but in-

deed.

Conjunctions, according to their different uses, are divided into two general classes,—coordinate and subordinate.

I. Coördinate conjunctions, are such as join coördinate or similar constructions; as,

*Luna et stellæ fulgebant,* The moon and the stars were shining. *Concidunt venti, fugiuntque nubes,* The winds subside, and the clouds disperse. *Difficile actus est, sed conabor tamen,* It is difficult to accomplish but still I will try.

Coördinate conjunctions include the following subdivisions, viz. *copulative, ejunctive, adversative, illative*, and most of the *causal* conjunctions.

II. Subordinate conjunctions are such as join dissimilar constructions; as,

Edo, *ut vivam*, I eat that I may live. Pyrrhus rex in itinere incidit in canem, *qui interfecti hominis corpus custodiēbat*. Mergi pullos in aquam jussit, *ut librent*, quoniam esse nollent.

Subordinate conjunctions include all those connectives which unite subordinate or dependent clauses. These are the *concessive, illative, final, conditional, interrogative*, and *temporal* conjunctions, and the *causals quod, quum, quoniam*, etc. To these may be added also the relatives whether pronouns, adjectives, or adverbs.

The following paragraphs contain a specification of the several conjunctions comprised in each of the preceding subdivisions, and remarks respecting their particular import and use as connectives.

1. COPULATIVE conjunctions connect things that are to be considered jointly; as, *et, ac, atque*, the enclitic *que*, which, combined with the negation belonging to the verb, becomes *nēque* or *nēc*, and, the negation being doubled, *nēc nōn* or *nēque nōn*, it becomes again affirmative and equivalent to *et*. To these are to be added *etiam* and *quodque*, with the adverbials *item* and *etidem*.

REMARK. (a.) *Et* and *que* differ in this, *et* connects things which are conceived as different, and *que* adds what belongs to, or naturally flows from them. *Et*, therefore, is copulative and *que* adjunctive. Hence, in an enumeration of words, *que* frequently connects the last of the series, and by its means the preceding idea is extended without the addition of any thing which is generically different. In connecting propositions *que* denotes a consequence, and is equivalent to 'and therefore.'

(b.) *Ac* never stands before vowels, *atque* chiefly before vowels, but also before consonants.—*Atque*, being formed of *ad* and *que*, properly signifies 'and also,' 'and in addition,' thus putting things on an equality, but giving emphasis to the latter. In the beginning of a proposition, which is explanatory of that which precedes, *atque* or *ac* introduces a thing with great weight, and may be rendered 'now'; and in answers; as, *Cognostine hos versus? Ac memoriter*, it is rendered 'yes, and that.' *Ac* being an abridged form of *atque* loses somewhat of its power in connecting single words, and its use alternates with that of *et*; it is preferred in subdivisions, whereas the main propositions are connected by *et*.

(c.) *Nēque*, compounded of the ancient *nē* for *nōn* and *que*, is used for *et nōn*. *Et nōn* itself is used, when only one idea or one word of a proposition is to be negated; as, *patior et non moleste fero*; and also when our 'and not' is used for 'and not rather' to correct an improper supposition; as, *Si quam Rubrius injuriam suo nomine ac non impulsu tuo fecisset*. Cic. *Et nōn* is commonly found also in the second clause of a sentence when *et* precedes, but *nēque*, also, is often used in this case. *Nēc nōn* or *nēque nōn*, in classical prose, is not used like *et* to connect nouns, but only to join propositions, and the two words are separated. In later writers, however, they are not separated and are equivalent to *et*.

(d.) *Etiam* has a wider extent than *quodque*, for it contains the idea of 'our even,' and it also adds a new circumstance, whereas *quodque* denotes the addition of a thing of a similar kind. Hence *etiam* is properly used to connect sentences, while *quodque* refers to a single word. *Etiam* signifies 'and further,' *quodque*, 'and so,' 'also.' *Quodque* always follows the word to which it refers, *etiam* in similar cases is usually placed before it, but when it connects propositions its place is arbitrary. *Et*, too, in classical prose, is sometimes used in the sense of 'also.' So often is *nōn modo—sed et*, 'not only—but also,' or 'but even.'

(e.) Copulative conjunctions are often repeated in the sense of 'both—and,' 'as well—as,' 'not only—but also' *Et—et* is of common occurrence; so in later writers, but rarely in Cicero, *et—que*, *quē—et* connect single words, but not in Cicero; *quē—quē*, occur for the most part only in poetry, or in connection with the relative.—Negative propositions are connected in English by 'neither—nor,' and in Latin by *nēquē—nēquē*, *nēc—nēc*, *nēquē—nēc*, and rarely by *nēc—nēquē*. Propositions, one of which is negative and the other affirmative 'on the one hand—but not on the other,' or, 'not on the one hand—but on the other,' are connected by *et—nēquē* or *nēc*, *nēquē* or *nēc—et*, and occasionally by *nēc* or *nēquē—quē*.

3. DISJUNCTIVE conjunctions connect things that are to be considered separately; as, *aut*, *vēl*, the enclitic *vē*, and *sivē* or *seu*.

REMARK. (a.) *Aut* and *vēl* differ in this; *aut* indicates a difference of the object, *vēl*, a difference of expression, i. e. *aut* is objective, *vēl*, subjective. *Vēl* is connected with the verb *velle*, and is generally repeated, *vēl—vēl*, 'choose this or choose this,' and the single *vēl* is used by Cicero only to correct a preceding expression, and commonly combined with *dicam*, *pōtius*, or *etiam*.—Hence by ellipsis *vēl* has acquired the signification of the adverb, 'even,' and so enhances the signification of the word modified by it; as, *Quum Sophocles vel optime scripsērit Electram*, where *bene* is to be supplied before *vel*, and the latter is used for the purpose of correcting the preceding expression. Cf. § 127, 4. By means of its derivation from *velle* it has, also, the signification of 'for example' or 'to take a case,' for which *vēlūt* is more frequently used.—(b.) *Vē*, the apocopated *vēl*, leaves the choice free between two or more things, and in later but good prose *vēl* is used in the same manner.

(c.) *Sivē* commonly retains the meaning of *si*, and is then the same as *vēl si*, but sometimes loses it, and is then equivalent to *vēl*, denoting a difference of name; as, *Vocabulum sivē appellatio*. Quint. The form *seu* is rarely used by Cicero except in the combination *seu pōtius*.—(d.) *Aut* and *vē* serve to continue the negation in negative sentences, where we use 'nor'; as, *nōn—aut*, where *nōn—nēquē* also may be used. They are used also in negative questions; as, *Num leges nostras moresvē nōvīt?* Cic.; and after comparatives; as, *Doctrina paulo asperior, quam veritas aut natura patiātur*. Cic. It is only when both ideas are to be united into one that a copulative is used instead of *aut* and *vē*.—

(e.) 'Either—or' is expressed in Latin by *aut—aut*, denoting an opposition between two things, one of which excludes the other, or by *vēl—vēl*, denoting that the opposition is immaterial in respect to the result, so that the one need not exclude the other; as, *Vēi imperatōre vel milite me utimini*. Sall.—*Sivē—sivē* is the same as *vēl si—vēl si*, and retains the meaning of *vēl—vēl*. If nouns only are opposed to each other, an uncertainty is expressed as to how a thing is to be called; as, *Crētum leges, quas sive Jupiter sive Minos sanxit*; i. e. I do not know whether I am to say Jupiter or Minos.

3. COMPARATIVE conjunctions express a comparison. These are, *ut* or *sicut*, *vēlūt*, *proūt*, *præūt*, the poetical *ceu*, *quam*, *tamquam*, (with and without *si*), *quāsi*, *ut si*, *ac si*, with *ac* and *atquē*, when they signify 'as.'

REMARK. *Ac* and *atquē* signify 'as' or 'than' after adverbs and adjectives which denote similarity or dissimilarity; as, *æquē, justā, par* and *paritēr, pēriendē* and *proindē, prō eō, similis* and *similitēr, dissimilis, tālis, totidem, alius* and *aliēr, contrā, secūs, contrārius*.—*Quam* is rarely used after these words, except when a negative particle is joined with *abus*; as, *Virtus nihil aliud est, quam, etc.*; and *et* and *quē* do not occur in this connection.—*Ac* is used for *quum*, after comparatives, in poetry and occasionally by late prose writers; as, *Artius atque hedera*. Hor. *Insanius ac si*. Id.

4. CONCESSIVE conjunctions express a concession, with the general signification 'although.' These are *etsi*, *etiāmsi*, *tāmsi*, or *tāmenetsi*, *quamquam*, *quāvis*, *quantūvis*, *quālibēt*, *licēt*, *ut* in the sense of 'even if' or 'although,' and *quum* when it signifies 'although.'

REMARK. *Tāmen* and other particles signifying 'yet,' 'still,' are the correlatives of the concessive conjunctions; as, *Ut desint vires, tāmen est laudanda*

*voluntas*. Ovid. The adverb *quidem* becomes a concessive conjunction, when it is used to connect propositions and is followed by *séd*.—*Quamquam*, in all solute sentences, sometimes refers to something preceding, which it limits and partly nullifies: as, *Quamquam quid loquor?* Yet why do I speak?

5. **CONDITIONAL** conjunctions express a condition, their fundamental signification being 'if.' These are *si*, *sin*, *nisi* or *ni*, *si modo*, *dummodo*, 'if only,' 'if but,' (for which *dum* and *modo* are also used alone), *dummodo nē*, or simply *modo nē* or *dum nē*.

**REMARK.** (a.) In order to indicate the connection with a preceding proposition, the relative *quod*, which in such case loses its signification as a pronoun, and may be rendered, 'nay,' 'now,' 'and,' or 'then,' is frequently put before *si* and sometimes before *nisi* and *et*, so that *quodsi* may be regarded as one word, signifying 'now if,' 'but if,' or 'if then.' It serves especially to introduce something assumed as true, from which further inferences may be drawn. It sometimes signifies 'although.' *Quodnisi* signifies 'if then—not,' and *quodetiā*, 'nay, even if.' *Quod* is found also before *quum*, *ubi*, *quid*, *quoniam*, *nē*, *ut*, *nam*, and even before the relative pronoun.

(b.) *Ni* and *nisi* limit a statement by introducing an exception, and thus differ from *si nōn*, which introduces a negative case. It is often immaterial whether *nisi* or *si nōn* is used, but the difference is still essential. *Si nōn* is used when single words are opposed to one another, and in this case *si minús* may be used instead of *si nōn*.—If after an affirmative proposition its negative opposite is added without a verb, our 'but if not' is commonly expressed in prose by *si minús* or *sin minús* or *sin álter*; as, *Educ tecum etiā omnes tuos; si minús, quam plurimos*. Cic.; rarely by *si nōn*.

6. **ILLATIVE** conjunctions express an inference or conclusion, with the general signification of 'therefore,' 'consequently.' These are *ergo*, *igitúr*, *itáquē*, *eō*, *ideo*, *iccirco*, *proindē*, *proptēreā*, and the relative conjunctions, *quaproptēr*, *quārē*, *quamobrem*, *quōcirca*, *undē*, 'wherefore.'

**REMARK.** *Ergo* and *igitúr* denote a logical inference.—*Itáquē*, 'and thus,' expresses the relation of cause in facts.—*Ideo*, *iccirco*, and *proptēreā*, 'on this account,' express the agreement between intention and action.—*Eō*, 'on this account,' or 'for this purpose,' is more frequently an adverb of place.—*Proindē*, 'consequently,' implies an exhortation.—*Undē*, 'whence,' is properly an adverb of place.—*Adēo*, 'so that,' or simply 'so,' is also properly an adverb. *Hinc*, 'hence,' and *indē*, 'thence,' continue to be adverbs.

7. **CAUSAL** conjunctions express a cause or reason, with the general signification of 'for' and 'because.' These are *nam*, *namquē*, *enim*, *eténim*, *quid*, *quōd*, *quóniam*, *quippe*, *quum*, *quando*, *quandōquidem*, *siquidem*; and the adverbs *nimirum*, *nempē*, *scilicēt*, and *videlicēt*.

**REMARK.** (a.) *Nam* is used at the beginning of a proposition, *enim*, after the first or second word. *Nam* introduces an objective reason, and *enim* merely a subjective one. There is the same difference between *namquē* and *eténim*. *Namquē*, however, though constantly standing at the beginning of a proposition in Cicero, Cæsar, and Nepos, is in later writers often put after the beginning. *Enim* in the sense of *at enim* or *séd enim* is sometimes, by comic writers, put at the beginning of a proposition.—*Nam*, *enim*, and *eténim* are often used in the sense of 'namely,' or 'to wit,' to introduce an explanation of something going before. *Nimirum*, *videlicēt*, and *scilicēt* likewise answer to our 'namely' or 'viz.' *Nimirum*, compounded of *ni* and *mirum*, and signifying 'a wonder if not,' is used as a connective in the sense of 'undoubtedly' or 'surely,' and implies strong confidence in the truth of the proposition with which it is connected.—*Videlicēt* and *scilicēt* introduce an explanation, with this difference that *videlicēt* generally indicates the true, and *scilicēt* a wrong explanation. Sometimes, however, *nam*, *enim*, *eténim*, *nimirum*, and *videlicēt* are used in an ironical sense, and *scilicēt* introduces a true reason.—*Nempē* 'surely,' often assumes a sarcastic meaning when another person's concession is taken for the purpose of refuting him.—(b.) *Quid* and *quōd* indicate a defi-

nite and conclusive reason, *quoniam*, (i. e. *quum jam*), a motive. — *Ideo*, *iccirco*, *propterea quod*, and *quid*, are used without any essential difference, except that *quid* introduces a more strict and logical reason, whereas *quoniam*, signifying 'now as,' introduces important circumstances. — *Quando*, *quandoquidem*, and *siquidem* approach nearer to *quoniam* than to *quid*, as they introduce only subjective reasons. *Quandoquidem* denotes a reason implied in a circumstance previously mentioned; *siquidem*, a reason implied in a concession. In *siquidem* the meaning of *si* is generally dropped, but it sometimes remains, and then *si* and *quidem* should be written as separate words; as, *O fortunatam rempublicam, si quidem hanc sentinam eiecérít*. Cic. — *Quippe*, with the relative pronoun or with *quum*, introduces a subjective reason. When used elliptically without a verb it signifies 'forsooth' or 'indeed.' Sometimes it is followed by a sentence with *enim*, and in this way gradually acquires the signification of *nam*.

8. FINAL conjunctions express a purpose, object, or result, with the signification of 'in order that,' or 'in order that not.' These are *ut* or *ut nē*, *quod nē* or *ut nē*, *nēve* or *neu*, *quān* and *quominus*.

REMARK. *Ut*, as a conjunction indicates either a result or a purpose, 'so that,' and 'in order that.' When indicating a result, if a negative is added to it, it becomes *ut nōn*; when indicating a purpose, if the negative is added, it becomes *nē* or *ut nē*, but *ut nōn* also is very rarely used for *nē*. — *Nēve* (i. e. *vel nē*) signifies either 'or in order that not,' or 'and in order that not.' *Ut nē* is a pleonasm, not differing perceptibly from *nē*. It is used more frequently by Cicero than by other writers. *Quō nē* for *nē* occurs once in Horace.

9. ADVERSATIVE conjunctions, express opposition, with the signification of 'but.' These are *sed*, *autem*, *vērūm*, *vēro*, *at* (poetical *ast*), *atq̄*, *atque*, *tāmen*, *attāmen*, *sedtāmen*, *vērūntāmen*, *at vērō*, (*enimvērō*), *vērūmentim*, *vērūm vērō*, *cēlērūm*.

REMARK. (a.) *Sed* denotes a direct opposition, and interrupts the narrative or argument; *autem* marks a transition, and denotes at once a connection and an opposition. *Porro*, 'further,' denotes progression and transition but not opposition, except in later authors. — *Vērūm* has a similar relation to *vērō* as *sed* to *autem*. *Vērūm*, while it denotes opposition, contains also an explanation. *Vērō* connects things which are different, but denotes the point in favor of which the decision should be. It thus forms the transition to something more important, as in the phrase, *Illud vērō plane non est ferendum*, i. e. that which I am about to mention. In affirmative answers *vērō* is often added to the verb; as, *Dame? Do vērō*. Hence, when the protasis supplies the place of a question, it is sometimes introduced into the apodosis merely to show that it contains an answer. Hence also *vērō* alone signifies 'yes,' like *sānē*, *itā*, and *etiā*. — *Enimvērō*, 'yes, truly,' 'in truth,' does not denote opposition. It sometimes, like *vērō*, forms the transition to that which is most important. The compound *vērūm enimvērō* denotes the most emphatic opposition.

(b.) *At* denotes that that which is opposed is equivalent to that which precedes. It frequently follows *si*, in the sense of 'yet,' or 'at least'; as, *elsi non sapientissimus, at amicissimus*. It is especially used to denote objections whether of the speaker himself or of others. *At enim* introduces a reason for the objection implied in *at*. — By *atque*, 'but still,' 'but yet,' or 'nevertheless,' we admit what precedes, but oppose something else to it; as, *Magnum narras, viz credibile. Atque sic habet*. Hor. So, also, when that which is admitted, is made use of to prove the contrary. Finally, *atque* is used in syllogisms, when a thing is assumed which had before been left undecided; in this case it does not denote a direct opposition of facts, and may be translated by 'now,' 'but,' 'but now.' — *Cēlērūm*, properly 'as for the rest,' is often used by later writers for *etā*. — *Contra ea*, in the sense of 'on the other hand,' is used as a conjunction. So *adeo* with a pronoun, when it may be translated 'just,' 'precisely,' 'even,' 'indeed,' or an intensive 'and.'

10. TEMPORAL conjunctions, express time. These are *quum*, *quum prius*, *um*, *ut*, *ut primum*, *ubi*, *postquam*, *antēquam*, and *prius quam*, *quando*, *simulac* or *simulatque*, or *simul* alone, *dum usque dum*, *dōnec*, *quoad*.

REMARK. *Ut* and *ubi*, as particles of time, signify 'when.' *Dum*, *donec*, and *quoad* signify either 'as long as,' or 'until.' *Dum* often precedes *interea* or *interim*, and both *dum* and *donec* are often preceded by the adverbs *usque*, *usque ad* or *usque adeo*.

11. INTERROGATIVE conjunctions indicate a question. These are, *num*, *numquam*, *an*, and the enclitic *ne*. This, when attached to the three preceding particles, forming *numne*, *utrumne*, and *anne*, does not affect their meaning. With *non* it forms a special interrogative particle *nonne*. To these add *ec* and *en*, as they appear in *ecquis*, *ecquando*, and *ennumquam*, and *numquid* and *ecquid*, when used simply as interrogative particles.

REMARK. (a.) The interrogative particles have no distinct meaning by themselves in direct questions, but only serve to give to a proposition the form of a question. In direct speech the interrogative particles are sometimes omitted, but in indirect questions they are indispensable, except in the case of a double question, where the first particle is sometimes omitted.—*Ecquid* and *numquid*, as interrogative particles, have the meaning of *num*, *quid* in this case having no meaning, but they must be carefully distinguished from the interrogative pronouns *ecquid* and *numquid*. *En*, or when followed by a *q*, *ec* is, like *num*, *ne*, and *an*, an interrogative particle, but is always prefixed to some other interrogative word.

(b.) In direct questions, *num* and its compounds *numne*, *ennumquam*, *numquid*, *numquidnam*, and the compounds with *en* or *ec* suppose that the answer will be 'no'; as, *Num putas me tam dementem fuisse?* But *ecquid* is sometimes used in an affirmative sense. In general the negative sense of these particles does not appear in indirect questions.

(c.) *Ne* properly denotes simply a question, but it is used sometimes affirmatively and sometimes negatively. When *ne* is attached, not to the principal verb but to some other word, a negative sense is produced; as, *mene istud potuisse facere putas?* Do you believe that I would have done that? The answer expected is 'no.' When attached to the principal verb *ne* often gives the affirmative meaning, and the answer expected is 'yes.'—*Nonne* is the sign of an affirmative question; as, *Canis nonne lupo similis est?*—*Utrum*, in accordance with its derivation from *uter*, which of two, is used only in double questions whether consisting of two or more. It is sometimes accompanied by *ne*, which is usually separated from it by one or more words; as, *Utrum, taceamne an prædicem?* In later writers, however, *utrumne* is united into one word. *Ne* is rarely appended to interrogative adjectives, but examples of such use are sometimes found in poetry; as, *uternè; quonè malo; quantianè*. In a few passages it is even attached to the relative pronoun.

(d.) *An* is not used as a sign of an indirect question before the silver age; when so used it answers to 'whether.' It is used by Cicero exclusively in a second or opposite question, where we use 'or'; as, *Si satis, nihil interest utrum aqua sit, an vinum; nec refert, utrum sit aureum poculum, an vitreum, an manus concavit.* Sen. In direct interrogations, when no interrogative clause precedes, *in*, *anne*, *an vero* are likewise used in the sense of 'or,' that is in such a manner that a preceding interrogation is supplied by the mind; as, *Invitus te offendit, an putas me delectari lædendis hominibus?* Here we may supply before *an* *putas*, etc. the sentence, 'Do you believe this?'—*An*, after a preceding question, is rendered by 'not,' and it then indicates that the answer cannot be doubtful; as, *A rebus gerendis senectus abstrahit. Quibus? An his, quæ geruntur juventute ac viribus?* Is it not from those kinds of business, which? etc. Here we may suppose *aliisne* to be supplied before *an his*? Is it from other kinds of business, or from those? etc. Such questions may be introduced by *nonne*, but without allusion to an opposite question, which is implied in *an*.

(e.) To the rule that *an*, in indirect questions, is used exclusively to indicate a second or opposite question, there is one great exception, for it is employed in single indirect questions after such expressions as *dubito*, *dubium est*, *incertum est*, *delibero*, *hesito*, and especially after *nescio* or *haud scio*, all of which denote uncertainty, but with an inclination to the affirmative; as, *Si per se virtus sine*

*fortuna ponderanda sit dubito an hunc primum omnium ponam*, If virtue is to be estimated without reference to its success, I am not certain whether I should not prefer this man to all others. Nep. It is not Latin to say *dubito annon* for *dubito an*.—*Nescio an*, or *haud scio an* are used quite in the sense of 'perhaps,' so that they are followed by the negatives *nullus*, *nemo*, *numquam*, instead of *ullus*, *quisquam* and *unquam*. When the principal verb is omitted, *an* is often used in the sense of *aut*; as, *Themistocles, quum ei Simonides, an quis alius, artem memoriae polliceretur*, etc. In such cases *incertum est* is understood, and in Tacitus is often supplied.—The conjunction *si* is sometimes used in indirect interrogations instead of *num*, like the Greek *si*, and it is so used by Cicero after the verb *experiōr*.

NOTE 1. The conjunctions *-ne*, *-que*, *-ve*, are not used alone, but are always affixed to some other word, and are hence called *enclitics*.

NOTE 2. Some words here classed with conjunctions are also used as *ad* verbs, and many classed as adverbs are likewise conjunctions; that is, they at the same time qualify verbs, etc., and connect propositions; as, *Ceteris in rebus, quum venit calamitas, tum detrimentum accipitur*, In other concerns, when misfortune comes, then damage is received.

NOTE 3. Conjunctions, like adverbs, are variously compounded with other parts of speech, and with each other; as, *atque*, (i. e. *adque*), *iccirco* or *idcirco*, (i. e. *id-circa*), *ideo*, *namque*, etc. In some, compounded of an adverb and a conjunction, each of the simple words retains its meaning, and properly belongs to its own class; as, *etiam* (*et jam*) and now; *itāque*, and so; *neque* or *nec*, and not.

## INTERJECTIONS.

§ 199. An interjection is a particle used in exclamation, and expressing some emotion of the mind.

The most usual interjections are,

ah! ah! alas!  
 āha! āha! ah! hāha!  
 āpāgē! away! begone!  
 ātāt! or atatte! oh! ah! alas! lo!  
 au! or hau! oh! ah!  
 eccē! lo! see! behold!  
 ēhem! ha! what!  
 ēheu! ah! alas!  
 ēho! ehodum! ho! soho!  
 eiā! or heiā! ah! ah ha! indeed!  
 ēn! lo! see! behold!  
 eu! well done! bravo!  
 eugē! well done! good!  
 euax! } huzzah! hurrah!  
 euē! }  
 ha! hold! ho!  
 ha! ha! he! ha! ha!  
 heil! ah! wo! alas!

hem! oh! indeed! well! hah! alas! alack!  
 heu! oh! ah! alas!  
 heus! ho! ho there! hark! halloo!  
 hui! hah! ho! oh!  
 iō! ho! hurrah! huzzah!  
 ō! o! oh! ah!  
 ōh! oh! o! ah!  
 ōhē! ho! halloo! ho there!  
 ōho! oh! aha!  
 oi! hoy! alas!  
 pāpae! strange! wonderful?  
 phui! foh! fugh!  
 phy! pish! tush!  
 prō! or prōh! oh! ah!  
 st! hist! whist! hush!  
 tatā! so! strange!  
 vae! ah! alas! woe!  
 vah! vaha! ah! alas! oh?

REMARK 1. An interjection sometimes denotes several different emotions. Thus *eah* is used to express wonder, grief, joy, and anger.

REM. 2. Other parts of speech may sometimes be regarded as interjections; as, *pax!* be still! So *indignum*, *infandum*, *mālum*, *misērum*, *miserabile*, *nēfas*, when used as expressions of astonishment, grief, or horror; and *macte* and *macti*, as expressions of approbation. In like manner the adverbs *ue*, *profē*, *o cito*, *bēne*, *belle*; the verbs *quæso*, *prēcor*, *oro*, *obsecro*, *amābo*, *āge*, *āgite*, *cito odes*, (for *si audes*), *sic*, *sultis*, (for *si vis* and *si vultis*), *āgēs*, *āgedum*, and *āgite lum*, and the interrogative *quid?* what? used as exclamations.



REM. 8. With the interjections may also be classed the following invocations of the gods : *hercūles, hercūle, hercle* ; or *mehercūles, mehercūle, mehercle* ; *medius fidiūs, mecastor, ecastor, ecēre, pol, edepol, equirine, per deum, per deum immortālem, per deos, per Jovem, prō (or prōh) Jūpiter, prō dii immortāles, prō deum fidem, prō deum atque hominū fidem, prō deum immortāliū (scil. fidem), etc.*

## SYNTAX.

§ 200. 1. Syntax treats of the construction of sentences.

2. A sentence is a thought expressed in words ; as, *Cānes latrant*, The dogs bark.

3. All sentences are either

(1.) DECLARATIVE ; as, *Venti spirant*, The winds blow :—

(2.) INTERROGATIVE ; as, *Spirantne venti?* Do the winds blow?—

(3.) EXCLAMATORY ; as, *Quam vehēmenter spirant venti!* How fiercely the winds blow!—or

(4.) IMPERATIVE ; as, *Venti, spirāte*, Blow, winds.

4. The mood of the verb in the first three classes of sentences is either the indicative or the subjunctive ; in imperative sentences it is either the imperative or the subjunctive.

5. A sentence may consist either of one proposition or of two or more propositions connected together.

## PROPOSITIONS.

§ 201. 1. A proposition consists of a *subject* and a *predicate*.

2. The subject of a proposition is that of which something is affirmed.

3. The predicate is that which is affirmed of the subject.

Thus, in the proposition, *Equus currit*, The horse runs, *equus* is the subject and *currit* is the predicate.

NOTE. The word *affirm*, as here used, includes all the various significations of the verb, as expressed in the several moods.

4. Propositions are either *principal* or *subordinate*.

5. A principal proposition is one which makes complete sense by itself ; as,

*Phocion fuit perpetuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset*, *Phocion was always poor*, though he might have been very rich.

6. A subordinate proposition is one which, by means of a subordinate conjunction, is made to depend upon or limit some part of another proposition; as,

*Phōcion fuit perpētuo pauper, quum ditissimus esse posset, Phocion was always poor, though he might have been very rich.*

7. Subordinate propositions are used either as *substantives, adjectives, or adverbs*, and are accordingly called *substantive, adjective or adverbial propositions or clauses*.

8. Substantive clauses are connected with the propositions on which they depend by means of the final conjunctions *ut, ne, quo, quin*, etc., sometimes by *quod*, and in clauses containing an indirect question, by interrogative pronouns, adjectives, adverbs and conjunctions. See §§ 262 and 265.

REMARK. A dependent substantive clause often takes the form of the accusative with the infinitive and in that case has no connective; as, *Gaudeo te valere*.

9. Adjective clauses are connected by means of relatives, both pronouns and pronominal adjectives; as, *qui, quālis, quantus*, etc. Adverbial clauses are connected either by relative adverbs of place and time, (§ 191, R. 1, (b.)), or by temporal, conditional, concessive, comparative, and sometimes by causal conjunctions.

10. A sentence consisting of one proposition is called a *simple sentence*; as,

*Cādunt fōlia, The leaves fall. Semirāmis Babylōnem condidit.*

11. A sentence consisting of a principal and one or more subordinate propositions is called a *complex sentence*; as,

*Qui fit, ut nēmo contentus vivat? How happens it, that no one lives content? Quis ego sim, me rogitas, You ask me, who I am.*

12. A sentence consisting of two or more principal propositions, either alone or in connection with one or more subordinate propositions, is called a *compound sentence*; as,

*Spirant ventī et cādunt fōlia, The winds blow, and the leaves fall.*

13. The propositions composing a complex or a compound sentence are called its *members* or *clauses*; the principal proposition is called the *leading clause*, its subject, the *leading subject*, and its verb, the *leading verb*.

## SUBJECT.

§ 202. 1. The subject also is either *simple, complex, or compound*.

2. The simple subject, which is also called the *grammatical subject*, is either a noun or some word standing for a noun; as,

*Aves volant, Birds fly. Tu legis, Thou readest. A est v'cālis, A is a vowel. Mentiri est turpe, To lie is base.*

3. The complex subject, called also the *logical subject*, consists of the simple subject with its modifications; as,

*Conscientia bene actæ vitæ est jucundissima, The consciousness of a well spent life is very pleasant. Here conscientia is the grammatical, and conscientia bene actæ vitæ the complex subject.*

4. The compound subject consists of two or more simple or complex subjects to which a single predicate belongs; as,

*Luna et stellæ fulgebant*, The moon and stars were shining. *Grammaticæ ac musicæ junctæ fuerunt*, Grammar and music were united. *Semper hōnoe nō minusque tuum laudesque manebunt*.

REMARK. Words are said to *modify* or *limit* other words, when they serve to explain, describe, define, enlarge, restrict, or otherwise qualify their meaning.

5. Every sentence must contain a subject and a predicate, called its *principal* or *essential* parts: any sentence may also receive additions to these, called its *subordinate* parts.

### Complex or Modified Subject.

6. The complex subject is formed by adding other words to the simple subject. All additions to the subject, like the subject itself, are either *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*.

I. *Simple additions*. The subject may be modified by adding:—

1. A *single word*:—

(1.) A noun in the same case; as,

*Nos consules dēsumus*, We consuls are remiss. *Mucius augur multa narravit*, Mucius the augur related many things.

(2.) A noun or pronoun in an oblique case, modifying or limiting the subject; as,

*Amor multitudinis commōvitur*, The love of the multitude is excited. *Cura mei*, Care for me. *Viribus usus*, Need of strength.

(3.) An adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle; as,

*Fugit invida ætas*, Envious time flies. *Mea māter est benigna*. *Ducit agmina Penhēstila fūrens*. *Littera scripta manet*.

2. A *phrase* consisting of a preposition and its case; as,

*Sopor in gramine*. *Oppida sine præsidio*. *Receptio ad te*.

3. A dependent adjective clause introduced by *qui*, *quālis*, *quantus*, etc.; as,

*Læve fit*, quod bene fertur, *onus*, The burden, which is borne well, becomes light. *Litteræ*, quas scripsisti, *acceptæ sunt*. *Ut*, quālis (ille) haberi vellet, *talis esset*. *Tanta est inter eos*, quanta maxima esse potest, *mōrum distantia*.

II. *Complex additions*. The subject may be modified:—

1. By a *word* to which other words are added.

(1.) When the word to which other words are added is a noun or pronoun, it may be modified in any of the ways above mentioned.

(2.) When it is an adjective it may be modified:—

(a.) By an adverb either simple or modified; as,

*Erat expectatio valde magna*. *Præsidium non nimis firmum*.

(b.) By a noun in an oblique case; as,

*Major pietate*, Superior in piety. *Contentionis cupidus*, Fond of contention. *Patri similis*, Like his father. *Nidulus membra*. *Juvenes patre digni*.

(c.) By an infinitive, a gerund, or a supine; as,

*Inuictus* vinci, Not accustomed to be conquered. *Vēnardi stichōus*, Fond of hunting. *Mirābile dictu*, Wonderful to tell.

(d.) By a phrase consisting of a preposition and its case; as,

*Rūdus* in rēpublicā, Unskilled in civil affairs. *Ab ēquitātu firmus*. *Cōler* in pugnam. *Prōmus* ad fidem.

(e.) By a subordinate clause; as,

*Mélior est certa pax*, quam spērāta victōria, A certain peace is better than an expected victory. *Dūbius sum*, quid faciā.

(3.) When it is a participle, it may be modified like a verb. See § 203.

2. By a phrase consisting of a preposition and its case to which other words are added; as,

*De victōria Cēsāris fāma perfertur*, A report concerning *Cæsar's* victory is thought.

REMARK 1. As the case following the preposition is that of a noun or pronoun, it may be modified like the subject in any of the foregoing ways.

REM. 2. The preposition itself may be modified by an adverb, or by a noun or adjective in an oblique case; as,

*Longe ultra*, Far beyond. *Multo ante noctem*, Long before night. *Sexennio post Vēios captos*, Six years after the capture of Veil.

3. By a subordinate clause, to whose subject or predicate other words are added.

REMARK. These additions may be of the same form as those added to the principal subject or predicate of the sentence.

III. Compound additions. The subject may be modified:—

1. By two or more nouns in the same case as the subject, connected by a coördinate conjunction; as,

*Consules*, *Brūtus et Collatinus*, The consuls, *Brutus* and *Collatinus*.

2. By two or more oblique cases of a noun or pronoun connected coördinately; as,

*Vitæque necisque potestas*. *Periculorum et laborum incitamentum*.

3. By two or more adjectives, adjective pronouns, or participles, connected coördinately; as,

*Græve bellum perdiuturnumque*. *Animi teneri atque molles*.

4. By two or more adjective clauses connected coördinately; as,

*Et qui fecere, et qui facta aliorum scripsere, multi laudantur*. Sall.

5. By two or more of the preceding modifications connected coördinately; as,

*Genus hominum agreste, sine legibus, sine imperio, liberum, atque solutum*.

REM. 1. A modified grammatical subject, considered as one complex idea, may itself be modified; as,

*Omnia tua consilia*, All thy counsels. Here *omnia* modifies, not *consilia*, but the complex idea expressed by *tua consilia*. So *Triginta naves longa*. Præpōtens *finitimus re-*

REM. 2. An infinitive, with the words connected with it, may be the logical subject of a proposition; as,

*Virtus est vitium fugere, To shun vice is a virtue.*

REM. 3. A clause, or any member consisting of two or more clauses, may be the logical subject of a proposition; as,

*E celo descendit 'Nosce te ipsum.' Equum est, ut hoc facias.*

REM. 4. The noun or pronoun which is the subject of a proposition is put in the nominative, when the verb of the predicate is a finite verb; but when the verb is in the infinitive, the subject is put in the accusative.

NOTE 1. A verb in any mood, except the infinitive, is called a *finite verb*.

NOTE 2. In the following pages, when the term *subject* or *predicate* is used alone, the grammatical subject or predicate is intended.

## PREDICATE.

§ 203. 1. The predicate, like the subject, is either *simple*, *complex*, or *compound*.

2. The simple predicate, which is also called the *grammatical* predicate, is either a single finite verb, or the copula *sum* with a noun, adjective, and rarely with an adverb; as,

*Sol lucet, The sun shines. Multa animalia rēpunt, Many animals creep. Brevis est vō apudis, Pleasure is brief. Eurōpa est pēninsula, Europe is a peninsula. Rectissime sunt apud te omnia.*

3. The complex predicate, called also the *logical* predicate, consists of the simple predicate with its modifications; as,

*Scipio fudit Annibālis cōpias, Scipio routed the forces of Hannibal. Hare fudit is the grammatical, and fudit Annibālis cōpias the logical predicate.—So, Rōmulus Rōmānæ conditor urbis fuit.*

4. The compound predicate consists of two or more simple or complex predicates belonging to the same subject; as,

*Prōbitas laudātur et alget, Honesty is praised and neglected. Lēti via rāpuit, rāpietque gentes. Lucius Cūtilius fuit magnā vi et animi et corpōris, sed ingenio malo pravōque.*

### *Complex or Modified Predicate.*

5. The complex predicate is formed by adding other words to the simple predicate. All additions to the predicate, like the predicate itself, are either simple, complex, or compound.

I. *Simple additions.* The predicate may be modified by adding:—

1. A single word;—

(1.) A noun or adjective in the same case as the subject. This occurs after certain neuter verbs and passive verbs of naming, calling, etc. (See § 210, R. 3.); as,

*Servus fit libertinus, The slave becomes a freedman. Servius Tullius rex esse lēclārātus. Aristides justus est appellātus. Incēdo regina.*

(2.) A noun or pronoun in an oblique case; as,

*Spe vivimus, We live by hope. Deus regit mundum, God rules the world.*

(3.) An adverb either simple or modified; as,

*Sæpe venit*, He came *often*. *Festiva lente*, Hasten *slowly*. *Litteræ facile dis-*  
*cuntur*. *Chremes nimis graviter cruciatur adolescentulum*.

(4.) An infinitive mood; as,

*Cipit discere*, He desires *to learn*. *Audeo dicere*. *Ver esse caperat*.

2. A phrase consisting of a preposition and its case; as, *Venit ad urbem*, He came *to the city*.

3. A dependent substantive or adverbial clause; as,

*I'teror ne reprehendar*, I fear *that I shall be blamed*. *Zénonem, quum Athēnis*  
*esset, audibam frèquenter*. *Fac cogites*.

II. *Complex additions*. The predicate may be modified —

1. By a word to which other words are added.

REMARK. These words are the same as in the corresponding cases of complex additions to the subject. See § 202, II.

2. By a phrase consisting of a preposition and its case, to which other words are added. See complex additions to the subject, § 202.

3. By a subordinate clause, to whose subject or predicate other words are added. See complex subject, § 202, II, 3.

REM. 2. Each of the words constituting a proposition may be modified by two or more additions not dependent on, nor connected with each other, and consisting either of single words, phrases, or dependent clauses; as, *Agamem-*  
*nōnis belli gloria*. *Paternum odium erga Rōmānos*. *Mens sibi conscia recti*. *Mea maxime intērest, te vālere*. *Ago tibi grātias*. *Meipsum Inertiae condemno*. *Eos hoc mōneo*. *In quo te accuso*. *Mōnet eum, ut suspiciōnes vitet*.

III. *Compound additions*. 1. The predicate may be modified by two or more words, phrases, or clauses, joined together by a coördinate conjunction. See Compound additions to the subject, § 202, III.

2. The leading verb is usually either in the indicative or imperative mood, but sometimes in the subjunctive or the historical infinitive.

3. The members of a compound sentence are connected by coördinate conjunctions; those of a complex sentence by some relative word, or by a subordinate conjunction.

4. Instead of a dependent clause connected by a conjunction, a noun and participle, or two nouns, sometimes stand as an abridged proposition; as,

*Bello confecto discessit*, i. e. *quum bellum confectum esset, discessit*, The war being finished, or when the war was finished, he departed. *Nil desperandum*. *Toucro dūce*.

5. An infinitive may be modified like the verb of a predicate.

6. *Agreement* is the correspondence of one word with another in gender, number, case, or person.

7. A word is said to *govern* another, when it requires it to be put in a certain case or mood.

8. A word is said to *depend* on another, when its case, gender, number, mood, tense, or person, is determined by that word.

9. A word is said to *follow* another, when it depends upon it in construction, whatever may be its position in the sentence.

# APPOSITION.

§ 204. A noun, annexed to another noun or to a pronoun, and denoting the same person or thing, is put in the same case; as,

*Urbs Rōma*, The city *Rome*. *Nos consules*, We *consuls*. So *Apud Herodotum*, *patrem histōriæ*, *sunt innumerabiles fabulæ*, In Herodotus, the father of history, etc. *Cic. Lapidēs silices, flint stones*. *Liv. Ante mē consulem*, Before I was consul. *Fons cui nōmen Arethūsa est*. *Cic.*

REMARK 1. (a.) A noun, thus annexed to another, is said to be in *apposition* to it. It is generally added for the sake of explanation, identification, or description; sometimes it denotes character or purpose; as, *Ejus fugæ comitem me adiunxi*, I added myself, as a companion of his flight; and sometimes the time, cause, reason, etc., of an action; as, *Alexander puer*, Alexander when a boy. *Cito senex scribere histōriam instituit*. *Suet.*

(b.) A noun in apposition, like an adjective used as an epithet, (§ 205, N. 2,) assumes the attribute denoted by it as belonging to the noun which it limits, while the predicate-nominative affirms it. Hence both nouns belong to the same part of the sentence, whether subject or predicate. In cases of apposition, there seems to be an ellipsis of the ancient participle *ens*, being; *qui est*, who is; *qui vocatur*, who is called; or the like.

REM. 2. If the annexed noun has a form of the same gender as the other noun, it takes that form; as, *Unus magister egregius*. *Plin. Philosophia magistra vitæ*. *Cic.* If the annexed noun is of the common gender, the adjective qualifying it takes the gender of the preceding noun; as, *Laurus fidiſſimus custos*.

REM. 3. The annexed noun sometimes differs from the other in gender or in number; as, *Duo fulmina belli, Scipiddas*, cladem *Libyæ*. *Virg. Mitylnæ, urbs nobilis*. *Cic. Tulliolæ, deliciæ nostræ*. *Id.*;—and sometimes in both; as, *Nate, meæ vires*. *Virg. Nos, animæ viles, inhumata infestæque turba*. *Id.*

REM. 4. The substantive pronoun is sometimes omitted before the word in apposition to it; as, *Consul dixi*, scil. *ego*; (I) the consul said. And instead of the substantive pronoun, a possessive adjective pronoun is sometimes used; as, *Tua domus, talis viri*. *Cic.* See § 211, R. 3, (b.)

REM. 5. A noun may be in apposition to two or more nouns, and, in such case, is usually put in the plural; as, *M. Antonius, C. Cassius*, tribūni *plēbis*, *M. Antonius, C. Cassius*, tribunes of the people. *Cæs. Publius et Serrius Sullæ, Serri filii*. *Sall. Tib. et Gaius Gracchi*. *Cic. Oratōnes L. et C. Aureliōrum Orestarum*. *Id.* But sometimes in the singular; as, *Cn. et L. Domitius*. *Cic.*

(1.) So when the nouns are connected by *cum*, the annexed noun taking the case of the former; as, *Dicæarchum vëro cum Aristoxëno, doctos sâne homines, omittamus*. *Cic.*

(2.) If the nouns are proper names of different genders, a masculine noun is annexed rather than a feminine, when both forms exist; as, *Ad Ptolemæum Cleopatramque rēges legatī missi sunt*. *Liv.*

REM. 6. The annexed noun is sometimes in the genitive; as, *Urbem Patāvī locavit*, The city of Patavium. *Virg. Plurimus Eridāni amnis*. *Id. Arbōres fici nunquam viderat*. *Cic. In oppido Antiochiæ*. *Id. Rupili et Persi par*. *Hor.*

REM. 7. The name of a town in the genitive occurs with an ablative in apposition to it; as, *Corinthi Achaïæ urbe*; At Corinth, a city of Achaia. *Tac. Antiochiæ, celebrī urbe*. *Cic.* See § 221, Note, and § 254, Rem. 3.

REM. 8. (a.) A proper name, after *nōmen* or *cognōmen*, with a verb followed by a dative, is put in apposition either to *nōmen*, etc., or to the dative, the latter by a species of attraction; as, *Fons, cui nōmen Arethūsa est*. *Cic. Stirps viriliæ, sui Ascanium parentes dicere nōmen*. *Liv. Nōmen Arctūro est mihi*, I have the

name *Arcturus*. Plaut. *Cui nunc cognōmen Inlo additur*. Virg. *Cui Egerio in dētum nōmen*. Liv.—(b.) The name may also be put in the genitive; as, *Nōmen Mercūrii est mihi*. Plaut. *Q. Metellus, cui Macedonici nōmen inlātum erat*. Vell. Cf. R. 6.—(c.) In *Illo aetate*, *cui sectus Aurea nōmen*, Ov. Met. 15, 96, *Aur. ea* is used as an indeclinable noun, instead of *Auream* (scil. *aetatem*); or *Aur. ae*, dat. (scil. *aetati*).

REM. 9. A clause may supply the place of one of the nouns; as, *Cogitet oratōrem institui—rem arduam*, Let him reflect that an orator is training—a difficult thing. Quint.—So also a neuter adjective used substantively: as, *Triste lūpus stabilis*, The wolf, a sad thing to the folds. Virg. *Vārium et mutabile semper femina*. Id.

REM. 10. Sometimes the former noun denotes a whole, and its parts are expressed by nouns in apposition to it; as, *Onerārie, pars maxima ad Ægimurum—aliæ adversus urbem ipsam delitæ sunt*, The ships of burden were carried, the greatest part, to Æginurus,—others opposite to the city itself. Liv. *Pictōres et poētæ suum quisque opus a vulgo considerāri vult*. Cic. In the construction of the ablative absolute, *quisque* remains in the nominative, though the word to which it is in apposition is in the ablative; as, *Multis sibi quisque imperium petentibus*. Sall. J. 18. So also, in Liv. 26, 29, *quisque* remains in the nominative although the word to which it is in apposition is in the accusative with the infinitive.

To this rule may be subjoined that which relates to the agreement of interrogative and responsive words.

REM. 11. The principal noun or pronoun in the answer to a question, must be in the same case as the corresponding interrogative word; as,

*Quis hērus est tibi?* Amphitruo, scil. *est*. Who is your master? Amphitruo (is.) Plaut. *Quid queris?* Librum, scil. *quero*. What are you looking for? A book. *Quōtā hōrā venisti?* Sextā. At what hour did you come? At the sixth.

NOTE 1. Instead of the genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding possessive pronoun is often used, agreeing with its noun; as, *Cūjus est liber?* Meus, (not *Mei*.) (See § 211, Rem. 3, (b.)) So *cūjum* for genitive *cūjus?* *Cūjum pēcus?* an *Melibæi?* Non; *verum Ægōnis*. Virg.

NOTE 2. Sometimes the rules of syntax require the responsive to be in a different case from that of the interrogative; as, *Quanti emisti?* *Viginti minis* *Damnatusne es furti?* Imo *aliō crimine*. See §§ 214, R. 1, and 217, R. 2.

## ADJECTIVES.

§ 205. Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, agree with their nouns, in gender, number, and case; as,

*Bōnus vir*, A good man.

*Benigna māter*, A kind mother.

*Triste bellum*, A sad war.

*Spes amissā*, Hope being lost.

*Bōnos viros*, Good men.

*Vānæ lēges*, Useless laws.

*Minācia verba*, Threatening words.

*Hæc res*, This thing.

So, *Mea māter est benigna*.

*Hæc lēges vānæ sunt*.

NOTE 1. Adjectives, according to their meaning, (§ 104), are divided into two classes—*qualifying* and *limiting*—the former denoting some *property* or *quality* of a noun; as, a *wise* man, lead is *heavy*; the latter *defining* or *restricting* its meaning; as, *this* man, *ten* cities. To the former class belong such adjectives as denote a property or quality, including all participles and participial adjectives; to the latter, the adjective pronouns pronominal adjectives, and numerals.



**NOTE 2.** An adjective, participle, or pronoun, may either be used as an epithet to modify a noun, or, with the copula *sum*, may constitute a predicate. In the former case the quality is *assumed*, in the latter it is *asserted*. In both cases, the rule for their agreement is, in general, the same. See § 210, R. 1.

**NOTE 3.** Any word or combination of words added to a noun to modify or limit its meaning is of the nature of an adjective.

**NOTE 4.** In the following remarks, the word *adjective* is to be considered as including participles, either alone or combined with the auxiliary *sum*, and also adjective pronouns, unless the contrary is intimated.

**REMARK 1.** An adjective agrees also with a substantive pronoun, taking its gender from that of the noun for which the pronoun stands; as, *Ipse capellas æger ago*, scil. *ego*, *Melibæus*; Virg. *Fortunate puer, tu nunc eris alter ab illo*. Id. *Ut se totum ei tradêret*. Nep. *O me miserum* (spoken by a man), *miseram me* (spoken by a woman). So *salvi sumus, salve sumus*, scil. *nos*, masculine or feminine.—In general propositions which include both sexes, the pronouns are considered masculine; as, *Nos fruges consumere nati*. Hor.

**REM. 2.** An adjective may belong to each of two or more nouns, and in such case is put in the plural. If the nouns are of the same gender, the adjective agrees with them in gender, as well as in number; as,

*Lupus et agnus sti compulsi*, A wolf and a lamb, constrained by thirst. Phæd. *Sicilia Sardiniaque amissæ*. Liv.

When the nouns are of different genders,

(1.) If they denote living things, the adjective is masculine rather than feminine; as,

*Pater mihi et mater mortui sunt*, My father and mother are dead. Ter. So also *uterque* in the singular. *Procumbit uterque*, scil. *Deucalion et Pyrrha*. Ovid.

(2.) If they denote things without life, the adjective is generally neuter; as,

*His gens, ætas, eloquentia præpe æquâlia fuere*, Their family, age, and eloquence, were nearly equal. Sall. *Regna, impéria, nobilitates, homines, divitiæ in casu sita sunt*. Cic. *Huic bella, rapinæ, discordia civilis, grata fuere*. Sall. *Anima atque animus, quamvis integra recens in corpus eant*. Lucr.

**NOTE.** When nouns denoting things without life are of the same gender (either masculine or feminine), but of different numbers, the adjective is sometimes neuter; as, *Cræso et vita et patrimonii partes, et urbs Barce concessa sunt*. Just.; sometimes also when both nouns are in the singular number; as, *Plerosque velocitas et regio hostibus ignara tutata sunt*. Sall. *Nox atque præda remorata sunt*. Id.

(3.) If one of the nouns denotes an animate, and another an inanimate thing, the adjective is sometimes neuter, and sometimes takes the gender of that which has life; as,

*Numidæ atque signa militaria obscurati sunt*, The Numidians and the military standards were concealed. Sall. *Romani regera regnumque Macedoniæ sua futura sciunt*. Liv. *Jâne, fac æternos pacem pacisque ministros*. Ovid.

**Exc. to REM. 2.** The adjective often agrees with the nearest noun, and is understood with the rest; as,

*Sociis et regi recepto*, Our companions and king having been recovered. Virg. *Agri omnes et maria*. Cic. *Cognitum est salutem, liberos, famam, fortunas esse carissimas*. Cic.

**NOTE.** A noun in the singular, followed by an ablative with *cum*, has sometimes a plural adjective, the gender being the same as if the nouns were connected by *et*; as, *Filiū cum filio accitos*. Liv. *Ilia cum Lauso de Amit' re sātī*. Ovid. *Filiū Alexandri cum mātē in arcem custōdiendos mittit*. Just.

**REM. 3.** (1.) An adjective qualifying a collective noun is often put in the plural, taking the gender of the individuals which the noun denotes; as,

*Pars certāre pārātī*. A part, prepared to contend. Virg. *Pars per agrū dilapsi .... suam quisque spem exsēquentes*. Liv. *Supplex turba erant sine iudice tūti*. Ovid. This construction always occurs when the collective noun is the subject of a plural verb. See § 209, R. 11.

(2.) Sometimes, though rarely, an adjective in the singular takes the gender of the individuals; as, *Pars arduus altis pulvērulentus equis fūrit*. Virg. *Pars āna dūcum—fractus morbo*. Ovid.

(3.) Sometimes other nouns, which only in a figurative sense denote human beings, have by *synesis* an adjective of a different gender from their own, referring to the words which they include; as, *Latium Cipuūque agro mulctātī* Latium and Capua were deprived of their land. Liv. *Cipitū conjurātōnis virgis cæsi ac sēcūri percussi sunt*. Id. *Auxilia trāti*. Id. So after *millia*; as, *Duo millia Tyrīōrum, crucibus affixi*. Curt. Cf. § 323, 3, (4.)

**REM. 4.** Two adjectives in the singular are sometimes joined to a plural noun; as, *Mīria Tyrhēnum atque Adriaticū*, The Tuscan and Adriatic seas. Liv. *Cum lēgiōnibus sēcundā et tertiā*. Liv. *Circa portas Collinam Esquilinamque*. Id. But sometimes the noun is in the singular; as, *Inter Esquilinam Collinamque portam*. Id. *Lēgiō Martia et quarta*. In comic writers, an adjective or participle in the singular is sometimes used with a plural pronoun; as, *Nōbis præsente*. Plaut. *Absente nōbis*. Ter.

**REM. 5.** A participle which should regularly agree with the subject of a proposition, when placed after the noun of the predicate, (a) sometimes takes the gender and number of the latter; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*. Not every error is to be called folly. Cic. *Gens universa Vēnētī appellātī*. Liv. (b.) Sometimes also it agrees with a noun following the subject and in apposition to it; as, *Corinthum, patres vestri, vltius Græciæ lūmen, extinctum esse vobiscūm*. Cic.; or (c) with the noun of a subordinate sentence; as, *Illōrum urbem ut prōpugnaculum oppositum esse barbaris*. Nep.

**REM. 6.** When the subject of an infinitive is omitted after a dative of the same signification, (§ 239, R. 1,) an adjective in the predicate, belonging to that subject, is sometimes put in the dative; as, *Mihi negligenti esse non licuit*, i. e. *me negligentem esse mihi non licuit*. Cic. *Da mihi justo sanctoque vltori*. Hor. A noun is sometimes expressed with the adjective; as, *Vobis necesse est fortibus esse viris*. Liv. But the adjective often agrees with the omitted subject; as, *Expedit bonas esse vobis*, scil. *vos*. Ter. *Si civi Rōmāno licet esse Gāditanum*. Cic.

**REM. 7.** (1.) An adjective is often used alone, especially in the plural, the noun, with which it agrees, being understood; as,

*Bōni sunt rārī*, scil. *hōmines*, Good (men) are rare. *Cæsar suos misit*, scil. *mīlites*, Cæsar sent his (soldiers). *Dextra*, scil. *minus*, The right (hand). *Implement pinguis fērinæ*, scil. *carnis*. Virg. *Hiberna*, scil. *casira*. *Altum*, scil. *māre*. *Quartāna*, scil. *febris*. *Immortāles*, scil. *Dī*. Lucr. *Amantium*, scil. *romānum*. Ter. *Ilum indignanti similem, similemque minanti aspicerēs*, scil. *hōmini*. Virg. *Tibi prius dā fēro*, scil. *partes*. Cic. *Respice prætēritum*, scil. *tempus* which is often omitted, as in *ex quo*, *ex eo*, and *ex illo*, scil. *tempore*. *Cognosce meorum omnium lītēris*, scil. *amicōrum*. Cic. So patial adjectives; as *Missi ad Parthum Armēniumque lēgāt*, scil. *rēgem*. *In Tusculāno*, scil. *oradio*.

**NOTE 1.** The noun to be supplied with masculine adjectives is commonly *hómínes*, but when they are possessives, it is oftener *ámíci*, *mílités*, *cíves*, or *pro-pínquí*.

**NOTE 2.** The noun to be supplied is often contained in a preceding clause.

(2.) An adjective in the neuter gender, without a noun, is often used substantively, where, in English, the word *thing* or *things* is to be supplied; as,

*Bónum*, a good thing; *malum*, a bad thing, or, an evil. So *honestum rerum*, *turpe*; and in the plural, *bóna*, *mála*, *turpia*, *lévia*, *caelestia*, etc. *Lábor omnia vincit*, Labor overcomes all things. Virg.

**NOTE 1.** The Latins generally preferred adding *res* to an adjective, to using its neuter as a substantive. But sometimes, when *res* is used, an adjective or pronoun referring to it is put in the neuter instead of the feminine; as, *Eárum rerum utrumque*. Cic. *Humánurum rerum fortána pleráque régit*. Sall. *Illu te rógo, sumptui ne parcas ullá in re, quod ad válutádinem ópus síi*. Cic. *Omnium rerum mors est extrémum*. Cic.

**NOTE 2.** Instead of *thing* or *things*, other words may sometimes be supplied, as the sense requires. With a preposition, neuter adjectives form adverbial phrases; as, *A prímo*, At first. Plaut. *Per máxum*, Mutually. Virg. *In prímo*, In the first place. *Ad hoc*, or *Ad hæc*, Moreover, besides.

(3.) Adjectives used substantively often have other adjectives agreeing with them; as, *Alia omnia*, All other (things.) Plin. *Iniquissámi mei*, My greatest enemies. *Fámilíarís meus*. Cic. *Iniquus noster*. Id. *Iusta fánebria*. Liv. *Jóris omnia pléna*. scil. sunt. Virg.

**REM. 8.** (a.) Imperatives, infinitives, adverbs, clauses, and words considered merely as such, may be used substantively, and take a neuter adjective in the singular number; as, *Suprémum vále díxít*, He pronounced a last farewell. Ovid. *Dulce et decórum est pro patriá móri*. Hor. *Velle suum cuíque est*. Pers. *Cras istud quando vénit?* Mart. J. *Rédibo actátum*. A. Id. *actátum diu est*. Plaut. *Excepto quod non simul esses, cétéra latus*. Hor. (b.) In the poets and later prose writers the adjective, as in Greek, is sometimes in the neuter plural; as, *Ut Aenéas példago jactétur*—*nóta tibi*. Virg.

**REM. 9.** (a.) Adjectives and adjective pronouns, instead of agreeing with their nouns, are sometimes put in the neuter gender, with a partitive signification, and their nouns in the genitive; as, *Multum temporis*, for *multum tempus*; much time. *Id rei*, for *ea res*; that thing. So, plus *éloquentiæ*, the other form not being admissible with *plus*. (See § 110, (b.)) Neuter adjectives are used in like manner in the plural; as, *Vánu rerum*, for *vánæ res*. Hor. *Pléráque húmá-nárum rerum*. Sall. Cf. § 212, R. 3, N. 4. But in some such examples, the adjective seems to be used substantively, according to Rem. 7, (2); as, *Acúta bellí*. Hor. *Telláris óperta*. Virg. *Summa pectóris*.

**NOTE.** The adjectives thus used partitively in the singular, for the mos part, signify quantity. See § 212, Rem. 3., Note 1.

**REM. 10.** A neuter adjective is sometimes used adverbially in the nominative or accusative, both singular and plural; as, *Dulce ridéntem Láliu n amábo*, dulce loquentem. Hor. *Magnum stridens*. Virg. *Arma horrendum sonáre*. Id. *Multa deos vénérátí sunt*. Cic. *Hólie aut summum cras*. Id. See § 192, II. 4, (b.)

**REM. 11.** (a.) A noun is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *Nemo miles Rómánu*, No Roman soldier. Liv. *Nemo fére adólescens*. Cic. *Vir nemo bónus*. Id. Cf. § 207, R. 31, (c.) *Tibérím accólis flúviis orbátum*. Tac. *Incôla turba*. Ovid. The poets use in this manner the Greek patronymics in *as* and *is*; as, *Pélius hústa*. Ovid. *Laurus Parnásis*. Id. *Ursa Libýsta*. Virg. Cf. also § 129, 8.

(b.) An adverb is also sometimes used as an adjective; as, *Néque énim ignírí símus ante málorum*; i. e. *antiquórum* or *præterítórum*. Virg. *Nunc homínú móres*. Plaut.

**REM. 12. (a.)** An adjective or adjective pronoun, used *partitively*, stands alone, and commonly takes the gender of the genitive plural, which depends upon it; but when it is preceded by a noun of a different gender, to which it refers, it usually takes that gender, but sometimes that of the genitive; as, *Elephanto belluorum nulla est prudentior*, No beast is wiser than the elephant. Cic. *Indus, qui est omnium fluminum maximus*. Cic. *Velocissimum omnium animalium est delphinus*. Plin. See § 212, Rem. 2.—(b.) So also with *de, ex, in, apud, inter*, etc., with the ablative or accusative instead of the partitive genitive. See § 212, R. 2, N. 4.

(c.) When a collective noun follows in the genitive singular, (§ 212, R. 2.) the adjective takes the gender of the individuals which compose it; as, *Vir fortissimus nostrae civitatis*, The bravest man of our state. Cic. *Maximus stirpis* Liv.

**REM. 13. (a.)** When a possessive pronoun or adjective is used instead of the genitive of its primitive or of its corresponding noun (see § 211, R. 3, (b.) and (c.) and R. 4), an adjective agreeing with that genitive is sometimes joined with such possessive; as, *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*, The fault of me alone cannot be corrected. Cic. *Noster duorum eventus*. Liv. *Tuum ipsius studium*. Cic. *Pugna Romana stabilis suo pondere incumbentium in hostem*. Liv.

(b.) Sometimes a noun in the genitive is expressed, in apposition to the substantive pronoun for which the possessive stands; as, *Pectus tuum, hominis simplicis*. Cic.

**REM. 14.** An adjective, properly belonging to the genitive, is sometimes made to agree with the noun on which the genitive depends, and *vice versa*; as, *Edificationis tuae consilium* for *tuum*, Your design of building. Cic. *Accusantes violati hospitii fœdus*, for *violatum*. Liv. *Ad majora initia rerum ducentibus fatis*, for *majorum*. Id. *Iis nominibus civitatum, quibus ex civitatibus*, etc., for *eorum civitatum*. Cæs.

**REM. 15. (a.)** An adjective agreeing with a noun is sometimes used, instead of an adverb qualifying a verb, especially in poetry; as, *Ecce venit Telamon properus*, Lo, Telamon comes in haste. Ovid. *Læti pacem agitabamus*, for *laete*. Sall. *Aeneas se matutinus agebat*, for *mane*. Virg. *Nec lupo grægibus nocturnus obambulat*, i. e. by night. Id.

(b.) So *nullus* is used for *non*; as, *Mementi tametsi nullus moneas*, Though you do not suggest it. Ter. *Sextus ab armis nullus discedit*. Cic. *Prior, primus, princeps, propior, proximus, solus, unus, ultimus, nullus, totus*, and some others, are used instead of their neuters, adverbially; as, *Priori Remo augurium venisse fertur*. Liv. *Hispânia postréma omnium præinciurum perdomita est*. Liv. *Scævola solos novem menses Asia præfuit*, Only nine months. Cic. *Unum hoc dico*, This only I say. Id. This is sometimes done, for want of an adverb of appropriate meaning; as, *Pronus cecidit*. Ovid. *Frequentes convenerant*. Sall.

(c.) In such expressions, *tu*, in the nominative, sometimes takes an adjective in the vocative, and *vice versa*; as, *Sic venias hodiernæ*. Tibull. *Salve, primus omnium patris patrie appellate*. Plin.

**REM. 16. (a.)** A noun is often qualified by two or more adjectives; and sometimes the complex idea, formed by a noun with one or more adjectives, is itself qualified by other adjectives, which agree in gender, etc. with the noun.

(b.) When several adjectives, each independently of the other, qualify a noun, if they precede it, they are almost always connected by one or more conjunctions; as, *Multa et varia et copiosa oratione*. Cic. If they follow it, the conjunction is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted; as, *Vir altus et excellens*. Cic. *Actio, varia, vehemens, plena veritatis*. Id.

(c.) But when one of the adjectives qualifies the noun, and another the complex idea formed by the first with the noun, the conjunction is always omitted; as, *Periculosisimum civile bellum*, A most dangerous civil war. Cic. *Malam domesticam disciplinam*. Id. So with three or more adjectives; *Externos multos claros viros nominarem*. Cic. Cf. § 202, III., R. 1.

**REM. 17.** The first part, last part, middle part, etc., of any place or time are generally expressed in Latin by the adjectives *primus*, *médius*, *ultimus*, *extrémus*, *intímus*, *infímus*, *ínus*, *summus*, *suprémus*, *rétiquus*, and *cétèra*; as,

*Média nox*, The middle of the night. *Summa arbor*, The top of a tree. *Suprémus montes*, The summits of the mountains. But these adjectives frequently occur without this signification; as, *Ab extrémò complexu*, From the last embrace. Cic. *Infímò loco natus*, Of the lowest rank. Id.

**REM. 18.** The participle of the compound tenses of verbs, used impersonally in the passive voice, is neuter; as, *Ventum est*. Cic. *Itum est in viscèra terræ*. Ovid. *Scribendum est mihi*. See § 184, 2 and 3.

## PRONOUNS.—RELATIVES.

§ 206. **REM. 19. (a.)** Relatives agree with their antecedents in gender, number, and person, but their case depends on the construction of the clause to which they belong; as,

*Puer qui lègit*, The boy who reads. *Ædificiũ quod extruxit*, The house which he built. *Litèræ quas dedi*, The letter which I gave. *Non sum quális eram*, I am not such as I was. Hor. So *Deus cùjus múnere vivimus*, cui nullus est similis, quem colimus, a quo facta sunt omnia, est æternus. *Addictus Herminippo, et ab hoc ductus est*. *Aquilo, quantus frangit ilices*. Hor.

**NOTE 1.** This rule includes all adjectives and adjective pronouns which relate to a noun in a preceding clause. Its more common application, however, is to the construction of the demonstrative pronouns and the relative *qui*.

**NOTE 2.** When a pronoun refers to the mere words of a sentence, it is said to be used *logically*. *Qui* and *is* are so used, and sometimes also *hic* and *ille*.

**(b.)** The relative may be considered as placed between two cases of the same noun, either expressed or understood, with the former of which it agrees in gender, number, and person, and with the latter in gender, number, and case.

**(1.)** Sometimes both nouns are expressed; as,

*Erant omnino duo itinèra, quibus itinèribus domo exire possent*, There were only two routes, by which routes they could leave home. Cæs. *Crudèlissimo bello, quále bellum nulla unquam barbaria gessit*. Cic. But it is most frequent with the word *dies*; as, *Fòre in armis certo die, qui dies fáturus erat*, etc. Cic. The repetition of the substantive is necessary, when, for any reason, it becomes doubtful to which of two or more preceding substantives the relative refers.

**(2.)** Usually the antecedent noun only is expressed; as,

*Anímuu rège, qui, nìsi pàret, impèrat*, Govern your passions, which rule, unless they obey. Hor. *Tantæ multitudinis, quantam capít urbs nostra, concursus est ad me factus*. Cic. *Quot capítum vivunt, totidem studiòrum milia*. Hor.

**(3.)** Sometimes the latter noun only is expressed, especially when the relative clause, as is frequently the case, precedes that of the antecedent; as,

*Quibús de rébus ad me scripsisti, còram vidèbitus*; scil. *de rébus*, In regard to the things of which you wrote to me, we will consider when we meet. Cic. *In quem primum egressi sunt locum, Trója vocátur*; scil. *locus*. Liv. *Quantà vi expèunt, tantà defendunt* Quàlesque vius eram vidisse viros, ex ordine tales aspicio. Ovid.

(a.) The place of the antecedent is sometimes supplied by a demonstrative pronoun; as, *Ad quas res optissimi erimus, in iis potissimum elaborabimus.* Cic. But the demonstrative is often omitted when its case is the same as that of the relative, and not unfrequently, also, when the cases are different. When the relative clause precedes that of the antecedent, *is* is expressed only for the sake of emphasis. Hence we find such sentences as, *Mucimum ornamento amicitie tollit, qui ex ea tollit verecundiam.* Cic. *Terra quod accipit, numquam sine usura reddit.* Id.—The demonstrative adjectives and adverbs are in like manner often omitted before their corresponding relatives; *talis* before *qualis*, *tantum* before *quantum*, *inde* before *unde*, *ibi* before *ubi*, etc.

(b.) Sometimes the latter noun only is expressed, even when the relative clause does not precede; as, *Quis non malarum quas amor curas habet, hæc inter obliuiscitur?* Hor.

(4.) Sometimes neither noun is expressed; this happens especially when the antecedent is designedly left indefinite, or when it is a substantive pronoun; as,

*Qui bene luit, bene vixit,* scil. *homo*, (He) who has well escaped notice, has lived well. Ovid. *Sunt quos curriculo pulverem Olympicum colligisse iuvat,* scil. *homines*, There are whom it delights, i. e. Some delight. Hor. *Non habeo quod te accusem,* scil. *id propter quod.* Cic. *Non solum sapiens videaris, qui hinc absis, sed etiam beatus,* scil. *tu.* Cic.

(5.) The relative is sometimes either entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit; Tyra tenuere coloni,* scil. *quam* or *eam*, There was an ancient city (which) Tyrian colonists possessed, Virg.; or, if once expressed, is afterwards omitted even when, if supplied, its case would be different; as, *Bocchus cum peditibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuérant, Romanos invadunt, for et qui non in priore,* etc. Sall.

(6.) (a.) The relative sometimes takes the case of the antecedent, instead of its own proper case; as, *Quum scribas et aliquid agas eorum, quorum conuesti, for quæ.* Cic. *Rupit quibus quisque poterat elatis, exibant, for iis, quæ quisque efferre poterat, elatis.* Liv.

(b.) The antecedent likewise sometimes takes the case of the relative, the substantive either preceding or following the pronoun; as, *Ursem quam statim vestra est, for urbs.* Virg. *Eunuchum quem dedisti nobis, quas turbas dedisti! for Eunuchus.* Ter. *Naucratem quem convenire volui, in navi non erat.* Plaut. *Atque alii, quorum comedia prisca virorum est, for atque alii viri, quorum est.* Hor. *Illi, scripta quibus comedia prisca viris est, for illi viri, quibus.* Id. *Quos pueros miseram, epistolam mihi attulerunt.* Cic.

These constructions are said to occur by *attraction*.

(7.) (a.) An adjective, which properly belongs to the antecedent, is sometimes placed in the relative clause, and agrees with the relative; as, *Inter jocos quos inconditos jaciunt, for jocos inconditos, quos,* etc. Amidst the rude jests which they utter. Liv. *Verbis, quæ magna volant.* Virg. *Calore, quem multum habet.* Cic.

(b.) This is the common position of the adjective, when it is a numeral, a comparative or a superlative; as, *Nocte quam in terris ultimam egit,* The last night which he spent upon earth. *Esculapius, qui primus vulnus obligavisse dicitur.* Cic. *Consiliis pare, quæ nunc pulcherrima Nantes dat senior,* Listen to the excellent advice, which, etc. Virg. Some instances occur in which an adjective belonging to the relative clause, is placed in that of the antecedent; as, *Quum venissent ad vada Volaterrana, quæ nominantur,* Which are called Volaterran. Cic.

(8.) When to the relative or demonstrative is joined a noun explanatory of its antecedent, but of a different gender or number, the relative or demonstrative usually agrees with that noun; as,

*Santonēs non longe a Tōlōsātium finibus absunt, quæ civitas est in provinciâ*  
The Santones are not far distant from the borders of the Tolosates, which  
*state* is in the province. Cæs. *Ante comitia, quod tempus haud longe aberrat.*  
Sall. *Rōmæ janum Diāne pōpuli Lātini cum pōpulo Rōmāno fecerunt*: ea erat  
confessio cōpūt rerum Rōmānæ esse; i. e. that thing or that act. Liv. *Si omnia*  
*facienda sunt, quæ amici vellent, nō amicitie tales, sed conjurationes putandas*  
*sunt*; i. e. such things or such connections. Cic. So, *Ista quidem vis*, Surely  
this is force. *Ea ipsa causa belli fuit*, for *id ipsum*. Hither also may be refer-  
red such explanatory sentences as, *Qui meus amor in te est*, Such is my love  
for you. Cic.

(9.) If the relative refers to one of two nouns, denoting the same  
object, but of different genders, it agrees with either; as,

*Flūmen est Arar quod in Rhodānum influit.* Cæs. *Ad flūmen Ozum perortum*  
*est, qui turbidus semper est.* Curt.

(10.) When, in a relative clause containing the verb *sunt* or a verb  
of naming, esteeming, etc., a predicate-noun occurs of a different  
gender from the antecedent, the relative commonly agrees with the  
latter; but when the preceding noun is to be explained and distin-  
guished from another, the relative agrees with the former; as,

*Naturæ vultus quem dixere Chaos*, The appearance of nature which they  
called chaos. Ovid. *Genus hominum quod Hclōtes vocat.* Nep. *Animal,*  
*quem vocamus hominem*, The animal whom we call man. Cic. *Locus in car-*  
*cere*, quod Tullianum appellatur. Sall. *Pecuniarum conquisitio*; eos esse bel-  
liciosos nervos dictitans Mucianus. Tac.

(11.) The relative sometimes agrees with a noun, either equiva-  
lent in sense to the antecedent, or only implied in the preceding  
clause; as,

*Abundantia eorum rerum, quæ mortales prima putant*, An abundance of those  
things, which mortals esteem most important. Sall. Cf. § 205, R. 7, (2.) N. 1.  
But sometimes when a neuter adjective used substantively has preceded, *res*  
with a relative follows; as, *Permulta sunt, quæ dici possunt, quæ re intelligatur.*  
Cic. *Fatiale nostrum*, quæ, etc., scil. *Cleopatra*. Hor. Cf. § 323, 3, (4.)

(a.) A relative or demonstrative pronoun, referring to a collective noun, or  
to a noun which only in a figurative sense denotes a human being, sometimes  
takes the gender and number of the individuals which the noun implies; as,  
*Epistatū, quos.* Sall. *Genus, qui premuntur.* Cic. *Senatus*—ii. Sall.

(b.) A pronoun in the plural often follows a noun in the singular, referring  
not only to the noun but to the class of persons or things to which it belongs,  
as, *Democrītum omittamus; nihil est enim apud istos, quod*, etc. i. e. with Demo-  
critus and his followers. Cic. *Diogenēs negavit se jure illo nigro quod canes*  
*caput erat, delectatum.* Tum is, qui illa corerat, etc. Id.

(12.) The antecedent is sometimes implied in a possessive pronoun; as,  
*Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui natum tali ingenio prædicitum habērem*; scil.  
*mei*, All were extolling my fortune, who, etc. Ter. *Id mea minime refert, qui*  
*sus natus maximus.* Id. *Nostrum consilium laudandum est, qui noluerim*, etc. Cic.;  
or in a possessive adjective; as, *Servili tumultu*, quos, etc. Cæs.

(13.) (a.) Sometimes the antecedent is a proposition; the relative then is  
commonly neuter; as, *Postremo, quod difficillimum inter mortales, gloriā in-*  
*vidiam vicisti*, Finally, you have overcome envy with glory, which, among men  
is most difficult. Sall. *Epistēm exspectabam jam tuus literas, idque curi multas*  
Cic.

(3.) In such instances, *id* is generally placed before the relative pronoun,  
referring to the idea in the antecedent clause; as, *Sive, id quod constat, Platonis*  
*studiosus audiendi fuit.* Cic. *Diem consumi volebant, id quod fecerunt.* Id.

(c.) Sometimes *id*, referring to a clause, agrees with a noun following as  
*idem velle atque idem nolle, ea demum firma amicitia est.* Sall.

(14.) *Quod* relating to a preceding statement, and serving the purpose of transition, is often placed at the beginning of a sentence after a period, where it may be translated by 'nay,' 'now,' or 'and.' It is thus used especially before *si*, *etsi*, and *nisi*; as, *Quodsi illinc inanis profugisses, tamen ista tua fuga nefaria iudicaretur*, i. e. and even if you had fled without taking any thing with you, still, etc. Cic. Verr. 1, 14. *Quodsi*, 'if then,' is especially used in introducing something assumed as true, from which further inferences may be drawn. Sometimes also it is equivalent to 'although.' *Quodnisi* signifies 'if then—not'; as, *Quodnisi ego meo adventu illius conatus diquantulum repressissem, tam multos*, etc. *Quodetsi* is 'nay, even if'; as, *Quodetsi ingeniis magnis præditi quidam dicendi copiam sine ratione consequuntur, ars tamen est dux certior*.—*Quod* is found also before *quum*, *ubi*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *nē* and *utram*, where the conjunction alone would seem to be sufficient; as, *Quod utnam illum, cuius impio facinore in has miserrimas projectus sum, eadem hæc simulantem videam*. Sall. It is so used even before a relative in Cic. Phil. 10, 4, *fin.*—*Quod*, in such examples, seems to be an accusative, with *propter* or *ad* understood.

(15.) (a.) A relative is always plural, when referring to two or more nouns in the singular. If the nouns are of different genders, the gender of the relative is determined by Reim. 2, page 185; as, *Ninus et Semiramis, qui Babilona condiderant*, Ninus and Semiramis, who had founded Babylon. Vell. *Crebro funtibus et tibicine, quæ sibi sumpsérat*. Cic. *Ex summâ lætitiâ atque lasciviâ, quæ daturna quies pepèrerat*. Sall. *Naves et captivos quæ ad Chium capta erant*. Liv.

(b.) If the antecedents are of different persons, the relative follows the first person rather than the second or third, and the second rather than the third; as, *Tu et pater, qui in convivio eratis*. *Ego et tu, qui erâmus*. Cf. § 209, R. 12, (7.)

(16.) The relative adjectives *quod*, *quantus*, *qualis*, are construed like the relative *qui*. They have generally, in the antecedent clause, the corresponding demonstrative words, *istud*, *tantus*, *talis*; but these are also often omitted. Frequently also the order of the clauses is reversed, so that the relative clause precedes the demonstrative.

(17.) *Qui*, at the beginning of a sentence, is often translated like a demonstrative; as, *Quæ quum ita sint*, Since these (things) are so. Cic.

(18.) The relative *qui* with *sum* and either a nominative or the ablative of quality, is used in explanatory clauses, instead of *pro*, 'in accordance with,' or 'according to'; thus, instead of *Tu, pro tuâ prudentiâ, quid optimum feceris*, *videtis*. Cic., we may say, *quæ tua est prudentia*, or, *quâ prudentiâ es*. So, *Vêlis tantummodo, quæ tua virtus, expugnâbis*. Hor. *Quâ prudentiâ es, nihil te fugiet*. Cic.

(19.) A relative clause is sometimes used for the purpose of denoting by circumlocution the person of the agent in a definite but not permanent condition; as, *hi, qui audiunt*, or *qui adsunt*, i. e. the hearers, the persons present. So, also, a relative clause is used for the English expression 'above mentioned'; as, *Ex libris quos dixi or quos ante (supra) laudâri*; and the English 'so called,' or 'what is called,' is expressed by *quem*, *quam*, *quod* vocant, or by *que*, *quæ*, *quod* vocatur, dicitur, etc. as, *Nec Hermas hos, quos vocant, imperator (Athens) licebat*. Cic. *Vestra, quæ dicitur, vita, mors est*. Id.

(20.) Relative and demonstrative adverbs (see § 191, R. 1), are frequently used instead of relative and demonstrative pronouns with prepositions; as, *Is, unde te audisse dicis*, i. e. a quo. Cic. *Droitæ apud illos sunt, aut ubi illi videntur*, i. e. apud quos. Sall. *Ihuc ab adolescentiâ bella intestina, cædes, rapinæ, discordia civilis, grâta fuere*, *Ibique juventutem exercuit*, i. e. in iis, in these things. Sall.

(21.) With *quam* *qui* and the superlative after *tam* the verb of the relative clause is sometimes omitted; as, *Tam mihi grâtum id erit, quam quod grâtiissimum*. Cic. *Tam enim cum amicus reipublicæ, quam qui maxime*. Id. *Tam enim melis quam qui lenissimus*. Id. So also with *ut* *qui* without *tam*; as, *Te semper sic colam et tuebor, ut quem diligetissime*. Id.



## DEMONSTRATIVES.

§ 207. REM. 20. The oblique cases of the personal pronoun of the third person (*him, her, etc.*) are commonly expressed in prose by the oblique cases of *is, ea, id*. *Hic* and *ille*, however, being more emphatic, take the place of *is, ea, id* in lyric poetry, and occasionally in prose also, when particular emphasis is intended. The cases of *ipse, ipsa, ipsum*, also, are employed for this purpose, when the individuality of the person is to be distinctly expressed. In reflexive sentences, the oblique cases of the pronoun of the third person, are regularly supplied by *sui, sibi, se*; and it is only when the person of the leading subject is to be referred to with particular emphasis, that *ipse* is used instead of *sui*.

REM. 21. The demonstrative pronouns, *is* and *ille*, are sometimes used, especially with *quidem*, where a corresponding word in English is unnecessary; as, *Sapientie studium vetus id quidem in nostris, sed tamen, etc.* Cic. *O hominem semper illum quidem mihi aptum, nunc vero etiam suavem.* Id. *Quem neque fides, neque iuramentum, neque illum misericordia, repressit*, Whom neither fidelity, nor an oath, nor pity, has restrained. Ter. *Is* when used for the sake of emphasis seems sometimes in English to be superfluous; as, *Male se res habet, quum, quod virtute effici debet, id tentatur pecunia.* Cic.

REM. 22. *Sic, ita, id, hoc, illud*, are often used redundantly as a preliminary announcement of a subsequent proposition, and are added to the verb on which this proposition depends; as, *Sic a maioribus suis acciperant, tanta populi Romani esse beneficia, ut, etc.* Cic. *Te illud admoneo, ut quoties meditare, resistendum esse iracundie.* Id. *Hoc tibi persvideas velim, me nihil omisisse*, I wish you to be persuaded of this—that I have omitted nothing. These pleonastic additions have generally no influence on the construction of propositions, but in a few instances they are followed by *ut*; as, *De cuius dicendi copia sic accipimus, ut, etc.* Cic. *Ita enim defini, ut perturbatio sit, etc.* Id. In the phrase *hoc, illud, or id agere ut*, the pronoun is established by custom and is necessary. See § 273, 1, (a.)

REM. 23. (a.) *Hic* 'this' refers to what is near to the speaker either in place or time, *ille* 'that' to what is more remote. Hence *hic* sometimes refers to the speaker himself, and *hic homo* is then the same as *ego*. On this account *hic* is sometimes called the demonstrative of the first person. When reference is made to two things previously mentioned, *hic* commonly refers to the latter, *ille* to the former, and the pronouns are arranged in the same order, as the objects to which they relate; as, *Ignavia corpus hebetat, labor firmat; illa matrem cunctitatem, hic longam adolescentiam reddit*, Sloth enervates the body, labor strengthens it; the former produces premature old age, the latter protracted youth. Cels.

(b.) But the order is often reversed, so that *hic* refers to the object first mentioned, and *ille* to the one mentioned last; as, *Sic deus et virgo est; hic spe ceter, illa timore.* Ovid. So when *alter...alter*, 'the one...the other,' refer to two things mentioned before, the previous order is sometimes observed and sometimes reversed; but wherever there is ambiguity the order is reversed, so that the first *alter* refers to the last object. Sometimes *hic...hic* are used instead of *hic . ille*. So *ille...ille* sometimes denote 'the one...the other.'

(c.) *Hic* and *ille* have the same relation to time present and past as *nunc* and *tunc*. See § 277; and hence whatever, in speaking of present time, is expressed by *hic* and its derivative adverbs, *hic, hinc, huc*, and *adhuc*, is expressed by *ille* and its derivatives, when it is spoken of as belonging to past time.

REM. 24. *Ille*, when not in opposition to *hic*, is often used to denote that which is of general notoriety; as, *Magno illi Alexandro simillimus*, Very like Alexander the Great. Vell. *Medea illa*, The celebrated Medea. Cic. Hence *ille* is sometimes added to other pronouns, to refer to something discussed before; as, *Avebant visere, quis ille tot per annos opes nostras sprevisset.* Tac. *Ille* is sometimes translated *this*; as, *Unum illud dico*, This only I say. Cic. *Ille*

sometimes marks a change of persons, and may then be translated 'the other' as, *Verangeloriz obitum Cæsari proficietur.* Ille (scil. Cæsar) oppidum Noviodunum oppugnare instituerat. Cæs.

REM. 25. *Iste* properly refers to the person addressed, and for this reason is called the demonstrative of the second person.—*Ille* refers to the person spoken of, and is hence called the demonstrative of the third person. Thus *iste liber* 'is thy book, but *ille liber* is the book of which we are speaking. Hence, in letters, *hic* and its derivatives are used of the writer; *iste* and its derivatives of the person addressed; *ille*, etc., of some other person or thing. See § 191. R. 1, (e); *Idem* from its frequent forensic use, and its application to the opponent, often denotes contempt.

REM. 26. (a.) *Is* does not, like *hic*, *ille*, and *iste*, denote the place or order of the object to which it relates, but either refers without particular emphasis to something already mentioned or to something which is to be defined by the relative *qui*. *Hic*, *is*, or *ille*, may be used in this way before the relative, but only *hic* or *is* after it; as, *Qui docet, is discit*, or *hic discit*, but not *ille discit*, unless some individual is referred to.

(b.) *Is* before a relative or *ut* has sometimes the sense of *talis*, such, denoting a class; as, *Næque enim tu es, qui quid sis nescias*. Nor are you such a person, as not to know what you are. Cic.; sometimes it has the force of *idem*; as, *vos —is*. Cic. Manil. 12.

(c.) If the noun to which *is* refers is to receive some additional predicate, we must use *et is*, *atque is*, *isque*, *et is quidem*, and with a negative *nec is*; as, *Vincula veru, et ea sempiterna*, etc. Cic. *Unā in dōmo, et ea quidem angusta*, etc. Id. *Adolescentes aliquot, nec ii tenui loco orti*, etc. Liv. *Sed is* is used when the additional predicate is opposed to the preceding; as, *Seruitutem in senectute probō, sed eum, sicut alia, modicam*. Cic. The neuter *et id*, or *idque*, serves to introduce an addition to the preceding proposition; as, *Quamquam te, Marce fili, annum jam audientem Cratippum, idque Athenis*, etc.

(d.) *Is* is not expressed when it would be in the same oblique case as the preceding noun to which it refers; as, *Pater amat liberos et tamen castigat. Multos illustrat fortuna, dum vexat*.

(e.) When in English 'that' or 'those' is used instead of the repetition of the preceding substantive, *is* is never used in Latin, and *ille* only in later authors. In such cases the noun is commonly not repeated in Latin, and no pronoun is used in its place; as, *Philippus hostium manus saepe vitavit, suorum effugere non voluit*, those of his own subjects. Curt. Sometimes the substantive is repeated; as, *Judicia civitatis cum judiciis principis certant*. Vell. Sometimes a possessive adjective is used instead of the genitive depending on the omitted substantive; as, *Terenii fabulas studiōse lēgo*, Plautus *minus delectat*; and sometimes instead of the genitive or a possessive adjective the name of the person itself is put in the case which the verb governs; as, *Si cum Lycurgo et Dracōne et Solōne nostras lēges conferre volueritis*. Cic.—In Cicero *hic* and *ille*, when the preceding substantive is understood, retain their demonstrative signification, and therefore do not merely supply the place of the omitted substantive; as, *Nullam enim virtutem aliam mercedem desiderat, præter hanc*, i. e. the one of which I am speaking. Cic.

REM. 27. (a.) *Idem*, as denoting a subject which stands in equal relations to two different predicates, often supplies the place of *item* or *etiam*, 'also,' 'at the same time,' or of *tamen*, 'yet' if the things are apparently inconsistent; as, *Musici, qui erant quondam iidem poete*. Musicians, who formerly were poets also. Cic. *Euphrates et Tigris magno aquarum divertio iter percurrunt; iidem (and yet) paulatim in arctius coeunt*.

(b.) *Et ipse*, on the other hand, denotes that the same predicate belongs to two subjects. It is rendered by 'too' or 'also'; as, *Antoninus Commodus nihil paternum habuit, nisi quod contra Germanos feliciter et ipse pugnavit, for item or ipse quoque*. Entr.—So, also, *nec ipse* is used in the sense of 'neither'; as, *Primis repulsis Mitharbal cum majore robore virorum missus nec ipse eruptionem cōm —tum sustinuit*. Liv.

(c.) *Idem* is sometimes repeated in the sense of 'at once,' denoting the union of qualities which might be thought incompatible; as, *Fuere quidam qui idem ornate idem versute dicerebant*, There have been some who could speak at once elegantly and artfully. Cic.

(d.) 'The same as' is variously expressed in Latin, by *idem* with *qui*, *ac* or *atque*, *quam*, *quasi*, *ut* or *cum*; as, *Verres idem est qui fuit semper*, Verres is the same as he has always been. Cic. *Vita est eadem ac fuit*. Liv. *Disputatōnem appōnimus iisdem fere verbis ut actum est*. Cic. *Eandem constituit potestatem quam si*, etc. Cic. *Eodem loco res est, quasi ea pecunia legata non esset*. Id. *Hunc ego eodem mecum patre gentium*, etc. So also poetically with the *dative*; as, *Eodem aliis sopitu' quiesce est*. Lucr. Cf. § 222, R. 7.

### IPSE, INTENSIVE OR ADJUNCTIVE.

REM. 28. (a.) *Ipse*, when used with a substantive pronoun taken reflexively agrees either with such pronoun or with the subject of the proposition, according as either is emphatic; as, *Agam per me ipse*, I will do it myself. Cic. *Non ego medicinā (i. e. ut alii me consolentur) me ipse consolor*. Cic. *Accusando eum, a cuius crudelitāte vosmet ipsi armis vindicastis*. Liv.—Cn. Pompeium omnibus, Lentulum mihi ipsi antepōno. Cic. *Fac ut te ipsum custodias*. Id. *Deforme est de se ipsum prædicare*. Id.—But Cicero often construes *ipse* as the subject, even where the emphasis belongs to the object; as, *Quid est negotiū continere eos, quibus præsīs, si te ipse contineas?*

(b.) When *ipse* is joined with a possessive pronoun used reflexively, it usually takes the case of the subject; as, *Meam ipse legem nēgligo*; not *meam ipsius*, according to § 211, R. 3, (a). So, *Si ex scriptis cognosci ipsi suis potuissent*. Cic. *Eam fraudem vestrā ipsi virtute vitastis*. Liv. But the genitive is necessary when the possessive does not refer to the subject; as, *Tuā ipsius causā hoc feci*. And it is sometimes found where the case of the subject should be used; as, *Conjecturam de tuo ipsius studio cēperis*, instead of *ipse*.—(c.) *Ipse* is sometimes used as reflexive without *sui*; as, *Omnes boni, quantum in ipsis fuit, Cæsarem occiderunt*. Cic.

(d.) *Ipse*, with nouns denoting time or number, expresses exactness, and may be rendered, 'just,' 'precisely'; or 'very,' 'only'; as, *Dyrhachio sum profectus ipso illo die, quo lex est data de nobis*, on the very day. Cic. *Triginta dies erant ipsi, quum has dabam litteras, per quos nullas a vobis accēperam*, just thirty days. Id. *Et quisquam dubitabit—quam facile imperio atque exercitu socios et vectigalia conservaturus sit, qui ipso nomine ac rumore defendērit*, by his very name, or, by his name only. Id.

### GENERAL RELATIVES.

REM. 29. *Quicumque*, *quisquis*, and the other general relatives (see § 139, 5, R.), are, in classical prose, always connected with a verb, and form the protasis. *Quicumque* is commonly used as an adjective, and *quisquis* as a substantive; but the neuter *quodcumque* is used as a substantive with a following genitive; as, *Quodcumque militum*; and, on the other hand, *quisquis* is rarely an adjective; as, *Quisquis erit vite color*. Hor.; and even the neuter *quidquid* is used in the same manner; as, *Quisquis honores tumuli, quidquid solamen humandi est*. Vi g. *Quicumque* seems sometimes even in Cicero equivalent to *omnis* or *quicvis*; as *Vix sanari poterunt, quicumque ratione sanabo*, What can be cured, I will cure by every possible means. Cic. Yet *possum* is rather to be supplied;—in whatever way I can.' But in later writers *quicumque* is frequently used in the absolute sense for *quicvis* or *quilibet*; as, *Cicéronem cuicumque eorum fortiter proposuerim*. Quint. *Qualiscumque* and *quantuscumque* are likewise used in an absolute sense by ellipsis; as, *Tu nra concupisces quantumque ad libertatem pervenire?* At any price, be it ever so high. Sen. So *quisquis* is occasionally used, not as a relative, but as an indefinite pronoun.—*Siquis* often seems to stand as a relative, like the Greek *ὅστις* for *ὅστις*, 'whoever'; but it always contains the idea of 'perhaps'; as, *Nuda fere Alpium cacumina sunt, et si quid est patulis, obruant nives*. Liv.

## INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

REM. 80. (a.) *Aliquis* and *quispiam* are particular and affirmative, corresponding to the English *some one*; as, *Hæreditas est pecûnia, quæ morte alicujus aut quempiam pervenit jure*, An inheritance is property which, at the death of some one, falls to some (other) one by law. Cic. *Multi sine doctrinâ aliquid omnium generum et artium consequuntur*. Id.

(b.) *Aliquis* is more emphatic than the indefinite pronoun *quis*. (See § 137, (3).) Hence *aliquis* stands by itself, but *quis* is commonly connected with certain conjunctions or relative words, but these are sometimes separated from it by one or more words. Sometimes, however, *quis* is used without such conjunctions or relatives; as, *Morbus aut egestas aut quid ejusmodi*. Cic. *Detrahère quid de aliquo*. Id. *Injuriâ cui facere*. Id. So, *Dixerit quis*, Some one might say. But even after those conjunctions which usually require *quis*, *aliquis* is used when employed antithetically and of course emphatically; as, *Timēbat Pompeius omnia, ne aliquid vos timērētis*. Cic. In English the emphasis of *aliquis* is sometimes expressed by 'really'; as, *Sensus moriendî, si aliquis esse pōtest, is ad exiguum tempus durat*. Cic.—*Quispiam*, also, is sometimes used like *quis* after *si*, etc., and sometimes stands alone; as, *Queret fortasse quispiam*.

REM. 81. (a.) *Quisquam*, 'any one,' and *ullus*, 'any,' are universal. Like *umquam* and *usquam* they are used in propositions which involve a universal negative, or which express an interrogation with a negative force, or a condition (usually with *si* or *quasi*); also, after comparatives, after the adverb *vix*, and the preposition *sine*; as, *Nēque ex castris Cātulinæ quisquam omnium discesserat*. Nor had any one departed from the camp of Catiline. Sall. *Nec ullo casu potest contingere, ut ulla intermissio fiat officii*. Cic. *An quisquam potest sine perturbatione mentis irasci?* Id. *Tetrior hic tyrannus Syracusinis fuit, quam quisquam superiorum*. Id. *Vix quidquam spei est*. Sen. But after the dependent negative particles *ne*, *nēve*, and the negative interrogative particle *num*, *quis* and not *quisquam* is used.

(b.) But *quisquam* and *ullus* after *si* are often used not in a negative sense, but instead of *aliquis* or *quis*, serving only to increase the indefiniteness which would be implied in the latter pronouns; as, *Aut enim nemo, quod quidem magis crēdo, aut, si quisquam, ille sapiens fuit*, if any man. Cic. Hence, ultimately, even without *si*, where the indefiniteness is to be made emphatic, *quisquam*, *ullus*, *umquam* and *usquam* were used; as, *Quamdiu quisquam erit, qui te defendere audeat, vives*. Cic. *Bellum maxime omnium memorabile, quæ umquam gesta sunt, scripturus sum*. Tac.

(c.) *Ullus* is properly an adjective, but *quisquam* is commonly used without noun, except it is a word denoting a person; as, *Cuiquam civi*, To any citizen. *Cuiusquam oratoris eloquentiam*. Hence *quisquam* corresponds to the substantive *nemo* and *ullus* to the adjective *nullus*. *Nemo* is often used with other substantives denoting male persons so as to become equivalent to the adjective *nullus*; as, *nemo pitor, nemo adolescens*, and even *homo nemo*. Cic. *Quisquam* is sometimes used in a similar manner: as, *quisquam homo, quisquam civis*. On the other hand *nullus* and *ullus* are used as substantives instead of *nemo* and *quisquam*, especially the genitive *nullius* and the ablative *nullo*.

REM. 82. (a.) *Alius*, like *ullus*, though properly an adjective, is sometimes used like a pronoun. It is often repeated, or joined with an adverb derived from it, in the same proposition, which may be translated by two separate propositions, commencing respectively with 'one...another'; as, *Aliud aliis aliter optatum*, One thing seems best to one, another to another. Cic. *Aliis minime periculum est*, Danger threatens one from one source, another from another; or, Danger threatens different persons from different sources. Ter. *Dionysium alter cum aliis de nobis locutum audiebam*. Cic.—*Alter* is used in the same manner when only two persons are spoken of, but there are no adverbs derived from it; as, *Alter in alterum causam conferunt*, They accuse each other.

(b.) *Alius*, repeated in *different* propositions, is also translated 'one...another' as, *Aliud agitur, aliud simulatur*, One thing is done, another pretended. Cic. *Aliter loquitur, aliter scribit*, like *aliter ac* or *atque*, He speaks otherwise than he writes. So *Aliud loquitur, aliud scribit*.

(c.) *Uterque*, 'each of two,' is always used by Cicero in the singular number, when only two individuals are spoken of. Its plural, *utrique*, is used only when each of two parties consists of several individuals; as, *Macedonēs—Tyrī, utrique*. But in other good prose writers the plural *utrique* is occasionally used in speaking of only two; as, *Utrique Dionysii*. Nep. Cf. § 209, R. 11, (4.)

REM. 33. (a.) *Quidam* differs from *aliquis* by implying that a person or thing, though indefinitely described, is definitely known; as, *Quidam de collegis nostris*. A certain one of our colleagues. Cic. *Scis me quodam tempore Mithridatum viderisse tecum*. Id.

(b.) *Quidam* is sometimes used for *some*, as opposed to *the whole*, or to *others*, as, *Excesserunt urbe quidam, alii mortem sibi consciverunt*. Some departed from the city, others destroyed themselves. Liv. Hence it is used to soften an expression, where in English we say 'so to speak,' etc.; as, *Milvo est quoddam bellum naturale cum corvo*. A kind of natural warfare. Cic. *Fuit enim illud quoddam cecum tempus servitutis*. Id. *Et enim omnes artes quæ ad humanitatem pertinet, habent quoddam commune vinculum et quasi cognatione quadam inter se continentur*. Id.—*Tamquam* is used for the same purpose, and also *ut ita dicam*.

REM. 34. *Quivis* and *quilibet*, 'any one,' and *unusquisque*, 'each,' are universal and absolute; as, *Omnia sunt ejusmodi quivis ut perspicere possit*. All are of such a nature that any one can perceive. Cic. *Hic ipud majores nostros adhibebatur peritus, nunc quilibet*. Id. *Natura unumquemque trahit ad discendum*. A negative joined with them denies only the universality which they imply; as, *Non cuivis homini contingit adire Cicerinthum*, i. e. not to every man without distinction. Hor. *Cuiquam* would have made the negation universal.

REM. 35. (a.) *Quisque* signifies *each*, *every one*, distributively or relatively, and generally stands without a noun; as, *Quod cuique obligit, id quisque teneat*. Let each one keep what has fallen to each. Cic. Hence it is used particularly after relative and interrogative pronouns and adverbs; as, *Scipio pollicetur sibi magnæ curæ fore, ut omnia civitatibus, quæ cūjusque fuissent, restituerentur*. Cic. *Ut prædici posset, quid cuique evenitūrum, et quo quisque fato natus esset*. Id. *Cur fiat quidque queris: recte omnino*. Id. *Quo quisque est solertior, hoc docet liberiorius*. Id. *Ut quisque optime dicit, ita maxime dicendi difficultatem amet*. Id. And hence the expression *quoduscunque* in the sense of 'how few among all.' It is also used distributively after numerals; as, *Decimus quisque sorte lectus*, Every tenth man. *Quinto quodque anno*, In every fifth year. So also after *suus*; as, *Sui cuique liberi carissimi: suum cuique placet*. (Respecting the order of the words, cf. § 279, 14: and respecting *quisque* in the nominative in apposition to a noun or pronoun in the ablative absolute or in the accusative with the infinitive, see § 204, R. 10.)

(b.) *Quisque* with a superlative, either in the singular or the plural, denotes universality, and is generally equivalent to *omnes* with the positive; as, *doctissimus quisque*, Every learned man, i. e. all the learned; but often, also, in connection with the verb, it retains the idea of a reciprocal comparison, and is to be rendered by the superlative; as, *In omni arte optimum quidque rarissimum*, The best is the rarest. Cic. *Altissima quæque flumina minimo sono labuntur*. The deepest rivers flow with the least sound. Curt. With *primus*, it denotes the *first possible*; as, *Primo quodque tempore*, As soon as possible. Cic.

#### POSSESSIVES.

REM. 36. (a.) The possessive pronouns *meus*, *tuus*, *suius*, *noster*, and *vester*, are joined to nouns, to indicate an action or possession of the persons denoted by their primitives; as, *Tutus amor meus est tibi*, My love is secure to you. Ovid. *Tuam ritem dolere soleo*. Cic.—These pronouns, as in English, when belonging to two substantives, are generally expressed but once, even when the substantives are of different genders; as, *amor tuus ac iudicium de me*.

(b.) But these pronouns are sometimes used when the persons to which they refer are the objects of an action, feeling, etc.; as, *Nam neque tua negligentia neque obo id fecit tuo*, For he did it neither through neglect nor hatred of you. Ter. See § 211, R. 3.

(c) The possessive pronouns, especially when used as reflexives, are often omitted; as, *Quo révertar? in patriam? scil. meum*, Whither shall I return? to (my) country? Ovid. *Dextrâ munera porrexit*, scil. *suâ*. Id. But they are expressed when emphasis or contrast is intended, where in English: 'own' might be added to the pronoun; as, *Ego non dicam, tamen id poteritis cum amicis vestris cogitare*. Cic.

(d) When besides the person of the subject, that of a remote object also occurs in the proposition, the possessive pronoun will refer to the latter; as, *Patris animum mihi reconciliasti*, i. e. *patris mei animum* rather than *mei*.

(e) As reflexives, *meus*, etc., are translated my, thy, his, her, its, our, your, their; or my own, thy own, his own, etc.

#### THE REFLEXIVES *SUI* AND *SUUS*.

§ 208. REM. 37. (a.) *Sui* and *suus* properly refer to the subject of the proposition in which they stand; as,

*Oppidani factus in se ac suos fœdum consciscunt*, The citizens decide on a foul crime against themselves and their friends. Liv.

(b.) They continue to be used in successive clauses, if the subject remains the same; as,

*Ipse se quisque diligit, non ut aliquam a se ipse mercēdem exigit caritatis suæ, sed quod per se sibi quisque carus est*. Cic.

(1.) In dependent clauses, in which the subject does not remain the same, the reflexives are commonly used in references to the leading subject, when the thoughts, language, purposes, etc., of that subject are stated; as,

*Arriovistus prædicavit, non sēse Gallis, sed Gallos sibi bellum intulisse*, Ariovistus declared that he had not made war upon the Gauls, but the Gauls upon him. Cæs. *Homerum Colophonii civem esse dicunt suum*, The Colophonians say that Homer is their citizen. Cic. *Tyrannus petivit ut se ad amicitiam tertium ascriberent*. Id. But sometimes, to avoid ambiguity, the cases of *is* or *ille* are used in such clauses in references to the leading subject; as, *Helvëtii sēse Allobroges vi coacturos existimabant, ut per suos fines eos ire paterentur*. Cæs. Here *suos* refers to the subject of the dependent clause, and *eos* to *Helvëtii*, the subject of the leading clause. And sometimes, even in the same dependent clause, two reflexive pronouns are used, referring to different persons; as, *Scythæ petebant ut regis sui filiam matrimonio sibi jungeret*. Curt.

(2.) If, however, the leading subject, whose thoughts, etc., are expressed, is indefinite, the reflexives relate to the subject of a dependent clause; as,

*Mædæi prædicant (scil. homines) in fugâ fratris sui membra in iis locis, quæ se parens persēqueretur, dissipavisse*. Cic. *Ipsum regem tradunt operatum his sacris se addidisse*. Liv.

(3.) (a.) When the leading verb is in the passive voice, the reflexive often refers not to its subject, but to that which would be its subject in the active voice; as,

*A Cæsare invitator ut sim sibi legatus*, i. e. *Cæsar me invitat*, I am invited by Cæsar to become his lieutenant. Cic.

(b.) So when the subject is a thing without life, the reflexive may relate to some other word in the sentence, which denotes a thing having life; as,

*Cænum tam fida custodiâ quid significat aliud, nisi se ad hominum commoda cates esse generâtos?* Cic.

(4.) Instead of *sui* and *suus*, whether referring to a leading or a subordinate subject, *ipse* is sometimes used, to avoid ambiguity from the similarity of both numbers of *sui*, and also to mark more emphatically than *suus*, the person to whom it relates; as,

*Jugurtha legatos misit, qui ipsi liberisque vitam peterent*, Jugurtha sent ambassadors to ask life for himself and his children. Sall. *Ea molestissime ferro homines debent, quæ ipsorum culpâ contracta sunt*.

(5.) In the plural number, with *inter*, *se* only is used, if the person or thing referred to is in the nominative or accusative; *se* or *ipse*, if in any other case; as,

*Fratres inter se quum formâ, tum moribus similes*, Brothers resembling each other both in person and character. Cic. *Feras inter sese conciliat natura*. Cic. *Incidunt aliqua a doctis etiam inter ipsos mutuo reprehensa*. Quint.

(6.) (a.) When reference is made not to the subject of the proposition, but to some other person or thing, *hic*, *is*, or *ille*, is generally used, except in the cases above specified; as,

*Themistocles servum ad Xerxem misit, ut ei nuntiaret, suis verbis, adversarios ejus in fugâ esse*, Themistocles sent his servant to Xerxes, to inform him (Xerxes), in his (Themistocles') name, that his (Xerxes') enemies were upon the point of flight. Nep.

(b.) But when no ambiguity would arise, and especially when the verb is of the first or second person, *sui* and *suus* sometimes take the place of the demonstrative pronouns; as,

*Suam rem sibi salvam sistam*, I will restore his property entire to him. Plaut.

(c.) On the contrary, the demonstratives are sometimes used for the reflexives; as,

*Helvetii persuadent Rauracis, ut unâ cum iis proficiscantur*, The Helvetii persuade the Rauraci to go with them. Cæs.—In some instances, a reflexive and a demonstrative are used in reference to the same person; as, *Ita se gessit* (scil. *Ligarius*) *ut ei pacem esse expetiret*. Cic. *C. Claudii fratris per sui fratris parentisque ejus manes*. Liv.—Sometimes the reflexives refer to different subjects in the same sentence; as, *Ariovistus respondit, neminem secum sua sua pernicie contulisse* (Cæs.); where *se* refers to Ariovistus, and *sua* to *neminem*.

(7.) (a.) *Suus* often refers to a word in the predicate of a sentence, and is then usually placed after it; as,

*Hunc cives sui ex urbe ejecerunt*, Him his fellow-citizens banished from the city. Cic. *Tullius quum præsens Ambiorigem, suos cohortantem, conspexisset*. Cæs.

(b.) *Suus*, and not *hujus*, is used when a noun is omitted; as,

*Octavius quem sui* (scil. *amici*) *Cæsarem salutabant*, Octavius, whom his followers saluted as Cæsar.

(c.) *Suus* is also commonly used when two nouns are coupled by *et*, but not when they are connected by a conjunction; as,

*Ptolemæus amicos Demetrii cum suis rebus dimisit*, Ptolemy dismissed the friends of Demetrius with their effects. Just.

(8.) *Suus* sometimes denotes *fil*, *favorable*; as,

*Sui et sua dono parenti*, There are likewise for my father suitable presents. Virg. *Ut liberator ille populi Romani opprimeretur temporâ sua*. Liv. *Alphæus utitur populo sâne suo*. Cic. Sometimes it signifies *peculiar*; as, *Molles sua iura Sabei*, scil. *mittunt*, i. e. the frankincense for which their country was famous. Virg. *Fessaque sopor suus occupat artus*. Id.

## NOMINATIVE.

## SUBJECT-NOMINATIVE AND VERB.

§ 209. (a.) The noun or pronoun which is the subject of a finite verb is put in the nominative.

NOTE 1. (a.) A verb in any mood except the infinitive is called a finite verb. (b.) In historical writing the nominative is sometimes joined with the present infinitive instead of the imperfect indicative. Cf. R. 5.

(b.) A verb agrees with its subject-nominative, in number and person; as,

*Ego lægo*, I read.

*Tu scribis*, Thou writest.

*Equus currit*, The horse runs.

*Nos lægimus*, We read.

*Vos scribitis*, You write.

*Equi currunt*, Horses run.

NOTE 2. The imperative singular is sometimes used in addressing several persons; as, *Huc nātas adijce septem*, scil. *vos*, *Thēbaides*. Ovid. Met. 6, 182. So *Adde defectionem Italiæ*, scil. *vos*, *militēs*. Liv. 26, 41.

REMARK 1. (a.) The nominatives *ego*, *tu*, *nos*, *vos*, are seldom expressed, the termination of the verb sufficiently marking the person; as,

*Cipio*, I desire; *visis*, thou livest; *hābēmus*, we have. See § 147, 8.

(b.) But when emphasis or opposition is intended, the nominatives of the first and second persons are expressed; as, *Ego rēges ejeci*, *vos tyrannos intrōductis*, I banished kings, you introduce tyrants. Auct. ad Her. *Nos, nos, dico aperte, consules dēsumus*. Cic. *Tu es patrōmus*, *tu pāter*. Ter. In indignant questions and addresses *tu* is expressed; as, *Tu in fōrum prōdire*, *tu lucem conspiciere*, *tu in hōrum conspectum vēire cōnāris?* Auct. ad Her.

REM. 2. The nominative of the third person is often omitted:—

(1.) When it has been expressed in a preceding proposition:—

(a.) As nominative; as, *Mōsa prōfuit ex monte Vōsēgo*, *et in Ocednum inflūit*. Cæs.; or (b) in an oblique case; as, *Cursōrem misērunt*, *ut id nuntiāret*, scil. *cursor*. Nep.; or (c) in a possessive adjective; as, *Et vēreor quo se Jūniōnia vertant Hospitia*; *haud tanto cessābit cardine rerum*, scil. *illa*, i. e. *Jūnō*. Virg. En. I. 672.

(2.) When it is a general word for *person* or *thing*:—

Thus *hōmines* is often omitted before *aiunt*, *dicunt*, *fēruūt*, etc.; as, *Ū aiunt*, As they say. Cic. *Maxime admirantur eum, qui pecūniā non mōvētur*. Id.—*So lēne est, bēne hābet* or *bēne agitur*, It is well; as, *Si vales, bēne est, ego valeo*. Cic. *Quum mēlius est, grātūlor dis*. Afran. Optūme hābet, Nothing can be better. Plaut. *Bēne hābet: jacta sunt fundāmēta dēfensionis*. Cic. *Bēne agitur pro noxia*. Plaut.

NOTE 3. This omission of the nominative is common in the clause proceeding a relative; as, *Qui Bāvium non dilīt, amet tui carmina, Mæri*, scil. *hōmo*. Let aim who hates not Bavius, love your verses, Mævius. Virg. *Vnstatūr agri quod inter urbem ac Fidēnas est*, scil. *id spītium*. Liv. *Sunt quos jūrat...scil. hōmines*. There are (those) whom it delights. Hor. *Est qui nec vērīs pōcula Massici spernit*, scil. *hōmo*. Hor. Here *sunt quos* and *est qui* are equivalent to *quidam*, *aliqui*, or *aliqui*. So. *Est quod gaudeas*, There is (reason) why you should rejoice. Cic. *Nēque erat cur fallere vellent*. Ovid. *Est ubi iā vāleat*. Cic. *Est quum non est sātius*, etc. Auct. ad Her. In the latter cases the adverbs are equivalent to *in quo*, scil. *loco*, *tempore*.



REM. 3 (1.) The nominative is *wanting* before verbs denoting the state of the weather, or the operations of nature; as,

*Fulgurat*, It lightens. Plin. *Ningit*, It snows. Virg. *Lūcescēbat*, It was growing light. Liv. *Jam advesperascit*. Cic.

(2.) The nominative is also wanting before the third person singular of the passive of neuter verbs, and of active verbs used impersonally; as,

*Fāvētur tibi a me*, Thou art favored by me. *Ejus orātiōni vēhēmenter ab omnibus reclamatum est*. Cic. Proinde ut bene *vivitur*, diu *vivitur*. Plaut. *Ad exitum ventum est*. Sen. *Actum est de império*. See § 184, 2: and cf. § 229, R. 5, (b.)

NOTE 4. A nominative, however, is expressed before the passive of some neuter verbs, which, in the active voice, are followed by an accusative; as, *Pugna pugnata est*. Cic. See § 232, (1.)

(3.) It is wanting also before the neuter of the future passive participle with *est*; as,

*Si vis me flere* dolendum est *primum ipsi tibi*, If you wish me to weep, you yourself must first grieve. Hor. *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano*. Juv. *Ad villam revertendum est*. Cic.

(4.) The nominative is also wanting before the impersonal verbs *misēret*, *pænitet*, *pūdet*, *tædet*, and *piget*; as,

*Eos ineptiarum pænitet*, They repent of their follies. Cic. *Misēret te aliorum, tui te nec misēret nec pūdet*. Plaut. *Me civitatis morum piget tædetque*. Sall.—In such examples, the sense will sometimes permit us to supply *fortūna*, *conditio*, *mēmoria*, etc. So in the expression, *Vēnit in mentem*, It came into mind as, *In mentem vēnit de specūlo*, scil. *cōgitatio*, etc. Plaut.—An infinitive or a subjunctive clause sometimes forms the subject of these verbs; as, *Te id nullo modo pūdit facere*, To do that by no means shamed you. Ter. *Non pænitet me, quantum profecerim*. Cic.

(5.) The subject of the verb is sometimes an infinitive or a neuter participle (either alone or with other words), one or more propositions, or an adverb. [Cf. § 202, R. 2 and 3: and § 274, R. 5, (b.)] The verb is then in the third person singular; as,

*Vācāre culpā magnum est solātium*, To be free from fault is a great consolation. *Nēque est te fallere quidquam*, To deceive you in any thing is not (possible.) Virg. *Mentiri non est meum*. Plaut. *Te non istud audivisse mirum est*, That you have not heard that is wonderful. Cic. ‘Summum jus, summa injuria,’ *factum est jam tritum sermōne proverbium*. Id. *Ni dēgenerātum in aliis tunc quāque decōri offēscisset*. Liv. (Cf. § 274, R. 5, (b.) *Sin est ut vēlis mārere illem apud te*. Ter. *Nec profuit Hydrea crescere per damnum, geminasque resumere vires*. Ovid. *Dic mihi, cras istud, Postūme, quando vēnit?* Tell me, Postumus, when does that to-morrow come? Mart. *Pārūne campis atque Neptūno super fūsum est Lātini sanguinis?* Hor.

(a.) This construction is especially common with impersonal verbs; as, *Oratorem irasci non decet*, That an orator should be angry, is not becoming. Cic. *Hoc fieri et oportet et opus est*. Id. *Me pēcibus delectat claudere verba*, Hor. *Intērest omnium recte facere*. Cic. *Casu accidit*, ut, id quod Rōmæ audierat orimus nuntiāret. Id. Sometimes a neuter pronoun is interposed between a proposition and its verb; as, *Impūne facere quæ libet*, id est *regem esse*. Sall. Cf. § 203, (18.), (a.)

(6.) The nominative is also wanting before *pōtest*, *cæpit* or *cæptum est*, *incipit*, *dēsinit*, *dēbet*, *sōlet*, and *vidētur*, when followed by the infinitive of an impersonal verb; as,

*Pigere eum facti caput*, It began to repent him (i. e. he began to repent) of his conduct. Just. *Sapientia est una, quæ præceptrice, in tranquillitate vivi potest*. Cic. *Tædere solet avâros impendâi*. Quint.

REM. 4. The verb is sometimes omitted; as,

*Di meliôra piis*, scil. *dent* or *vêlunt*, May the gods grant better things to the pious. Virg. *Vêrum hæc hæcenus*, scil. *diximus*. Cic. *Pertineo* is understood in such expressions as *nihil ad me*, *nihil ad rem*; *Quid hoc ad Eptûrum?* What does this concern Epicurus? *Quorsus hæc?* i. e. *Quorsus hæc pertinet?* What is that for?—*Pârâbo* is to be supplied, in *Quo mihi hanc rem?* Of what use is this to me? and, *Unde mihi aliquam rem?* Whence am I to get any thing? as, *Quo mihi bibliôthêcas?* Sen. *Unde mihi lapidem?* Hor. A tense of *fâcto* is often to be supplied, as in *Recte ille*, *melius hi*; *Bene Chrÿsippus, qui dâcet*. Cic. *Nihil per vim unquam Clôdius, omnia per vim Milo*. Id. *Quæ quum dixisset Cotta finem*. Id. So, also in the phrases *nihil aliud quam*; *quid aliud quam*; *nihil præterquam*, which signify 'merely'; as, *Tisaphernes nihil aliud quam bellum compâravit*. Nep. This verb is in like manner omitted with *nihil amplius quam*; *nihil minus quam*, and in the phrase *si nihil aliud*.—*Ait* or *inquit* is sometimes omitted in introducing the direct words of another, and more frequently in relating a connected conversation; as, *Tum ille*; *hic ego*; *huic ego*. *Dicit* is sometimes omitted in quoting a person's words; as, *Scite Chrÿsippus: ut glâdiâ causâ vaginam, sic præter mundum cetera omnia aliorum causâ esse gênerâta*. Cic. —After *per* or *v* adjurations *oro*, *rôgo* or *præcor* is often omitted; as, *Per ego vos deos patrû. vindicâte ab ultimo dedecore nômen gentemque Persarum*; i. e. *per deos patrû vos oro, vindicâte*. Curt. This omission is most common with the copula *sum*; as, *Nam Polydorus ego*, scil. *sum*, For I am Polydorus. Virg. And so *est* and *sunt* are often omitted with predicate adjectives, and especially in proverbial phrases; as, *Quot hómînes tot sententiæ*. Ter. *Omnia præclâra rara*, scil. *sunt*. Cic. So also *est* and *sunt* are often omitted in the compound tenses of the passive voice; as, *Agro multatâi*, scil. *sunt*. Liv. Cf. § 270, R. 8.

NOTE 5. In Latin, as in English, a verb is often joined to one of two connected nominatives and understood with the other, and that even when the persons are different; as, *magis ego te amo, quam tu me*, scil. *amas*. After a negative verb a corresponding positive verb is sometimes to be supplied; as, after *nêgo*, *dico*, after *vêto*, *jubeo*, and in this case *et* takes the signification of *sed*. Cf. § 323, 1, (2.), (b.)

NOTE 6. Sometimes, when the verb of an appended proposition is omitted, its subject is attracted to the case of a noun in the leading proposition with which is joined a participle of the omitted verb; as, *Hannibal Minicium, magistrum equitum, parî ac dictâtorem dôlo prôductum in prælium, fugâvit*, i. e. *parî ac dictâtôr dôlo prôductus fuêrat*. Nep. Hann. 5. So Liv. 34, 32.

REM. 5. In the historic style the nominative is sometimes found with the present infinitive; as,

*Intêrim quôtidie Cæsar Aduos frumentum flagitare*, Meanwhile Cæsar was daily demanding corn of the Adui. Cæs. *Nos pavidi trêpîdare mêtû*. Virg. *Id horrendum ferri*. Id.

NOTE 7. The infinitive in this construction is called the *historical infinitive* and is used instead of the imperfect indicative to express in a lively manner a continued or repeated action or condition.

REM. 6. The relative *qui* may refer to an antecedent either of the first, second, or third person; and its verb takes the person of the antecedent; as,

*Egc qui lêgo*, I who read. *Tu qui scribis*, Thou who writest. *Equus qui currit*, The horse which runs. *Vos qui quæritis*, You who ask.

REM. 7. (a.). Verbs in the first person plural, and the second person singular, are sometimes used to express general truths; as,

*Quam multa facimus causâ amicorum!* How many things we do (i. e. men do) for the sake of friends! Cic. *Si vis me flere, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi, Whoever wishes me, etc. Hor.*

(b.) *Nos* is often used for *ego*, and *noster* for *meus*; and even when the pronoun is not expressed, the verb is frequently put in the first person plural instead of the first person singular. The genitive *nostri* is used for *mei*, but *nostrum* always expresses a real plurality.

REM. 8. The accusative is sometimes used for the nominative by attraction. See § 206, (6.) (b.)

REM. 9. The verb sometimes agrees with the *predicate-nominative*, especially if it precedes the verb; as, *Amanium iras amoris integratio est*, The quarrels of lovers are a renewal of love. Ter. *Loca, quæ proxima Carthaginem, Numidia appellatur*. Sall. And sometimes it agrees with the nearest subject of a subordinate sentence; as, *Sed ei cariôra semper omnia, quam decus atque prædicia fuit*. Sall. Cat. 25.

REM. 10. In cases of apposition, the verb commonly agrees with the noun which is to be explained; as, *Tulliola, dediticæ nostræ, flagitat*. Cic. But sometimes the verb agrees, not with the principal nominative, but with a nearer noun in apposition to it; as, *Tungri, civitas Gallis, fontem habet insigne*, The Tungri, a state of Gaul, has a remarkable fountain. Plin. *Corioli oppidum captum (est)*. Liv.

REM. 11. A collective noun has sometimes, especially in poetry, a plural verb; as,

*Pars epulis onerant mensas*, Part load the tables with food. Virg. *Turba ruunt*. Ovid. *Atria turba tenent*; *veniunt læve vulgus euntque*. Id.

(1.) (a.) A plural verb, joined to a collective noun, usually expresses the action, etc. of the *individuals* which that noun denotes. In Cicero, Sallust, and Cæsar, this construction scarcely occurs in simple sentences; but it is often used, when the subject of the verb is expressed not in its own, but in a preceding clause; as, *Hoc idem generi humano evenit, quod in terrâ collocati sint*, because they (scil. *homines*) live on earth. Cic. In Livy it occurs more frequently; as, *Locros omnis multitudo abeunt*.

(b.) Abstract nouns are sometimes used collectively, instead of their concretes; as, *nobilitas* for *nobiles*, *juventus* for *juvènes*, *vicinia* for *vicini*, *servitium* for *servi*, *lævis armatura* for *læviter armati*, etc. (c.) *Miles, eques, pedites*, and similar words are sometimes used collectively for the soldiery, the cavalry, etc.

(2.) When two or more clauses have the same collective noun as their subject, the verb is frequently singular in the former, and plural in the latter; as, *Jam ne nocte quidem turba ex eo loco dilâbébatur, refracturosque carcere minâbantur*. Liv. *Gens eadem, quæ te crudeli Daunîa bello insêquitur, nos si pellant, nihil abfere credunt*. Virg.

(3.) *Tantum*, followed by a genitive plural, has sometimes a plural verb, like a collective noun; as, *Quid huc tantum hominum incedunt?* Why are so many men coming hither? Plaut.

(4.) A plural verb is sometimes used, though not by Cicero, after *uterque* and *quisque*, *pars...pars*, *alius...alius*, and *alter...alterum*, on account of the idea of plurality which they involve; as, *Uterque eorum ex castris exercitum educunt*, Each of them leads his army from the camp. Cæsar. *Intinus quisque libertorum vincti abreptique (sunt.) Tac. Alius alium, ut prælium incipiant, circumspectant*. Liv. Cf. § 207, R. 82, (c.)

NOTE 8. This construction may be explained by passages like the following, in which the plural is placed first, and the singular, denoting its parts; *Ceteri, suo quisque tempore, adierunt*. Liv. *Decemviri perturbati alius in alium partem castrorum discurrunt*. Id. See § 204, R. 10.

**RAM. 12.** Two or more nominatives singular, not in apposition, generally have a plural verb; as,

*Fūrōr irāque mentem præcipitant*, Fury and rage hurry to (my) mind. *Virg. Dum ætas, mētus, māgister*, prohiébant. Ter.

(1.) If the predicate belongs to the several nominatives jointly, the verb is always plural; as, *Grammaticæ quondam ac mūsicæ junctæ fuērunt*. Quint.

(2.) A verb in the singular is often used after several nominatives singular, especially if they denote things without life; as,

*Mens enim, et ratio et consilium in sēribus est*. Cic. *Bēnēficientia, libēritas, bonitas, justitia funditus tollitur*. Id.

**NOTE 9.** This construction is most common when the several nominatives, as in the preceding examples, constitute, as it were, but one idea. So also the compound subject *Sēnātus pōpulusque Rōmānus* has always a predicate in the singular. The same construction sometimes, especially in the poets, occurs with names of persons; as, *Gorgias, Thrasymachus, Protagoras, Prodicus, Hippias in hōnōre fuit*. Cic. *Quin et Prōmētheus et Pēlōpis pateris dulci lābōrum decipit*. sōno. Hor. When the nominatives denote both persons and things, the verb is commonly plural; as, *Catilio consulum et Pompeius obsunt*. Liv.

(3.) When one of the nouns is plural, the verb is generally so; but sometimes it is singular, when the plural noun does not immediately precede it; as, *Dii te pēnates patrique, et patris Imāgē, et dōmus rēgia, et in dōmo rēgale sōlium, et nōmen Tarquiniū creat vōcat pue rēgem*. Liv.

(4.) When each of the nominatives is preceded by *et* or *tum*, the verb agrees with the last; as, *Hoc et ratio doctis, et nēcessitas barbaris, et mos gentibus, et fēris nātūra ipsa præscripsit*. This, reason has dictated to the learned, and necessity to barbarians, and custom to nations, and nature itself to wild beasts. Cic. *Et ego, et Cicero meus flagitabit*. Id. *Tum ætas viresque, tum ævula glōria animū stimulat*. Liv. So when the subject consists of two infinitives; as, *Et facere, et pati fortia, Rōmānum est*. Cic. *Unus et alter* always takes a singular verb; as, *Dicit unus et alter breviter*. Cic. *Unus et alter assuitur pannus*. Hor.

(5.) When the nominatives are connected by *aut*, sometimes the plural, but commonly the singular, is used; as,

*Si Socrates aut Antisthenes diceret*, If Socrates or Antisthenes should say. Cic. *Ut quosque studium privatim aut gratia occupaverunt*. Liv.

(a.) The plural is necessary with disjunctives, if the subject includes the first or second person; as, *Quod in Decemviris neque ego neque Cæsar habiti es sēmus*. Cic.—(b.) With *aut...aut* and *nec...nec* the singular is preferred, but with *seu...seu* and *tam...quam* the verb is in the plural.

(6.) A nominative singular, joined to an ablative by the preposition *cum* sometimes has a singular but more frequently a plural verb; as, *Domitius cum Messalā certus esse vidēbatur*. Cic. Bocchus, *cum peditibus, postremam Rōmānorum aciem invadunt*, Bocchus, with his foot-soldiers, attacks the rear of the Roman army. Sall. *Ipsē dux, cum aliquot principibus, capiuntur*. Liv.

(7.) If the nominatives are of different persons, the verb is of the first person rather than the second or third, and of the second rather than the third; as,

*Si tu et Tullia vāletis, ego et Cicero vālemus*, If you and Tullia are well, (Cicero) and I are well. Cic. *Hæc neque ego neque tu fecimus*. Ter. *Ego pōpulusque Rōmānus bellum jūdicto facioque*. Liv.

(a.) Yet sometimes the verb agrees in number and person with the nearest nominative, and is understood with the other; as, *Vos ipsi et sēnātus frēquens restitit*. This is always the case when the action of the verb is qualified with reference to each nominative separately; as, *Ego misere tu feliciter vivis*.

REM. 13. The interjections *en*, *ecce*, and *O*, are sometimes followed by the nominative; as,

*En Priāmus!* Lo Priam! Virg. *En ego, vester Ascānius.* Id. *Ecce hōmo Cūtiēnus!* Cic. *Ecce tuæ littēra.* Id. *O vir fortis atque amicus!* Ter.

### PREDICATE-NOMINATIVE.

§ 210. A noun in the predicate, after a verb neuter or passive, is put in the same case as the subject, when it denotes the same person or thing; as,

(a.) When the subject is in the nominative; *Ira furor brevis est*, *Aeger* is a short madness. Hor. *Ego vocor Lyconides*, I am called Lyconides. Plaut. *Ego incēdo regina*, I walk a queen. Virg. *Cuius et Lūcius frātes fuerunt.* Cic.—So (b.) when the subject is in the accusative with the infinitive; *Jūdicem me esse volo.* Cic.

(c.) Some mes also a *dative*, denoting the same object, both precedes and follows a *vero* neuter or passive. See § 227, N.—And (d.) a predicate ablative sometimes follows passive participles of *choosing*, *naming*, etc.; as, *Consulibus certioribus factis.* Liv. See § 257, R. 11.

(e.) If the predicate noun has a form of the same gender as the subject, it takes that form; as, *Licentia corruptrix est mōrum.* Cf. § 204, R. 2.—(f.) But if the subject is neuter, the noun of the predicate, if it has both a masculine and a feminine form, takes the former; as, *Tempus vite māgister est.*

(g.) An infinitive may supply the place of a predicate nominative. See § 269, R. 4.

REMARK 1. (a.) Adjectives, adjective pronouns, and participles, standing in the predicate, after verbs neuter or passive, and relating to the subject, agree with it in gender, number, and case.

(b.) When the subject consists of two or more nouns, the gender and number of such predicate adjectives are determined by § 205, R. 2.

REM. 2. (a.) The noun in the predicate sometimes differs in gender and number from the subject; as, *Sanguis erant lacrimæ*, Her tears were blood. Ovid. *Captivi militum præda fuerunt.* Liv.

(b.) So when a subject in the singular is followed by an ablative with *cum*, the predicate is plural; as, *Exsules esse jubet L. Tarquīnium cum conjūge et liberis.* Liv.

REM. 3. The verbs which most frequently have a noun, etc., in the predicate agreeing in case, etc., with their subject, are:—

(1.) The *copula sum*; as, *Ego Jōvis sum filius.* Plaut. *Disce esse pater.* Ter. The predicate with *sum* may be an adverb of place, manner, etc.; as, *Quid est longe ālter.* Cic. *Rectissime sunt apud te omnia*, Every thing with you is in a very good condition. Id.; or a noun in an oblique case; as, *Nūmen sine tūre est.* Ovid. *Sunt nobis initia pōma.* Virg.

(2.) Certain neuter verbs denoting *existence*, *position*, *motion*, etc.; as, *vivō, existō, appareo, cado, eo, evado, fugio, incēdo, jaceo, māneo, sēdeo, sto, venio*, etc. Thus, *Rez circūibat pēdes*, The king went round on foot. Plin. *Quos judicabat non posse orātōres evādere.* Cic. *Ego huic causæ patrius exstiti.* Cic. *Qui sit, ut nemo contentus vivat!*

(3.) The passive of verbs denoting,

(a.) To *name* or *call*; as, *appellor, dicor, nōmīnor, nuncupor, perliteor, scribor, inscribor, vocor.* Thus, *Cognōmine Justus est appellātus*, He was called by the su name Just, Nep. *Aristaeus olivæ dicitur inventor* Cic.

(a.) To choose, render, appoint, or constitute: as, *constituor, creor, declaror, designor, eligor, fio, reddor, renuncior*. Thus, *Dux a Romanis electus est Q. Fabius. Postquam ephebus factus est. Nep. Certior factus sum.*

(c.) To esteem or reckon; as, *censeor, cognoscor, credor, deprehensor, existimor, dicor, ferror, habeor, iudicor, memroror, numroror, pator, reprior, vidor*. Thus, *Credibar sanguinis auctor ego. Ovid. Malim videri timidus quam parum prudens. Cic.*

NOTE 1. With several passives of the last class, when followed by a predicate-nominative, etc., an infinitive of *sum* is expressed or understood; as, *Amens mihi fuisse videor*, I think I was beside myself. Cic. But the dative of the first person is sometimes omitted after *videor*; as, *Sitis ducisse vidor*. II.—*Atilius prudens esse putabatur*. Id. So with *dicor* (to be said), and *perhibeor*; as, *Verus patrie dicoris esse pater*. Mart. *Hoc ne locutus sine mercede existimer*. Phaed.

NOTE 2. *Audivo* is sometimes used by the poets like *appellor*; as, *Tu rexque paterque audisti eorum*. Hor.

REM. 4. A predicate-nominative is used after many other verbs to denote a purpose, time, or circumstance of the action; as, *Comes additus Eolides*, Eolides was added as a companion. Virg. *Lupus obambulat nocturnus*. Id. *Apparet liquido sublimis in aethere Nisus*. Id. So with an active verb; *Audiri hoc puer*. Cic. *Sapiens nil facit invitus*. Id. *Rempublicam defendi adulescens*. Id. Cf. § 204, R. 1.

NOTE 3. Instead of the predicate-nominative, a dative of the end or purpose sometimes occurs (see § 227); sometimes an ablative with *pro*; as, *audacia pro muro est*; and sometimes the ablatives *loco* or *in numero* with a genitive, as, *ille est mihi parentis loco; in hostium numero habetur*.

REM. 5. The noun *opus*, signifying 'need,' is often used as a predicate after *sum*. It is, in such cases, translated by the adjectives *needful, necessary*, etc.; as, *Dux nobis et auctor opus est*. Cic. *Multi opus sunt boves*. Varr. (*Dixit aurum et ancillis opus esse*. Ter. *Usus* also is occasionally so construed.

REM. 6. When the pronoun, which is the subject of an infinitive, is omitted, the case of the predicate is sometimes, in the poets, attracted into that of the subject of the verb on which the infinitive depends; as, *Uxor invidi Jovis esse necis*, i. e. *te esse uxorem*. Hor. *Retulit Ajax esse Jovis pronepos*. Ovid.

## GENITIVE.

### GENITIVE AFTER NOUNS.

§ 211. A noun which limits the meaning of another noun, denoting a different person or thing, is put in the genitive; as,

*Amor gloriae*, Love of glory; *Arma Achillis*, The arms of Achilles; *Pater patriae*, The father of the country; *Vitium irae*, The vice of anger; *Nemorum custos*, The guardian of the groves; *Amor habendi*, Love of possessing.

NOTE 1. In the first example, *amor* denotes love in general; *gloriae* limits the affection to the particular object, glory. Such universally is the effect of the genitive, depending upon a noun. Hence the limitation of a noun by a genitive resembles that which is effected by an adjective. In each the noun limited constitutes with its limitation only a single idea.

REMARK 1. The genitive denotes various relations, the most common of which are those of *Source*; as, *Radii solis*, The rays of the sun;—*Cause*; as, *Dolor podagrae*, The pain of the gout;—*Effect*; as, *Artifex mundi*, The Creator of the world;—*Connection*: as, *Pater consulis*, The father of the consul;—*Possession*; as, *Domus Caesaris*, The house of Caesar;—*Object*; as, *Cogitatio alienius rei*, A thought of something;—*Purpose*; as, *Apparatus triumphalis*, Preparation for a triumph;—*A whole*; as, *Partes hominum*, A part

of men; this is called the *partitive genitive*;—*Character* or *Quality*; as, *Adolescens summe audacia*, A youth of the greatest boldness;—*Material* or *Component Parts*; as, *Montes auri*, Mountains of gold; *Acervus scutorum*, A heap of shields;—*Time*; as, *Frumentum dierum decem*, Corn for ten days Sall.

REM. 2. \*The genitive is called *subjective* or *active*, when it denotes either that *to which a thing belongs*, or the *subject* of the action, feeling, etc., implied in the noun which it limits. It is called *objective* or *passive*, when it denotes the *object* affected by such action, or towards which such feeling is directed; as,

*Subjective.*

*Facta virorum*, Deeds of men.  
*Dolor animi*, Grief of mind.  
*Iunonis ira*, The anger of Juno.

*Objective.*

*Odium vitii*, Hatred of vice. ●  
*Amor virtutis*, Love of virtue.  
*Desiderium otii*, Desire of leisure.

(a.) Whether a genitive is subjective or objective is to be determined by the meaning of the words, and by their connection. Thus, *prōvidentia Dei* signifies God's providence, or that exercised by him *timor Dei*, the fear of God, or that exercised towards him. The same or similar words, in different connections, may express both significations. Thus, *metus hostium*, fear of the enemy, may mean, either the fear felt by the enemy, or that felt by their opponents. So *vulnus Ulixis* (Virg. *Æn.* 2, 436.) denotes the wound which Ulysses had given; *vulnus Æneæ*, (Id. *Æn.* 12, 323.) that which Æneus had received.

(b.) The relation expressed by the English *possessive case* is subjective, while that denoted by *of* with its case is either subjective or objective.

(c.) The objective genitive is of very extensive use in Latin in the limitation of verbal nouns and adjectives, whatever may be the construction of the verbs from which such nouns and adjectives are derived, whether they take an accusative or some other case or even a preposition.

(d.) When ambiguity would arise from the use of the objective genitive, a preposition with an accusative or ablative is commonly used; as, *Anon in rempublicam*, for *reipublicæ*, Love to the state. Cic. *Odium erga Rōmānos*, for *Rōmānōrum*. Nep. *Cūra de salute patriæ*, for *salutis*. Cic. *Prædator ex sociis*, for *sociōrum*. Sall. Sometimes both constructions are combined; as, *Rēvērētia adversus homines et optimi cuiusque et reliquorum*. Cic. Off. 1, 28.

NOTE. A limiting genitive is sometimes used instead of a noun in apposition, especially with *vox*, *nōmen*, *verbum*, etc.; as, *vox voluptatis*, the word pleasure; *nōmen amicitiae*, the word *amicitia*; *dōmini appellatio*. This is usual when the genus is defined by the species; as, *arbor fici*, a fig-tree; *flos violæ*, a violet; *virtus continentiae*, the virtue of abstinence; and in geographical names; as, *oppidum Antiōchiæ*. Cf. § 204, R. 6.—Cicero frequently uses a genitive in this manner with *gēnus* and *causa*; as, *Unum gēnus est eōrum, qui*, etc. *Durū sunt causæ, una pudoris, altera sceleris*.—So, also, the genitive of gerunds; as, *Triste est nōmen ipsum cārendi*, The very word *to want* is sad. Cic.

REM. 3. (a.) A substantive pronoun in the genitive, limiting the meaning of a noun, is commonly objective; as,

*Cūra mei*, Care for me. Ovid. *Pars tui*, Part of thee. Id. *Vestri curam agite*. Curt. This genitive is used especially with verbal substantives in *or* *ix* and *io*; as, *Accusator mei*. Cic. *Nimīa estimatio sui*. Id. *Ratiōnem et sui et aliorum habere*. Id.

(b.) Instead of the *subjective* or *possessive* genitive of a substantive pronoun, the corresponding adjective pronoun is commonly used; as,

*Liber meus*, not *liber mei*, My book. *Cūra mea*, My care, i. e. the care exercised by me. Cic. *Tuas litteras exspecto*. Id. Yet the subjective genitive of a substantive pronoun sometimes occurs; as, *Tui inuis studio*, By the zeal of yourself alone. Cic.

(c.) And not unfrequently, also, an adjective pronoun occurs instead of the *objective* genitive; as, *Mea injūria*, Injury to me. Sall. So, *Invidia tua*, Envy of thee. *Fiducia tua*, Confidence in thee. Plaut. *Spes mea*, The hope placed in me. With *causā* the adjective pronoun, and never the genitive, is used; as, *Meā causā*, For my sake. Plaut.

REM. 4. (a.) Instead, also, of the subjective genitive of a noun, a possessive adjective is often used; as, *Causa rēgia*, for *causa rēgis*. Cic. *Hērilis filius*, for *hērī filius*. Id. *Evandrius ensis*, for *Evandri*. Virg. *Herculeus labor*, for *Herculis*. Hor. *Civilis furor*, for *civium*. Hor. So, also, for the *objective* genitive, *Mētus hostilis*, Fear of the enemy. Sall.

(b.) The genitive of the person implied in the adjective pronoun or possessive adjective, or an adjective agreeing with such genitive, is sometimes added as an apposition; as, *Vestrā ipsōrum causā hoc feci*. In the poets and later prose writers a participle also is found agreeing with such implied genitive; as, *Mea scripta vulgo recitare timentis*. Hor. Cf. § 204, R. 4, and § 205, R. 13.

REM. 5. In the predicate after *sum*, and sometimes after other verbs, the dative is used like the *objective* genitive; as,

*Idem amor exitium pēcōri* (est), *pēcōrisque* māgistro. Virg. *Vitis ut arboribus dēcōri est*, ut *vittibus ūra*—*Tu dēcus omne tuis*. Virg. In this passage the dative *dēcōri* and the nominative *dēcus* are used with no difference of meaning. Cf. § 227, R. 4. *Auctor fui sēnātui*. Cic. *Murēna ligātus Lūcullō fuit*. Id. *Erit illi mihi semper deus*. Virg. *Huic causæ patrōnus exstīti*. Cic. *Huic ego me bello dūcem prōfiteor*. Id. *Se tertium (esse) cui fātum foret urbis pōtiri*. Id.—*Cum P. Africāno sēnātus egit*, ut *legātus* frātri prōficiscerētur. Id. *Cæsar legātamenta gālīs militēs ex rīmīnibus facere jubet*. Cæs. *Trīnōbantibus Cæsar impērat—frūntentum exercitui*. Id. *Quod nēque insidiæ consūli prōcēdebant*. Sall. *Quem exitum tantis malis spērarent?* Id. *Sanctus vir et ex sententiā ambōbus*, scil. *qui fuit*. Id. See § 227, R. 4.

NOTE. The dative in the preceding examples has been thought by some grammarians to depend on the nouns connected with it; as, *exitium*, *dēcus*, *auctor*, *legātus*, *deus*, *patrōnus*, etc.; by others it has been held to depend on these nouns in connection with the verbs, and not upon either separately; but the better opinion seems to be that, which makes such datives grammatically dependent upon the verbs only, though logically connected also with the nouns.

(1.) Instead, also, of the *possessive* genitive, a dative of the person may follow a verb, when its act has relation to the body or possessions of such person; as,

*Sese omnes flentes Cæsāri ad pēdes prōjēcērunt*, They all, weeping, cast themselves at the feet of Cæsar. Cæs. *Cui corpus porrigitur*, For whom the body, i. e. whose body, is extended. Virg. *Tum vēro exarsit jūveni dōlor ossibus ingens*. Id. *Transfigitur scūtum Pulfōni*. Cæs.

REM. 6. When the limiting noun denotes a *property*, *character*, or *quality*, it has an adjective agreeing with it, and is put either in the genitive or the ablative; as,

*Vir exempli recti*, A man of correct example. Liv. *Adolescens summæ audaciæ*, A youth of the greatest boldness. Sall. *Fossa pēdum viginti*, A ditch of twenty feet, (i. e. in width). Cæs. *Hamilear sēcūm duxit filiū Hannibālem* annōrum novēm. Nep. *Athēnienses dēligunt Pēriclēm*, spectatæ virtūtis virum. Just. *Quinquāginā annōrum irpērium*. Id. *Iter unius dii*. Cic. *Pulchritūdine eximiā fēmina*, A woman of exquisite beauty. Cic. *Maximō nātō filius*, The eldest son. Nep. *L. Cātīna fuit magnā vī et animi et corpōris, sed ingēnie malo prāvūque*. Sall. *Spēlunca infinitā altitūdine*. Cic.—Sometimes both constructions occur in the same proposition; as, *Lentilium nostrum*, eximiā spe summæ virtūtis adolescentem. Cic.



(1.) A genitive sometimes supplies the place of the adjective; and the noun denoting the property, etc., is then always put in the ablative; as, *Est bos cervi figurâ* ..of the form of a stag. Cæs. *Uri specie et colore tauri*. Id. *Frutex palmi altitudine*. Plin. *Clavi digiti pollicis crassitudine*. Cæs.

(2.) All the qualities and attributes of persons and things, whether inherent or accidental, may be thus expressed by the genitive and ablative of quality, provided the substantives are immediately connected; as, *fossa quindécim pedum*; *homo antiquâ virtute*. It hence follows that such genitives and ablatives, when used to express duration of time or extent of space, are distinguished from the cases in which the accusative is required, since the latter case always follows adjectives or verbs; as, *fossa quindécim pedes lâta*; *puer decem annos natus*. Cf. § 236.

(3.) Whether the genitive or the ablative of quality is preferable in particular cases, can frequently be determined only by reference to classical authority; but, in general, the genitive is used more frequently to express inherent qualities than such as are merely accidental, while the ablative is used indifferently for either purpose. In speaking of transitory qualities or conditions the ablative is always used; as, *Magno timore sum*, I am in great fear. Cic. *Bono animo sum*. Id. *Quanto fuérin dolore meministi*. Id. *Maximo honore Servius Tullius erat*. Liv. With plural substantives the genitive is rare; while in expressions of measure it is used rather than the ablative.

(4.) An accusative instead of a genitive of quality is used with *seculus* (sex), *genus* and *pondo*; as, *Libérorum capítum virile seculus ad decem millia capta*, i. e. of the male sex, instead of *sexus virilis*. Liv. So *genus*, when joined with a pronoun, as *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *quod*, or with *omne*, is used for *hujus*, *ejus*, *omnis*, etc., *generis*; as, *Orationes aut aliquid id genus scribere*,—of that kind. Cic. *Concedere nugas hoc genus*. Hor. So *pondo* is joined as an indeclinable word to the accusatives *libram* and *libras*; as, *Dictator coronam auream libram pondo in Capitolio Jovi donum posuit*,...a pound in weight. Liv. Cf. § 236, R. 7.

(5.) The genitive *modi* with an adjective pronoun supplies the place of a pronoun of quality; as, *cujusmodi libri*, the same as *quales libri*, what kind of books; *hujusmodi libri*, i. e. *tales libri*, such books. So, also, *generis* is used, but less frequently.

(6.) With the genitive of measure are often connected such ablatives as *longitudine*, *latitudine*, etc., or *in longitudinem*, etc.; as, *fossa decem pedum latitudine*; but the genitive does not depend on these words.

(7.) *Sum* may be followed by either the genitive or the ablative of quality with an ellipsis of the word limited, which, with the genitive, is *homo*, *res*, *negotium*, *proprium* or *proprius*, etc., and with the ablative, *præditus*, *instructus*, *ornatus*, etc. Cf. Rem. 8, and §§ 244, and 249, I..

REM. 7. (1.) The limited noun is sometimes omitted; as, *O miseræ sortis!* scil. *hominis*; *O (men) of wretched fortune!* Lucan. *Ad Diânæ*, scil. *cedem*. Ter. *Hectôris Andrômache*, scil. *uxor*. Virg. *Suspiciônis vitanda*, scil. *causâ*. Tac. So *filius* or *filia*; as, *Hannibal Gisgônis*.

(2.) The omitted noun may sometimes be supplied from the preceding words; as, *Cujum pécus? an Mëlibœi? Non; verum Ægônis*, scil. *pécus*. Virg. An adjective is often expressed referring to the noun omitted: as, *Nullam virtutem viam mercèdem desulèrat, præter hanc* (scil. *mercèdem*) *laudis*. Cic.

REM. 8. The limited noun is often wanting in the predicate of a sentence after *sum*. This usually happens,

(1.) When it has been previously expressed; as,

*Hec domus est Cæsaris*, This house is Cæsar's. *Nôn en auræ tam sæpe vocatum esse putans Nymphæ*. Ovid. *Naves onèvârias, quâr un minor nulla erat duum millium amphôrum*, i. e. *quârum minor nulla erat quam* ; *avis duum*, etc. Cic.

(2.) When it is a general word denoting a person, an animal, etc. as,

*Thūcydides, qui ejusdem ætātis fuit*, scil. *hōmo*, Thucydides, who was of the same age. Nep. *Multum ei dētraxit, quod aliēnæ erat civitātis*, scil. *hōmo* or *ciris* Id. *Primum stipendium mēruit annōrum dēcem septemque*, scil. *adolescens*. Id. *Summi ut sint labōris efficiunt*, scil. *antimālia*. Cæs. (Claudius) *somni brevissimū erat*. Suet. *Mirā sum alacritāte*. Cic. *Vulgus ingenio mōbili erat*. Sall. *Nom est jūris sui*, He is not his own master. Lucan. *Pōtēstātis suæ esse*. Liv *Suārumque rerum erant*. Id. Cf. Rem. 6, (7.)

(3.) When it is a general word denoting *thing*, for which, in English, the words *part, property, duty, office, business, characteristic*, etc. are commonly supplied; as,

*Tēmēritas est flōrentis ætātis, prūdētia sēnectūtis*, Rashness is (the characteristic) of youth, prudence of old age. Cic. *Est hoc Gallicæ consuetūdinis*. Cæs. So, *stultitiæ est; est lēvitatīs*, etc., which are equivalent to *stultitia est, lēvitas est. Omnia hostium erant. A paucis emi, quod multōrum esset*. Sall.

(a.) This happens especially when the subject of the verb is an infinitive, or an entire clause, in which case, instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, *mei, tui*, etc., the neuters of the possessives, *meum, tuum*, etc., are used; as, *Adolescentis est majōres nātū rēvērēri*. It is (the duty) of a youth to reverence the aged. Ovid. *Cūjusvis hōmīnis est errāre, nullius nisi insipientis in errore persēvērāre*. Cic. *Paupēris est nūmērāre pēcus*. Ovid. So especially *mōris est*; as, *Negāvit mōris esse Græcōrum, ut in convivio vitrōrum accumbērent multīres*, the same as *mōrem esse Græcōrum*. Cic. *Nihil tam æquandæ libertātis esse*. Liv. So when the verb is omitted; *Tāmen officii duxit, exōrāre patrem*, scil. *esse*. Suet. *Non est mentiri meum*. Ter. *Tuum est, M. Cato, vidēre quid agātur*.

(b.) Instead of the genitive of a substantive, also, the neuter of a possessive adjective derived from it is sometimes used; as, *Hūmānum est errāre*, To err is human. Ter. *Et facere et pati fortia Rōmānum est*. Liv.

(4.) The same construction sometimes occurs after *fācio*, and some other verbs mentioned in § 230, *esse* being understood; as, *Asia Rōmānōrum facta est*, Asia became (a possession) of the Romans. Just. *Agrum suæ ditiōnis fecisse*. Liv.

(5.) The limited noun is sometimes wanting, when it is a general word, though not in the predicate after *sum*; as, *Magni formica labōris*, scil. *animal*, The ant (an animal) of great labor. Hor. So *Ei vēnit in mentem pōtēstātis tuæ* scil. *mēmōria*, or the like. Cic.

NOTE. When the noun which is wanting denotes a *thing*, grammarians sometimes supply *nēgōtium, officium, manus, opus, res, causa*, etc. It is an instance of a construction common in Latin, to omit a noun when a general idea is intended. See § 205 Rem. 7, (2.)

REM. 9. The *limiting* noun also is sometimes omitted; as,

*Tria millia*, scil. *passuum*. In most cases of this kind, an adjective, adjective pronoun, or participle, is expressed in the genitive.

REM. 10. Two genitives sometimes limit the same noun, one of which is commonly subjective, and the other objective; as,

*Agamemnōnis belli glōria*, Agamemnon's glory in war. Nep. *Illius administratiō provinciae*. Cic. *Eōrum diērum consuetūdine itinēris nostri exercitūs perspectā*. Cæs. *Orbitas reipublicæ tālium virōrum*. Cic. *Pro vērētibz Helvētiorum infūris pōpuli Rōmāni*. Cæs.

REM. 11. *Opus* and *usus* are rarely limited by a genitive or accusative, but generally by an ablative, of the thing needed; as,

*Argenti opus fuit*, There was need of money. Liv. *Ad consiliū pensandū temporis opus esse*. Id. *Proemii non semper usus est*. Quint. *Si quo opēra pōrum usus est*. Liv. *Puēro opus est cibum*. Plaut. *Usus est hōmīnem astūtum*. Id. See § 243

REM. 12 The relation denoted by the genitive in Latin, is generally expressed, in English, by *of*, or by the possessive case. Cf. R. 2, (b.) The objective genitive may often be rendered by some other preposition; as,

*Rēmediū dōloris*, A remedy for pain. *Injūria patris*, Injury to a father. *Descensus Averni*, The descent to Avernus. *Ira belli*, Anger on account of the war. *Pōtestas rei*, Power in or over a thing.

NOTE. Certain limitations of nouns are made by the accusative with a preposition and by the ablative, either with or without a preposition. Cf. § 202, 6, I. and II.

### GENITIVE AFTER PARTITIVE 3.

§ 212. Nouns, adjectives, adjective pronouns, and adverbs denoting a part, are followed by a genitive denoting the whole; as,

*Pars civitātis*, A part of the state. *Nulla sōrōrum*, No one of the sisters. *Aliquis philosophōrum*, Some one of the philosophers. *Quis mortālium?* Who of mortals? *Māior jūvēmum*, The elder of the youths. *Doctissimū Rōmānōrum*, The most learned of the Romans. *Multum pecūniæ*, Much (of) money. *Satis eloquentiæ*, Enough of eloquence. *Ubtam gentiū sumus?* Where on earth are we?

NOTE. The genitive thus governed denotes either a *number*, of which the partitive designates one or more individuals; or a *whole*, of which the partitive designates a portion. In the latter sense, the genitive of common and abstract nouns commonly follows either the neuter of adjectives and adjective pronouns, or adverbs; and that of material nouns depends on substantives signifying quantity, weight or measure; as, *medimnum tritici*, a bushel of wheat; *libra farris*; *jūgērum agrī*; *magna vis auri*.

REMARK 1. Nouns denoting a part are *pars*, *nemo*, *nihil*, etc., and also nouns denoting measure, weight, etc.; as, *modius*, *medimnum*, and *libra*; as,

*Nemo nostrum*, No one of us. *Maxima pars hominū*. *Nihil humanarum rerum*. Cic. *Dindidum militum*. Liv. *Medimnum tritici*. Cic.

REM. 2. Adjectives and adjective pronouns, denoting a part of a number, including partitives and words used partitively, comparatives, superlatives, and numerals, are followed by the genitive plural, or by the genitive singular of a collective noun.

(1.) Partitives (§104. 9.); as, *ultus*, *nullus*, *sōlus*, *alius*, *uter*, *uterque*, *utercunque*, *uterque*, *utertlibet*, *neuter*, *alter*, *alteruter*, *aliquis*, *quidam*, *quispiam*, *quisquis*, *quisque*, *quisquam*, *quicumque*, *unusquisque*, *quis*? *qui*? *quōt*? *quōtus*? *quōtusquisque*? *ist*, *aliquot*, *nonnulli*, *plerique*, *multi*, *pauci*, *medius*. Thus, *Quisquis deōrum*, Whoever of the gods. Ovid. *Consulū alter*, One of the consuls. Liv. *Multi hominū*, Many men. Plin. *Et medius jūvēmum ibat*; i.e. between. Ovid For the gender of adjectives used partitively, see § 205, R. 12.

(2.) Words used partitively; as, *Expediti militum*, The light-armed (of the) soldiers. Liv. *Dēlecti equitū*. Id. *Vetēres Rōmānōrum dūcum*. Vell. *Supēri deōrum*, The gods above. Hor. *Sancte deōrum*. Virg. *Dēgēnēres canū*. Plin. *Piscium fēminæ*. Id.

(3.) Comparatives and superlatives; as, *Doctior jūvēmum*. *Oratōrum praestantissimū*. *Eloquentissimū Rōmānōrum*. *Optimū omnium*.

(4.) Numerals, both cardinal and ordinal: also the distributive *singuli*; as, *Equitū centum quāgingenta interfecti*, A hundred and fifty of the horsemen were killed. Curt. *Sapientū octāvus*. Hor. *Singulos vestrum*. Curt.

(5.) The meaning is often nearly the same, whether the partitive adjective agrees in case and number with a noun, or takes such noun after it as the genitive; as, *Doctissimus Rōmānorum*, or, *doctissimus Rōmānus*: *Alter consūl n*, or *alter consul*. But the genitive cannot be used, when the adjective includes the same number of things as that of which the whole consist; as, *Vēniāmus ad viros*, *qui duo sūpersunt*; not *quōrum duo*, since these are all, though we say in English, 'of whom two survive.'

NOTE 1. (a.) The comparative with the genitive denotes one of two individuals or classes; the superlative denotes a part of a number greater than two; as, *Māior frātrum*, The elder of two brothers. *Maximū frātrum*, The eldest of three or more.

(b.) In like manner, *ūter*, *alter*, and *neuter*, generally refer to two; *quē*, *quā*, and *nullus*, to a whole consisting of more than two; as, *Uter nostrum*? Which of us (two)? *Quis vestrum*? Which of you (three or more)?

NOTE 2. *Nostrum* and *vestrum* are used as partitive genitives, in preference to *nostrī* and *vestrī*, and are always joined with *omnium* even when the genitive is a subjective one; as, *Patria, quæ communis est omnium nostrum patrēs*. Cic. But *vestrum* sometimes occurs in other connections also without a partitive meaning; as, *Quis erit tam cupidus vestrum*. Cic.

NOTE 3. The partitive word is sometimes omitted; as, *Fies nobilium tu quōque fontium*, scil. *ūnus*. Hor. *Centies sestertium*, scil. *centēna millia*.

NOTE 4. The noun denoting the whole, after a partitive word, is often put in the ablative, with the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in*, or in the accusative, with *apud* or *inter*; as, *Nemo de iis*. *Alter ex censoribus*. Liv. *Unus ex multis*. Cic. *Accerrimus ex sensibus*. Id. *Thules, qui sapientissimus in septem fuit*. Id. *Primus inter omnes*. Virg. *Cresus inter rēges opulentissimus*. Sen. *Apud Helvētios nobilissimus*.

NOTE 5. The whole and its parts are frequently placed in apposition, distributively; as, *Interfectōres, pars in fōrum, pars Syrācūsas pergunt*. Liv. See § 204, R. 10.

NOTE 6. *Cuncti* and *omnes*, like partitives, are sometimes followed by a genitive plural; as, *Attalus Mācedōnum fere omnibus persuāsit*, Attalus persuaded almost all the Macedonians. Liv. *Cunctos hōminum*. Ovid. *Cunctas prōvinciarum*. Plin.

NOTE 7. In the following passage, the genitive singular seems to be used like that of a collective noun: *Tōtius autem iniustitiæ nulla captālior est*, etc. Cic. Off. 1, 13. The phrase *Rem nullo mōdo probābilem omnium* (Cic. Nat. Deor. 1, 27,) seems to be used for *Rem nullo omnium mōdōrum probābilem*.

REM. 3. The genitive denoting a whole, may depend on a neuter adjective or adjective pronoun. With these the genitive singular is commonly used; as,

*Plus eloquentiæ*, More (of) eloquence. *Tantum fidei*, So much fidelity. *Id tempus*, That time. *Ad hoc alitū*. Sometimes the genitive plural; as, *Id miseriārum*. Ter. *Armōrum quantum*. Cæs.

NOTE 1. (a.) Most neuter adjectives used partitively denote quantity; as, *tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*, *plūs*, *minus*, *minimum*, *dimidium*, *multum*, *nimum*, *præulum*, *plurimum*, *reliquum*; with the compounds and diminutives, *antidūm*, *tantundem*, *quantulum*, *quantulumcumque*, etc.; to which add *mediūm*, *sumum*, *ultimū*, *aliud*, etc. The pronouns thus used are *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *istud*, *idem*, *quod*, and *quid*, with their compounds, *aliquid*, *quidquid*, *quicquid*, *quidquam*, *quodcumque*.

(b.) Most of these adjectives and pronouns may either agree with their nouns, or take a genitive; but the latter is more common. *Tantum*, *quantum*, *aliquantum*, and *plūs*, when they denote quantity, are used with a genitive only, as are also *quid* and its compounds, when they denote a part, sort, etc., and *quod* in the sense of *quantum*. Thus, *Quantum crevit Nilus, tantum spiritus annuum est*. Sen. *Quid mulieris uxorē habes*? What kind of a woman... Ter

*Aliquid formæ.* Cic. *Quia hoc rei est?* What does this mean? Ter. *Quod auri, quod argenti, quod ornamentorum fuit, id Verres abstulit.*

NOTE 2. Neuter adjectives and pronouns, when followed by a genitive, are to be accounted substantives, and in this construction are found only in the nominative and accusative.

NOTE 3. Sometimes the genitive after these adjectives and pronouns is a neuter adjective, of the second declension, without a noun; as, *Tantum boni*, So much good. *Si quid habes novi*, If you have any thing new. Cic. *Quid reliqui est?* Ter. *Nihil* is also used with such a genitive; as, *Nihil sinceri*, No sincerity. Cic. This construction occurs very rarely with neuter adjectives in *i* of the third declension, and only in connection with neuters of the second declension; as, *Si quidquam non dico civilis sed humani esset*. Liv.

NOTE 4. In the poets and in the prose writers later than Cicero, neuter adjectives in the plural number are sometimes followed by a genitive, either singular or plural, with a partitive signification; as, *Extréma imperiis*, The frontiers of the empire. Tac. *Pontes et viarum angusta*, The bridges and the narrow parts of the roads. Id. *Opæca locorum*. Virg. *Antiqua fœderum*. Liv. *Cuncta camporum*. Tac. *Exercent colles, atque horum asperissima pascunt*. Virg. Cf. § 205, R. 9.

REM. 4. The adverbs *sât*, *sâtis*, *pârur*, *nîmis*, *âbunde*, *largiter*, *affâtim*, and *partim*, used partitively, are often followed by a genitive; as,

*Sat ratiônis*, Enough of reason. Virg. *Sâtis eloquentiæ, pârur sapiëntiæ*, Enough of eloquence, (yet) but little wisdom. Sall. *Nîmis instidiarum*. Cic. *Terroris et fraus abunde est*. Virg. *Auri et argenti largiter*. Plaut. *Copiarum affâtim*. Liv. *Quum partim illorum mihi familiârissimi essent*. Cic.

NOTE 1. The above words, though generally adverbs, seem, in this use, rather to be nouns or adjectives.

NOTE 2. (a.) The genitives *gentium*, *terrârum*, *loci*, and *locorum*, with certain adverbs of place, strengthen their meaning; as, *Usquam terrarum*. Just. *Usquam gentium*, Any where whatever. Plaut. *Ubi terrarum sumus?* Where in the world are we? Cic. *Abire quo terrarum possent*. Liv. *Ubi sit loci*. Plin. *Eo loci*, equivalent to *eo loco*, In that place. Tac. *Eodem loci res est*. Cic. *Nescire quo loci esset*. Id. But the last three examples might perhaps more properly be referred to Rem. 3.

(b.) The adverbs of place thus used are *ubi*, *ubnam*, *ubicumque*, *ubiubi*, *ubivis*, *ubique*, *unde*, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *quo*, *quocumque*, *quovis*, *quoquo*, *aliquo*, *hic*, *huc*, *eo*, *eodem*. *Loci* also occurs after *ibi* and *ibidem*; *gentium* after *longe*; as, *Ibe loci*, In that place. Plin. *Abes longe gentium*. Cic. So, *minime gentium*, By no means. Ter. *Vicinia* in the genitive is used by the comic writers after *hic* and *huc*; as, *Hic proximæ viciniæ*. Plaut. *Huc viciniæ*. Ter. Cf. § 221, R. 3, (4.)

NOTE 3. *Huc*, *eo*, *quo*, when used figuratively to express a degree, are joined also with other genitives; as, *Eo insolentiæ furorisque processit*, He advanced to such a degree of insolence and madness. Plin. *Huc enim malorum ventum est*. Curt. *Hucne rerum venimus?* Have we come to this? Pers. *Eo miseriæram venire*, To such a pitch of misery. Sall. *Quo amentia progressi sitis*. Liv.

NOTE 4. The genitives *loci*, *locorum*, and *temporis*, appear to be redundant after the adverbs *adhuc*, *inde*, *interea*, *postea*, *tum*, and *tunc*, in expressions denoting time; as, *Adhuc locorum*, Till now. Plaut. *Inde loci*, After that. Lucr. *Interea loci*, In the mean time. Ter. *Postea loci*, Afterwards. Sall. *Tum temporis*, and *tunc temporis*, At that time. Just. *Locorum* also occurs after *id*, denoting time; as, *Ad id locorum*, Up to that time. Sall. Cf. R. 3.

NOTE 5. When the genitive *ejus* occurs after *quoad*, in such connections as the following: *Quoad ejus facere poteris*. Cic.; or passively, *Quoad ejus fieri potest*, As far as may be. Cic.; the *ejus* refers to the preceding clause; literally, as much of it as possible.

NOTE 6. *Prædie* and *postdie*, though reckoned adverbs, are followed by a genitive, depending on the noun *dies* contained in them; as, *Prædie ejus diæi*, lit. On the day before that day, i. e. The day before. Cic. *Prædie insidiarum*. The day before the ambush. Tac. *Postdie ejus diæi*, The next day. Cæsar. When they are followed by an accusative, *ante* or *post* is understood. Cf. § 238, 1, (6.)

NOTE 7. Adverbs in the superlative degree, like their adjectives, are followed by a genitive; as, *Optime omnium*, Best of all. Cic.

### GENITIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

§ 213. A noun, limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the objective genitive, to denote the relation expressed in English by *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*; as,

<i>Avidus laudis</i> , Desirous of praise.	<i>Plena timoris</i> , Full of fear.
<i>Appetens gloriæ</i> , Eager for glory.	<i>Egenus aquæ</i> , Destitute of water.
<i>Memor virtutis</i> , Mindful of virtue.	<i>Doctus fandi</i> , Skilful in speaking.

So, *Nescia mens fatis*, The mind ignorant in regard to fate. Virg. *Impotens iræ*, lit. Powerless in respect to anger, i. e. unable to control it. Liv. *Hominēs expertes veritatis*, Men destitute of truth. Cic. *Lactis abundans*, Abounding in milk. Virg. *Terra ferax arborum*, Land productive of trees. Plin. *Tenax propolsti vir*, A man tenacious of his purpose. Hor. *Æger animi*, Sick in mind. Liv. *Locus metius juguli summique læceri*, i. e. between. Ovid. *Morum diversus*. Tac. *Opèrum solutus*. Hor. *Liber liborum*. Id. *Integer vitæ scelerisque parus*, Upright in life, and free from wickedness. Hor. *Vini pollens Liber*. Plaut.

From the above examples, it will be seen that the genitive after an adjective is sometimes translated by other words besides *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*, though the relation which it denotes remains the same. Cf. 211, R. 12.

REMARK 1. The following classes of adjectives, which, as denoting a relation to a thing, are called *relative adjectives* (§ 104, 13), are frequently limited by a genitive; viz. (1.) *Verbals* in *ax*; as, *câpax*, *édax*, *fêrax*, *fûgaz*, *pervicax*, *ténax*, etc.—(2.) *Participials* in *ns*, and a few in *us*, with their counterparts; as, *amans*, *appetens*, *cupiens*, *efficiens*, *pâtiens*, *impâtens*, *sitiens*;—*consultus*, *doctus*, *solutus*.—(3.) Adjectives denoting *desire* or *aversion*; as, *drâvus*, *âvilus*, *cupidus*, *studiosus*; *fastidiosus*:—*participation*; as, *particeps*, *affinis*, *consors*, *exsors*, *expers*, *inops*:—*knowledge*, *experience*, *capacity*, and their contraries; as, *callidus*, *compos*, *consciens*, *gnâvus*, *ignâvus*, *pértius*, *impértius*, *impos*, *pótens*, *impótens*, *prûdens*, *imprûdens*, *expertus*, *inexpertus*, *consciens*, *insciens*, *nesciens*, *insolens*, *insolitus*, *insuétus*, *rûdis*, *sollers*:—*memory* and *forgetfulness*; as, *mémor*, *immémor*, etc.:—*certainty* and *doubt*, as, *certus*, *incertus*, *ambiguus*, *dûbius*, *suspensus*:—*care* and *negligence*; as, *anxius*, *sollicitus*, *prôvidus*, *imprôvidus*, *sécûrus*:—*fear* and *confidence*, as, *pérvidus*, *timidus*, *trépîdus*, *impérvidus*, *fidens*, *interritus*:—*guilt* and *innocence*; as, *noxius*, *reus*, *suspectus*, *compertus*, *manifestus*, *innocens*, *innocens*:—*plenty* and *want*; as, *abundans*, *plenus*, *dives*, *sâtus*, *largus*, *inop*, *êgenus*, *inânus*, *pauper*, *parcus*, *solutus*, *vâcuus*.

(a.) In the poets and later prose writers, many other adjectives, particularly those which express mental emotions, are in like manner limited by a genitive, especially by *animi*, *ingénii*, *mentis*, *iræ*, *militiæ*, *belli*, *labôris*, *rêrum*, *cui*, *fûturî*, *môrum*, and *fidei*.

REM. 2. The limiting genitive, by a Greek construction, sometimes denotes a cause or source, especially in the poets; as, *Lassus maris*, et viarum, militiæque. Hor. *Fessus viæ*. Stat. *Fessus maris*. Hor. *Attonitus serpentis*. Sil. *Mens interrita læti*. Ovid.

REM. 3. Participles in *ns*, when used as such, take after them the same case as the verbs from which they are derived; as, *Se amans*, Loving himself. Cic. *Altæ terram appetens*. Id.

REM. 4. Instead of the genitive, denoting *of*, *in*, or *in respect to*, a different construction is sometimes used after many of these adjectives; as,

(1.) An infinitive or a subjunctive clause; as, *Certus ire*, Determined to go Ovid. *Cantare peritū*. Virg. *Felicior unguere tela*. Id. *Anxius quid factū opus sit*. Sall. *Vive mēmor quam sis aevi brevis*. Hor.—So *aliēnus, avidus, callidus, cupidus, firmus, frēquens, gnārus, impotens, inops, letus, largus, liber, pollens, mēmor, dubius*, etc.

(2.) An accusative with a preposition; as, *Ad rem avidior*. Ter. *Avitus in direptionē*. Liv. *Animus capax ad praecepta*. Ovid. *Ad casum fortunamq; felix*. Cic. *Ad fraudem callidus*. Id. *Diligens ad custodiendum*. Id. *Negligentior in patrem*. Just. *Vir ad disciplinam peritus*. Cic. *Ad bella ruidus*. Liv. *Potens in res bellicas*. Id. *Alacer ad maleficia*. Cic. *Inter bellum et pacem nihil mēcium est*. Id.—So with *ad, fertilis, firmus, infirmus, potens, sterilis*, etc.—with *in, cupidus, parvus, potens, prodigus*, etc.

(3.) An accusative without a preposition, chiefly in the poets; as, *Nudus membra*, Bare as to his limbs. Virg. *Os, humerosque deo similis*. Id. *Cetera fulvus*. Hor. *Cuncta pollens*. Sen. Ag. See § 234, II.

(4.) An ablative with a preposition; as, *Avidus in pecuniis*, Eager in regard to money. Cic. *Anxius de fama*. Quint. *Ruidus in jure civili*. Cic. *Peritus de agriculturā* Varr. *Prudens in jure civili*. Cic. *Reus de vi*. Id. *Purus ab cultu humano*. Liv. *Certior factus de re*. Cic. *Sollicitus de re*. Id. *Super scelere suspectus*. Sall. *Inops ab amicis*. Cic. *Pauper in aere*. Hor. *Modericus in cultu*. Plin. *Ab aquis sterilis*. Apul. *Copiosus a frumento*. Cic. *Ab equitatu firmus*. Id. So with *in, immodicus, parvus, uber* :—with *ab, aliēnus, beatus, ex-torris, immūis, inops, liber, nudus, orbis, vacuus*.

(5.) An ablative without a preposition; as, *Arte ruidus*, Rude in art. Ovid. *Regni crimine insons*. Liv. *Compos mente*. Virg. *Prudens consilio*. Just. *Eger pedibus*. Sall. *Praestans ingenio*. Cic. *Modericus severitate*. Tac. *Nihil insidiis vacuum*. Cic. *Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus*. Plaut. *Modericus Pollice et Castore*. Ovid. Cf. Rem. 5.

In many instances, the signification of the accusative and ablative after adjectives differs, in a greater or less degree, from that of the genitive.

REM. 5. As many of the adjectives, which are followed by a genitive, admit of other constructions, the most common use of each, with particular nouns, can, in general, be determined only by recourse to the dictionary, or to the classics. Some have,

(1.) The genitive only; as, *benignus, capax, exors, imops, impotens, instabilis, irritus, liberalis, modericus, munificus, praelargus*, and many others.

(2.) The genitive more frequently; as, *compos, consors, egens, exheres, exors, fertilis, indigus, inops, parvus, particeps, pauper, prodigus, prosper, sterilis*.

(3.) The genitive or ablative indifferently; as, *dives, fecundus, ferax, immūis, inanis, immodicus, jinguns, largus, nimius, opulentus, peritus, plenus, potens, purus, refertus, satur, uber, vacuus*.

(4.) The ablative more frequently; as, *abundans, aliēnus, cassus, copiosus, extorris, firmus, fetus, frequens, gravidus, gravis, infirmus, liber, locuples, letus, macius, nudus, onustus, orbis, pollens, sotiatus, truncus, validus, viduus*.

(5.) The ablative only; as, *beatus, creber, densus, mutilus, timidus, turgidus*.

For the ablative after many of the preceding adjectives, see § 250.

REM. 6. Some adjectives usually limited by a dative, sometimes take a genitive instead of the dative; as, *similis, dissimilis*, etc. See § 222, R. 2.

REM. 7. Many adjectives in addition to the genitive or ablative denoting *of* or *in respect to*, take also another case to express a different relation; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*. Cf. § 222, R. 3. *Conscius* has also sometimes the dative instead of the genitive of the thing; as, *Conscius huic facinori*. Cic.

## GENITIVE AFTER VERBS

§ 214. *Sum*, and verbs of *valuing*, are followed by a genitive, denoting *degree of estimation*; as,

*A me argentum, quanti est, sūmito*. Take of me so much money as (he) is worth. Ter. *Magni aestimabat pecūniam*. He valued money greatly. Cic. *Ager nunc plūris est, quam tunc fuit*. Id. *Tanti est*. It is worth so much; and, absolutely, *It is worth while*. Cic. *Hūjus non fācio*, I don't care *that* for it.

REMARK 1. (a.) Verbs of valuing are joined with the genitive, when the value is expressed in a *general* or *indefinite* manner by:—

(1.) A neuter adjective of quantity; as, *tanti, quanti, plūris, minōris, ma, ni permagni, plūrtimi, maztini, minitimi, parvi, tantidem, quantumcumque, quantiovis, quantūlibet*, but only very rarely *multis* and *majoris*.

(2.) The nouns *assis, flocci, nauci, nihili, pili, tētruncii*, and also *pensi* and *hūjus*.

(b.) But if the price or value of a thing is a *definite* sum, or is expressed by a *substantive*, other than *assis, flocci*, etc., it is put in the ablative. Cf. § 252.

REM. 2. The verbs of valuing are *aestimo, existimo, dūco, fācio, fio, habeo, pendo, pūto, depūto, taxo*. Thus, *Ut quanti quisque se ipse faciūt, tanti sint ab amicis*. That as much as each one values himself, so much he should be valued by his friends. Cic. *Sed quia parvi id dūceret*. Id. *Hōnōres si magni non pūtāmus*. Id. *Non assis fācis?* Catull. *Nēque quod dicit, flocci existimāt*. Plaut.

NOTE 1. (a.) The phrase *aequi bōni*, or *aequi bōnique fācio*, or *consūlo*, I take a thing in good part, am satisfied with it, may be classed with genitives of value; as, *Nos aequi bōnique factūmus*. Liv. So, *Bōni consūluit* Plin.—(b.) A genitive of price is joined also to *ceno, habito, dōceo*, etc.; as, *quanti habitas?* what rent do you pay for your house or lodging? *quanti docet?* what are his terms in teaching?

NOTE 2. After *aestimo*, the ablatives *magno, permagno, parvo, nihilo*, are sometimes used instead of the genitive; as, *Dedit magno aestimas, accepta parvo*. Sen. *Pro nihilo*, also, occurs after *dūco, habeo*, and *pūto*; and *nihil* with *aestimo* and *mōror*. Cf. § 231, R. 5.

NOTE 3. The neuter adjectives above enumerated, and *hūjus*, may be referred to a noun understood, as *prētii, aeris, pōulēris, mōmenti*; and may be considered as limiting a preceding noun, also understood, and denoting some person or thing; as, *Aestimo te magni*, i. e. *hōmīnem magni prētii*. *Scio ejus ordinis auctoritatem semper apud te magni fuisse*, i. e. *rem magni mōmenti*. The words *assis*, etc., may also be considered as depending on an omitted noun; as, *prētio ren*, etc.

REM. 3. Statements of *price*, also, when *general* or *indefinite*, are put in the genitive after verbs of *buying, selling, letting, and hiring*.

*Mercātōres non tantidem vendunt, quanti emērunt*. Cic. *Nulla pestis hūmāno gēnēri plūris stetit, quam ira*. Sen.

NOTE 1. Verbs of buying, selling, etc., are *emo, vendo*, the neutral passive, *veneo, consto, prōsto*, and *liceo*, to be exposed for sale.

NOTE 2. With verbs of buying, selling, etc., the ablatives *magno, permagno, vūltimo, parvo, minimo*, and *nihilo* are often used instead of the genitive; as *Non pōtest parvo res magna constāre*. Sen. *Quanti emere possum minimo?* What is the lowest price I can buy at? Plaut. Sometimes also the adverbs *cōre bene*, and *māle* take the place of the genitive or ablative of price.



§ 215. (1.) *Misereor, miseresco*, and the impersonals *misēret, pœnitēt, pūdet, tædet*, and *pīget*, are followed by a genitive of the object in respect to which the feeling is exercised; as,

*Misērēdini sociōrum*, Pity the allies. Cic. *Misērescite rēgis*, Pity the king. Virg. *Mea māter, tui me misēret, mei pīget*, I pity you, and am dissatisfied with myself. Acc. *Eos ineptiarum pœnitēt*. Cic. *Frātris me pūdet pīgetque*. Ter. *Me citiātis mōrum pīget tædetque*. Sall. So the compound *distædet*; *Hanc quod tui me, nēque dōmi distædeat*. Plaut.; and the passive; *Numquam suscepti nēgōti eum pertasum est*. Nep. *Lentitudinis eōrum pertasa*. Tac. *Misēritum est me tuarum fortunarum*. Ter. *Cave te frātrum misereatur*. Cic. *Pūdet (me) deōrum hōminumque*, I am filled with shame in reference both to gods and men. Liv.

NOTE 1. *Misereat* is sometimes used in the same manner as *misēret*; as, *Nunc te misereat mei*. Ter. *Misereo*, as a personal verb, also, occurs with a genitive; as, *Ipse sui misēret*. Lucr.

REMARK. The genitive after the above impersonals seems to depend on some general word constituting the grammatical subject of such verbs, and signifying, matter, business, fact, case, circumstances, conduct, character, etc., cf § 211, R. 8, (3); and § 209, R. 3, (4.) Instead of the genitive with its omitted noun, an infinitive or clause with *quod* or with an interrogative particle is sometimes used as a subject; as, *Non me hoc jam dicere pūdebit*. Cic. *Non pœnitēt me quantum profecerim*, I am not dissatisfied with my progress. Id. These verbs have also sometimes a nominative; as, *Me quidem hæc conditio non pœnitēt*. Plaut. *Non te hæc pudent?* Ter.

NOTE 2. *Misēret* occurs with an accusative of the object, instead of a genitive; as, *Menedemi vicem misēret me*. Ter. So, also, *Pertasus ignāviam suam*. Suet.

NOTE 3. (a.) These impersonals, as active verbs, take also an accusative of the person exercising the feeling which they express. See § 229, R. 6.—(b.) Sometimes also the accusative of the neuter pronouns and of *nihil*, denoting to what degree the feelings are exercised; as, *Sequitur ut nihil (sapientem) pœniteat*. Cic. Cf. § 232, (3.)

(2.) *Sātāgo* is sometimes followed by a genitive denoting in what respect; as,

*Is sātāgit rerum suarum*, He is busily occupied with his own affairs. Ter. This compound is often written separately, and in either case the genitive seems to depend upon *sūt*. See § 212, R. 4. *Agito*, with *sāt*, in like manner, is followed by a genitive; as, *Nunc agitas sat tute tuarum rerum*. Plaut.

§ 216. *Rēcordor, mēmīni, rēmīniscor*, and *oblīviscor*, are followed by a genitive or accusative of the object remembered or forgotten; as,

*Flāgitiorum suorum rēcordābitur*. Cic. *Omnes grādus ætātis rēcordor tua*, I call to mind all the periods of your life. Id. *Mēmīni vivōrum*, I am mindful of the living. Id. *Nūmeros mēmīni*, I remember the measure. Virg. *Rēmīnisci vērīs famæ*. Nep. *Dulces mōriens rēmīniscitur Argos*. Virg. *Rēmīnisci amicōs*. Ovid. *Oblitus sui*. Virg. *Iujuriarum oblīviscitur*. Nep. *Oblīviscor injūrias*. Cic. *Oblīviscere Graios*. Virg.

REMARK 1. (a.) When the thing remembered or forgotten is expressed by a neuter pronoun or adjective, it is always put in the accusative. An accusative of the person with these verbs is unusual, except that *mēmīni*, when referring to a contemporary always takes an accusative of the person; as, *Cin-  
cinnam mēmīni*. Cic.

(b.) An infinitive or a dependent clause sometimes follows these verbs; as, *Memento mihi supplicius ferre*. Plaut. *Esse quôque in fatis reminiscitur*, affore tempus, quo mâre, etc. Ovid. *Obliſi quid dēcea* Hor. *Mēmīni te scribēre*. Cic. *Quæ sum passûra rēcor*. Ovid.

REM. 2. *Rēcor* and *mēmīni*, to remember, are sometimes followed by an ablative with *de*; as, *Pētīmus ut de suis libēris rēcor dentur*. Cic. *De pallā mēmento*. Plaut.

REM. 3. *Mēmīni*, signifying to make mention of, has a genitive, or an ablative with *de*; as, *Nēque hūjus rei mēmīnit poēta*. Quint. *Mēmīnistī de exsiliis*. Cic. With *vēnit mihi in mentem*, the person or thing may be made the subject of *vēnit*; as, *Miseræ ubi vēnit in mentem mortis mētus*. Plaut. *Vēnit hoc mihi in mentem*; or an infinitive or subjunctive clause may supply the place of the subject:—for the genitive with this phrase, as in *Solet mihi in mentem vēnire illius temporis*, see § 211, R. 3, (5.) The genitive with *rēcor* is very rare.

§ 217. Verbs of accusing, convicting, condemning, and acquitting, with the accusative of the person, are followed by a genitive denoting the crime; as,

*Arguit me furti*, He charges me with theft. *Altērum accūsāt probri*, He accuses another of villany. *Meipsum inertis condēmo*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) To this rule belong the verbs of

Accusing; *accūsō*, *āgo*, *arcesso*, *arguo*, *cito*, *dēfēro*, *incrēpo*, *incūsō*, *inamulo*, *postulo*, and more rarely *alligo*, *anquiro*, *astringo*, *capto*, *incrēpto*, *urgeo*, *interrogo*, *reum āgo* or *fācio*, *ālicui diē dāco*, *cum āliquo āgo*.—Convicting; *convincō*, *coarguo*, *prēhendo*, *tēneor*, *obstringor*, *oblāgor*.—Condemning; *damno*, *condēmo*, *infāmo*, and more rarely *jūdicō*, *nōto*, *plector*.—Acquitting; *absolvo*, *libēro*, *purgo*, and rarely *solvō*. To the verbs of accusing, etc., may be added the adjectives denoting guilt and innocence, which likewise take a genitive. Cf. § 213, R. 1, (3.)

(b.) The genitives which follow these verbs are, *audāciæ*, *drāritiæ*, *cediæ*, *falsi*, *furti*, *ignāviæ*, *impietātis*, *injuriarū*, *lētitiæ*, *mājestātis*, *mālēficii*, *mendacii*, *parricidiū*, *peccāti*, *pēculātus*, *probri*, *prōditionis*, *rei captiālīs*, *rēpētundarū*, *scēleris*, *stultitiæ*, *tēmēritātis*, *timoris*, *vānitātis*, *vēnēficii*, etc.

REM. 2. (a.) Instead of the genitive, an ablative with *de* is often used after *accūsō*, *dēfēro*, *anquiro*, *arguo*, *postulo*, *damno*, *condēmo*, *absolvo*, and *purgo*; as, *Accūsāre de negligentia*. Cic. *De vi condēmnāti sunt*. Id. *De rēpētundis est postulātus*. Id. Sometimes with *in*, after *accūsō*, *coarguo*, *convincō*, *tēneor*, and *dēprēhendor*; as, *In quo te accūsō* (Cic.); and after *libēro*, with *a* or *ab*; as, *A scēlere libērāti sūmus*. Cic. *Accūsō* and *damno* with *inter* occur in the phrases *inter sicārios accūsāre*, etc., to charge with assassination.

(b.) With some of the above verbs, an ablative without a preposition is often used; as, *Libērāre culpā*. Cic. *Crimen quo argui posset*. Nep. *Prōconsulem postulatērat rēpētundis*. Tac. This happens especially with general words denoting crime; as, *scēlus*, *mālēficiū*, *peccātum*, etc.; as, *Me peccātō solvo*. Liv. The ablatives *crimine* and *nōmine*, without a preposition, are often inserted before the genitive; as, *Arcessere āliquem crimine ambītis*. Liv. *Nōmine scēleris conjūrātionisque damnāti* Cic.; and when not so inserted they are to be understood.

(c.) Sometimes a clause takes the place of the genitive; as, *Eum accūsābant quod societatem fecisset*. Nep. So the infinitive with the accusative. *Quid tē quod me—arguit sērum accessisse*? Ovid.

REM. 3. (a.) The punishment is commonly expressed by the genitive; as, *captis*, *mortis*, *multæ*, *pēcuniæ*, *quadrupli*, *octupli*; but sometimes by the ablative; as, *cipile*, *morte*, *multā*, *pēcuniā*; and always by this case when a definite sum is mentioned; as, *quindēcim millibus aris*: or the accusative with *ad* or *in*

as, *ad panem, ad bestias, ad metalla, in metallum, in expensas*;—sometimes though rarely, in the poets, by the dative; as, *Damnatus morti*. Lucr.—(b.) *Voti or vótum*, and less frequently *voto* or *vótis damnari*, signifies 'to be condemned to fulfil one's vow,' and is consequently equivalent to 'to obtain what one wishes.' So also in the active voice, *Damnabis tu quoque vótis*. Virg. *Perdo* is used by Plautus as a verb of accusing, with *capitis*; *Quem ego capitis periciam*, will charge with a capital offence. So *capite* or *capitis periclitari*, Plaut., signifies 'to be in peril of one's life.' With *plecto* and *plector*, *caput* is used in the ablative only.—(c.) *Damni infecti* is put in the genitive (depending upon *nómine* understood) after *satisdo*, *prómitto*, *stipulári*, *reprómitto*, and *caveo*; as, *Si quis in páriete depóliendo damni infecti prómiserit*. Cic.

REM. 4. *Accúso, incúso, and instímulo*, instead of the genitive, sometimes take the accusative, especially of a neuter pronoun; as, *Si id me non accusas*. Plaut. *Quæ me incúsaveras*. Ter. *Sic me instímulare falsum fácinus*. Plaut. See § 231, Rem. 5.

REM. 5. (a.) The following verbs of accusing, etc., are not followed by a genitive of the crime, but, as active verbs, by an accusative:—*calumnior, carpó, corripio, criminor, culpo, excúso, multo, púnio, repréhendo, súgillo, tazo, trádico, vitupéro*; as, *Culpáre infécunditátem agrórum*. Colum. *Excúsare errórem et adolescentiam*. Liv.

(b.) This construction also sometimes occurs with *accúso, incúso, arguo*, and *inarguo*; as, *Ejus avaritiam perfídiamque accusárat*. Nep. *Culpam arguo*. Liv. With *multo*, the punishment is put in the ablative only, without a preposition; as, *Exsiliis, morte multantur*. Cic.

§ 218. Verbs of admonishing, with the accusative of the person, are followed by a genitive of the person or thing respecting which the admonition is given; as,

*Míletes temporis mōnet*, He admonishes the soldiers of the occasion. Tac. *Admōnebat álíum égestátis, álíum cúpiditátis suæ*. Sall.

NOTE. The verbs of admonishing are *mōneo, admōneo, commōneo*, and *commōnéfácio*.

REMARK 1. Instead of the genitive, verbs of admonishing sometimes have an ablative with *de*; as, *De sède Tellúris me admōnes*. Cic.—sometimes an accusative of a pronoun or adjective in the neuter gender; as, *Eos hoc mōneo*. Cic. *Illud me admōneo*. Id.; and in the passive, *Multa admōnemur*. Id.—rarely also a noun in the accusative; as, *Eam rem nos lócus admōnuít*. Sall.

REM. 2. Instead of the genitive, verbs of admonishing are also often followed by an infinitive or clause; as, *Sóror alma mōnet succédere Lauso Turnum*, His sister admonishes Turnus to take the place of Lausus. Virg. *Mōnet, ut suspiciónes vitet*. Cæs. *Sed eos hoc mōneo, désinant fútere*. Cic. *Mōnet ratiónem frúmenti esse hábendam*. Hirt. *Immortália ne spères mōnet annus*. Hor. *Discípulos d únúm mōnco*, ut, etc. Quint. *Mōneo quid factó ópus sit*. Ter. See § 273, 2.

§ 219. *Réfert* and *intérest* are followed by a genitive of the person or thing whose concern or interest they denote; as,

*Húmilitátis réfert*. It concerns human nature. Plin. *Réfert omnium ántímadverti in malos*. Ta: *Intérest omnium recte fácere*, It concerns all to do right. Cic.

REMARK 1. Instead of the genitive of the substantive pronouns, the adjective pronouns *mea, tua, sua, nostra, and vestra*, are used; as,

*Mea nihil réfert*, It does not concern me. Ter. *Illud mea magni intérest*, That greatly concerns me. Cic. *Tua et mea maxime intérest, te valere*. Cic. *Mágis reipúblicæ intérest quam mea*. Id. *Magni intérest Cicerónis, vel mea vótus, vel mehercúle utriusque, me intervénire dicenti*. Id.

**NOTE.** *Rêfert* rarely occurs with the genitive, but often with the pronouns *meu, tua*, etc., and most frequently without either such pronoun or a genitive; as, *quid rêfert? magni* or *magnopere rêfert*.

**REM. 2.** In regard to the case of these adjective pronouns, grammarians differ. Some suppose that they are in the accusative plural neuter, agreeing with *commôda* or the like understood; as, *Intérest mea*, i. e. *est inter mea*. It is among my concerns. *Rêfert tua*, i. e. *rêfert se ad tua*. It refers itself to your concerns. Others think that they are in the ablative singular feminine, agreeing with *re, causâ*, etc., understood, or in the dative. The better opinion seems to be, that they are in the accusative feminine for *meam, tuam, suam*, etc., that *rêfert* was originally *rem fert*, and that hence the *e* of *rêfert* is long.

**REM. 3.** Instead of the genitive, an accusative with *ad* is sometimes used; as, *Ad honorem meum intérest quam primum urbem me venire*. Cic. *Quid id ad me aut ad meam rem rêfert*. Plaut.—sometimes, though rarely, an accusative without a preposition; as, *Quid te igitur retulit?* Plaut—or a dative; as, *Dic quid rêferat intra naturæ fines viventi*. Hor.

**REM. 4.** The subject of these verbs, or the thing which is of interest or importance, is sometimes expressed by a neuter pronoun; as, *Id mea minime rêfert*. Ter. *Hoc vehementer intérest reipublicæ*. Cic.; and sometimes by an infinitive with its accusative, or *ut*, or an interrogative particle with a subjunctive clause; as, *multum mea intérest te esse diligenter*, or *ut diligens sis*, or *utrum diligens sis nec ne*. When the infinitive alone is used with *rêfert* or *intérest*, the preceding subject is understood; as, *omnium intérest recte facere*, scil. *se*.

**REM. 5.** The degree of interest or importance is expressed by adverbs or by neuter adjectives, etc., in the accusative or genitive; as, *mâgis, magnopere, vehementer, parum, minime*, etc.; *multum, plus, plurimum, nihil, aliquid*, etc.; *tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, pluris*. But *minimo* *discrimine rêfert* is found in Juv. 6, 123.

**§ 220.** Many verbs which are usually otherwise construed, are sometimes followed by a genitive. This rule includes

1. Certain verbs denoting an affection of the mind; *ango, discrucior, exerceo, fallo, pendeo*, which are followed by *animi*; *dècipior, dèstipio, fallor, fasidio, irideo, miror, vereor*; as, *Absurde facis, qui angas te animi*. Plaut. *Me animi fallit*. Lucr. *Dècipitur laborum*. Hor. *Dèstipibam mentis*. Plaut. *Justitiæ prius mirer belline laborum*. Virg.

2 The following, in imitation of the Greek idiom; *abstineo, dèstino, purgo*. Hor.; *dèsiato*. Virg.; *laudo, prôhibeo*. Sil.; *lêvo, participo*. Plaut.; *libero*. Liv.; *fascoloo*. Tibull.: compare *liber laborum; opèrum vacuus; purus sceleris*. § 213.

3. Some verbs denoting to fill, to abound, to want or need, to free, which are commonly followed by an ablative. Such are *abundo, cæreo, compleo, expleo, impleo, ego, indulgeo, saturo, obsaturo, scâteo*; as, *Adolescentem suæ temeritatis implet*. He fills the youth with his own rashness. Liv. *Animum expleasse flammæ*. Virg. *Egeo consilii*. Cic. *Non tam artis indigent quam laboris*. Id. See §§ 249 and 250, (2.)

4. *Pôtior*, which also is usually followed by an ablative; as, *Urbis pôtiri*, To make oneself master of the city. Sall. *Pôtiri regni* (Cic.), *hostium* (Sall.), *rerum*, To make oneself master of the world. Cic. *Pôtio* (active) occurs in Plautus; as, *Eum nunc pôtiuit servitûtis*, He has made him partaker of slavery. In the same writer, *pôtitus est hostium* signifies, 'he fell into the hands of the enemy.' So, also, *Aliquem compôtire prædæ* or *vôti*. App. So, *Rerum adeptus est*. Tac. *Dènnatônis apici*. Id. *Regnâvit pôptulorum*. Hor.

### GENITIVE OF PLACE.

§ 221. 1. The name of a town *in which* any thing is said *to be*, or *to be done*, if of the first or second declension and singular number, is put in the genitive; as,

*Habitu* Miletu, He lives at Miletus. Ter. *Quid Rōmā faciā?* What can I do at Rome? Juv. *Hercūles Tyri maxime cōlitur.* Cic.

**NOTE.** For the construction of nouns of the third declension or plural number, see § 254. The following appears to be the best explanation that has been given of this diversity of construction, depending solely on the number or declension of the noun. The name of the town 'where' or 'in which' is probably neither in the genitive nor the ablative, but always, as in Greek, in the dative. Since the genitive and dative are alike in the singular of the first declension and the dative and ablative plural are the same in all declensions, such examples as *Rōmæ* and *Athēnis* present no difficulty. In the third declension the dative and ablative singular were anciently alike, and in such ablatives as *Anzūri*, *Carthāgini*, *Lacedæmōni*, the old form remains, see § 82, Exc. 5, (c.) In the second declension there was an old dative in *oi*, as in Greek, which was commonly changed to *o*, but sometimes to *i*: and the latter is still found in *nulli*, *uni*, etc., see § 107, and in the adjective pronouns; as, *illi*, etc.

REMARK 1. Names of islands and countries are sometimes put in the genitive, like names of towns; as, *Ithacæ vivere*, To live in Ithaca. Cic. *Corcyrae fuimus*. Id. *Cicon plurimum Cypri viciis*, *Timotheus Lesbi*. Nep. *Quum Miltiades domum Chersonēsē habuist*. Id. *Cræus jussit considerare Apollo*. Virg. *Rōmæ Numidicæque factōra ejus mēmorat*. Sall.

REM. 2. (a.) Instead of the genitive, the ablative of names of towns of the first and second declension and singular number, is sometimes, though rarely, used; as, *Rex Tyro dēdedit*, The king dies at Tyre. Just. *Et Cōrintho et Athēna et Lacedaemōne nunciāta est victōria*. Id. *Pons quem ille Abydō fēcerat*. Id. *Hujus exemplar Rōmā nūllum habēmus*. Vitruv. *Non Libyae, non ante Tyro*. Virg. For the explanation of this apparent anomaly, see the preceding note; in accordance with which it may be remarked, that the adverbs of place, *ibi, ibi, ibidem, alibi, alibi, hic, illic, istic*, etc., appear from their form to be ancient datives.—(b.) When the noun is qualified by an adjective, it is put, not in the genitive, but in the ablative with *in*; as, *In ipsā Alexandriā*. Cic. And poetically without *in*, *Gēnus Longā nostrum dōminābitur Albā*. Virg.—(c.) When *urbs, oppidum, locus*, etc., follow the genitive of place as appositions, they are put in the ablative either with, or, more rarely, without, *in*; as, *Archias Antiōchiæ nātus est, cēlebrī quondam urbe*. Cic. *Cives Rōmānos Neapōli*, in cēlebrerrimo oppido *sepe videmus*. Id. But when *in urbe*, etc., precede the name of a town, the latter also is put in the ablative; as, *In oppido Citio*. Nep.; and but very rarely in the genitive; as, *Cassius in oppido Antiōchiæ est*,—in the town of Antioch. Cic., where the genitive depends on *oppido*.

REM. 3. The genitives *dōmi*, *mūltiāz*, *belli*, and *hūmi*, are construed like names of towns; as,

*Tēuit se dōmi*, He staid at home. Cic. *Vir dōmi clārus*. Liv. *Spargit hūm fūssos d.ites*,—on the ground. Ovid. *Militiæ* and *belli* are thus used, especially when opposed to *dōmi*; as, *Una semper militiæ et dōmi frātus*,—both at home and in the camp. Ter. So *Dōmi militiæque*. Cic. *Et dōmi et militiæ*. Id. *Militiæ dōmique*. Liv. *Militiæ et dōmi*. Ter. *Belli dōmique*, in war and in peace. Hor.

(1.) *Domi* is thus used with the possessives *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra, ad aliēna*; as, *Domi nostra vixit*. He lived at my house. *Cic. Apud eum sic fui tamquam meae domi*. Id. *Sacrificium, quod aliēnae domi fieret incivile*. Id. But with other adjectives, an ablative, generally with a preposition, is used: as, *in viciis domo*. Ovid. *Paterna domo*. Id. Sometimes also with the possessives *me, tui*. *Atei in domo*. Hor. *In domo sua*. Nep. So, instead of *hāmi*, 'upon the ground,

*hūmo* is sometimes used, with or without a preposition; as, *In hūmo arēdo* Ovid. *Sedere hūmo nūdā.* Id.

(2.) When a genitive denoting the possessor follows, either *dōmi* or *in dōmo* is used; as, *Dēprēhensus dōmi Cæsāris.* Cic. *Dōmi illius fuisti.* Id. *In dōmo Cæsāris.* Id. *In dōmo ejus.* Nep.

(3.) The ablative *dōmo* for *dōmi* also occurs, but not in Cicero; as, *Ego id nunc capere dōmo.* Plaut. *Dōmo se tēnere.* Nep. *Dōmo abditus.* Suet. *Bello* for *belli* is found in Livy—*Dōmi bellōque.* So, also, *hūmo* for *hūmi*; *Strātus hūmo.* Stat. *Figit hūmo plantas.* Virg.: and *in hūmo lūmen figit.* Ovid.

(4.) *Terræ* is sometimes used like *hūmi*; as, *Sacra terræ cēlāvimus.* Liv. *Proiectus terræ.* Virg. *Ignes terræ condit.* Luc. So, also, *ārēnæ*; *Truncum reliquit ārēnæ.* Virg.: and *vicinæ*; *Proximæ vicinæ habitāt.* Plaut.

(5.) The genitive of names of towns, *dōmi*, *militiæ*, etc., is supposed by some to depend on a noun understood; as, *urbē*, *oppidō*, *castris*, *solo*, *loco*, *tempore*, etc., but see a different explanation above in Note.

## GENITIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

II. Certain adverbs are followed by the genitive. See § 212, R. 1.

III. The genitive plural sometimes depends on the preposition *tēnus*; as,

*Cumārum tēnus.* As far as Cumæ. Cœl. *Crūrū tēnus.* Virg. *Litērum tēnus.* Id. *Urbium Cōrcyræ tēnus.* Liv.—For the ablative after *tēnus*, and for the place of the preposition, see § 241, and R. 1.

## DATIVE.

§ 222. 1. The dative is the case of reference, as it denotes the object with reference to which the subject acts, or in reference to which it possesses any specified quality; or, in other words, the object for which, to the benefit or loss of which, any thing is or is done. Hence, in distinction from the dative of the end (§ 227) the dative of reference is called *dativus commodi et incommodi*, the dative of advantage and disadvantage; as,

*Scribo vōbis hunc librum,* I write this book for you. *Præsum tibi,* or *Tibi utilis sum,* I am useful to you.

2. Hence the dative of advantage and disadvantage may be used (a) with adjectives and particles whose meaning is incomplete unless the object is mentioned in reference to which the quality exists. (b) With verbs both transitive and intransitive. If transitive they take an accusative of the nearer and a dative of the remoter object, if intransitive they take a dative only. (c) With certain verbs compounded with prepositions, after which the dative is used instead of the case which the preposition, if separate, would govern. (d) After a few verbal substantives derived from verbs which govern a dative.

## DATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES.

3. A noun limiting the meaning of an adjective, is put in the dative, to denote the object to which the quality is directed; as,

*Utīlis, agris*, Useful to the fields. Juv. *Jūcundus amicis*, Agreeable to his friends. Mart. *Inimicus puieti*, unfriendly to rest. Id. *Charta inūtilis scribendo*, Paper not useful for writing. Plin.

NOTE. The dative is commonly translated by the prepositions *to* or *for*; but sometimes by other prepositions, or without a preposition.

REMARK 1. Adjectives signifying *useful, pleasant, friendly, fit, like, inclined, ready, easy, clear, equal*, and their opposites, also those signifying *near*, many compounded with *con*, and verbals in *bilis*, are followed by the dative; as,

*Felix tuis*, Propitious to your friends. Virg. *Oratio, ingrāta*, Gallis, A speech displeasing to the Gauls. Cæs. *Amicus tyrannidi*, Friendly to tyranny. Nep. *Lābōri inhābilis*, Unsuitable to labor. Colum. *Patri similis*, Like his father. Cic. *Nihil tam est Lysiae diversum, quam Isocrātes Aptum* Tempōri. Id. *Mālo prorsus*. Sen. *Promptus seditiōni*. Tac. *Cuius facile est*. Ter. *Mihi certum est*. Cic. *Par fratri tuo*. Id. *Falsa vōris finitima sunt*. Id. *Oculi concōloris corpōri*. Colum. *Multis bonis fēbilis*. Hor. *Mors est terribīlis iis, quōrum*, etc. Cic.

(a.) The following are some of the adjectives included in Rem. 1, viz. *grātus, acceptus, dulcis, jūcundus, latus, suāvis; ingrātus, insuāvis, injūcundus, molestus, grātis, dēcerbus, dōctus, tristis;—ūtilis, inūtilis, bonus, salūber, salūtāris, fructuosus, cōlāmitōsus, damnosus, funestus, noxius, pestifer, perniciosus, exiliōsus;—amicus, benēvolus, cārus, familiāris, æquus, fidus, fidēlis, prōptius, sēcundus; inimicus, adversus, æmulus, dīlētus, contrārius, infestus, infidus, iniquus, irātus;—aptus, accommodātus, appōsitus, hābilis, idōneus, opportūsus; ineptus, inhābilis, impertinēsus, inconveniēsus;—æquālis, par, impar, dispar, similis, dissimilis, abstimilis, discolor;—prōnus, prōclivis, prōpensus, promptus, pāvātus;—facilis, difficilis;—apertus, conspicuus, manifestus, perspicuus, obscurus, certus, compertus, notus, ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, insolitus;—vicinus, finitimus, confinis, terminus, propior, proximius, cognātus, concōlor, concors, congruus, consanguineus, consensuēsus, consōnus, convēniēsus, contiguus, continuus, continens.*

(b.) Many adjectives of other significations, including some compounds of *ob*, *sub*, and *super*, as *obnoxius, obvius, subjectus, supplex*, and *superstes*, are also followed by a dative of the object,

(c.) After verbals in *bilis*, the dative is usually rendered by the preposition *by*; as, *Tibi credibilis sermo*, A speech creditable to you, i. e. worthy to be believed by you. Ovid.

(d.) The expression *dicto audiens*, signifying obedient, is followed by the dative; as, *Syracusani nobis dicto audientes sunt*. Cic. *Audiens dicto fuit jussu magistratuum*. Nep. In this phrase, *dicto* is dative limiting *audiens*, and the words *dicto audiens* seem to form a compound equivalent to *obediens*, and, like that, followed by a dative; thus, *Nec plebs nobis dicto audiens atque obediens sit*. Liv. *So dicto obediens*; as, *Futura es dicto obediens, annon, patri?* Plaut.

REM. 2. (a.) The adjectives *æquālis, affinis, aliēnus, cognōmīnis, commūnis, contrārius, fidei, insuētus, par, dispar, peculiāris, proprius, propinquus, sacer, similis, assimilis, consimilis, dissimilis, socius, vicinus, superstes, supplex*, and some others, instead of a dative of the object, are sometimes followed by a genitive; as, *Par hujus*, Equal to him. Lucan. *Proprium est oratoris ornate dicere*. Cic. But most of these words, when thus used, seem rather to be taken substantively; as, *Æquālis ejus*, His contemporary. Cic.

(b.) *Similis, assimilis, consimilis, par* and *dispar*, take the genitive, when an internal resemblance, or a resemblance in character or disposition, is to be expressed, and hence we always find *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, similis*; as, *Plures reges Rōmuli quam Nūmæ similes*. Liv.

(c.) *Amicus, inimicus, and familiāris*, owing to their character as substantives, take a genitive even in the superlative; as, *Homo amicissimus nostrorum hominum*,—very friendly to our countrymen. Cic. On the other hand, *hostis*, though a substantive, is sometimes used like an adjective, being modified by

an adverb, and taking an object in the dative; as, *Expectantibus omnibus quoniam esset tam impius, tam demens, tam diis hominibusque hostis, qui*, etc. Cf. § 277, R. 1.

REM. 3. Some adjectives with the dative are followed by another case denoting a different relation; as, *Mens sibi conscia recti*, A mind conscious to itself of rectitude. Virg. See § 213, R. 7.

REM. 4. Many adjectives, instead of the dative of the object, are often followed by an accusative with a preposition.

(1.) Adjectives signifying useful, fit, and the opposite, take an accusative of the thing with *ad*, but only a dative of the person; as, *Homo ad nullam rem utilis*. Cic. *Locus aptus ad insidias*. Id.

(2.) Adjectives denoting motion or tendency, take an accusative with *ad* more frequently than a dative; as, *Piger ad poenas, ad præmia velox*, Ovid; *Ad aliquem morbum præclivior*, Cic.; *Ad omne facinus paratus*, Id.; *Provus ad fidem*, Liv.;—sometimes with *in*; as, *Obler in pugnam*. Sil.

(3.) Many adjectives, signifying an affection of the mind, may have an accusative of the object with *in*, *erga*, or *adversus*, instead of the dative; as, *Fidēis in filios*. Just. *Alter acerba in suos partus*. Ovid. *Grātus erga me*. Cic. *Gratum adversus te*. Id. So *Dissimilis in dominum*. Tac.

(4.) Adjectives signifying like, equal, common, etc., when plural, are often followed by the accusative with *inter*; as, *Inter se similes*. Cic. *Hæc sunt inter eos communiæ*. Id. *Inter se cives*. Id.

REM. 5. *Propior* and *proximus*, instead of the dative, have sometimes, like their primitive *prope*, an accusative; as, *Quod vitium propius virtutem erat*. Sall. *P. Crassus proximus mare Oceanum*. Cæs. *Ager, qui proximus flumen Megalopoliæ est*. Liv. Cf. § 238, 1.

REM. 6. (a.) Some adjectives, instead of the dative, have at times an ablative with a preposition. Thus, *par, communis, consentaneus, discors*, with *cum*; as, *Quem parem cum liberis fecisti*. Sall. *Consentaneum cum tunc liberis*. Cic. *Civitas secum discors*. Liv. So *alienus* and *diversus* with *a* or *ab*; as, *Alienus a me*, Ter.; *A ratione diversus*, Cic.; or without a preposition; as, *Alii cum nostra amicitia*. Id.—(b.) *Frētus*, which regularly takes the ablative, is in Livy construed with the dative; as, *fortunæ frētus*; *nulli rei frētus*, etc. Cf. § 244.—(c.) The participial adjectives *junctus* and *conjunctus*, instead of the dative, take sometimes the ablative either with or without *cum*.

REM. 7. *Idem* is sometimes followed by the dative, chiefly in the poets; as *Jupiter omnibus idem*. Virg. *Invitum qui servat, idem facit occidenti*. Hor. In the first example, *omnibus* is a dative of the object; in the second, the dative follows *idem*, in imitation of the Greek construction with *αὐτῷ* and is equivalent to *quod occidens, or quod facit is, qui occidit*. *Similis* is construed in the same manner in Hor. Sat. 1, 3, 123. *Idem* is generally followed not by a case, but by *qui, ac, atque, ut, quasi, or quam*; sometimes by the preposition *cum*. Cf. § 207, R. 27, (d.) *Similis* and *par* are sometimes, like *idem*, followed by *ac* and *atque*.

REM. 8. Some verbal substantives are followed by the dative, when derived from verbs governing the dative; as, *Iustitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus institutisque populorum*. Cic. *Traditio alicujus rei alteri*. Id. *Exprobratio cuiquam veteris fortunæ*. Liv.

NOTE. A dative of the object often follows *esse* and other verbs, in connection with a predicate nominative or accusative, but such dative is dependent, not on the noun, but on the verb. Cf. § 227, R. 4.



## DATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 223. A noun limiting the meaning of a verb, is put in the dative, to denote the *object to* or *for* which any thing is, or is done; as,

*Mea domus tibi patet*, My house is open to you. Cic. *Pars optare locum tecto*, A part choose a site for a building. Virg. *Tibi seria, tibi metis*, You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself. Plaut. *Licet nemini contra patriam dicere exercitum*, It is not lawful for any one to lead an army against his country. Cic. *Hoc tibi promitto*, I promise you this. Id. *Hæret latèri lètatis arundo*. Virg. *Surdo fabulam narras*. Hor. *Mihi responsum dedit*. Virg. *Sic vos non vobis fertis aratra, boves*. Id. *Omnibus bonis expedit salvam esse rempublicam*. Cic. *Aplai habendo ense*. Virg.

NOTE. The dative is thus used after all verbs, whether transitive or intransitive, personal or impersonal, and in both voices, provided their signification admits a reference to a remoter object, for whom or to whose benefit or injury any thing is done. In the passive voice, from their nature, neuter verbs can only be so construed impersonally. Cf. § 142, 1, and § 222, 2.

REMARK 1. The dative after many verbs is rendered not by *to* or *for*, but by other prepositions, or without a preposition. Many intransitive Latin verbs are translated into English by verbs transitive, and the dative after them is usually rendered like the object of a transitive verb.—Most verbs after which the signs *to* and *for* are not used with the dative, are enumerated in this and the following sections.

REM. 2. Many verbs signifying to favor, please, trust, assist, and their contraries, also to command, obey, serve, resist, threaten, and be angry, take a dative of the object.

NOTE. The neuter verbs comprehended in this rule generally express in the verbal form the meaning of those adjectives, which are followed by the dative, (cf. § 222, R. 1.) Thus, (a.) *Illa tibi favet*, She favors you, or is favorable to you. Ovid. *Mihi placebat Pompónius, minime displicebat*. Cic. *Qui sibi fidit*. Hor. *Non licet sui commodi causâ nocere alteri*. Cic. *Non invidetur illi ceteri sed etiam favetur*. Id. *Desperat salutis suæ*. Id. *Næque mihi vestra decet auxilium*. Sall. *Impérat aut servit collectu pecunia cuique*. Hor. *Obédire et parere voluntati*. Cic. *Quoniam factioni inimicorum resistere nequiverit*. Sall. *Mihi minabatur*. Cic. *Irasci inimicis*. Cæs.

(b.) So *Adûlor*, assentior, blandior, commôdo, faveo, gratificor, grator, gratûlor, and its verbal gratulâbundus, ignosco, indulgeo, lenôctor, palpor, parco, plaudo, respondeo, studeo, suppâstior; amûlor, incommôdo, invidéo, nôceo, obsum, officio;—arrideo, placeo; displiceo;—crêdo, fido, confido; despéro, diffido;—admittôctor, auxilior, videor, medicor, optûlor, patrôctor, prorsum, subvenio, succurro; desum, insidior;—impéro, mando, mōdôtor, præcipio, tempéro; ausculto, mortûtor, obédio, obsecundo, obsequor, obtempéro, pæreo, dicto audiens sum; ancillor, fântûlor, ministro, servio, præstôlor;—adversor, refrâgor, obsto, obrecto, rêluctor, rêmtor, repugno, rêvisto, and, chiefly in the poets, bello, certo, luctor, pugno;—mînor, commînor, intervinor;—trascor, succenseo, stimûchor.—To these may be added æquo, âlæquo, convicior, legênôro, ezcello, nûbo, suppédito, prævaricor, rêcipio (to promise), rênuncio, sudîco, persuâdeo, dissuâdeo, supplico, vâco, videor, and sometimes misceo and lâteo;—also the impersonals accilit, convênit, conducit, contingit, decet, dilet, expedit, licet, libet, or libet, liquet, placet, etc.—(c.) Intransitive verbs governing a dative are often used impersonally in the passive with the same case; as, *Mihi invidetur*, I am envied. *Mihi maledicîtur*, I am reviled. *Mihi parçitur*, I am spared. Hor. *Hoc persuâdetur mihi*, I am persuaded of this.

(1.) (a.) Many of the above verbs, which, as intransitive, take the dative sometimes become transitive and are followed by an accusative; as, *adûlor*, ausculto, blandior, degênôro, despéro, indulgeo, lâteo, mēdeor, medicor, mōdôtor, directo, præstôlor, prôvideo, etc.; as, *Adûlari aliquem*. Cic. *Hanc cavê degênâres*. Ovid. *Indulgeo me*. Ter. *Hujus adventum præstôlans*. Cæs. *Prôvidere rem frumentâriam*. Id.—Sometimes also by a preposition and the ablative or accusative; as, *A Stôlce degênêrâvit Pânêtius*. Cic. *De repûblica desperare*. Id. *Obrectârunt inter se*. Nep.—or by a dependent clause; as, *Quæ despêrat tractâta nitescere posse, relinquit*. Hor.

(b.) Others, as transitive verbs, have, with the dative, an accusative, expressed or understood; as, *impéro, mando, ministro, nator, comminor, interminor, præcipio, recipio, renuncio*, etc.; as, *Equites imperat civitatibus*; where *cogendos* is perhaps to be supplied, He enjoins upon the states the providing of cavalry. Cæs. See § 274, R. 5. *Ministrare victum Alcui*. Varr. *Dēflagratiōnem urbi et Italiæ toti mīnabātur*. Cic.

(c.) *Æquo* and *adæquo* are construed with the accusative and either the dative or *cum* with the ablative.—*Invidio* takes either a single dative of the person or thing, a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing; as, *Hōnorem mihi incidit*. Hor.; or, when *invidere* is used in the sense of *privare*, a dative of the person and an ablative of the thing; as, *Non inviderunt laude suā mīliēribus*. Liv. In Horace, by a Greek construction, the genitive is used instead of the accusative or ablative of the thing; as, *Nēque ille sēpōstū ciceris nec longē invidet dīvenē*.

(d.) *Cedo*, used transitively, takes a dative of the person and an accusative of the thing; but sometimes the thing is expressed by the ablative; as, *cēdere Alcui possēsiōne hortōrum*. So, also, *concēdo tibi locum*, or *concēdo tibi loco*.

(2.) Many verbs which, from their significations, might be included in the above classes, are, as transitive verbs, only followed by an accusative; as, *dēlecto, jūvo, adjūvo, adjūto, lædo, offendo*, etc.—*Jūbeo* is followed by the accusative with an infinitive, and sometimes by the accusative alone, or the dative with the infinitive or subjunctive; as, *Jūbeo te bēne spērāre*. Cic. *Lex jūbet ea quæ faciēda sunt*. Id. *Ubi Britannico jussit exurgere*. Tac. *Quibus jussērat, ut instantibus rēsistērent*. Id.—*Fido* and *confido* are often followed by the ablative, with or without a preposition; as, *Fidere cursu*. Ovid. Cf. § 245

§ 224. Many verbs compounded with these eleven prepositions, *ad, antē, cōn, in, intēr, ob, post, præ, prō, sub, and supēr*, are followed by the dative; as,

*Annue cœptis*, Be favorable to our undertakings. Virg. *Rōmānis ēquitibus lītēra affērantur*, Letters are brought to the Roman knights. Cic. *Anticellere* omnibus, To excel all. Id. *Antētūlit iræ rēligiōnem*. Nep. *Auleque viris concurrere virgo*. Virg. *Exercitum exercitui, dūces dūclibus compārare*. Liv. *Imminet his aer*. Ovid. *Pēcōri signum impressit*. Virg. *Nox prælio intervēnit*. Liv. *Interdixit histriōnem scēnam*. Suet. *Meis commōdis officis et obstat*. Cic. *Cum se hostium telis objēcissent*. Id. *Posthūmū mea sēria lūdo*. Virg. *Certāmini præsēdit*. Suet. *Hibernis Labiēnum præposuit*. Cæs. *Gēnibus prōcumbere*. Ovid. *Miseris succurrere disco*. Virg. *Iis subsidia submittēbat*. Cæs. *Timidis supervēnit*. Ægle. Virg.

NOTE 1. This rule implies that the compound retains the meaning of the preposition; and the dative following such compound is then used instead of the case governed by the preposition. When such compounds are transitive they have with the dative an accusative also, like other transitive verbs.

1. *Accedo, accresco, accumbo, acquiesco, addequo, adhaereo, adjaceo, adno, adno, adsto, adstipulo, adsum, adversor, affulgeo, allabor, alludo, annuo, appaereo, appauro, appropinquo, arripeo, arrideo, aspiro, assentior, assisteo, assisto, assuesco, assurgo* :—*addo, adhabeo, adjicio, adjungo, admoneo, adverteo, adverteo, affero, affigo, alligo, appono, applico, aspergo*.

2. *Antecedo, anticello, anteeo, antesto, antevēnio, anteverto* :—*antefero, antehabeo, antipono*.

3. *Chæreo, colludo, concino, congruo, consentio, consōno, consuesco, convito*, and, obliquely in the poets, *coeo, concumbo, concuro, contendo* :—*confēo, conjungo, compaero*.

4. *Incedo, incubo, invumbo, indormio, ingemisco, inhæreo, inhio, innasco, innator, insisto, insto, insudo, insulto, invado, invigilo, iuacrimo, illudo, imminero, immorior, immoror, impendo, insum* :—*immisco, impertio, impōno, imprimo, incido, includo, induo, infero, ingero, injicio, insero, inspergo, insuesco, instruo*.

5. *Intercedo, intercedo, intercludo, interjaceo, intermisco, intersum, intervēnio* :—*interfeco, interjicio, interpono*.

6. *Obambulo, obbero, obdequo, obductor, obmurmuro, obrepro, obsto, obisto, obstrepa, obsum, obtraco, obvenio, obversor, occumbo, occuro, occurso, officio;—obduco, obijcio, offero, offundo, oppono.*

7. *Postfero, posthabeo, postpono, postpato, postscribo.*

8. *Præcædo, præcurro, præeo, præluco, præmitto, præmitto, præstideo, præsum, prævaleo, prævertor;—præfero, præficio, præpono.*

9. *Præcumbo, præficio, præpugno, prospicio, prævideo.*

10. *Succædo, succresco, succumbo, succurro, sufficio, suffragor, subdeleo, subjaceo, subtrahere, subvenio, subvenio;—subdo, subjicio, subjugo, submitto, suppono, subterno.*

11. *Supercurro, supersto, supersum, supervenio, superveto.*

NOTE 2. In some verbs compounded with prepositions the meaning of the preposition is lost. Such compounds are either not followed by a dative, or the case depends, not on the preposition, but on the signification of the verb, according to § 223.

REMARK 1. (a.) Some verbs, compounded with *ab, de, ex, circum,* and *contra,* are occasionally followed by the dative; as, *absum, desum, delabor, despéro, excido, circumdo, circumfundo, circumjaceo, circumjicio, contradico, contraeo; as, Serta capiti delapsa.* The garlands having fallen from his head. Virg. *Numqui nummi exciderunt tibi?* Plaut. *Tigris urbi circumfunditur.* Plin. *Sibi desperans.* Cæs.—(b.) *Circundo* and *circumfundo* take either an accusative of the thing with a dative of the person, or an ablative of the thing with an accusative of the person; as, *circundo aliqui custodias,* or *circundo aliquem custodias.* *Aspergo, impingo, dono, impertio, exuo, and induo,* are construed in the same manner. Cf. § 251, R. 2.

REM. 2. Some verbs of repelling and taking away (most of which are compounds of *ab, de, or ex,*) are sometimes followed by the dative, though more commonly by the ablative; as, *abigo, abrogo, abscindo, aufero, adimo, arceo, defendo, demo, depello, derogo, detraho, eripio, eruo, excutio, eximo, extorqueo, extraho, exuo, prohibeo, surripio.* Thus, *Nec mihi te eripiant,* Nor shall they take you from me. Ovid. *Solstitium pecori defendite.* Virg. *Hunc arcibus pecori.* Id. So rarely *abrumpo, alieno, furor,* and *rapio.*

REM. 3. Some verbs of differing (compounds of *dis* or *dis*) likewise occur with the dative, instead of the ablative with the preposition *ab,* or poetically with the ablative alone; as, *différo, discrepo, discordo, dissentio, disideo, disto; as, Quantum simplex hilarisque nepoti discrepet, et quantum discordet, parcus avaro.* Hor. *Distabit infido scurræ amicus.* Hor. *Græcis Tuscânicæ statuas differunt.* Quint. *Comœdia differt sermôni.* Hor. So likewise *misceo; as, Mista modestiæ gravitas.* Cic.

REM. 4. Many verbs compounded with prepositions, especially with *ad, con,* and *in,* instead of the dative, either constantly or occasionally take the case of the preposition, which is frequently repeated. Sometimes, also, a preposition of similar signification is used; as, *Ad primam vocem timidas advertitis aures.* Ovid. *Nemo eum antecessit.* Nep. *Saxa vides sola coalescere calce.* Lucr. *Inférunt omnia in ignem.* Cæs. *Silex incumbēbat ad amnem.* Virg. *Innicus moderâmine navis.* Ovid. *In Pansam fratrem innicis.* Plin. *Omferre hunc pærem cum illo bello.* Cic. In this substitution of one preposition for another, *ad* is used for *in,* and *in* for *ad; ab* for *ex; ad, ante, contra,* and *in,* for *ab; ad* and *ante,* for *pro.*

REM. 5. Neuter verbs of motion or of rest in a place, when compounded with the prepositions, *ad, ante, con, in,* etc., either take the dative, or, acquiring an active signification, are followed by the accusative; as, *Helvetii reliquos Gallos virtute præcedunt,* The Helvetii surpass the other Gauls in valor. Cæs. *Uterque, Isocratem citate præcurrit.* Cic. So *præeo, præsto, prævertor, præcello.* See § 233, (3.)

§ 225. I. Verbs compounded with *satis, bene,* and *male,* are followed by the dative; as,

*Et nātūræ et lēgibus sātisfēcit*, He satisfied both nature and the laws. Cic. *Tibi dñi bēnēfāciant omnes*, May all the gods bless you. Plaut. But also, *Amicum erga bēne fēcī*. Id. *Maledicūt utrique*. Hor. *Sō sātisdo, bēnēdico, mālēs acio*.

NOTE. These compounds are often written separately; and the dative always depends not on *sātis*, *bēne*, and *māle*, but on the simple verb. So, also, *bēne* and *māle* attract *volo*: as, *Tibi bēne ex animo volo*. Ter. *Illi ego ex omnibus optime volo*. Plaut. *Non sibi māle vult*. Petron. In like manner *valere dico*, and *vale dico*; as, *Augustus discēdēs s cāvīd) sēdentibus singulis vālere dicebat*. Suet. *Tibi valēdicere non tūet grātis* Sen.—In late writers *bēnēdico* and *mālēdico* sometimes take the accusative.

II. Verbs in the passive voice are sometimes followed by a dative of the agent, chiefly in the poets and the later prose writers; as, *Quidquid in hac causā mihi susceptum est*. Cic. *Nēque cernitur ulli*, Nor is he seen by any one. Virg. *Nulli tuarum audita mihi nēque visa sororum*. Id. *Barbārus hūc ego sum, grātia non intelligor ulli*. Ovid. But the agent after passives is usually in the ablative with *a* or *ab*. See § 248, I.

III. The participle in *dus* is followed by a dative of the agent; as,

*Unda omnibus enaviganda*, The wave over which (we) all must pass. Hor. *Nōbis, cum sēmel occidit brēvis lux, Nox est perpētua una dormienda*. Catull. *Adhibenda est nobis diligentia*, We must use diligence. Cic. *Vestigia summorum hominum sibi tuenda esse dicit*. Id. *Si vis me flere, dolendum est primum ipsi tibi*. Hor. *Faciendum mihi putavi, ut responderem*. Id.

REMARK 1. The dative is sometimes wanting when the agent is indefinite; as, *Orandum est, ut sit mens sana in corpore sano*. Juv. *Hic vincendum aut moriendum, milites, est*. Liv. In such examples, *tibi*, *vōbis*, *nōbis*, *hōminibus*, etc., may be supplied. Cf. § 141, R. 2.

REM. 2. The participle in *dus* sometimes, though rarely, has, instead of the dative of the agent, an ablative with *ā* or *ab*; as, *Non eos in deorum immortalium numero vērāndos a vōbis et cōlendos putātos?* Cic. *Hæc a me in dicendo prælereunda non sunt*. Id.—The dative after participles in *dus* is by some referred to § 226.

IV. Verbs signifying motion or tendency are followed by an accusative with *ad* or *in*; as,

*Ad templum Palladis ibant*. Virg. *Ad prætorem hominem trahit*. Cic. *Vergit ad septemtriones*. Cæs. *In conspectum venire*. Nep.

So *curro*, *dūco*, *fēro*, *festino*, *fūgio*, *inclino*, *lēgo*, *mitto*, *pergo*, *porto*, *præcipito*, *propèro*, *tendo*, *tollo*, *vādo*, *verto*.

REMARK 1. So likewise verbs of calling, exciting, etc.; as, *Eurum ad se vocat*. Virg. *Provocasse ad pugnam*. Cic. So *animō*, *hortor*, *incito*, *invito*, *lācesso*, *sūmōlo*, *uscito*; to which may be added *attineo*, *conformo*, *pertineo*, and *perio*.

REM. 2. But the dative is sometimes used after these verbs; as, *Climor ā jælo*. Virg. *Dum tibi litæ meæ veniant*. Cic. *Grægem vridi compellere hibiscos*. Virg. *Sēdibus hunc rēfer ante suis*. Id. After *venio* both constructions are used at the same time; as, *Venit mihi in mentem*. Cic. *Venit mihi in suspicionem*. Nep. *Eum venisse Germanis in amicitiam cognoverat*. Cæs. *Præpinguo* (to approach) takes the dative only.

REM. 3. Sometimes also verbs signifying motion are followed by an accusative of place without a preposition, a supine in *um*, an infinitive, or an adverb of place; as, *Rōmam profectus est*. *Ite dōmum*. *Rus ibam*. *Lāvīnia venit litōra*. Virg. *Nēque ego te dērisum venio*. Plaut. *Non nos Libycos populāre penātes venimus*. Virg. *Huc venit*. Plaut. See §§ 287, 276, II. 271, N. 2.

REM. 4. After *do*, *scribo*, or *mitto litēras*, the person for whom they are written or to whom they are sent, is put either in the dative or in the accusative with *ad*: as, *Ecce eo loco tibi litēras ante dēderāmus*. Cic. *Vulturcius litē-as sibi*

ad Catilinam dātas esse, dicebat. Id. *Cæsar scribit Labiēno cum*, etc. Cæs. Ad me Cūrius de te scripsit. Cic. But to give one a letter to deliver is also expressed by *dāre lītēras alicui*, and also the delivery of the letter by the bearer.

§ 226. *Est* is followed by a dative denoting a *possessor*;—the thing possessed being the subject of the verb.

*Est* thus used may generally be translated by the verb *to have* with the dative as its subject; as, *Est mihi dōmī pater*, I have a father at home. Virg. *Sunt nobis mītia pōma*, We have mellow apples. Id. *Grātia nobis opus est tua*, We have need of your favor. Cic. *Innocētiæ plus pēriculū quam hōnōris est*. Sall. *An nescis longas rēgibus esse mānus?* Ovid. So with an infinitive as the subject, *Nec tibi sū dāros āruisse in prælia dentes*. Tib. 4, 3, 3. The first and second persons of *sum* are not thus construed.

REMARK 1. Hence *mihi est nōmen* signifies, I have the name, my name is, or I am called. The proper name is put either in the nominative, the dative, or the genitive. See § 204, R. 8. So also *cognōmen*, *cognōmentum*, and, in Tacitus *rōcāhūm*, *est mihi*.—Sometimes, also, a possessive adjective agreeing with *nōmen*, etc., supplies the place of the proper name; as, *Est mihi nōmen Tardūnium*. Gell. *Mercuriale impōsuere mihi cognōmen*. Hor.

REM. 2. The dative is used with a similar signification after *fore*, *suppedit*, *abest*, *deest*, and *defuit*; as, *Pauper enim non est, cui rerum suppedit usus*. Hor. *Si mihi cauda foret, cercoptihæcus eram*. Mart. *Defuit ars vobis*. Ovid. *Non disfore Arsacidis virtutem*. Tac. *Lac mihi non defuit*. Virg. *Hoc unum illi abfuit*. Cic.

REM. 3. With the dative of the person after *est* Sallust and Tacitus sometimes join, by a Greek idiom, *vōlens*, *cūpiens*, and *invitus*; as, *Quia neque plebi militia vōlenti (esse) putābatur*, Because the common people were not thought to like the war. Sall. *Ut quibusque bellum invitis aut cūpiētibz erat*, Accorling as each liked or disliked the war. Tac.

#### DATIVE OF THE END OR PURPOSE.

§ 227. *Sum*, and several other verbs, are followed by two datives, one of which denotes the *object to which*, the other the *end for which*, any thing is, or is done; as,

*Mihi maxime est cūræ*, It is a very great care to me. Cic. *Spēro nobis hunc conjunctionem voluptati fore*, I hope this union will afford us pleasure. Id. *Matri puellam dono dedit*. Ter. *Fabio laudi datum est*. Cic. *Vitio id tibi venit*. Plaut. *Id tibi hōrōri habetur*. Cic. *Maturavit collēgæ venire auxilio*. Liv. *Cui bono fuit?* To whom was it an advantage? Cic.

REMARK 1. The verbs after which two datives occur, are *sum*, *esse*, *fore*, *do*, *dono*, *dāco*, *habeo*, *relinquo*, *tribuo*, *verto*; also *curro*, *eo*, *mitto*, *præfiscor*, *venio*, *appōno*, *asigno*, *cēdo*, *comparo*, *pateo*, *suppedito*, *emo*, and some others.

REM. 2. The dative of the *end* or *purpose* is often used after these verbs, without the dative of the object; as,

*Exemplo est formica*, The ant is (serves for) an example. Hor. *Absentium bona divisui fuere*. Liv. *Reliquit pignōri putamina*. Plaut. *Quæ esui et potui sum*. Gell. *Esse derisui*, To be a subject of ridicule. Tac. *Rēceptui cōnere*, To sound a retreat. Cæs. *Aliquid dōti dācare*, To set out as dowry. Cic.

REM. 3. (a.) The verb *sum*, with a dative of the end, may be variously rendered; as by the words *brings*, *affords*, *serves*, *does*, etc. The sign *for* is often omitted with this dative, especially after *sum* instead of it, *as*, or some other particle, may at times be used; as,

*Ignominia erit tibi magno dēdēcōri*, Cowardice will bring great disgrace to you. Cic. *Hæc res est argūto*, This thing is an argument, or serves as an argument. Id. *Hoc vitio mihi dant*, This they set down as a fault in me. *Unus vos cūræ habuit*. Suet. *Una res erat magno usui*. .... was of great use. Lucil. *Quod tibi magnopere cordi est, mihi vehēmenter displicet*, What is a great pleasure, an object of peculiar interest to you, etc. Id.

(b.) Sometimes the words *fit*, *able*, *ready*, etc., must be supplied, especially before a gerund or a gerundive; as, *Quum solvendo civitate non essent*, ... not able to pay. Cic. *Divites, qui oneri ferendo essent*. Liv. *Quæ restringendæ igni forent*. Liv. *Radicæ ejus est vescendo*. Plin.

REM. 4. Instead of the dative of the end, a predicate nominative or accusative is sometimes used; as, *Naturā tu illi pater es*, By nature you are his father. *Amor est exitum pēcōri*: or the purpose is expressed by the accusative with *ad* or *in*; as, *Alcui cōmes est ad bellum*. Cic. *Se Rēmis in clientelam dīcābant*. Cæs.: or by the ablative with *pro*; as, *Innocentia pro mālivolentiā dūci cæpit*. Sall. *Altiūs sunt arbores pro cūbilibus*. Cæs.

REM. 5. Instead, also, of the dative of the end or purpose, *quo?* to what end? for what purpose? why? sometimes occurs, with an accusative, which generally depends on a verb understood, or with an infinitive or a clause; as, *Quo mihi fortunam, si non conceditur uti?* Hor. *Quo tibi, Pasiphae, pretiosas numeræ vestes?* Ovid.

REM. 6. After *do* and other similar active verbs an accusative of the purpose is found in apposition; as, *Lātini cōtinuam auream Jōvi donum in Cāpitōlium mittunt*. Liv. *Alcui cōmitem esse datum*. Cic. Cf. § 204, R. 1; and § 230, R. 2.

NOTE. The dative, instead of the accusative, is sometimes used after the infinitive, when a dative precedes, and the subject of the infinitive is omitted, as, *Vobis necesse est fortibus esse viris*. Liv. *Maximo tibi et civi et dūci evadere confert*. Val. Max. See §§ 205, R. 6, and 239, R. 1.

## DATIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

§ 228. Some particles are followed by the dative of the object; as,

1. Some adverbs derived from adjectives; as,

*Prōpius Tiberi quam Thermopylis*. Nep. *Proxime castris*, Very near to the camp. Cæs. *Prōpius stabulis armenta tēnērent*. Virg. *Congruenter naturæ, convēnienterque vivere*, Agreeably to nature. Cic. *Episcurus quam sibi constanter convēnienterque dicat, non laborat*. Id. *Nēmīni nimium bene est*. Afran. *Mihi nunquam in vitā fuit melius*. Hor. *Vivere vitæ hominum amice*. Cic. *Bene mihi, bene vobis*. Plaut. So, *Mihi obviam venisti*. Cic. *In certandā saeco comminus ire viro*. Sil. *Questōres provinciæ mihi præsto fuerunt*. Cic. *Samos est exadversum Milēto*. App.

REMARK. *Prōpius* and *proxime*, like their primitive *prope*, are sometimes construed with *a* and the ablative; as, *Prope a meis ædibus*. Cic. *Stellæ errantes prōpius a terris*. Id. *A Surā proxime est Philiscum, oppidum Parthorum*. Plin.

2. Certain prepositions, especially in comic writers; as, *Mihi clam est*, It is unknown to me. Plaut. *Contra nobis*. Id. But in such instances they seem rather to be used like adjectives.

3. Certain interjections; as, *Hei mihi!* Ah me! Virg. *Væ mihi!* Wo is me. Ter. *Væ victis esse!* Liv. *Væ misero mihi*. Plaut. *Hem tibi*. Id. *Ecce tibi*. Cic.

NOTE. (a.) The dative of the substantive pronouns seems sometimes nearly redundant, but it always conveys the expression of a lively feeling, and is therefore termed *dātivus ethicus*; as,

*For mihi es, ... in my opinion. Plaut. An ille mihi liber, cui mulier impetrat?* Cic. *Tongilium mihi eduxit.* Id. *Ubi nunc nobis deus ille magister?* Virg. *Ecce tibi Sebosus!* Cic. *Hem tibi talentum argenti!* Philippicum est. Plaut. *Sibi* is sometimes subjoined quite pleonastically to *suus*; as, *Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo.* Plaut. *Ignorans suo sibi servit patri.* Id. *Sibi suo tempore.*

(b.) The following phrases also occur with *volo* and a reflexive pronoun: *quid tibi vis?* what do you want? *quid sibi iste vult?* what does he want? *quid vult sibi hæc oratio?* what does this speech mean? *quid hæc sibi dona volunt?* what is the meaning of these presents? or, what is their object?

## ACCUSATIVE.

### ACCUSATIVE AFTER VERBS.

§ 229. The object of a transitive verb is put in the accusative; as,

*Lægatos mittunt.* They send ambassadors. Cæs. *Animus movet corpus.* The mind moves the body. Cic. *Da veniam hanc.* Grant this favor. Ter. *Eum imitanti sunt.* They imitated him. Cic. *Pisces Syri venerantur.* Id.

REMARK 1. A transitive verb, with the accusative, often takes a genitive, dative, or ablative, to express some additional relation; as,

*Te convinco amentia.* I convict you of madness. Cic. *Da locum melioribus.* Give place to your betters. Ter. *Soluit se Teucris luctu.* Troy frees herself from grief. Virg. See those cases respectively.

REM. 2. Such is the difference of idiom between the Latin and English languages, that many verbs considered transitive in one, are used as intransitive in the other. Hence, in translating transitive Latin verbs, a preposition must often be supplied in English; as, *Ut me caveat.* That he should beware of me. Cic. On the other hand, many verbs, which in Latin are intransitive, and do not take an accusative, are rendered into English by transitive verbs; as, *Ille mihi favet.* He favors me: and many verbs originally intransitive acquire a transitive signification.

REM. 3. The verb is sometimes omitted:—

1. To avoid its repetition; as, *Eventum senatus, quem (scil. dicere) videbitur, dabit.* Liv.

2. The interrogative interjection *quid?* what? depends on *ais* or *censes*. So also *quid vero?* *quid igitur?* *quid ergo?* *quid enim?* which are always followed by another question, and both questions may be united into one proposition, the first serving merely to introduce the interrogation. With *quid postea?* *quid tum?* supply *sequitur*. With *quid quod*, occurring in transitions, *dicam de eo* is omitted, but it may be rendered 'nay,' 'nay even,' 'but now,' 'moreover,' etc., without an interrogation.—*Dicam* is also to be supplied with *quid multa?* *quid plura?* *ne multa;* *ne multis;* *ne plura*. The infinitive *dicere* is also sometimes omitted; as, *Nimis multa videor de me.* Cic. *Perge rekina.* Id.

REM. 4. The accusative is often omitted:—

1. When it is a reflexive pronoun; as, *Nox precipitat, scil. se.* Virg. *Tum strora avertit.* Id. *Eo lavatum, scil. me.* Hor.

The reflexives are usually wanting after *abdo, abstineo, accingo, adæquo, æquo, agglomero, augeo, cælo, congeminio, continuo, declino, deceduo, destino, differo, duro, frumpo, flecto, deflecto, facesso, incipio, inclino, insinuo, irumpo, jungo, laro, laro, lenio, maturo, mollio, moveo, nato, pono, præcipio, prorumpo, quatio, remitto, retracto, sedo, sisto, stabulo, suppedito, tardo, teneo, tendo, trajicio, transmitto, turbo, vario, vergo, verto, devertio, revertio, vestio, vibro;* and more rarely after many others.

2. When it is something indefinite, has been previously expressed in any case, or is easily supplied; as, *Ego, ad quos scribam, nescio, scil. literas.* Cic. *De quo et tecum egi diligenter, et scripes ad te.* Id. *Bene fecit Silius.* Id. *Duci in hostem, scil. exequitum.* Liv.

REM. 5. An infinitive, or one or more substantive clauses, may supply the place of the accusative after an active verb, as,

*Da mihi fallere.* Hor. *Reddes dulcem loqui, reddes ridere decum.* Id. *Cupit me esse clementem.* Cic. *Athēnienses statuerunt ut naves conscenderent.* Id. *Vereor ne a doctis reprehendar.* Id. *Eucē, Bacche, sonat.* Ovid. Sometimes both constructions are united; as, *Di iram miserantur incunem amborum, et tantos mortaliū esse labores.* Virg.—Respecting the infinitive with and without a subject-accusative after an active verb, see § 270–273; and for the subjunctive after such verbs, see § 273.

(a.) In such constructions, the *subject* of the dependent clause is sometimes put in the accusative as the *object* of the leading verb; as, *Nosti Marcellum, quam tardus sit,* for *Nosti quam tardus sit Marcellus.* Cic. *Illum, ut vical, optant.* Ter. *At te ego faciam, ut minus valeas.* Plaut.

(b.) An ablative with *de* may also supply the place of the accusative, by the ellipsis of some general word denoting *things, facts*, etc., modified by such ablative; as, *De republicā vestrā paucis accipe.* Sall. Compare a similar omission of a *subject* modified by *de* and the ablative, § 209, R. 3, (2.)

REM. 6. The impersonal verbs of feeling, *miseret, pœnitet, pœdet, tœdet, piget, miserecui, miseretur, and pertæsum est*, are followed by an accusative of the person exercising the feeling, and a genitive of the object in respect to which it is exercised. Cf. § 215, (1.); as,

*Eorum nos miseret,* We pity them. Cic. The impersonal *veritum est* also occurs with such an accusative; *Quos non est veritum pœnere*, etc. Cic.

REM. 7. *Juvat, delectat, fallit, fugit, prætērit, and decet*, with their compounds, take an accusative of the person; as,

*Te hilari animo esse valde me juvat,* That you are in good spirits greatly delights me. Cic. *Fugit me ad te scribere.* Cic. *Illud alterum quoniam sit difficile, te non fugit.* Id. *Nec vero Cæsarem fefellerit.* Cæs. *Facias, ut te decet.* Ter. So also when used personally; as, *Parvum parva decet.* Hor.; but *decet* often takes the accusative of the person with the infinitive; as, *Hinc nunculum nos decet effugere.* Ter.; and in comic writers a dative; as, *Vobis decet.* Ter.

For *mea, tua, sua, nostra, vestra*, after *refert* and *interest*, see § 219, R. 1: and for the accusative by attraction, instead of the nominative, see § 206, (6.) (b.)

§ 230. Verbs signifying to name or call; to choose, render or constitute; to esteem or reckon, which in the passive voice have two nominatives, are followed in the active voice by two accusatives, one of the *object* and the other of the *predicate*. Cf. § 210, R. 3, (3.); as,

*Urbem ex Antiōchi patris nōmine Antiōchiam vocavit.* He called the city Antioch, etc. Just. *Ludos facis me,* You make game of me. Plaut. *Me consilio fecistis.* Cic. *Iraus bene Ennius initium dixit insanie.* Id. *Ancum Marciū regem populus creavit.* Liv. *Sulpiciū accusatorem suū nūmerābat, non compēditorem.* Cic. *Quoniam vos testes habeam.* Nep.

NOTE 1. The following are among the verbs included in this rule, viz. *appello, dico, nōmino, nuntio, perhibeo, saluto, scribo and inscribo, voco; capio, constituo, creō, declaro, deligo, designo, dico, eligo, facio, efficio, instituo, lego, prœdo, reido, reſpondeo, dāro, dignor, existimo, habeo, iudico, nūmero, puto, rep̄rio, intelligo, invenio, se prœbere or prœstare*, etc.

NOTE 2. An ablative with *ex* occurs, though rarely, instead of the accusative of the object; as, *Fortuna me, qui liber fuēram, servum fecit, e summo infimum.* Plaut. Cf. *Qui recta prava faciunt.* Ter.

NOTE 3. An infinitive may supply the place of the objective accusative; as *ſi stimulasse vocat crimen.* Ovid.—and sometimes of the predicate accusative



also; as, *Si rep̄ire v̄cas amitt̄re certius; aut si scire ubi sit rep̄ire v̄cas* Id. So also an adjective may supply the place of the predicate accusative; as *Præbuit se dignum suis maj̄oribus*. Cic. *Usārem certiorē faciunt*. Cæs.

REMARK 1. After verbs signifying to esteem or reckon, one of the accusatives is often the subject, and the other the predicate, of *esse* expressed or understood; as,

*Eum av̄arum possimus existimāre*. Cic. *Talem se imp̄ratōrem præbuit*. Nep. *Præsta te eum, qui mihi es cognit̄us*. Cic. *Mercūrium omnium inventōrem artium f̄erunt*; huc *viarum atque itin̄erum dūcem arbitrantur*. Cæs.; or an adjective supplies the place of the predicate accusative; as, *Ne me existimāris ad m̄nendū esse prop̄ensiorē*. Cic.

NOTE 4. Instead of the predicate accusative, (1) *pro* with the ablative sometimes follows *p̄to*, *dūco*, and *hābeo*, but denotes only an approximation; as, *Aliquid pro certo hābere* or *p̄tāre*. *Ea pr̄c falsis dūcūt*. Sall. *Aliquem pro hoste hābere*. Cæs.—So also *in* with the ablative; as, *Nihil præter virtutē in bonis hābere*. Cic. *Aliquem in nūm̄ro hostium dūcere*. Cic.—and the ablative without *in*; as, *Uti vos affiniū lōco dūcerem*. Sall.—So also *e* or *ex* with the ablative; as, *(C)* *fāceret quod e rep̄blicā fidēque suā dūceret*. Liv.—Sometimes (2) the genitive; as, *Officiū dūcūt exorāre filiā putrem*. Suet. (See § 211, R. 8, (3.) *Sc* with a genitive or an ablative of price or value; as, *P̄tāre aliquem nihilo*. Cic. *Non hābeo nauci Marsum augūrem*. Enn—and sometimes (3) a dative; as, *Quando tu me hābes* despiciatui. Plaut.—or an adverb; as, *Ægre hābuit, filiū id pro p̄tente ausum*. Liv. And (4) *ad* or *in* with the accusative; as, *Lōca ad hibernācula lēgere*. Liv. *Aliquem in Patres lēgere*. Id.: or (5) the genitive depending on the ablative of cause, manner, etc.; as, *Qui servitūtem deditiōnis nōmine appellat*. Cæs.

REM. 2. Many other verbs, besides their proper accusative, take a second, denoting a purpose, time, character, etc.

Such are *do*, *tribuo*, *sūmo*, *p̄to*, *pōno*, *adjungo*, *ascribo*, *cognosco*, *accio*, *fin̄go*, *significo*, etc.; as,

*Quāre ejus fūge cōmitē me adjungērem*. Cic. *Hōmīnum op̄inio sociūm me ascribit tuis laudibus*. Id. *Quos ego sim toties jam dēdignāta m̄ritos*. Virg. *Hunc igitur rēgem agnosctmus, qui Philippum dēdignātur patrem*? Curt. *Filiā tuā mihi uxōrem posco*. Plaut. *P̄tū hanc Sātūrnia mūnus*. Ovid. Such constructions may often be referred to apposition, or to an ellipsis of *esse*.

§ 231. Verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, and *cēlo* (to conceal), are followed by two accusatives, one of the person, the other of the thing; as,

*Hoc te r̄hēmenter rōgo*. Cic. *Illud te oro, ut*, etc. Id. *Rōgo te nummas*, I ask you for money. Mart. *Posce deos v̄niam*, Ask favor of the gods. Virg. *Quem lēgent quis mūscam docuērit* Ep̄aminōndam, When they shall read who taught Ep̄aminōndas music. Nep. *Antigōnus iter omnes cēlat*, Antigonus conceal; his route from all. Id. *Dēpr̄cārī deos m̄la*. Sen. *Quōtidie Cæsar Aēdos frūmentum flāgitāre*. Cæs. *Multa deos orans*. Virg.

REMARK 1. This rule includes the verbs of asking and demanding, *flāgitō*, *plāgitō*, *obsecro*, *oro*, *exoro*, *contendo*, *percontor*, *posco*, *rēposco*, *consūlo*, *pr̄cor*, *dēpr̄c̄or*, *rōgo*, and *int̄rōgo*, which, with the accusative of the person, take the accusative of the neuter pronouns *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *quod*, *quid*, more frequently than that of a substantive. of teaching, *docēo*, *ed̄ocēo*, *dēd̄ocēo*, and *erūdīo*, which last has two accusatives only in the poets. *Admōneo* and *consūlo* are rarely found with two accusatives; as, *Consūlan. hunc rem p̄licos*. Plaut. *Eam rem nos lōcus admōnuit*. Sall.

REM. 2. Instead of the accusative of the person, verbs of asking and demanding often take the ablative with *ab* or *ex*; as, *Non d̄ib̄bam abs te has lit̄ras poscere*. Cic. *V̄niam or̄emus ab ipso*. Virg. *Istud volēbam ex te percontārī*. Plaut.

REM. 3. (a.) Instead of the accusative of the thing, the ablative with *de* is sometimes used; as, *Sic ego te eisdem de rebus interrōgem.* Cic. *De itinere hostium senātum edūcet.* Sall. *Basius noster me de hoc libro celāvit.* Cic. C. § 229 R. 5, (b.)—(b.) Sometimes also instead of the accusative of the thing an infinitive, or an infinitive or subjunctive clause is used; as, *Deos precāri debētis, ut urbem defendāt.* Cic. *Ut doceam Rullum posthac tacēre.* Id. *Dōcui id non fieri posse.* Id. *Dōceant eum qui vir Sex. Roscius fuērīt.* Id.—(c.) With verbs of teaching, the instrument by means of which the art is practised is put in the ablative; as, *Aliquem filiū dōcere.* Cic. *Dōcere aliquem armis.* Liv. *Litrās* may be used either in the accusative or in the ablative; as, *Te litrās dōceo.* Cic. *Doctus Græcis litrīs.* Id.

REM. 4. Some verbs of asking, demanding, and teaching, are not followed by two accusatives; as, *exigo, pēto, postūlo, quero, scitor, sciscitor*, which, with the accusative of the thing, take an ablative of the person with the preposition *ab, de, or ex; imbuo, insituo, instruo*, etc., which are sometimes used with the ablative of the thing, generally without a preposition, and are sometimes otherwise construed; as, *Instruere aliquem ad dicendum.* Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) Many active verbs with the accusative of the person, take also an accusative denoting in what respect or to what degree the action of the verb is exerted.

(b.) The accusative of degree, etc., is commonly *nihil*, a neuter pronoun, or a neuter adjective of quantity; as, *Non quo me aliquid juvare posses.* Cic. *Pauca pro tempore milites hortatus.* Sall. *Id adjuva me.* Ter. *Nēque est te fallere quidquam.* Virg. Cf. § 232, (8.)

REM. 6. By a similar construction, *gēnus* and *sēcus*, 'sex,' are sometimes used in the accusative, instead of the genitive of quality; as, *Nullus hoc gēnus vigiliās vigilarunt.* Gell. So, *Omnes muliebres sēcus.* Suet. Cf. 211, R. 6, (4.)

§ 232. (1.) Some neuter verbs are followed by an accusative of kindred signification to their own; as,

*Vitam jucundam vivere*, To live a pleasant life. Plaut. *Mitrum somnāvi somnium*, I have dreamed a wonderful dream. Id. *Fūrere hunc fūrōrem.* Virg. *Istam pugnam pugnābo.* Plaut. *Pugnare dicenda Māsis prœlia.* Hor. *Lūsum insolentem ludere.* Id. *Si non servitūtem serviat.* Plaut. *Quēror haud faciles questus.* Stat. *Juravi verissimum jusjurandum.* Cic. *Ignōtas jubet ire vias.* Val. Flacc. So, also, *Ire exsequias*, To go to a funeral. Ter. *Ire supplicias*, To go to one's assistance. *Ire infitias*, To deny. This expression is equivalent to *infittior*, and may like that take an accusative; as, *Si hoc animum adjuvāzēro, quod nēpo eat infittias.* Nep.: or the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Nēque infittias inus Siciliam nostram provinciam esse.* Liv. *Ut suum gaudium gauderēmus.* Cœl. ad Cic. *Proficisci magnum iter.* Cic. *Pollus itque reditque viam.* Virg. This accusative is usually qualified by an adjective.

(2.) Verbs commonly neuter are sometimes used transitively, and are then followed by an accusative.

Accusatives are thus used with *oleo* and *sapio*, and their compounds, *redolēo, respicio*; as, *Olet unguenta*, He smells of perfumes. Ter. *Olere peregrynū*, To have a foreign smell. Cic. *Orationes redolentes antiquitatem.* Id. *Milla herbam eam sapiunt*, The honey tastes of that herb. Plin. *Uti picem respiciens.* Id. So, *Stitio honores.* Cic. *Carnem pluit.* Liv. *Claudius a'eam stichosisime luit.* Suet. *Erumpere diu coercitam iram in hostes.* Liv. *Libros extigilare.* Ovid. *Prætere verba.* Liv. *Nec vox hominem sonat.* Virg. *Sudare mella.* Id. *Morientem nomine clamat.* Id. *Quis post vina gravem militiam aut pauperem crepat?* Hor. *Omnes una manet nox.* Id. *Ingrati animi crimen horreo.* Cic. *Ego meas quēror fortūras.* Plaut. *Vivere Bacchanalia.* Juv. *Pustorem sallaret uti Cyelopa, rogabat.* Hor. So the passive; *Nunc agrestem Cyclōpa mōcetur.* Id. *Yerzes quum mare ambūlāvisset, terram nāviggasset.* Cic. *Qui stādium currit.* Id. *Communia jura migrare.* Id. *Te volo colligui.* Plaut. *Ea disserrere mām.* Cic.

*Corydon ardebat* Alexin. Virg. *Stygias jərəvimus undas*. Ovid. *Nāvitat æquor* Virg. *Currimus æquor*. Id. *Pascuntur sylvas*. Id.

NOTE 1. Accusatives are found in like manner after *ambūlo, calleo, dōleo, ēquīto, fleo, gaudio, gēmo, glōrior, horreo, laetor, lātro, nāto, palleo, pātro, pēreo, depēreo, pōcēdo, quētor, rideo, sīleo, sībīlo, tāceo, trēmo, trēpido, vādo, vēnio, etc.*

(3.) Neuter verbs and sometimes adjectives also may be followed by an accusative denoting *in what respect*, or *to what degree*, the feeling, condition, etc., is manifested; as,

*Nihil libōro*. Cic. *Num id lacrimat virgo?* Does the maid weep on that account? Ter. *Multa alia peccat*. Cic. *Quicquid dētrant rēges, plectuntur Achivī*. Hor. *Nec tu id indignāri posses*. Liv. *Illud mihi letandum video*. Cic. *Illud valde tibi assentior*. Id. *Idem glōriāri*. Id. *Hæc glōriāna*. Liv. *Hon stude! unum*. Hor.—So, *Id opērum do*, I strive for this. Ter. *Consilium pētis, quid tibi sim auctor*. Cic. *Quod quidam auctōres sunt*, Which is attested by some authors. Liv. *Nil nostri misērere?* Virg.—*Nihil Rōmānæ plēbis snūlis*. Liv. *Sēnātus nihil sēne intentus*. Sall. These limiting accusatives have commonly the force of adverbs, particularly *nihil*, which is used like an emphatic *non* in the sense of 'in no way,' 'in no respect.' So *non nihil*, 'to some extent,' 'in some measure.'

NOTE 2. In the above and similar examples, the prepositions *ob, propter, per, ad, etc.*, may often be supplied. This construction of neuter verbs is most common with the neuter accusatives *id, quid, quidquam, aliquid, quicquid, quod, nihil, nonnihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, unum, multa, pauca, alia, cētera, omnia, etc.* Cf. § 256, R. 16, N.

§ 233. Many verbs are followed by an accusative depending upon a preposition with which they are compounded.

(1.) Active verbs compounded with *trans, ad, and circum*, have sometimes two accusatives, one depending upon the verb, the other upon the preposition; as,

*Omnem equitātum pontem transducit*, He leads all the cavalry over the bridge. Cæs. *Agēsilaus Hellespontum cōpias trājecit*. Nep. *Petrēius jusjūrandum ad tēst Afrānium*. Cæs. *Roscillum Pompēius omnia sua præsidia circumduxit*. Id. So, *Pontus scōpulos superjācit undam*. Virg. So, also, *adverto* and *induco* with *animum*; as, *Id animum advertit*. Cæs. *Id quod animum induzērat paulisper non tēnuī*. Cic. So, also, *injicio* in Plautus—*Ego te manum injiciam*.

(2.) Some other active verbs take an accusative in the passive voice depending upon their prepositions; as,

*Māgicas accingier artes*, To prepare oneself for magic arts. Virg. In prose writers the *ad* is in such cases repeated; as, *accingi ad consulātum*. Liv. *Classis circumvehitur arcem*. Id. *Quod anguis dōmī vectem circumjectus fuisset*. Cic. *Idēcum prætēvectus sum*. Id.

(3.) Many neuter verbs, especially verbs of motion, or *cf rest* in a place, when compounded with prepositions which govern an accusative, become transitive, and accordingly take an accusative; as,

*Gentes quas märe illud adjācent*, The nations which border upon that sea. Nep. *Obēquātāre agmen*. Curt. *Incēdunt mēstos lōcos*. Tac. *Transilui flammās*. Ovid. *Succēdere tecta*. Cic. *Lūdōrum diēbus, qui cognitiōnem intervēnerant*. Tac. *Adire provinciā*. Suet. *Cāveat ne praelium ineat*. Cic. *Ingrēdi iter pēdibus*. Cic. *Epicūri horti quos mōdo prætēribāmus*. Id.

NOTE. To this rule belong many of the compounds of *ambūlo, cēdo, curro, eo, ēquīto, fleo, gradiar, labor, no* and *nāto, rēpo, sāto, scando, vādo, vēhor, vēnio, vōlo*;—*cādeo, scādeo, nāto, etc.*, with the prepositions included in § 224, and *ex*.

**REMARK 1.** Some neuter verbs compounded with prepositions which govern an ablative, in like manner become transitive, and are followed by an accusative; as,

Nēmīnem convēni, I met with no one. Cic. Qui societatem coiēris. Id. Aversari hōnōres. Ovid. Ursi arbōrem aversi dērepunt. Plin. Edormi crāpulam. Cic. Egressus exsiliū. Tac. Evaditque celer ripam. Virg. Excēdere rēmē nūm. Tac. Excire līnen. Ter. Tibur aqua fertile praestunt. Hor.

**REM. 2.** After verbs both active and neuter, compounded with prepositions which take an accusative, the preposition is often repeated, or one of similar signification is used; as,

Cæsar se ad nēmīnem adjunxit. Cic. Multitudinem trans Rhēnum in Galliam transducere. Cæs.—In Galliam invasisit Antonius. Cic. Ad me adire quosdam mēmīni. Id. Orator peragrat per animos hōminum. Id. Ne in senātum accēderem. Id. Regina ad templum incessit. Virg. Juxta genitōrem adstat Lavinia. Id. Fines extra quos egrēdi non possim. Cic. A dative instead of the accusative often follows such compounds, according to § 224. Circum is not repeated.

**NOTE.** Some verbal nouns and verbal adjectives in *bundus* are followed by an accusative, like the transitive verbs from which they are derived; as,

Quid tibi huc rēceptio ad te est meum virum? Wherefore do you receive my husband hither to you? Plaut. Quid tibi, mālum, me, aut quid ego āgam, cūratio 'st? Id. Quid tibi hanc adiutio est? Id. Quid tibi hanc nōtio est, inquam, amīcam meam? Quid tibi hanc digito tuctio 'st? Id. Hanno vitābundus castra hostium consulesque. Liv. Mithridates Rōmānum mēditābundus bellum. Just. Mirābundū vānam spēcīem. Liv. Populābundus agros. Sisenn. Carnificem imāgnābundus. App.

**§ 234.** A verb in the passive voice has the same government as in the active, except that the accusative of the active voice becomes the nominative of the passive.

**NOTE 1.** The accusative of the person with the infinitive, after verbs of *saying* and *commanding*, may become the subject of the passive voice; as, Active, Dico rēgem esse justum;—Passive, Rex dicitur justus esse. Act. Jūbeo te rēdire;—Pass. Jūberis rēdire: the construction in the passive being the same as though rēgem and te had depended immediately upon dico and jūbeo.—So, also, when the accusative of the person is the object of the verb and the infinitive stands as the accusative of the thing. Cf. § 270, N.

**I.** When a verb, which in the active voice takes an accusative both of the person and of the thing, is changed to the passive form, the accusative of the person becomes the nominative, and the accusative of the thing is retained; as,

Rīgātus est sententiam, He was asked his opinion. Liv. Interrogātus causam. Tac. Sēgētes alīmentaque debita dives poscebātur hūmus. Ovid. Mōtus dēcēri gaudet. Iōnicos māturo virgo. Hor. Omnes belli artes ēdoctus. Liv. Noxæ hoc celātos tam diu? Ter. Multa in extis mōnemur. Cic.

**NOTE 2.** The accusative of the thing after *doctus* and *ēdoctus* is rare; and after *celāri* it is generally a neuter pronoun; as *hoc* or *id* celābar; of this I was kept in ignorance; but it is found also with the person in the dative; as, Id Alcibiadi diūtius celāri non potuit. Nep. Alcib. 5. Cēlo, and especially its passive, generally takes *de* with the ablative.

**REMARK 1.** (*a.*) *Induo* and *exuo*, though they do not take two accusatives in the active voice, are sometimes followed by an accusative of the thing in

the passive; as, *Induitur atras vestes*, She puts on sable garments. Ovid *Thōrāca indūtus*. Virg. *Exiata est Rōma sēnectain*. Mart. So *inducor* and *cingor*; as, *Ferrum cingitur*. Virg. So *recingitur* anguem. Ovid.

(b.) When two accusatives follow an active verb compounded with *trans*, the passive retains that which depends upon the preposition; as, *Belyæ Rhēnum antiquitus transducti*. Cæs.

REM. 2. The future passive participle in the neuter gender with *est*, is sometimes, though rarely, followed by an accusative; as, *Multa nobis rēbus quum sit agendum*. Lucr. *Quam (viam) nobis ingrediendum est*. Cic.

II. Adjectives, verbs, and perfect participles, are sometimes followed by an accusative denoting the *part* to which their signification relates; as,

*Nudus membra*, Bare as to his limbs. Virg. *Os hūmērosque deo similis*. Id. *Clāri gēnus*. Tac. *Tribūni suam vicem anxi*. Liv. *Trēmūt artus*. Virg. *Cētera parce puer bello*. Id. *Sibila colla tūmentem*. Id. *Explēri mentem nēquit*. Id. *Grūncus fruitur oculos*. Ovid. *Picti scūta Libici*. Virg. *Collis frontem leniter fastigātus*. Cæs. *Animum incensus*. Liv. *Oblātus faciē suā crudore*. Tac.

REMARK 1. In this construction an ablative is often joined with the perfect participle; as, *Miles fractus membra lābore*. Hor. *Dextērum gēnu lāpide ictus*. Suet. *Adversum fēmur trāgūlā graviter ictus*. Liv.

REM. 2. This is a Greek construction, and is usually called the *limiting* or *Greek accusative*. It is used instead of an ablative of limitation, (§ 250,) and occurs most frequently in poetry.

REM. 3. A limiting accusative instead of the ablative is found also in a few ordinary expressions, as in *partim* (for *partem*), *vicem*, *magnum* and *maximam partem*, instead of *magnā* or *maximā ex parte*, or the adverb *fere*; as, *Maximam partem lacte vivunt*. Cæs. *Magnum partem ex iambis nostra constitit oratio*. Cic. Livy has *magna pars*, viz. *Nūmidæ, magna pars agrestes*.—So *cētera* and *rēliqua* are joined to adjectives in the sense of *cēteris*, 'for the rest,' 'in other respects'; as, *Proximum regnum, cētera egregium, ab unā parte haud satis prosperum fuit*. Liv. So *cētera similis, cētera bonus*. *A te his terre summum lūcris accēpi*. Cic.—So, also, in the expressions *id temporis*; *id, hoc or idem ætātis, illud hōre*, for *eo tempore, eā ætate*, etc.; *id gēnus, omne gēnus, quod gēnus*.

III. Some neuter verbs which are followed by an accusative, are used in the passive voice, the accusative becoming the subject, according to the general rule of active verbs; as,

*Tertia vititur ætus*. Ovid. *Bellum militabitur*. Hor. *Dormitur hiems*. Mart. *Multa peccantur*. Cic. *Aditur Gnuissius Minos*. Sen. *Ne ab omnibus circumsteteretur*. Cæs. *Hostes invadi posse*. Sall. *Campus obitur aqua*. Ovid. *Plures tentantur gratia*. Cic. *Ea res siletur*. Id.

## ACCUSATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

§ 235. (1.) Twenty six prepositions are followed by the accusative.

There are *ad*, *adversus* or *adversum*, *antē*, *apud*, *circā* or *circum*, *circiter*, *cis* or *citra*, *contrā*, *ergā*, *extrā*, *infra*, *intēr*, *intrā*, *iuxta*, *ob*, *pēnēs*, *pēr*, *post*, *pōnē*, *præter*, *proptēr*, *sēcundum*, *suprā*, *trans*, *ultrā*; as,

*Ad templum non æque Pallidis ibant*,—to the temple. Virg. *Adversus hostes, Agāinēt the enemy*. Liv. *Germani qui cis Rhēnum incolunt*,—this side the Rhine. Cæs. *Quoniam tantum resident intra muros nulli*. Cic. *Principio rerum imperium pēnēs rēges erat*. Just. *Templum pōnam propter aq am*. Virg. *Inter agendum*. Id. *Ante dōnandum*. Id. Respecting the signification of some of the preceding prepositions see § 195, R. 5, etc.

REMARK 1. *Cis* is generally used with names of places; *citra* with other words also; as, *Cis Taurum*. Cic. *Cis Padum*. Liv. *Paucos cis menses*. Plaut. *Citra Veliā*. Cic. *Citra satiētatem*, Not to satiety. Col. *Citra jātigationem*. Cels. *Citra Trojāna tempōra*. Ovid.

REM. 2. *Inter*, signifying *between*, applies to two accusatives jointly, and sometimes to a single plural accusative; as, *Inter me et Scipionem*. Cic. *Inter nātus et parentes*. Id. *Inter nos*, Among ourselves. Id. *Inter falcārios*, Among the scythe-makers. Cic. When it denotes time it signifies *during*, and more rarely *at*; as, *Inter ipsum pugne tempus*. Liv. *Inter cenam*. Cic.

REM. 3. *Ante* and *post* are commonly joined with concrete official titles, when used to indicate time, rather than with the corresponding abstract nouns; as, *ante* or *post Cicēronem consulem*, rather than *ante* or *post consilātum* *Cicēronis*.

(2.) *In* and *sub*, denoting *motion* or *tendency*, are followed by the accusative; denoting *situation*, they are followed by the ablative; as,

*Via dūcīt in urbem*, The way conducts into the city. Virg. *Noster in te amor*. Cic. *Callimachi epigramma in Cleombrōtum est*—on or concerning Cleombrotus. Id. *Exercitus sub jūgum missus est*, The army was sent under the yoke. Cæs. *Magna mei sub terras ibit imāgo*. Virg. *Mediā in urbe*, In the midst of the city. Ovid. *In his fuit Ariovistus*. Cæs. *Bella sub Iliacis mœnibus gerere*, To wage war under the Trojan walls. Ovid. *Sub nocte silenti*. Virg.

REM. 4. The most common significations of *in*, with the accusative, are, *into*, *to*, *towards*, *until*, *for*, *against*, *about*, *concerning*,—with the ablative, *in*, *on*, *upon*, *among*. In some instances, *in* and *sub*, denoting tendency, are followed by the ablative, and, denoting situation, by the accusative; as, *In conspectu meo audet venire*. Phæd. *Nationes quæ in amicitiam populi Rōmāni, ditionemque essent*. Id. *Sub jūgo dictitor hostes misit*. Liv. *Hostes sub montem concessisse*. Cæs.

REM. 5. *In* and *sub*, in different significations, denoting neither tendency nor situation, are followed sometimes by the accusative, and sometimes by the ablative; as, *Amor crescit in horas*. Ovid. *Hostilem in modum*. Cic. *Quod in domo servo dici posset*. Id. *Sub eā conditione*. Ter. *Sub pœnā mortis*. Suet.

REM. 6. In expressions relating to time, *sub*, denoting *at* or *in*, usually takes the ablative; as, *Sub adventu Rōmānōrum*. Liv. *Sub luce*. Ovid. *Sub tempore*. Lucan. Denoting *near*, *about*, *just before* or *just after*, it takes the accusative; as, *Sub lucem*. Virg. *Sub lūmina prima*. Hor. *Sub hoc hērus inquit*. Id.

REM. 7. *In* is used with neuter adjectives in the accusative in forming adverbial phrases; as, *In universum*, In general. *In totum*, Wholly. So, *in plēnum*; *in incertum*; *in tantum*; *in quantum*; *in majus*; *in melius*; *in omnia*, in all respects, etc.

(3.) *Sūper*, when denoting place or time, is followed by the accusative, and sometimes poetically by the ablative; but when it signifies *on*, *about*, or *concerning*, it takes the ablative. With the accusative *sūper* signifies *over*, *above*, *besides* or *in addition to*; with numerals, *more than*; as,

*Sūper labentem culmina tecti*, Gliding over the top of the house. Virg. *Super tres indios*. Liv. *Sūper morbum etiam fames affecit exercitum*. Id. *Super tenero prosternit gramine corpus*, He stretches his body on the tender grass. Virg. *Multa sūper Priāmo rogātans sūper Hectōre multa*, .... concerning Priam etc. Id.

REM. 8. The compound *dēsūper* is found with the accusative, and *insūper* with the accusative and the ablative.

(4.) *Subter* generally takes the accusative, but sometimes, in poetry, the ablative; as,

*Subter terras*, Under the earth. Liv. *Subter densā testudinē*. Virg.

(5.) *Clam* is followed by either the accusative or the ablative; as,

*Clam* vos, Without your knowledge. Cic. *Clam* patrem. Ter. *Clam* matrem suam. Plaut. *Clam* vobis. Cæs. *Neque potest clam me esse*. Plaut. *Clam* uxore meâ. Id. Its diminutive *clanculum* is once followed by the accusative, *clanculum* patres. Ter.

REM. 9. The adverbs *versus* or *versum* and *usque* are sometimes annexed to an accusative, principally of place, which depends on *ad* or *in*, and sometimes the preposition is omitted; as, *Ad* Oceânium *versus proficisci*. Cæs. *Fugam* id se *versum*. Sall. *In* Galliam *versus castra movere*. Id.—*Usque* ad Numantiam. Cic. *Usque* in Pamphylia. Id. *Ad noctem usque*. Plaut.—Brundisium *versus* Cic. *Terrinos usque Libyæ*. Just. *Usque Ennam profecti*. Cic. *Versus* is always placed after the accusative.—*Usque* occurs more rarely with *sub* and *trans* with the accusative; as, *Trans Alpes usque transfertur*. Cic. *Usque sub extremum brumæ imbrem*.—*Versus* also rarely follows *ab*, and *usque* either *ab* or *ex* with the ablative; as, *Ab septemtrione versus*. Varr. *A fundamento usque movisti mære*. Plaut. *Usque ex ultimâ Syriâ*. Cic. *Usque a puertitiâ*. Ter. *Usque a Romulo*. Cic. *Usque a mæne ad vesperum*. Plaut.

REM. 10. Prepositions are often used without a noun depending upon them but such noun may usually be supplied by the mind; as, *Multis post annis*, i. e. *post id tempus*. Cic. *Circum Concordiæ*, scil. *ædem*. Sall.

REM. 11. The accusative, in many constructions, is supposed to depend on a preposition understood; as, *Quid opus est plura?* i. e. *propter quid?* why? i. q. *cur?* or *quare?* Cic. So, *Quid me ostentem?* Id. But it is not easy, in every case, to say what preposition should be supplied. For the accusative without a preposition after neuter verbs, see § 232. For the accusative of limitation, see § 234, II.

## ACCUSATIVE OF TIME AND SPACE.

§ 236. Nouns denoting duration of time, or extent of space, are put, after adjectives and verbs, in the accusative, and sometimes after verbs in the ablative; as,

ACC. *Appius cæcus multos annos fuit*, Appius was blind many years. Cic. *Biduum Lædicæ fuit*. Id. *Dies totos de virtute disserrunt*. Id. *Te jam annum audientem Cratippum*. Id.—*Decrevêrunt intercalarium quinque et quadrâginta dies longum*. Id.—*Quum abessem ab Amâno iter unius diei*. Id. *Tres paterat culi spatium non amplius ulnas*. Virg. (Cf. § 256, R. 6.) *A portu stadia centum et viginti processinus*. Cic.—*Duas fossas quindécim pèdes lãtas perduxit*,—two ditches fifteen feet broad. Cæs. *Fossæ quinos pèdes altæ*. Id. *Foramina longa pèdes tres sèmis*. Cato. *Orbem olearium crassum digitos sex facito*. Id.—ABL. *Vixit annis undetriginta*. Suet. *Quatuordécim annis exsiliûm toleravit*. Tac. *Triginta annis vixit Panætius*. Cic.—*Exercitus Romanus tridui itinere abfuit ab æne Tanai*. Tac. *Æsculapii templum quinque millibus passuum distans*. Liv.

NOTE 1. The ablative denoting extent of time and space is rarely used by Cicero, and less frequently than the accusative by other writers.

NOTE 2. The accusative denoting extent of space sometimes follows the adverbs *longe*, *alte*, etc.; as, *Crimpestris locus alte duos pèdes et sèmissem infoddiendus est*. Colum. *Vercingetorix locum castris deligit ab Awa. Ico longe millia passuum sèlicim*. Cæs.

NOTE 3. (a.) *Old*, in reference to the time which a person has lived, is expressed in Latin by *natus*, with an accusative of the time; as, *Decessit Alexander mensem unum, annos tres et triginta natus*. Just. (b.) A person's age may also be expressed without *natus* by a genitive of the time closely connected with his name, according to § 211, R. 6; as, *Alexander annorum trium et triginta decessit*. (c.) *Older* or *younger* than a certain age is expressed by prefixing to the accusative or genitive of the definite age the ad-

verbs *plus* or *minus*, or the adjectives *major* or *minor*, either with or without *quam*. See § 256, R. 6 and 7.—Sometimes, also, the ablative depends on the comparative; as, *Minor viginti quinque annis natus*. Nep. *Minor triginta annis nato*. Cic. *Biennio quam nos major*. Id. Cf. § 256, R. 16. (1.)

REMARK 1. Nouns denoting time or space, used to limit *other nouns*, are put in the genitive or ablative. See § 211, R. 6.

REM. 2. A term of time not yet completed may be expressed by an ordinal number, as, *Nos vicēsimū jam diem patimur hēbescere aetate hōrum auctōritatē*. Cic. *Pūnico bello duodēcimum annum Italia urēbatur*. Liv. Hence in the passive, *Nunc tertia vivitur aetas*. Ovid.

REM. 3. The accusative or ablative of space is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending on it remains; as, *Castra quae abierant bidui*, scil. *spatium* or *spatio*. Cic.

REM. 4. To denote a place by its distance from another, the ablative is commonly used; as, *Millibus passuum sex a Cæsaris castris consedit*. Cæs.; but sometimes the accusative; as, *Tria passuum millia ab ipsa urbe castra posuit*. Liv. The only words used for this purpose in the ablative alone are *spatio* and *intervallo*; as, *Quindēcm ferme millium spatio castra ab Tarento posuit*. Id.

NOTE 4. For *abhinc* and a cardinal number, with the accusative or ablative of past time, see § 253, R. 2. For the ablative denoting difference of time or space, see § 256, R. 16.

REM. 5. A preposition is sometimes expressed before an accusative of time or space, but it generally modifies the meaning; as, *Quem per decem annos didicius*, .... during ten years. Cic.

REM. 6. When the place from which the distance is reckoned is not mentioned, *ab* is sometimes placed before the ablative of distance, as if this depended on the preposition; as, *A millibus passuum duobus castra posuerunt*, Two miles from the place, or, Two miles off. Cæs.

REM. 7. An accusative of weight also occurs when expressed by *libram* or *libras* in connection with *pondo*. Cf. § 211, R. 6. (4.)

## ACCUSATIVE OF PLACE.

§ 237. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of the town in which the motion ends is put in the accusative without a preposition; as,

*Regulus Carthāginem rediit*, Regulus returned to Carthage. Cic. *Capuam flecti iter*, He turns his course to Capua. Liv. *Calpurnius Rōmam proficiet*. Sall. *Rōmam erat nuntiātum*. Cic.

REMARK 1. The accusative, in like manner, is used after *iter* with *sum*, *habeo*, etc.; as, *Iter est mihi Lānūvium*. Cic. *Cæsarem iter habere Capuam*. Id. And even after *sum* alone; as, *Omnia illa municipia, quae sunt a Vibōne Brundisium*. Cic. So with a verbal noun; as, *Adventus Rōmam*. Liv. *Reditus Rōmam*. Cic.

REM. 2. (a.) The preposition to be supplied is *in*, denoting *to* or *into*, which is sometimes expressed; as, *In Ephesum abiit*. Plaut. *Ad*, before the name of a town, denotes direction towards it; as, *Iter dirigere ad Muttinam*. Cic.; and also its vicinity; as, *Adolescentulus miles profectus sum ad Capuam*; i. e. *in castra ad Capuam*. Id. So, *Laelius cum classe ad Brundisium venit*. Cæs. *Cæsar ad Gēnevā pervēnit*. Id. *Quum ego ad Heracleam accēderem*. Cic.

(b.) When *urbs*, *oppidum*, *locus*, etc., follow the names of towns as appositions, they generally take a preposition; as, *Dēmārātus se contulit Tarquinius, in urbem Etrūscæ flōrentissimam*. Cic. *Ad Cirtam oppidum iter constituunt*. Sall.—So also when the name of the town is qualified by an adjective; as, *Magnum*



*iter* ad doctas *prōficiſci cōgor* Athēnas. Prop. But the poets and later prose writers sometimes omit the preposition; as, Ovid, Her. 2, 83.

REM. 3. Instead of the accusative, a dative is sometimes, though rarely used; as, Carthāgini *nuncios mittam*. Hor. Cf. § 225, IV. and R. 2.

REM. 4. *Dōmus* in both numbers, and *rus* in the singular, are put in the accusative, like names of towns; as,

*Ite dōmum*, Go home. Virg. *Galli dōmos abiērunt*,—had gone home. Liv. *Rus ibo*, I will go into the country. Ter.

NOTE. (a.) When *dōmus* is limited by a genitive or a possessive adjective pronoun, it sometimes takes a preposition: with other adjectives, the preposition is generally expressed; as, *Non introto* in nostram dōmum. Plaut. *Vēnisse* in dōmum Leccæ. Cic. *Ad eam dōmum prōfecti sunt*. Id. *In dōmos supēras scandere cūra fuit*. Ovid. Rarely, also, when not limited; as, *Sōcrates philōsophiam* in dōmos intrōdūxit. Cic. *So, larem suum*. App., or *ad larem suum*. Cic. *Cārtæ* in Albense *rus inferre*. Plin. *Quum in sua rura vēnērunt*. Cic. With the possessor's name in the genitive, either *dōmum* or *in dōmum* is used; as, *Pompōniū dōmum vēnisse*. Cic. *In dōmum Mælii tēla infērentur*. Liv.

(b.) *Dōmus* is sometimes used in the accusative after a verbal noun; as, *Dōmum rēditiōnis spe sublātā*. Cæs. *So, Itio dōmum*. Cic. *Concursus dōmum*. Cæs. Cf. R. 1.

REM. 5. (a.) Before the names of countries and of all other places in which the motion ends, except those of towns, and *dōmus* and *rus*, the preposition is commonly used; as, *Ex Asiā transis* in Europam. Curt. *Te in Epīrum vēnisse gaudeo*. Cic. But it is sometimes omitted; as, *Devēniunt spēluncam*. Virg. *Levōnere lōcos*. Id. *Tūmulum antiquæ Cērēris sēdemque sacrātam vēnimus*. Id. *Ibis Cērēpius portus*. Ovid. *So*, also, before names of countries, especially those ending in *us*; as, *Ægyptus, Bospōrus, Chersōnēsus, Epīrus, Pēlōponnēsus*, etc. *So*, also, *Illyrteum prōfectus*. Cæs. *Macedōniam pervēnit*. Liv. *Africam transiturus*. Id. *So*, Tacitus construes even names of nations, when used as they often are, for those of countries; as, *Ductus inde Cangos exercitus*. *Idēros ad patriam regnum pervādūt*. *So*, Virgil, *Nos ibimus Afros*.—Pliny has, *Insūlas Rubri Māris nāvigant*.

(b.) Before the names of small islands the preposition is frequently omitted; as, *Pausānam cum classe Cyprum misērunt*. Nep.: but rarely before the names of the larger islands; as, *Sardinia, Britannia, Crēta, Eubœa, Sicilia*.

(c.) Before accusatives of any words denoting locality after verbs of motion, the poets omit the preposition; as, *Itāliam—Lariniāque vēnit litōra*. Virg.—The old accusative *fōras* is used, like names of towns, to denote the place whither, while *fōris* denotes the place where; as, *Vāde fōras*. Mart. *Eni fōras* Plaut.

## ACCUSATIVE AFTER ADJECTIVES, ADVERBS AND INTERJECTIONS.

§ 238. 1. (a.) The adjectives *prōpior* and *proximus*, with their adverbs *prōpius* and *proxime*, like their primitive *prōpe*, are often joined with the accusative; as,

*Ipsē prōpior montem suos collōcat*. Sall. *Crassus proximus mēre Oceānum biēmārat*. Cæs.—*Libyes prōpius mēre Africū agitābant*. Sall. *Proxime Hispaniū Mauri sunt*. Id.

(b.) The adverbs *pridie* and *postridie* are also often followed by the accusative; as, *Pridie eum diem*. Cic. *Pridie idus*. Id. *Postridie ludos*. Id.—(c.) An accusative sometimes follows *intus* and *cōminus* as, *Intus dōmum*. Plaut. *Argestes cōminus ire sues*, scil. *in*. Prop.

REMARK 1. The accusative with *pridie* and *postidie* is by some referred to *ante* and *post* understood. For the genitive after these words, see § 212, R. 4, N. 6.—Respecting *versus*, *usque*, *exadversus* (-um) and *secus* with the accusative, see § 196, R. 3: and § 235, R. 3.

REM. 2. The adverb *bene*, by the elipsis of *villere jubeo*, is sometimes followed by the accusative in forms of drinking health; as, *Bene vcs, bene nos, bene to bene me, bene nostram etiam Stêphanium!* Plaut. *Bene Messalam*, a health to Messala. Tibull. It is also construed with the dative. See § 228, 1.

2. In exclamations, the noun or pronoun which marks the *object of the feeling* is put in the accusative either with or without the interjections, *O! ah! heu! cheu! ecce! en! hem! pro! or vae!* as,

*En quattuor aras! ecce duas tibi Daphni!* Behold four altars! lo, two for thee, Daphnia! Virg. *Eccum! eccos! eccillum!* for *ecce eum! ecce eos! ecce illum!* Plaut. *O præclârûm custodem!* Cic. *Heu me infâlicem!* Ter. *Pro Deâ hominumque fidem!* Cic. *Ah me, me!* Catull. *Eheu me miserum!* Ter. *Hem astutias!* Id. *Vae te!* Plaut. *Vae me!* Sen. *Miseram me!* Ter. *Hominem gravem et civem egrêgum!* Cic. Cf. § 228, 3.

NOTE. The accusative after interjections is supposed to depend on some verb of emotion to be supplied.

## SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 239. The subject of the infinitive mood is put in the accusative; as,

*Môleste Pompeium id ferre constat,* That Pompey took that ill, was evident. Cic. *Eos hoc nômîne appellâri fas est.* Id. *Miror te ad me nihil scribere,* I wonder that you do not write to me. Cn. Mag. in Cic. *Campos jubet esse pântentes.* Virg.

NOTE 1. In historical writing the present infinitive has sometimes its subject in the nominative. Cf. § 209, R. 5.

REMARK 1. The subject of the infinitive is omitted when it precedes in the genitive or dative case; as, *Est adôlescentis majôres nâtû vërêri*, scil. *eum*. Cic. *Expêdî bonas esse vobis*, scil. *vos*. Ter.; and rarely when it precedes in the accusative; as, *Ea pópulus lætâri et mërîto dicere fieri*; and also when its place is supplied by a possessive pronoun expressed or understood; as, *Non fuit consilium* (meum)—*servilibus officiis intentum aetatem agere* (scil. *me*). Sal.

REM. 2. A substantive pronoun is also sometimes omitted before the infinitive, when it is the subject of the preceding verb; as, *Pollicitus sum susceptûrum* (esse), scil. *me*, I promised (that I) would undertake. Ter. *Sed reddere posse negabat*, scil. *se*. Virg.

REM. 3. The subject of the infinitive is often omitted, when it is a general word for person or thing; as, *Est aliud iracundum esse, aliud iratum*, scil. *hominem*. Cic. See § 269, R. 1.

REM. 4. The subject-accusative, like the nominative, is often wanting. See § 209, R. 3. The subject of the infinitive may be an infinitive or a clause. See § 269, R. 3.

NOTE 2. For the verbs after which the subject-accusative with the infinitive is used see § 272. For the accusative in the predicate after infinitives neuter and passive, see § 210.

## VOCATIVE.

§ 240. The vocative is used, either with or without an interjection, in addressing a person or thing.

REMARK 1. The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *pro* (*proh*), also *ah*, *ai* (*hai*), *ěhem*, *ěho*, *ěhodum*, *eia* (*heia*), *hem*, *heus*, *hui*, *io*, and *ohe*, are followed by the vocative; as,

*O formōse puer!* *O* beautiful boy! Virg. *Heu virgo!* Id. *Pro sancte Jūpter!* Cic. *Ah stulti!* Ter. *Heus Sīre!* Id. *Ohe libelle!* Mart. *Ehodum bone vir.* Ter.—*Urbem*, mi Rūse, cōle. Cic. Quinctili Vare, *lēgitimes redde*. Suet. *Quo inōritūre ruis?* Hor. *Macte virtūte esto*. Cic.

REM. 2. The vocative is sometimes omitted, while a genitive depending upon it remains; as, *O miseræ sortis!* scil. *hōmīnes*. Lucan.

NOTE. The vocative forms no part of a proposition, but serves to designate the person to whom the proposition is addressed.

## ABLATIVE.

The ablative denotes certain relations of nouns and pronouns, all of which are expressed in English by means of prepositions. In Latin this case is sometimes accompanied by a preposition, and sometimes stands alone. Cf. § 87, 6.

## ABLATIVE AFTER PREPOSITIONS.

§ 241. Eleven prepositions are followed by the ablative.

These are *ā*, (or *āb*, *abs*), *absquē*, *dē*; *cōram*, *pūlam*, *cum*, *ex*, (*ē*) *stnē*, *tēnus*, *prō*, and *præ*; as,

*Ab illo tempore*, From that time. Liv. *A scribendo*, From writing. Cic. *Cum exercitu*, With the army. Sall. *Certis de causis*, For certain reasons. Cic. *Ex fugā*, From flight. Id. *Pūlam pōpūlo*. Liv. *Sine lābōre*. Cic. *Cipūlo tēnus*. Virg. *Cantābit vācuus cōram lātrōne viātor*. Juv. cf. § 195, 5.

NOTE. Of the prepositions followed by the ablative, five signify removal or separation, viz. *ā* (*āb* or *abs*), *dē*, *ē* (or *ex*), *absquē* and *stnē*.

REMARK 1. *Tēnus* is always placed after its case. It sometimes takes the genitive plural. See § 221, III.—*Cum* is always appended to the ablative of the personal pronouns *me*, *te*, *se*, *nōbis*, and *vōbis*, and commonly to the ablatives of the relative pronoun, *quo*, *quā*, *quibus*, and *quī*. Cf. § 133, 4, and § 136, R. 1.

REM. 2. The adverbs *prōcul* and *stmul* are sometimes used with an ablative, which depends on the prepositions *a* or *ab*, and *cum* understood; as, *Prōcul mārī*, Far from the sea. Liv. *Stmul nōbis hābitat*. Ovid. *Prōcul dūbio*. Suet. The prepositions are frequently expressed; as, *Frōcul a terrā*. Cic. *Prōcul a patriā*. Virg. *Tēcum stmul*. Plaut. *Vōbiscum stmul*. Cic.—So, rarely, *aque*. *Qui me in terrā aque fortunātus erit*. Plaut. Cf. *Nōci aque omnia tēcum*. Id.

REM. 3. Some of the above prepositions, like those followed by the accusative, are occasionally used without a noun expressed; as, *Quem cōram stmus*. Cic. *Cum frātre an sine*. Id. Cf. § 235, R. 10.

REM. 4. The ablative follows also the prepositions *in* and *sub*, when they answer to the question 'where?' *super*, when it signifies 'on' or 'concerning', and sometimes *clam* and *subter*. Cf. § 235, (2).—(5.)

REM. 5. *In* is generally joined with the ablative after verbs of placing, as, *pōno*, *lōco*, *collōco*, *stātuo*, *constituo*, and *consido*; as, *Et sūle tābentes artus ir vōre pōnuūt*. Virg.—So, also, after verbs signifying to have, hold, or regard

as, *habeo, dūco, nūmero*, etc.—After verbs of *assembling, concealing, and including*, *in* is followed by either the accusative or the ablative.—After *dēfigo, inscribo, insculpo, incido*, and *inséro*, *in* is usually joined with the ablative.

§ 242. Many verbs compounded with *ab, de, ex*, and *sūper* are followed by an ablative depending upon the preposition; as,

*Abesse urbe*, To be absent from the city. Cic. *Abire sēdibus*, To depart from their habitations. Tac. *Ut se maledictis non abstineant*. Cic. *Detrūdunt nāves scopūlo*, They push the ships from the rock. Virg. *Nāri ēgressus est*. Nep. *Excēdere finibus*. Liv. *Cæsar prælio supersēdere stūiui*. Cæs. *Tribūto ac dēlectu supersessum est*. Cic. So the adjective *extorris*; as, *Extorris patriā, dōmo*. Sall. And so the verbal *eruptio*, as, *Mutinā eruptio*. Cic.

REMARK 1. The preposition is often repeated, or one of similar signification is used; as, *Detrāhere de tuā famā numquam cōgītāvī*. Cic. *Ex oculis abiērunt*. Liv. *Exire a patriā*. Cic. *Exire de vitā*. Id. Cf. § 224, R. 4.

REM. 2. These compound verbs are often used without a noun; but, in many cases, it may be supplied by the mind; as, *Equites dēgressi ad pēdes* scil. *equis*. Liv. *Abire ad Deos*, scil. *vitā*. Cic.

REM. 3. Some verbs compounded with *ab, de*, and *ex*, instead of the ablative, are sometimes followed by the dative. See § 224, R. 1 and 2. Some compounds, also, of neuter verbs, occur with the accusative. See § 233, R. 1.

## ABLATIVE AFTER CERTAIN NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS.

§ 243. *Opus* and *ūsus*, signifying *need*, usually take the ablative of the thing needed; as,

*Auctōritāte tuā nobis opus est*, We need your authority. Cic. *Nunc ānimis opus, nunc pectore firmo*. Virg. *Nāves, quibus consūli ūsus non esset*, Ships, for which the consul had no occasion. Liv. *Nunc viribus ūsus, nunc mānibus rapt*. Virg.

REMARK 1. (a.) *Opus* and *ūsus* are sometimes followed by the ablative of a perfect participle; as, *Mātūrāto opus est*, There is need of haste. Liv. *Ūsus facto est mihi*. Ter. *Ubi summus impērator non ādest ad exercitum, citius, quod non facto est ūsus, fit, quam quod facto est opus*. Plaut. After *opus*, a noun is sometimes expressed with the participle; as, *Opus fuit Hirtio convento*,—of meeting, or, to meet, § 274, R. 5. Cic. *Opus sibi esse dōmīno ejus invento*. Liv.—or a supine is used; as, *Ita dictu opus est*, It is necessary to say, I must say. Ter.—Instead of the ablative with *opus est*, an infinitive, either alone or with a subject accusative, or *ut* with a subjunctive clause, sometimes occurs; as, *Opus est te ānimo valere*. Cic. *Mihi opus est, ut lāvem*. Id.

(b.) *Opus* and *ūsus*, though nouns, are seldom limited by the genitive. In a few passages they are construed with the accusative. See § 211, R. 11.

REM. 2. *Opus* is sometimes the subject and sometimes the predicate of *est*; *ūsus*, which seldom occurs except in ante-classic poets, is, with only rare exceptions, the subject only. The person to whom the thing is needful is put in the dative; (§ 226.) With *opus* the thing needed may either be the subject of the verb in the nominative or accusative, or follow it in the ablative; as, *Dux nobis opus est*. Cic. *Verres multa sibi opus esse aiēbat*. Id.; or, *Dūce nobis opus est*. The former construction is most common with neuter adjectives and pronouns; as, *Quod non opus est, asse cārum est*. Cato apud Sen.—In the predicate *opus* and *ūsus* are commonly translated 'needful' or 'necessary'. Cf. § 210, R. 1.

NOTE For the ablative of character, quality, etc., limiting a noun, see § 211, R. 6

§ 244. *Dignus, indignus, contentus, præditus, and frētus*, are followed by the ablative of the object; as,

*Dignus laude*, Worthy of praise. Hor. *Vox pōpuli mājestate indigna*, A speech unbecoming the dignity of the people. Cæs. *Bestiæ eo contentæ non querunt amplius*. Cic. *Homo scēlere præditus*. Id. *Plērique ingēnio frēti*. Id.—So, *Æquum est me atque illo*. Plaut.

REMARK 1. The adverb *digne*, in one passage, takes the ablative; *Peccat uter nostrum cruce dignus*. Hor.—*Dignor*, also, both as the passive of the obsolete *digno*, and as a deponent verb, is followed by an ablative of the thing, As a deponent it takes also an accusative of the person; as, *Haud equidem tāli me hōnōre dignor*. Virg.—Pass. *Qui tāli hōnōre dignātī sunt*. Cic. Conjūgio, *Anchisa, Vēneris dignāte sūperbo*. Virg.—Sometimes as a deponent, instead of the ablative of the thing, it is followed by an infinitive clause; as, *Non ego grammaticas ambire tribus et pultrā dignor*. Hor. And both *dignor* and *dēdignor* are followed by two accusatives, one of the object the other of the predicate. See § 230, R. 2.

REM. 2. (a.) *Dignus* and *indignus* are sometimes followed by the genitive; as, *Suscipe cōgitationem dignissimam tuæ virtūtis*. Cic. *Indignus avōrum*. Virg.; and *dignus* sometimes takes a neuter pronoun or adjective in the accusative; as, *Non me censes scire vid dignus siem?* Plaut. *Frētus* is in Livy construed with the dative. Cf. § 222, R. 6, (b.)

(b.) Instead of an ablative, *dignus* and *indignus* often take an infinitive, especially in the passive; as, *Erat dignus amari*. Virg.; or a subjunctive clause, with *qui* or *ut*; as, *Dignus qui impēret*. Cic. *Non sum dignus, ut figam pālum in pariētem*. Plaut.; or the supine in *u*; as, *Digna atque indigna rēlātū vōciferans*. Virg. *Contentus* is likewise joined with the infinitive; as, *Non hæc artes contenta paternas edidicisse fuit*. Ovid.—So, *Naves pontum irrumpēro frētæ*. Stat.

§ 245. I. *Utor, fruor, fungor, pōtior, vescor*, and their compounds, are followed by the ablative; as,

*Ad quem tum Jūno supplex his vōcibus ūsa est*,—addressed these words. Virg. *Frui vōluptate*, To enjoy pleasure. Cic. *Fungitur officio*, He performs his duty. Id. *Oppido pōtiti sunt*. Liv. *Vescitur aurā*. Virg. *His rēbus perfruor*. Cic. *Lēgibus abūti*. Id. *Dēfuncti impērio*. Liv. *Grāvi opēre perfungimur*. Cic. *O tandem magnis pēlāgi dēfunctæ pēriclis*. Virg.

The compounds are *abutor, deutor, perfruor, dēfungor*, and *perfungor*.

NOTE. *Utor* may take a second ablative, as an apposition or a predicate, like the predicate accusative, (§ 230, R. 2), and may then be translated by the verb *to have*; as, *Ille faciē me ūtetur patre*, He shall have in me an indulgent father. Ter.

REMARK. In early writers these verbs sometimes take an accusative; as, *Quam rem mēdici ūtuntur*. Varr. *Ingēnium frui*. Ter. *Datātes militāre militū fungens*. Nep. *Gentem aliquam urbem nostram pōtūtāram pūtem*. Cic. *Saras lauros vescar*. Tibull. *In prōlōgis scribendis opēram abūtūtur*. Ter.—*Pōtior* is, also, found with the genitive. See § 220, 4.

II. 1. *Nitor, innitor, fido* and *confido*, may be followed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Hastā innixus*. Liv. *Fidēre cursu*. Ovid. *Nātūræ scī confidēbant*. Cæs.

2. *Misceo* with its compounds takes, with the accusative of the object, the ablative of the thing mingled with; as, *Miscēre pābula sālē*. Coll. *Aguas nec tāre*. Ovid. *Aër multo calōre admixtus*. Cic.

3. *Assuesco, assuefacio, consuesco, insuesco*, and sometimes *acquiesco*, take either the dative or the ablative of the thing; as, *Aves sanguine et prædā assuetæ*. Hor. *Nullo officio aut disciplinā assuefactus*. Cæs. Cf. § 224.

4. *Vivo* and *epulor*, 'to live or feast upon,' are followed by the ablative; as *Dāpibus epulāmur optimis*. Virg. *Lacte atque pecōre vivunt*. Cæs.

5. *Sto* signifying 'to be filled or covered with,' and also when signifying 'to coast,' is followed by the ablative without a preposition; when signifying 'to persevere in, stick to, abide by,' 'to rest or be fixed on,' it is followed by the ablative either with or without *in*; as, *Jam pulvère cælum stare vident*. Virg.—*Multo sanguine ac vulneribus ea Pænis victōria stetit*. Liv. *Stare conditionibus*. Cic. *Omnis in Ascānio stat cūra parentis*. Virg.—*Consto*, 'to consist of' or 'to rest upon,' is followed by the ablative either alone or with *ex*, *de*, or *in*; as, *Constat mātēries sōlido corpōre*. Lucr. *Homo ex ānimo constat et corpōre*. Cic.

REMARK 1. *Fido*, *confido*, *misceo*, *admisceo*, *permisceo*, and *assuesco* often take the dative.

REM. 2. When a preposition is expressed after the above verbs, *sto*, *fido*, *confido*, *nitōr*, *innitōr*, and *assuesco* take *in* or *ad*; *acquiesco*, *in*; and *misceo* with its compounds, *cum*.

§ 246. Perfect participles denoting *origin* are often followed by the ablative of the *source*, without a preposition.

Such are *nātus*, *prōgnātus*, *sātus*, *creātus*, *crētus*, *ēditus*, *gēnitus*, *gēnerātus*, *ortus*; to which may be added *oriundus*, descended from.

Thus, *Nāte deā!* O son of a goddess! Virg. *Tantālo prōgnātus*, Descended from Tantalus. Cic. *Sātus Nēreide*, Sprung from a Nereid. Ovid. *Creātus rēge*. Id. *Alcāndre crēti*. Virg. *Edite rēgibus*. Hor. *Dūs gēnite*. Virg. *Argōlto gēnerātus Alēmōne*. Ovid. *Ortus nullis mājōribus*. Hor. *Celesti sēmine oriundi*. Lucr.

REMARK 1. The preposition is also rarely omitted after the verbs *creo*, *gēnero*, and *nascor*; as, *Ut patre certo nascērere*. Cic. *Fortes creantur fortibus*. Hor.

REM. 2. After participles denoting origin, the preposition *ex* or *de* is usually joined to the name of the mother; and in a few passages *ex* or *ab* is joined to the name of the father; as, *Prōgnāti ab Dite patre*. Cæs. In speaking of one's ancestors *ab* is frequently used; as, *Plēroque Belgas esse ortos a Germānis*. Id.

REM. 3. Origin from a place or country is generally expressed by a patril adjective; as, *Thrāsibūlus Athēniensis*, Thrasybulus of Athens. Livy often uses *ab*; as, *Turnus Herdōmius ab Ariciā*. Cæsar prefers the ablative alone; as, *Cn. Magius Crēmōnā*; and in this manner is expressed the tribe to which a person belongs; as, *Q. Verres Rōmiliā*,—of the Romilian tribe.

#### ABLATIVE OF CAUSE, ETC.

§ 247. Nouns denoting the *cause*, *manner*, *means*, and *instrument*, after adjectives and verbs, are put in the ablative without a preposition.

NOTE. The English prepositions with the ablative of cause, manner, means, and instrument are *by*, *with*, *in*, etc.

1. The *cause*. (1.) Adjectives which have a passive signification, as denoting a state or condition produced by some external cause, may take such cause in the ablative; as,

*Campāni fuērunt siperbi bōnitātē agrōrum*. Cic. *Animal pābulo letum*. Sen. *Prælio fessi lassique*, Weary and faint with the battle. Sall. *Hōmines ægrī grāvi morbo*. Cic.

(2.) Neuter verbs expressing an action, state or feeling of the subject originating in some external cause, may take that cause in the ablative; as,

*Intērit fame, He perished with hunger. Laude āliēnā dōlet. Cic. Lator suā dignitatē. Id. Gaude tuo bōno. Id. Suā victoriā glōriārī. Cæs. Aquilōnibus labōrant quercēta. Hor.—So with bēne est and the dative; as, Mīhi bēne erat non piscibus urbe pētītis, sed pullo atque hædo. Hor. Ubi illi bēne sit ligno, Aquā cāldā, cibo, vestimentis, etc. Plaut.*

NOTE 1. After such adjectives and neuter verbs, a preposition with its case often supplies the place of the simple ablative.

NOTE 2. In exclamations of encouragement or approbation the defective adjective *macte, macti*, either with or without the imperative of *esse* (*esto, este, estote*), is joined with an ablative of cause, especially with *virtute*.

NOTE 3. After neuter verbs and adjectives denoting emotions, accusative those of *care, grief, and sorrow*, the accusative *vicem*, with a genitive or a possessive pronoun, is used, instead of the ablative *vice*, to signify 'for' or 'on account of'; as, *Rēmittimus hoc tibi, ne nostram vicem trāscāris*, That you may not be angry on our account. Liv. *Tuam vicem sæpe dōleo, quod*, etc. Cic. *Suam vicem māgis anxius, quam ejus, cui auxilium ab se pētēbatur*. Liv.

REMARK 1. When the cause is a voluntary agent, it is put in the accusative with the preposition *ob, propter, or per*; as, *Non est æquum me propter vos decipi*. Ter. These prepositions, and *a, or ab, de, e* or *ex*, and *præ*, are also sometimes used when the cause is not a voluntary agent; as, *Ob adultērium cæsi*. Virg. *Nec lōqui præ mœrōre pōtuit*. Cic.

REM. 2. (a.) After active verbs, the cause, unless expressed by an ablative in *u* from substantives having no other case; as, *Jussu, rogātū and admōnitū*, is seldom expressed by the simple ablative, but either by a preposition, or by *causā, gratiā, ergo*, etc., with a genitive; as, *Lēgibus propter mētum pāret*. Cic. *Ne ob eam rem ipso dēspicēret*. Id. *Dōnari virtutis ergo*. Id. *Si hoc hōnōris mei causā suscipiēs*. Id. But with *causā*, etc., the adjective pronoun is commonly used for the corresponding substantive pronoun; as, *Te abesse meā causā, mōleste fero*. Cic. Cf. § 211, R. 8, (b.)

(b.) When the cause is a state of feeling, a circumlocution is often used with a perfect participle of some verb signifying 'to induce'; as, *Cupiditatē ductus, inductus, incitatus, incensus, inflammatus, impulsus, motus, captus*, etc. *Mīhi bēnē-volentiā ductus tribuēbat omnia*. Cic. Livy frequently uses *ab* in this sense; as, *Ab ira, a spe, ab odio*, from anger, hope, hatred.

2. The manner. *Cum* is regularly joined with the ablative of manner, when expressed simply by a noun, not modified by any other word; and also when an adjective is joined with the noun, provided an additional circumstance, and not merely an essential character of the action, is to be expressed. Thus:

*Cum vōluptatē aliquem audire. Verres Lampsacum vēnit cum magnā cālāmitatē civitātis*. Cic. Hence also when the connection between the subject and the noun denoting the attribute is only external; as, *Prōcēdere cum veste purpureā*: in distinction from *Nudis pēdibus incēdere*; *Aperto capite sedere*, etc., which express circumstances or attributes essential to the subject.

Erit *mōdus, ratiō, mos, ritus*, etc., signifying manner, never take *cum*, and it is omitted in some expressions with other substantives; as, *Hoc mōdo scripsit; Constituerunt quā ratiōne agerētur; Mōre bestiārū vagari; Latronum ritu vivere; Equo animo fero; Maximā fide amicitias colui. Summā æquitatē res constitui; Viam incredibili celeritatē confeci; Librum magnā curā diligentiaque scripsi*; the action of the verb being intimately connected with the circumstance expressed by the ablative. So in some expressions with substantives alone; as, *Silentio præterire or facere aliquid; Lēge agere; Jūre and injuriā facere; Magistratus vitio creatus; Recte et ordine fieri*.

REM. 3. The manner is also sometimes denoted by *de* or *ex* with the ablative; as, *De or ex industriā, On purpose*. Liv. *Ex integro*, Anew. Quint.

3. *The means and instrument.* An ablative is joined with verbs of every kind, and also with adjectives of a passive signification, to express the means or instrument; as,

*Amicos observantiā, rem parsimōniā retinuit.* He retained his friends by attention, his property by frugality. Cic. *Auro ostrūque decōri.* Virg. *Ægresciā mēdando.* Id. *Cornibus tauri, apri dentibus, morsu leones se tulantur.* Cic. *Census est virgis.* Id. *Trabs saucia sēcūri.* Ovid. For the ablative of the means after verbs of filling, etc., see § 249, I.

REM. 4. When the means is a person, it is seldom expressed by the simple ablative, but either by *per*, or by the ablative *opērā* with a genitive or a possessive pronoun; as, *meā, tuā, suā, opērā*, which are equivalent to *per me, per te per se*, and denote both good and bad services. *Bēnēficiō meo*, etc., is used of good results only; as, *Bēnēficiō meo patres sunt.* Sall. But persons are sometimes considered as involuntary agents, and as such expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Servos, quibus silvas publicas depopulārus erat.* Cic.—When *per* is used to express the means, it is connected with external concurring circumstances, rather than with the real means or instrument. Hence we always say *vi oppidum cepit*, but *per vim ei bona eripuit*.

REM. 5. The material instrument is always expressed by the ablative without a preposition; as, *Conficere cervum sagittis; gladio aliquem vulnerare; trahere pectus ferro.*

§ 248. The ablative is used with passive verbs to denote the *means* or *agent* by which any thing is effected, and which in the active voice is expressed by the nominative. This ablative is used either with *ab* or without it, according as it is a person or a thing.

I. The *voluntary agent* of a verb in the passive voice is put in the ablative with *a* or *ab*; as,

(In the active voice,) *Clōdīus me diligit*, Clodius loves me (Cic.); (in the passive,) *A Clōdio diligor*, I am loved by Clodius. *Laudātur ab his, culpātur ab illis.* Hor.

REMARK 1. (1.) The general word for persons, after verbs in the passive voice, is often understood; as, *Prōbitas laudātur*, scil. *ab hōmīnibus*. Juv. So after the passive of neuter verbs; as, *Discurritur.* Virg. *Tōto certātum est corpore regni.* Id. Cf. § 141, R. 2.

(2.) The agent is likewise often understood, when it is the same as the subject of the verb, and the expression is then equivalent to the active voice with a reflexive pronoun, or to the middle voice in Greek; as, *Quum omnes in manu genere scēlērū volūntur*, scil. *a se*. Cic.

REM. 2. Neuter verbs, also, are sometimes followed by an ablative of the voluntary agent with *a* or *ab*; as,

*M. Marcellus perit ab Annibāle*, M. Marcellus was killed by Hannibal. Plin. *Ne vir ab hoste cādat.* Ovid.

REM. 3. The preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Nec cor tige captus.* Ovid. *Collitur liniyērā turbā.* Id. *Pereat meis excisus Argivis.* Hor.

For the dative of the agent after verbs in the passive voice, and participles in *us*, see § 225, II. and III.

II. The *involuntary agent* of a verb in the passive voice, or of a neuter verb is put in the ablative without a preposition, as the cause, means, or instrument is, *Maximo dōlōre conficior.* Cic. *Frangi cupiditāte.* Id. *Æciā tālo jacea vector.* Virg.



**NOTE.** The involuntary agent is sometimes personified, and takes *a* or *ab* as, *A voluptatibus deseri.* Cic. *A naturâ datum homini vivendi cum iculum.* It *Vinci a voluptate.* Id. *Victus a labore.* Id.

§ 249. I. A noun denoting the means, by which the action of a verb is performed, is put in the ablative after verbs signifying to *affect* in any way, to *fill*, *furnish*, *load*, *array*, *equip*, *endow*, *adorn*, *reward*, *enrich*, and many others.

**REMARK 1.** This rule includes such verbs as *afficio*, *aspergo*, *conspergo*, *inspergo*, *repergo*, *compleo*, *expleo*, *impleo*, *oppleo*, *repleo*, *suppleo*, *cumulo*, *farcio*, *refercio*, *satio*, *exsatio*, *saturio*, *stipo*, *consitipo*, *obruo*, *onero*, *augeo*, *induo*, *vestio*, *armo*, *orno*, *circumdo*, *circumfundo*, *mactio*, *lucupletio*, *instruo*, *imbuo*, *dono*, *impertio*, *remuneror*, *honesto*, *honorifico*, etc.; as,

*Terrore impletur Africa*, Africa is filled with terror. Sil. *Instruere epulas mensas*, They furnished the tables with food. Ovid. *Ut ejus animum his opinionibus imbui*, That you should imbue his mind with these sentiments. Cic. *Naves onerant auro*, They load the ships with gold. Virg. *Cumulat altaria donis* He heaps the altars with gifts. Id. *Terra se gramine vestit*, The earth clothes itself with grass. Id. *Mollibus ornabat cornua sertis*. Id. *Multo cibo et potione completi*. Cic. *Libros puerilibus fabulis refercire*. Id. *Satiari delectatione non possum*. Id. *Homines saturati honoribus*. Id. *Senectus stipata studiis juvenitatis*. Id. *Me tanto honore honestas*. Plaut. *Equis Africum lucupletavit*. Colum. *Studium tuum nullâ me novâ voluptate affecit*. Cic. *Terram nox obruit umbris*. Lucr.

**REM. 2.** Several verbs denoting to fill, instead of the ablative, sometimes take a genitive. See § 220, 3.

**REM. 3.** The active verbs *induo*, *dono*, *impertio*, *aspergo*, *inspergo*, *circumdo*, and *circumfundo*, instead of the ablative of the thing with the accusative of the person, sometimes take an accusative of the thing, and a dative of the person; as, *Cui quum Drâânira tunicam induisset*. Cic. *Donare munera civitas*. In the earliest writers *dono*, like *condono*, has sometimes two accusatives or an accusative of the person with the infinitive.

II. A noun denoting that in accordance with which any thing is, or is done, is often put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Nostro more*, According to our custom. Cic. *Instâto suo Cæsar copiis suas eduxit*, According to his practice. Cæs. *Id factum consilio meo*,—by my advice. Ter. *Pacem fecit his conditionibus*,—on these conditions. Nep.

**NOTE.** The prepositions *de*, *ex*, *pro*, and *secundum* are often expressed with such nouns; as, *Næque est facturus quidquam nisi de meo consilio*. Cic. *Ex consuetudine aliquid facere*. Plin. Ep. *Decet quidquid agas, agere pro virilis*. Sic. *Secundum naturam vivere*. Id.

III The ablative denoting accompaniment, is usually joined with *cum*; as,

*Vagâmur Igentes cum conjûgibus et libëris*, Needy, we wander with our wives and children. Cic. *Sæpe admirari soleo cum hoc C. Lælio*. Id. *Julium cum his ad te litëris misi*. Id. *Ingressus est cum gladio*. Id. *Romum veni cum lepro*. Cum occasu solis copias educere,—as soon as the sun set.

**REMARK.** But *cum* is sometimes omitted before words denoting military and naval forces, when limited by an adjective; as, *Ad castra Cæsaris omnibus copiis contulerunt*. Cæs. *Inde toto exercitu præfectus*. Liv. *Eodem decem adibus C. Furius venit*. Liv. And sometimes in military language *cum* is omitted, when accompanying circumstances are mentioned, and not persons; as *Castra clamore inodum*.

§ 250. 1. A noun, adjective, or verb, may be followed by the ablative, denoting *in what respect* their signification is taken ; as,

*Pietate filius, consiliis parens*, In affection a son, in counsel a parent. Cic. *Reges nomine magis quam imperio*, Kings in name rather than in authority. Nep. *(Oppidum nomine Bibraz. Cæs.—Jure peritus*, Skilled in law. Cic. *Anxius animo*, Anxious in mind. Tac. *Pedibus aeger*, Lame in his feet. Sall. *Crine rader, niger ore*. Mart. *Fronte latus*. Tac. *Major natu*. Cic. *Prudentia non inferior, usu vero etiam superior*. Id. *Maximus natu*. Liv.—*Animo angī*, To be troubled in mind. Cic. *Contrémisco totā mente et omnibus artibus*, I am agitated in my whole mind and in every limb. Id. *Captus mente*, Affected in mind, i. e. deprived of reason. Id. *Altēro oculo captus*. Liv. *Ingēni laude florui*. Cic. *Pollere nobilitate*. Tac. *Animique et corpore torpet*. Hor.

REMARK. This may be called the *ablative of limitation*, and denotes the relation expressed in English by 'in respect of,' 'in regard to,' 'as to,' or 'in.'—Respecting the genitive of limitation after adjectives, see § 213;—after verbs, § 220, 1: and respecting the accusative of limitation, see § 231, R. 5; § 232, (3.); and § 234, II.

2. (1.) Adjectives of plenty or want are sometimes limited by the ablative ; as,

*Dōmus plena servis*, A house full of servants. Juv. *Dives agris*, Rich in land. Hor. *Fērax sēcūlum bonis artibus*. Plin.—*Inops verbis*, Deficient in words. Cic. *Orba fratribus*, Destitute of brothers. Ovid. *Viduum arboribus solum*. Colum. *Nudus agris*. Hor. For the genitive after adjectives of plenty and want, see § 213, R. 3-5.

(2.) Verbs signifying to abound, and to be destitute, are followed by the ablative ; as,

*Scātentem belluis pontum*, The sea abounding in monsters. Hor. *Urbs rēdundat militibus*, The city is full of soldiers. Auct. ad Her. *Villa abundat porco, hædo, agno, gallinā, lacte, cāseo, melle*. Cic.—*Virum qui pecūniā ēgeat*, A man who is in want of money. Id. *Cārere culpā*, To be free from fault. Id. *Mea adōlescentia intiget illōrum dōrā existimatiōe*. Id. *Abundat audaciā, consilio et ratiōne deficiunt*. Id.

REMARK 1. To this rule belong *abundo, exubēro, rēdundo, scāteo, affluo, circumfluo, diffluo, superfluo, suppedito, valeo, vigeo*;—*cāreo, ēgeo, indigeo, vāco, deficior, destitutor*, etc.

REM. 2. The *genitive*, instead of the ablative, sometimes follows certain verbs signifying to abound or to want. See § 220, 3.

REM. 3. To do any thing with a person or thing, is expressed in Latin by *fā ēre* with *de* ; as, *Quid de Tulliolā meā fiet?* Cic ; and more frequently by the simple ablative, or the dative ; as, *Quid hoc hōmine* or *huic hōmini faciātis?* What can you do with this man? Cic. *Nescit quid faciāt auro*,—what he shall do with the gold. Plaut. *Quid me fiat parvi pendis*, You care little what becomes of me. Ter.—*Suz* is occasionally used in the same manner ; as, *Mētum cēperunt quidnam se futurum esset*,—what would become of them. Liv.

§ 251. A noun denoting that of which any thing is deprived, or from which it is freed, removed, or separated, is often put in the ablative without a preposition.

This construction occurs after verbs signifying to *deprive, free, dāvar, drive away, remove, depart*, and others which imply separation.

NOTE. The principal verbs of this class are *arceo*, *pello*, *dépello*, *expello*, *abſco*, *interdico*, *dēfendo*, *dēturbo*, *dējicio*, *ējicio*, *abſterreo*, *dēterreo*, *mōreo*, *amōreo*, *dēmōreo*, *rēmōreo*, *sēcerno*, *prōhibeo*, *sēpāro*, *exclūdo*, *interclūdo*, *ābeo*, *exeo*, *cēdo*, *dēcēdo*, *discēdo*, *dēsisto*, *dēsisto*, *ēvādo*, *abſtīneo*, *spōlio*, *privo*, *orbo*, *libēro*, *expēdio*, *lāzo*, *nādo*, *solvo*, *exsolvo*, *exōnēro*, *lēvo*, *purgo*, to which may be added the adjectives *liber*, *imminis*, *pūrus*, *vācuus*, and *aliēnus*; as,

*Nūtantur arbōres fōlīs*, The trees are stripped of leaves. Plin. *Hoc me libēra mēta*, Free me from this fear. Ter. *Tūne eam philōsophiam sēquere, quæ spōliat mē iudicio, privat approbationē, orbat sensibus?* Cic. *Solvit se Teucris luctu*. Virg. *Te illis sēdibus arcēbit*. Cic. Q. *Varium pellere possessionibus cōnatus est*. Id. *Omnes tribu rēmōti*. Liv. *Lēvare se sere aliēno*. Cic. *Me lēves chōri sēcernunt pōpulo*. Hor. *Animus omni liber cūrā et angore*. Cic. *Utrūque hōmīne aliēnissimū*. Id. When *aliēnus* signifies 'averse' or 'hostile to,' it takes the ablative with *ab*, or rarely the dative; as, *Id dicit, quod illi causae maxime est aliēnum*. Id. In the sense of 'unsuited,' it may also be joined with the genitive; as, *Quis aliēnum putet ejus esse dignitatis?* Id.—*Alius* too, in analogy with adjectives and verbs of separation, sometimes takes an ablative; as, *Nēve pates alium sapiente bonoque beatum*. Hor.; but this may also be referred to the ablative after comparatives. Cf. § 256, R. 14.

REMARK 1. Most verbs of depriving and separating are more or less frequently followed by *ab*, *de*, or *ex*, with the ablative of the thing, and always by *ab* with the ablative of the person; as, *Tu Jūpter, hunc a tuis arīs arcēbis*. Cic. *Præsidium ex arce pēpulerunt*. Nep. *Aquam de agro pellere*. Plin. *Ex ingrātā civitate cedere*. Cic. *Arcem ab incendio libēravit*. Id. *Solvere bellum ex cōtōnis*. Auct. ad Her.—*Sedes rēmōtas* a Germanis. Cæs. *Se ab Etruscis sēcernere*. Liv.

REM. 2. *Arceo*, in the poets, sometimes takes the dative, see § 224, R. 2., and sometimes an infinitive; as, *Plāgamque sedere cēdendo arcēbat*. Ovid.—*Prōhibeo* and *dēfendo* take either the accusative of the person or thing to be defended, with the ablative of the thing to be warded off—or the reverse—*aliquem* or *aliquid a pēriculo*, or *pēriculum ab aliquo*. They are also sometimes construed with the dative, see § 224, R. 2., and sometimes with infinitive or subjunctive clauses. *Prōhibeo* has rarely two accusatives; as, *Id te Jūpter prōhibessit*. Plaut.; or poetically the accusative and genitive; as, *Cyp̄ta prōhibere Pamos æquillæ*. Sil.—*Interdico* takes the person either in the accusative or the dative, and the thing in the ablative, *aliquem* or *alicui* aliquā re; as, *Quibus quum æquā et igni interdixissent*. Cæs.—Instead of the ablative, a subjunctive clause with *ne*, and more rarely with *ut*, sometimes follows *interdico*.—*Absum*, in like manner, takes the ablative with *ab*, and sometimes the dative; as, *Curtas nescio quid semper abest rei*. Hor. Cf. § 224, R. 1.—*Abſco* takes sometimes an ablative, and sometimes an accusative of the thing renounced; as, *Abſcicare se magistrātū*. Cic. *Abſcicare magistrātum*. Sall. In Plautus, *circumſco*, to cheat, takes the ablative of the thing. *Interclūdo*, instead of an ablative of the thing with an accusative of the person, sometimes takes an accusative of the thing and a dative of the person; as, *Itinērum angustia multitudinū fugam intercluserant*. Cæs.: and, instead of the ablative of the thing, a subjunctive clause with *quominus* occurs: *Interclūdor dōlōre, quominus ad ista p̄ra scribam*. Cic.

REM. 3. Verbs which signify to *distinguish*, to *differ*, and to *disagree*, are generally construed with *ab*, but sometimes, especially in the poets, with the ablative alone.

NOTE. Verbs signifying to distinguish, etc., are *distinguo*, *discerno*, *sēcerno*, *diff̄erō*, *discr̄epo*, *dis̄sideo*, *dis̄to*, *dissentio*, *discordo*, *abhorreo*, *aliēno*, and *abaliēno*.—*Dissentio*, *dis̄sideo*, *discr̄epo*, and *discordo* are construed also with *cum*.—The verbs which signify to *differ* are sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Dis̄tat infido scurræ amicus*. Hor., and in like manner the adjective *diversus*, as, *Nihil est tam Lysiae diversum, quam Iocratēs*. Quint.

## ABLATIVE OF PRICE.

§ 252. The *price* or *value* of a thing is put in the ablative, when it is a definite sum, or is expressed by a substantive; as,

*Quum te trècentis talentis regi Cotto vendidisses*, When you had sold yourself to king Cottus for three hundred talents. Cic. *Vendidit hic auro patriam*, This one sold his country for gold. Virg. *Cibus uno asse vènalis*. Plin. *Constitit quadrìngentis millibus*. Varr. *Dénis in diem assibus ànimum et corpus (militum) astimàri*. Tac. *Lèvi mómènto astimàre*. Cæs. *Istuc verbum vile est viginti milis*. Plaut. *Asse cårum est*. Sen. Ep.

REMARK 1. The verbs which take an ablative of price or value are (1) *astimo, fisco, facio, fio, habeo, pendo, puto, deputo, tuzo*: (2) *emo, mercor, vendo, do, veneo, sto, consto, presto, conduco, loco, valeo, luo*, and *liceo*.—To these must be added others, which express some act or enjoyment for which a certain price is paid; as, *Lavor quadrante*. Trīginta millibus *Cælius habuit*. Cic. *Vix drachmis est obornatus decem*. Ter. *Dòceo talento*, etc. So *esse* in the sense 'to be worth'; as, *Sextante sal in Italià erat*.

REM. 2. Respecting the genitive of price or value, when expressed in a *general* or *indefinite* manner, see § 214.

REM. 3. The price of a thing, contrary to the general rule, is often expressed indefinitely by a neuter adjective; as, *magno, permagno, parvo, tantulo, plure, minimo, plurimo, vili, viliori, vilissimo, nimio*, etc.; as, *Plure venit*. Cic. *Conducat non magno domum*. Id. These adjectives refer to some noun understood, as *pretio, ære*, and the like, which are sometimes expressed; as, *Parvo pretio ea vendidisse*. Cic.—The adverbs *bene, pulchre, recte, male, care*, etc., sometimes take the place of the genitive or ablative of price; as, *Bene emere; recte vendere; optime vendere*, etc.

REM. 4. Varro has used *valeo* with the accusative; as, *Denarii dicti, quod denos arii valebant*.

REM. 5. *Muto* and its compounds, *commuto* and *permuto*, are commonly construed like verbs of selling, the thing parted with being put in the accusative, and the thing received in exchange for it, in the ablative; as, *Chæoniam glaudem pingui mutavit aristâ*. Virg. But these cases are often reversed, so that the thing received is put in the accusative and the thing given for it in the ablative; as, *Cur velle permutem Sabina divitias operosiores?* Why should I exchange my Sabine valley for more wearisome riches? Hor.—Sometimes in this construction *cum* is joined with the ablative.

## ABLATIVE OF TIME.

§ 253. A noun denoting the *time at* or *within* which any thing is said to be, or to be done, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Die quinto decessit*, He died on the fifth day. Nep. *Hoc tempore*, At this time. Cic. *Tertiâ vigiliâ eruptionem fecerunt*, They made a sally at the third watch. Cæs. *Ut hieme naviges*, That you should sail in the winter. Cic. *Proximo triennio omnes gentes subegit*. Nep. *Agamemnon cum universâ Græciâ vix decem annis unam cepit urbem*. Nep.

NOTE 1. The English expression 'by day' is rendered in Latin either by *interdiu* or *die*; 'by night,' by *noctu* or *nocte*; and 'in the evening,' by *vespere* or *vesperi*; see § 82, Exc. 5, (a.) *Ludis* is used for *in tempore ludorum*; and *Saturnâlibus, Lutinis, gladiatõribus*, for *ludis Saturnâlibus*, etc. Other nouns not witherly expressing time are used in that sense in the ablative either with or without *in*, as *initio, principio, adventu* and *discessu altæjus, comitiis, amicitia bello, pace*, etc.; or *in initio*, etc. But *bello* is more common without *in*, if it is

joined with an adjective or a genitive; as, *Bello Punico secundo, bello Latino* rum; and so, also, *pugnâ Cunnensi*. So we say in *pueritiâ*, but omit in with an adjective; as, *extrēmâ pueritiâ*. *In* is very rarely used with nouns expressing a certain space of time; as, *annus, dies, hōra*, etc., for the purpose of denoting the time of an event. *In tempore* signifies either 'in distress,' or 'in time,' i. e. 'at the right time'; but in both cases *tempore* alone is used, and '*empore*' in the sense of 'early' has even become an adverb, an earlier form of which was *tempōri* or *tempēri*, whose comparative is *tempērius*.

REMARK 1. When a period is marked by its distance before or after another fixed time, it may be expressed by *ante* or *post* with either the accusative or the ablative.—(a.) The preposition is regularly placed before the accusative, but after the ablative. If an adjective is used, the preposition is often placed between the adjective and the noun. In this connection the ordinal as well as the cardinal numbers may be used. Hence the English phrase 'after three years,' or 'three years after,' may be expressed in these eight ways; *post tres annos, tribus annis post; post tertium annum, tertio anno post; tres post annos, tribus post annis; tertium post annum, tertio post anno*.

(b.) When *ante* or *post* stands last, an accusative may be added to denote the time before or after which any thing took place; as, *Multis annis post decemviro*. Cic. *Sci Consul factus est annis post Rōmam conditam trecentis duodēnāginta*.

NOTE 2. *Post* and *ante* sometimes precede the ablatives, as *ante annis o to; post paucis diebus*; and also before such ablatives as are used adverbially, as *post aliquanto; ante paulo*.

NOTE 3. *Quom* and a verb are sometimes added to *post* and *ante* in all the forms above specified; e. g. *tribus annis postquam vēnerat; post tres annos quam vēnerat; tertio anno postquam vēnerat; post annum tertium quam vēnerat*, etc.; all of which expressions signify 'three years after he had come.' Sometimes *post* is omitted; as, *tertio anno quam vēnerat*.

NOTE 4. Instead of *postquam*, 'after,' we may use *ex quo, quum*, or a relative agreeing with the preceding ablative; as, *Ipse octo diebus, quibus has līteras dābam, cum Lēpti cōpias me conjungam*; i. e. in eight days after the date of this letter. Planc. in Cic. Fam. *Mors Sex. Rosci quadriduo, quo is occisus est, Chrīsogōno nuntiātur*,—four days after he had been killed. Cic. *Quem triduo, quum has dābam līteras, exspectābam*,—three days after the date of this letter. Planc. in Cic. In such cases *in* is sometimes joined with the ablative; as, *In diebus paucis, quibus hæc acta sunt, moritur*. Ter.

REM. 2. The length of time before the present moment may be expressed by *abhinc* with the accusative, and, less frequently, the ablative; as, *Questor fuisti abhinc annos quatuordecim*. Cic. *Cōmītiis jam abhinc triginta diebus habitis*. Id. The same is also expressed by *ante* with the pronoun *hic*; as, *ante hos sex menses maledixisti mihi*,—six months ago. Phæd. *Ante* is sometimes used instead of *abhinc*: and the length of time before is sometimes expressed by the ablative joined with *hic* or *ille*; as, *Paucis his diebus, or paucis illis diebus*,—a few days ago.

REM. 3. The time at which any thing is done, is sometimes expressed by the reuter accusative *id*, with a genitive; as, *Vēnit id tempōris*. Cic. So with a preposition; *Ad id diēi*. Gell. See § 212, R. 3.

REM. 4. (a.) The time at or within which any thing is done, is sometimes, with personal subjects, expressed by *de*, with the ablative; as, *De tertiâ vigiliâ ad hostes contendit*,—in the third watch. Cæs. *Ut jugulent hōmīnes surgunt de nocte lītrōnes*. Hor. So, also, with *sub*; as, *Ne sub ipsâ profectiōe milites optatum irrupērent*,—at the very time of his departure. Cæs. *Sub adventu Romanorum*. While the Romans were arriving. Id.

(b.) The time within which any thing occurs, is also sometimes expressed by *infra* with the accusative; as, *Dimidiam partem nātūm subegit intra viginti dies*. Plaut. *Intra decimum diem, quam Phœrus vēnerat*. In less than ten days after... Liv

REM. 5. The time within which a thing happens, is often expressed by the ablative with *in*; especially (a) in connection with numerals; as, *Bis in die satūrum fieri*; *viā ter in anno nuntium audire*; and (b), as in the use of *intra*, to denote that the event happened before the time specified had fully expired.

REM. 6. Instead of *in pueritiā, adōlescentiā, iuventūte, senectūte*, etc., in stating the age at which a person performed any action, the concretes *puer, adōlescens, iuvenis, senex*, etc., are commonly joined to the verb; as, *Ch. Pompeius, adōlescens se et patrē consilio servavit*.—So, also, adjectives ending in *enarius* are sometimes used in stating the number of years a person has lived; as, *Cicero sexagēnarius*.

For the ablative denoting duration of time, see § 236.

## ABLATIVE OF PLACE.

§ 254. The name of a town *in which* any thing is said to be, or to be done, if of the third declension or plural number, is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Alexander Bābylōne est mortuus*, Alexander died at Babylon. Cic. *Interritū multum*—*Thēbis nutritus an Argis*,—whether brought up at Thebes or at Argos. Hor. *Nātus Tibūre vel Gābiis*. Id.

REMARK 1. 'In the country' is expressed by *rūre*, or more commonly by *rūri*, without a preposition; as, *Pater filiū rūri hābitāre iussit*. Cic. With an adjective only *rūre* is used; as, *Interdūm nūgāris rūre patrerno*. Hor. Cf. § 221, N.

REM. 2. (a.) The preposition *in* is sometimes expressed with names of towns; as, *In Philippis quidam nunciavit*. Suet.

(b.) Names of towns of the first and second declension, and singular number, and also *dōmus* and *hāmus*, are in like manner sometimes put in the ablative without *in*. See § 221, R. 2 and R. 3.—So, also, *terrā marique*, by land and by sea. *In* is also frequently omitted with *lōco* and *lōcis*, especially when joined with an adjective and having the meaning of 'occasion'; as, *Hoc lōco, multis lōcis*, etc.—*Libro* joined with an adjective, as *hoc, primo*, etc., is used without *in* when the whole book is meant, and with *in* when only a portion is referred to. An ablative of place joined with *tōto, tōtā, tōtis*, is generally used without *in*; as, *Urbe tōtā gemitus fit*. Cic. *Tōtā Asiā vagātur*. Id. *Tōto mari*. Id. But in such cases *in* is sometimes used. So *cunctā Asiā*. Liv.

REM. 3. Before the names of countries, of nations used for those of countries, and of all other places in which any thing is said to be or to be done, except those of towns, and excepting also the phrases specified in the first and second remarks, the preposition *in* is commonly used; as, *Iphicrātes in Thrāciā vixit*, *Chares in Sigō*. Nep. *Rūre ego viventem, tu dicis in urbe beatum*. Hor. *Asio hoc fieri in Græciā*. Plaut. *In Bactriānis Sogdiānisque urbes condidit*. Lucius in urbe fuit. Virg. But it is sometimes omitted by writers of every class and period; as, *Milites stativis castris habebat*. Sall. *Magnis in ludibus fuit tōtā Græciā*. Nep. *Pōpuli sensus maxime theātro et spectāculis perspectus est*. Cic. *Pompeius se oppido tenet*. Id. In the poets and later prose writers this omission is of very frequent occurrence not only with names of towns but with ablatives of all nouns answering to the question, where? as, *Nārtia iuppe solens*. Ovid. *Ibam forte Viā Sacrā*. Hor. *Silvisque agrisque viscae corpōra fixa iacent*. Ovid. *Mēdio alveo concursus est*. Liv.—*Fōris*, out at the door, abroad, is properly an ablative of place; as, *Fōris cenat*. Cic. Cf. § 237, R. 5, (c.)

§ 255. 1. After verbs expressing or implying motion, the name of a town *whence* the motion proceeds, is put in the ablative, without a preposition; as,

Brundisio *præfecti sumus*, We departed from Brundisium. Cic. *Dionysius Syracusis expulsum Corinthi pueros docebat*. Id. *Demetrius Tarquinius Corintho fugit*. Id. *Accēpi tuas lītēras dātās Plācentiā*. Id. *Intērim Rōmē per lītēras certior fit*; scil. *dātās* or *missas*. Sall. J. 82. So, also, after a verbal noun; as, *Narbōne rēditus*. Cic.

REMARK 1. The ablatives *dōmo*, *hūmo*, and *rūre* or *rūri*, are used like names of towns, to denote the place whence motion proceeds; as,

*Dōmo præfectus*, Having set out from home. Nep. *Surgit hūmo jūvenis*, The youth rises from the ground. Ovid. *Rūre huc advēnit*. Ter. *Si rūri veniet*. Id. Virgil uses *domo* with *unde*; as, *Qui gēnus? unde d'mo?* and Livy instead of *dōmo abesse*, has *esse ab dōmo*. With an adjective, *rūre*, and not *rūri*, must be used.

REM. 2. With names of towns and *dōmus* and *hūmus*, when answering the question 'whence?' *ab*, *ex*, or *de*, is sometimes used; as, *Ab Alexandriā præfectus*. Cic. *Ex dōmo*. Id. *De vitifera vēnisse Viennā*. Mart. *Ab hūmo*. Virg.

REM. 3. (a.) With other names of places whence motion proceeds, *ab*, *ex*, or *de*, is commonly expressed; as, *Me a portu præmisit*. Plaut. *Ex Asiā trans in Eurōpam*. Curt. *Ex castris præficiuntur*. Cæs. De Pomptino, scil. prædio. Cic.—So, also, before names of nations used for those of countries; as, *Ex Mēdis ad adversariōrum hibernacula pervēnit*. Nep.

(b.) But the preposition is sometimes omitted; as, *Litēras Mācedoniā allātās*. Liv. *Classis Cypro advēnit*. Curt. *Cessissent loco*. Liv. *Ni cte vicis et castellis proximis subventum foret*. Id. *Ite sacris, præpērate sacris, laurumque capillis pōnite*. Ovid. *Finibus omnes præsiluere suas*. Virg. *Advolvunt ingentes montibus ornos*. Id. This omission of the preposition is most common in the poets and later prose writers.

2. The place *by*, *through*, or *over* which, after verbs of motion, commonly follows *per*; but frequently also it is put in the ablative without a preposition; as,

*Per Thēbas iter fēcit*. Nep. *Exercitum vādo transducit*. Cæs. *His pontibus pabulātum mittēbat*. Id. *Tribūni milītum portā Collinā urbem intrāvere sub signis, mediāque urbe agmine in Aventinum pergunt*. Liv. *Lēgiōnes Penninis Cottianisque Alpibus, pars monte Graio, traducuntur*. Tac. *Equites viā breviorē præmisi*. Cic.

## ABLATIVE AFTER COMPARATIVES.

§ 256. 1. When two objects are compared by means of the comparative degree, a conjunction, as *quam*, *atque*, etc., is sometimes expressed, and sometimes omitted.

2. The comparative degree, when *quam* is omitted, is followed by the ablative of that with which the comparison is made; as,

*Nihil est virtute formosius*, Nothing is more beautiful than virtue. Cic. *Quis C. Lælio cōmior?* Who is more courteous than C. Lælius? Id.

REMARK 1. The person or thing with which the subject of a proposition is compared, is usually put in the ablative; as,

*Sidēre pulchrior ille est, tu levior cortice*. Hor. *Vilius argentum est auro, virutibus aurum*. Id. *Tullius Hostilius ferocior Rōmulo fuit*. Liv. *Lacrima nihil citius arescit*. Cic. *Quid magis est durum saxo, quid mollius undā?* Ovid. *Hoc nemo fuit mitius inepius*. Ter. *Albanum, Mæcenas, sive Falerum te magis apocēstis delectat*. Hor.

REM. 2. An object with which a person or thing addressed is compared, is also put in the ablative; as, *O fons Bandusiae splendidior vitro!* Hor.

REM. 3. Sometimes the person or thing with which the subject of a proposition is compared, instead of following it in the ablative, is connected with it by *quam*, and it is then put in the same case as the subject, whether in the nominative or the accusative; as, *Oratio quam hâbitus fuit miserabilior.* Cic. *Afirmo nullam esse laudem ampliorē quam eam.* Id. So, also, when an ablative in the case absolute takes the place of the subject; as, *Eodem (scil. dâce, plura, quam grēgario milite, tolerante.* Tac.

REM. 4. If the person or thing which is compared with any object is neither the subject of the sentence nor the person addressed, *quam* is commonly used, and the object which follows it is then put in the nominative with *sum*, and sometimes in an oblique case to agree with the object with which it is compared; as, *Meliorē, quam ego sum, suppono tibi.* Plant. *Ego hominem caeli-diorē vidi nēntem quam Phormionem.* Ter. *Adventus Iustium fuit agria, quam urbi terribilior.* Liv. *Omnes fontes aestate, quam hieme, sunt gelidiores.* Plin. *Thēmistoclis nomen, quam Sōlonis, est illustrius.* Cic.—The following example illustrates both the preceding constructions:—*Ut tibi multo majori, quam Africānus fuit, me non multo minorem quam Lælium facile et in repubblicā et in amicitia adiunctum esse patiāre.* Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) The person or thing with which the object of an active verb is compared, though usually connected with it by *quam*, (R. 4.) is sometimes put in the ablative, especially in the poets, and frequently also even in prose, if the object is a pronoun, particularly a relative pronoun; as, *Attalo, quo graviorē ininācum non habui, sororem dedit.* He gave his sister to Attalus, than whom, etc. Curt. *Hoc nihil grātius facere pōtes.* Cic. *Causam enim suscepisti antiquiorē mēmōriā tuā.* Id. *Exequi mōnumentum sere pērennius.* Hor. *Cur olivum sanguine viperino cautius vitat?* Id. *Quid prius dicam sōlitis pārentis laudibus?* Id. *Majora viribus aules.* Virg. *Nullam sacrā vite prius severis arborem.* Hor. *Nullus his nullem ludos spectasse.* Id. § 178, 3.

(b.) The ablative instead of *quam* is never used with any other oblique case except the accusative, but *quam* is sometimes found, even where the ablative might have been used; as, *Melior tutiorque est certa pax quam speratu victōria.* Liv. After *quam*, if the verb cannot be supplied from the preceding sentence, *est, fuit*, etc., must be added; as, *Hec verba sunt M. Varrōnis, quam fuit Claudius, doctoris.* Gell. *Drusum Germanicum minorem natu, quam ipse erat, frātre amisit.* Sen.

REM. 6. (a.) *Minus, plus, and amplius* with numerals, and with other words denoting a certain measure or a certain portion of a thing, are used either with or without *quam*, generally as indeclinable words, without influence upon the construction, but merely to modify the number; as, *Non plus quam quatuor millia effugerunt, not effugit.* Liv. *Pictōres antiqui non sunt usi plus quam quatuor coloribus, not pluribus.* Cic.

(b.) *Quam* is frequently omitted with all cases; as, *Minus duo millia hominum ex tanto exercitu effugerunt.* Liv. *Milites Rōmāni sepe plus dimidiati mensis cibarii ferebant.* Cic. *Quam plus annum aeger fuisset.* Liv. *Sedecim non amplius eo anno legionibus defensum imperium est.* Id.

(c.) These comparatives, as in the preceding example, are sometimes inserted between the numeral and its substantive, and sometimes, when joined with a negative, they follow both, as a sort of apposition; as, *Quinque millia armatorum, non amplius, relictum erat praesidium,*—a garrison of five thousand soldiers, not more. Liv. So, also, *longius*: *Cæsar certior est factus, minus Gallorum copias non longius millia passuum octo ab ibernis suis abfuisse.* Cæs. See § 236.

(d.) The ablative is sometimes used with these as with other comparatives; as, *Dies triginta aut plus eo in navi fui.* Ter. *Triennio amplius.* Cic. *Hora amplius moribantur.* Id. *Ne longius triduo ab castris absit.* Cæs. *Apud Suviros non longius anno remanere uno in loco incolenda caesa facit.* Id. *Quam multo non amplius duobus millibus habuisset.* Sall.



REM. 7. *Quam* is in like manner sometimes omitted without a change of case, after *māior*, *mīnor*, and some other comparatives; as, *Obsides ne minores octōnum dēnum annōrum neu māiores quīnum quādrāgēnum,...* of not less than eighteen, nor more than forty-five years of age. Liv. *Ex urbēno exercitū qui minores quīnque et trīginta annis erant, in nāres impositi sunt.* The genitive and ablative, in these and similar examples, are to be referred to § 211, R. 6. *Longius ab urbe mille passuum.* Liv. *Annos nātus māgis quādrāginta.* Cic.

REM. 8. When the second member of a comparison is an infinitive or a clause, *quam* is always expressed; as, *Nihil est in dicendo mājus quam ut fāveat sūtrīci auditor.* Cic.

REM. 9. Certain nouns, participles, and adjectives,—as *opīnōne*, *spe*, *expectatiōne*, *fide*,—*dicto*, *sōlto*,—*æquo*, *credīto*, *necessario*, *vēro*, and *justo*,—are used in a peculiar manner in the ablative after comparatives; as, *Opīnōne celerius ventūrus esse dicitur*,—sooner than is expected. Cæs. *Dicto citius tāmēda aquōra plūcat*,—quicker than the word was spoken. Virg. *Injūrias grāvius sequo habēre.* Sall.

(a.) These ablatives supply the place of a clause; thus, *grāvius æquo* is equivalent to *grāvius quam quod æquum est*. They are often omitted; as, *Tībē mastocles libērius vivēbat*, scil. *æquo*. Nep. In such cases, the comparative may be translated by the positive degree, with *too*, *quite*, or *rather*, as in the above example—‘He lived too freely,’ or ‘rather freely.’ *Voluptas quum māior est atque longior, omne animi lūmen exstinguit*,—when it is too great, and of too long continuance. Cic. *So tristior*, scil. *sōlto*, rather sad.

(b.) The English word ‘still,’ joined with comparatives, is expressed by *etiā* or *vel*, and only in later prose writers by *adhuc*; as, *Ut in corpōribus magis dissimilitūdines sunt, sic in animis existunt māiores etiā varietates.* Cic.

REM. 10. (a.) With *infērior*, the dative is sometimes used, instead of the ablative; as, *Vir nullā arte cuiquam infērior.* Sall. The ablative is also found; as, *Ut hūmānos cāsus virtūte infēriōres pūtes.* Cic. But usually *infērior* is followed by *quam*; as, *Timōtheus bellī laude non infērior fuit*, quāin pāter. Cic. *Gratiā non infērior*, quā qui umquam fuerunt amplissimi. Id.

(b.) *Qualis*, ‘such as,’ with a comparative, occurs poetically instead of the relative pronoun in the ablative; as, *Nardo pērnunctum, quāle non perfectius meo laborārint mānus*; instead of *quo*. Hor. Epod. 5, 59. *Animes quāles nēque candidiōres terra tulit*; for *quibus*. Id. Sat. 1, 5, 41.

REM. 11. *Quam pro* is used after comparatives, to express disproportion; as, *Prælium atrocius quam pro nūmēro pugnantium*, The battle was more severe than was proportionate to the number of the combatants. Liv. *Minor*, quā pro tūmultu, cædes. Tac.

REM. 12. When two adjectives or adverbs are compared with each other, both are put in the comparative; as, *Triumphus clārior quā grātior*, A triumph more famous than acceptable. Liv. *Fortius quā felicius bellum gessērunt*. So, also, when the comparative is formed by means of *māgis*; as, *Māgis audacter quā purate ad dicendum veniebat.* Cic.—Tacitus uses the positive in one part of the proposition; as, *Spēciem excelste glōriæ vēmementius quā cante pētibat*; or even in both; as, *Clāris mājōribus quā vētustis*.

REM. 13. (a.) *Pōtius* and *māgis* are sometimes joined pleonastically with *mallo* and *præstāre*, and also with comparatives; as, *Ab omnibus se disertos pōtius quā abs te defēnsos esse malunt.* Cic. *Qui māgis vire vincere quā diu impārare mālūt.* Liv. *Ut emōri pōtius quā servire præstāret.* Cic. *Mihi quovis fūga pōtius quā ulla prōvincia esset optātor.* Id. *Quis māgis queat esse beatior?* Virg.

(b.) So, also, the prepositions *præ*, *ante*, *præter*, and *supra*, are sometimes used with a comparative; as, *Unus præ cētēris fortior exurgit*, Apul. *Scellere ante alios inmanior omnes.* Virg. They also occur with a superlative; as, *Ante alios carissimus.* Nep. As these prepositions, when joined with the positive, denote comparison, they seem in such examples to be redundant. See § 127.

REM. 14. *Alius* is sometimes in poetry treated as a comparative, and construed with the ablative instead of *atque* with the nominative or accusative; as, *Nēve putes alium sapiente bonoque beatum*. Hor. *Alius Lycopodium*. I.—But compare § 251, N.

REM. 15. By the poets *ac* and *atque* are sometimes used instead of *quam* after comparatives; as, *Quanto constantior idem in vitiis, tanto levius miser ac prior ille, qui*, etc. Hor. *Arctius atque hederā procera adstringitur ilex*. Id.

REM. 16. The degree of difference between objects compared is expressed by the ablative:—

(1.) Of substantives; as, *Minor uno mense*, Younger by one month. Hor. *Sesquipede quam tu longior*, Taller than you by a foot and a half. Plaut. *Hibernia dimidio minor quam Britannia*. Cæs. *Dimidio minoris constabit*, It will cost less by half. Cic. *Quam molestum est uno digito plus habere!*....to have one finger more, i. e. than we have, to have six fingers. Id.—but the expression is ambiguous, as it might mean ‘to have more than one finger.’ *Superal capite et cervicibus altis*. Virg.

(2.) Of neuter adjectives of quantity and neuter pronouns, in the singular number. Such are *tanto*, *quanto*, *quo*, *eo*, *hoc*, *multo*, *parvo*, *paulo*, *nimio*, *aliquanto*, *tantulo*, *altero tanto* (twice as much); as, *Multo doctior es pater*, Thou art (by) much more learned than thy father. The relative and demonstrative words, *quanto*—*tanto*, *quo*—*eo*, or *quo*—*hoc*, signifying ‘by how much—by so much,’ are often to be translated by an emphatic *the*; as, *Quanto sumus superiores, tanto nos submissius geramus*, The more eminent we are, the more humbly let us conduct ourselves: lit. by how much—by so much—. Cic. *Eo gravior est dolor, quo culpa est major*. Id. But the relative word generally precedes the demonstrative; as, *Quo difficilius, hoc praelarius*. Id. Poetically, also, *quam magis—tum magis* are used instead of *quanto magis—tanto magis*. Virg. *Æn.* 7, 787: and *quam magis—tanto magis*. Lucr. 6, 459.—*Iter multo facilius*,—much easier. Cæs. *Parvo brevius*, A little shorter. Plin. *Eo magis*, The more. Cic. *Ecce minus*. Id. *Istoc magis copulabis*, So much the more. Plaut. *Via altero tanto longior*,—as long again. Nep. *Multo id maximum fuit*. Liv.

(3.) The ablative of degree is joined not only with comparatives but with verbs which contain the idea of comparison; as, *melio, præsto, supero, excello, antecello, antecedo*, and others compounded with *ante*; and also with *ante* and *post*, in the sense of ‘earlier’ and ‘later’; as, *Multo præstat*. Sall. *Post paulo*, A little after. Id. *Multo ante lucis adventum*, Long before—. Id. *Multis partibus* is equivalent to *multo*; as, *Número multis partibus esset inferior*. Cæs.

NOTE. The accusatives *multum*, *tantum*, *quantum*, and *aliquantum*, are sometimes used instead of the corresponding ablatives; as, *Aliquantum est ad rem avidior*. Ter. *Multum improbiore sunt*. Plaut. *Quantum domo inferior*, tantum gloriæ superior evasis. Val. Max. Cf. § 232, (3).—So *longe*, ‘far,’ is frequently used for *multo*; as, *Longe melior*. Virg. *Longe et multum antecellere*. Cic. *So, pars pedis sequi major*,—longer by one half. Id.

## ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

§ 257. A noun and a participle are put in the ablative, called *absolute*, to denote the time, cause, means, or concomitant of an action, or the condition on which it depends; as,

*Pythagoras*, Tarquinio regnante, in Italiam venit, Pythagoras came into Italy, in the reign of Tarquin. Cic. *Lupus*, stimulante fame, captus ovile, Hunger inciting, the wolf seeks the fold. Ovid. *Miles*, pectore e longinquitibus vicis aducto, extremam famem sustentabant. Cæs. *Hac oratione hausta, concilium dimisit*. Id. *Galli*, re cognita, obsidionem relinquunt. Id. *Virtute excepta, nihil inactum præstabitur*. Cic.

NOTE 1. The Latin ablative absolute may be expressed in English by a similar construction, but it is commonly better to translate it by a clause connected by *when*, *since*, *while*, *although*, *after*, *as*, etc., or by a verbal substantive: *as, Te adjuvante*, With thy assistance. *Non—nisi te adjuvante*, Only with thy assistance, or not without thy assistance. *Te non adjuvante*, Without thy assistance. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (c.)

REMARK 1. This construction is an abridged form of expression, equivalent to a dependent clause connected by *quum*, *si*, *etsi*, *quamquam*, *quavis*, etc.

Thus, for *Tarquinius regnante*, the expression *dum Tarquinius regnabat* might be used; for *hac oratione habita*;—*quum hanc orationem habuisset*, or *quum hac oratio habita esset*,—*concilium dimisit*. The ablative absolute may always be resolved into a proposition, by making the noun or pronoun the subject, and the participle the predicate.

REM. 2. This construction is common only with present and perfect participles. Instances of its use with participles in *rus* and *dus* are comparatively rare; as,

*Cæsare venturo, Phosphore, redde diem*. Mart. *Irupturis tam infestis nationibus*. Liv. *Quum concio plausum, meo nomine recitando, dedisset*,—when my name was pronounced. Cic. *Quum immolanda Iphigenia tristis Calchas esset*. Id. *Quis est enim, qui, nullis officii præceptis trūdendis, philosophum se audeat dicere*—without propounding any rules of duty. Cic. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (c.) and R. 9.

REM. 3. (a.) A noun is put in the ablative absolute, only when it denotes a different person or thing from any in the leading clause. Cf. § 274, 3, (a.)

(b.) Yet a few examples occur of a deviation from this principle, especially with a substantive pronoun referring to some word in the leading clause; as, *Se audiente, scribit Thucydides*. Cic. *Legio ex castris Varronis, adstante et inspectante ipso, signa sustulit*. Cæs. *Me duce, ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni*. Ovid. *So M. Porcius Cato, vivo quoque Scipione, allatrare ejus magnitudinem solitus erat*. Liv.

NOTE 2. Two participles must not be put together in the ablative absolute agreeing with the same noun. Thus, we may say *Porcia sæpe maritum cogitantem invenerat*, but not, *Porcia marito cogitante invento*.

NOTE 3. Instead of the ablative absolute denoting a cause, an accusative with *ob* or *propter* occurs in Livy and in later writers; as, *Cinõpum concidère Spartani*, ob sepulcrum illic rectorem nãris Cinõpum. Tac. *Decemviri libros Sibyllinos inspicere jussi sunt* propter terribiles homines novus prædigiis. Liv.

REM. 4. The ablative absolute serves to mark the time of an action, by reference to that of another action. If the present participle is used, the time of the action expressed by the participle, is the same as that of the principal verb. The perfect participle and the future in *rus*, denote respectively an action as prior or subsequent to that expressed by the principal verb.

Thus in the preceding examples—*Pythagoras*, *Tarquinius regnante*, in *Italiã venit*, Pythagoras came into Italy during the reign of Tarquinius. *Galli, re cognita, obsequium relinquunt*, The Gauls, having learned the fact, abandon the siege. *So, Rex apium non nisi migraturo examine foras procedit*, The king-bees does not go abroad, except when a swarm is about to emigrate. Plin.

NOTE 4. *Non prius quam, non nisi, ut, velut, and tamquam*, s.e sometimes joined with the participle; as, *Tiberius excessum Augusti non prius p̄lām fēcīt, quam Agrippā iuvēne int̄erempto*, —not until. Suet. *Gallī lēti, ut explorāta victriciā, ad castra Rōmānōrum p̄gunt*. Cæs. *Antiochus, tamquam non transitūris in Asiam Rōmānis*, etc. Liv.

REM. 5. (a.) The construction of the ablative absolute with the perfect passive participle, arises frequently from the want of a participle of that tense in the active voice.

Thus, for Cæsar, having sent forward the cavalry, was following with all his forces,' we find, '*Cæsar, equitatu præmisso, subsequēbātur omnibus copiis*.'

(b.) As the perfect participle in Latin may be used for both the perfect active and the perfect passive participles in English, its meaning can, in many instances, be determined only by the connection, since the agent with a or ab is generally not expressed with this participle in the ablative absolute, as it is with other parts of the passive voice. Thus, *Cæsar*, his dictis, *concilium dimisit*, might be rendered, '*Cæsar, having said this, or this having been said* (by some other person), dismissed the assembly.'

(c.) As the perfect participles of deponent verbs correspond to perfect active participles in English, no such necessity exists for the use of the ablative absolute with them; as, *Cæsar, hæc locūtus, concilium dimisit*. In the following example, both constructions are united: *Itaque....agros Rōmōrum depopulātī, omnibus victis, ædificiisque incensis*. Cæs.

REM. 6. The perfect participles of neuter deponent verbs, and some also of active deponents, which admit of both an active and a passive sense, are used in the ablative absolute; as, *Ortā luce*. Cæs. *Vel extincto vel elapso animo, nullum r̄sūd̄ere sensum*. Cic. *Tam multis gl̄riam ejus adeptis*. Plin. *Lit̄eras ad exercitus, tamquam adeptō principātu, misit*. Tac.

REM. 7. (a.) As the verb *sum* has no present participle, two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, which might be the subject and predicate of a dependent clause, are put in the ablative absolute without a participle; as,

*Quid, ad̄olescentūlo dūce, effic̄ere possent*, What they could do under the guidance of a youth. Cæs. *Me suāsore atque impulsore, hoc factum*, By my advice and instigation. Plaut. *Hannibāle vivo*, While Hannibal was living. Nep. *Invitā Minervā*, In opposition to one's genius. Cic. *Cælo serēno*, When the weather is clear. Virg. *Me ignāro*, Without my knowledge. Cic. With names of office, the concrete noun is commonly used in the ablative absolute, rather than the corresponding abstract with *in* to denote the time of an event; as, *Rōmam vēnit* Mārio consule, He came to Rome in the consulship of Marius. Cic.

(b.) The nouns so used as predicates are by some grammarians considered as supplying the place of participles by expressing in themselves the action of a verb. Such are *dux, cōmes, adjutor* and *adjutrix, auctor, testis, iudex, interpres, magister* and *magistra, preceptor* and *præceptorix*; as, *dice natūrā*, in the sense of *dūcente natūrā*, Under the guidance of nature; *iudice Polybio*, According to the judgment of Polybius.

REM. 8. A clause sometimes supplies the place of the noun; as, *Novidūm comperto* quam in r̄giōnem vēnisset rex. Liv. *Audito vēnisse nūncium*. Tac. *Vāle dicto*. Ovid. This construction, however, is confined to a few participles; as, *audito, cognito, comperto, explorāto, desp̄rāto, nunciāto, dicto, edicto*. But the place of such participle is sometimes supplied by a neuter adjective in the ablative: as, *Incerto pr̄æ tēnebris quid p̄tērent*. Liv. Cf. R. 7, (a.) *Haud cuiquam n̄bio quin hostium essent*. Id. *Iuxta p̄riculoso v̄ra an fides pr̄m̄eret*. Tac.

REM. 9. (1.) The noun in the ablative, like the subject nominative, is sometimes wanting; (a) when it is contained in a preceding clause; as, *Atticus Serviliū Pr̄tī nātrem, non missus post mortem ejus, quam florēte, coluit*, scil. eq.

i. e. Brūto. Nep. (b) When it is the general word for person or persons followed by a descriptive relative clause; as, *Hannibal Ibērum cōpias trāiectā prēmīssis, qui Alpium transitus spēcūlārentur*. Liv. (c) When the participle in the neuter singular corresponds to the impersonal construction of neuter verbs in the passive voice; as, *In amnis transgressu, multum certāto, Burdesines riciū* Tac. *Mihī, errāto, nulla cēna, recte facto, exigua lūs prōpōnitur*. Cic. *Quoniam, nonnum pālam facto, viri mortuūque prōmiscue complōrērentur*. Liv. *Nūn jum aetate eā sum, ut non siet, peccāto, mi ignosci æquum; i. e. si peccātum fuērit*. Ter. Cf. § 274, R. 5, (b.)

(2.) So in descriptions of the weather; as, *Tranquillo*, scil. *mūri*, the sea being tranquil. Liv. *Sērēno*, scil. *cālo*, the sky being clear. Id. *Arānei sērēno tezzunt, nūbilo tezzunt*,—in clear and in cloudy weather. Plin. Substantives when used thus are to be considered as ablatives of time; as, *Cōmitiū, lūctū, Circensibū*. Suetonius has used *proscriptiōne* in the sense of 'during the proscription.' So *pāce et Princēpe*. Tac. *Impērio pōpuli Rōmāni*. Cæs.

REM. 10. This ablative is sometimes connected to the preceding clause by a conjunction; as, *Cæsar, quamquam obsidiōne Massiliæ rētdante, brevī tāmēn omnia subēgit*. Suet. *Dicēmviri non ante, quam perlātis lēgibus, dēpositūros impērium esse aiūhnt*. Liv.

REM. 11. A predicate ablative is sometimes added to passive participles of naming, choosing, etc. § 210, (3.); as, *Hasdrūbale impērātore suffectū*. Liv.

## CONNECTION OF TENSES.

§ 258. Tenses, in regard to their connection, are divided into two classes—*principal* and *historical*.

A. The principal tenses are, the *present*, the *perfect definite*, and the *two futures*.

B. The historical, which are likewise called the *preterite* tenses (§ 145, N. 2.), are the *imperfect*, the *historical perfect*, and the *pluperfect*.

I. In the connection of leading and dependent clauses, only tenses of the same class can, in general, be united with each other. Hence:—

1. A *principal* tense is followed by the *present* and *perfect definite*, and by the periphrastic form with *sim*. And:—

2. A *preterite* tense is followed by the *imperfect* and *pluperfect*, and by the periphrastic form with *essem*.

NOTE. The periphrastic forms in each class supply the want of subjunctive futures in the regular conjugation.

The following examples will illustrate the preceding rules:—

(a.) In the first class. *Scio quid āgas. Scio quid ēgēris. Scio quid actūrus sis.*—*Audīri quid āgas*, I have heard what you are doing. *Audīri quid ēgēris* *Audīri quid actūrus sis.*—*Audīam quid āgas*, etc.—*Audīvērō quid āgas*, etc.

(b.) In the second class. *Sciēbam quid āgēres. Sciēbam quid ēgisses. Sciēbam quid actūrus esses.*—*Audīri quid āgēres*, I heard what you were doing. *Audīri quid ēgisses. Audīri quid actūrus esses*—*Audīvērām quid āgēres*, etc.

The following may serve as additional examples in the first class; viz. of *principal* tenses depending on.—1.

(1.) THE PRESENT; as, *Non sum ita hēbes, ut istuc dicam*. Cic. *Quantum dolōrem accēpērim, tu existimāre pōtes*. Id. *Nec dūbito quin rēditus ējus reipablicæ salū iri: sūtūrus sit*. Id.

(2.) The PERFECT DEFINITE; as, *Satis prœvisum est, ut ne quid agere possint.* Cic. *Quis musicis, quis huic studio librârum se dedit, quam omnem illarum artium rim comprehendit.* Id. *Defectiones solis prædictæ sunt, quæ, quantæ quando futuræ sint.* Id.

(3.) The FUTURE; as, *Sic facillime, quanta oratorum sit, semperque fuerit paucitas, iudicabit.* Cic. *Ad quos dies rediturus sim, scribam ad te.* Id. *Si scieris aspidem litere uspiam, et velle aliquem imprudentem super eam assidere, cuius mors tibi emolumentum factura sit, improbe feceris, nisi monueris, ne assideat.* Id.

The following, also, are additional examples in the second class, viz. of *preterite tenses* depending on,—2.

(1.) The IMPERFECT; as, *Unum illud extimescebam, ne quid turpiter facerem, vel jam effecissem.* Cic. *Non enim dubitabam, quin eas libenter lecturus esses.* Id.

(2.) The HISTORICAL PERFECT; as, *Veni in ejus villam ut libros inde promerem.* Cic. *Hec quum essent nuntiata, Valerius classem ex templo ad ostium fluminis duxit.* Liv.

(3.) The PLUPERFECT; as, *Pavor cepêrat milites, ne mortiferum esset vulnus.* Liv. *Ego ex ipso audieram, quam a te liberaliter esset tractatus.* Cic. *Non satis mihi constiterat, cum aliquâne animi mei molestiâ, an potius libenter te Athenis visurus essem.* Id.

REMARK 1. (a.) When the present is used in narration for the historical perfect, it may, like the latter, be followed by the imperfect; as, *Légatos mittunt, ut pacem impetrarent.* Cæsar.

(b.) The present is also sometimes followed by the perfect subjunctive in its historical sense; as, *Pandite nunc Heliônæ, deæ, cantusque movete, Qui bello exorti reges, quæ quemque secuta Complêrint campos acies.* Virg.

REM. 2. The perfect definite is often followed by the imperfect, even when a present action or state is spoken of, if it is possible to conceive of it in its progress, and not merely in its conclusion or result; and especially when the agent has an intention accompanying him from the beginning to the end of the action; as, *Feci hoc, ut intelligeres, I have done this that you might understand; i. e. such was my intention from the beginning.* *Sunt philosophi et fuerunt, qui omnino nullam habere censèrent humanarum rerum procuratorem deos.* Cic.

REM. 3. (a.) The historical perfect is not regularly followed by the perfect subjunctive, as the latter is not, in general, used in reference to past action indefinite.

(b.) These tenses are, however, sometimes used in connection, in the narrative of a past event, especially in Livy and Cornelius Nepos; as, *Factum est ut plus quam colligæ Miltiades valuêrit.* Nep.

(c.) The imperfect and perfect are even found together after the historical perfect, when one action is represented as permanent or repeated, and the other simply as a fact; as, *Adeo nihil misêriti sunt, ut incursiones facerent et Veios in animo habuerint oppugnare.* Liv.

(d.) The historical perfect may even be followed by the present, when a general truth is to be expressed, and not merely one which is valid for the time indicated by the leading verb; as, *Antiocho pacem petenti ad priores conditiones nihil additum, Africano prædicante, neque Romanis, si vincantur, animos minus, neque, si vincant, secundis rebus insclescere.* Just.

REM. 4. (a.) As present infinitives and present participles depend for their time upon the verbs with which they are connected, they are followed by such tenses as those verbs may require; as, *Apelles pictores quoque eos peccare docebat, qui non sentirent, quid esset satis.* Cic. *Ad te scripsi, te leuiter accusans in eo, quod de me cito credidisses.* Id.

(b.) In like manner the tense of the subjunctive following the infinitive future is determined by the verb on which such infinitive depends; as, *Sos Phœthonti filio facturum se esse dixit quicquid optasset.* Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) The perfect infinitive follows the general rule, and takes after it a principal or a preterite tense, according as it is used in the definite or in the historical sense; as, *Arbitramur nos ea præstitisse, quas ratio et doctrina præscripsêrit.* Cic. *Est quod gaudeas te in ista loca vênisse, ubi aliquid expere vitêrere.* Id.

(b.) But it may sometimes take a different tense, according to Rem. 2; as *Ita mihi videor et esse Deos, et quales essent satis ostendisse.* Cic.

II. Tenses belonging to different classes may be made dependent on each other, when the sense requires it.

(a.) Hence a present or perfect definite may follow a preterite, when the result of a past action extends to the present time; as, *Ardêbat autem Hortensius cupiditate dicendi sic, ut in nullo umquam flagrantius studium viderin;* i. e. that up to this time I have never seen. Cic. And, on the other hand, a preterite may follow a present to express a continuing action in the past; as, *Scitote oppidum esse in Sicilia nullum, quo in oppido non isti delecta mulier ad libidinem esset:* (esse here alludes to the whole period of Verres' prætorship.) Cic.

(b.) But without violating the rule which requires similar tenses to depend upon each other, the hypothetical imperfect subjunctive, may be followed by the present or perfect subjunctive, since the imperfect subjunctive refers to the present time; as, *Mémorâre possem quibus in locis maximas hostium copias populus Rômanus parâ manu fûderit.* Sall. *Possem* here differs from *possum* only by the hypothetical form of the expression.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

§ 259. The indicative is used in every proposition in which the thing asserted is represented as a reality.

NOTE. Hence it is used even in the expression of conditions and suppositions with *si*, *nisi*, *etsi*, and *etiamsi*, when the writer, without intimating his own opinion, supposes a thing as actual, or, with *nisi*, makes an exception, which, only for the sake of the inference, he regards as actual; as, *Mors aut plâne negligenda est, si omnino exstinguit animum, aut etiam optanda, si aliquo eum deducit, ubi sit futurus æternus.* Cic. *Adhuc certe, nisi ego insânio, stulte omnia et incaute fiunt.* Id.—It is likewise used in interrogations.

REMARK 1. The several tenses have already been defined, and their usual significations have been given in the paradigms. They are, however, sometimes otherwise rendered, one tense being apparently used with the meaning of another, either in the same or in a different mood. Thus,

(1.) (a.) The present is often used for the historical perfect in narration, see § 145, I. 3.—(b.) It is sometimes used also for the future to denote the certainty of an event, or to indicate passionate emotion. So, also, when the leading sentence contains the present imperative, *et* is often joined with the present instead of the future; as, *Defende si potes.*—(c.) The present is also used for the imperfect or perfect, when it is joined with *dum* 'while'; as, *Dum ego in Sicilia sum, nulla stâtua dejecta est.* Cic. It is even so used by Livy in transitions from one event to another; as, *Dum in Asia bellum geritur, ne in Etruria quidem quiete res fuerant.* But the preterites are sometimes used with *dum* 'while'; and *dum* 'as long as' is regularly joined with the imperfect.

(2.) (a.) The perfect, in its proper signification, i. e. as a perfect definite, denotes an act or state terminated at the present time. Thus Horace, at the close of a work, says, *Exegi monumentum ære perennius*; and Juvd, in like circumstances, *Jamque opus exegi.* So, also, Panthus in Virgil, in order to de

note the utter ruin of Troy, exclaims, Fulmus *Trôes*, fuit *Ilium* i. e. We are no longer Trojans, Ilium is no more.—(b.) The perfect *indefinite* or *historical* perfect is used in relating past events, when no reference is to be made to the time of other events; as, *Cæsar Rubicōnem transiit*, Cæsar crossed the Rubicon.—(c.) As in the epistolary style the imperfect is used instead of the present, when an incomplete action is spoken of (§ 145, II. 3), so the historical perfect is in like circumstances employed instead of the present, when speaking of a completed action. With both the imperfect and perfect, when so used, however, the adverbs *nunc* and *etiamnunc* may be used instead of *tunc* and *etiamtum*.

(d.) The historical perfect is sometimes used for the pluperfect in narration; as, *Sed postquam aspexi, illico cognôvi*, But after I (had) looked at it, I recognized it immediately. Ter.—This is the usual construction after *postquam* or *posteaquam*, *ubi*, *ubi primum*, *ut*, *ut primum*, *quum primum*, *simul*, *simul ut*, *simul ac*, or *simul atque*, all of which have the signification of 'as soon as,' and sometimes after *præquam*. But when several conditions are to be expressed in past time, the pluperfect is retained after these particles; as, *Idem simulac se remisserat, nèque causa suberat, quare animi liborem perferret, luxuriosus repêrībatur*. Nep. So, also, *postquam* is joined with the pluperfect, when a definite time intervenes between events, so that there is no connection between them; as, *Hannibal anno tertio, postquam dōmo profūgerat, cum quinque navibus Africam accessit*. Id.—In a very few passages the imperfect and pluperfect *subjunctive* are joined with *postquam*.

(3.) The pluperfect sometimes occurs, where in English we use the historical perfect; as, *Dixerat, et spissis noctis se condidit umbris*, She (had) said, and hid herself in the thick shades of night. Virg. Sometimes, also, it is used for the historical perfect to express the rapidity with which events succeed each other; so, also, for the imperfect, to denote what had been and still was.

(4.) The future indicative is sometimes used for the imperative; as, *Valebis*, Farewell. Cic. And:—

(5.) The future perfect for the future; as, *Alio loco de oratorum animo et injuriis vidëro*, I shall see (have seen)... Cic. This use seems to result from viewing a future action as if already done, and intimates the rapidity with which it will be completed.

REM. 2. When a future action is spoken of either in the future, or in the imperative, or the subjunctive used imperatively, and another future action is connected with it, the latter is expressed by the *future* tense, if the actions relate to the same time; as, *Naturam si sequemur ducem, numquam aberrabimus*. Cic.; but by the future perfect, if the one must be completed before the other is performed; as, *De Carthagine vereri non ante desinam, quam illam excisam esse cognovero*. Cic. In English the present is often used instead of the future perfect; as, *Faciam si potero*, I will do it, if I can. *Uti sementem feceris, ita metes*, As you sow, so you will reap. Cic.

REM. 3. In expressions denoting the propriety, practicability or advantage of an action not performed, the indicative of the preterites (§ 145, N. 2.) is used, where the English idiom would have led us to expect the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive.

(a.) This construction occurs with the verbs *oportet*, *recesse est*, *dëbeo*, *convenit*, *possum*, *dëcet*, *licet*, *reor*, *puto*: and with *par*, *fas*, *cöpia*, *æquum*, *justum*, *consentaneum*, *satis*, *sätius*, *æquius*, *mélius*, *utilius*, *opt. alius*, and *optimum—est, erat*, etc.

(b.) In this connection the imperfect indicative expresses things which are not, but the time for which is not yet past; the historical perfect and the pluperfect indicative, things which have not been, but the time for which is past; as, *Ad mortem te duci jam pridem oportebat*, i. e. thy execution was necessary and is still so; hence it ought to take place. Cic.—*Longè attilius fuit angustius aditus occupare*, It would have been much better to occupy the pass. Curt. *Cutlina erupit e senatu triumphans gaudio, quem omnino vivum illinc extrahi non oportuerat*. Cic.



(c.) In both the periphrastic conjugations, also, the preterites of the indicative have frequently the meaning of the subjunctive; as, *Tam bona constanter præda tēnenda fuit*,—ought to have been kept. Ovid. This is more common in hypothetical sentences than in such as are independent.

(d.) The indicative in such connections is retained, even when a hypothetical clause with the imperfect or pluperfect subjunctive is added, and it is here in particular that the indicative preterites of the periphrastic conjugations are employed; as, *Quæ si dubia aut præcul essent, tamen omnes bonos reipublicæ consilire decēbat*. Sall. *Quodsi Cn. Pompeius privatus esset hoc tempore, tamen erat mittendus*. Cic.—*Dēleri tōtus exercitus pōtuit, si fugientes persēcūti victōres essent*. Liv. *Quas nisi mānūmisisset, tormentis etiā dedendi fuērunt*. Cic. *Si te non invēnissem, pērtūrus per præcipitia fui*. Petr. But the subjunctive also is admissible in such cases in the periphrastic conjugations.

REM 4. (1.) The preterites of the indicative are often used for the pluperfect subjunctive, in the conclusion of a conditional clause, in order to render a description more animated. They are so used,

(a.) When the inference has already partly come to pass, and would have been completely realized, if something else had or had not occurred, whence the adverb *jam* is frequently added; as, *Jam fāmes quam pestilentia tristior erat; nī annōnæ foret subventum*,—would have been worse. Liv. The same is expressed by the verb *cæpi* instead of *jam*; as, *Britanni circumire terga vincētium cœperant, nī*, etc. Tac. And without *jam*; *Effigies Pisōnis traxērunt in Gēnūtiās ac divellēbant* (would have entirely destroyed them) *nī*, etc. Id.

(b.) The perfect and pluperfect are likewise used in this sense, and a thing which was never accomplished is thus, in a lively manner, described as completed; as, *Et pēractum erat bellum sine sanguine, si Pompeium opprimere Brundisii (Cæsar) pōtuisset*. Hor.—The imperfect indicative is rarely used, also, for the imperfect subjunctive, when this tense is found in the hypothetical clause; as, *Stultum erat mōnere, nisi fieret*. Quint.—Sometimes, also, the preterites of the indicative are thus used in the condition; as, *At fuērat melius, si te puer iste tēnēbat*. Ovid. See § 261, R. 1.

(2.) 'I ought' or 'I should,' is expressed by the indicative of *dēbeo*, and *possum* is in like manner often used for *possem*; as, *Possum persēqui multa oblectāmēta rerum rusticarum, sed*, etc., I might speak of the many pleasures of husbandry, but, etc.; and it is usual in like manner to say, *difficile est, longum est, infinitum est*, e. g. *narrāre*, etc., for, 'it would be difficult,' 'it would lead too far,' 'there would be no end,' etc.

(3.) The indicative is used in like manner after many general and relative expressions, especially after the pronouns and relative adverbs which are either doubled or have the suffix *cumque*; as, *quisquis, quotquot, quicumque, utut, utcumque*, etc., see §§ 139, 5, (3.) and 191, I. R. 1, (b.); as, *Quidquid id est, timo Diānos et dōna fērentes*. Virg. *Quem sors cumque dābit, lucro appōne*. Hor. *Red quōquo mōdo sēse illud hābet*. But however that may be. Cic.—In like manner sentences connected by *sive*—*sive* commonly have the verb in the indicative, unless there is a special reason for using the subjunctive; as, *Sive verum est, sive falsum, mihi quidem ita rēnūciātum est*. Later writers however use the subjunctive both with general relatives, etc., and with *sive*—*sive*.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

§ 260. The subjunctive mood is used to express an action or state simply as conceived by the mind.

NOTE. The subjunctive character of a proposition depends, not upon its substance, but upon its form. 'I believe,' 'I suppose,' are only conceptions, but are believing and supposing are stated as facts, and, of course, are expressed by means of the indicative. When, on the other hand, I say, 'I should be

lieve,' 'I should suppose,' the acts of believing and supposing are represented as facts, but as mere conceptions. Hence the verb that expresses the purpose or intention for which another act is performed, is put in the subjunctive, since it expresses only a conception; as, *Edo ut vivam*, I eat that I may live. This mood takes its name from its being commonly used in *subjoined* or dependent clauses attached to the main clause of a sentence by a subordinate connective. In some cases, however, it is found in independent clauses, or in such, at least, as have no obvious dependence.

I. The subjunctive, in some of its connections, is to be translated by the indicative, particularly in *indirect questions*, in clauses expressing a *result*, and after *adverbs of time*; as,

*Rogas me quid tristis sim*,—why I am sad. Tac. *Stellârum tanta est multitudo, ut numerâri non possint*,—that they cannot be counted. *Quum Cæsar esset in Gallia*, When Cæsar was in Gaul. Cæs.

II. The subjunctive is used to express what is contingent or hypothetical, including *possibility, power, liberty, will, duty, and desire*.

REMARK 1. The tenses of the subjunctive, thus used, have the significations which have been given in the paradigms, and are, in general, not limited, in regard to time, like the corresponding tenses of the indicative. Thus,

(1.) The present may refer either to present or future time; as, *Médiocribus et quis ignescens vitiiis læneor*, I am subject to moderate faults, and such as you may excuse. Hor. *Orat a Cæsare ut det sibi veniam*, He begs of Cæsar that he would give him leave. Cæs.

(2.) The imperfect may relate either to past, present, or future time; as, *Si fata fuissent ut caderem*, If it had been my fate that I should fall. Virg. *Si possem, sânior essem*, I would be wiser, if I could. Ovid. *Ceteros rapèrem et prosternèrem*, The rest I would seize and prostrate. Ter.

(3.) The perfect subjunctive has always a reference to present time, and is equivalent to the indicative present or perfect definite; as, *Errârim fortasse*, Perhaps I may have erred. Plin.—When it has a future signification it is not to be accounted a perfect, but the subjunctive of the future perfect. See Rem. 4 and 7, (1.) But compare § 258, R. 1, (b.) and R. 3, (b.)

(4.) The pluperfect subjunctive relates to past time, expressing a contingency, which is usually future with respect to some past time mentioned in connection with it; as, *Id responderunt se factûros esse, quum ille vento Aquilone venisset Lemnum*.... when he should have come.... Nep.

REM. 2. The imperfections *vellem, nollem, and müllem*, in the first person, express a wish, the non-reality and impossibility of which are known; as, *vellem*, I should have wished.—In the second person, where it implies an indefinite person, and also in the third when the subject is an indefinite person, the imperfect subjunctive is used in the sense of the pluperfect, and the condition is to be supplied by the mind. This is the case especially with the verbs, *dico, puto, arbitror, credo*; also with *video, cerno, and discerno*; as, *Mæstique (crêdè-res victos) rédeunt in castra*,—one might have thought that they were defeated. Liv. *Pecunia an fâma minus parceret, haud facile discernères*. Sall. *Qui vidèret equum Trojânûm introductum, urbem captam dicèret*. Cic. *Quis umquam crêderet?* Id. *Quis putâret?* Id.—The imperfect subjunctive is frequently used, also, for the pluperfect in interrogative expressions; as, *Socrâtes quum rogâstûr ut jûdaret se esse dicèret, Mundânûm, inquit. Id. Quod si quis deus dicèret, numquam putârem me in Academiâ tamquam philôsophum disputâtûrum*, If any god had said.... I never should have supposed. Cic.

REM. 3. The subjunctive in all its tenses may denote a supposition or concession; as, *Vendat odes vir bonus*, Suppose an honest man is selling a house. Cic. *Dixèrit Epicûrus*, Grant that Epicurus could have said. Id. *Vèrum anceps pugnae fuèrat fortuna*.—Fuisse, Grant that it might have been. Virg. *Mâlus civis Ch. Carbo fuit. Fuèrit aliis*, He may have been to others. Cic.—This concessive subjunctive is equivalent to *esto ut*.

**REM. 4.** The present and perfect subjunctive are used in independent propositions to soften an assertion. When so used, they do not differ essentially from the present and future indicative; as, *Forſitan quæratīs*, You may perhaps ask. *Velim ſic exiſtiſtes*, I would wiſh you to think ſo. *Nemo iſtuli tibi concedat, or conceſſerit*, No one will grant you that. *Hoc ſine ullā dubitatione confirmaverim, eloquentiam rem eſſe omnium difficillimam*, This I will unhesitatingly affirm. Cic. *Nil ego contulerim iucundo ſanus amico*. Hor. The form which is called the perfect subjunctive, when thus uſed for the future, ſeems to be rather the subjunctive of the future perfect: ſee Rem. 7, (1.) *Volo and its compounds* are often ſo uſed in the preſent; as, *Velim obvias mihi litteras crebro miſſas*, I wiſh that you would frequently ſend, etc. Cic. The perfect subjunctive is alſo rarely uſed in the ſenſe of a ſoftened perfect indicative; as, *Forſitan temere fecerim*, I may have acted inconſiderately.

**REM. 5.** The subjunctive is uſed in all its tenses, in independent ſentences, to expreſs a doubtful queſtion implying a negative answer; as, *Quo eam?* Whither ſhall I go? *Quo irem?* Whither ſhould I go? *Quo iverim?* Whither was I to have gone? *Quo viſſem?* Whither ſhould I have gone? The answer implied in all theſe caſes is, 'nowhere.' So, *Quis dubitet quin in virtute diſtiterint?* Who can doubt that riches conſiſt in virtue? Cic. *Quisquam nūmen Junonis adoret præterea?* Virg. *Quidni, inquit, meminērim?* Cic. *Quis vellet tanti munitus eſſe mali?* Ovid.

**REM. 6.** The preſent subjunctive is often uſed to expreſs a wiſh, an exhortation, aſſeſſeration, requeſt, command, or permiſſion; as,

*Moriar, ſi, etc.* May I die, if, etc. Cic. *Peream, ſi non, etc.* May I periſh, if, etc. Ovid. So, *Ne ſim ſalvus*. Cic. *In mediā arma ruamus*, Let us ruſh.... Virg. *Ne me attingas, ſcèleſte!* Do not touch me, villain! Ter. *Faciāt quod libet*, Let him do what he pleaſes. Id. The perfect is often ſo uſed; as, *Ipſe vidērit*, Let him ſee to it himſelf. Cic. *Quam id recte faciam, vidērint ſapientes*. Id. *Meminerimus, etiam adverſus infimos juſtitiam eſſe ſervandam*. Id. *Nihil incommōdo vultutibus tuæ feceris*. Id. *Ernas, non quod opus eſt, ſed quod neceſſe eſt*. Sen. *Dōnis impii ne placāre audeant deos; Plūtōnem audiant*. Cic. *Natūram expellās furca, tūmen uſque rēcurret*. Hor.

(a.) The examples ſhow that the preſent subjunctive, in the firſt perſon ſingular, is uſed in aſſeſſerations; in the firſt perſon plural, in requeſts and exhortations; in the ſecond and third perſons of the preſent and ſometimes of the perfect, in commands and permiſſions, thus ſupplying the place of the imperative, eſpecially when the perſon is indefinite.

(b.) With theſe subjunctives, as with the imperative, the negative is uſually not *non* but *ne*; as, *ne dicas*; *ne dicat*; *ne dixeris*. So, alſo, *ne fuērit*, for *hæc ne fuērit*.

(c.) The subjunctive for the imperative occurs moſt frequently in the third perſon. In the ſecond perſon it is uſed principally with *ne*; as, *ne dicas*. In the latter caſe the perfect very frequently takes the place of the preſent; as, *ne dixeris*. The subjunctive is alſo uſed in the ſecond perſon, inſtead of the imperative, when the perſon is indefinite.

(d.) In precepts relating to paſt time, the imperfect and pluperfect, alſo, are uſed for the imperative; as, *Forſitan non nemo vir fortis dixerit, reſtiſſiſſes, mortem pugnans oppētiſſes*,—you ſhould have reſiſted. Cic.

**REM. 7.** In the regular paradigms of the verb, no future subjunctive was exhibited either in the active or paſſive voice.

(1.) When the expreſſion of futurity is contained in another part of the ſentence, the future of the subjunctive is ſupplied by the other tenses of that mood, viz. the future subjunctive by the preſent and imperfect, and the future perfect by the perfect and pluperfect. Which of theſe four tenses is to be uſed depends on the leading verb and on the completeness or incompleteness of the action to be expreſſed. The perfect subjunctive appears to be alſo the subjunctive of the future perfect, and might not improperly be ſo called; as

*Tantum moneo, hoc tempus si amisēris, te esse nullum unquam magis idoneum rēperitūrum*, I only warn you, that, if you should lose this opportunity, you will never find one more convenient. Cic.

(2.) If no other nature is contained in the sentence, the place of the future subjunctive active is supplied by the participle in *rus*, with *sim* and *essem*; as, *Non dubitat quin brevi Trōja sit peritūra*, He does not doubt that Troy will soon be destroyed. Cic. In hypothetical sentences the form with *fuērim* takes the place of a pluperfect subjunctive; as, *Quis enim dubitat, quin, si Sāguntinis impigre tūlissēmus opem, totum in Hispāniam āversūri bellum fuērimus*. Liv. The form in *fuissem* occurs also, but more rarely; as, *Appāruit, quam ex cōfātūra mōlem vēra fuisset clādes, quum*, etc. See *Peryhrastic Conjugation*, § 162, 14.

(3.) The future subjunctive passive is supplied, not by the participle in *rus*, but by *fiatūrum sit* or *esset*, with *ut* and the present or imperfect of the subjunctive; as, *Non dubito quin futūrum sit, ut laudētur*, I do not doubt that he will be praised.

## PROTASIS AND APODOSIS.

§ 261. In a sentence containing a *condition* and a *conclusion*, the former is called the *protasis*, the latter the *apodosis*.

1. In the *protasis* of conditional clauses with *si* and its compounds, the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive imply the *non-existence* of the action or state supposed, the imperfect, as in English, implying present time. In the *apodosis* the same tenses of the subjunctive denote what the result would be, or would have been, had the supposition in the *protasis* been a valid one; as,

*Nisi te sātis incitātum esse confidērem, scribērem plūra*, Did I not believe that you have been sufficiently incited, I would write more (Cic.); which implies that he *does* believe, and therefore *will* not write. *Si Neptūnus, quod Thēseos prōmisērat, non fēcisset, Thēseus filio Hippolyto non esset orbātus*. Id.

2. The present and perfect subjunctive in the *protasis*, imply the *real or possible existence* of the action or state supposed; as,

*Si vult*, if he wishes, or, should wish, implying that he either does wish, or, at least, may wish. In the *apodosis* the present or perfect either of the subjunctive or of the indicative may be used.

REMARK 1. The tenses of the *indicative* may also be used in the *protasis* of a conditional sentence with *si*, etc.; as, *Si vales, bene est*. Cic. *Si quis antea mirābātur quid esset, ex hoc tempore mirētur potius...* Id.—The conjunction *si* in the *protasis* is often omitted; as, *Libet agros emi. Primum quero quos agros?* If you will buy lands, I will first ask, etc. But the *protasis* may be rendered without *if*, and either with or without an interrogation, as, *You will buy lands, or, Will you buy lands?* The future perfect often occurs in the *protasis* of such sentences; as, *Causa medicusve levārit aegrum ex praecepti, mater delira nō cāluit*, (Hor.) Should chance or the physician have saved him, the silly mother will destroy him. *Si* is in like manner omitted with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, in supposing a case which is known not to be a real one; as, *Absque te esset, hodie numquam ad solum occāsum vivērem*. Plaut.

REM. 2. The present and perfect subjunctive differ but slightly from the *indicative*, the latter giving to a sentence the form of reality, while the subjunctive represents it as a conception, which, however, may at the same time be a reality. The second person singular of the present and perfect subjunctive often occurs in addressing an indefinite person, where, if the person were definite, the indicative would be used; as, *Mēmoria minuitur, nisi eam exerceas* Cic. When the imperfect or pluperfect is required to denote a past action

the indicative must be used, if its existence is uncertain, as those tenses in the subjunctive would imply its non-existence. In the *oratio obliqua*, when the leading verb is a present or a future the same difference is observed between the tenses of the subjunctive as in hypothetical sentences; but when the leading verb is a preterite the difference between possibility and impossibility is not expressed.

REM. 3. The present and perfect subjunctive are sometimes used, both in the *protasis* and *apodosis* of a conditional sentence, in the sense of the imperfect and pluperfect; as, *Tu, si hic sis, aliter sentias*, If you were here, you would think otherwise. Ter. *Quos, ni mea cura resistat, jam flammæ tulerint*. Virg.

REM. 4. The *protasis* of a conditional sentence is frequently not expressed, but implied; as, *Magno mercentur Atrides*, i. e. *si possint*. Virg.; or is contained in a participial clause; as, *Agis, etsi a multitudine victus, gloriâ tamen omnes vicit*. Just. So, also, when the participle is in the ablative absolute; as, *Dondrem tripodas*—divide me scilicet artium, quas aut Parrhasius protulit, aut Scopas. Hor. *C. Mucius Porcenam interficere, proposita sibi morte, conatus est*. Cic. It is only in later writers that the concessive conjunctions *etsi*, *quamquam*, and *quavis* are expressed with the participle, but *tamen* is often found in the *apodosis*, even in the classic period, when a participial clause precedes as a *protasis*.

REM. 5. In hypothetical sentences relating to past time, the actions seem often to be transferred in a measure to the present by using the imperfect, either in the *protasis* or the *apodosis*, instead of the pluperfect; as, *Quod certe non fecisset, si suum numerum (navium) naves haberent*. Cic. *Cimbri si statim infesto agmine urbem petissent, grande discrimen esset*. Flor. Sometimes the imperfect, although the actions are completed, appears both in the *protasis* and the *apodosis*.

REM. 6. *Nisi, nisi vero*, and *nisi forte* are joined with the indicative, when they introduce a correction. *Nisi* then signifies 'except'; as, *Nescio; nisi hoc video*. Cic. *Nisi vero*, and *nisi forte*, 'unless perhaps,' introduce an exception, and imply its improbability; as, *Nemo fere sallat sobrius, nisi forte insanit*. Cic. *Nisi forte* in the sense of 'unless you suppose,' is commonly used ironically to introduce a case which is in reality inadmissible.

## SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER PARTICLES.

### A. SUBSTANTIVE CLAUSES.

§ 262. A clause denoting the purpose, object, or result of a preceding proposition, takes the subjunctive after *ut*, *ne*, *quo*, *quin*, and *quominus*; as,

*Ea non, ut te instituërem, scripsi*, I did not write that in order to instruct you. Cic. *Irritant ad pugnantium, quo fiant acriores*, They stimulate them to fight, that they may become fiercer. Varr.

REMARK 1. *Ut* or *ut*, signifying 'that,' 'in order that,' or simply 'to' with the infinitive, relates either to a purpose or to a result. In the latter case it often refers to *sic*, *ita*, *adeo*, *tam*, *tâlis*, *tantus*, *is*, *ejusmodi*, etc., in the preceding clause; as,

*Id mihi sic erit gratum, ut gratus esse nihil possit*, That will be so agreeable to me, that nothing can be more so. Cic. *Non sum ita hâbes, ut istuc dicam*. Id. *Næque tam eramus amantes, ut explorata nobis esset victoria*. Id. *Tantum indulgendi, ut eum pietas rinceret*. Nep. *Ita* and *tam* are sometimes omitted; as, *Fridinonidus fuit etiam disertus ut nemo Thëbanus ei par esset eloquentia*, instead of *tam disertus*. Id. *Esse oportet ut vivas, non vivere ut edas*. Auct. ad Her. *Sol efficit ut omnia floreat*. Cic.

REM. 2. *Ut*, signifying 'even if' or 'although,' expresses a supposition merely as a conception, and accordingly takes the subjunctive; as,

*Ut dēsint vires, tamen est laudanda voluntas*, Though strength be wanting, yet the will is to be praised. Ovid. *Ut*, in this sense, takes the negative *non*; as, *Exercitus si pācis nōmen audierit, ut non rēferat pēdem* (even if it does not withdraw) *insistet certe*. Cic.

REM. 3. *Ut*, with the subjunctive denoting a result, is used with impersonal verbs signifying *it happens, it remains, it follows, etc.*, as,

*Quī fit, ut nemo contentus vivat?* How does it happen that no one lives contented? Hor. *Huic contigit, ut patriam ex servitute in libertatem vindicāret*. Nep. *Sēquitur igitur, ut etiā cīta sint parca*. Cic. *Rēliquum est, ut egomet mihi consulam*. Nep. *Restat igitur, ut mōtus astrōrum sit voluntarius*. Cic. *Extrēmum illud est, ut te ōrem et obsecrem*. Id.

NOTE 1. To this principle may be referred the following verbs and phrases signifying 'it happens,' viz. *fit, fieri non pōtest, accidit, incidit, contingit, evenit, ūt rēnit, occurrit* and *est* (it is the case, or it happens, and hence *esto*, be it that):—and the following, signifying 'it remains,' or 'it follows,' viz. *futurum, extrēmum, prope, proximum, and reliquum—est, relinquitur, sequitur, restat, and superest*; and sometimes *accedit*.

NOTE 2. *Contingit* with the dative of the person is often joined with the infinitive, instead of the subjunctive with *ut*; as, *Non cuius hōmini contingit adire Cōrinthum*. Hor. And with *esse* also and other verbs of similar meaning, the predicate (as in the case of *licet*) is often found in the dative.—*Sēquitur* and *efficitur*, 'it follows,' have sometimes the accusative with the infinitive and sometimes the subjunctive; and *nascitur*, in the same sense, the subjunctive only.

NOTE 3. *Mos* or *mōris est, consuetudo* or *consuetudinis est, and nātūra* or *consuetudo fert*, are often followed by *ut* instead of the infinitive.—*Ut* also occurs occasionally after many such phrases as *nōrum est, rirum, nātūrāle, necesse, usitatum, mirum, singulāre—est, etc.*, and after *æquum, rectum, verum, ūtile, vērismile, and integrum—est*.

For other uses of *ut*, with the subjunctive, see § 273.

REM. 4. *Ut* is often omitted before the subjunctive, after verbs denoting willingness and permission; also after verbs of asking, advising, reminding, etc., and the imperatives *dic* and *fac*; as,

*Quid vis faciam?* What do you wish (that) I should do? Ter. *Insāni fēriant sine librā fluctus*. Virg. *Tentes dissimulāre rogat*. Ovid. *Id sinas ōro*. Id. *Se suādēre, dixit, Pharnabāzo id nēgōtīi dāret*. Nep. *Accēdat ōportet actio vāria*. Cic. *Fac cōgites*. Sall. So, *Vide ex nāvi effērantur, quæ, etc.* Plant

Verbs of willingness, etc., are *volo, mālō, permitto, concēdo, pātor, sinō, licet, velle, etc.*; those of asking, etc., are *rōgo, ōro, quæro, mōneo, admōneo, jūbēo, mando, pēto, pŕecor, censeo, suādēo, ōportet, necesse est, postūlo, hortor, cāro, dēcerno, cŕeo, impēro*.

REM. 5. *Nē*, 'that not,' 'in order that not,' or 'lest,' expresses a purpose negatively; as,

*Cūra ne quid ei dēsint*, Take care that nothing be wanting to him. Cic. *Nemo pŕudens pūnit, ut ait Plāto, quia peccātum est, sed ne peccētur*. Id. *Ut ne* is frequently used for *ne*, especially in solemn discourse, and hence in laws; as, *Opŕa dētur, ut iūdicia ne fiant*. Id. *Quo ne* is used in the same manner in one passage of Horace. *Missus ad hoc—quo ne per vācūm Rōmāno incurrēret hostis*.—On the other hand *ut non* is used when a simple result or consequence is to be expressed, in which case *ita, sic, tam* are either expressed or understood as, *Tum forte agritābam, ut ad nuptias tuas vēnīre non possem*. In a few cases however, *ut non* is used for *ne*.—*Ut non* is further used, when the negation re

fers to a particular word or to a part only of the sentence, as in similar cases *si non* must be used, and not *nisi*; as, *Confer te ad Manium, ut a me non spectus ad alienos, sed invitatus ad tuos isse videaris.* Cic.

REM. 6. *Nē* is often omitted after *cave*; as,

*Cave putes,* Take care not to suppose. Cic. Compare § 267, R. 3.

REM. 7. After *metuo*, *timeo*, *vereor*, and other expressions denoting fear or caution, *nē* must be rendered by *that* or *lest*, and *ut* by *that* not.

NOTE 3. To the verbs *metuo*, *timeo*, and *vereor* are to be added the substantives expressing fear, apprehension or danger, and the verbs *terreo*, *conterreo*, *deleterreo*, *caveo*, to be on one's guard, *video* and *observo* in requests (as, *vide videte et videndum est*), in the sense of 'to consider'; as,

*Milo metuēbat, ne a servis indicārētur,* Milo feared that he should be betrayed by his servants. Cic. *Vereor, ne, dum minuire velim liborem, augeam.* Id. *Parric erat, ne castra hostie aggrēderētur.* Liv. *Illā duo vereor, ut tibi possim conciliare,* I fear that I cannot grant.... Cic. *Ovendum est ne assentatoribus patēfaciāmus aures, ne adulāri nos sināmus.* Cic. *Vide ne hoc tibi obsit.* *Terruit gentes, grāve ne rēdiret sēcūlum Pyrrhæ.* *Multitudinem deterrent, ne frumentum conferant.* Cæs. *Me miserum!* ne prona cādas. Ovid.

NOTE 4. *Nec* or *neq* is used as a continuative after *ut* and *ne*. It is properly equivalent to *aut ne*, but is also used for *et ne* after a preceding *ut*; as, on the other hand, *et ne* is used after a negation instead of *aut ne*; as, *Lēgem tālit, ne quis ante actārum rērum accūsārētur,* nēve multārētur. Nep. *Cæsar milites non longiore oratione cōhortātus, quā uti suæ pristinæ virtutis mēmōriam retinērent, ne perturbārēntur animo—prælii committendi signum dedit.* Cæs. *Nēque,* also, is sometimes used for *et ne* after *ut* and *ne*; as, *Ut ea prætermittam, nēque eos appellem.* Cic. *Cur non sanctis ne vicinus patricio sit plēbeius, nec eodem iūris eat.* Liv.—*Ne* non is sometimes used for *ut* after verbs of fearing; as, *Timeo ne non impetrem,* I fear I shall not obtain it.

REM. 8. The proposition on which the subjunctive with *ut* and *ne* depends, is sometimes omitted; as, *Ut ita dicam.* Cic. *Ne singulos nōmīnem.* Liv.

NOTE 5. *Nedum*, like *ne*, takes the subjunctive; as, *Optimis temporibus clārisimū vtri vim tribūticium sustinere non pōtuerunt: nedum his temporibus sine iudiciōrum remēdiū salvi esse possimus,—still less, etc.* Cic. *Ne* is sometimes used in the sense of *nedum*; as, *Novam eum pōtestatē (scil. tribūnorum plēbis) eripere patribus nostris, ne nunc dulcēdine sēmel capti ferant dēsidērium.* Liv.—*Nedum* without a verb has the meaning of an adverb, and commonly follows a negative; as, *Ægre inermis tantū multitudo, nedum armata, sustinēri pōtest.* Liv. *Ne*, also is used in the same manner in Cic. Fam. 9, 26.

REM. 9. *Quō*, 'that,' 'in order that,' or, 'that by this means,' especially with a comparative; *non quō*, or *non quod*, 'not that,' 'not as if'; *non quin*, 'not as if not'; which are followed in the apollōns *y* *seil quod*, *seil quia*, or *sed* alone; and *quōminus*, 'that not,' after clauses denoting hindrance, take the subjunctive; as,

*Adjūta me, quō id fiat facilius,* Aid me, that that may be done more easily. Ter. *Non quō rēpublicā sit mihi quicquam cārīus, sed dēspērātis etiā Hippocrētēs vētat adhibere medicinam.* Cic. *Non quod sōla orment, sed quod excellant.* Id. *Nēque rēcūsāvī, quō minus lēgis pœnam sūbiret.* Nep. *Ego me dicem in civib bello negāvi esse, non quin rectum esset, sed quia, etc.* Cic. And instead of *non quin* we may say *non quō non*, *non quod non*, or *non quia non*; and for *non quod*, *non eo quōd*, or *non ideo quod*.

REM. 10. *Quin*, after negative propositions and questions with *quid* and *quid* implying a negative, takes the subjunctive. *Quin* is used,

1. For a relative with *non*, after *nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil*....*est*, *repperitur*, *invenitur* etc., *vix est*, *ægre repperitur*, etc.; as, *Messanum nemo venit*, *quin viderit*, i. e. *qui non viderit*, No one came to Messina who did not see. Cic. *Nego allam picturam fuisse*....*quin conquiescerit*, i. e. *quam non*, etc. Id. *Nihil est*, *quin nulla narrando possit depravari*. Ter. *Quis est*, *quin cernat*, *quantum vis sit in sensibus*! Cic.

NOTE 6. When *quin* is used for the relative it is commonly equivalent to the nominative *qui*, *que*, *quod*, but it is sometimes used in prose instead of the accusative, and sometimes after *dies* for *quo*, as the ablative of time; as, *Dies fere nullus est*, *quin hic Satrius domum meam ventitet*, i. e. *quo*—*non venisset*. Cic.—*Qui non* is often used for *quin*; as, *Quis enim erat*, *qui non sciret*. Id.; and when *quin* stands for *qui non* or *quod non*, *is* and *id* are sometimes added for the sake of emphasis; as, *Cleanthes negat ullum cibum esse tam græcem*, *quin la die et nocte concocquatur*. Cic. *Nihil est quod sensum habeat*, *quin id indereat*. Id.—So, also, the place of *quin* is supplied by *ut non*; as, *Augustus numquam filios suos populo commendavit ut non adiceret* (without adding) *si mererentur* Juet. And if *non* negation precedes, or if *non* belongs to a particular word, and not to the verb, *qui non* and *ut non* must of course be used and not *quin*.

2. For *ut non*, 'that not,' or 'without' with a participle, especially after *facere non possum*, *fiere non potest*, *nulla causa est*, *quid causæ est?* *nihil causæ est*; as, *Facere non possum quin ut te mittam*, i. e. *ut non*, etc. Cic. *Numquam tam male est Siculis*, *quin aliquid facere et commode dicant*. Cic. *Numquam accedo*, *quin abs te abeam doctor*,—without going from you wiser. Ter.

NOTE 7. *Quin* takes the subjunctive also after the negative expressions *non dubito*, *non est dubium*, *non ambigo*, I doubt not; *non abest*; *nihil*, *paulum*, *non procul*, *haud multum abest*; *non*, *vix*, *ægre alitineo*; *tendere me*, or *temporare mihi non possum*; *non impedio*, *non recuso*, *nihil pretermitto*, and the like. In these cases, however, the negation in *quin* is superfluous, and it is generally translated into English by 'that,' 'but that,' or 'to' with an infinitive; as, *Non dubito quin domi sit*, that he is at home. *Non multum abest*, *quin miserimus sim*, Not much is wanting to make me most wretched. Cic. Hence, as *quin* is not in such cases regarded as a negative, *non* is superadded when a negative sense is required; as, *In quibus non dubito quin offensionem negligentie vitare atque effugere non possim*. Cic. *Dubitandum non est quin numquam possit utilitas cum honestate contendere*. Id.

NOTE 8. In Nepos, *non dubito*, in the sense of 'I do not doubt,' is always followed by the infinitive with the accusative, and the same construction often occurs in later writers but not in Cicero: in the sense of to scruple or hesitate, when the verb following has the same subject, *dubito* and *non dubito* are generally followed by the infinitive; as, *Cicero non dubitabat conjuratos supplicio afficere*.—It may be added that 'I doubt whether' is expressed in Latin by *dubito sitne*, *dubito utrum*—*an*, *dubito sitne*—*an*, or *dubito num*, *numquid*, for *dubito an*, and *dubium est an* are used, like *nescio an* with an affirmative meaning.

NOTE 9. *Quin* signifies also 'why not?' being compounded of the old ablative *qui* and *ne*, i. e. *non*, and in this sense is joined with the indicative in questions implying an exhortation; as, *Quin consendimus equos?* Why not mount our horses? In this sense it is also joined with the imperative; as, *Quin dicitur*, Well, tell me: or with the first person of the subjunctive. Hence without being joined to any verb it signifies 'even' or 'rather.'

REM. 11. The principal verbs of hinderance, after which *quominus* occurs, and after which *ne*, and, if a negative precedes, *quin* also may be used, are *deterreo*, *impedio*, *intercedo*, *obsto*, *obsto*, *officio*, *prohibeo*, *recuso*, and *repugno*. It occurs also after *stat* or *fit per me*, I am the cause, *non pugno*, *nihil moror*, *non contineo me*, etc.

NOTE. *Impedio*, *deterreo*, and *recuso* are sometimes, and *prohibeo* frequently followed by the infinitive. Instead of *quominus*, *quo scilicet* is sometimes used.



§ 263. The particles specified in this section always introduce a sentence containing only a conception of the mind, and are hence joined with the subjunctive.

1. The subjunctive is used after particles of wishing, as *utinam*, *ut*, *O* and *O'* *si*; as,

*Utinam mirus vitæ cupidî fuissēmus!* O that we had been less attached to life  
Cic. *O si solita quicquam virtutis âdesset!* Virg.

REMARK. The present and perfect tenses, after these particles, are used in reference to those wishes which are conceived as possible; the imperfect and pluperfect are employed in expressing those wishes which are conceived as wanting in reality. Cf. § 261, 1 and 2.—'Would that not' is expressed in Latin both by *utinam ne* and *utinam non*. *Utinam* is sometimes omitted; as, *Ticūm ludere sicut ipsa possem!* Catull.

## B. ADVERBIAL CLAUSES.

2. (1.) *Quamvis*, however; *licet*, although; *tamquam*, *tamquam si*, *quasi*, *ac si*, *ut si*, *vêlut*, *vêlut si*, *vêluti*, *sicûti*, and *ceu*, as if; *môdo*, *dum*, and *dummôdo*, provided,—take the subjunctive; as,

*Quamvis ille fêlix sit, tamen*, etc. However happy he may be, still, etc. Cic. *Vêritas licet nullum dēfensōrem obtineat*, Though truth should obtain no defender. Id. *Tamquam clausa sit Asia, sic nihil perfertur ad nos*. Id. *Sed quid ego his testibus ūtor*, quasi *res dūbia aut obscura sit?* Id. *Me omnibus rēbus, juxta ac si meus frâter esset, sustentârî*, He supported me in every thing, just as though he were my brother. Id. *Similiter facere eos*,—*ut si morte certarent, ūter*, etc. Id. *Absentis Ariovisti crudelitatem*, *vêlut si cōram âdesset, horrerent*. Cæs. *Inque sinus caros, vêtuti cognosceret, ibat*. Ovid. *Sicûti jurgos lâcessitus foret, in sēnātum vênit*. Sall. *Hic vêro ingentem pugnam, ceu cetera nusquam bella forent*. Virg. *Odêrint dum mētuant*. Att. in Cic. *Minent ingēni sēribus, môdo permâneat stīdium et industria*. Cic. *Omnia hōnesta negligunt dummôdo pōtēntiam consēquantur*. They disregard every honorable principle, provided they can obtain power. Id.

NOTE. *Môdo*, *dum*, and *dummôdo*, when joined with a negation, become *môdo ne*, *dum ne*, and *dummôdo ne*.

(2.) *Quamvis* (although) is in Cicero joined with a principal tense of the subjunctive; as, *Quamvis non fuêris suâsor, approbâtor certe fuisti*. Cic. In later writers it is often used with the indicative; as, *Fêlicem Niôben, quamvis tot funêra vidit*. Ovid. So also once in Cicero, *Quamvis patrem suum numquam vidêrat*. Rab. Post. 2.

(3.) *Quamvis*, as a conjunction, in the sense of 'however much,' is joined with the subjunctive. So also when its component parts are separated; as, *C. Gracchus dixit, sibi in somnis Tî. frâterem visum esse dicere*, quam vellet cunctârêtur, *tamen*, etc.—*Quamvis* 'however much,' as an adverb, governs no particular mood.

(4.) *Etsi*, *tâmetsi*, even if, although, and *quamquam*, although, commonly introduce an indicative clause:—*etiâmsi* is more frequently followed by the subjunctive. In later prose writers, and sometimes in Cicero and Sallust as well as in the poets, *quamquam* is joined with the subjunctive; as, *Quamquam præsente Lâcullo loquar*. Cic. *Vî rēgere patriam quamquam possis*. Sall. Jug. 8. *Filius quamquam Thêtdos mârinas Dardânas turres quâtêret*. Hor.

REMARK. The imperfect subjunctive with *ac si*, etc., is used after the present, to denote that in reality the thing is not so, but in that case a hypothetical subjunctive must be supplied; as, *Egnâtii rem ut tuere æque a te pêtô, ac si mea nêgôtia essent*, i. e. *ac pêtêrem, si mea nêgôtia essent*, as I would pray if etc. Cic.

3. After *antēquam* and *priusquam*, the imperfect and pluperfect tenses are usually in the subjunctive; the present and perfect may be either in the indicative or subjunctive. The present indicative is commonly used when the action is to be represented as certain, near at hand, or already begun; the subjunctive is used when the thing is still doubtful, and also in general propositions; as,

*Ea causa ante mortua est, quam tu nātus esses*, That cause was dead before you were born. Cic. *Avertit equos, priusquam pābula gustassent Trōiæ Xanthumque bibissent*. Virg. *Priusquam incipias, consulto opus est*, Before you begin there is need of counsel. Sall.

4. (1.) *Dum*, *dōnec*, and *quoad*, signifying *until*, are followed by the subjunctive, if they refer to the attainment of an object; as,

*Dum hic vēnret, locum relinquere nōluit*, He was unwilling to leave the place until he (Milo) should come. Cic. *Nihil puto tibi esse utilius quam opperriri quoad scire possis, quid tibi agendum sit*. Id. *Cornu tēdunt, et ducit longe, dōnec curvata cōirent inter se capita*. Virg.—In the sense of ‘as long as,’ these particles take the indicative, but Tacitus joins *dōnec* with the subjunctive even when a simple fact is to be expressed.

(2.) *Dum*, while, is commonly used with the indicative present, whatever may be the tense of the principal sentence. Cf. § 259, R. 1, (1.), (a.)

5. *Quum* (*cum*), when it signifies a *relation of time*, takes the indicative; when it denotes a *connection of thought*, the subjunctive; as,

*Qui non defendit injūriam, neque repulsat a suis, quum pōtest, injuste facit*. Cic. *Quum recte nāvigāri pōterit, tum nāvigas*. Id. *Crēdo tum, quum Sicilia florēbat opibus et cōpiis, magna artificia fuisse in eā insulā*. Id. *Quum tot sustineas et tanta nēgōtia, peccem, si mōrer tua tempora*, Since you are burdened with so many and so important affairs, I should do wrong, if I should occupy your time. Hor. *Quum vita sine amicis mētus plēna sit, ratiō ipsa mōnet amicitius comparāre*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) The rule for the use of *quum* may be thus expressed: *Quum temporal* takes the indicative, *quum causal* the subjunctive. Hence, when *quum* is merely a particle of time, with no reference to cause and effect, and not occurring in a historical narrative (see Rem. 2), it may be joined with any tense of the indicative. But when it is employed to express the relation of cause and effect, or has the meaning of ‘though’ or ‘although,’ it is joined with the subjunctive (b.) *Quum*, relating to time, is commonly translated *when*, *while*, or *after*; referring to a train of thought, it signifies *as*, *since*, *though* or *although*, *because*; but may often be translated *when*.

REM. 2. In narration, *quum*, even when it relates to time, is joined with the imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive, when a historical perfect stands in the principal clause; as,

*Gracchus, quum rem illum in religiōnem pōpulo vēnisse sentiret, ad sēnātum rēv. lū.* Cic. *Alexander, quum intērimisset Clitum, vix minus a se abstinuit*. Id.

NOTE. *Quum temporal*, when it expresses an action frequently repeated, may be joined with the pluperfect indicative, and the apodosis then contains the imperfect; as, *Quum autem vir esse cōpērat, dabat se ludōri*. Cic. *Quum vōcam vidērat, tum incipere ver arbitrabātur*. Id. Cf. § 264, 12.

REM. 3. *Quum* in the sense of ‘while’ is joined with the perfect and imperfect indicative, often with the addition of *intēra* or *intērim*, to express simultaneous occurrences; as, *Citātus cōpit magnum sue virtūtis fructum, quum omnes in ope ānā voce, in eo ipso vos spem hūbituros esse, dixistis*. Cic. *Quidēbātur virgīs*

in medio foro Messāna civis Rōmānus, iūctes, quam intērea nulla vox alia istius miserī audiēbātur, nisi haec: civis Rōmānus sum. Id.

REM. 4. *Quum*, for the most part preceded by an adverb, as, *iam*, *nondum*, *viz.* *egre*, or joined with *repente* or *subitō* is followed by the indicative, especially by the present indicative, to express the beginning of an action. In the cases mentioned in this and the preceding remark, the historians also use *quum* with the historical infinitive.

For the subjunctive after *et* and its compounds, see § 261.

### C. ADJECTIVE CLAUSES.

#### SUBJUNCTIVE AFTER QUI.

§ 264. Relatives require the subjunctive, when the clauses connected by them express merely a conception; as, for example, a *consequence*, an *innate quality*, a *cause*, *motive*, or *purpose*.

1 (a.) When the relative *qui*, in a clause denoting a *result* of the character or quality of something specified in the antecedent clause, follows a demonstrative, and is equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, it takes the subjunctive.

NOTE. The demonstratives after which *qui* takes the subjunctive, are *tam* with an adjective, *tantus*, *tālis*, *ejusmodi*, *hujusmodi*, and *is*, *ille*, *iste*, and *hic* in the sense of *tālis*; as,

*Quis est tam Lyncēus, qui in tantis tēnebris nihil offendat?* i. e. *ut ille in tantis*, etc., Who is so quick-sighted, that he would not stumble, (or, as not to stumble,) in such darkness. Cic. *Talem te esse oportet, qui ab impiōrum civium societate sejungas*; i. e. *ut tu*, etc. Id. *At ea fuit lēgatio Octāviī, in quā periculi suspicio non subesset*, i. e. *ut in eā*. Id. *Nec tamen ego sum ille ferreus, qui fratris carissimī morōre non mōvear*, i. e. *ut ego non mōvear*. Id. *Non sumus ī, quibus nihil verū esse videātur*, i. e. *ut nobis nihil*, etc. Id. *Nulla gens tam fēra est, cūjus mentem non imbuērīt deōrum opīnio*, i. e. *ut ejus mentem*, etc. Id.

(b.) Sometimes the demonstrative word is only implied; as,

*Res parva dictu, sed quae studiis in magnum certāmen excessērit*, i. e. *tālis res*....of such a kind that it issued in a violent contest. Cic. *Nunc dicis aliquid, quod ad rem pertineat*, i. e. *tāle ut id*, etc. Id. *So quis sum, for num tālis sum*; as, *Quis sum, cūjus aures laedi nēfas sit?* Sen.—In like manner, also, a demonstrative denoting a character or quality, is implied in the examples included in the following rule:—

2. When the relative is equivalent to *quamquam*, *is*, *etsi* *is*, or *dummodo* *is*, it takes the subjunctive; as,

*Laco, consilii quamvis egrēgii, quod non ipse afferret, inimicus*, Laco, an opponent of any measure, however excellent, provided he did not himself propose it. Tac. *Tu aquam a pumice postulas, qui ipsus sitiāt*. Plaut. *Nihil molestum, quod non dēsiderēs*, i. e. *dummodo id*. Cic.

3. *Quod*, in restrictive clauses, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Quod sciam*, as far as I know; *quod meminērim* as far as I recollect; *quod ego intelligam*; *quod intelligi possit*; *quod conjectūrā prōvidērē possit*; *quod salvā fide possin*; *quod commōdo tuo fiat*, etc.—*Quidem* is sometimes added to the relative in such sentences. *Quod sine molestiā tuā fiat*, So far as it can be done without troubling you. Cic. In the phrases *quantum possum*, *quantum ego peripicio*, on the other hand, the indicative is used.

4. A relative clause, after the comparative followed by *quam*, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Māior sum, quam cui possit fortuna nocēre, i. e. quam ut mihi, etc.,* I am too great for fortune to be able to injure me. Ovid. *Auditi vōce præconis māius gaudium fuit, quam quod universum hōmīnes capērent,* Upon the herald's voice being heard, the joy was too great for the people to contain. Liv.

REMARK 1. The clause annexed by *quam qui* implies an inherent quality, or a consequence; so that *quam qui* is equivalent to *quam ut*, which also sometimes occurs. Sometimes the subjunctive follows *quam* even without a relative pronoun; as, *In his lītēris longior fui, quam aut vellem, aut quam me putā fore*:—and so frequently with the verbs *velle* and *posse*.

5. A relative clause expressing a purpose, aim, or motive, and equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Lacedæmoniī lēgātōs Athēnas misērunt, qui eum absentem accūsārent*: i. e. *ut illi eum accūsārent*, The Lacedæmonians sent ambassadors to Athens to accuse him in his absence. Nep. *Cæsar equitātum omnem præmittit, qui videant, quis in partes iter faciāt.* Cæs. *Sunt autem multi, qui eripiunt aliis, quod aliis largiatur.* Cic. *Assidue repētant, quas perdant, Bēlides undas.* Ovid.

REM. 2. So also with relative adverbs; as, *Lampsacum ei (Thēmistocli) rex donārat, unde vinum sūmēret, i. e. ex quā or ut inde, etc.* Nep. *Sūper tabernaculum régis, unde ab omnibus conspēcti posset, imāgo solis crystallo inclūsa fulgebāt.* Curt.

6. A relative clause with the subjunctive after certain indefinite general expressions, specifies the circumstances which characterize the individual or class indefinitely referred to in the leading clause; as,

*Fuerunt eā tempestāte, qui dicērent,* There were at that time some who said. Sall. *Erant, quibus appetitior fāmæ, vidēretur,* There were those to whom he appeared too desirous of fame. Tac. *Sunt, qui censeant, una animū et corpus occidēre.* Cic. *Erunt, qui existimāri vellent.* Id. *Si quis erit, qui perpetuam orationem desideret, alterā actione audiet.* Id. *Veniēt legiōnes, quæ neque me inultum neque te impunitum patiantur.* Tac. So after *est* followed by *quod*, in the sense of 'there is reason why'; as, *Est quod gaudens,* You have cause to rejoice. Plaut. *Est quod visam domum.* Id. *Si est quod desit, ne beatus quidem est.* Cic.

NOTE 1. The expressions included in the rule are *est, sunt, adest, præsto sunt, existunt, exoriuntur, inveniuntur, repēriuntur*, (scil. hōmīnes); *si quis est, tempus fuit, tempus veniet, etc.*

REM. 3. The same construction occurs with relative particles used indefinitely; as, *Est unde hæc fiant. Si est culpam ut Antipho in se admisērit,* If it chance that, etc. Ter. *Est ubi id isto modo valeat.* Cic. So *est cur* and *est ut* in the sense of *est cur*, as, *Ille erat, ut odisset defensorem salutis meæ, i. e. he had reason to hate.* Cic. *Non est igitur ut mirandum sit,* There is no occasion for wondering. Id.

REM. 4. The above and similar expressions are followed by the subjunctive only when they are indefinite. Hence, after *sunt quidam, sunt nonnulli, sunt multi, etc.*, when referring to definite persons, the relative takes the indicative; as, *Sunt orationes quædam, quas Menocrito dabo.* Cic.

REM. 5. The indicative is sometimes, though rarely, used after *sunt qui* even when taken indefinitely, especially in the poets; as, *Sunt, quos iuvat.* Hor. *Sunt qui ita dicunt.* Sall.

7. A relative clause after a general negative, or an interrogative expression implying a negative, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Nemo est, qui haud intelligat*, There is no one who does not understand. *Cic. Nulla res est, quæ perferre possit continuum laborem*, There is nothing which can endure perpetual labor. Quint. *Nulla pars est corporis, quæ non sit minor* Id. *Nihil est, quod tam miseros faciat, quam impietas et scelus*. Cic. *In foro vix decimus quisque est, qui ipse sese noscat*. Plaut. *Quis est, qui utilis fugiat?* Who is there that shuns what is useful? Cic. *Quæ libéra est, in quam non intret metus mortis?* Sen. *Quid dulcius quam habere, quicum omnia audeas sic loqui ut tecum?* Cic. (See respecting this use of the indefinite *quicum* rather than the definite *quodcum*, § 13f, R. 1.) *An est quisquam, qui hoc ignoret?* Is there any one who is ignorant of this? Id. *Nunquid est malū, quod non dixeris?* Ter

NOTE 2. General negatives are *nemo, nullus, nihil, unus non, alius non, non quisquam, vir ullus, nec ullus*, etc., with *est*; *vix* with an ordinal and *quisque*; *nego esse quemquam*, etc. Interrogative expressions implying a negative, are *quis, quid; qui, quæ, quod* *quantus, uter, equis, numquis, an quisquam, an aliquis, quodvis quisque, quodvis, etc.* with *est*; *quot, quam multi*, etc., with *sunt*?

NOTE 3. The same construction is used after *non est, nihil est, quid est, numquid est*, etc., followed by *quod, cur, quare, or quomobrem*, and denoting 'there is no reason why,' 'what cause is there?' 'is there any reason?' as, *Quod times, non est*, There is no reason why you should fear. Ovid. *Nihil est, quod adventum nostrum pertimescas*. Cic. *Quid est, quod de ejus civitate dubites?* Id. *Quæris a me, quid ego Catinam metuum*. *Nihil, et curavi ne quis metuëret*. *Quid est, cur virtus ipsi per se non efficiat beatos?* Id.—So after *non habeo*, or *nihil habeo*; as, *Non habeo, quod te accusẽm*. Cic. *Nil habeo, quod agam*, I have nothing to do. Hor. *Nihil habeo, quod ad te scribam*. Cic. So without a negative, *De quibus habeo ipse, quid sentiam*. Id. *Causa* or, with *quid* and *nihil, causæ*, is sometimes added; as, *Non fuit causa, cur postulãres*. Id. *Quid erat causæ, cur metuëret*. Id.

NOTE 4. (a.) The relative clause takes the subjunctive after the expressions included in this and the last rule, only when it expresses the character or quality of the subject of the antecedent clause; and the relative, as in the preceding cases of the relative with the subjunctive, is equivalent to a personal or demonstrative pronoun with *ut*; as, *Nemo est, qui nesciat*, There is no one who is ignorant, i. e. no one is ignorant. Cic. So, *Sunt, qui hoc carpant*, There are some who blame this, i. e. some blame this. Vell.

(b.) If the relative clause is to be construed as a part of the logical subject it does not require the subjunctive; as, *Nihil stabile est, quod infidum est* Nothing which is faithless is firm. Cic.

8. (1.) A relative clause expressing the reason of what goes before, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Peccârissè mihi videor, qui a te discesserim*, I think I did wrong in leaving you. Cic. *Inertiam accusas adolescentium, qui istam artem non ediscant*, You blame the idleness of the young men, because they do not learn that art. Id. *O fortunatè adolescens, qui tuæ virtutis Hônorũ præconem inveneris!*—in having found. Id. *Cæcilius fuit mirificâ vigilantia, qui suo toto consiliũ somnũ non vidit*,—since, etc. Id.

(2.) Sometimes, instead of *qui* alone, *ut qui, quippe qui, or utpote qui*, is used, generally with the subjunctive; as,

*Omnivã cum patre non inibat, quippe qui ne in oppidum quidem nisi perarã reñisset*. Cic. *Næque Antonius procul aberat, utpote qui magno exercitũ sequeretur*. Sall. But sometimes with the indicative in Sallust and Livy; as, *Quippe qui omnia vicerat*. Sall.

9. After *dignus, indignus, aptus, and idoneus*, a relative clause takes the subjunctive; as,

*Videtur, qui aliquando impetret, dignus esse*, He seems to be worthy at some time to command. Cic. *Rustici nostri quum fidem auctoris bonitatemque laudant, dignum esse dicunt, quicum in tenebris miles*. Id. *Nudũ videbatur aptior per-*

4. A relative clause, after the comparative followed by *quam*, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Māior sum, quam cui possit fortuna nocere*, i. e. *quam ut mihi*, etc., I am too great for fortune to be able to injure me. Ovid. *Audita voce præconiā majus gaudium fuit, quam quod universum homines caperent*, Upon the herald's voice being heard, the joy was too great for the people to contain. Liv.

REMARK 1. The clause annexed by *quam qui* implies an inherent quality, or a consequence; so that *quam qui* is equivalent to *quam ut*, which also sometimes occurs. Sometimes the subjunctive follows *quam* even without a relative pronoun; as, *In his litēris longior fui, quam aut vellem, aut quam me potuissē fore*:—and so frequently with the verbs *velle* and *posse*.

5. A relative clause expressing a purpose, aim, or motive, and equivalent to *ut* with a personal or demonstrative pronoun, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Lacedæmonii legatos Athenas miserunt, qui eum absentem accusarent*: i. e. *ut illi eum accusarent*, The Lacedæmonians sent ambassadors to Athens to accuse him in his absence. Nep. *Cæsar equitatum omnem præmittit, qui videant, quis in partes iter faciant*. Cæsar. *Sunt autem multi, qui eripiunt aliis, quod aliis largiuntur*. Cic. *Assidue repētant, quas perdant, Bellides undas*. Ovid.

REM. 2. So also with relative adverbs; as, *Lampadum ei (Themistocli) rex donarat, unde vinum sumeret*, i. e. *ex quā* or *ut inde*, etc. Nep. *Super tibernaculum regis, unde ab omnibus conspecti posset, imago solis crystallo inclusa fulgebant*. Curt.

6. A relative clause with the subjunctive after certain indefinite general expressions, specifies the circumstances which characterize the individual or class indefinitely referred to in the leading clause; as,

*Fuerunt eā tempestāte, qui dicērent*, There were at that time some who said. Sall. *Erant, quibus appetentior fames, vidēretur*, There were those to whom he appeared too desirous of fame. Tac. *Sunt, qui censeant, una omnium et corpus occidere*. Cic. *Erunt, qui existimāri velint*. Id. *Si quis erit, qui perpetuam orationem desideret, alterā actione audiet*. Id. *Veniunt legiones, quæ neque me inultum neque te impunitum patiantur*. Tac. So after *est* followed by *quod*, in the sense of 'there is reason why'; as, *Est quod gaudens*, You have cause to rejoice. Plaut. *Est quod visam domum*. Id. *Si est quod desit, ne beatus quidem est*. Cic.

NOTE 1. The expressions included in the rule are *est, sunt, adest, præsto sunt, existunt, exoriantur, inveniuntur, reperiuntur*, (scil. homines); *si quis est, tempus fuit, tempus veniet*, etc.

REM. 3. The same construction occurs with relative particles used indefinitely; as, *Est unde hæc fiant*. *Si est culpam ut Antipho in se admisit*, If it chance that, etc. Ter. *Est ubi id isto modo valeat*. Cic. *So est cur and est ut* in the sense of *est cur*, as, *Ille erat, ut odisset defensorem salutis mee*, i. e. he had reason to hate. Cic. *Non est igitur ut mirandum sit*, There is no occasion for wondering. Id.

REM. 4. The above and similar expressions are followed by the subjunctive only when they are indefinite. Hence, after *sunt quidam, sunt nonnulli, sunt multi*, etc., when referring to definite persons, the relative takes the indicative; as, *Sunt orationes quædam, quas Menocrito dabo*. Cic.

REM. 5. The indicative is sometimes, though rarely, used after *sunt qui* even when taken indefinitely, especially in the poets; as, *Sunt, quos juvat*. Hor. *Sunt qui ita dicunt*. Sall.

7. A relative clause after a general negative, or an interrogative expression implying a negative, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Nemo est, qui haud intelligat*, There is no one who does not understand. Cic. *Nulla res est, quæ perferre possit continuum libèrem*, There is nothing which can endure perpetual labor. Quint. *Nulla pars est corporis, quæ non sit minor* Id. *Nihil est, quod tam miseros faciat, quam impietas et scelus*. Cic. *In forma vix decimus quisque est, qui ipsus sese noscat*. Plaut. *Quis est, qui utilia fugiat?* Who is there that shuns what is useful? Cic. *Quæ libèra est, in quam non intret metus mortis?* Sen. *Quid dulcius quam habere, quicquid omnia audeas sic loqui ut tecum?* Cic. (See respecting this use of the indefinite *quicum* rather than the definite *quodcum*, § 136, R. 1.) *An est quisquam, qui hoc ignoret?* Is there any one who is ignorant of this? Id. *Nunquid est mali, quod non dixeris?* Ter

NOTE 2. General negatives are *nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil*, *unus non*, *alius non*, *non quisquam* viz *ullus*, *nec ullus*, etc., with *est*: viz with an ordinal and *quisque*; *nego esse quemquam* etc. Interrogative expressions implying a negative, are *quis*, *quid*; *qui*, *quæ*, *quod* *quantus*, *utrum*, *equius*, *numquid*, *an quisquam*, *an aliquis*, *quidus quisque*, *quidus*, etc. with *est*? *quot*, *quanti*, etc., with *sunt*?

NOTE 3. The same construction is used after *non est*, *nihil est*, *quid est*, *nim-quid est*, etc., followed by *quod*, *cur*, *quære*, or *quomobrem*, and denoting 'there is no reason why,' 'what cause is there?' 'is there any reason?' as, *Quod times, non est*, There is no reason why you should fear. Ovid. *Nihil est, quod adventum nostrum pertimescas*. Cic. *Quid est, quod de ejus civitate dubites?* Id. *Queris a me, quid ego Catinam metuum*. *Nihil, et curavi ne quis metueret*. *Quid est, cur virtus ipsa per se non efficiat beatos?* Id.—So after *non habeo*, or *nihil habeo*; as, *Non habeo, quod te accuserem*. Cic. *Nil habeo, quod agam*, I have nothing to do. Hor. *Nihil habeo, quod ad te scribam*. Cic. So without a negative, *De quibus habeo ipse, quid sentiam*. Id. *Causa* or, with *quid* and *nihil*, *causæ*, is sometimes added; as, *Non fuit causa, cur postulares*. Id. *Quid erat cause, cur metueret*. Id.

NOTE 4. (a.) The relative clause takes the subjunctive after the expressions included in this and the last rule, only when it expresses the character or quality of the subject of the antecedent clause; and the relative, as in the preceding cases of the relative with the subjunctive, is equivalent to a personal or demonstrative pronoun with *ut*; as, *Nemo est, qui nesciat*, There is no one who is ignorant, i. e. no one is ignorant. Cic. So, *Sunt, qui hoc carpant*, There are some who blame this, i. e. some blame this. Vell.

(b.) If the relative clause is to be construed as a part of the logical subject it does not require the subjunctive; as, *Nihil stabile est, quod infidum est* Nothing which is faithless is firm. Cic.

8. (1.) A relative clause expressing the reason of what goes before, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Peccasse mihi videor, qui a te discesserim*, I think I did wrong in leaving you. Cic. *Inertiam accusas adolescentium, qui istam artem non ediscant*, You blame the idleness of the young men, because they do not learn that art. Id. *O fortunata adolescens, qui tue virtutis Honorum præconem inveneris!*—in having found. Id. *Canius fuit mirifica vigilantiâ, qui suo toto consilio somnum non viderit*,—since, etc. Id.

(2.) Sometimes, instead of *qui* alone, *ut qui*, *quippe qui*, or *utpote qui*, is used, generally with the subjunctive; as,

*Omnia cum patre non inibat, quippe qui ne in oppidum quidem nisi per ardua cerneret*. Cic. *Næque Antonius procul aberat, utpote qui magno exercitu sequeretur*. Sall. But sometimes with the indicative in Sallust and Livy; as, *Quippe qui omnia viderat*. Sall.

9. After *dignus*, *indignus*, *aptus*, and *idoneus*, a relative clause takes the subjunctive; as,

*Videtur, qui aliquando imperet, dignus esse*, He seems to be worthy at some time to command. Cic. *Rustici nostri quum fidem ducimus bonitatemque laudamus, dignum esse dicunt, quicum in tenebris miles*. Id. *Nihil videbatur aptius per-*

*sōna, quæ de cœtate lōquērātur.* Id. *Pompeius Idōneus non est, qui impetret.* Id. *Et rem Idōneam, de quā quērātur, et hōmīnes dignos, quibuscum dissērātur, pūtant.* Id.

NOTE 5. If the relative clause does not express that of which the person or thing denoted by the antecedent is worthy, its construction is not influenced by this rule. Thus, *Quis servus libertate dignus fuit, cui nostra salus cœra non esset?* The subjunctive is here used according to No. 7 of this section.

NOTE 6. The infinitive frequently follows these adjectives in poetry, though rarely in prose; as, *Et puer ipse fuit cantāri dignus.* Virg.:—and sometimes; as, *Erus dignus, ut hābēres integram mānum.* Quint.

10. A relative clause, after *ūnus, sōlus, primus, etc.*, restricting the affirmation to a particular subject, takes the subjunctive; as,

*Hec est ūna contentio, quæ adhuc permānsērīt.* This is the only dispute which has remained till this time. Cic. *Voluptas est sōla, quæ nos vōcet ad se, et allūcent suapte nutiārā.* Pleasure is the only thing that, by its own nature, invites and allures us to itself. Id.

11. When the relative refers to a *dependent clause*, it often takes the subjunctive. See § 266.

12. The imperfect and pluperfect subjunctive are used in narration after relative pronouns and adverbs, when a repeated action is spoken of; as,

*Semper hābiti sunt fortissimī, qui summam impērii pōtrentur.* Those were always accounted the bravest, who obtained the supreme dominion. Nep. *Quemcumque lictor jussu consulis prēhendisset, tribūnus mitti jubēbat.* Liv. *Ut quisque maxime laborāret locus, aut ipse occurrēbat, aut aliquos mittēbat.* So after *si quis* or *qui*; as, *Si qui rem multoſius gessisset, dēdērus existimābant.* Cic. *Quotiens super tāli negotio consultāret, editā domūs parte ūtēbātur.* Tac. *Nec quisquam Pyrrhum, quā tūlisset impētum, sustinere vāluit.*—It is sometimes found in like manner after *quum, ubi, ut, and si* when used in the sense of *quum*, when repeated actions are spoken of; as, *Id ūbi dixisset, hastam in fines eōrum emittēbat.* Liv. *Sin Nūmide prōpius accessissent, tibi vērō virtutē ostendēre.* Sall. Sometimes even the present subjunctive is so used when employed as an aorist to express things which have happened repeatedly, and still happen (see § 145, I. 2.); as, *Ubi de magnā virtute et glōriā bonōrum mēmōres, quæ sibi quisque, etc.* Sall.

NOTE 7. This is called the *indefinite subjunctive*, or *subjunctive of generality*, inasmuch as the action is not referred to a distinct, individual case. The indicative, however, is used in such cases more frequently than the subjunctive.

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

§ 265. Dependent clauses, containing an indirect question, take the subjunctive.

NOTE 1. A question is indirect when its substance is stated in a dependent clause without the interrogative form. Indirect questions generally depend upon those verbs and expressions which commonly take after them the accusative with the infinitive. Cf. § 272. Thus:—

*Quālis sit animus, ipse animus nescit.* The mind itself knows not what the mind is. Cic. *Crēdibile non est, quantum scribam.* It is incredible how much I write. Id. *Quis ego sim, me rōgitas?* Do you ask me who I am? Plaut. *Ad te quid scribam nescio.* Cic. *Nec quid scribam hābeo.* Nor have I any thing to write. Id. *Dōce me, ūbi sint dīi.* Inform me where the gods are. Id. *Incertum est, quo te lōco mors exspectet.* Sen. Ep. *Quam pridem sibi hērēditas vēisset, accēpit.* Id. *Nunc accēpe, quāre dēcipiant omnes.* Hrr. *Id utrum illi sentiant, as*



*p̄ro s̄m̄l̄ent, tu intelliges.* Cic. *Quaro, num tu s̄n̄atui causam tuam permittas.* Id. *Vides, ut altā stet n̄ve candīdum S̄racte.* Hor. *Nescit, v̄id̄ue fruātur, an sit apud mānes.* Ovid.

NOTE 2. All interrogatives whether adjectives, pronouns, or particles, may serve as connectives of clauses containing indirect questions; as,

*Quantus, quālis, quōt, quōtus, quōst̄plex, āter; quis, qui, cūjās; ūbi, quō, unde, quā quorūm, quāmdū, quāmdūm, quāmp̄idem, quōties, cur, quāre, quāmb̄rem, quāmd̄m, quōmōdo, ut, quā, quāntōp̄re, an, ne, num, utrum, anne, annon.*

REMARK 1. The indicative is frequently used in dependent questions, especially in Terence and Plautus and occasionally in later poets; as, *Vide d̄ar̄t̄u q̄uid f̄acit.* Ter. So Virg. *Ecl.* 5, 7. In the best prose writers the indicative generally indicates that the question is direct, or that the sentence is not a question; as, *Querāmus ūbi m̄l̄ef̄icium est,* Let us seek there, where the crime actually is. Cic. *Nihil est admirābilis, quā quōmōdo ille mortem f̄il̄i t̄l̄it.*

REM. 2. In double questions, 'whether—or,' the first may be introduced by *utrum*, or the enclitic *ne*, or without an interrogative particle. Hence there are four forms of double questions,—1. *utrum* (or *utrum ne*),—*u. n.* 2. *utrum,—an* (*anne*). 3. *ne,—an.* 4. *ne,—ne*; as, *Multum int̄est, utrum laus imminuātur, an s̄l̄us d̄s̄s̄r̄atur.* Cic. The interrogative particle *utrum* is not used in a single question; and *num—an* is used only in direct questions. The English 'or not' in the second part, which is used without a verb, is expressed in Latin by *annon* or *necne*, either with or without a verb; but *necne* occurs only in indirect questions; as, *Dii utrum sint, necne sint, queritur.* Cic.—*Ne—ne, an—an, or num—num* scarcely occur except in poetical or unclassical language.

REM. 3. *Dūb̄to, dūb̄ium est, or incertum est an, d̄l̄ib̄ero* or *h̄s̄t̄o an*, and especially *haud scio an, nescio an*, though implying some doubt, have generally a sense almost affirmative. Compare § 198, 11, R. (e.)

REM. 4. *Nescio quis*, used nearly in the sense of *āliquis*, does not influence the mood of the following verb; as, *Sed c̄asu nescio quo in ea t̄p̄ora c̄elus n̄tra incidit.* Cic. *Lūrus, nescio quo c̄asu, nocturno t̄p̄ore incensus est.* Nep. So, also, *nescio quōmōdo*, 'somehow' or 'in some way'; as, *Sed nescio quōmōdo, inh̄eret in mentibus quāsi augūrium.* Cic. In like manner *mirum quā, mirum quāntum, n̄m̄um quāntum*, and the like, when united to express only one idea, do not affect the mood of the verb; as, *Sāles in dicendo n̄m̄um quāntum v̄il̄ent*,—very much. Cic

## SUBJUNCTIVE IN INSERTED CLAUSES.

§ 266. 1. When a dependent proposition containing either an accusative with the infinitive, or a verb in the subjunctive, has a clause connected with it, as an *essential part*, either by a relative, a relative adverb, or a conjunction, the verb of the latter clause is put in the subjunctive; as,

*Quid enim p̄t̄est esse tam perspicuum, quā esse āliquod n̄men, quo h̄c r̄ḡantur?* For what can be so clear as, that there is some divinity by whom these things are governed? Cic. Here the thing which is stated to be clear is, not merely *esse āliquod n̄men*, that there is a god, but also that the world is governed by him. Hence the latter clause, *quo h̄c r̄ḡantur* is an essential part of the general proposition. *Illud sic f̄ere d̄f̄iniri s̄let, d̄v̄ōrum id esse, quā consentāneum sit h̄m̄inis excellentīe.* Id. *Audiam quid sit, quod Epicūrum non v̄ob̄es,* I shall hear why it is that you do not approve of Epicurus Id. *Jussit ā, quā v̄enissent, n̄ves Eub̄eum p̄l̄erent.* Liv.

REMARK 1. Hence the subjunctive is used in general sentences, in which the class of things mentioned exists only as a conception or idea, while the individual thing has a real existence; as, *Est enim ulciscendi et puniendi mōtus atque haud scio an sātis sit eum qui lācesserit injūriis suās pōnēre*, i. e. each individual offender of the class.

REM. 2. When the principal proposition contains a subjunctive denoting a result, after *ita*, *tam*, *ut*, *ut*, etc., the inserted clause has the indicative; as, *Asia vērō tam optima est et fertilis, ut—multitudine eārum rerum, quæ exportantur facile omnibus terris antecellat*. Cic. The same is the case in definitions; as *Vidērs igitur oportet, quæ sint convēnientia cum ipso nēgōtio, hoc est, quæ ab re spārāre non possunt*. Cic.—So also explanatory clauses, especially circumlocutions introduced by a relative pronoun, are sometimes found with the indicative; as, *Itaque ille Mārius item eximie L. Plōtium dilexit, cūjus ingēnio pātēbat ea, quæ gesserāt, posse celebrāri*. Cic.

NOTE. To this rule belongs the construction of the *ōrātiō obliqua*, 'indirect discourse,' or 'reported speech,' in which the language of another is presented, not as it was conceived or expressed by him, but in the third person. Thus Cæsar said, 'I came, I saw, I conquered,' is direct,—Cæsar said, that 'he came, saw, and conquered,' is indirect discourse.

2. In the *ōrātiō obliqua*, the main proposition is expressed by the accusative with the infinitive; and dependent clauses connected with it by relatives and particles, take the subjunctive.

Thus, Cicero and Quintilian, in quoting the language of Marcus Antonius, make use, the former of the *ōrātiō directa*, the latter of the *ōrātiō obliqua*;—*Antōnius inquit, 'Ars eārum rerum est, quæ sciuntur'*, Antonius says, 'Art belongs to those things which are known.' Cic. *Antōnius inquit, artem eārum rerum esse, quæ sciuntur*, Antonius says, that 'art belongs to those things which are known.' Quint.

So, *Sōcrātes dicere solēbat, omnes, in eo quod scirent, sātis esse eloquentes*, Socrates was accustomed to say, that 'all were sufficiently eloquent in that which they understood?' Cic. *Cito mirārī se aiēbat, quod non ridēret hāruspe, hāruspicem quum vidisset*. Id. *Nēquē jus esse, qui miles non sit, pugnāre cum hoste*. Id. *Indignābantur ibi esse impērium, ubi non esset libertas*. Liv. *Itaque Athēniēnses quod hōnestum non esset, id ne ūtile quidem (esse) putāvērunt*. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) When the subjunctive would be necessary in the *ōrātiō directa*, to denote liberty, power, etc., the same remains in the *ōrātiō obliqua*, and is not changed into the infinitive with an accusative; as, *Ad hēc Ariovistus respondit, quum vellet, congrēderētur*. To this Ariovistus replied, that 'he might meet him when he pleased.' Cæs. In the *ōrātiō directa*, this would be *congrēdi dīcāris*.

(b.) The imperative in the *ōrātiō directa* is, in the *ōrātiō obliqua*, changed into the subjunctive; as, *hoc mihi dicite*, which in the *ōrātiō obliqua* is, *hoc sibi dicant*, or *hoc sibi dicērent*, according to the tense of the leading verb.

(c.) So also direct questions addressed to the second person, when changed from direct to indirect speech, become subjunctives. Liv. 6, 37.—But such questions when not addressed to the second person are expressed in the *ōrātiō obliqua* by the accusative with the infinitive; as when in direct speech we say, *Etiam si vērēis contumēlie oblivisci relin, num possum etiam rēcentium injūriarum mēmōriam dīpōnēre?* The *ōrātiō obliqua* will be, *Cæsar respondit (histor. perf.)—si vērēis contumēlie oblivisci vellet, num etiam rēcentium injūriarum—mēmōriam dīpōnēre possē?* Cæs. Very rarely the accusative with the infinitive is found in a question of the second person, as in Liv. 6, 17: but the subjunctive in questions of the third person is less uncommon in Cæsar; as, *Quis pātī possēt? for quem pātī possē? Quis hoc sibi persuāderet? for quem sibi persuāsūrum?* See § 273, 3.

REM. 2. A writer may state his own past words or thoughts in *ōrātiō obliqua* either preserving the first person, or adopting the third.

REM. 3. When the inserted clause contains the words or sentiments of the subject of the leading clause, all references to him are regulariv expressed by the reflexives *sui* and *suis*; as, *Huc necessitate conctus domino nūris qui si apertit resulla pollicens, si se conservasset.* Nep. And this is equally true when the word to which the pronoun refers is not in reality the grammatical subject, provided it may still be conceived as such; as, *Quum ei in suspiciōnem venisset, aliquid in epistolā de se esse scriptum.* Nep.; for the words, *quum ei in suspiciōnem venisset*, are equivalent to *quum suspicārētur*. See § 208, (1.)

REM. 4. The tenses to be used in changing the *oratio directā* into the *obliqua*, depend on the tense of the verb which introduces the quotation, according to the rule, § 258. But when the future perfect would be used in the direct, the pluperfect is necessary in the oblique form; but the perfect is used after the present, perfect definite, or future.

REM. 5. When the connected clause contains merely a descriptive circumstance, or expresses what is independent of the sentiment of the preceding clause, it takes the indicative; as, *Impēravit Alexander Lysippo, ut eorum equitum, qui apud Granicum ceciderant, faceret statuas,* Alexander ordered Lysippus to make statues of those horsemen who had fallen at the Granicus. Sometimes, in other cases, when it is evident from the sense, that the connected clause is an essential part of the proposition, the indicative is used, to avoid giving the appearance of contingency to the sentence.

3. A clause connected to another by a relative or causal conjunction, takes the subjunctive, (whatever be the mood of the preceding verb,) when it contains not the sentiment or allegation of the writer, but that of some other person alluded to; as,

*Socrates accusatus est, quod corrumpere juvenutem,* Socrates was accused of corrupting the youth, lit., because (as was alleged) he corrupted the youth. *Deum invocabant, cujus ad solenne venissent,* They invoked the god, to whose solemnities they had come. Liv. *Quos vicēris amicos tibi esse care credas,* Do not believe that those whom you have conquered are your friends. Here, in the first example, the charge of corrupting the youth is not made by the writer, but by the accusers of Socrates. So, in the second example, the worshippers allege that they have come to attend upon the solemnities of the god. In the last, it is implied by the use of the subjunctiv mood, that the belief spoken of is that of the person addressed:—*quos vicisti* would have been merely an addition of the speaker, by means of which he would have designated the persons whose friendship he was speaking of; and, in general, the *indicative*, in such sentences, is employed in those statements which are independent of the sentiments of the person, to whose thoughts or words allusion is made. Cf. supra, 2, R. 5.

REMARK. In the preceding cases, it is not directly said that the sentiments are those of another than the writer. In Cicero, however, the words *duo*, *pūto*, *arbitror*, and the like, are often construed in a similar manner, although, properly speaking, not these verbs, but those in the clauses dependent on them, should be in the subjunctive; as, *Quum enim, Hannibālīs permissu, exisset de castris, rediit paulo post, quod se oblitum nescio quid dicere*,...because (as) he said, he had forgotten something. Cic. *Ab Athēniensibus, licum sepulchrū intra urbem ut darent, impetrare non potui, quod religione se impēdiri dicērent.* Id.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

§ 267. The imperative mood is used to express a *command*, *wish*, *advice*, or *exhortation*; as,

*Nosce te,* Know thyself. Cic. *Æquam memento serare mentem,* Remember to preserve an unruffled mind. Hor. *Huc ades, Come hither.* Virg. *Pasce cavellas, et potum pastus age, et inter agendum occurrere capro cūveto.* Id.

(1.) The imperative *present* denotes that an action is to be performed directly or at once; as, *lêge*, read; *môrere*, die; or that a state or condition is to continue; as, *vive*, live.

(2.) The imperative *future* denotes that something is to be done, as soon as something else has taken place; as, *Quum vâlêtudinê tuâ consûlueris, tum consûlito nâvigâtioni*. Cic. *Prius audite paucis; quôd quum dixero, si placuerit, faciôtis*. Ter. The precedent event is often to be supplied by the mind. Sometimes, especially in poetry, the imperative present is used for the imperative future, and, on the other hand, *scito* and *scîtote*, from *scio*, are used instead of the imperative present, which is wanting.

(3.) Hence the imperative future is properly used in *contracts, laws, and wills*; and also in *precepts and rules of conduct*; as, *Régio império duo sunt, ñque consûles* appellantor, *militiæ summum jus habent, nêmini pãrento, illis sâlus pópuli suprema lex esto*. Cic. *Non sâlus est pulchra esse poemãta, dulciora sunt*. Hor. *Ignosceito sepe altêri, numquam tibi*. Syr.

REMARK 1. With the imperative, *not* is expressed by *nê*, and *nor* by *nêve*; as,

*Ne tantis animis assuescite bella*. Virg. *Ne crêde cõlõri*. Id. *Hõminem mortuum in urbe ne sêpêlito, nêve ùrto*. Cic.

NOTE. *Non* and *nêque* occur, though rarely, with the imperative; as, *Vos quôque non caris aures onêrâte lãpillis, nec prôdite grãves insũto vestibus auro*. Ovid. But with the subjunctive used for the imperative *non* and especially *nêque* are found more frequently. Cf. § 260, R. 6, (b.).—In Plautus and Terence *ne* is of common occurrence both with the imperative and with the present subjunctive, and with no difference of meaning; but later poets chiefly use *ne* with the present subjunctive, and *ne* with the imperative only when they speak emphatically. In classical prose writers the periphrastic *nõli* with the infinitive is preferred.

REM. 2. The present and perfect subjunctive are often used instead of both tenses of the imperative, to express a command in a milder form, an exhortation, or an entreaty; as, *Qui adpisci vëram glõriam völet, justitiã fungãtur officiis*. Cic. *Quod dubitas, ne facêris*. Plin. Ep. See § 260, II., R. 6. An imperative of the perfect passive is very rarely found; as, *At vos admõniti nostris quôque cõsibus este*. Ovid. *Jacta ãlea esto*. Cæs. in Suet. But the subjunctive is more common; as, *Jacta sit ãlea*. Sometimes also the future indicative; as, *Sed vâlêbis, meãque nêgõtia vidêbis, mêque diis juvântibus ante brãmã expectãbis*, instead of *vãle, vide, expecta*. Cic. *Ubi sententiam meam vobis përrêgëro, tum quibus eãdem placêbunt, in dextram partem tãciti transibitis*, instead of *transibite*. Liv. With the future the negative is *non*. See § 259, R. 1, (4.)

REM. 3. Sometimes, for the simple affirmative imperative, *cãra* or *cãrãto ut, fac ut*, or *fac* alone is used with the subjunctive; as, *Cãra ut quam primum vënia, Come as soon as possible*. *Fac erûdius*, Instruct, or Take care to instruct. Cic. For the negative imperative *fac ne, cãve ne* or *cãve* alone, with the present or perfect subjunctive is used; but especially *nõli* with the infinitive; as, *Nõli putãre*, Do not suppose. Cic. *Cãve existimes*, Do not think. Id. *Nõlite id velle quod non fiêri pôtest, et cãvêto ne spe pãsentis pãcis perpëtugã pãcem õmittãtis*. Id.

## INFINITIVE MOOD.

### OF THE TENSES OF THE INFINITIVE.

§ 268. 1. The infinitive partakes of the properties of the noun and verb, just as the participle combines the properties of the adjective and verb. It expresses simply the action or state implied in the verb in an abstract manner, without specifying either person, number, or time, and thus merely indicates whether an action is in progress or completed.

2. The tenses of the infinitive denote respectively an action as present, past, or future, in reference to the time of the verbs with which they are connected; as,

*Hoc facere possum*, I am able to do this. Cic. *Vidi nostros inimicos cupere bellum*, I saw that our enemies were desiring war. Id. *Nec gemere acria cessabit turtur ab ulmo*, Nor shall the turtle dove cease to coo from the lofty elm. Virg.—*Victorem victæ succubuisse queror*, I complain that the victor has yielded to the vanquished. Ovid. *Se a sentibus audisse dicabant*, They said that they had heard (it) from the old men. Cic. *Audiet citæ acuisse ferrum juvenis*, The youth will hear that the citizens have whetted the sword. Hor.—*Negat esse verbum esse facturum*, He declares that he is not about to speak. Cic. *Postquam audierat non datum iri filio uxorem suo*, After he had heard that a wife would not be given to his son. Ter. *Semper existimabitis nihil horum vos visuros fore*, You will always suppose that you are to see none of these things. Cic.

REMARK 1. (a.) The present and perfect infinitives are sometimes called respectively the infinitives of *incomplete* and of *completed* action. The present infinitive, however, is sometimes used to denote a completed action. This is the usual construction with *memini*; but in such case the speaker transfers himself to the past, and the expression denotes rather a recollection of the progress than of the completion of the action; as, *Hoc me memini dicere*, I remember my saying this. Cic. *Teucrum memini Sicióni venire*, I remember Teucer's coming to Sición. Virg. So with *memoria teneo*. Cic. Phil. 8, 10. *Scribit* also is construed like *memini*; as, Cic. Off. 3, 2: and after the same analogy, and for the sake of vivid expression Cicero says, *M. Maximum accipimus facile cedere, tacere, dissimulare*, etc., though speaking of things which he had not witnessed himself. So, also, with *recordor*;—*Recordor longe omnibus unum anteferre Demosthenem*. Cic. When the action is spoken of simply as a fact, the perfect infinitive is used with *memini*; as, *Meministis me ita distribuisse causam*. Cic.

(b.) The passive voice having no simple form for expressing the completed state of suffering makes use of the combination of the perfect participle with *esse*; as, *amatus esse*, to have been loved. When thus combined *esse* loses its own signification of a continued state, and when this state is to be expressed, another infinitive must be chosen; as, *Constrictam jam horum conscientia teneri conjurationem tuam non rides?* Cic. Sometimes, however, when no ambiguity can arise, *esse* in the usual combination retains its original meaning as, *Apua Platonem est, omnem morem Lucæmendiciorum inflammatum esse cupiditate vincendi*. Id. Here *inflammatum esse* expresses a continued or habitual state.—*Fuisse* with the perfect participle denotes a state completed previous to a certain past time; as, *Subet bono animo esse; sopitum fuisse regem subito ictu*. Liv.

REM. 2. To express the result of an action rather than its progress, the perfect infinitive is sometimes used instead of the present, especially after *satis habeo*, *satis mihi est*, *pulet*, *contentus sum*, *melius erit*, *rolo* or a verb of equivalent meaning; as, *Buchatur rates, magnum si pectore possit excussisse deum*. Virg. *Quum illum nemo vellet attingisse*. Plin. The poets use the infinitive perfect where we should expect a present; as, *Tendentes Pélion impoisse Olympo*. Hor.

REM. 3. The present infinitive is also sometimes used for the future, especially when the verb has no future; as, *Disine fata deum flecti sperare*, *Cesse* to hope that the fates of the gods will be changed. Virg. *Progeniem Trójano a sanguine duci audib. ut*. Id. *Crus mihi argentum dare dixit, i. e. se daturum esse*. Ter. *Cato affirmat se vivo illum non triumphare*. Cic.

REM. 4. (a.) The infinitive future active is formed by a combination of the participle future active with *esse*; as, *amaturus esse*; the infinitive future passive by a combination of the supine in *um* with *iri*; as, *amatum iri*. These future infinitives denote an action or state as continuing. The participle in *urus*, which properly expresses intention (see § 162, 14), takes also the infinitive *fuisse* to express a past intention; as, *Scio te scripturum fuisse*, I know that

you have had the intention to write, whence it was an easy transition to the sense, 'you would have written,' in conditional sentences, when the condition is not fulfilled. This infinitive is used especially in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences, where in direct speech the pluperfect subjunctive would be used (cf. § 162, 14, R. 3.); as, *Etiamsi obtempérasset auspiciis, idem evenitūrus fuisse puto*. Cic. In like manner the infinitive future with *esse* is used in the apodosis of hypothetical sentences instead of the imperfect subjunctive; as, *Abertus, nisi iurasset, scelus se factūrum (esse) arbitrabātur*. Id.

(b.) Instead of the future infinitive, in both voices, *futūrum esse* or *fore* followed by *ut* and the subjunctive, is often used; the present and imperfect subjunctive, in such cases, denoting an unfinished, the perfect and pluperfect a finished, future action; as, *Numquam putāri fore, ut supplex ad te venirem*, I never supposed (that it would happen) that I should come a suppliant to you. Cic. *Suspīcor fore, ut infringātur hōmīnum imprōbitus*. Id. *Crēdibam fore, ut epistolam scripsisses*.—So, also, in the passive for a continued state of future suffering the present and imperfect are used; as, *Crēdo fore, ut epistolam scribātur*, and, *Crēdēbam fore, ut epistola scribērētur*. But to express a completed state in future time the perfect participle is employed; as, *Quos spēro brēvi tempore tecum cōpulātos fore*. Cic. *Quod cīdēret nōmine pāris bellum involūtum fore*. Id. This construction is necessarily used, when the verb has either no future active participle, or no supine; as, in such case, the regular future infinitive cannot be formed; as, *Spēro fore ut sapius*.—*Fore* is found in two passages pleonastically joined with the future participle active, viz. *Te ad me fore ventūrum*. Cic. Att. 5, 21: and *Quum sēnātus censēret—libenter factūros fore*. Liv. 6, 42.

REM. 5. (a.) The periphrastic infinitive formed by the future active participle with *fuisse*, denotes a future action contingent upon a condition which was not fulfilled; and, in the apodosis of a conditional sentence, corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; as, *An censes me tantos labōres susceptūrum fuisse, si isdem finibus glōriam meam quibus vitam essem terminātūrus?* Do you think that I should have undertaken so great labors if, etc. Cic. *Ut pergracuum sit omnibus, nisi tanta acribitas injū ia fuisset, numquam illos in eum locum prōgressūros fuisse*,....that they never would have come into that place. Id.

(b.) *Futūrum fuisse* with *ut* and the imperfect subjunctive passive, corresponds to the infinitive *fuisse* with the future participle active in a conditional proposition; as, *Nisi nuncū essent allātī, existimābant plerique futūrum fuisse, ut oppidum amittērētur*,....that the town would have been lost. Cæs.

(c.) The participle future passive cannot be used to form an infinitive future passive, since it always retains the meaning of necessity, and in this sense has three regular infinitives, *amandum esse*, *amandum fuisse*, and *amandum fore*; as, *Instare hiemem, aut sub pellibus habēndos milites fore, aut diffērendum esse in aetātem bellum*. Liv.

REM. 6. In the apodosis of a conditional sentence, the perfect infinitive, like the past tenses of the indicative, (see § 259, R. 4.), sometimes corresponds to the pluperfect subjunctive; as, (*Dixit*) *sibi vitam filiae suae cariorē fuisse, si liberæ ac pūlicæ vivere licitum fuisset*, (He said) that the life of his daughter had been dearer to him than his own, if it had been permitted.... Liv. This use of the perfect infinitive is necessary, when the verb has no future participle; as, *Equitem Plūtōnem existimo, si gēnus fōrense dicendi tractāre voluisset, grātissimē et cōpiōsissimē pōtuisse dicere*,—would have been able to speak. Cic.

§ 269. The infinitive may be regarded either as a verb or as an abstract noun. (a.) As a verb it is used either indefinitely (§ 143, 4), or with a subject of its own, which is put in the accusative, (§ 239). But the infinitive passive of neuter and sometimes of active verbs, like the third person singular of that voice, may be used impersonally or without a subject; as, *Vides totā prōpāri lībrē*, You see a stir is made all along the shore. Virg. See §§ 209 R. 3, (2), and 239, R. 4. The present infinitive has sometimes, in narration, a subject in the nominative. See § 209, R. 5.

(b.) As a noun, the infinitive, either alone or with a subject accusative, has two cases, the nominative and the accusative, and is accordingly used either as the subject or the object of a verb.

# THE INFINITIVE AS THE SUBJECT OF A VERB.

The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the subject of a verb; as,

*Ad rempublicam pertinet me conservâri*, It concerns the state that I should be preserved. Cic. *Nunquam est utile peccâre*, To do wrong is never useful. Id. *Majus dedecus est parâi amittere quam omnino non parâvisse*. Sall. In the first example *conservâri* with its subject accusative *me* is the subject of *pertinet*, and is equivalent to 'my preservation': in the second, *peccâre* is the subject of *est utile*. See § 202, 2, and III. R. 2.

REMARK 1. A general truth may be expressed by the infinitive without a subject; as, *Fâcius est vincere civem Rômânûm*, To bind a Roman citizen, or, that one should bind a Roman citizen, is a crime. But in such case the verb *esse* and verbs denoting to appear, to be considered or called (§ 210, R. 3.), require the noun or adjective of the predicate to agree with the implied subject in the accusative; as, *Æquum est peccâtis vêniam poscentem reddere rursus*. Hor. *Atticus maximum æstimâvit quæstum*, mêmôrem grâtiunq; cognosci. Nep.

NOTE. The indefinite pronoun *âliquem* or *âliquis* may in such cases be supplied, and the same indefiniteness may be expressed by *te* or *nos*, cf. § 209, R. 7; but it is still more frequently expressed by the infinitive passive. Hence the sentence *Fâcius est vincere civem Rômânûm*, may also be expressed by *Fâcius est vinciri civem Rômânûm*. So, *Quum viderent de eorûm virtute non desperâri*. Nep.—The impersonal verbs *licet*, *dêcet*, *oportet*, *opus est*, and *nêcesse est*, when there is no definite subject, are joined with the infinitive active alone; but when there is a subject-accusative, they are connected with the passive construction; as, a c t. *licet hoc facere*; *dêcet spêcimen capere ex hac re*; p a s s. *licet hoc fieri*; *dêcet spêcimen capi*.

REM. 2. The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, is often the subject of a proposition, when the substantive verb with a noun, a neuter adjective, or an impersonal verb forms the predicate. Of this kind are *justum*, *æquum*, *vêrisimile*, *consentâneum*, *âpertum*—*est*, *erat*, etc., *nêcesse est*, *opus est*;—*apparet*, *constat*, *convênit*, *dêcet*, *licet*, *oportet*; *intelligitur*, *perspicitur*, etc.; as, *Cui verba dare difficile est*. Ter. *Mendâcem mêmôrem esse oportet*. Quint. *Lêgem brevem esse oportet*. Sen. *Constat pfecto ad salûtem civium inventas esse lêges*. Cic. *Non enim me hoc jam dicere pûdebît*. Id. See § 209, R. 3, (b.). (a.)

REM. 3. The infinitive may itself be the subject of an infinitive; as, *Audio non licere cuiquam in nâve capillos depônere*. Ter.

REM. 4. The infinitive, with or without a subject accusative, may also be the predicate nominative; as, *Impune quælibet facere id est regem esse*. Sall. In this sentence *facere* is the subject, and *regem esse* is the predicate; for *id*, which only represents by a kind of apposition the clause *impune quælibet facere*, can be omitted.

REM. 5. When the infinitive *esse*, (or others of similar meaning, as, *fieri*, *vincere*, *vitam*, *dêgere*, *cêdere*, *âbire*, etc.), with a predicate adjective (or noun), is joined with *licet*, such predicate is put in the accusative, if the subject-accusative of the infinitive is expressed, and sometimes, also, when it is omitted, but more frequently, in the latter case, the predicate adjective or noun is attracted to the dative following *licet*; as, *Ut eum liceat ante tempus consûlem fieri*. Auct. ad Her. *Mêdius esse jam nun licêbit*. Cic. *Si civi Rômânô licet esse Glâriânum*. Id.—*Licit enim esse ôtiôso Thêmistoclî*. Id. *Mhi nêgligenti esse non licet*. Id. *Sibi vitam filius suâ caridrem fuisse, si libêre ac pûdicæ vivere licitum fuisset* (scil. ei). Liv. So also *nêcesse est* with the predicate in the

dative. *Vobis necesse est fortibus viris esse.* Liv.—But *licet*, *oportet*, and *necesse est* are also joined with the subjunctive mood, and hence is derived the construction of *licet* as a conjunction. See § 263, 2.

### THE INFINITIVE AS THE OBJECT OF A VERB.

§ 270. The infinitive, either with or without a subject-accusative, may be the object of a verb; as,

*Hæc vitare cupimus.* We desire to avoid this. Cic. *Poetas omnino non cōnor attingere*, I do not at all attempt to read the poets. Id. *Sententiam valere cupierunt*, They desired that the opinion should prevail. Id. *Spero te valere*, I hope that you are well. Id.

NOTE. The infinitive as the object of a verb supplies the place of the accusative of the thing, and hence many active verbs besides the infinitive take in the active voice an accusative of the person, cf. § 231, R. 3, (b.), and in the passive retain the infinitive; as, *Consules jubentur scribere exercitum.* Muræ adire vetiti sunt. Cf. § 234, I.

REMARK 1. The infinitive alone may also depend upon an adjective, and sometimes upon a noun.

(a.) It may depend upon relative adjectives, (see § 213, R. 1), which, by the poets, are joined with the infinitive instead of their usual construction with the genitive of the gerund, etc.; as, *Cedere nescius.* Hor. *Avidi committere pugnam.* Ovid. *Cupidus moriri.* Id. *Cantare periti Arcades.* Virg. *Callidus condere furto.* Hor. *Quidlibet impotens sperare.* Id. *Sutrinus facere inscius.* Varr. *Insuetus rera audire.* Liv. *Certa mori.* Virg. *Felicioz unguere tela.* Virg. *So, Audax omnia perpeteri*, Resolute to endure every thing. Hor. *Sollers ornare Cypassis*, Skilful to adorn. Ovid. *Segnes solvere nodum.* Hor. *Indocilis passerium pati.* Id. *Non lenis fata recludere.* Id. See § 213, R. 4, (1.)

(b.) It may also depend upon adjectives signifying usefulness, fitness, etc., which are sometimes by the poets construed with the infinitive instead of the dative; as, (*Tibia*) *aspirare et æsere choris erat utilis.* Hor. *Ætus mollis et aptu regi.* Ovid. *Fons etiam rivo dare nomen idoneus.* Hor. *Fruges consumere nati.* Id. And after *dignus* and *contentus*; as, *Dignus amari.* Virg. Cf. § 244, R. 2, (b.)

(c.) Upon a noun; as, *Tempus est hujus libri facere finem*, It is time to finish this book. Nep. *Insit consilia reges tollere*, He devised a plan to destroy the kings. Id. *Ea erat confessio caput rerum Romanæ esse.* Liv. *Cupido inceserat Ethiopiam invisere.* Curt. *Quibus in otio vivere copia erat.* Sall. *So, Nec mihi sunt vires inimicos pellere tectis*, instead of *pellendis inimicis*, or *ad pellendos inimicos.* Ovid.

(d.) If for the infinitives depending on nouns or adjectives other nouns were substituted, these last would be put in the genitive, dative, or ablative; and hence such infinitives may perhaps be properly regarded as exceptions to the rule, that the infinitive has but two cases, the nominative and the accusative.

REM. 2. (a.) The infinitive with the accusative sometimes stands unconnected, especially in exclamations and indignant interrogations, where *credibile est?* or *verumne est?* may be supplied; as, *Mene incepto desistere victam?* That I, vanquished, should desist from my undertaking? Virg. *Me miserum! te in tantis ærumnis propter me inclidisse!* Cic.—But *ut*, also, with the subjunctive, either with or without an interrogative particle, may be used to express a question with indignation; as, *Fine (scil. patri) ego ut adverser?* Liv. *Tu ut unquam te corrigas?* Cic. *Julicio ut arator decumanum perséquatur?* Id.; where *fieri potest?* may be supplied.

(b.) So, in the *oratio obliqua*, the words signifying *said*, *saying*, etc., are often omitted, or implied in a preceding verb or phrase; as, *Id facile effusi posse scil. dixit.* Nep. *Quem signum daturum fugientibus?* Curt.



**REM. 3.** The infinitive is sometimes to be supplied; and *esse* and *facisse* with a predicate adjective, and also in the compound forms of the infinitive, both active and passive, are commonly omitted, especially after verbs of *saying, thinking, knowing, and perceiving*; as, *Vos cognovi fortes*. Sall. *Quem pulsum memoravi*. Tac.—So, also, with the infinitive perfect passive when depending on *volo, nolo, cupio*, and *oportet*; as, *Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*. Ter. *Quid jam pridem factum oportuit*. Cic.—Sometimes in a relative clause an infinitive is to be supplied from the finite verb of the main proposition; as, *Quos voluit omnes interfecit*, scil. *interficere*. *Ne illam quidem consequuntur, quam putant, gratiam*; i. e. *quam se consecuturos putant*. Cic.

## THE INFINITIVE WITHOUT A SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 271. The infinitive, without a subject-accusative, is used after verbs denoting *ability, obligation, intention or endeavor*; after verbs signifying *to begin, continue, cease, abstain, dare, fear, hesitate, or be wont*; and after the passive of verbs of *saying, believing, reckoning, etc.*

**NOTE 1.** To these classes belong *possum, queo, nequeo, valeo, debeo; curo, cogito, discerno, sistuo, constituo, instituo, paro; conor, nitor, tendo, contendo, tento, mitoro, proporo, aggredior, persévoro, —capi, incipio, pergo, desino, desisto, intermitto, parco, recuso; solum, assuesco, consuesco, insuesco; audeo, véreo, metuo, réformido, timeo, horreo, dubito:—audio, crédor, existimor, féror, negor, nuntior, pèrhibeor, putor, trador, jubeor, videor, and cōgor*.

**NOTE 2.** When the preceding verbs are joined with *esse, haberi, judicari, videri*, etc., the predicate noun or adjective is put in the nominative; as, *Solus tristis videri; aude sapiens esse; caput mihi molestus esse; debes esse diligens; potest liber esse*: and so also *meretur, scit, didicit liber esse*.

**NOTE 3.** The poets, in imitation of the Greeks, use the infinitive after *fuge, aufer, cive, parce, memento; paveo, réfugio, quero, urgeo, laboro, amo, gaudeo, furo, calleo, sumo, mitto, remitto, patior, juro, conjuro, pugno, natus*, and some other verbs, especially to denote a *wish or purpose*; as, *Introii ridere*. Ter. *Non te frangere perséquor*. Hor. *Non populum penates vtimus*. Virg. In this construction, the poets are sometimes imitated by the later prose writers.

**REMARK 1.** Many of the verbs above enumerated, instead of the infinitive, may be followed by the subjunctive with *ut, ne*, etc.; and with some of them this is the regular construction; as, *Sententiam ne diceret, recusavit*. Cic.

**REM. 2.** The passives *dicor, trador, féror, narror, repërior, existimor, videor*, etc., may either be used personally, with the infinitive alone, or impersonally, followed by the accusative with the infinitive. Thus we may say, *Mater Pausaniæ eo tempore vixisse dicitur*, or, *Dicitur eo tempore matrem Pausaniæ vixisse*. The mother of Pausanias is said to have been living....or, It is said that the mother of Pausanias was living.... Nep. The former construction is more common especially with *videor*, see § 272, R. 6; but the latter is frequent with *nuntiatur*, and very common with the compound tenses, *traditum est, proclatum est*, etc., and with the participle future passive; as, *credendum est, intelligendum est*, etc.; as, *Quorum neminem ulum fuisse credendum*, etc. Cic.

**REM. 3.** The infinitive without a subject is used after a verb only when it denotes an action or state of the subject of that verb.

**REM. 4.** The verbs to *wish or desire, volo, nolo, malo; cupio, opto, studeo*, have a twofold construction:—the infinitive without a subject-accusative is used after them, when the subject remains the same; and when followed by *esse, haberi*, etc., the predicate-noun or adjective is in the nominative;—but the accusative with the infinitive is used when the subject is changed, or when a reflexive pronoun of the same person follows. We say, therefore, *volo eruditum fieri*, and on the other hand, *volo te eruditum fieri*, and *volo me eruditum fieri*. *Volo is ess. quem tu me esse voluisti*. Cic. *Cupio me esse clementem, cupio—*

*me non dissolutum vidēri.* Id.; or, omitting the pronoun, *cūpī esse clēmens nec dissolutus vidēri.*—*Omnis hōmīnes quī sese student praeſtare ceteris animālibus* etc. Sall.

NOTE 4. *Volo* is used with the present infinitive passive; as, *Me amari volo*, I wish to be beloved; *hoc velim intelligi*, I wish this to be understood; and also with the infinitive perfect passive to denote the eager desire that something should be instantly accomplished; as, *Legati quod erant appellati superbius, Cērinthum patres vestri—exstinctum esse voluerunt.* Cic.; but it occurs most frequently with the omission of *esse*; as, *hoc factum volo*; *nunc illos commōnitōnem velim*: so, *patriam exstinctam cūpī*.

NOTE 5. The nominative with the infinitive after verbs of saying, perceiving, etc. (§ 272), is rare even in poetry, and is an imitation of the Greek idiom, which requires the nominative with the infinitive when the same subject remains; as, *Phœbus ille, quem vidētis, hospites, ait fuisse narium celerissimus.* Catull. *Quia retulit Ajax esse Jovis nepos*, instead of *se esse Jovis nepotem* Ovid. *Sensit medios delapsus in hostes*, instead of *se delapsum esse.* Virg.

## THE INFINITIVE WITH A SUBJECT-ACCUSATIVE.

§ 272. The infinitive with a subject-accusative follows verbs of saying, thinking, knowing, perceiving, and the like; as,

*Videbat, id non posse fieri*, He saw that that could not be done. Nep. *Sentit animus, se suā rē, non alīnā, movēri.* Cic. *Audivi te venīre.* *Me in ejus potestate dixi fore.* Id. *Affirmant militem jacere animos.* Liv. *Sæpe venit ad aures meas, te istud nimis crebro dicere.* Cic. *Eam pugnam ad Perisiam pugnatam (esse), quidam auctores sunt.* Liv.

NOTE 1. This rule includes all such verbs and phrases as denote the exercise of the external senses and intellectual faculties, or the communication of thought to others; as, *audio, video, sentio, animadverto, cognosco, intelligo, percipio, disco, scio, nescio, censeo, spero, despéro, cogito, jūctico, crēdo, arbitror, pūto, opinor, dico, statuo, mēmini, recordor, obliviscor, opinio est, spes est.* etc.;—*dico, trādo, prōdo, scribo, refēro, narro, nuntio, confirmo, nēgo, ostendo, indicō, doceo, certidrem facio, demonstro, pērhēbro, promitto, pollicor, spondeo*, etc.; but with most of these a different construction often occurs. See § 273

NOTE 2. The propositions, whose subjects are thus put in the accusative and their verbs in the infinitive, are those which are directly dependent on the verbs of saying and perceiving. Respecting the clauses inserted in such dependent propositions, see § 266, 1.

NOTE 3. (a.) When a relative clause inserted in a proposition containing the accusative with the infinitive, has the same verb as the proposition in which it is inserted, but such verb is not repeated, the noun which is the subject of the relative clause is also put by attraction in the accusative; as, *Te suspicor eisdem rebus, quibus me ipsum, commovēri.* If the verb is expressed we must say, *eisdem rebus commovēri, quibus (ēgo) ipse commoveor.* So, also, in inserted relative clauses where the verb, if expressed, would be in the subjunctive, (see § 266, 2.); as, (*Verres*) *aitbat se tantūdem aestimasse, quanti Sacerdotem, for quanti Sacerdos aestimasset.* Cic. *Amplētur se in eā parte fuisse quā te, quā virum omni laude dignum patrem tuum.* Id.

(b.) The same is the case with the particle *quam* after a comparative, see § 256, R. 5, (a.) But sometimes when *quā* connects a clause to a preceding proposition containing the accusative with the infinitive, the same construction follows that precedes *quā*, even when the verb of the latter clause is expressed; as, *Nonne tibi affirmāri quidris me potius perpersūrum, quā ex Italiā ad bellum civile me exitūrum; instead of quā exirem or quā ut exirem.* Cic.

(c.) In long speeches in the *oratio obliqua*, relative clauses, having a verb of their own which should properly be in the subjunctive, are put in the accusative with the infinitive, if the relative clause is not subordinate to the clause with the infinitive, and which is governed by a verb of saying or perceiving

but is rather coördinate with it; in which case the relative is equivalent to the demonstrative with *et*; as, *Nam illorum urbem ut propugnaculum oppositum esse barbaris, apud quam jam bis classes regias fecisse naufragium*; for *et apud eam jam bis*, etc.—In Livy and Tacitus the same construction sometimes occurs even after conjunctions; as after *quum* in the sense of 'while,' see § 263, 5, R. 3; after *quamquam* on account of its absolute signification, see § 198, 4, and after *quia*.

NOTE 4. The personal pronouns, which, with the other moods, are expressed only when they are emphatic, must be always expressed in the accusative with the infinitive. The verbs 'to promise' and 'to hope' are in English usually joined with the infinitive present without a pronoun, but in Latin not only is the pronoun expressed, but the infinitive which follows is in the future; as, 'He promised to come,' is in Latin, *Prômisit se venturum* (scil. *esse*, see § 270, R. 3). But the infinitive present sometimes occurs after these verbs; as, *Pollicentur obsides dare*, Cæs. B. G. 4, 21; and the pronoun is occasionally omitted, see § 239, R. 2 and 3.

REMARK 1. When ambiguity would arise from the subject and the object of the verb being both in the accusative, the passive infinitive is substituted for the active, by which means the subject is put in the ablative, or in the accusative with *per*; as, *Ne fando quidem autitum est, crocôdillum violâtum esse ab Ægyptio*; instead of *Ægyptium crocôdillum violasse*. Cic.

REM. 2. After verbs of saying, thinking, etc., the conjunction *that* is omitted in translating from English into Latin, and the subject of the dependent clause is put in the accusative, and its verb in the infinitive.

REM. 3. The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes rendered into English by a similar form; as, *Si vis me flere*, If you wish *me* to weep. Hor.; but the dependent clause is more frequently connected to the verb of saying, etc. by the conjunction *that*, and the infinitive translated by the indicative or potential mood; as, *Sentimus nivem esse albam*, We perceive *that snow is white*. Cic. Sometimes the dependent clause is annexed to the other without the conjunction; as, *Crêdunt se negligi*, They think *they are neglected*. Ter.

REM. 4. A present infinitive corresponds to the imperfect indicative, when with an accusative it follows a preterite tense; as, *Dixit Cæsarem venire*, He said that Cæsar *was coming*. Cæs. In like manner the perfect infinitive with an accusative after a preterite tense corresponds to the pluperfect indicative; as, *Dixit Cæsarem venisse*, He said that Cæsar *had come*. See § 268, 2.

REM. 5. The present infinitive, after verbs of sense, is often equivalent to the present participle; as, *Surgere videt lunam*, He sees the moon (to rise) rising. Virg. *Arma rutilare vident*. Id. *Vidēbis collucere fāces*. Id. *Nec Zephyros audis spirare?* Do you not hear the zephyrs blowing? Id. *Sepe hoc majores natu dicere audiri*. Cic. The two constructions are sometimes united; as, *Medium video discēdere cælum, palantesque pôlæ stellæ*. Virg.

REM. 3 The subject-accusative after verbs of *saying, showing, and believing*; as, *dico, nego, trādo, fero, mēbro, narro, nuntio, pērhībeo, prōdo, scribo, dēnumastro, ostendo, arguo, crēdo, pūto, existimo*, and the like, and also after *jūbeo, vōlo*, and *prōhibeo*, is regarded also as the accusative of the object after these verbs; and hence such verbs are used also in the passive, the accusative of the active voice becoming, as usual, the nominative of the passive. This is especially the case when their subject is indefinite; as, *Dicunt* (they or people say) *me virum prōbum esse, or licor vir prōbus esse*. So, *Vētimur hoc facere*, instead of, *Nos hoc facere vētant*. Instead also of the impersonal *vidētur* (it appears) followed by the infinitive with its subject-accusative, it is common to say personally, *videor, vidēris*, etc., with the infinitive; as, *videor errasse*, it appears that I have erred.

## INFINITIVE AND SUBJUNCTIVE CLAUSES.

§ 273. When the particle *that*, in English, introduces a clause denoting a *purpose*, *object*, or *result*, it is a sign of the subjunctive in Latin, and is to be expressed by *ut*, etc.; but otherwise it is usually the sign of the accusative with the infinitive. Cf. §§ 262 and 272.

1. (a.) Verbs of *endeavoring* and *resolving* take after them the infinitive and more rarely the subjunctive, when the subject remains the same; but when the subject is changed, they take the subjunctive only.

NOTE 1. Such are *stātuo*, *constituo*, *dēcerno*, *tenio*, *lābōro*, *pōro*, *mēdītor*, *cūro*, *nitor*, *contendo*, *consilium cāpio*, *animus* or *in animus indicō*. Cf. § 271, N. 1. After *opēram do*, I exert myself, *id. hoc*, or *illud āgo*, I endeavor, *nihil antiquius hābeo* or *dūce quam*, nothing is of more importance to me, and *videō* for *cūro*, the subjunctive is almost exclusively used.

(b.) Verbs of *effecting* are construed with *ut* or *ne* and the subjunctive.

NOTE 2. Such are *fācio*, *efficio*, *perficio*, *ēvinco*, *pervinco*, *impetro*, *assēquor*, *consequor*, etc. But *fācere* 'to effect' occurs in Cic. Brut. 38, in connection with the accusative and infinitive passive.

NOTE 3. *Fācio* with *ut* is also used as a periphrasis for the indicative; as, *Invitus quidem feci*, *ut L. Flāminium e sēdātū ējicerem*, for *invitus ējeci*. Cic.—*Fac*, 'suppose' or 'granting,' and *efficere*, 'to prove,' take the accusative with the infinitive; but the passive *efficitur*, 'it follows,' takes also the subjunctive.—*Fācere*, 'to introduce' or 'represent,' is joined with a present or perfect participle; as, *Laelium et Scipionem faciūmus admirantes*. Cic. In the passive the accusative also with the infinitive is found, there being no present participle; as, *Isocrātem Plāto laudāri facit a Socrāte*. Cic.

2. Verbs signifying *to request*, *to demand*, *to admonish*, *to advise*, *to encourage*, *to command*, and the like, both when the subject remains the same and when it is changed, are followed by the subjunctive with *ut* or *ne*, and only rarely by the infinitive.

NOTE 4. (a.) Such are *rūgo*, *oro*, *prēcōr*, *pōro*; *posco*, *postūlo*, *flāgitō*; *mōneo*, *admonēo*, *commōneo*, *hortor*, *cōhortor*, *exhortor*, *suādeo*, *persuādeo*, *insistūo*, (I instruct) *impello*, *cōgo*, *mando*, *præscribo*, *edīco*, *dēcerno*, *lēgem do*, *censeo*, *perpello*, *excito*, *insisto*, *impéro*, etc.; as, *Te non hortor solum, sed etiam oro, ut ista mente in rempublicam incumbas*. Cic.

(b.) In the poets and later prose writers the infinitive more frequently follows those verbs without any difference of meaning. The poets even use the infinitive to express a purpose; as, *Prōteus pēcus ēgit alios visere montes*. Hor.

(c.) *Nuntio*, *scribo*, *mitto*, and even *dico*, are followed by the subjunctive when they imply an injunction or intention that something should be done as, *Hæc ut faciās, scribo*. Cic.

(d.) *Jūbeo* and *veto* commonly take the accusative with the infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive with or rarely without *ut*. Sometimes, with the infinitive, the person to whom the command is given is omitted, especially when it is either obvious from the nature of the command or indefinite; as, *Castra munire jubet*, scil. *mīlites*. Cæs. *Lex recte facere jubet*, scil. *hōmīnes*, Cic. With the subjunctive the dative of the person sometimes follows *jūbeo*, as, *Britannico jussit, exsurgēret*. Tac.—*Impéro* is sometimes followed by the accusative with the infinitive passive; and so also is *censeo*, I vote, or, I ordain. The latter is often construed with the participle in *duo* with *esse* expressed & understood; as, *Orthogonem delendam censeo*.

(c.) *Moneo* and *admoneo*, 'I remind,' and *persuadeo*, 'I convince,' take the accusative with the infinitive.

3. (a.) In the *oratio obliqua*, the construction of the accusative with the infinitive, is exchanged for that of the subjunctive, to denote possibility, liberty, duty, etc.; as,

*Virginius unum Ap. Claudium legum expertem esse aiebat: respicerent tribunal homines castellum omnium scelerum.* Liv.

(b.) On the contrary, when the subjunctive has been used after a verb of requesting, commanding, etc., the construction often passes into that of the accusative with the infinitive; the verb of saying being considered as implied in the verb of requesting, etc.; as, *Orabat ne se ut parricidum liberum aversarentur: sibi vitam filius sua caritorem fuisse, si....* Liv. Cf. § 270, R. 2, (b.)

4. (a.) Verbs which denote *willingness, unwillingness, permission, and necessity*, commonly take the infinitive, or the accusative with the infinitive, but sometimes the subjunctive.

NOTE 5. Such are *volo, nolo, malo, opto, permitto, patior, sino, concedo, licet, praestabo, oportet*, and *necesse est*. Cf. § 271, R. 1. *Volo ut* is used to express a strong emphasis. *Nolo* is not construed with the subjunctive.

(b.) An infinitive passive without a subject is sometimes used with *oportet*; as, *Non oportuit relictas*, scil. *esse ancillas*. Ter. *Ut ut erat, mansum tamen oportuit*, scil. *esse*. Id. *Non putabant de tali viro suspicionibus oportere judicari.* Nep.

(c.) Some other verbs which regularly take the accusative with the infinitive after them, are occasionally followed by the subjunctive.

5. *Quod*, 'that,' commonly with the indicative, introduces a substantive clause containing the explanation or ground of the predicate or of some other word in the principal clause.

REMARK. The subjunctive follows *quod* in those cases only in which the clause expresses the view or sentiment of some other person than the writer or speaker. Cf. § 266, 3.

*Quod* is used:—

(1.) After such expressions as *bene, male, prudenter facio; bene, male fit; evenit, accidit*, and the like; *praetereo, mitto*; and generally *adde, accedat*, etc.; as, *Bene facis, quod me adjuvas*.

(2.) To introduce the explanation of a noun, pronoun, or pronominal adverb in the principal clause; as, *Magnum beneficium est naturæ, quod necesse est mori*.

(3.) After verbs signifying an affection of the mind, and the outward expression of such feeling; and also after verbs of praising, censuring, accusing, and thanking.

NOTE 6. Such are *gaudeo, delector, gratum, or jucundum est mihi, angor, doleo, ocre, misere, or graviter fero, succenseo, pœnitet, miror, admittor, glorior, gratulor, gratias ago, queror, indignor*, and others of similar meaning; as, *Scipio sæpe querébatur, quod omnibus in rebus homines diligentiores essent, ut*, etc. Cic. *Gaudeo quod te interpellavi*. Id. *Quod speratis, quod vocem mittitis, quod formas hominum habetis, indignantur*. Liv. *Cato mirari se aiebat, quod non rideret harsupex, harsupicem quum videret*. Cic.

NOTE 7. After those verbs which express the feeling of joy, grief, etc.; as, *gaudeo, doleo, miror*, the accusative with the infinitive is more commonly found, but those which denote the outward expression of such feeling are more commonly construed with *quod*; but sometimes this distinction is reversed *gratulari* is commonly joined with *quod*.

**NOTE 8.** A purely objective proposition is expressed by *quod* only when it depends upon *addo*, (generally in the imperative *adde*), or upon *facio* joined with an adverb; as, *Adde quod pūbes tibi crescit omnes*. Hor. *Adde huc quod mercem sine fūcis gestat*. Id. *Fēcit hūmāniter Licinius, quod ad me vespēri vēnit*. Cic. In all other cases the infinitive is employed in purely objective propositions.

6. By the infinitive, with or without a subject-accusative, a proposition is expressed as a *thought*, so that it resembles an abstract noun; by *quod*, with the indicative or the subjunctive, it is represented simply as a *fact*. To the latter is frequently joined *hoc*, *id*, *illud*, *istud*, or *huc*, etc.; as, *Illud quoque nobis accēdit incommōdum*, quod *M. Jūnius abest*. Cic. *Huc accēdit*, quod, etc. Sall. *Quod* generally refers to past time, and hence it is preferable to say, *Grātissimum mihi est*, quod *ad me tua manu scripsisti*; but with the infinitive, *Grātissimum mihi est te bene valēre*.

(a.) *Quod*, with the indicative, in the sense of *as to*, or *with regard to*, is used at the beginning of a sentence, especially in letters, in repeating an expression of a person for the purpose of answering it; as, *Quod autem me Agimennōnem amulāri putas, fallēris*. Nep. *Quod scribis te velle scire, qui sit reipublice stātus, summa dissensio est*. Cic. Sentences thus introduced by *quod* are in no grammatical connection with the verb that follows them. See § 206, (14.)

(b.) *Quod* is used in explanatory or periphrastic propositions which refer to a preceding demonstrative pronoun, as *hoc*, *id*, etc., unless such pronoun be added pleonastically, in the nominative or accusative, to verbs governing the accusative with the infinitive; as, *Mihi quidem videntur homines hac re maxime bellis pręstare*, quod *loqui possunt*. Cic.

**NOTE 9.** The construction of the infinitive resembles, in the following particulars, that of a noun in the singular number and neuter gender:—

(a.) Like a noun, it may have an adjective or pronoun agreeing with it; as *Tōtum hoc philosophāri displicet*. Cic. *Quum vivēre ipsum turpe sit nobis*. Id. *Me hoc ipsum nihil agēre delectat*. Id. *Meum intelligēre nullā pecuniā vendo*. Petr. See § 205, R. 8.

(b.) It may be followed by a limiting genitive; as, *Cujus non dimicāre fuit vircere*. Val. Max.

(c.) It may be either the subject or object of a verb. See §§ 209, R. 3, (5,) and 229, R. 5. It may also be used after neuter verbs, like an accusative, depending on a preposition understood; as, *Te accēpisse meas lītēras gaudeo*. Ter. See §§ 232, (2,) and 273, 5.

(d.) It is also used like a predicate-nominative; as, *Vidēre est perspicere aliquid*. Cic. See § 210.

(e.) It may, like a genitive, limit the signification of an adjective or noun. See § 270, R. 1.

(f.) It may, like an accusative, depend on a preposition; as, *Aristo et Pyrrho inter optime valēre et gravissime ægrōtāre, nihil prorsus dicēbant intēresse*. Cic. *Quod crimen dicis pręter amasse meum?* Ovid. *Inveniet nil sibi legātum, pręter plurāre*. Hor.

(g.) It is used also like an ablative; as, *Audito rēgem in Siciliā tendere*. Sall.

(h.) Sometimes, also, especially in the poets, it denotes a purpose, like a participle in *duo*, (see § 274, R. 7.); as, *Loricam donat habēre viro*. Virg.; or like a dative of the end, (see § 227.)

## PARTICIPLES.

§ 274. 1. Participles are followed by the same cases and constructions as their verbs; as

*Quidam*, poeta nōmīnātus, A certain one, called a poet. Cic. Cā tūlōrū n oblīta *æœna*, The lioness forgetful of her whelps. Virg. *Fūventes rēbus Carthaginiensium*, Favoring the interests of the Carthaginians. Liv. *Tendens cū sidērū palmas*. Virg. *Accūsātus rei cāpitālīs*. Cic. *Primā dicte mīhi summā dicende Cāmēnā*. Hor. *Omina doctus*. Stat. *Cāsus abies visūra mārinos*. Id. *Civitatī sēbore montes*. Ovid. *Parcendum est tēneris*. Juv. *Ulenūm est ætate*. Ovid. *Brūtus arcens rēditu tyrannum, in prælio concidit*. Cic.

2. The present, perfect, and future active participles, denote respectively an action which is present, past, or future, in reference to the time of the verb with which they are connected; as,

*Simul hoc dicens attollit se*. Virg. *Tum cū Thræseam in hortis āgentem missus est*. Tac. *Turnum fugientem hęc terra vidēbit*? Virg. *Qui missus ab Argīs Itālā cōsēdērat urbe*. Id. *Lāmia mūnere cōditātis perfunctus, pēlit præstrans*. Cic. *Jussus cū fide pœnas luam*. Hor. *Jūvenis mēdius moritūrus in hostes irruit*. Virg. *Pertūrus injecit sēsē in agmen*. Id. *Illā tibi ventūra bella expēdiēt*. Id.

NOTE. The participle expresses the action or state of the verb, and also marks its complete or incomplete state or condition. Cf. § 144, 1-3. Except, however, in deponent verbs, the Latin language has no active participle denoting a completed action, equivalent to the English 'having written,' nor any passive participle denoting a state of suffering still going on, equivalent to the English present participle 'being loved.'

REMARK 1. The present participle, particularly that of the verb *eo*, sometimes denotes that which is about to be done; as, *Interclūsit hiems, et terrāi Auster euntes*, .... as they were on the point of going. Virg. *Nec nos via facti euntes*. Id.

REM. 2. (a.) The present participle, also, sometimes denotes a purpose; as, *Ibant, ōrantes vēniā*, .... to sue for favor.... Virg. *Eurypylum scitāntem ōrācūla Phœbi mitāmus*. Id. (b.) It is also used to express a state or condition, where, in English, a substantive is employed with a preposition; as, *ignōrans*, from ignorance; *mētuens*, from fear; *cōsūlātum pētens*, in his suit for the consulship; *omne mīlum nascens facile opprimitur*,—in its origin.

REM. 3. (a.) The perfect participle passive, especially in the poets, often denotes the result of a past action, and thus supplies the place of a present participle passive; as, *Nōtus evolat piceā tectus cāligine*, .... covered with pitchy darkness. Ovid. Cf. Virg. *Æn.* 1, 480; 2, 277; 4, 72, 589; 5, 113, 708; 6, 235; Georg. 1, 204. It is often to be translated by a present active participle; as, *Mīnu pectus percussa dēcōrum, flāventesque abscissa cōmas*, i. e. *percūtiens abscondens*. Virg. *Tunsæ pectōra palmis*. Id. So, also, *sōlitus, ausus, fīsus*, and the perfect participles of deponent verbs; as, *Longum cantu sōlāta lāborem*. Id. *Vox auditur fractos sōnitūs imitāta tūbārū*. Id. *Divitiācus Cæsārem complēxus, obsecrāre cōpit*. Cæs. *Concrētos sanguine crines gērens*. Virg. *Tonsis in valibus*, i. e. *quæ tondentur*. Id.

(b.) The perfect participle of a preceding verb is often used in a succeeding clause, to express the completion of an action; as, *Exercitum fundit fugatque fīsum persequitur*. Liv. This idiom frequently occurs in Ovid.

REM. 4. *Hābeo*, with perfect participles denoting knowledge and determination; as, *cognitum, perspectum, perceptum, comprēhensum, explorātum, stādūtum, cōstitūtum, deliberātum, persuāsum mīhi hābeo*, etc. forms a periphrasis, like the passive verb in English, and equivalent to *cognōvī, perspexī, percēpī*, etc., instead of the verb of the participle; as, *Clōdii arctum perspectum or cognitum hābeo*; for *perspexī*, etc., I perceive, know. *Persuāsum mīhi hābeo* and *persuāssimū hābeo* are used only in the neuter gender and with an accusative with the infinitive in the sense of *mīhi persuāsi* or *persuāsum mīhi est*. When *hābeo* with any other participle than those above indicated is used, it expresses more than the ordinary perfect active; as, *Quod me hortāris ut abscīdam*; *hābeo abscīdām suāve ēpos ad Cæsārem*; i. e. I have it ready. Cic. *Do, reddo, cūra*

*habeo, possideo, an l missum facio*, are sometimes so construed with participles as, *Missam iram faciet*, for *mittet*. Ter. *Hostes victos dare*, for *vincere*. Sall.

REM. 5. (a.) The passive participles may supply the place of a verbal noun in *is* or *us*, the perfect being employed to represent an action as completed, and the future when it is conceived as still incomplete; as, *Anle Rōmana conditam*, Before the building of Rome. Cic. *Consilia urbis delendæ*, Plans for the destruction of the city. Id. See § 275, II. With the limitations about to be made in regard to the nominative, this construction is used in all the cases, and even when they are governed by the prepositions, *ad, ante, cō, post, propter*; *ab* and *ex*; as, *He litæ rēcitātæ magnum luctum fecerunt*, The reading of this letter. Liv. *Tarentum captum*, The taking of Tarentum. *Ob receptum Hannibalem*, On account of the reception of Hannibal. *Sibi quisque cæsi regis explebat decus*, The glory of killing, or, of having killed the king. *Propter Africam dōmītam*. Eutrop. *Ante Epāminondam nātum*. Nep. *Post Christum nātum*. *Ab conditā urbe ad liberātā*. Liv. The oblique cases only of participles in *dus* are used in this manner as the nominative denotes necessity, (see Rem. 8,) and even the perfect participle is not thus used in the nominative by Cicero.

(b.) The neuter of the perfect passive participle without a noun is used by Livy, as the subject of a proposition; as, *Tentatum per dictatorem, ut ambo patricii consules crearentur, rem ad in-erregnum perduxit*: i. e. the attempt, or the fact of the attempt being made by the dictator. Compare a similar use of this participle in the ablative, § 257, R. 9, (1.) (c.)

(c.) The English 'without' with a verbal substantive; as, 'without writing, without having waited,' etc., is expressed in Latin by means of a negative noun, adjective or particle connected with a participle; as, *Cæsar exercitum numquam per insidiōsa itinera duxit, nisi perspēculātus locorum situs*, without having examined the localities. This form occurs often with the ablative absolute; as, *Athēnienses non expectātō auxilio adversus ingentem Persarum exercitum in prælium egrēdiuntur*, without waiting for assistance. So, *nullā præstitūtā diē*, Without fixing any time. Cic. *Miserum est nihil perficientem angī*. Id.

REM. 6. (a.) The participle in *rus*, especially with verbs of motion, often denotes intention or purpose; as, *Ad Jovem Ammonem pergīt consultūrus de origine sua*, He goes to Jupiter Ammon, to consult respecting his origin. Just.

(b.) It is also used where in English a clause connected by *since, when, although* etc., is employed; as, *Plūra locūtūros abire nos jussit*, When or although we intended to say more. *Herculem Germāni, itūri in prælium cānunt*. Tac. Hence it is sometimes used, though not by Cicero, to express the inference from a hypothetical proposition; as, *Egrēditur castris Rōmānus, vallum invāsūrus, nī cōpia pugnæ fieret*. And with the repetition of the preceding verb; as, *Delit mīhi quantum maxime potuit, datūrus amplius, si potuisset*, i. e. *ac dedisset amplius*. Plin. Ep.

REM. 7. (a.) The participle in *dus*, also, denotes a purpose passively, when joined with verbs signifying to give, to deliver, to agree for, to have, to receive, to undertake, etc. Such are *do, trādo, tribuo, attribuo, mando, mitto, permittō, concēdo, redmō, condūco, loco, habeo, accipio, suscipio, relinquo, cūro, depono, rōgo*; as, *Testāmentum tibi trādit legendum*, He delivers his will to you to read. Hor. *Attribuit nos trādicandos Cēthēgo*. Cic. *Quod ūtendum accēperis, reddito*. Id. *Cōmon mūros dirūtōs a Lysandro reficiendos cūravī*,—ordered them to be restored. Nep.

(b.) But the same meaning may be expressed actively by means of *ad* and the gerund; as, *Cæsar oppidum ad diripiendum militibus concessit*.—The poets sometimes use the infinitive active for the same purpose; as, *Tristitiā et mētus trādant prōteritis in mārē Cuspium portāre ventis*. Hor. In prose such use of the infinitive is of exceedingly rare occurrence; as, *Bibere dare*. Cic.



**REM. 8. (a.)** The participle in *dus*, when agreeing with the subject of a sentence, has the signification of *necessity* or *propriety*; sometimes, though rarely, except in later writers, that of *possibility*; as,

*Is vñērāndus a nobis et cōlendus est*, He should be worshipped and honored by us. Cic. *Dēlenda est Carthāgo*, Carthage must be destroyed. Cato. *Hæc spēranda fuērunt*. Virg. So with *est* used impersonally; as, *Utrum pāce nobis an bello casset utendum*. Cic.

(b.) Sometimes, also, when not agreeing with the subject of a sentence, it has this signification; as, *Facta narrābas dissimulanda tibi*, You were relating facts which you should have concealed. Ovid. *A. L. Brūto principe hæc maxime conservandi gēneris et nōmīnis*. Cic.

**REM. 9.** The participle in *dus*, in its oblique cases, supplies the place of a present participle of the passive voice, to denote a continued or incomplete action; as, *Occupātus sum in lītēris scribēdis*, in writing letters; literally, in letters which are being written. See § 275, II.—So, also, in the poets both in the nominative and oblique cases; as, *Triginta magnos volvendis menibus ortos impērio explebit*. Virg. *Volvenda dies*. Id. Cf. *Volventibus annis*. Id.

**REM. 10.** After participles in *dus*, the person by whom a thing must be done, is put in the dative, but in a few passages even of Cicero it is found in the ablative with *ab*. See § 225, III.

**REM. 11.** The neuter of the participle in *dus*, joined with a tense of *esse* in the periphrastic conjugation (see § 184, 3,) retains the signification of *necessity*; as, *Audendum est*, We must venture. In early writers and sometimes also in the poets, an accusative of the object is joined with this neuter, if the verb is transitive; as, *Nunc pācem orandum, nunc—arma repōnendum, et bellum extētile cavendum*. Sil. But in classical Latin such accusative is generally changed to the nominative, and the participle is made to agree with it in gender and number. Thus, instead of *virtutem laudandum est*, we usually find *virtus laudanda est*. The accusative in this connection is used by Cicero in only two passages. *Utendum est* with the ablative occurs more than once in Cicero; as, *Quon suo cuique iudicio sit utendum*.

**REM. 12.** In classical prose the participle in *dus* never has the signification of *possibility*, except when joined with *vix*; as, *Vix optandum nobis videbatur*. Cic. *Vix erat credendum*, i. e. *vix credi poterat*. Later writers use it in this sense with negative particles, and at a later period it was used with still more frequency in the sense of *possibility* as well as in that of *necessity*.

**3. (a.)** A participle is often employed, instead of a verb, in a conditional, explanatory, adversative, relative, or other dependent clause; as,

*Curio, ad fōcum sēdenti* (as he was sitting) *magnum auri pondus Samnites attulerunt*. Cic. *Tridui viam progressi, rursus revertērunt*; for, *quon progressi essent*. Cæs. *Diōngisius tyrannus, Syracūsas expulsus, Cōrinthi puēris docebat*. Cic. *Diōngisius, cultus metuens tonsōrios, cadenti carbōne sibi adurēbat capillum*. Id. *Risus interdum ita repente erumpit, ut eum cūpientis tēnere nequeāmus*. Id. *Cicōnis abiūra cōgregantur in loco certo*. Plin.

**NOTE 1.** If the participle refers to a noun not contained in the leading proposition, it is put with that noun in the ablative absolute. See § 257, R. 3.

**NOTE 2. (a.)** The English clauses most frequently expressed in Latin by means of participles are such as are connected by relatives or by *as, when, after, although, since, because, etc.*; as, *Nemo observat lunam nisi labrantem*. Sen. *L. oculis, sic animus, se non videns, alia cernit*,—though not perceiving itself. Cic. *Servilius Ahla Spūrium Mætiū, regnum appetentem, intērēmit*,—because he was aspiring to the sovereignty. *Ac—(b.)* When a participle is connected with a relative or interrogative it can only be translated by a circumlocution; as, *Non sunt ea dōna dicenda, quibus abundantem Acas esse miseritimum*,—which one may possess in abundance, and still be very miserable. Cic. *Senātus absurdum esse dicebat, ignorāre regem, quid spēsus aut potens videret*,—with what hop or request he had come. Liv.

(b.) When two verbs are in English connected by *and*, and the actions denoted by them are regarded as simultaneous, one of them may be expressed in Latin by the present participle; as, He sits and holds his lute, *Ille (Arice) sedens citharum tinet*. Ovid. *Simul hoc dicens attollit in egrum se fœmur*. Virg. i. e. *hoc dicit et attollit*. But if one of the actions precede the other, the perfect participle must be used; as, Cæsar attacked and defeated the enemy, *Cæsar hostes aggressus fûgavit*. Submersas obrue puppes, i. e. *Submerge et obrue*. Virg.—When the English clause would be connected by *although*, the participle is often followed by *tâmen*. Later writers in such case join the participles *quamquam*, *quoniam*, *etiam* and *vel* with the participle itself; as, *Cæsarem milites, quomvis recûsantem ultro in Africam sibi œcûti*. Suet.; and these are sometimes retained in the ablative absolute.—It is only in late Latin that participles are sometimes used in describing persons as possessing certain attributes, e. g. *adstantes, audientes*, for *ii qui adstant, audiunt*, i. e. the bystanders, hearers.

(c.) A participle is used with verbs signifying to *represent* and *perceive*, especially to *see* and *hear*, when the object is described or perceived in a particular state; as, *Apelles pinxit Alexandrum Magnum fulmen ténentem*. Plin. In English the *infinitive* is often joined with verbs of seeing and hearing; as, *Audiri te cànentem*, I heard you sing. *Audiri te cànere*, would be, I heard that you sung. *Vidémus Polyphémum vastâ se môle môventem*. Virg.

NOTE 8. In many cases, for want of a perfect participle active, and a present participle passive, this construction cannot be used. Thus, *quum amâvisset* cannot be exchanged for a participle corresponding with the English *having loved*. As the perfect participles of deponent verbs, however, have an active signification, they admit of the participial construction. The want of a perfect active participle may also be supplied by the perfect passive participle in the ablative absolute. See § 257, R. 5.

## GERUNDS AND GERUNDIVES.

§ 275. I. Gerunds are governed like nouns, and are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

*Mētus pârendi sibi*, Fear of obeying him. Sall. *Parcendo victis*, By sparing the vanquished. Liv. *Effëror stûdio patres vestros videndi*, I am transported with a desire of seeing your fathers. Cic. *Petendi consûlâtum grâtiâ*. Sall. *Vênit ad rêcipiendum pécûnias*. Varr.

REMARK 1. The gerund is the same in form as the oblique cases of the neuter singular of participles in *us*, but it has the meaning of the active voice. It is sometimes translated by the present participle with a preposition, and sometimes by a present infinitive active; as, *Consilium Lacedæmonem occûpandi*, A design of occupying, or to occupy, Lacedæmon. Liv.

REM. 2. The gerund is sometimes, though rarely, used in a passive sense; as, *Spes restituendi nulla erat*,—of being restored. Nep. *Athénas erûdiendi grâtiâ* missus,—for the purpose of being instructed. Just. *Ante dômundum*. Virg. *Ades ad impêrandum*. Cic.

REM. 3. The gerund is in its nature a verbal noun, having only the genitive, dative, ablative, and, after a preposition, the accusative. In its signification it corresponds with the English present participle when used as a verbal noun. Hence, in the oblique cases, it supplies the place of a declinable present infinitive active; but in the accusative there is this difference between the infinitive used as an accusative and the gerund, that the infinitive has simply the power of an abstract noun, whereas the gerund expresses a real action; as *Multum intêrest inter dâre et accipêre*. Sen. *Non solum ad discendûm propensûmus, sed etiam ad docendûm*. Cic.

II. When the *object* of an active verb is to be expressed, the participle in *dus* is commonly used in preference to the gerund; the object taking the case in which the gerund, if used, would have been put, and the participle agreeing with it.

Thus, to express 'the design of writing a letter,' which, with the aid of the gerund, would be represented in Latin by *Consilium scribendi epistolæ*; the participle in *dus* is commonly substituted for the gerund: and since, in this example, the gerund, (*scribendi*) is in the genitive, the rule requires that, in substituting the participle for the gerund, the object of the gerund (*epistolam*) should also be put in the genitive, and that the participle (*scribens*) should agree with it in gender, number, and case. Hence with the participle the expression is, *Consilium scribens epistolæ*. Between the two forms of construction there is no difference of signification. So, *Consilia urbis delendæ* (Cic.), for *urbem delendi*, Plans for destroying the city. *Repandarum classium causæ* (Suet.), for *repandendi classes*. *Perpetiendæ lābōri idōneus*. Colum. *Ad defendendam Rōmā ab oppugnandā Cāpuā dūces Rōmānos abstrāhēre*. Liv.

REMARK 1. The same construction is used with the future passive participles of *utor*, *frutor*, *fungor*, *pōtor*, and rarely of *mōdeor*, as these verbs were originally followed by the accusative; as, *Ætas ad hæc utendā idōnea*. Ter. *Iustitiæ fruendæ causā*. Cic. *In munere fungendo*. Id. *Hostes in spem pōtuit dōrum castrorū vñerant*. Cæs. *Agus salubritate mēdendisq; corpōribus mōbiles*. Vell.

REM. 2. When a participle is thus used for a gerund, it is called a *gerundive*, and is usually translated like a gerund. The gerundive cannot be substituted for the gerund, where ambiguity would arise from the gender not being distinguishable. It should therefore not be used when the object of the gerund is a neuter pronoun or adjective; as, *Aliquid faciendi ratiō* (Cic.), not *alicujus*. *Artem et vērā et falsā dījudicandi* (Id.), not *vērōrum dījudicandōrum*: because it would not be known whether *alicujus* and *vērōrum* were masculine or neuter. It is to be remarked, also, that the change of the gerund into the gerundive is less frequent in some writers than in others.

III. Examples of the construction of gerunds, in each of their cases, have been already given, among other nouns, under the heads *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, and *Ab-lative*. The following remarks specify in what connections they are used: and when is said that the gerundive is governed in any of the cases like the gerund, it will of course be understood of the noun which is limited by a gerundive.

REMARK 1. The genitive of gerunds and gerundives may follow either nouns or relative adjectives; as,

*Amor habendi*. Cic. *Patriam spes videndi*. Virg. *Nam habet nātūra, ut aliūrum omnium rerum, sic vivendi mōdum*. Cic. *Barbāra consuetūdo hōmīnum immō-lundūrum*. Id. *Postremo Cātīlīna dissimulandi causā aut sui expurgandi, in servitūm vēnit*. Sall. *Inta sunt consilia urbis delendæ; civiū trucidandōrum, nōmīnis Rōmāni exstinguendi*. Id. *Venandi studiū*. Cic. *Certus eundi*. Virg. *Insectus navigandi*. Cæs. *Pēritus civitātis regendæ*. Nep.

(1.) The nouns after which these genitives most frequently occur are *amor*, *ars*, *causa*, *consilium*, *consuetudo*, *cōpia*, *cupiditas*, *dēsideriūm*, *difficultas*, *fīnis*, *fācultas*, *forma*, *grātia*, *illīcebra*, *libido*, *lucus*, *licentiā*, *mōdus*, *mātēria*, *mōs*, *occāsio*, *ōtium*, *pōtestas*, *ratiō*, *spātium*. *spes*, *studiū*, *tempus*, *usus*, *vēniā*, *vis*, *vōluntas*.

NOTE 1. With these and other substantives the infinitive also may be used, when with a tense of *sum* they form a periphrasis for a verb which is followed by the infinitive, or supply the place of an adjective of which the infinitive is the subject; as, *Quibus omnia hōnesta atque inhōnesta vendēre mōs erat*, With whom it was a custom, or, who were accustomed. Sall. *Tempus est abire*, It is time, i. e. *tempus est*, it is proper to go

(2.) The relative adjectives, which most frequently take after them these genitives, are such as denote *desire, knowledge, remembrance*, and their contraries; as, *avidus, cupidus, studiosus, peritus, imperitus, insuetus, certus, conscius, ignarus, rudis*, etc. See § 218, R. 1, (8.)

NOTE 2. With the relative adjectives the infinitive is also joined poetically.

(3.) Instead of an accusative after the gerund, or a genitive plural with a gerundive, a noun or pronoun in the genitive plural is sometimes joined with the gerund: as, *Exemplorum eligendi potestas*, instead of *exempla eligendi*, or, *exemplorum eligendorum*. Cic. *Earum rerum infutitandi ratio*. Id. *Facultas agrorum condonandi*. Cic. *Nominandi istorum erit copia*. Plaut.

(4.) The pronoun *tui* and also the plurals *vestri* and *sui*, even when feminine, are joined with the masculine or neuter form of the gerundive in *di*; as, *Quoniam tui videndi est copia*. Plaut. *Non vereor, ne quis hoc me vestri adhortandi causa magnifice loqui existimet*. Liv. *In castra venerunt sui purgandi causa*.—With the demonstrative pronouns, *ejus, hujus, illius*, the participle usually agrees, but in two passages of Terence *ejus*, though referring to a woman, has the participle in *di*, not in *dæ*; as, *Ego ejus videndi cupidus recte consequor*. Ter. *Tui* in the first example and *ejus* in the last are feminine.

(5.) By a Greek idiom the gerund and gerundive, after the verb *sum*, are sometimes found in the genitive denoting a *tendency or purpose*, with no noun or adjective on which they can depend; as, *Régium imperium initio conservandæ libertatis fuerat*. Sall. Sometimes *esse* in some form is to be supplied; as, *Quæ postquam gloriosa modo, neque belli patrandi cognovit*, scil. *esse*. Id. *Causæ* or *gratiæ* may sometimes be supplied. In some other cases, also, the word on which the gerund in *di* depends is not expressed, and the gerund seems to be used instead of the infinitive; as, *Maneat provinciâbus potentiam suam tali modo ostentandi*, scil. *facultas*. Tac. *Quum haberem in animo navigandi*, scil. *propositum*. Cic.

REM. 2. The dative of gerunds and gerundives is used after adjectives which govern a dative (§ 222), especially after those which signify *usefulness or fitness*; and also after certain verbs and phrases, to denote a *purpose*; as,

*Charta empôrîtica est inâstis scribendo*. Plin. *Câpessendæ reipublicæ habilis*. Tac. *Ut nec triumviri accipiundo, nec scribæ referendo sufficerent*. Liv. *Locum oppido condendo capere*. Id. *Non fuit consilium agrum colendo aut venando intentum ciuitatem agere*. Sall. *Tiberius quasi firmandæ valitadini in Campâniâ concessit*. Tac. *Quum solvendo ære aliqno respublica non esset*. Liv. *Quum solvendo ciuitates non essent*,—were insolvent. Cic.

(1.) The verbs and phrases upon which this dative most frequently depends are, *Studere, intentum esse, tempus impendere, tempus consumere* or *insumere, operam dare, sufficere, satis esse, deesse, esse*, signifying *to serve for, to be adequate to*, and, in later writers, on verbs of motion.—The dative of the gerund after *sum* is usually supposed to depend on *idoneus* understood; but see § 227, R. 3.

(2.) The dative of the gerundive, denoting a purpose, is also used after names of office; as, *Décemviri légibus scribendis*, i. e. the ten commissioners for drawing up a code of laws. Liv. So, *Cômîtia creandis décemviris*. Id. *Triumviro agro dando creat*. Id.

(3.) A purpose is more commonly expressed by *ad* and the accusative of the gerund, or by a clause with *ut*, than by the dative; as, *Pecus ad vescendum hominibus apta*. Cic.

REM. 3. The accusative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *ad, to, or inter*, during or amid, and sometimes *ante, circa* or *ob*; as,

*Ad poenitendum prœperat, qui cito jactat.* Pub. Syr. *Inter bibendum* While drinking. Just. *Ad tolerandos facilius labores.* Quint. *Ad castra facienda* Cic. *Ob observandum.* Id.

NOTE. The construction of the gerundive instead of the gerund almost invariably occurs here when the object of the gerund is to be expressed.

REM. 4. The ablative of gerunds and gerundives follows the prepositions *a*, (*ab*), *de*, *e*, (*ex*), or *in*; or it is used without a preposition, as the ablative of cause, manner, or means; as,

*Aristotëlem non deterruit a scribendo.* Cic. *Ex assentando.* Ter. *Non video a defendendis hominibus discedere.* Cic. *Crescit eundo.* Virg. *Rem quarunt mercaturis faciendis.* Cic. *Oratorem Latinam legendis nostris efficias pleniorum.* Id.

NOTE 1. This ablative also occurs, though rarely, after *pro* and *cum*; as, *Pro capulando.* Plaut. *Cum loquendo.* Quint.

NOTE 2. Generally with the ablative of the means, and always with the ablative after a preposition, the gerund, when its object is to be expressed, is changed to the gerundive. In a few passages the ablative of the gerundive is differently construed; as, *Nullum officium referendam gratiam magis necessarium est*, instead of *relatione gratia*. § 256. Cic. *Nec jam possidendis publicis agris contentos esse.* § 244. Liv. *Is finis fuit ulciscendam Germanici morte*,—in avenging the death of Germanicus. Tac.; where the ablative seems to imply time. § 253.

## SUPINES.

§ 276. Supines, like gerunds, are verbal nouns, having no other cases except the accusative and ablative singular. In certain connections they supply the place of the present infinitive; the supine in *um* having an active and the supine in *a* a passive signification. As in the case of gerunds, we are to regard their construction both as verbs and as nouns. As verbs we are to notice their government, as nouns, their dependence.

I. Supines in *um* are followed by the same cases as their verbs; as,

*Non Græcis servitum matribus ibo*, I shall not go to serve Grecian matrons. Virg. *Te id admonitum venio.* Plaut.

II. Supines in *um* follow verbs of motion, and serve to denote the purpose of the motion; as,

*Cubitum disceamus.* Cic. *Ire dejectum monumenta regis.* Hor. *Legati venerunt questum injurias, et res repetitum.* Liv. *Quum spectatum ludos iret.* Nep. So after participles; as, *Patriam defensum revocatus.* Nep. *Spectatum admissi.* Hor.

NOTE. The construction of the supine in *um*, considered as a noun, is analogous to that of names of places in answer to the question 'whither?' (§ 237), the notion of purpose arising from its verbal character.

REMARK 1. Supines in *um* sometimes follow verbs which do not express motion; as, *Do filium nuptum.* Ter. *Vos ultum injurias hortor.* Sall.

REM. 2. The supine in *um* with *eo* literally signifies 'I go to do a thing,' and hence 'I intend,' or, 'am going to.' Instances of this use are found in Plautus and Terence and in the prose writers later than Cicero; as, *Mea Glycërium, quid agis? cur te is perditum?* Why are you going to destroy yourself? Plaut. *Bonorum præmum ereptum eunt.* Sall. With *eo* the supine in *um* often forms a periphrasis equivalent to the same mood and tense of the verb from which the

supine is formed; as, *Ne dñcos omnes perditum eant* (Sall.), for *perdant*. *Ereptum eunt* (Id.), for *eripiunt*. *Ultum tui* (Tac.), for *ultus est*. *Ultum ire injurias festinat*, i. e. *ulcisci*. Sall.

REM. 3. The supine in *um* most frequently occurs with the infinitive *iri* with which it forms the future infinitive passive; as, *Brütum visum iri a me pñlo*. Cic. In this construction the accusative properly depends upon the supine, and *iri* is used impersonally; 'I suppose that I am going to see Brutus' § 184, 2, (a). Its notion of futurity is derived from the proper signification of the active voice, as *perditum iri*, to go to destroy, the idea of intending passing easily into that of futurity.

REM. 4. But to express a purpose Latin writers in general prefer using a gerund or gerundive in the accusative with *ad* or in the genitive with *causæ* or *gratiæ*, a subjunctive clause with *ut* or *quæ*, a present or future active participle, and sometimes poetically an infinitive. See § 275, R. 1, 2: §§ 262, 264, 274, and 271.

III. The supine in *u* is used to limit the meaning of adjectives signifying *wonderful*, *agreeable*, *easy* or *difficult*, *worthy* or *unworthy*, *honorable* or *base*, and a few others; as,

*Mirabile dictu!* Wonderful to tell, or to be told! Virg. *Jucundum cognitû atque auditu*, Pleasant to be known and heard. Cic. *Res factu facilis*, A thing easy to be done. Ter. *Facilia inventu*. Gell. *Incredibile memoratu*. Sall. *Turpia dictu*. Cic. *Optimum factu*. Id.

NOTE. The principal supines in *u* in common use are *auditû*, *cognitû*, *dictu*, *factu*, *inventu*, *memoratu* and *natu*, which occurs in the expressions, *gravis*, *major*, *minor*, *maximus*, and *minimus natu*. In *magno natu*, of an advanced age, and *maximo natu filius*, the eldest son. *Natu* is the ablative of a verbal substantive, since neither gerunds nor supines are joined with adjectives.

REMARK 1. The principal adjectives, after which the supine in *u* occurs, are *affabilis*, *arduus*, *asper*, *bñnus*, *deformis*, *dignus*, *indignus*, *dulcis*, *durus*, *facilis*, *difficilis*, *factus*, *gravis*, *honestus*, *horrendus*, *incrédibilis*, *jucundus*, *injucundus*, *magnus*, *memorabilis*, *mollis*, *prœclaris*, *pulcher*, *rarus*, *turpis*, and *utilis*.

REM. 2. The supine in *u* is used also after the nouns *fas*, *nēfas*, and *opus*; as, *Hoc fas est dictu*. Cic. *Nēfas dictu*. Ovid. *Dictu opus est*. Ter.—In the following examples it follows a verb: *Pudet dictu*. Tac. Agr. 32. *Dictu fustidenda sunt*. Val. Max. 9, 13, 2.

REM. 3. As the supine in *u* is commonly translated by a passive form, it is placed under the passive voice; but, in many cases, it may with equal or greater propriety be translated actively. As a noun, its construction may be referred to the ablative of limitation. § 250.

REM. 4. (a.) Instead of the supine in *u*, an infinitive, a gerund or gerundive with *ad*, or a verbal noun in the ablative, and sometimes in the dative or accusative, may be used; as, *Ardua imitatu, ceterum cognosci utilia*. Val. Max. *Illud autem facile ad credendum est*. Cic. *Opus proscriptione dignum*. Plin. *Aqua potui jucunda*. Id. *Facilior ad intellectum atque imitationem*. Quint. With *opus* est the perfect passive participle is often used instead of the supine in *u*; as, *Opus est maturato*, There is need of haste. Cf. § 243, R. 1.

(b.) The construction with *ad* and the gerund; as, *res facilis ad intelligendum*; or with *sum* and the infinitive active; as, *facile est invenire*, is used by the best writers after *facilis*, *difficilis*, and *jucundus*. The most common construction of *dignus* is with *quæ* and the subjunctive, (§ 264, 9), but the poets and later prose writers have joined it with the infinitive passive.

## ADVERBS.

§ 277. I. Adverbs modify or limit the meaning of verbs, adjectives, and sometimes of other adverbs; as,

*Bene mōnes.* You advise well. Ter. *Fortissime urgentes,* Most vigorously pressing on. Plin. *Māle narrando.* Ter. *Longe dissimilis.* Cic. *Valde bene.* Id.

REMARK 1. Adverbs may also modify nouns, when they are used as adjectives or participles, and accordingly denote a quality, or when a participle is understood. They are also joined to adjective pronouns, when their adjective-character predominates; and sometimes limit the meaning of a preposition; as, *Pōpūlus lāte rex,* for *lāte regnans*,—ruling far and wide. Virg. *Nihil admōdum,* Nothing at all. Cic. *Hōmo plāne noster*,—entirely ours that is, devoted to us. Id. *Hōmērus plāne orātor.* Id. *Admōdum puella.* Liv. *Lāte tyrannus.* Hor. *Grāvibus sup̄erne icibus conflictābantur,* i. e. *sup̄erne accidentibus.* Tac. *Muldarum circa civitatum,* i. e. neighboring cities. Liv.

REM. 2. (a.) Most of the modifications made by adverbs may also be made by means of the various cases of nouns and adjectives, and many modifications may be made by these, for expressing which no adverbs are in use. In general those limitations which are most common can be expressed by adverbs; as, *sāpienter* for *cum sāpentiā*; *hic* for *in hoc loco*; *bene* for *in bōno mōdo*; *nunc* for *hoc tempore*.—(b.) The following are examples of other parts of speech used adverbially, viz. *Nihil*, 'in no way'; *nonnihil*, 'in some measure'; *quidquam*, 'at all'; *āliquid*, 'somewhat'; *quid?* 'why?'

REM. 3. A negative adverb, modifying another negative word, destroys the negation; as,

*Non pārere nōluit*, He was not unwilling to obey. Nep. *Haud ignāra nulli* Not ignorant of evil. Virg. *Haud nihil est*, It is something. Ter. *Nec hoc illi non vidit*, And this he clearly perceived. Cic. So, *nonnulli*, some; *nonnunquam*, sometimes. *Non*, before a negative word, commonly heightens the affirmative sense, while it softens the expression; as, *Hōmo non indoctus*, i. e. *hōmo sāne doctus*. *Non sēmel*, i. e. *sēpius*; *non ignōro*, *non nescio*, *non sum nescius*, I know very well. *Qui mortem in malis pōnit*, *non pōtest eam non timere*,—must needs fear it. Cic.

REM. 4. When the subject and predicate of a proposition are both modified by negative words, and also when the predicate contains two negatives, the proposition is affirmative; as,

*Nemo non videt*, Every one sees. Cic. *Nēque hęc non evēnerunt*, And this indeed took place. So, if both the antecedent and the predicate of a relative clause are negative, the proposition is affirmative; as, *Nemo est, qui nesciat* Every body knows. Cic.

REM. 5. (a.) But in the case of *non* followed by *ne—quidem*, the two negative do not destroy each other; as, *Non fūgio ne hęc quidem mōres*: and when the negative leading proposition has subordinate subdivisions with *nēque—nēque*, *nēre—nēre*, or *non—non*, these negative particles are equivalent to *aut—aut*; as, *Non me carminibus vincet, nec Orpheus, nec Linus*. Virg. *Nēmīnem, non re, non terbo, non ultu dentique offēdit*. Cic. *Nullius rei nēque press, nēque manceps fuctus est*. Nep.

(b.) In a few passages, however, two negatives in Latin, as in Greek, strengthen the negation, and this exception appears to have been derived from the language of common life; as, *Jura te non nōtūtāram hōmīni nēmīni*. P. ant.

(c.) *Nemo*, *nullus*, *nihil*, and *numquam* have a different sense according as the *non* is placed before or after them; as, *Non nemo*, some one; *nemo non*, every one; *non nulus*, some; *nullus non*, every; *non nihil*, something; *nihil non*, every thing; *non numquam*, sometimes; *numquam non*, at all times. So, *nusquam non*, every where, but instead of *nonnusquam*, *ālicubi* is used.

REM. 6. (a.) *Non* is sometimes omitted after *non mōdo* or *non solum*, when followed, in a subsequent clause, by *ne quidem*, if both clauses have the same verb, and if the verb is contained in the second clause; as,

*Mihi non modo irasci, sed ne dolere quidem impune licet*, which is equivalent to *Mihi non modo non irasci, sed ne dolere quidem impune licet*, or *Mihi non modo irasci, sed dolere quidem impune non licet*, Not only am I not permitted to be angry, but not even to grieve with impunity. Cic. *Quum senatus non solum juvare rempublicam, sed ne lagere quidem liceret*. Id.

(b.) *Non* is also rarely omitted after *non modo* when followed by *sed* or *verum* with *etiam*, and also after *vix*; as, *Qui non modo ea futura timebat, verum etiam ferri sustinetque presentia*, Who not only does not fear.... Cic. *Hæc genera virtutum non solum in moribus nostris, sed vix jam in libris reperiuntur*, These virtues are not only not found in life, but scarcely in books. Id.

REM. 7. *Facile*, in the sense of *undoubtedly, clearly*, is joined to superlatives, and words of similar import; as, *Vir unus totius Græciæ facile doctissimus*. Cic. *Homo regionis illius virtute facile princeps*. Id.

REM. 8. Sentences are often united by means of an adverb which is repeated before each of the connected clauses; as, *modo—modo*, and *nunc—nunc*, (sometimes—sometimes); as, *Modo hoc, modo illud dicit; modo huc, modo illuc vocat*. Instead of the second *modo* other particles of time are sometimes used; as, *aliquando, nonnumquam, interdum, sæpius, tum* or *deinde*.—*Partim—partim*, 'partly—partly,' is sometimes used with a genitive or the preposition *ex*, in the sense of *alii—alii*, as a nominative in all the genders; as, *Quum partim e nobis ita timidi sunt, ut, etc., partim ita republicâ averſi, ut, etc.*—*Simul—simul*, 'as well—as,' like *nunc—nunc*, is not found in Cicero.—*Quâ—quâ* is equivalent to *et—et*.—*Tum—tum* is used sometimes like *modo—modo*, sometimes like *partim—partim*; as *Erumpunt sæpe vitia amicorum tum in ipsos amicos, tum in alienos*. Cic. *Hæc (beneficia) tum in universam rempublicam, tum in singulos cives conferuntur*. Id.

REM. 9. *Quum—tum* is equivalent to *et—et*, except in assigning a greater importance to the second part: hence it must be translated by 'both—and especially,' 'not only—but also,' or 'but more particularly.' Sometimes additional weight is given to the second part by means of *vero, certe, etiam, quodque, præcipue, imprimis* or *maxime*. This use of *quum—tum* seems to have had its origin in the use of *quum* with the subjunctive and often with the indicative in the protasis, followed by *tum* in the apodosis. When *quum* followed by *tum* serves to express the opposition between single words which have the same verb, it is to be regarded as a complete adverb; as, *Fortuna quum in rebus quis rebus, tum præcipue in bello plurimum potest*. Sometimes the verb stands in the first part of the sentence; as, *Quum omnis arrogantia odiosa est, tum illa ingenii atque eloquentiæ multo molestissima*. *Tum* is sometimes repeated in the second part of the sentence; as, *Quem pater moriens quum tutoribus et propinquis, tum legibus, tum æquitati magistratuum, tum judiciis vestris commendatum putavit*. Cic. Sometimes the gradation is, *quum—tum—tum vero*.

REM. 10. *Non modo—sed etiam* (or *non solum, or non tantum—verum etiam*) generally expresses the transition from less important to more important things, like the English 'not only—but (also)'. The transition from greater to smaller things is expressed by *non modo—sed*, without the *etiam*, which we render in English by 'I will not say—but only,' and in Latin, too, we may say *non dicam* or *non dico—sed*; as, *Quid est enim minus non dico oratoris, sed hominis*.

REM. 11. *Tum—quam* expresses a comparison in degree; as, *Nemo tam multa scripsit, quam multa sunt nostra*. With superlatives they are rendered into English by 'the—the' and comparatives; as, *Vitrodeus quam plurimum bibit, tum maxime sitit*, The more he drinks, the more he thirsts. Cato. *Quam perire pessime fecit, tam maxime tutus est*. Sall.—*Tum—quam* quod maxime signifies, 'as much as possible.'—*Non tam—quam* signifies, 'not so much—as,' or 'less—than'; as, *Provincia non tam grâtiæ et illustris, quam negotiæ ac molesta*. Cic.

REM. 12. *Non minus—quam* and *non magis—quam* are equivalent to *æque—ac*, 'as much as,' but in *non magis—quam* the greater weight is attached to the affirmative clause beginning with *quam*; as, *Alexander non dicis magis quam*



*militis nūmā. evocābātur*, Alexander performed as much the service of a soldier as that of a commander. In this connection *plus* frequently supplies the place of *in i re*.

(a.) *Ita*; *ac d. ita* are demonstrative adverbs corresponding to the relative *ut*. The restrictive meaning of *ita* (see § 191, R. 5.), is sometimes made more emphatic by the addition of *tāmen*. *Tantus* is used in a like restrictive sense; as, *Præsidii tantum est, ut ne mīrus quidem cingi possit*, i. e. 'only so much.' Cæs.

(b.) *Ut*—*ita* or *sic* places sentences on an equality. They may sometimes be translated 'although—still,' or 'indeed—but.'—The adverb *ut*, 'as,' sometimes takes the signification of the conjunction *quod*, 'because'; as, *Atque illi ut semper fuit apertissimus, non se purgavit*. Cic.

REM. 13. In an enumeration, *primum*, *deinde*, *tum*, *dénique* are commonly preferred to the numerals, *primum*, *secundo*, (for *secundum* is not often used), *tertium*, *quartum*, etc., unless the strict succession of the numbers is required. Sometimes *tum* is used once or twice instead of *deinde*, or the series is extended by *accēdit*, *huc addit*, etc. Sometimes *dénique* is followed by *postrēmo* to form the conclusion of a series, but often *dénique* without the other adverb concludes a series, and is then equivalent to 'in short' or 'in fine.' See Cic. Cat. 1, 5.

REM. 14. *Minus* is often used for *non*; as, *Nonnumquam ea, quæ prædicta sunt, minus eveniunt*. Cic.—So, *si minus*—*at*, 'if not—yet;' and *sin minus*, 'but if not,' without a verb, after a preceding *si*; but with *si non* the verb is repeated.—The English 'how little' is in Latin *quam non*; and 'so little,' *ita non* or *adeo non*; as, *adeo non curābat, quid homīnes de se loquerentur*.

REM. 15. *Nunc* always expresses the time actually present, or the time to which a narrator transfers himself for the purpose of making his description livelier. Thus in speaking of the present time we may say, *Nunc primum somnia me elidunt* or *elūsērunt*; but in a narrative we must say, *Somnia tunc primum se dicebat elūsisse*. Compare the use of *hic* and *ille*. See § 207, R. 23, (c.)

REM. 16. The conjunction *dum*, 'while,' when added to negatives, becomes an adverb, signifying 'yet'; as, *nondum*, 'not yet'; *nequid*, 'and not yet'; *nihiludum*, 'no one yet'; *nihiludum*, 'nothing yet.' Hence *vixdum* signifies 'scarcely yet'; as, *Vixdum epistolam tuam lēgeram, quum ad me Curtius venīit*. Cic.—So, also, the conjunction *nisi*, by omitting its verb or uniting it with the leading verb, acquires, after negatives and negative questions, the sense of the adverb 'except,' which is generally expressed by *præterquam* or the preposition *præter*, and must be so expressed when no negative precedes. But the expression 'except that' may be rendered either by *nisi quod* or *præterquam quod*.—After *nihil aliud* we may use either *nisi* or *quam*, *nisi* referring to *nihil* and *quam* to *aliud*. Hence *nihil aliud nisi* signifies 'nothing further,' or 'nothing more,' and *nihil aliud quam*, 'nothing else,' or 'no other thing but this.'

REM. 17. *Ut*, 'as,' in interposed clauses, such as *ut opinor*, *ut puto*, *ut censeo*, *ut credo*, is frequently omitted. *Credo*, used in this manner often takes an ironical sense.

## PREPOSITIONS.

II. 1. See respecting the construction of prepositions with the accusative § 236; and with the ablative, § 241. See, also, for the different meanings of prepositions, § 195, and for their arrangement, § 279, 10.

2. Two prepositions must not be joined in Latin, as they sometimes are in English, with the same noun; as, to speak *for* and *against* a law; or, I have learned this *with*, and, to some extent, *from* him. These sentences may be thus expressed in Latin; *pro lege et contra legem dicere*; *hæc cum eo, partim ab eo dicti*. Those dissyllabic prepositions only, which are sometimes used as adverbs, may follow another, without being joined with a case; as *quod aut secundum naturam esset, aut contra*. Cic. *Cis Padum ultraque* Liv Cæsar reverses the order, *Intra extraque munitiōnes*. B. Civ. 3, 72

3. When nouns mutually dependent upon a preposition are in apposition, when they constitute an enumeration without a connective and when connected by copulative, disjunctive, adversative, or comparative conjunctions, the preposition is not repeated, unless such nouns are to be distinguished from each other, or are emphatic; as,

*Quid dicam de thésauro omnium rerum, mēmōriā? Hoc appāret in bestiis, volucribus, nantibus, agrestibus, cicūribus, fēris, ut se ipse diligant. Cic. Scēpissime inter me et Scipiōnem de amicitia dissērebātur. Id. Quid fūcres si in aliquam dōnum villamve vēnisses? Id. Nihil per iram aut cupiditatem actum est. Id. Thēmistocles non minus in rēbus gerendis promptus quam excogitandis erat. Nep.*

4. The monosyllabic prepositions *ab*, *ad*, *de*, *ex*, and *in* are often used before each of two nouns connected by *et*, etc., especially if the qualities denoted by such nouns are to be considered separately. If the nouns are separated by *et—et*, *nec—nec*, etc., the prepositions must be repeated; as, *Ut eorum et in bellicis et in civilibus officiis vigeat industria. Cic.—Inter* is frequently repeated by Cicero after *interesse*, and other writers repeat it after other verbs also; as, *Quid intersit inter popularem—civem, et inter constantem, severum et gravem. Cic. Certatum inter Ap. Claudium maxime ferunt et inter P. Decium. Liv.*

5. (a.) In poetry a preposition is occasionally omitted with the first of two nouns, and put with the second only; as, *Quae nemora, aut quos agor in specus,* (Hor.) for, in *quae nemora aut in quos specus agor. So, Hor. Ep. 2, l. 25.—*(b.) An ellipsis of a preposition with the relative pronoun sometimes occurs, together with that of the verb belonging to the preceding demonstrative; as, *In eadem opinione fui, qua reliqui omnes,* (Cic.), properly *in qua reliqui omnes fuerunt.*

## CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 278. Copulative, disjunctive, and other coördinate conjunctions, connect similar constructions.

NOTE 1. Clauses are similarly constructed, which are mutually independent, whose subjects and verbs are in the same case and mood, and which have neither no dependence or a similar dependence on another clause.

NOTE 2. (a.) Words have a similar construction, when they stand in the same relation to some other word or words in the sentence. Hence,

(b.) Conjunctions connect the same cases of nouns and pronouns, dependent, if the cases are oblique, upon the same government; the same number, case, and gender of adjectives, belonging to the same noun; the same mood of verbs, either independent, or alike dependent; adverbs qualifying the same verbs, adjectives, etc.; and prepositions on which depends the same noun or pronoun; as, *Concitant venti, fugiuntque nubes.* The winds subside, and the clouds disperse. Hor. *Locum, quem et non coquit sol, et tangit ros.* Varr. *Lux decem per dies, facti sunt, neque res ulla praetermissa est.* Cic. *Vides, ut alio sty nibe consilium Socrate, nec jam sustineant onus silvae liberrantes, yelique flumini consisterint acuto.* Hor. *Intelligitis et animum ei praesto fuisse, nec consilium defuisse.* Cic. *Generi antmentium omni est a natura tributum, ut se tueatur, declinetque ea, quae nocitura videntur.* Id. *Aut nemo, aut Cato sapiens fuit.* Id. *Pulvis et umbra sumus.* Hor. *Si tu et Tullia volitis, ego et Cicero valeamus.* Cic. *Aggere jacto turribusque constitutis.* Cæs. *Clarus et honoratus vir, An illustrious and honorable man.* Id. *Cæsar Rōmos cohortatus, liberaliterque oratione prosecutus.* Cæs. *Pater tuus, quem colui et dilexi.* Cic. *Belys spectant in se triontem et orientem solem.* Cæs. *Navigis junctis, ratibusque complantibus factis.* Id. *Lēge, rei tabellus redde.* Plaut. *Allobroges trans Rhodanum vicis sessionesque habebunt.* Cæs. *Quum triumphum egeris, censorque fueris, et ibiheris legatus.* Id. *Quum ad oppidum accessisset, castraque ibi ponere!* Cæs

*Ades animo, et omitte timorem.* Cic. *Ea vidēre ac perspicere p̄sentis.* Id. *Graviter et copiose dixisse dicitur.* Id. *Cum fratre an tunc.* Id. Cf. § 277, II. 2. *Qua carmina coruli, nūm̄erosque intendere nervis.* Virg. *Nec census, nec clorum nōmen arōrum, sed p̄bitas magnos ingēniumque fuit.* Ovid. *Philosophi negant quinquam virum bonum esse, nisi sapientem.* Cic. *Glōria virtutem tumquam umbra sequitur.* Id.

REMARK 1. Copulative conjunctions may connect either single words and phrases or entire clauses; the other conjunctions, whether coördinate or subordinate, connect clauses only.

REM. 2. Words thus connected are sometimes in different cases, though in the same construction; as, *Mea et resp̄blicę int̄est.* Cic. (See § 219.) *Sive es Rōmę, sive in Epiro.* Id. (See §§ 221 and 254. But see also § 221, Note.) *In Mettū descendit iudicis aures, et patris et nostras.* Hor. See § 211, R. 3. In like manner, *Ilannibal non aliter vinci p̄tuit, quam mōrā.*

REM. 3. As the subjunctive is often used for the imperative, they may be connected by coördinate conjunctions; as, *Disce nec invidias.* Pers.

REM. 4. Where the purpose of the writer requires it, coördinate conjunctions sometimes connect independent propositions, whose verbs are in different moods; as, *Stupōrem hōm̄inis, vel dicam p̄cūlis, vidēte.* Cic. *Nec satis scio, nec, si sciam, dicere ausim.* Liv.

REM. 5. *Et* is used after *multi* followed by another adjective, where in English 'and' is usually omitted; as, *Multę et magnę arbōres,* Many large trees. In such cases *et* supplies the place of *et is*, introducing a more accurate description. See § 207, R. 28, (c.)

REM. 6. The conjunction is often omitted; as, (a.) When two single words, as comprehending the whole idea, are opposed to each other, as, *velim, nolim*, whether I would or not; *maxima minima*, the greatest as well as the least; *prima postrema*, from the first to the last; *dignos indignos adire*; *ire redire*, to go to and fro. *Edificiis omnibus publicis privatis, sacris profanis sic p̄percit.* Cic. *Nam glōriam, hōnorem, imp̄rium bonus ignavus aq̄ue sibi exoptant.* Sall. C. 11.

(b.) *Et* is very frequently omitted between the names of two colleagues; as, *Consules d̄clārati sunt Cn. Pompeius M. Crassus. P. Lentulo L. Triario, quęstōribus urbānis.* Cic. Sometimes, also, when the two persons are not colleagues. It is also occasionally omitted between two words in the oratorical style; as, *Ad̄erant am̄ici, p̄p̄inqua.* Id.; also with verbs; as, *Adsunt, quēruntur Siculi.* Id. In good prose, if three or more substantives are joined, it is usual either wholly to omit the conjunction or to insert it between each. The following may serve as an example of both cases: *Qui non mōdo Curiis, Catōnibus, Pompeiis, antiquis illis, sed his r̄centibus, Mariis et Didii et Celsis comm̄mōrandis jacebant.* This is also the common practice with adjectives and verbs, and hence when *et* has not previously occurred in an enumeration of persons or things, we shou'd not conclude the enumeration with *et alii, et reliqui, et cetera*, etc., but should make use of the adjectives alone, *alii, reliqui, cetera*, etc. But though *et, ac* and *atque* are not used alone in the third or fourth place, yet the enclitic *que* frequently occurs in this position; as, *Preco ut ea res vobis pacem, tranquillitatem, oñum, concordiamq̄ue aff̄erat.* Cic. *Et* may be supplied also when two protases introduced by *si* are joined together; where we say 'if—and if,' or 'if—and.' See an example in Cic. Off. 3, 9.

(c.) An ellipsis of *ut* is supposed when *ne* precedes and *et, atque, or que* is used to continue the sentence, those copulative conjunctions in such case obtaining the meaning of the adversative *sed*; as, *Mōnere cepit Pōrum, ne ultima exp̄iri p̄st̄v̄raret, d̄d̄eretque se victōri.* Curt.

REM. 7. Copulative conjunctions are often used, before each of two or more connected words or clauses, in order to mark the connection more forcibly; as, *Et p̄cūnia p̄suadet, et gr̄tia, et auctōritas dicentis, et dignitas, et postremo aspectus.* Quint. *Hoc et turpe, nec tamen tūlum.* Cic. *N̄que nūta est, et æterna ut.* Id. *Et ubi et mihi voluptati fore.* Id. Before clauses the disjunctive con-

junctions are used in a similar manner; as, *Res ipsa aut inevitabil aut dehortabitur*. Id. So, also, *nunc...nunc, simul...simul, partim...partim, quā...quā, tum...tum, quum...tum*, are used before successive clauses.

REM. 8. To connect different names of the same person or thing, *sive* or *seu* rather than *aut* or *vel*, is employed: as, *Mars sive Mātors*. Cf. § 198, 2, (c.)

REM. 9. Instead of *et* and *ut* with the negatives *nemo, nihil, nullus*, and *numquam, neque* (or *nec*), and *ne* are used with the corresponding affirmative words *quisquam, ullus, unquam*, and *usquam*. But 'in order that no one' is rendered in Latin by *ne quis* and not by *ne quisquam*, see § 207, R. 31, (a.); as, *Libra quidem cēdunt, et dies, et menses, et anni: nec prætēritum tempus umquam revertitur*. Cic. *Sēnātus decrevit, dārent opēram consules, ne quid respūblica dētrimenti caperet*. Cæs.

REM. 10. The conjunctions *igitur, vērum, vērumtāmen, scilicet*, and *sed tāmen*, indicate a return to the construction of the leading clause, when it has been disturbed by the insertion of another clause. These conjunctions, in such connection, are usually rendered by 'I say,' and sometimes in Latin *inquam* is so used. *Nam* also is occasionally employed in this way and very rarely *itaque*.

REM. 11. *Vēro* and *autem* are frequently omitted in adversative clauses, especially in short ones; as, *Vincere scit Hannibal, victoriā ūti nescit*. Liv. This omission often occurs in describing a progress from smaller to greater things, as in Cic. Cat. 1, 1. And it is to be remarked that *non* in the second member of such adversative sentences is used without *et* or *vēro*; as, *aliēna vitia videt, sua non videt*. But in unreal suppositions or ironical sentences, where the second member contains the truth, *et non* or *ac non* must be used, where we may supply 'rather'; see § 198, 1, (c.); as, *Quāsi nunc id agātur,—ac non hoc quēratur*. Cic.

## INTERJECTIONS.

Respecting the construction of interjections with the nominative, see § 209 R. 13:—with the dative, § 228, 3:—with the accusative, § 238, 2:—and with the vocative, § 240.

## ARRANGEMENT.

### I. OF THE WORDS OF A PROPOSITION.

§ 279. 1. In arranging the parts of a proposition in English, after *connectives*, are placed, first, the *subject* and the words which modify or limit it; next, the *verb* and its modifiers; then, the *object* of the verb; and finally, *prepositions* and the words depending upon them. This is called the *logical* or *natural* order.

2. (a.) In Latin, either of the four principal parts of a sentence may be placed first, and there is great freedom in the arrangement of the rest, but with this general restriction in prose, that *words which are necessary for the complete expression of a thought should not be separated by the intervention of other words*. In ordinary discourse, especially in historical writing, the following general rule for the arrangement of the parts of a sentence is for the most part observed.

(b.) In a Latin sentence, after *connectives*, are placed, first, the *subject* and its modifiers; then, the *oblique cases* and other words which depend upon or modify the verb; and last of all, the *verb*.

(c.) Hence a Latin sentence regularly begins with the subject and ends with the principal verb of its predicate; as, *Dumnōrix grātiā et largitiōne apua Sequinos plurimum poterat.* Cæs. But the verb is often not placed at the end of a sentence, especially if the sentence is long, or if two many verbs would be thus brought together at the end. In the familiar style, also, the verb is often placed earlier in the sentence, and in explanatory clauses it is sometimes placed at the very beginning of the proposition, in which case a conjunction is generally added.

(d.) It is also to be remarked, as a further modification of the general rule of arrangement, that, in sentences containing the expression of emotion, the word whose emphasis characterizes it as especially affecting the feelings, or as forming a contrast, is placed at the beginning; as, *Cito arescit lacrima, pressertim in alienis malis,* Quickly dries the tear, especially when shed for others' woes. Cic. *Sua vitia insipientes et suam culpam in senectutem conferunt.* Id.

(e.) If there be no emotive or pathetic word requiring prominence, the place at the end of the proposition is reserved for the significant word, that is, the word which is to be most strongly impressed upon the understanding or memory; as, *Grullia est omnis divisa in partes tres.* Cæs. *Quod ante id tempus accidit* numquam. Id. *Quod aliud iter haberent* nullum. Id. *Quas virtus ex probatendo est appellata* prudentia. Cic.

3. (a.) Connectives generally stand at the beginning of the clause which they introduce, and with the following this is their only position; viz. *et, etenim, ac, at, atque, atque, neque* or *nec, aut, vel, sive, sin, sed, nam, verum*, and the relatives *quare, quocirca, and quomobrem*.

(b.) Most other connectives generally stand in the first place, but when a particular word is peculiarly emphatic, this word with all that belongs to it stands first, and the conjunction follows it. *U*, even when there is no particular emphasis, is commonly placed after *vix, pæne, and prope*, and also after the negatives *nullus, nemo, nihil*, and the word *tantum*. In Cicero, *itaque* stands first and *igitur* is commonly placed after the first, and sometimes after several words.

(c.) *Autem, enim, and vero* (but), are placed after the first word of the clause, or after the second, when the first two belong together, or when one of them is the auxiliary verb *sum*; as, *Ille enim revocatus resistere cepit.* Cæs. *Ego vero rellem, affuisses.* Cic. *Incredibile est enim, quum sit,* etc. Id. They rarely occur after several words; as, *Cur non de integro autem datum.* Id. The enclitics *que, ne, ve*, are usually subjoined to the first word in a clause; but when a monosyllabic preposition stands at the beginning, they are often attached to its case; as, *Romum cito demigravit, in foreque esse cepit*; and this is always the case with *a, ad* and *ob*. So, also, for the sake of euphony, *Apud quosque.* Cic.

(d.) *Quidem* and *quocunque*, when belonging to single words, are always subjoined to the emphatic word in a clause; as, *Verbo ille reus erat, re quidem vero Oppianicus.* Cic. *Me scilicet maxime; sed proxime illum quoque infellicem.* Id. In negative sentences, *ne* precedes, and *quidem* follows, the emphatic word; as, *Ne ad Catonem quidem provocabo.* Cic.—*Quidem* is sometimes attracted from the word to which it properly belongs to a neighboring pronoun; as, *Tibi que persuade, esse te quidem mihi carissimum, sed multo fore cariorum, et, etc.,* instead of, *te carissimum quidem mihi esse.*—Prepositions and conjunctions belonging to the word on which the emphasis rests are placed with it between *ne* and *quidem*; as, *Ne in sanis quidem.* Cic. *Ne si dubitetur quidem.* Id. *Ne quum in Sicilia quidem fuit.* Id.; and even *Ne cuius rei argueretur quidem.*—So, also, in Cicero, *non nisi*, 'orly,' are separated; and the negative may even be contained in a verb.

(e.) The preceding rules respecting the position of connectives are often violated by the poets, who place even the prepositive conjunctions after one or more words of a proposition; as, *Et tu, potes nam, etc..* Hor. *Vires et rodret*

*ingues*. Id. They even separate *et* from the word belonging to it, as, *Auctus et videtur plus errare per latus*. Id. So, *Auctius atque diu melius fecere*. Id. And they sometimes append *que* and *ve* neither to the first word, nor to their proper words in other connections; as, *Messallam terrâ dum sequiturque matri*, instead of *terrâ matrique*. Tib. In such arbitrary positions, however, these conjunctions are almost invariably joined to verbs only.

4. When a word is repeated in the same clause, so that one is opposed to, or distinguished from, the other, they must stand together; as, *Homines hominibus maxime utiles esse possunt*. Cic. *Equites alii alio dilapsi sunt*. Liv. *Lēgitur virum vir*. Virg. *Mānus manum lavat*. Petr. Sb, also, the personal and possessive pronouns; as, *Sēquere quo tua te natura ducit*. *Suum se negōium agere dicunt*.

5. Words used antithetically are also placed near each other; as, *Dum tā-ment, clāmant*. Cic. *Frāgile corpus ālulus sempiternus movet*. Id.

6. *Inquam* and often *aito*, introducing a quotation, follow one or more of the words quoted; as, '*Non nosti quid pater*,' inquit, '*Chrysippus dicat*.' Hor. '*Quid*,' aito, '*tua crimina prodīs*?' Ovid. When a nominative is added to *inquit*, it usually follows this verb; as, *Mihī vērō*, inquit Cotta, *videtur*. Cic.—*Dis-til* and *dirit* are used like *inquit* only by the poets.

7. (a.) The adjective may be placed before or after its noun according as one or the other is emphatic, the more emphatic word being placed before the other. When any thing is dependent on the adjective, it usually follows its noun. When a noun is limited by another noun, as well as by an adjective, the adjective usually precedes both; as, *Ulla officii praecepta*. Cic. *Tuum erga dignitatem meam stultum*. Id.

(b.) Demonstratives, and the adjectives *primus*, *medius*, etc., when signifying the first part, the middle part, etc., (see § 205, R. 17), usually precede their nouns; as, *Ea res*. Cæs. *His ipsis verbis*. Cic. *Mēdia nox*. Cæs. *Rēliqua Aegyptus*. Cic.

8. Monosyllables are usually prefixed to longer words with which they are connected; as, *Vir clārrissimus*. Cic. *Di immortāles*. *Res innūmērābiles*. *Vis tempestātis*. Cæs.

9. (a.) When nouns are put in apposition, the one which explains or defines the other is generally put last, unless it is to be made emphatic; as, *Opes irrāmēnta malōrum*. Ovid. Hence names of honors or dignities, and every thing of the nature of a title, are commonly placed after the proper name, as explanatory additions. Thus, especially, the names of changeable Roman dignities; as, *Cicēro consul*; *C. Cūriōni tribūno plēbis*; but also permanent appellations; as, *Ennius poēta*; *Plātō philōsophus*; *Diōnysius tyrannus*; and such epithets as *vir hōnestissimus*; *hōmo doctissimus*. But the hereditary title *rex* is frequently placed before the name; as, *rex Dēiōtārus*; and so the title *Impērātor* after it became permanent.

(b.) In the arrangement of the Roman names of persons, the *prænōmen* stands first, next the *nōmen* or name of the *gens*, third the *cognōmen* or name of the *fāmilia*, and last the *agnōmen*; as, *Publius Cornēlius Scipio Africānus*. The *prænomen* is usually denoted by a letter. In the imperial times the *nōmen* is often either omitted or follows as something subordinate.

10. (a.) Oblique cases precede the words on which they depend, but they follow prepositions; as,

*Pōpuli Rēmāni laus est*. Cic. *Laudis ardi, pēcūniæ libērāles*. Sall. *Cunctis esto benignus, nulli blandus, paucis familiāris, omnibus æquus*. Sen. *Mōnūmentum ære pērennis*. Hor. *Hanc tibi dōno do*. Ter.—*Ad mēridiem spectans*. Cic. *Extra pēriculum*. Id.

(b.) Genitives depending upon neuter adjectives are commonly placed last as, *Incerta fortūna*. Liv. *Nec tibi plus corāis, sed minus oris inest*. Ovid.

**REMARK.** This rule, so far especially as it relates to genitives is in a great degree arbitrary, as the position of the governed and governing words depends on the idea to be expressed; thus, *mors patris tui*, contrasts the death with the preceding life; but, *frātis tui mors* distinguishes this case of death from others. Hence we say, *animi mōtus, animi morbus, corpōis partes, terræ mōtus*.—An objective genitive usually follows the word on which it depends; as, *unā significatiōe* lītērārū, by means of a single notice by letters.—When several genitives are dependent on one noun, the subjective genitive commonly precedes and the objective genitive may either precede or follow the governing noun.—The genitive dependent on *causā* or *gratūi*, 'on account of,' regularly precedes these ablatives; as, *glōriæ causā mortem obire*; *emolūmenti sui gratiā*.

(c.) When a noun which is governed by a prepositiō n, is modified by other words which precede it, the preposition usually stands before the words by which the noun is modified; as, *A primā luce ad sextam hōram*. Liv. *Ad animi mei lectum*. Cic. *Ad bene beatūque vivendum*. Id.

(d.) Sometimes, however, the preposition comes between its noun and an adjective or a genitive, by which the noun is modified; as, *Nullā in re*. Cic. *Iustus de causis*. Id. *Suos inter æquales*. Id. *Hunc ob causam*. Id. *Magno cum rītu*. Id. *Quā in urbe*. Id. *Eā in re*. Id. *Etātis suæ cum primis*. Nep.—So, also, a conjunction may follow the preposition; as, *Post vērō Sullæ victōriam*.

(e.) *Per*, in adjurations, is often separated from its case by other words; as, *Per ego te deos oro*. Ter.—In the poets, other prepositions are sometimes separated in the same manner; as, *Vulnēra, quæ circum plurima mūros accēpit patris*. Virg.

(f.) *Tenus* and *versus*, and sometimes other prepositions, (cf. § 241, R. 1,) follow their cases, especially when joined with *qui* or *hic*. This occurs most frequently with the prepositions *ante*, *contra*, *inter*, and *propter*; more rarely with *circa*, *circum*, *pēnes*, *ultra* and *adversus*; and with still less frequency with *post*, *per*, *ad*, and *de*; as, *quam ante, quem contra, quos inter, quem propter, quos ad, quem ultra, hunc adversus, hunc post, quam circa*.—The preceding prepositions, and more rarely others also, sometimes, especially in the poets and later prose writers, follow nouns and personal pronouns. In such case, if the noun be modified by an adjective or a genitive, the preposition sometimes stands between them, and sometimes follows both; as, *Postes sub ipsos*. Virg. *Ripam apud Euphrātis*. Tac. *Maria omnia circum*. Virg. And more rarely other words intervene; as, *His accensa super*. Id. *Vitis nemo sine nascitur*. Hor.

11. Infinitives precede the verbs on which they depend; as,

*Jugurtha, ubi eos Africā decessisse ratus est, nēque propter loci naturam Cirtam armis expugnārē possit, mænia circumdat*. Sall. *Servire magis quam impārē parāti estis*. Id.

12. A word which has the same relation to several words, either precedes or follows them all; as, *Vir gravis et sapiens*. Cic. *Clarus et honoratus vir*. Id. *In scriptoribus legendis et imitandis*, or *In legendis imitandisque scriptoribus*; but not *In legendis scriptoribus et imitandis*. *Quam respondere nēque vellet neque posset*. *Habentur et dicuntur tyranni*. *Amicitiam nec usu nec ratione habent cogitāta*.

13. Relatives are commonly placed after their antecedents, and as near to them as possible; as,

*Qui sim, ex eo, quem ad te misi, cognosces*. Sall. *Litēras ad te misi, per quas q̄ datus tibi ēgi*. Cic.

14. *Quisque* is generally placed after *se*, *suus*, *quī*, ordinals and superlatives; as *Suos quisque debet tuērī*. Cic. *Satis superque est sibi suarū cuique rerū cura*. Id. *Sēvērītās animadversōnis infimo cuique grātissīma*. Id. *Maxīme decet, quod est cuiusque maxīme suum*. Id. *Quisque* very rarely begins a proposition.

15. (a.) An adverb is usually placed immediately before the word which it qualifies; but if the same word is modified by the oblique case of a noun, the latter commonly follows the adverb; as, *Māle parta māle dilābuntur*. Cic. *Nihil tam asperum neque tam difficile esse, quod non cupidissime facturū essent*. Sall.—*Impērium facile iis artibus retinētur, quibus initio partum est*. Id. *Sed maxime adolēsentium familiāritates appetēbat*. Id. *Non tam in bellis et in praeliis, quam in promissis et fide firmiores*. Cic.—(b.) When *non* belongs to a single word of the proposition, it always stands immediately before it; as, *non te reprēhendo, sed fortunam*. But if it belongs to the proposition generally, it stands before the verb, and particularly before the finite verb, if an infinitive depends on it; as, *Cur tantopere te angas, intelligere sōne non possum*. Instead of *non dico, nēgo* is generally used; as, *nēgavit eum adessee*.—The negatives *non, neque, nemo, nullus*, when joined to general negative pronouns or adverbs, such as *quisquam, ullus, unquam*, always precede them though not always immediately; as, *nēmīni quidquam negavit; non mēmīni me unquam te vidiisse*. § 207, R. 31.

NOTE 1. In some phrases, custom has established a certain order, which must be observed and imitated; as, *Civis Rōmīnus, pōpulus Rōmānus, jus civile, cōs illūm, terrā mārīque, Pontifex maximus, māgister equitum, tribūnus militum, tribūnus militum consulārī potestate, Jūpiter optimus maximus, via Appia; ne quid respublica detrimenti capiat*. Cic. The ablatives *opinione, spe, justo, solito*, (see § 256, R. 9), generally precede the comparative.

NOTE 2. Exceptions to the foregoing principles are very numerous. These may arise (a) from emphasis; (b) from poetic license; and (c) from regard to the harmony of the sentence. The following general rule sometimes modifies nearly all the preceding.

16. The emphatic word is placed before the word or words connected with it which are not emphatic.

NOTE 3. The last place is often an emphatic one, except for the verb. When the verb is neither first nor last in a proposition the word before it is emphatic. An adjective, when emphatic, commonly precedes its substantive; when not emphatic, it commonly follows it. But with the demonstrative pronouns the rule is reversed.

NOTE 4. The principal poetical variation in the arrangement of words consists in the separation of the adjective from its noun, and in putting together words from different parts of a proposition.

17. A sentence should not close like a hexameter verse, with a dactyl and spondee; as, *Esse videtur*; nor, in general, with a monosyllable.

18. *Hiatus* should be avoided; that is, a word beginning with a vowel should not follow a word ending with a vowel.

19. A concurrence of long words or long measures,—of short words or short measures,—of words beginning alike or ending alike,—should be avoided.

## II. OF THE ARRANGEMENT OF CLAUSES.

§ 280. A compound sentence, whose clauses are united as protasis and apodosis, or in which the leading clause is divided by the insertion of one or more subordinate clauses, is called a *period*.

1. (a.) In the former kind of period the protasis must precede the apodosis. as, *Quum Pausānias sēmianimis de templo elātus esset, confestim animam efflavit*. When Pausanias had been carried out of the temple but just alive, he immediately expired. In a period of the latter kind the verb of the principal proposition is placed at the end, and the subordinate clauses between the parts of the leading clause; as, *Pausānias, quum sēmianimis de templo elātus esset, confestim animam efflavit*, Pausanias, when he had been carried out of the temple but just alive, immediately expired. Nep.

(b.) A sentence, such as *Scipio exercitum in Africam trājecit, ut Hann' bātem ex illiā dedecret*, is not periodic in its structure, but it becomes so when we



say, *Scipio, ut Hannibālem ex Itāliā dedūceret, exercitum in Africā trājēct*  
Periods in which the subordinate clause precedes with two conjunctions, as  
*Quum igitur Rōmā vēnisset, statim imperātorem adiit*, are made still more  
strictly periodic by placing first the conjunction which belongs to the whole  
and then inserting the subordinate proposition; as, *Itaque, quum Rōmā vē-*  
*nisset, statim imperātorem adiit*.

2. (a.) If the verbs of the leading and dependent clauses have the same  
subject, or the same noun depending on them, they are commonly formed into  
a period; as, *Antigōnus, quum adversus Sēleucum Lysimāchumque dimicāret, in*  
*prælio occisus est. Nep. Quem, ut barbāri incendium effūgisse eminus viderunt,*  
*lælis missis interfecerunt. Id.*

(b.) So, also, when the noun which depends on the verb of the leading clause  
is the subject of the dependent clause; as, *L. Manlio, quum dictātor fuisset,*  
*M. Pompōnius, tribūnus plēbis, diem dixit. Cic.*

3. When obscurity would arise from separating the leading subject and  
verb by dependent words or clauses, they are often placed together at the be-  
ginning or end of the sentence; as, *Lætæ (sunt) deinde lēges, non solum quæ*  
*regni suspiciōne consilium absolvērent, sed quæ adeo in contrārium verterent, ut popu-*  
*larem etiā facerent. Liv.* The position of the leading verb is also often  
otherwise varied, from regard to emphasis, to avoid monotony, or to prevent  
its meeting with the verb of the last dependent clause; but clauses, when so  
arranged, do not constitute a period.

4. When one clause is interrupted by the introduction of another, the latter  
should be finished before the first is resumed.

5. Clauses expressing a *cause*, a *condition*, a *time*, or a *comparison*, usually  
precede the clauses to which they relate.

6. A short clause usually stands before, rather than after, a long one.

### III. OF THE CONNECTION OF CLAUSES.

(1.) In connecting propositions, relatives, whether pronouns, pronominal ad-  
jectives, or adverbs, are often employed in order to avoid the too frequent re-  
currence of *et*, *autem*, and certain other conjunctions. Every relative may be  
used for this purpose instead of its corresponding demonstrative with *et*; as,  
*qui* for *et is*, *quālis* for *et tālis*, *quo* for *et eo*, etc. They are used also before those  
conjunctions which are joined with *et* or *autem* at the beginning of a proposi-  
tion; as, *si*, *nisi*, *ut*, *quum*, etc. (see § 206, (14.)); as, *quod quum audivissem, quod*  
*si fecissem, quod quamvis non ignorassem*, for *et quum hoc, et si hoc, et quamvis*  
*hoc*; or *quum autem hoc*, etc.; and, often, also, where in English no conjunction  
is used, and even before other relatives; as, *quod qui facit, eum ego impium*  
*jūdico*, i. e. *et qui hoc facit*, or, *qui autem hoc facit*. In the ablative with com-  
paratives the relative is often used as a connective; as, *Cito, quo nemo tur-*  
*erat prudentior*, i. e. *Cato, who was more prudent than all others*.

(2.) In propositions consisting of two members, the relative pronoun is joined  
grammatically either to the apodosis or to the protasis; with the former in,  
*Qui, quum ex eo quæreretur, cur tam diu vellet esse in vitā, Nihil habeo, inquit,*  
*quod accūsātem senectūtem. Cic. de Sen. 6.* But is more frequent with the  
protasis or secondary clause; as, *A quo quum quæreretur, quid maxime expē-*  
*diret, respondit. Cic. Off. 2, 25.* When it is thus joined with the protasis, the  
nominative of the demonstrative is supplied with the apodosis from another  
case of the relative in the protasis, as, in the preceding passage, from the abla-  
tive. But for the sake of emphasis the demonstrative may be expressed, and  
frequently, also, for the sake of clearness; as, *Qui nos quum a posterioribus non*  
*esset rēntus, Arcetius eum rēvocāvit. Cic. de Fin. 2, 1.* The accusative is  
sometimes to be supplied; as, *Qui (Hērāclitus) quoniam intelligi nōluit, omittā-*  
*mus. Cic. N. D. 3, 14.* When the demonstrative precedes, and is followed by  
a proposition consisting of two members, the relative is attached to the prota-

sis, which is placed first, and not to the leading clause or apodosis; as, *Eo suasi Pompeio, quibus ille si parvisset, Caesar tantas opes, quantus nunc habet non haberet.* Cic. Fam. 6, 6. *Noli ulversus eos me velle ducere, cum quibus ne contra te arma ferrem, Italiam reliqui.* Nep. Att. 4.

(3.) Where in English we use 'however' with the relative; as, He promised me many things, which, however, he did not perform, the Latins made use of the demonstrative with *sed* or *verum*, or the relative alone implying the adversative conjunction; as, *nulla mihi promisit, sed ea non prestitit*, or, *quæ non prestitit*, but not *quæ autem* or *quæ vero*. *Qui autem* and *qui vero* are used however in protases, where the relative retains its relative meaning, and there is a corresponding demonstrative in the apodosis; as, *Qui autem omnia bona ex se ipsis petunt, eis nihil malum videri potest, quod naturæ necessitas afferat.* Cic. de Sen. 2.

(4.) In double relative clauses, especially where the cases are different, Cicero frequently for the second relative clause substitutes the demonstrative, as, *Sed ipse in mente insculpsit species pulcherrimas eximia quædam, quam insuens, in eaque dæfixus, ad, etc. for et in quâ.* Cic. Orat. 2. And sometimes even when the cases are the same; as, *Quem Philiitem venisse ferunt, eumque cum Leone dissêruisse quædam.* Cic. Tusc. 5, 3; where *et* alone would have been sufficient.

(5.) From this tendency to connect sentences by relatives arose the use of *quod* before certain conjunctions merely as a copulative. See § 206, (14.)

(6.) *Næque* or *nec* is much used by Latin writers instead of *et* and a negation, and may be so used in all cases except when the negative belongs to one particular word; see § 278, R. 9. *Næque* or *nec* is added to *enim*, *vêro*, and *tâmen*, where we cannot use 'and.' To these negative expressions a second negative is often joined, in which case *næque enim non* is equivalent to *nam*; *non vêro non*, to *atque etiam*, a stronger *et*; *nec tamen non*, to *attamen*.

## ANALYSIS.

§ 281. I. 1. The analysis of a complex or a compound sentence consists in dividing it into its several component propositions, and pointing out their relation to each other.

2. In resolving a sentence into its component clauses, the participial constructions equivalent to clauses should be mentioned, and ellipses be supplied. See § 203, 4; § 274, 3; and § 257.

3. In a continued discourse the connection and relation of the successive sentences also should be specified.

### *Rules for the Analysis of Complex and Compound Sentences.*

(1.) State whether the sentence is complex or compound. § 201, 11, 12.

(2.) If complex, (1) specify the principal and subordinate clauses. (2) Specify the class to which the subordinate proposition belongs, (§ 201, 7), and (3), its connective, and the class to which such connective belongs, (§ 201, 8 and 9.)

(6.) If compound, specify the principal propositions, with their subordinates, if any they have, as in the case of complex sentences.

II. The analysis of a proposition or simple sentence consists in distinguishing the subject from the predicate, and, in case either of them be compound in pointing out the simple subjects or predicates of which it is composed, and if complex, in specifying the several modifiers, whether of the essential or subordinate parts.

*Rules for the Analysis of a Simple Sentence.*

1. Divide it into two parts—the subject and the predicate, § 201, 1–3. If these are simple, the analysis is complete, but if either is compound:—
2. Specify the simple subjects or predicates of which the compound consists.—If either is complex:—
3. Point out the grammatical subject, and the words, phrases, etc. *directly* modifying it.
4. Point out the words, phrases, etc., which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical subject, and those which modify them, and so on successively, until the relation of each of the words composing the logical subject is specified.
5. Point out the grammatical predicate, and the words, phrases, etc., *directly* modifying it.
6. Point out the words, phrases, etc., which modify the direct modifiers of the grammatical predicate, and those which modify them, and so on successively, until the relation of each of the words composing the logical predicate is specified.

PARSING.

III. Parsing consists in resolving a proposition into the parts of speech of which it is composed, tracing the derivation of each word, and giving the rules of formation and construction applicable to it.

*Rules for Parsing.*

1. Name the part of speech to which each word belongs, including the subdivision in which it is found.
2. If it is an inflected word:—
  - (1.) Name its root or crude form, and decline, compare, or conjugate it.
  - (2.) If it is a noun or pronoun, tell its gender, number and case:—if in the nominative or in the accusative with the infinitive, tell its verb:—if in an oblique case depending on some other word, tell the word on which its case depends.
  - (3.) If it is an adjective, adjective-pronoun, or participle, tell the word which it modifies.
  - (4.) If it is a finite verb or an infinitive with the accusative, tell its voice, mood, tense, number, person, and subject.
3. If it is a conjunction, tell its class and what it connects.
4. If it is a preposition, tell the words whose relation is expressed by it.
5. If it is an adverb, tell its class and what it qualifies.
6. Prove the correctness of each step of the process by quoting the definition or rule of formation or construction on which it depends.

**NOTE.** The words constituting a proposition are most conveniently parsed in that order in which they are arranged in analysis.

*Examples of Analysis and Parsing.*

1. *Equus currit*, The horse runs.

**Analysis.** This is a simple sentence: its subject is *equus*, its predicate is *currit*, both of which are simple. See § 201, 1–3; § 202, 2; and § 203, 2.

**Parsing.** *Equus* is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d decl., § 39; masc. gender, § 28, 1; third person, § 35, 2; its root is *equ-*, § 40, 10; decline it § 46; it is in the nominative case, singular number, § 35, 1, (b.); the subject of *currit*, § 209, (a).—*Currit* is a neuter verb, § 141, II.; of the 3d conjugation, § 143, 2, from *curro*; its principal parts are *curro*, *cūcurri*, *cursum*, *currere*, § 151, 4; it is from the first root *curr-*; give the formations of that root, § 151, 1; it is in the active voice, § 142, 1; indicative mood, § 143, 1; present tense, § 145, 1; third person, § 147; singular number, § 146; agreeing with its subject-nominative *equus*, § 209, (b.)

**NOTE.** The questions to be asked in parsing *equus* are such as these, Why is *equus* a noun? Why a common noun? Why of the second declension? Why masculine? etc.—In parsing *currit*, the questions are, Why is *currit* a verb? Why a neuter verb? Why of the third conjugation? Which are the principal parts of a verb? Of what does the first root of a verb consist? What parts of a verb are derived from the first root? etc. The answer in each case may be found by consulting the etymological rules and definitions.

2. *Sævius ventis agitatur ingens pinus*, The great pine is more violently shaken by the winds. Hor.

**Analysis.** This also is a simple sentence;—its subject is *ingens pinus*, its predicate *sævius ventis agitatur*; both of which are complex, § 201, 10, § 202, 6, and § 203, 5.

The grammatical subject is *pinus*, the pine; this is modified by *ingens*, great, § 201, 2, § 202, 2, and § 202, 6, (3.)

The grammatical predicate is *agitatur*, is shaken; this is modified by two independent modifiers, *sævius*, more violently, and *ventis*, by the winds, § 203 II. 3 Rem., § 203, I. 1, (2), and (3.)

**Parsing.** *Pinus* is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d and 4th declensions, § 38 and § 99; feminine gender, § 29, 2; 3d person, § 35, 2; from the root *pin-*, § 40, 10; (decline it both in the 2d and 4th declensions);—it is found in the singular number, § 35, 1, and the nominative case, the subject of *agitatur*, § 209, (a.)

*Ingens* is a qualifying adjective of quantity, § 104, 4, and § 205, N. 1; of the 3d decl., § 105, 1, and § 38; of one termination, § 108, and § 111; from the root *ingent-*, § 40, 10; (decline it like *præsens*, § 111, but with only *i* in the ablative, § 113, Exc. 3.);—it is found in the singular number, feminine gender, § 26, K. 4; and nominative case, agreeing with its noun *pinus*, § 205.

*Agitatur* is an active frequentative verb, § 141, I., and § 187, II. 1; of the 1st conjugation, § 143, 2; from the first root of its primitive *ago*, § 187, II. 1, (b.); (name its principal parts in both voices, see § 151, 4; and give the conjugation of the passive voice, indicative mood, present tense, see § 156.);—it is found in the singular number, § 146; third person, § 147; agreeing with its subject-nominative *pinus*, § 209, (b.)

*Sævius* is a derivative adverb of manner, § 190, 2-4; in the comparative degree, from the positive *sæve* or *sæviter*, which is derived from the adjective *sævus*, § 194, 1 and 2, and § 192, II. 1, and Exc. 1 and 2; modifying the verb *agitatur*, by expressing its degree, § 277.

*Ventis* is a common noun, § 26, 1 and 3; of the 2d declension, § 38; masculine gender, § 46; from the root *vent-*, § 40, 10; (decline it);—it is found in the plural number, § 35, 1; ablative case, modifying *agitatur* by denoting its means or instrument, § 247.

3. *Mithridātes, duārum et vīginti gentium rex, totīdem linguis jūra dixit*, Mithridates, king of twenty-two nations, pronounced judicial decisions in as many languages. Plin.

**Analysis.** This also is a simple sentence; its subject is *Mithridātes*, *duārum et vīginti gentium rex*, its predicate is *totīdem linguis jūra dixit*, both of which are complex, § 201, 10; § 202, 6, and § 203, 5.

The grammatical subject is *Mithridates*; this is modified directly by *rex*, § 202, I. (1.)

*Rex* is limited by *gentium*, § 202, I. 1, (2.)

*Gentium* is limited by the compound addition *duarum* and *viginti* connected coordinately by *et*, § 202, III. 3.

The grammatical predicate is *dixit*; this is limited by *jura* and *linguis*, the former a simple, the latter a complex addition, as it is modified by *totidem* § 203, I. 1, (2.) and II. 1.

*Parsing.* *Mithridates* is a proper noun, § 26, 2; of the third declension, § 88; masculine gender, § 28, 1; from the root *Mithridat-*, § 40, 10; genitive *Mithridatis*, § 73, 1; (decline it in the singular number only, § 96, (a.);—it is found in the nominative case, the subject of *dixit*, § 209, (a.)

*Rex* is a common noun—third declension, § 88; masculine gender, § 28, 1; from the root *reg-*, § 40, 10; genitive *regis*, § 78, 2; (decline it);—it is found in the singular number—the nominative case, in apposition to *Mithridates*, § 201.

*Gentium* is a common noun from *gens*—third declension—feminine gender, § 62; from the root *gent-*, § 56, I, R. 1; genitive *gentis*, § 77, 2 and (2.); (decline it);—it is found in the plural number—genitive case, § 83, II. 3; limiting *rex* subjectively, § 211 and R. 2.

*Duarum* is a numeral adjective, § 104, 5; of the cardinal kind, § 117; from *duo*, *duas*, *duo*; from the root *du-*; (decline it, § 118, 1);—it is found in the plural number, § 118, 2; feminine gender, genitive case, § 26, R. 4; agreeing with its noun *gentium*, § 205.

*Et* is a copulative conjunction, § 198, 1, connecting *duarum* and *viginti*, § 278.

*Viginti* is a numeral adjective of the cardinal kind, indeclinable, § 118, 1; limiting *gentium*, § 205.

*Dixit* is an active verb, § 141, I.; of the third conjugation, § 149, 2; from *dico*, (give the principal parts in the active voice, and its first, second, and third roots, § 150, 4, and § 171, 1); it is formed from the second root *dix-*, (give the formations of the second root);—it is found in the active voice, § 141, 1; indicative mood, § 143, 1; perfect indefinite tense, § 145, IV. and Rem.; singular number, third person, agreeing with *Mithridates*, § 209, (b.)

*Jura* is a common noun, of the third declension, from *jus*, root *jūr-*, § 56, I, R. 1; genitive *juris*, § 76, Exc. 3; neuter gender, § 66; (decline it);—it is found in the plural number, accusative case, § 40, 8; the object of *dixit*, § 229.

*Linguis* is a common noun, of the first declension, feminine gender, from *lingua*, root *lingu-*, (decline it);—found in the plural number, ablative case, after *dixit*, § 247.

*Totidem* is a demonstrative pronominal adjective, § 189, 5, (2.) and (3.); indeclinable, § 115, 4; it is in the ablative plural, feminine gender, limiting *linguis*, § 205.

4. *Pausanias, quum semiāntmis de templo elātus esset, confestim animam efflāvit.* Nep. Paus. 4.

*Analysis.* This is a complex sentence, § 201, 11; consisting of two members, which are so arranged as to constitute a period, § 280, 1.

The principal proposition is, *Pausanias confestim animam efflāvit*, § 201, 5. The subordinate proposition is, *quum (is) semiāntmis de templo elātus esset*, § 201, 6.

The leading proposition has a simple subject, *Pausanias*, § 202, 2, and a complex predicate, *confestim animam efflāvit*, § 203, 8; in which *efflāvit* is the grammatical predicate, § 203, 2; which is modified by *confestim* and *animam*, § 203, I. 1, (2.) and (8.), and II. R. 2., and also by the adverbial clause *quum semiāntmis*, etc. § 201, 6 and 7, and § 203, I. 8.

The subordinate proposition, which is connected to the leading clause by the subordinate conjunction *quum*, § 201, 9, has a simple subject, viz. *is* understood, and a complex predicate, *semiāntmis, de templo elātus esset*, § 203, 3.—The grammatical predicate is *elātus esset*, § 203, 2; which is modified by *semiāntmis*, § 203, I. 1, (1.), and *de templo*, § 203, I. 2, and II. Rem. 2.

*Parsing.* *Pausanias*, a Greek proper noun, § 26, 2;—1st decl., §§ 41 and 44; masc. gender, § 28, 1; root *Pausān-*; found in sing. num., nom. case, the subject of *efflavit*, § 209, (a.)

*Confestim*, an adv. of time § 190, 3; limiting *efflavit*, § 277.

*Anima* is a com. noun of 1st decl., fem. gender, § 41; from *ānima*, root *ān-*; (decline it);—it is found in the sing. num., acc. case, the object of *efflavit*, § 229.

*Efflavit*, an act. verb, 1st conj., from *efflo*, compounded of *ex* and *flo*, § 196, 6; (give the principal parts in the act. voice and the three roots);—it is formed from the second root; (give the formations of that root); in the active voice ind. mood, perfect indefinite tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *Pausanias*, § 209, (b.)

*Quum* is a temporal conjunction, § 198, 10; connecting the dependent to the principal clause, § 278.

*Semivivimus* is a predicate adj., of the 3d decl., of two terminations, § 109; (decline it);—it is in the sing. num., masc. gen., nom. case, agreeing with *is* understood, § 210, R. 1, (a.)

*De* is a preposition, expressing the relation between *elatus esset* and *templo*, § 195.

*Templo* is a com. noun, 2d decl., neut. gen., from *templum*, root *templ-*; (decline it);—in the sing. num., abl. case, after *de*, § 241:

*Elatus esset* is an irregular active verb, of the third conjugation, § 179; from *effero*, compounded of *ex* and *féro*, § 196, 6; (see *féro* and compounds, § 172); (give the principal parts in both voices, and the 1st and 3d roots);—it is formed from the third root, *elāt-*, (give the formations of that root in the passive voice); in the subjunctive mood, pluperfect tense, § 145, V.; sing. num., third person, agreeing with *is* understood referring to *Pausanias*, § 209, (b.)

5. *Römāna pūbes, sēdātō tandem pāvōre, postquam ex tam turbīdā die sērēna et tranquilla lux rēdiit, ūbi vācuam sēdem rēgiām vidit, etsi sātis crēdebāt patrībūs, qui proxīmī stēlērant, sublimem raptum prōcellā; tāmen, vėlut orbītātis mētū icta, mœstum āliquamdiu silentium obtinuit.* Liv. 1, 16.

*Analysis.* This is a complex sentence, whose clauses constitute a period, § 280. It is composed of the following members or clauses:—

1. *Römāna pūbes* [*tāmen*] *mœstum āliquamdiu silentium obtinuit.* This is the leading clause. The following are dependent clauses.
2. *vėlut orbītātis mētū icta,*
3. *sēdātō tandem pāvōre,*
4. *postquam ex tam turbīdā die sērēna et tranquilla lux rēdiit,*
5. *ūbi vācuam sēdem rēgiām vidit,*
6. *etsi sātis crēdebāt patrībūs,*
7. *qui proxīmī stēlērant,*
8. *sublimem raptum prōcellā.*

NOTE 1. In the preceding clauses the predicates are printed in Italics.

NOTE 2. The connective of the 1st clause, is the adversative *tāmen*, which is inserted on account of *etsi* intervening between the principal subject and predicate. The connective of the 2d clause is *vėlut*, of the 4th *postquam*, of the 5th *ūbi*, of the 6th *etsi*, followed by a clause constituting the protasis, and of the 7th *qui*. The 3d and 8th clauses have no connectives.

(1.) The grammatical subject of the leading clause is *pūbes*, which is limited by *Römāna*.—The grammatical predicate is *obtinuit*, which is limited by *āliquamdiu* and *silentium*, and also either directly or indirectly by all the dependent clauses. *Silentium* is itself modified by *mœstum*.

The second, third, fourth, fifth, and sixth clauses are used adverbially to denote the time and other circumstances modifying the principal predicate *silentium obtinuit*, § 201, 7.

(2.) The second is a participial clause, equivalent to *vélut* (*ea* scil. *pûbes orbitâtis metu icta esset*, § 274, 3, (a).)

(3.) The third clause is also participial, and is equivalent to *quum tandem pavor sêlûtus esset*, § 257, R. 1; and hence *pâvôre* represents the subject, and *sêdâto tandem* the predicate—the former being simple, the latter complex.

(4.) The grammatical subject of the 4th clause, which is connected to the leading clause by *postquam*, § 201, 9, is *lux*, which is modified by *sérvna* and *tranquilla*.—The grammatical predicate is *redîit*, which is modified by *postquam* and *ex tam turbido die*, § 203, I. 2, (8.), and II. 1.

(5.) The grammatical subject of the fifth clause is *ea* understood.—The grammatical predicate is *vidit*, which is modified by *ubi* and *vâcuam sedem régiam*, § 203, I. 1, (3.) and II. 1.

(6.) The grammatical subject of the sixth clause also is *ea*. Its grammatical predicate is *crêdébant*, which is modified by *satis* and *patribus*, § 203, I. (2.) and (3.), and by the 8th clause, II. 3.

(7.) The grammatical subject of the seventh clause is *qui*. Its grammatical predicate is *steterunt*, which is modified by *proximi*, § 203, I. (1.) It is an adjective clause, modifying *patribus*, § 201, 7 and 9.

(8.) The grammatical subject of the eighth clause, which has no connective, § 201, Rem., is *eum*, i. e. *Rômulum*, understood. Its grammatical predicate is *raptum* (*esse*), which is modified by *sublimem* and *procellâ*.

*Parsing.* *Rômâna* is a patrial adjective, § 104, 10, derived from *Rôma*, § 128, 6, (a.) and (c.): of the 1st and 2d declensions, § 105, 2; fem. gender, sing. number, nom. case, agreeing with *pûbes*, § 205.

*Pûbes*, a collective noun, § 26, 4; 3d decl., fem. gender, § 62; from the root *pûb-*, § 56, I. R. 6; genitive *pûbis*, § 73, 1; (decline it);—found in the nom. sing., the subject of *obtinuit*, § 209, (a.)

*Tâmen*, an adversative conjunction, § 198, 9, relating to *etsi* in the 6th clause.

*Mœstum*, a qualifying adj., § 205, N. 1; of the 1st and 2d declensions, neut. gender, sing. num., acc. case, agreeing with *silentium*.

*Aliquamdiu*, an adverb of time, § 191, II.; compounded of *aliquis* and *diu* § 193, 6; and limiting *obtinuit*, § 277.

*Silentium*, a com. noun, 2d decl., neut. gender, § 46; sing. number, acc. case the object of *obtinuit*, § 229.

*Obtinuit*, an active verb, of the 2d conj., § 149, 2; from *obtineo*, compounded of *ob* and *teneo*, see § 168; (give the principal parts in the act. voice, and the formations of the 2d root, § 157 at the end);—found in the active voice, ind. mood, perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *pûbes*, § 209, (b.)

*Vélut* for *vélut si*, an adverb, compounded of *vel* and *ut*, § 193, 10; modifying *icta*, and *obtinuisset* understood, (as they would have done if, etc.)

*Orbitâtis*, an abstract noun, § 26, 5; from the primitive *orbis*, § 101, 1 and 2; 3d decl., fem. gender, § 62; from the root *orbitât-*, § 56, I., and R. 1; (decline it);—found in the sing. num., subjective gen. case, limiting *metu*, § 211.

*Metu*, an abstract noun, 4th decl., masc. gen., § 87; sing. num., abl. case, 247.

*Icta*, a perf. part. pass., from the active verb *ico*, of the 3d conj. (give the principal parts in both voices, and decline the participle);—found in the fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *pûbes*, § 205.

*Sêdâto*, a perfect pass. part. from the active verb *sêdo*, of the 1st conj., § 149 2; (give the principal parts in both voices, § 151, 4; and decline it, § 105 R. 2.);—found in the masc. gender, sing. num., abl. case, agreeing with *pâvôre*, § 205.

*Tandem*, an adverb of time, § 191, II.; modifying *sêdâto*, § 277.

*Pâvôre*, an abstract noun, § 26, 5, and § 102 1; from *pâveo*, 3d decl., masc. gen., § 58; root *pâvor*, § 56, II., and § 70, (decline it);—found in the sing. number, abl. case, absolute with *sêdâto*, § 357.

*Postquam*, an adverb of time, compounded of *post* and *quam*, § 193, 10; modifying *redîit*, and connecting the 1st and 4th clauses, § 201, 9.

*Ex*, a preposition, § 196, R. 2.

*Tam*, an adverb degree, § 191, R. 2; modifying *turbido*, § 277.

*Turbido*, an adjective, agreeing with *die*.

*Die*, a common noun, 5th decl., masc. gender, § 90, Exc. 1.; sing. number abl. case, after the prep. *ex*, § 241.

*Sérèna*, an adj., 1st and 2d decls., fem. gen., sing. num., nom. case, agreeing with *lux*, § 205.

*Et*, a copulative conjunction, § 198, 1; connecting *sérèna* and *tranquilla* § 278.

*Tranquilla*, like *sérèna*.

*Lux*, a common noun, 3d decl., fem. gen., § 62; from the root *luc-*, § 56, I., and R. 2; genitive *lucis*, § 78, 2.

*Rédiit*, an irregular neuter verb, of the 4th conj., § 176; from *redeo*, compounded of *eo*, § 182, and the inseparable prep. *red-*, § 196, (b.), 3; (give its principal parts);—found in the ind. mood., perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *lux*, § 269, (b.)

*Ubi*, an adverb of time, and like *postquam*, a connective, § 201, 9; and modifying *vidit*, § 277.

*Vacuum*, an adj., qualifying *sedem*.

*Sedem*, a noun, 3d decl., fem. gen., § 62; from the root *sed-*, § 56, I., R. 6; genitive *sedis*, § 73, 1; (decline it);—found in the sing. num., acc. case, the object of the transitive verb *vidit*, § 229.

*Régnum*, a denominative adj., § 128, I., 2, (a.); from the primitive *rex*, agreeing with *sedem*.

*Vidit*, an active verb, of the 2d conj., (give its principal parts in the active voice, and the formations of the 2d root); found in the active voice, ind. mood, perf. indef. tense, sing. num., 3d pers., agreeing with *ea*, i. e. *pubes*, understood.

*Etni*, a concessive conjunction, § 198, 4; corresponding to the correlative adversative conj. *tamen*, § 198, 4, R. and 9.

*Satis*, an adverb of degree, § 191, III., and R. 2; modifying *crédēbat*, § 277.

*Crédēbat*, an act. verb, § 141, I.; 3d conj., (give the principal parts in the active voice and the formations of the 1st root);—found in the act. voice, ind. mood, imperfect tense, sing. num., 3d person, agreeing with *ea*, scil. *pubes*, understood.

*Patribus*, a common noun, § 26, 3; 3d decl., from the root *patr-*, § 56, II., R. 3; gen. *patris*, § 71; masc. gender, § 25, 1; plur. num., dat. case, depending on *crédēbat*, § 223, R. 2.

*Qui*, the subject of the 7th clause, is a relative pronoun, § 136; masc. gender, plur. num., agreeing with its antecedent *patribus*, § 206, R. 19, (a.); and is nominative to *steterant*, § 209, (a.)

*Proximi*, an adj. of the superlative degree, § 126, 1, (compare it); of the 1st and 2d decls., masc. gen., plur. num., nom. case, agreeing with *qui*, § 205, § 210, R. 1, (a.) and R. 3, (2.)

*Steterant*, a neuter verb, 1st conj., irregular in its 2d root, § 165; (give its principal parts, and the formations of the 2d root);—found in the act. voice ind. mood, plup. tense, § 145, V.; 3d person plural, agreeing with its subject *qui*, § 209, (b.)

*Sublimem*, an adj., of the 3d decl., and two terminations, § 109; masc. gen., sing. num., acc. case, agreeing with *eum*, (i. e. *Romulum*,) understood, and modifying also *raptum esse*, § 205, R. 15.

*Raptum (esse)*, an act. verb, 3d conj.; (give the principal parts in both voices and the formations of the 3d root in the passive voice)—found in the pass. voice, inf. mood, perf. tense; but, following the imperfect, it has the meaning of a pluperfect, § 268, 2, and § 145, V.; depending on *crédēbat*, § 272.

*Puocellā* a com. noun, 1st decl., fem. gen., sing. num., abl. case, § 247.



## PROSODY.

**§ 282.** Prosody treats of the quantity of syllables, and the laws of versification.

### QUANTITY.

1. The quantity of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it. Cf. § 13.

2. A syllable is either *short*, *long*, or *common*.

(a.) The time occupied in pronouncing a short syllable is called a *mora* or *time*.

(b.) A long syllable requires two *moræ* or double the time occupied in pronouncing a short one; as, *āmārē*.

(c.) A common syllable is one which, in poetry, may be made either long or short; as the middle syllable of *tēnēbræ*.

3. The quantity of a syllable is either *natural* or *accidental*;—*natural*, when it depends on the *nature* of its vowel; *accidental*, when it depends on its *position*.

Thus the *e* in *rēsisto* is short by nature; while in *rēsīti* it is long by its position, since it is followed by two consonants: § 283, IV. On the contrary, the *e* in *dēdūco* is naturally long, but in *dēcro* it is made short by being placed before a vowel: § 283, I.

4. The quantity of syllables is determined either by certain established *rules*, or by the *authority* of the poets.

Thus it is the poetic usage alone that determines the quantity of the first syllables of the following words, viz. *māter*, *frāter*, *prāvus*, *dīco*, *dūco*; *pāter*, *ārus*, *cādo*, *māneo*, *grāvis*, etc.; and hence the quantity of such syllables can be ascertained by practice only or by consulting the *gradus* or *lexicon*.

5. The rules of quantity are either *general* or *special*. The former apply alike to all the syllables of a word, the latter to particular syllables.

### GENERAL RULES.

**§ 283.** I. (a.) A vowel before another vowel, or a diphthong, is short; as, *e* in *mēus*, *i* in *patriæ*. Thus,

*Conscia mens recti famæ mendāria ridet.* Ovid. F. 4, 311.  
'*peu ēti im extimē laudis succensus amore.* Virg. A. 7, 496.

(b.) So also when *h* comes between vowels, since *h* is accounted only a breathing; as, *nihil*: (see § 2, 6.) Thus,

*Dē nīlīs nīlī, in nīlīum nīl posse rēverti.* Pers. 4, 84.

**Exc. 1. (a.)** *Fio* has the *i* long, except in *fū* and when followed by *er*; as *fiunt*, *fiēbam*. Thus,

*Omnia jam fiant, fieri quæ posse negābam.* *Ovid. Tr. 1, 8, 7.*

(b.) It is sometimes found long even before *er*; as, *fiēret*. *Ter.*; *fieri*. *Plaut* and, on the contrary, *Prudentius* has *fiō* with *i* short.

**Exc. 2. (a.)** *E* is long in the termination of the genitive and dative of the fifth declension, when preceded and followed by *i*. as *fāciēi*. Thus,

*Non rādii solis, nēque lūcida tēla diēi.* *Lucr. 1, 148.*

(b.) In *spei*, *rei*, and *fidei*, *e* is short.

**NOTE.** In *Lucretius*, the *e* of *rei* is, in a few cases, long, and that of *fidei* is lengthened once in *Lucretius* and once in a line of *Ennius*.

**Exc. 3. (a.)** *A* is long in the penult of old genitives in *at* of the first declension; as, *aulāi*, *pietāi*. Cf. § 43, 1.

(b.) *A* and *e* are also long in proper names in *atus*, *etus*, or *eta*; as, *Cātus* *Pompētus*, *Aquilēia*; and in the adjectives *Grātus* and *Vētus*. Thus,

*Æthērū sensum, atque aurāi simplicis ignem.* *Virg. A. 6, 747.*

*Accipe, Pompēi, dēductum carmen ab illo.* *Ovid. Pont. 4, 1, 1.*

*Necnon cum Vēnētis Aquilēia perfūrit armis.* *Sil. 8, 606.*

**Exc. 4. (a.)** *I* is common in genitives in *ius*; as, *unīus*, *illīus*. Thus,

*Illius et nitido stillent unguenta capillo.* *Tibull. 1, 7, 51.*

*Illius puro destillent tempora nardo.* *Id. 2, 2, 7.*

(b.) But *i* in the genitive of *alter* is commonly short; and in that of *alius* it is always long.

**Exc. 5.** The first vowel of *ēheu* is long; that of *Dīāna*, *io*, and *ōhe*. is common.

**Exc. 6.** Greek words retain their original quantities, and hence, in many Greek words, a vowel is long, though immediately followed by another vowel; as,

*āēr*, *Achāta*, *Achēlōas*, *diā*, *ēos*, *Lāertes*, and Greek words having in the original a long *e* or *o* (*u* or *au*). See also § 293, 3.

(1.) Words which, in Greek, are written with *ei* (*u*) before a vowel, and in Latin with a single *e* or *i*, have the *e* or *i* long; as, *Ænēas*, *Alexandria*, *Cassiopeia*, *Clio*, *Dārius*, *ēlēgia*, *Gālātēa*, *Mēdēa*, *Mausolēum*, *Pēnelōpēa*, *Thālia*, *Atrideas*.

Hence most adjectives in *eus*, formed from Greek proper names, have the *e* *Pēlōpēia*. *Cythērēus*, *Pēlōpēus*; and the *e* remains long when *et* is restored; as, *ong*; as,

**Exc.** *Acadēmia*, *chōrea*, *Mālea*, *plātēa*, and some patronymics and patrials in *eis*; as, *Nērēis*, have the penult common.

(2.) Greek genitives in *eos*, and accusatives in *ea*, from nominatives in *eus*, generally shorten the *e*; as, *Orphēos*, *Orphēa*;—but the *e* is sometimes lengthened by the Ionic dialect; as, *Cēphēos*, *Ilīōnēa*.

(3.) Greek words in *ais*, *ois*, *aius*, *eius*, *oius*, *aon*, and *ion*, generally lengthen the first vowel; as, *Nāis*, *Minōis*, *Grātus*, *Nērētus*, *Minōtus*, *Māchā n*, *Isam*. But *Thēbāis*, *Simōis*, *Phāon*, *Deucālion*, *Pygmālion*, and many others, shorten the former vowel.

**NOTE 1.** Greek words in *aon* and *ion*, with *o* short in the genitive, have the penult long; but with *o* long in the genitive, they have it short; as, *Amphēdon* *aiōis*; *Deucālion*, *-ōis*.

**NOTE 2.** In Greek proper names in *eus* (gen. *eos*), as *Orpheus*, the *eu* in the nominative is always a diphthong in the original, and, with very few exceptions, in the Latin poets.

**II.** A diphthong is long; as, *aurum*, *fœnus*, *Eubœa*, *Pompæus*, *Orphœu*. Thus,

*Infernique læcus, Eubœque insula Circæ. Virg. A. 8, 886.*  
*Thesæuros ignotum argenti pondus et æuri. Id. A. 1, 859.*  
*Harpyiæque cœlunt diis, Phinæia postquam. Id. A. 8, 212.*

**Exc. 1.** *Præ*, in composition, is short before a vowel; as, *præustus*, *p. æcūtus*. Thus,

*Nec totā tamen ille prior præeuntis carinā. Virg. A. 5, 186.*

In Statius, and Sidonius Apollinaris, it is found long.

**Exc. 2.** A diphthong at the end of a word, when the next word begins with a vowel, is sometimes made short; as,

*Insulæ Iōnio in magno, quas dira Cēleno. Virg. A. 8, 211.*

**Exc. 3.** The diphthongs consisting of *u* followed by a vowel are either long or short; the two vowels thus combined being subject to the same rules of quantity, as their final vowel would be if standing alone; as, *quā*, *quī*, *quōrum*, *quā*, *quibus*, *quātio*, *quēror*, *quōr*, *linguā*, *sanguis*.

**III.** A syllable formed by contraction is long; as,

*altus* for *altius*; *cōgo* for *cōāgo*; *nīl* for *nihil*; *jūnior* for *jūvénior*. Thus,  
*Titŕe cōge pécus, tu post cārecta lātēbas. Virg. E. 8, 20.*

**IV.** A vowel naturally short, before two consonants, a double consonant, or the letter *j*, is long by position; as, *arma*, *bēllum*, *axis*, *gāza*, *māior*. Thus,

*Pascere oportet oves deditūctum dicere cārmē. Virg. E. 6, 5.*  
*Nec mŕtius vincit cōrŕylos; nec laurea Phœbi. Id. E. 7, 64.*  
*At nobis, Pax alma, vēni, spicamque tēnēto. Tibull. 1, 10, 67.*  
*Rara jūvant: primis sic māior grātia pōmis. Mart. 4, 29, 8.*

**NOTE 1.** A vowel (other than *i*) before *j* is in reality lengthened by forming a diphthong with it, since *i* and *j* are in fact but one letter. Thus *major* is equivalent to *mai'-or*, which would be pronounced *mā'-yor*. See § 9, 1.

**Exc. 1.** The compounds of *jūgum* have *i* short before *j*; as, *bijūgus*, *quadrījūgus*. Thus,

*Intēreā bijūgis infert se Lūcāgus albis. Virg. A. 10, 575.*

**REMARK.** The vowel is long by position, when either one or both of the consonants is in the same word with it; but when both stand at the beginning of the following word, the vowel is either long or short; as,

*Tolle mōras; semper nōcuiŕ differre parātis. Lucan. 1, 281.*  
*Ferte citi ferrūm; dāte iēlā; scandite mūros. Virg. A. 9, 37.*  
*Ne tamen ignōrēt, quæ sit sententiā scripto. Ovid.*

**NOTE 2.** A short vowel at the end of a word, before an initial double consonant or *j* in the following word, is not lengthened.

**NOTE 3.** In the comic poets a vowel frequently remains short though followed by two consonants, especially if only one of them is in the same word.

**Exc. 2** A vowel *naturally short*, before a mute followed by a liquid, is common; as, *āgrīs, phārētra, vōlūcrīs, pūplēs, cōchlea*. Thus,

*Et primo similes vōlūcri, mox vōra vōlūcris. Ovid. M. 18. 607.*  
*Nātum ante ora pōtris, pōtrem qui obtruncat ad āras. Virg. A. 2, 668.*  
*Nox tēnēbras prōfert, Phœbus fugat inde tēnēbras. Ovid.*

**REM. 1.** If the vowel before a mute and liquid is *naturally long*, it continues so; as, *sālūbris, ambālūcrum*.

**REM. 2.** In *compound* words, of which the former part ends with a mute, and the latter begins with a liquid, a short vowel before the mute is made long by position; as, *ābluo, ōbruo, sublēvo, quāmōbrem*.

**REM. 3.** A mute and liquid at the beginning of a word seldom lengthen the short vowel of the preceding word, except in the arsis of a foot; as,

*Terrasq̄ tractusq̄ mārīs cœlumq̄ prōfundum. Virg. E. 4, 51.*

**REM. 4.** In Latin words, only the liquids *l* and *r* following a mute render the preceding short vowel common; but, in words of Greek origin, *m* and *n* after a mute have the same effect, as in *Tēcnessa, Prōcne, Cjcnus*.

## SPECIAL RULES.

### FIRST AND MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

#### I. DERIVATIVE WORDS.

**§ 284.** Derivative words retain the quantity of their primitives; as,

by conjugation, *āmo, amat, amābat, amāvi, amātus*, etc.; by declension, *āmor, amōris, amōri, amōribus*, etc.; so, *ānimal, ānimātus*, from *ānima*; *gēmēbundus*, from *gēmēre*; *fāmilīa*, from *fāmīlus*; *māternus*, from *māter*; *prōpinquus*, from *prōpe*.

**NOTE 1.** *Lār, pār, sāl*, and *pēs* in declension shorten the vowel of the nominative; as, *sālīs, pētīs*, etc.

**NOTE 2.** The vowel of the primitive is sometimes lengthened or shortened in the derivative by the addition or removal of a consonant.

**REM. 1.** Derivatives from increasing nouns of the second or third declension agree in quantity with the increment of their primitives; as,

*puērtīa*, from *puēri*; *virgīneus*, from *virgīnis*; *sālūber*, from *sālūtis*.

**REM. 2.** In verbs, the vowels of the derived tenses and of derivative words agree in quantity with the verbal root from which they are formed; as,

*mōvēbam, mōvēbo, mōveam, mōvērem, mōve, mōvēre, mōvens, mōvendus* from *mōve*, the root of the present, with *ō* short;—*mōvēram, mōvērim, mōviissem, mōvēro, mōviisse*, from *mōve*, the root of the perfect, with *ō* long; *mōtūrus* and *mōtus*;—*mōto, mōtio, mōtor*, and *mōtus, -us*, from *mōt*, the root of the supine, with *ō* a' so long.

**REM. 3.** (*o*.) *Sōlūtum* and *vōlūtum* from *solve* and *volvo* have the first syllable short, as if from *sōlvo, vōlvo*. So, from *gigno* come *gēni*, *gēnitum*, as if from *gēno*; and *pōtui*, from *pōtis sum* (*possum*).

(b.) The *a* in *da*, imperative of *do*, is long, though short in other parts of the verb. See § 294, 2.

(c.) The *o* in *pōui* and *pōtūm* is short, though long in *pōro*.

Exc. 1. Perfects and supines of two syllables have the first syllable long, even when that of the present is short; as,

*vēni, vidi, fēci*, from *vēnio, video, facio*; *cāsum, mōtūm, vīsum*, from *cādo, mōveo, video*.

NOTE 3. Such perfects are supposed to have been formed either by the contraction of reduplicated syllables, as *vēnio*, perf. *vēvēni*, by syncope *vēvni*, by crasis *vēni*, or by the omission of a consonant, as *video*, perf. *vidni*, by syncope *vidi*, the vowel retaining the quantity which it had by position.

NOTE 4. The long vowel of dissyllabic supines probably arose in like manner from syncope and contraction; as, *video, vidsum*, by syncope *vīsum*; *mōveo, mōvotum*, by syncope *mōtūm*, by contraction *mōtūm*.

(1.) (a.) These seven perfects have the first syllable short:—*libi, dēdi, fidi*, (from *findo*), *scidi, stēti, stiti, tūli*. So also *percūli*, from *percello*.

(b.) The first syllable is also short before a vowel (§ 283, I.); as, *rāi*.

(2.) (a.) These ten supines have the first syllable short:—*cūtum*, (from *cio*), *dātum, litum, lūtum, quītum, rātum, rūtum, sātum, sītum*, and *stātum*.

(b.) So, also, had the obsolete *fūtum*, from *fūō*, whence comes *fūturus*.

Exc. 2. (a.) Reduplicated polysyllabic perfects have the first two syllables short; as,

*scidi, cecini, tēgi, dāci*, from *cādo, cāno, tango*, and *disco*.

(b.) The second syllable of reduplicated perfects is sometimes made long by position; as, *mōmōrāi, tētēdi*.—*Cēdi* from *cādo*, and *pēpēdi* from *pēdo*, retaining the quantity of their first root also have the second syllable long.

Exc. 3. Desiderative verbs in *urio* have the *u* short, though, in the third root of the verbs from which they are formed, it is long; as, *conāturio* from *conātū*, the third root of *cāno*. So *parturio, esurio, nupturio*.

Exc. 4. Frequentative verbs, formed from the third root of verbs of the first conjugation, have the *i* short; as, *clāmīto, vōlīto*. See § 187, II. 1.

Exc. 5. A few other derivatives deviate from the quantity of their primitives.

1. Some have a long vowel from a short one in the primitive. Such are,

<i>Oēni</i> , from <i>dēcem</i> .	<i>Mōbillis</i> , from <i>mōveo</i> .	<i>Stipendium</i> , from <i>stīpe</i>
<i>Fōmes</i> and } from	<i>Persōna</i> , from <i>persōno</i> .	( <i>stīpis</i> ).
<i>Fōmentum</i> , } fōveo.	<i>Rēgūla</i> and } from	<i>Suspīcio, ōnis</i> , from <i>sus-</i>
<i>Hūmānus</i> , from <i>hōmo</i> .	<i>Rex</i> ( <i>rēgis</i> ), } rēgo.	<i>pīcor</i> .
<i>Lāterna</i> , from <i>lāteo</i> .	<i>Sēcūs</i> , from <i>sēcus</i> .	<i>Tēgūla</i> , from <i>tēgo</i> .
<i>Lītēra</i> from <i>līno</i> .	<i>Sēdes</i> , from <i>sēdeo</i> .	
<i>Lex</i> ( <i>lēgis</i> ), from <i>lēgo</i> .	<i>Sēmen</i> , from <i>sēro</i> .	

2. Some have a short vowel from a long one in the primitive. Such are,

<i>Dīcax</i> , from <i>dīco</i> .	<i>Mōlestus</i> , from <i>mōles</i> .	<i>Sāgax</i> , from <i>sāgio</i> .
<i>Dūx</i> ( <i>dūcis</i> ), from <i>dūco</i> .	<i>Nāto</i> , from <i>nātu</i> . sup.	<i>Sōpor</i> , from <i>sōpio</i> .
<i>Fīdes</i> , from <i>fīdo</i> .	<i>Nōto</i> , from <i>nōtu</i> . sup.	<i>Vādum</i> , from <i>vādo</i> .
<i>Lābo</i> , from <i>lābor</i> , dep. v.	<i>Ōdium</i> , from <i>ōdi</i> .	<i>Vōco</i> , from <i>vox</i> ( <i>vōcis</i> ).
<i>Lūcerna</i> , from <i>lūceo</i> .	<i>Quāsillus</i> , from <i>quālus</i> .	

NOTE 1. *Disertus* comes regularly (by syncope) from *dissertus*, the prefix *dis* being short, § 299, 1. Cf. *dirimo* and *diribeo*, where *s* is changed to *r*. See § 196, (b.) 2.

NOTE 2. Some other words might, perhaps, with propriety be added to these lists; but, in regard to the derivation of most of them, grammarians are not entirely agreed.

REMARK 1. Some of these irregularities seem to have arisen from the influence of syncope and crasis. Thus *mōbilis* may have been *mōvibilis*; *mōtum*, *mōvitum*, etc.

REM. 2. Sometimes the vowel in the derived word being naturally short, is restored to its proper quantity by removing one of the consonants which, in the primitive, made it long by position; as, *nūx*, *nūcia*. So, when the vowel of the primitive is naturally long, but has been made short before another vowel, it is sometimes restored to its original quantity by the insertion of a consonant; as, *hibernus*, from *hiems*.

REM. 3. The first syllable in *liquidus* is supposed to be common, as coming either from *liquor* or *liqueo*; as,

*Crassique convenient liquidis, et liquidæ crassis. Lucr. 4, 1255.*

## II. COMPOUND WORDS.

§ 285. 1. Compound words retain the quantity of the words which compose them; as,

*dēfer*, of *dē* and *fēro*; *ādōro*, of *ād* and *ōro*. So *ābōrior*, *āmōto*, *circāmō*, *ēmōdo*, *ēmōtor*, *prōdūco*, *sūbōrno*.

2. The change of a vowel or a diphthong in forming the compound does not alter its quantity; as,

*concido*, from *cādo*; *concido*, from *cado*; *irigo*, from *rēgo*; *reclādo*, from *clāudo*; *iniquus*, from *æquus*.

Exc. 1. A long syllable in the simple word becomes short in the following compounds:—*agnitus* and *cognitus*, from *nōtus*; *dējēro* and *pējēro*, from *jūro*, *hōcē*, from *hōc die*: *nihilum* and *nihil*, from *hilum*; *causticus*, and other compounds ending in *dicus*, from *dicō*.

Exc. 2. *Inbēcillus*, from *bēcillum*, has the second syllable long. The participle *ambitus* has the penult long from *itum*, but the nouns *ambitus* and *ambitio* follow the rule.

Exc. 3. *Innūba*, *prōnūba*, and *subnūba*, from *nūbo*, have *u* short; but in *consubium*, it is common.

Exc. 4. *O* final, in the compounds of *do* and *sto*, is common, though long in the simple verbs. § 294, (a.)

NOTE 1. Prepositions of one syllable, which end in a vowel, are long (§ 294, (a.)); those which end in a single consonant are short (§ 299, 1.)—*Trā* from *trāus* is long; as, *trādo*, *trādūco*.

Exc. 5. *Pro*, in the following compounds, is short:—*prōfānus*, *prōfāri*, *prōfecto*, *prōfessus*, *prōfisciscor*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfugio*, *prōfūgus*, *prōcella*, *prōfundus*, *prōnepos*, *prōneptis*, and *prōtervus*. It is common in *prōcūro*, *prōfunde*, *propāgo*, *propello*, and *propino*.—Respecting *præ* in composition before a vowel see § 288, II. Exc. 1.

REM. 1. The Greek preposition *pro* (before) is short; as, *prōphēta*. In *prōtyus*, *propōla*, and *propino*, it is common.

REM. 2. The inseparable prepositions *di* (for *dis*) and *se* are long as,

*diadūco*, *spādro*. Respecting *disertus*, see § 284, Exc. 5, 2, N. 1.

REM. 3. (a) The inseparable preposition *re* or *red* is short; as, *rēmitto, rēfēro, rēddō*.

(b.) *Re* is sometimes lengthened in *reliġio, reliquā, reliquus, repērit, restitit, repulit, recidit, reducere*, where some editors double the consonant following *re*. Cf. § 307, 2. In the impersonal verb *rēfert*, *re* is long, as coming from *res*.

REM. 4. *A* ending the former part of a compound word, is long; the other vowels are short; as,

*māio, quāpropter, trādo, (trans do); nēfas, valēdico, hujuscēmōdi; biceps, tridens, omnipotēns, significo; hōdie, quāndōquidem, philōsōphus; dūcenti, locūples, Trōjāgēna; Polydōrus, Eurōpylus, Thrāsylūlus.*

Exc. 1. *A*. *A* is short in *quāsi, eādē*, when not an ablative, and in some Greek compounds; as, *cātāpulta, hexāmēter*.

Exc. 2. *E*. *E* is long in *crēdo, nēmo, nēquam, nēquāquam, nēquidquam, nēquis, nēquātia; mēmēt, mēcūm, tēcūm, sēcūm, sēsē, vēcor, vēsānus, vēnēficus*, and *videlicet*;—also in words compounded with *se* for *sex* or *sēmi*; as, *sēdecim, sēmestris, sēmōdius*; but in *selibra* it is found short in Martial.

NOTE 2. (a.) The first *e* in *videlicet*, as in *vide*, is sometimes made short. See § 295, Exc. 3.

(b.) *E* is common in some verbs compounded with *fācio*; as, *liquefācio, pātesfācio, rārefūcio, tābefācio, tēpesfācio*.

Exc. 3. *I*. (1.) *I* is long in those compounds in which the first part is declined, (§ 296); as, *quidam, quivis, quilibet, quantivis, quanticumque, tantidem, unicuique, eidem, reipublice, utrique*.

(2.) *I* is also long in those compounds which may be separated without altering the sense, (§ 296); as, *lūdimāgister, siquis, agricultūra*.

(3.) *I*, ending the former part of a compound word, is sometimes made long by contraction; as, *tībīen* for *tībīcen*, from *tibia* and *cāno*. See § 283, III.

(4.) *I* is long in *biga, quadriga, ilicet, scilicet*.

(5.) In *idem*, when masculine, *i* is long; but when neuter, it is short. The *i* of *ubique* and *utrobique*, the second in *ibidem*, and the first in *nimirum*, are long. In *ubicumque*, as in *ubi*, *i* is common.

(6.) Compounds of *dies* have the final *i* of the former part long; as, *biduum, triduum, meridiēs, quōtidie, quōtidiānus, pridie, postridie*.

NOTE 3. In Greek words, *i*, ending the former part of a compound, is short; as, *Cullimāchus*; unless it comes from the diphthong *ei* (εἰ), or is made long or common by position.

Exc. 4. *O*. (1.) In compounds, the final *o* of *contro, intro, retro*, and *quando* except *quāndōquidem*, is long; as, *contrōversia, intrōduco, retrōcedo, quāndōque*. *O* is long also in *aliōqui* (ἄλλω), and *utroque*.

(2.) *O* is long in the compounds of *quō* and *eo*; as, *quōmōdo, quōcumque, quōnam, quōlibet, quōminus, quōcirca, quōvis, quōque* (i. e. *et quo*); *eōdem, eōne*; but in the conjunction *quōque*, it is short.

(3.) Greek words which are written with an *oméga* (ω) have the *o* long; as, *gōmetra, Mēlōstaurus, lāgōpus*.

Exc. 5. *U*. *U* is long in *Jūptter* (*Jōvis pāter*), and *jūdico* (*jūs āico*).

### III. INCREMENT OF NOUNS.

§ 286. 1. A noun is said to *increase*, when, in any of its cases, it has more syllables than in the nominative singular; as, *pax, pācis, sermo, sermōnis*. The number of *increments* in any case of a noun is equal to that of its additional syllables.

2. Nouns in general have but one increment in the singular, but *iter*, *sūpellex*, compounds of *cāput* ending in *ps*, and sometimes *jēcur* have two increments; as,

*iter*, *i-tēr-i-ris*; *sūpellex*, *sū-pel-lec-ti-lis*; *anceps*, *an-cip-i-tis*; *jēcur*, *jē-cin-ris*.

REMARK. The double increase of *iter*, etc., in the singular number arises from their coming from obsolete nominatives, containing a syllable more than those now in use; as, *itiner*, etc.

3. The dative and ablative plural of the third declension have one increment more than the genitive singular; as,

<i>rex</i> ,	Gen. <i>rē-gis</i> ,	D. and Ab. <i>rēg-i-bus</i> .
<i>sermo</i> ,	— <i>ser-mō-nis</i> ,	— <i>ser-mōn-i-bus</i> .
<i>iter</i> ,	— <i>i-tēr-i-ris</i> ,	— <i>it-i-nēr-i-bus</i> .

4. The last syllable of a word is never considered as the increment. If a word has but one increment, it is the penult; if two, the antepenult is called the first, and the penult the second; and if three, the syllable before the antepenult is called the first, the antepenult the second, and the penult the third increment; as,

1 1 2 1 2 1 2 3  
*ser-mo*, *ser-mō-nis*, *ser-mōn-i-bus*; *i-ter*, *i-tēr-i-ris*, *it-i-nēr-i-bus*.

5. In the third declension, the quantity of the first increment is the same in all the other cases as in the genitive singular; as,

*sermōnis*, *sermōni*, *sermōnem*, *sermōne*, *sermōnes*, *sermōnum*, *sermōnibus*. *Bōbus*, or *būbus*, from *bus*, *bōvis*, is lengthened by contraction from *bōvibus*.

NOTE. As adjectives and participles are declined like nouns, the same rules of increment apply to all of them; and so also to pronouns.

## INCREMENTS OF THE SINGULAR NUMBER.

### OF THE FIRST, FOURTH, AND FIFTH DECLENSIONS.

§ 287. 1. When nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions increase in the singular number, the increment consists of a vowel before the final vowel, and its quantity is determined by the first general rule with its exceptions, § 283, I.

Thus, *aura*, gen. *aurāi*, § 283, I. Exc. 3, (a.): *fructus*, dat. *fructūi*, § 283, I. a.): *dies*, gen. *diēi*, § 283, I. Exc. 2, (a.)

### INCREMENTS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

2. The increments of the second declension in the singular number are short; as,

*gēner*, *gēnēri*; *ātur*, *āturī*; *tēnēr*, *tēnēri*; *vir*, *virī*. Thus,

*Ne, puēri, ne tanta animis assuescitis bella.* Virg. A. 6, 883.

*Moustra sinunt; gēnēros externis affōre ab ōris.* Id. A. 7, 270.

Exc. The increment of *Iber* and *Celtiber* is long. For that of genitives in *us* see § 283, I. Exc. 4.



INCREMENTS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

3. The increments of the third declension and singular number in *a* and *o* are long; those in *e*, *i*, *u*, and *y*, are short; as,

*animal, animālis; audax, audācis; sermo, sermōnis; ferox, ferōcis; opus, opōris; celer, celōris; miles, miliōis; supplex, supplicis; murmur, murrōris; lux, luciōis; chlamys, chlāmēdis; Styx, Stýgis.* Thus,

*Prænaque cum spectent animālia cetera terram. Ovid. M. 1, 84.*

*Hæc tum multiplici populos sermōne replēbat. Virg. A. 4, 189.*

*Incumbent genēris lapī sarcire ruinas. Id. G. 4, 249.*

*Qualem virgineo dēmessum pollice flōrem. Id. A. 11, 68.*

*Adapice, ventōsi cecidērunt murrōris aures. Id. E. 9, 58.*

Exceptions in Increments in A.

1. (a.) Masculines in *al* and *ar* (except *Car* and *Nar*) increase short; as, *Annibal, Annibālis; Amīcar, Amīcāris.*

(b.) *Par* and its compounds, and the following—*dnas, mas, vas (vādīs), bac-car, hēpar, jābar, lar, nectar, and sal*—also increase short.

2. *A*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as, *daps, dāpis; Arabs, Arābis.*

3. Greek nouns in *a* and *as* (*ādis, ānis, or ātis*) increase short; as, *lampas, lampādīs; Mēlas, Mēlānis, poēma, poēmātīs.*

4. The following in *az* increase short:—*ābaz, anthrax, Arctōphylax, Ataz, Atraz, climax, coluz, cōraz, and nycticōraz, drōpuz, fuz, harpaz, jūnaz, smilax, and styrax.*—The increment of *Sýphaz* is doubtful.

Exceptions in Increments in O.

1. *O*, in the increment of neuter nouns, is short; as, *marmor, murrōris; corpus, corpōris; ēbur, ēbōris.* But *os* (the mouth), and the neuter of comparatives, like their masculine and feminine, increase long. The increment of *ador* is common.

2. *O* is short in the increment of Greek nouns in *o* or *on*, which, in the oblique *ases*, have *omicron*, but long in those which have *oméga*; as,

*Aëdon, Aëdōnis; Agamemnon, Agamemnōnis:—Plāto, Plātōnis; Sīnon, Sīnōnis; Sīcyon, Sīcyōnis. Sūlon, Orion, and Egeon, have the increment common.*

3. (a.) In the increment of gentile nouns in *o* or *on*, whether Greek or barbaric, *o* is generally short; as,

*Mācedō, Mācedōnis. So, Amazōnes. Aōnes, Myrridōnes, Santōnes, Saxōnes. Bēnōnes, Teutōnes, etc.*

(b.) But the following have *o* long:—*Eburōnes, Lacōnes, Iōnes, Nasamōnes, Buessōnes* (or *-iōnes*), *Vettōnes Burgundiōnes.* *Britōnes* has the *o* common.

4. Greek nouns in *or* increase short; as, *Hector, Hectōris; rhētor, rhētōris; Agēnor, Agēnōris.*

5. Compounds of *pus*, (*πούς*), as *tripus, polýpus, Cēdipus*, and also *arbor, mēmor, bos, compus, impos, and kpus*, increase short.

6. *O*, in the increment of nouns in *s* with a consonant before it, is short; as,

*acrobis, acrobis; inops, inōpis; Dōlōpes.* But it is long in the increment of *nercope, Cyclope, and hydrops.*

7. The increment of *Allobrox, Cappadox, and praeox,* is also short.

### Exceptions in Increments in E.

1. Nouns in *en, enis* (except *Hymen*), lengthen their increment as, *Siren, Sirēnis.* So, *Aniēnis, Nēriēnis,* from *Anio* and *Nērio*, or rather from the obsolete *Aniēn* and *Nēriēnes.*

2. *Hæres, locuples, mansues, merces,* and *quies*—also *Iber, ver, lex, rex, alce* or *alex* (*hāl-*) *narthez* and *verez—plebs* and *seps*—increase long.

3. Greek nouns in *es* and *er* (except *aër* and *æther*) increase long; as, *magnes, magnētis; crāter, crātēris.*

### Exceptions in Increments in I.

1. Nouns and adjectives in *ix*, increase long; as, *victrix, victriciis fēlix, fēlicis.*

Exc. *Cūlix, Cūlix, coxendix, filix, fornix, hystrix, lārix, nix, pix, sūlix, stris* and rarely *sandix* or *sandyx*, increase short.

2. *Vibex* and the following nouns in *is* increase long:—*dis, glis, lis, vis, Nēsis, Quiris,* and *Samnis.* The increment of *Psōphis* is common.

3. Greek nouns, whose genitive is in *inis* increase long; as, *delphin, delphinis; Sālāmis, Sālāminis.*

### Exceptions in Increments in U.

1. Genitives in *udis, uris,* and *utis*, from nominatives in *us*, have the penult long; as,

*pūlus, pūlūdis; tellus, tellūris; virtus, virtūtis.* But *intercus, Ligus* and *pēcus pēcūdis*, increase short.

2. *Fur, fruz,* (obs.), *lux,* and *Polluz,* increase long.

### Exceptions in Increments in Y.

1. Greek nouns whose genitive is in *ynis*, increase long; as, *Trāchyn, Trāchynis.*

2. The increment of *bombyx, Cefz, gryps,* and *mormyr,* is long; that of *Bebryx* and *sandyx* is common.

## INCREMENTS OF THE PLURAL NUMBER.

§ 288. 1. A noun in the plural number is said to increase when, in any case, it has more syllables than in the ablative singular.

REMARK. When the ablative singular is wanting, or its place is supplied by a form derived from a different root, an ablative may, for this purpose, be assumed, by annexing the proper termination to the root of the plural.

2. When a noun increases in the plural number, its result is called the plural increment; as, *sa* in *mācārum*, *no* in *dōminōrum*, *vi* in *rūpium* and *rūpius.*

8. In plural increments, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long, *i* and *u* are short; as,  
*dōnārum, animābus, rērum, rēbus, gēnērōrum, ambōbus; sērmōnibus, lacūbus*  
 Thus,

*Appia, longārum, tēritur, rēgina ciārum. Stat. S. 2, 2, 12.*  
*Sunt lacrymę rērum, et mentem mortalia tangunt. Virg. A. 1, 462.*  
*Atque illi, quōrum cōmōdia prisca ciuōrum est. Hor. S. 1, 4, 2.*  
*Periūbus ēgrōdior, ventisque fērentibus ūsus. Ovid.*

#### IV. INCREMENT OF VERBS.

§ 289. 1. A verb is said to increase, when, in any of its parts, it has more syllables than in the second person singular of the present indicative active; as, *das, dā-tis; dōces, dō-cē-mus*.

2. The number of increments in any part of a verb is equal to that of its additional syllables. In verbs, as in nouns, the last syllable is never considered the increment. If a verb has but one increment, it is the penult; and this first increment, through all the variations of the verb, except in reduplicated tenses, continues equally distant from the first syllable. The remaining increments are numbered successively from the first; as,

<i>ā-mas,</i>	<i>mō-nes,</i>	<i>au-dis,</i>
1	1	1
<i>ā-mā-mus,</i>	<i>mō-nē-tur,</i>	<i>au-di-tis,</i>
1 2	1 2	1 2
<i>ām-ā-bā-mus,</i>	<i>mōn-ē-rē-tur,</i>	<i>au-di-ē-bas,</i>
1 2 3	1 2 3	1 2 3 4
<i>ām-ā-vē-rā-mus.</i>	<i>mōn-ē-bim-i-ni.</i>	<i>au-di-ē-bām-i-ni.</i>

3. A verb in the active voice may have three increments; in the passive, it may have four.

4. In determining the increments of deponent verbs, an active voice, formed from the same root, may be supposed.

Thus the increments of *lā-tā-tur, lāt-ā-bā-tur*, etc., are reckoned from the supposed verb *lato, latus*.

§ 290. In the increments of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long; *i* and *u* are short; as,

*amāre, mōnēre, faciūte, vōlūmus, rēgēbāmini.* Thus,

*Et cantāre pāres, et respondēre pārāti. Virg. E. 7, 5.*  
*Sic ēquidem durēbam animo, rēbarque futūrum. Id. A. 6, 690.*  
*Cumque loqui pōtērit, matrem faciūte salūte. Ovid. M. 9, 378.*  
*Scinditur incertum stūdia in contraria vulgus. Virg. A. 2, 39.*  
*Nos nūmērus sūmus, et frūges consūmere nāti. Hor. Ep. 1, 2, 27.*

#### (a.) Exceptions in Increments in A.

The first increment of *do* is short; as, *dāmus, dābāmus, dāret, dā-trus, circumdāre, circumdābāmus*.

(b.) *Exceptions in Increments in E.*

1. *E* before *r* is short in the *first* increment of all the present and imperfect tenses of the third conjugation, and in the *second* increment in *bēris* and *bēre*; as,

*rēgere* (infinitive and imperative), *rēgeris* or *rēgere* (present indicative, passive), *rēgerem* and *rēgeret* (imperfect subjunctive); *amābēris*, *amābēre*; *mōnebēris*, *mōnebēre*.

NOTE 1. In *vēlim*, *vēlis*, etc., from *volo*, (second person, regularly *vōlis*, by syncope and contraction *ris*), *ē* is not an increment, but represents the root vowel *o*, and is therefore short; § 284, and § 178, 1.

2. *E* is short before *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, and the persons formed from them; as,

*amāveram*, *amāverat*, *amāverim*, *mōnuerimus*, *rexero*, *audieritis*.

NOTE 2. In verbs which have been shortened by syncope or otherwise, *e* before *r* retains its original quantity; as, *fleram*, for *flēveram*.

For the short *e* before *rant*, in the perfect indicative, as, *steterunt*, see *Syncope*, § 307.

(c.) *Exceptions in Increments in I.*

1. *I* before *v* or *s*, in tenses formed from the second root, is long as,

*pētiui*, *audivi*, *quæsiui*, *divisiui*, *audivimus*, *divisimus*, *audivēram*.

2. *I* is long, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation, in the final syllable of the third root of *gaudeo*, *arcesso*, *divido*, *fūcesso*, *lācesso*, *pēto*, *quæro*, *rēcenseo* and *obliviscor*; as,

*gāvissus*, *arcessitus*, *divisus*, *fūcessitus*, *lācessitus*, *pētissus*, *quæssitus*, *rēcensitus*, *oblissus*; *gāvissurus*, etc.

3. *I* in the first increment of the fourth conjugation, except in *imus* of the perfect indicative, is long; as,

*audire*, *audirem*, *auditus*, *auditūrus*, present infinitive *venimus*, but in the perfect *venimus*. So in the ancient forms in *ibam*, *ibis*, of the fourth conjugation; as, *nutribam*, *nutribis*; and also in *ibam* and *ibo*, from *eo*.

NOTE 3. When a vowel follows, the *i* is short, by § 283; as, *audiam*, *audiamus*.

4. *I* is long in the first and second persons plural of subjunctives in *sim*, *sīs*, *sit*, (etc., (§ 162, 1.)); as, *simus*, *sitis*, *vēlimus*, *vēlitis*, and their compounds; as, *possumus*, *adsumus*, *mālimus*, *nōlimus*. So also in *nōlito*, *nōlite*, *nōlitis*, after the analogy of the fourth conjugation.

5. *I* in *ris*, *rimus* and *ritis*, in the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is common; as,

*vidēris*, Mart., *occidēris*, Hor.; *vidēritis* (Ovid), *dēdēritis* (Id.); *fēcērimus* (Cæcilius), *egērimus* (Virg.)

(d.) *Exceptions in Increments in U.*

*U* is long in the increment of supines, and of participles formed from the third root of the verb; as,

*obscutus*, *scūtus*, *obscūtus*, *scūtus*.

# RULES FOR THE QUANTITY OF PENULTIMATE AND ANIEPE- NULTIMATE SYLLABLES.

## I. PENULTS.

§ 291. 1. Words ending in *acus*, *icus*, and *icum*, shorten the penult; as,

*amārcus*, *Ægypticus*, *rusticus*, *triticum*, *viaticum*.

Except *Dācus*, *mēricus*, *spācus*; *amicus*, *apricus*, *ficus*, *mendicus*, *pious*, *posticus*, *pudicus*, *spicus*, *umbilicus*, *vicus*.

2. Words ending in *abrum*, *ubrum*, *acrum*, and *atrum*, lengthen the penult; as,

*candēlābrum*, *dēlābrum*, *livācrum*, *vērātrum*.

3. Nouns in *ca* lengthen the penult; as,

*apōthēca*, *cloāca*, *lactuca*, *lorica*, *phōca*.

Except *ālca*, *brassicā*, *lca*, *fūlca*, *mantica*, *pēdica*, *portica*, *scūtica*, *phāldrica*, *tūnica*, *vōmica*; and also some nouns in *ica* derived from adjectives in *icus*; as, *fabrica*, *grammatica*, etc. So *mānica*.

4. Patronymics in *ades* and *ides* shorten the penult; as, *Atlantiūdes*, *Priāmīdes*.

Except those in *ides* which are formed from nouns in *eus* or *ēs* (ε); as, *Atrīdes*, from *Atrēus*; *Neoclīdes*, from *Neoclēs*; except, also, *Amphiārāides*, *Bēlides*, *Amēclīdes*, *Iscurgīdes*.

5. Patronymics and similar words in *ais*, *eis*, and *ois*, lengthen the penult; as,

*Achāis*, *Chrēsēis*, *Mindis*. Except *Phōcāis* and *Thēbāis*. The penult of *Nāreis* is common.

6. Words in *do* lengthen the penult; as,

*vādo*, *cēdo*, *dulcēdo*, *formīdo*, *rōdo*, *testūdo*. Except *cādo*, *divīdo*, *ēdo* (to eat), *comēdo*, *Macēdo*, *mōdo*, *sōlido*, *spīdo*, *trēpīdo*. *Rudo* is common.

7. Words in *idus* shorten the penult; those in *ulus* lengthen it; as,

*callidus*, *herbidus*, *limpidus*, *lividus*, *perfidus*; *crūdus*, *lūdus*, *nūdus*, *sūdus*, *ūdus*. Except *līdus*, *fīdus*, *infīdus*, *nīdus*, *sīdus*.

8. Nouns in *ga* and *go* lengthen the penult; as,

*sāga*, *collēga*, *auriga*, *rūga*; *imāgo*, *cālgo*, *arūgo*. Except *cālga*, *osifraga*, *lōga*, *plāga*, (a region, or a net), *fūga* and its compounds, *stēga*, *eclōga*, *ēgo*, *harpāgo*, *lūgo*.

9. Words in *le*, *les*, and *lis*, lengthen the penult; as,

*crīnile*, *vantēle*, *ancile*; *āles*, *mīles*, *prōles*; *annālis*, *crūdēlis*, *ctōlis*, *cōrūlis*.—Except *māle*;—verbals in *ilis* and *bilis*; as, *āgilis*, *amābilis*;—adjectives in *utlis*; as, *umbrāttilis*;—and also, *intōles*, *sōlōles*; *pērisclēlis*, *dapsilīs*, *grācilīs*, *lōvilis*, *pārilis*, *similis*, *stērilis*, *mūgilis*, *strigilis*.

10. Words in *elus*, *ela*, *elum*, lengthen the penult; as,

*phāsclūs*, *quērēla*, *prēlum*. Except *gēlus*, *gēlum*, *scēlus*.

11. Diminutives in *olus*, *ola*, *olum*, *ulus*, *ula*, *ulus* n, also words in

*ilus*, and those in *ulus*, *ula*, and *ulum*, of more than two syllables shorten the penult; as,

*urceolus*, *filicula*, *lectulus*, *ratuncula*, *corculum*, *pabulum*; *ratulus* *garrulus* *fabula*. Except *asilus*.

12. Words in *ma* lengthen the penult; as,

*fama*, *poema*, *rima*, *pluma*. Except *anima*, *coma*, *decima*, *lacrima*, *victima*, *lama*.

13. A vowel before final *men* or *mentum* is long; as,

*levamen*, *gramen*, *crimen*, *flumen*, *jumentum*, *atramentum*. Except *utmen*, *clamen*, *Hymen*, *elementum*, and a few verbal nouns derived from verbs of the second and third conjugations; as, *elimentum*, *documen* or *documentum*, *emellamentum*, *monumentum*, *regimen*, *specimen*, *legimen*, etc.

14. Words ending in *imus* shorten the penult; as,

*animus*, *decimus*, *finitimus*, *fortissimus*, *maximus*. Except *bimus*, *livus*, *minus* *optimus*, *quidrimus*, *simus*, *trinus*, and two superlatives, *imus* and *primus*.

NOTE. When an adjective ends in *umus* for *imus*, the quantity remains the same; as, *decumus*, *optimus*, *maximus*, for *decimus*, etc.

15. *A*, *e*, *o*, and *u*, before final *mus* and *mum*, are long; as,

*ramus*, *remus*, *extremus*, *promus*, *dumus*, *pomum*, *volumum*. Except *divinus*, *balneum*, *cinnamum*, *domus*, *glomus*, *humus*, *postumus*, *thalamus*, *tonus*, *oilamus*, *nemus*.

16. (a.) Words in *na*, *ne*, *ni*, and *nis*, lengthen the penult; as,

*lana*, *arena*, *carina*, *matrona*, *luna*, *mane*, *septeni*, *octoni*, *inani*, *finis*, *immensis*. Except *advena*, *collana*, *ptisana*, *mina*, *gena*, *bene*, *sine*, *canis*, *cinis*, *juvēnis*; and the following in *ina*,—*buccina*, *domina*, *facina*, *femina*, *fuscina*, *lamina*, *machina*, *pagina*, *pallina*, *sarcina*, *tibicina*, *tristina*; and in plur. *apinae*, *minae*, *nundinae*. So compounds of *geno*; as, *indigena*.

(b.) Verbs in *ino* and *inor* shorten the penult; as,

*destino*, *fascino*, *inquino*, *sino*, *criminor*. Except *festino*, *propino*, *adgino*, *optinor*, and the compounds of *clino*; as, *inclino*, etc.

17. (a.) Adjectives in *inus*, when they express time, or indicate a material or an inanimate substance, shorten the penult; as,

*crastinus*, *diutinus*, *pristinus*, *peregrinus*: *fastinus*, *crocinus*, *hyacinthinus*, *adamantinus*, *crystallinus*, *oleaginus*, *bombicinus*. Except *matulinus*, *repentinus*, *vespertinus*.

(b.) Other adjectives and words in *inus* and in *inum* lengthen the penult; as,

*caninus*, *binus*, *peregrinus*, *marinus*, *clandestinus*, *sapinus*: *linum*. Except *acinus*, *asinus*, *coccinus*, *cominus*, *eminus*, *copinus*, *dominus*, *facinus*, *fasticinus*, *prolinus*, *sinus*, *terminus*, *geminus*, *circinus*, *minus*, *vulcinus*, *succinum*, *fascinum*.

18. *A*, *e*, *o*, and *u*, before final *nus* and *num*, are long; as,

*urbinus*, *serenus*, *patronus*, *promus*, *munus*, *tribunus*, *fanum*, *venenum*, *donum*. Except *anus*, an old woman, *gallinus*, *manus*, *oceanus*, *platanus*, *ebenus*, *genus*, *amigenus*, *penus*, *tenus*, *Venus*, *onus*, *bonus*, *sonus*, *thronus*; *laganum*, *peucedanum*, *popanum*, *tympanum*, *abrolonum*.

19. Words ending in *ba*, *bo*, *pa*, and *po*, shorten the penult; as,

*fabba*, *juba*, *syllaba*; *bibo*, *cubo*, *probo*; *alapa*, *lupa*, *scapha*; *crepo*, *participa*. Except *gleba*, *scriba*, *bubo*, *glubo*, *libo*, *nubo*, *scribo*, *sipho*, *cepa*, *ripa*, *papa*, *pupa*, *apa*, *scopa*, *stupa*; *capo*, *repo*, *stipo*.

20. Words in *al*, *ar*, *are*, and *aris*, lengthen the penult; as,

*tribūnāl*, *vectīgāl*: *lūpānar*, *pulvīnar*; *altāre*, *lūqueāre*; *nāris*. Except *ānimal*, *capitūl*, *cūbitūl*, *tōrāl*, *jūbar*, *sālar*, *māre*, *bināris*, *hīlāris*, *canthāris*, *cappāris*, *lēcāris*.

21. Before final *ro* or *ror*, *a* and *e* are short; *i*, *o*, and *u*, are long as,

*āro*, *pāro*, *fēro*, *gēro*, *sēro*, *cēlēro*, *tempēro*, *quēror*; *mīror*, *spīro*, *tīro*; *auctōro*, *ignāro*, *ōro*; *cūro*, *dūro*, *figūro*; *lūror*. Except *dēclāro*, *pēro*, *spēro*; *fōro*, *mōro*, *sōror*, *vōro*, *fūro*, *sātūro*; and derivatives from genitives increasing short as *augūror*, *dēcōro*, *mēmōro*, *murmūro*, etc.; from *augur*, *augūris*; *dēcus*, *dēcōris*, etc.

22. Before final *rus*, *ra*, *rum*, *e* is short; the other vowels are long; as,

*mērum*, *mērus*, *hēdēra*, *sērum*, *cēlērum*; *cārus*, *mīrus*, *mōrus*, *mūrus*, *gīrus*, *āra*, *spīra*, *ōra*, *nātūra*, *lōrum*.

Except, 1. *austērus*, *gālērus*, *plērus*, *prōcērus*, *sincērus*, *sērus*, *sēvērus*, *vērus*, *crātūra*, *cēra*, *pēra*, *panthēra*, *stātēra*.

Exc. 2. *barbārus*, *cammarus*, *cāmūrus*, *canthārus*, *chōrus*, *fōrus*, *hellēbōrus*, *nārus*, *ōpīpārus*, *ōcipārus*, *phosphōrus*, *pirus*, *sātīrus*, *scārus*, *spārus*, *tartārus*, *tōrus*, *zēphīrus*; *amphōra*, *ancōra*, *cithāra*, *hāra*, *līra*, *mōra*, *purpūra*, *phāīra*, *pīra*, *sātīra*; *fōrum*, *gārum*, *pārum*, *suppārum*.

23. Adjectives in *osus* lengthen the penult; as,

*fūmōsus*, *vinōsus*.

24. Nouns in *etas* and *itas* shorten the penult; as,

*piētas*, *civītas*, *bōnitas*.

25. Adverbs in *tim* lengthen the penult, those in *iter* and *itus* shorten it; as,

*stātīm*, (constantly), *vritīm*, *tribūtīm*; *acriter*, *funditus*. Except *stātīm*, (immediately), *affūtīm*.

26. (a.) Words in *ates*, *itis*, *ous*, and in *ata*, *eta*, *ota*, *uta*, lengthen the penult, as,

*vātes*, *pēnātes*, *vītis*, *mītis*, *cōryōtis*, *lēcāriōtis*, *pirāta*, *mēta*, *poēta*, *ālūta*, *cicāta*. Except *sītis*, *pōtis*, *drāpēta*, *nōta*, *rōta*.

(b.) Nouns in *ita* shorten the penult; as,

*āmīta*, *nāvīta*, *orbīta*, *sēmīta*. Except *pituita*.

27. Nouns in *atum*, *itum*, *utum*, lengthen the penult; as,

*lūpātum*, *āxnitum*, *vērūtum*. Except *dēfrūtum*, *pulpitum*, *pētōritum*, *lūtum* (and) *compitum*.

28. Nouns and adjectives ending in *tus* lengthen the penult; as,

*barbātus*, *grātus*, *bōlētus*, *fācētus*, *crinitus*, *pēritus*, *agrōtus*, *ūtus*, *argūtus*, *hīrūtus*. Except *cātus*, *lātus*, (-ēris), *impētus*, *mētus*, *vēgētus*, *vētus*; *anhēlītus*, *digitus*, *grātītus*, *kālītus*, *hospītus*, *servītus*, *spirītus*; *antidōtus*, *nōtus*, *quōtus*, *tōtus* (so great); *arbūtus*, *pūtus*; *inclītus*; and derivatives from perfect participles having a short penult; as, *exercītus*, *hābītus*.

29. A penultimate vowel before *v* is long; as,

*clīva*, *olīva*, *dīves*, *nāvis*, *civis*, *pāpāver*, *pāvo*, *privō*, *ovum*, *prāvus*, *restīvus*, *fūgīvus*. Except *āvis*, *brēvis*, *grāvis*, *lēvis*, *ōvis*; *cāvo*, *grāvo*, *jāvo*, *lāvo*, *lēvo*, *pōo*; *āvus*, *cāvus*, *fāvus*, *nōvus*, *fāvor*, *pavor*, *nōvem*.

30. Words ending in *dex, dix, mex, nix, lex, rex*, lengthen the penult; as,

*cótex, júdex; lótx, rátx; cítex, pátex; jánix; ílex; cárex, márex.*  
 Except *cálex, sílex, ríntax.*

## II. ANTEPENULTS

§ 292. 1. *I* is short in diminutives in *iculus* and *icellus* (*a, um*), whether nouns or adjectives; as,

*colliculus, dulciculus, craticula, pellicula, mollicellus.* Except words in which the preceding vowel is short; as, *cúticula, cunicula*: or in which *i* is long in the primitive; as, *cornicula*, from *cornix, -icis*.

2. Numerals in *ginti, ginta, éni*, and *estmus*, lengthen the antepenult; as,

*viginti, quadráginta, tricéni, quinquagéstmus.*

3. *O* and *u* before final *lentus* are short; as,

*vidólentus, fraudólentus, pulvérólentus, trácólentus.*

4. A vowel before final *nea, neo, nia, nio, nius, nium*, is long; as,

*áranea, línea, óneo, múnia, púnio, Fávónius, patrimonium.* Except *castánea, finen, máneo, míneo, móneo, sénéo, léneo, ignómínia, lusctínia, vénia, kíneo, réneo, ingénium, génium, sénio, sénium*; words in *cinium, as, lénocinium*; and derivatives in *onius*, when *o* in the root of the primitive is short; as, *Agámemnónius*, from *Agámemnon, -ónis*.

5. Words ending in *areo, arius, arium, erium, orius, orium*, lengthen the antepenult; as,

*áreo, cibárius, plantárium, dictérium, censárius, tentórium.* Except *cáreo, várius, desidérium, impérium, magistérium, ministérium.*

6. Adjectives in *áticus, atilis*, lengthen the antepenult; as,

*aquáticus, plumátilis.* Except some Greek words in *áticus*; as, *grammáticus*

7. *I* before final *túdo* is short; as,

*altitúdo, longitúdo.*

8. Verbals in *bilis* lengthen *a* but shorten *i* in the antepenult; as,

*omábilis, mirábilis; crédibilis, terríbilis.* In *hábilis*, *b* belongs to the root.

9. *U* before *v* is short, (except in *Júverna*); as,

*júvnis, júvénális, júvénilitas, flúvius, dilúvium.*

## III. PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

§ 293. 1. Patrials and proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, shorten the penult:—

ba,	uo,	o, <sup>6</sup>	ges,	dus, <sup>13</sup>	ena, <sup>19</sup>	arus,	atus, <sup>22</sup>
ca,	le, <sup>4</sup>	on, <sup>7</sup>	les,	eus, <sup>14</sup>	anes,	erus, <sup>21</sup>	irus, <sup>23</sup>
la, <sup>3</sup>	pe, <sup>5</sup>	os, <sup>8</sup>	lis, <sup>10</sup>	gus, <sup>15</sup>	enes,	yrus,	otus. <sup>24</sup>
bo,	re,	er, <sup>9</sup>	bua,	lus, <sup>16</sup>	aris,	asus,	
co, <sup>6</sup>	al,	mas,	ous, <sup>11</sup>	mus, <sup>17</sup>	yris,	osus,	
che,	il,	ras,	ohus, <sup>12</sup>	phus, <sup>18</sup>	asis, <sup>20</sup>	usus,	



*Exceptions.*

<sup>1</sup>Márcia. Náílca.—<sup>2</sup>Eríphýla, Messála, Philómela, Snáðela.—<sup>3</sup>Bèrenice.—<sup>4</sup>Eríphyle. Neóbúle, Périmele.—<sup>5</sup>Európe, Sinópe.—<sup>6</sup>Carthágo, Cúpávo, Cápido, Origo, Theáno.—<sup>7</sup>Alémo, Anthédou, Chalcedón, Iáson, Philémo, Pólypémon, Sarpédón, Thermódón.—<sup>8</sup>Cercýros, Pèpàrèthos, Pharsálos, Séríphos.—<sup>9</sup>Méleáger.—<sup>10</sup>Bessális, Eumélis, Juvénilis, Martiális, Phásális, Stymphális.—<sup>11</sup>Bénácus, Calcus, Gráncus, Númicus, Trivicus.—<sup>12</sup>Ophítichus.—<sup>13</sup>Abydus.—<sup>14</sup>Cápháreus, Enipeus, Prómètheus, Phóroneus, Salmóneus, Oileus.—<sup>15</sup>Céthægis.—<sup>16</sup>Names in -clus, in -olus (*except* Eólus, Naubólus), in -bulus, (*except* Bibúlus) Eumélus, Gætúlus, Iúlus, Massýlus, Orbélus, Pharsálus, Sardánápá-lus, Stympháklus.—<sup>17</sup>Some in -démus and -phémus; as, Acádémus, Pólyphé-nus.—<sup>18</sup>Séríphus.—<sup>19</sup>Alcména, Athénæ, Cáména, Fidéna, Messéna, Múrona, Mýcénæ.—<sup>20</sup>Amásis.—<sup>21</sup>Hómérus, Ibérus.—<sup>22</sup>Arátus, Cærátus, Torquátus.—<sup>23</sup>Héráclitus, Hermáphróditus.—<sup>24</sup>Báthrotus.

2. Proper names of more than two syllables, found in the poets with the following terminations, *lengthen* the penult:—

ana, <sup>1</sup>	sa,	num, <sup>7</sup>	tas,	nus, <sup>12</sup>	urus,	etus, <sup>16</sup>
ina, <sup>2</sup>	ta, <sup>4</sup>	tum,	des, <sup>9</sup>	pus, <sup>13</sup>	esus, <sup>15</sup>	utus,
ona, <sup>3</sup>	tæ, <sup>5</sup>	or, <sup>6</sup>	tes, <sup>10</sup>	irus,	isus,	ytus, <sup>17</sup>
yna,	ene, <sup>8</sup>	nas,	tis, <sup>11</sup>	orus, <sup>14</sup>	ysus,	vus.

*Exceptions.*

<sup>1</sup>Séquána.—<sup>2</sup>Mútina, Pröserpina, Ruspina, Sarsina.—<sup>3</sup>Axóna, Matróna.—<sup>4</sup>Dal'náta, Próchyta, Sarmáta, Lápltha.—<sup>5</sup>Gálátæ, Jaxámètæ, Massagétæ, Mácètæ, Saurómátæ.—<sup>6</sup>Clymène, Hélène, Melpómène, Nyctimène.—<sup>7</sup>Arími-num, Drépanum.—<sup>8</sup>Númitor.—<sup>9</sup>Miltiádes, Pyládes, Sótádes, Thúcýdides; *pa-tronymics* in -des, (§ 291, 4.) and *plurals* in -ades.—<sup>10</sup>Antiphátæ, Chárites, Eurybátæ, Ichnóbátæ, Euergétæ, Massagétæ, and *all names* in -crates.—<sup>11</sup>Der-cétis.—<sup>12</sup>Apládanus, Aponus, Cárānus, Chrysógonus, Clinus, Clyménus, Con-cānus, Dardānus, Diáldamēnus, Eárinus, Erídanus, Iúclinus, Hélēnus, Libānus, Mórini, Mýcōnus, Nebróphōnus, Olēnus, Péríclimēnus, Rhodānus, Santōnus, Séquāni, Stéphanus, Telégōnus, Terminus, and *names* in -gonus and -xenus.—<sup>13</sup>Clípus.—<sup>14</sup>Pácōrus, Bospōrus, and *names* in -chorus and -phorus; as, Stésí-chōrus, Phosphōrus.—<sup>15</sup>Ephēsus, Vogēsus, Volēsus.—<sup>16</sup>Lápētus, Tēgētus, Venētus.—<sup>17</sup>Æpytus, Anytus, Eurytus, Hippolytus.

3. The penultimate vowel of the following proper names, and ad-jectives derived from proper names, though followed by a vowel, is long. See § 283, I. Exc. 6.

Enēas, Ethíon, Achélōus, Achillēus, Aleyōnēus, Alexandría, Alōeus, Al-phēus, Aminēus, Amphíarāus, Amphigénia, Amphion, Amythāon, Aríon, An-chíseus, Atlantēus, Antióchia, Biōnēus, Cæsáreä, Cálaurēä, Calliōpēä, Cassiō-pēä, Cleanthēas, Cydōnēus, Cymódócēä, Cythērēä, Dārius (-ēus), Deldāmia, Dilylñāon, Diómēdēus, Dolichāon, Echíon, Elēus, Endyníonēus, Enyo, Eōus, Erebeus, Erechthēus, Gálátēä, Gigantēus, Héráclēä (-ēus), Hippódāmia, Hypē-rión, Ilithýia, Imāon, Iólāus, Iphigénia, Ixíon, Láodāmia, Látōus, Lesbous, Lycōm, Máchāon, Mausolōwēn, Medēä, Mēntēäus, Methíon, Myrtōus, Ophíon, Oríon, Orthýia, Orphēus, Pallantēur (-us), Pandion, Papiagēä, Pēnēus, Pen-théallēus, Phœbēus, Poppēä, Protéstlēus, Pyrēnēus, Sardēus, Thállä.

NOTE. *Eus* in the termination of Greek proper names, is commonly a diph-thong; as, *Alceus*, *Cleoneus*, *Orpheus*, *Peleus*, *Perseus*, *Proteus*, *Theseus*, *Tydeus*, which are dissyllables; *Briareus*, *Enipeus*, *Macedæus*, *Typhoeus*, which are tri-syllables, *Idomeneus*, etc. Cf. § 293, Exc. 6, Note 2. But in those which in Greek are written *ως* (*eios*), *eus* forms two syllables; as, *Alphēus*. So also in adjectives in *eus*, whether of Greek or Latin origin; as, *Erēbius*, *Erechtheus*, *Orphēus*; *nurēus*, *lygēus*.

## QUANTITY OF FINAL SYLLABLES.

## I. VOWELS.

## MONOSYLLABLES.

§ 294. (a.) All monosyllables, except enclitics, ending in a vowel, are long; as,

*ā, āh, dā, slā, ē, dē, mē, tē, sē, nē, rē, ī, fī, hī, quī, nī, sī, O or ōh, dō, prō, prōh, quō, slō, tō.*

## POLYSYLLABLES.

*A final.*

1. *A* final, in words declined, is short; as, *mūsā, templā, cāpītā, Tȳdēā.* Thus,

*Mūsā mīhi causas mēmōrā; quo nūmīne laeo.... Virg. A. 1, 8.*

Exc. *A* final is long in the ablative of the first declension, and in the vocative of Greek nouns in *as* and *es*; as,

*Mūsā, fundā; O Ānēā, O Pallā, O Anchisā.*

2. *A* final, in words not declined, is long; as, *āmā, frustrā, anteā, ergā, intrā.* Thus,

*Extra fortunam est quidquid donatur amicis. Mart. Epig. 5, 42, 7.*

Exc. *A* final is short in *eidā, itā, quidā*, and in *pūtā*, when used adverbially, in the sense of 'for example.' It is sometimes short in the preposition *contra*, and in numerals ending in *ginta*; as, *trīginta*, etc. In *postea*, it is common.

*A* final is also short in the names of Greek letters; as, *alphā, bētā*, etc., and in *tārātāntārā*, the imitated sound of the trumpet.

*E final.*

§ 295. *E* final, in words of two or more syllables, is short; as, *nātē, putrē, ipsē, currē, rēgērē, nempē, antē.* Thus,

*Incipē, parvū puer, risu cognoscere matrem. Virg. E. 4, 60.*

REMARK. The enclitics *-que, -ne, -ve, -ce, -te, -pte*, etc., as they are not used alone, have *e* short, according to the rule; as, *nēquē, hūjuscē, suaptē* Cf. § 294, (a.)

Exc. 1. *E* final is long in nouns of the first and fifth declensions as,

*Calliōpē, Tȳdidē, fidē.* So also in the compounds of *rē* and *diē*; as, *quadrē, hōdiē, pridē, postridē, quōtidē*, and in the ablative *fāmē*, originally of the fifth declension.

Exc. 2. *E* final is long in Greek vocatives from nouns in *-es*, of the third declension; as, *Achillē, Hippōnēnē*; and in Greek neuters plural; as, *cētē, mellē pēlagē, Tempē.*

Exc. 3. In the second conjugation, *e* final is long in the second person singular of the imperative active; as, *dōcē, mōnē*;—but it is sometimes short in *cāve, vāle* and *vide*.

Exc. 4. *E* final is long in adverbs formed from adjectives of the second declension; as,

*placide, pulchrē, valde* for *valide, maxime*; but it is short in *bene malle, inferne, and supernē*.

Exc. 5. *Fērē, fermē, and dhē*, have the final *e* long.

### I final.

§ 296. *I* final is long; as, *dōmīnī, fili, classī, dōcērī, si*. Thus,

*Quid dōmīni faciēnt, audent cum tālla fūres.* Virg. E. 3, 16.

Exc. 1. (a.) *I* final is common in *mīhi, tibi, sibi, tibi, and ūbi*.

(b.) In *ubique* and commonly in *ibidem* it is long, but in *ubivis* and *ubinam* it is short.—(c.) In *nisi, quāsi*, and *cui*, when a dissyllable, *i* final is common, but usually short. In *ūtinam* and *ūtique*, and rarely, also, in *ūti*, it is short.

Exc. 2. *I* final is short in the dative singular of Greek nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive; as, *Pallādī, Minōidī, Tēthydī*.

Exc. 3. *I* final is short in the vocative of Greek nouns in *-is*; as, *Alexī, Daphnī, Pārī*. But it is long in vocatives from Greek nouns in *-is, (us) -entos*; as, *Simōi, Pýrōi*.

Exc. 4. *I* final is short in Greek datives and ablatives plural in *-ei*, or, before a vowel, *-sin*; as, *Dryāsi, hērōisi, Trōāsin*.

### O final.

§ 297. *O* final, in words of two or more syllables, is common; as, *virgō, amō, quandō*. Thus,

*Ergō mētu cāpita Scylla est inimica pāterno.* Virg. Cir. 286.

*Ergō sollicitus tu causa, pecūnia, vitas es!* Prop. 3, 5, 1.

Exc. 1. *O* final is long in the dative and ablative singular; as, *dōminō, regnō, bonō, suō, illō, eō*.

Exc. 2. *O* final is long in ablatives used as adverbs; as, *certō, falsō, mēritō, vulgō, eō, quō*; and also in *omninō*, in *ergō*, 'for the sake of,' and in the interjection *idō*.

REMARK 1. The final *o* of verbs is almost always long in poets of the Augustan age.

REM. 2. In poets subsequent to the Augustan age, final *o* in verbs, in gerunds, and in the adverbs *adeo, ideo, ergo, pro, vero, porro, retro, immo, idcirco, subito*, and *postremo*, is sometimes short.

Exc. 3. *O* final is short in *cito, illico, profecto*, and the compounds of *mōdo*; as, *dummodo, postmodo*, etc.; and in *ego* and *homo* it is more frequently short than long.

Exc. 4. *O* final in Greek nouns written with an omēga (ω) is long; as, *Clēs, Didō, Athō, and Andrōgeō*, (gen.)

### U final.

§ 298. 1. *U* final is long; as, *vultū, cornū. Panthū, dīctū, diū*. Thus,

*Vultū, quo oculum tempestatesque cernat.* Virg. A. 1, 265.

Exc. *Indē* and *nēmē*, ancient forms of *in* and *non*, have *u* short. *contentū* short in terminations in *us* short, when *s* is removed by elision; as, *U* is also for *contentūs*. See § 205, 2.

### Y final.

2. *Y* final is short; as, *Mōlŷ*, *Tiphŷ*. Thus,

*Mōlŷ* vocant sup̄eri: nigrā radicē tēnētur. *Ovid. M. 14, 292.*

Exc. *Y* in the dative *Tēthŷ*, being formed by contraction, is long. § 283, III.

## II. CONSONANTS.

### MONOSYLLABLES.

§ 299 1. Monosyllabic *substantives* ending in a consonant are long; all other monosyllables ending in a consonant are short; as,

*sōl*, *cir*, *fūr*, *jūs*, *splēn*, *vēr*, *fūr*, *lār*, *Nār*, *pār*, *Sēr*, *fās*, *mās*, *rēs*, *pēs*, *Dīs*, *glīs*, *līs*, *vis*, *flōs*, *mōs*, *rūs*. *Trōs*, *ōs*, (*ōris*), *dōs*, *grūs*, *rūs*, *tūs*; — *nēc*, *in*, *ān*, *ab*, *ad*, *quid*, *quīs*, *quōt*, *et*; as,

*Ipse docet quid ligam. Fās est et ab hoste doceri. Ovid. M. 4, 428.*

*Vēr adeo frondī nēmōrum, vēr atille silvis. Virg. G. 2, 323.*

NOTE. The rules for the quantity of final syllables ending in a consonant imply that the consonant is single, and that it is preceded by a single vowel. If otherwise the syllable will be long by § 283, IV. and II.

Exc. 1. *Ōr*, *fēl*, *mēl*, *pōl*, *cir*, *ōs* (gen. *ossis*), and probably *vas* (*vdās*), are short.

Exc. 2. *En*, *nōn*, *quīn*, *sin*, *crās*, *plūs*, *cūr*, and *pār*, are long: so also are particles and pronouns ending in *c*, except *nēc*, which is short, and the pronouns *hic* and *hoc*, in the nominative and accusative, which are common.

Exc. 3. Monosyllabic plural cases of pronouns and forms of verbs in *as*, *es*, and *is*, are long; as, *hās*, *quās*, *hōs*, *nōs*, *vōs*, *quōs*, *his*, *quīs*; — *dās*, *flēs*, *stēs*, *is*, *fis*, *sis*, *vis*; except *ēs* from *sum* which is short.

Exc. 4. The abridged imperatives retain the quantity of their root; as, *dāc*, from *dāco*, *dāco*; *fāc*, *fēr*, from *fācio*, *fēro*.

### POLYSYLLABLES.

### D, L, N, R, T, final.

2 Final syllables ending in *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, and *t*, are short; as *illūd*, *consul*, *carmēn*, *pāter*, *cāpūt*. Thus,

*Obetūpuit simul ipse, simul percussus Achātes. Virg. A. 1, 513.*

*Nōmēn Ariōnium Sicūlas implēvērāt urbes. Ovid. F. 2, 98.*

*Dum loquor, horrōr, habet; parsque est mēmīnisse dōlōris. Id. M. 9, 291.*

Exc. 1. *E* in *liēn* is long.

Exc. 2. In Greek nouns, nominatives in *n* (except those in *on* written with an *omicron*), masculine or feminine accusatives in *an* or *en*, and genitives plural in *on*, lengthen the final syllable; as,

*Patēr*, *Orion*, *Enōm*, *Anchiēs*, *Calliopēn*; *epigrammātōn*.

Exc. 3. *Ær*, *æthēr*, and nouns in *ēr* which form their genitive in *ēris*, lengthen the final syllable; as,

*cratēr*, *solēr*. So also *Ibēr*; but the compound *Celiber* has sometimes in *Martial* its last syllable short.

REMARK. A final syllable ending in *t*, may be rendered long by a di-hthong, by contraction, by syncope, or by position; as, *aut*, *abit* for *ābit*, *fūmāt*, for *fūmāvīt*, *āmānt*. See § 283, II. III. IV., and § 162, 7, (d.)

### M final.

NOTE. Final *m* with the preceding vowel is almost always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel. See *Ecthlipsis*, § 805, 2.

3. Final syllables ending in *m*, when it is not cut off, are short; as,

*Quam laudas, plūmā? cæto nūm ādest hōnor Idem. Hor. S. 2, 2, 28.*

REMARK. Hence in composition the final syllables of *cum* and *circum* are short; as, *cōmēdo*, *circūmāgo*.

### C final.

4. Final syllables ending in *c* are long; as, *ālēc*, *illēc*, *istēc*, *illūc*. Thus,

*Illic indocto primum se exēruit arcu. Tib. 2, 1, 69.*

Exc. The final syllable of *dōnēc* is short; as,

*Dōnēc ēris fēlix multos nūmērābis āmicos. Ovid. Triat. 1 9, 5.*

### AS, ES, and OS, final.

§ 300. Final syllables in *as*, *es*, and *os*, are long; as,

*mūsās*, *piētās*, *āmās*, *Ænēās*, *quiēs*, *sermōnēs*, *dīēs*, *Pēnellōpēs*, *dūcentiēs*, *mōnēs*, *vinōs*, *virōs*, *dōminōs*. Thus,

*Hæc autem terrās, Itālique hanc litōris ōram. Virg. A. 3, 396.*

*Sī mōdo dēs illis cultus, similesque parātus. Ovid. M. 6, 454.*

Exc. 1. (a.) AS. *As* is short in *ānās*, in Greek nouns whose genitive ends in *ādis* or *ādos*; as, *Arcās*, *Pallās*; and in Greek accusatives plural of the third declension; as, *hērōās*, *lampādās*.

(b.) *As* is short also in Latin nouns in *as*, *ādos*, formed like Greek patronymics; as, *Appiās*.

Exc. 2. ES. (a.) Final *es* is short in nouns and adjectives of the third declension which increase short in the genitive; as, *hospēs*, *limēs*, *hēbēs*; gen. *hospītis*, etc.

(b.) But it is long in *ābiēs*, *āriēs*, *pāriēs*, *Ōrēs* and *pēs*, with its compounds *cornipēs*, *sōnipēs*, etc.

(c.) *Es*, in the present tense of *sum* and its compounds, and in the preposition *pēnēs*, is short.

(d.) *Es* is short in Greek neuters in *es*; as, *cācōēthēs*, and in Greek nominatives and vocatives plural from nouns of the third declension, which increase in the genitive; as, *Arcādēs*, *Trōēs*, *Amazōnēs*; from *Arcas*, *Arcādīs*, etc.

Exc. 3. OS. (a.) *Os* is short in *compōs*, *impōs*, and *ōs* (*ossis*), with its compound *exōs*

(b.) *Os* is short in Greek nouns and cases written in the original with *omē cron*; as (1) in all neuters; as, *chabō, ēpōs, Argōs*; (2) in all nouns of the second declension; as, *Ilīds, Tŷrōs, Dēlōs*; except those whose genitive is in *ō*, (Greek *ω*); as, *Athōs*, gen. *Althō*; (3) in genitives singular of the third declension; as, *Pallādōs, Tēthgōs*, from *Pallās* and *Tēthgā*.

### IS, US, and YS, final.

§ 301. Final syllables in *is*, *us*, and *ys*, are short; as,

*turris, millis, mitis, amātis, amābis, mēgis*; *pectus, bonus, ejūs, amāmus, rursus, lēnus*; *Cāpys, Itys*. Thus,

Non aptis inde tālīt collectos sēdūla flōres. *Ovid. M. 13, 928.*

Serius aut citius sēdem prōpētāmis ad ānam. *Id. M. 10, 38.*

At Cāpys, et quōrum mēllor sententia menti. *Virg. A. 2, 36.*

Exc. 1. IS. (a.) *Is* is long in plural cases; as,

*mīsis, nobis*; *omnis, urbis*, (for *omnēs, urbēs*); *quis*, (for *quīs* or *quibus*). So also in the adverbs *grātis, ingrātis*, and *fōris*, which are in reality datives or ablatives plural.

Et liquidī sīmūl ignis; ut hīs exordia p̄mīs. *Virg. A. 6, 83.*

Quis ante ōra patrum Trōjæ sub mœnibus altis. *Id. A. 1, 96.*

Non omnis arbusta jūvant, hūmilesque mŷricæ. *Id. E. 4, 2.*

Adde tōt ēgrēgias ur̄bis, ōpērumque lābōrem. *Id. G. 2, 156.*

(b.) *Is* is long in the nominative of nouns whose genitive ends in *itis, ius, or entis*; as, *Sannīs, Sālāmīs, Simois*.

(c.) *Is* is long in the second person singular of the present indicative active of the fourth conjugation; as,

*audis, nescis*. So also in the second persons, *fis, is, sis, vis, vellis*, and their compounds; as, *adsis, possis, quamois, māis, nōis*, etc. Cf. § 299, 1, Exc. 3.

(d.) *Ris*, in the future perfect and perfect subjunctive, is common; as, *videris*.

Exc. 2. US. (a.) *Us* is long in nouns of the third declension which increase long, and in the genitive singular, and the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural of the fourth declension, (§ 89, Rem., and § 283, III.); as,

*tellūs, virtūs, incūs*;—*fructūs*. But *pālūs*, with the *us* short, occurs in Horace, *Art. Poet. 65*.

(b.) *Us* is long in Greek nouns written in the original with the diphthong *ous* (whether in the nominative or genitive; as, nom. *Amāthūs, Opūs, (Ei)āpūs, tripūs, Panthūs*; gen. *Didūs, Sapphūs*. But compounds of *pus* (*πους*), when of the second declension, have *us* short; as, *pōtēpūs*.

NOTE. The last syllable of every verse, (except the anapæstic and the Ionic a *minōre*), may be either long or short at the option of the poet.

REMARK. By this is meant, that, although the measure require a long syllable, a short one may be used in its stead; and a long syllable may be used where a short one is required; as in the following verses, where the short syllable *ma* stands instead of a long one, and the long syllable *cu* instead of a short one:—

Sanguineāque mānu crēpitantia concūtīt armā. *Ovid. M. 1, 148.*

Non eget Mauri jaculis, nec arcu. *Hor. Od. 1, 22, 2.*

## VERSIFICATION.

## FEET.

§ 302. A foot is a combination of two or more syllables of a certain quantity.

Feet are either simple or compound. Simple feet consist of two or three syllables; compound feet of four.

## I. SIMPLE FEET.

## 1. Of two Syllables.

<i>Spondee</i> ,.....	two long, — —; as,.....	<i>fandant</i>
<i>Pyrrhic</i> ,.....	two short, — —; as,.....	<i>Dés.</i>
<i>Trochee</i> , or <i>choree</i> ,.....	a long and a short, — —; as,.....	<i>armé.</i>
<i>Iambus</i> ,.....	a short and a long, — —; as,.....	<i>éram.</i>

## 2. Of three Syllables.

<i>Dactyl</i> ,.....	a long and two short, — — —; as,.....	<i>corpore.</i>
<i>Anapæst</i> ,.....	two short and a long, — — —; as,.....	<i>démi.</i>
<i>Tribrach</i> ,.....	three short, — — —; as,.....	<i>facté.</i>
<i>Molossus</i> ,.....	three long, — — —; as,.....	<i>contendant.</i>
<i>Amphibrach</i> ,.....	a short, a long, and a short, — — —; as,.....	<i>amé.</i>
<i>Amphimæcrus</i> , or <i>Cretic</i> ,.....	a long, a short, and a long, — — —; as,.....	<i>câstité.</i>
<i>Bacchius</i> ,.....	a short and two long, — — —; as,.....	<i>Câtoné.</i>
<i>Antibacchius</i> ,.....	two long and a short, — — —; as,.....	<i>Rômandé.</i>

## II. COMPOUND FEET.

<i>Dispondee</i> ,.....	a double spondee, — — — —; as,.....	<i>confirerant.</i>
<i>Proceleusmatic</i> ,.....	a double Pyrrhic, — — — —; as,.....	<i>hômânité.</i>
<i>Ditrochee</i> ,.....	a double trochee, — — — —; as,.....	<i>comprôbavit.</i>
<i>Diambus</i> ,.....	a double iambus, — — — —; as,.....	<i>amâverant.</i>
<i>Greater Ionic</i> ,.....	a spondee and a Pyrrhic, — — — —; as,.....	<i>corrèzimé.</i>
<i>Smaller Ionic</i> ,.....	a Pyrrhic and a spondee, — — — —; as,.....	<i>prôpérâbant.</i>
<i>Choriambus</i> ,.....	a choree and an iambus, — — — —; as,.....	<i>terrificant.</i>
<i>Antispast</i> ,.....	a spondee and a choree, — — — —; as,.....	<i>adhæssit.</i>
<i>First epitrit</i> ,.....	a iambus and a spondee, — — — —; as,.....	<i>amâverant.</i>
<i>Second epitrit</i> ,.....	a trochee and a spondee, — — — —; as,.....	<i>conditôres.</i>
<i>Third epitrit</i> ,.....	a spondee and an iambus, — — — —; as,.....	<i>discordâs.</i>
<i>Fourth epitrit</i> ,.....	a spondee and a trochee, — — — —; as,.....	<i>aldûxistis.</i>
<i>First pæon</i> ,.....	a trochee and a Pyrrhic, — — — —; as,.....	<i>temporibûs.</i>
<i>Second pæon</i> ,.....	a iambus and a Pyrrhic, — — — —; as,.....	<i>potentiâ.</i>
<i>Third pæon</i> ,.....	a Pyrrhic and a trochee, — — — —; as,.....	<i>animâtis.</i>
<i>Fourth pæon</i> ,.....	a Pyrrhic and an iambus, — — — —; as,.....	<i>céléritâs.</i>

REMARK. Those feet are called *isocarous*, which consist of equal times as the spondee, the dactyl, the anapæst, and the proceleusmatic, one long time being considered equal to two short.

## METRE.

§ 303. 1. *Metre* is an arrangement of syllables and feet according to certain rules.

2. In this general sense, it comprehends either an entire verse, a part of a verse, or any number of verses.

3. Metre is divided into *dactylic*, *anapæstic*, *iambic*, *trochaic*, *choriambic*, and *Ionic*. These names are derived from the original or fundamental foot employed in each.

4. A *metre* or *measure*, in a specific sense is either a single foot, or a combination of two feet. In the dactylic, choriambic, and Ionic metres, a measure consists of one foot; in the other metres, of two feet. Two feet constituting a measure are sometimes called a *syzygy*.

## VERSES.

§ 304. A *verse* is a certain number of feet, arranged in a regular order, and constituting a line of poetry.

1. Two verses are called a *distich*; a half verse, a *hemistich*.

2. Verses are of different kinds, denominated sometimes, like the different species of metre, from the foot which chiefly predominates in them; as, *dactylic*, *iambic*, etc.;—sometimes from the number of feet or metres which they contain; as, *sênârius*, consisting of six feet; *octônârius*, of eight feet; *mônômêter*, consisting of one measure; *dimêter*, of two; *trimêter*, *tetramêter*, *pentamêter*, *hexamêter*;—sometimes from a celebrated author who used a particular species; as, *Sapphic*, *Anacreontic*, *Alcaic*, *Asclepiadic*, *Glyconic*, *Phalæcian*, *Sotadic*, *Archilochian*, *Alcmanian*, *Pherecratic*, *Aristophanic*, etc., from *Sappho*, *Anacreon*, *Alcæus*, *Asclepiâdes*, *Glycon*, *Phalæcus*, *Sotâdes*, *Archilôchus*, *Alcman*, *Pherecrâtes*, *Aristophânes*, etc.—and sometimes from the particular uses to which they were applied; as, the *prosodiac*, from its use in solemn processions, the *paræmiac*, from its frequent use in proverbs.

3. A verse, with respect to the metres which it contains, may be complete, deficient, or redundant.

(1.) A verse which is complete is called *acatalectic*.

(2.) A verse which is deficient, if it wants one syllable at the end, is called *catalectic*; if it wants a whole foot or half a metre, it is called *brachycatalectic*.

(3.) A verse which wants a syllable at the beginning, is called *acephalous*.

(4.) A verse which has a redundant syllable or foot, is called *hypercatalectic* or *hypermêter*.

4. Hence, the complete name of every verse consists of three terms—the first referring to the *species*, the second to the *number of feet*, and the third to the *ending*; as, the *dactylic trimêter catalectic*.



5. A verse or portion of a verse of any kind (measured from the beginning) which contains three half feet, or a foot and a half, is called a *trihēmimēris*; if it contains five half feet, or two feet and a half, it is called a *penthēmimēris*; if seven half feet, or three feet and a half, a *hepthēmimēris*; if nine half feet, or four feet and a half, an *ennehēmimēris*. A portion of a verse consisting of one whole metre and a half, is called a *hēmidius*, as being the half of a *trimeter*.

NOTE. The respective situation of each foot in a verse is called its *place*.

6. SCANNING is the dividing of a verse into the feet of which it is composed.

REMARK. In order to scan correctly, it is necessary to know the quantity of each syllable, and also to understand the following poetic usages, which are sometimes called

## FIGURES OF PROSODY.

### SYNALCEPHA.

§ 305. 1. *Synalcepha* is the elision of a final vowel or diphthong in scanning, when the following word begins with a vowel.

Thus, *terra antiqua* is read *terr' antiqua*; *Dardānides infensi*, *Dardānid' infensi*; *vento huc*, *vent' huc*. So,

*Quidve mōror? si omnes uno ordine hābētis Achivos.* Virg. A. 2, 102.

Which is scanned thus—

*Quidve mōror? s' omnes ūn' ordin' hābētis Achivos.*

(1.) The interjections *O*, *heu*, *ah*, *proh*, *væ*, *vah*, are not elided; as,

*O et de Lātīā O et de gente Sābinā.* Ovid. M. 14, 882.

REMARK. But *O*, though not elided, is sometimes made short; as,

*Te Cōrjdon O Alexi; trāhit sua quemque vōluptas.* Virg. E. 2, 65.

(2.) Other long vowels and diphthongs sometimes remain unelided, in which case, when in the thesis of a foot, they are commonly made short; as,

*Victor apud rāpidum Sīmōēnta sūb Iliō alto.* Virg. A. 5, 261.

*Anni tempore eo quī Etēsīæ esse fērentur.* Lucr. 6, 717.

*Ter sunt cōnātī impōnēre Pēliō Ossam.* Virg. G. 1, 281.

*Glaucō et Pāndpēa, et Inō Mēlicertæ.* Id. G. 1, 436.

(3.) Rarely a short vowel, also, remains without elision; as,

*Et vērā incesu pātuit dē.* Ille ūbi mātrem.... Virg. A. 1, 405.

(4.) *Synalcepha* in a monosyllable occasionally occurs; as,

*Si ad vitūlam spectas, nihil est, quod pocūla laudes.* Virg. E. 3, 48.

For *synalcepha* at the end of a line, see *Synapheia*, § 307, 3.

### ECTHLIPSIS.

2. *Ecthlipsis* is the elision of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, when the following word begins with a vowel. Thus,

*O cōras hōminum, O quantam est in rēbus ināne!* Pers. 1. 1.

Which is thus scanned—

O cūras hōmin' O quant' est in rēbus ināne.

*Monstrum horrendum, informe, ingens, cui lūmen ādemptum.* Virg. A. 8, 368.

(1.) This elision was sometimes omitted by the early poets; as,

*Corporū officium est qu' niam prēmere omnia deorsum.* Lucr. 1, 363.

See § 299, 2.

(2.) Final *s*, also, with the preceding vowel, is sometimes elided by the early poets before a vowel, and sometimes *s* alone before a consonant; as, *content' atque* (Enn.), for *contentus atque*; *omnibu' rēbus.* (Lucr.) So,

*Tam lātrali' dōlor, certissimu' nunciu' mortis.* Lucil.

REMARK. This elision took place principally in short syllables.

For ecthlipsis at the end of a line, see *Synapheia*, § 307, 2.

### SYNÆRESIS.

§ 306. 1. *Synæresis* is the contraction into one syllable of two vowels which are usually pronounced separately. Thus,

*Aurēā percussam virgā, verumque vēnēnis.* Virg. A. 7, 190.

*Eosdem hābuit sēcum, quibus est slāta, capillos.* Prop. 4, 7, 7.

*Tit're, pascentes a flūmine vice capellas.* Virg. E. 3, 93.

REMARK 1. So *Phaethon* is pronounced *Phæthon*; *alveo*, *alvo*; *Orpheu*, *Orpha*; *deorsum*, *dorsum*.

(1.) Synæresis is frequent in *īdē*, *īdem*, *īsedem*, *dūi*, *dūis*, *dein*, *deinceps*, *deinde*, *deest*, *deerat*, *deero*, *deitū*, *deesse*; as,

*Præcipitātur āquis, et āquis nox surgit ab īdem.* Ovid. M. 4, 92.

*Sint Mæcēnātes; non decrunt,* Flacce, Mārōnes. Mart. 8, 56, 5.

REM. 2. *Ōis* and *hūic* are usually monosyllables.

(2.) When two vowels in compound words are read as one syllable, the former may rather be considered as elided than as united with the latter; as, *ā* in *antecambūlo*, *antetre*, *antiēhac*, *dehinc*, *meherculē*, etc., and *a* in *contraire*.

(3.) The syllable formed by the union of *i* or *u* followed by another vowel retains the quantity of the latter vowel, whether long or short; as, *ābiēte*, *āritte*, *ābiēgnæ*, *pāriētibus*, *consiliūm*, *fortuitus*, *Nāsidyēnus*, *vindemiātor*, *omniā*; *gēnuū*, *tēnuis*, *pituū*, *fluviorum*, etc. In such examples, the *i* and *u* are pronounced like initial *y* and *w*; as, *ābyēte*, *pāryētibus*, *consilyum*, *fortwoitus*, *Nāsidyēnus*, *mn-yd*, *temois*, *pitwoia*, etc.; and, like consonants, they have, with another consonant, the power of lengthening a preceding short vowel, as in the above examples.

NOTE. In Statius, the word *tēnuire* occurs as a trisyllable, in which the three vowels, *uiō*, are united in pronunciation; thus, *tēn-uiō-re*.

(4.) Sometimes, after a synalcepha or ecthlipsis, two vowels suffer synæresis; as, *stellio et*, pronounced *stell-yet*: *consilium et*,—*consil-yet*.

(5.) If only one of the vowels is written, the contraction is called *crasis*; as *di*, *consti*, for *dūi*, *constiū*.

### DIÆRESIS.

2. *Diæresis* is the division of one syllable into two; as,

*aulā*, *Trōia*, *silva*, *sūdent*; for *aule*, *Troia* or *Troja*, *silva*, *sūdent*. So *suesco* for *suesco*; *relūquās* for *relūquās*; *ecquīs* for *ecquīs*; *milūis* for *milūis*, etc.

as

*Æthereum sensum, atque auris simplicis ignem. Virg. A. 6, 747*  
*Atque alios illi irrident, Veneremque sudent. Lucr. 4, 1153.*  
*Grammatici certant; et adhuc sub iudice lis est. Hor. A. P. 78.*  
*Aururum et silvæ mœtu. Id. O. 1, 23, 4.*

(1.) So in Greek words originally written with a diphthong (*u* or *η*); as, *ἐλέγητα* for *ἐλέγτα*, *Βακχῆτα* for *Βακχῆα*, *Ῥηαίητας* for *Ῥηαίητας*, *Πλάηδα* for *Πλάηδα*; and also in words of Latin origin; as, *Veius* for *Veius*, *Aquilēda* for *Aquilēda*.

REMARK. This figure is sometimes called *diatēsis*.

## SYSTOLE.

§ 307. 1. *Systole* is the shortening of a syllable which is long by nature or by position; as,

*vidē'n* for *videsne*, in which *e* is naturally long; *adū'n* for *adtime*, in which *t* is long by position;—*hōdie* for *hōc die*; *multimōdis* for *multis modis*. So,

*Ducere multimōdis voces, et flectere cantus. Lucr. 5, 1406.*

(1.) By the omission of *j* after *ab*, *ad*, *ob*, *sub*, and *re*, in compound words, those prepositions retain their naturally short quantity, which would otherwise be made long by position; as, *abici*, *adici*, *obici*, etc. Thus,

*Si quid nostra tuis adici vexatio rebus. Mart. 10, 82, 1.*

REMARK. In some compounds the short quantity of *ad* and *ob* is preserved before a consonant by the elision of the *d* or *b* of the preposition, as in *aprio*, *omitto*, etc.

(2.) The penult of the third person plural of certain perfects is said by some to be shortened by systole; as, *stiterunt*, *talērunt*, etc.; but others ascribe these irregularities to the errors of transcribers, or the carelessness of writers.

## DIASTOLE.

2. *Diastole* is the lengthening of a syllable which is naturally short.

(1.) It occurs most frequently in proper names and in compounds of *re*; as, *Pyramides*, *religio*, etc. Thus,

*Hanc tibi Pyramides mitto, Ledaem, salūtem. Ovid. H. 16, 1.*

*Religione patrum multos servata per annos. Virg. A. 2, 715.*

(2.) Some editors double the consonant after the lengthened *re*; as, *religio*

(3.) Diastole is sometimes called *ectasis*.

## SYNAPHEIA.

3. *Synapheia* is such a connection of two consecutive verses, that the first syllable of the latter verse has an influence on the final syllable of that which precedes, either by position, synalœpha, or ecthipsis. See §§ 283 and 305.

(1.) This figure is most frequent in anapæstic verse, and in the *Ionic a minore*.

The following lines will illustrate its effect:—

*Præceps silvas montesque fugit*  
*Citus Actæon. Sen.*

Here the *i* in the final syllable of *fugit*, which is naturally short, is made long by position before the following consonants, *tc*.

Omnia Mercūrio similis, vōcemque cōlōremque  
 Et crines flavos.... Virg. A. 4, 568.  
 Dissidens plēbi nūmēro beatōrum  
 Eximit virtus. Hor. O. 2. 2. 18.

In the former of these examples, synapheia and synalœpha are combined, *que* being elided before *et* in the following line; in the latter there is a similar combination of synapheia and ecthlipsis.

(2.) By synapheia, the parts of a compound word are sometimes divided between two verses; as,

.... si non offendēret ānam-  
 Quemque postārum limæ labor et mōra... Hor. A. P. 290

(3.) In hexameter verse a redundant syllable at the end of a line elided before a vowel at the beginning of the next line, by causing the accent to fall on the second syllable of the concluding spondee, and connecting the two verses by synapheia, excites the expectation of something which is to follow, and often tends to magnify the object; as,

Quōs sup̄er- | -ātrā si- | -lēx, jān- | -jām lāp- | -sūrā cō- | -dēnti- | -que  
 Imminet assimilis. Virg. A. 6, 602.

REMARK. The poets often make use of other figures, also, which, however, are not peculiar to them. Such are *prosthesis*, *aphæresis*, *syncope*, *epenthesis*, *apocope*, *paragoge*, *tnesis*, *antithesis*, and *metathesis*. See § 322.

## ARSIS AND THESIS.

§ 308. (1.) *Rhythm* is the alternate elevating and depressing of the voice at regular intervals in pronouncing the syllables of verse.

(2.) The elevation of the voice is called *arsis*, its depression *thesis*. These terms designate, also, the parts of a foot on which the elevation or depression falls.

1. The natural arsis is on the long syllable of a foot; and hence, in a foot composed wholly of long, or wholly of short syllables, when considered in itself, the place of the arsis is undetermined; but when such foot is substituted for the fundamental foot of a metre, its arsis is determined by that of the latter.

REMARK. Hence, a spondee, in trochaic or dactylic metre, has the arsis on the first syllable; but in iambic or anapæstic metre, it has it on the last.

2. The arsis is either equal in duration to the thesis, or twice as long.

Thus, in the dactyl, — — —, and anapæst, — — —, it is equal; in the trochee, — —, and iambus, — —, it is twice as long. This difference in the proportionate duration of the arsis and thesis constitutes the difference of rhythm. A foot is said to have the *descending* rhythm, when its arsis is at the beginning, and the *ascending*, when the thesis is at the beginning.

3. The stress of voice which falls upon the arsis of a foot, is called the *ictus*. When a long syllable in the arsis of a foot is resolved into two short ones, the ictus falls upon the former.

NOTE 1. Some suppose that the terms *arsis* and *thesis*, as used by the ancients, denoted respectively the rising and falling of the hand in beating time, and that the place of the thesis was the syllable which received the ictus.

**NOTE 2.** As the ancient pronunciation of Latin is not now understood, writers differ in regard to the mode of reading verse. According to some, the accent of each word should always be preserved; while others direct that the stress of voice should be laid on the arsis of the foot, and that no regard should be paid to the accent.

It is generally supposed that the final letters elided by synalæpha and æth-lipsis, though omitted in scanning, were pronounced in reading verse.

## CÆSURA.

§ 309. *Cæsura* is the separation, by the ending of a word, of syllables rhythmically or metrically connected.

*Cæsura* is of three kinds:—1, of the *foot*; 2, of the *rhythm*; and 3, of the *verse*.

1. *Cæsura* of the foot occurs when a word ends before a foot is completed; as,

*Silves* | -*tram tenu*- | -*i Mu*- | -*eam medi*- | -*târis a*- | -*vênâ*. *Verg. E. 1, 2.*

2. *Cæsura* of the rhythm is the separation of the arsis from the thesis by the ending of a word, as in the second, third, and fourth feet of the preceding verse.

**REM 1.** It hence appears that the *cæsura* of the rhythm is always a *cæsura* of the foot, as e. g. in the 2d, 3d, and 4th feet of the preceding verse; but, on the contrary, that the *cæsura* of the foot is not always a *cæsura* of the rhythm, as e. g. in the fifth foot of the same verse.

(1.) *Cæsura* of the rhythm allows a final syllable naturally short, to stand in the arsis of the foot instead of a long one, it being lengthened by the *ictus*; as,

*Pæctôri*- | -*bus Inhi*- | -*âns spi*- | -*rântiâ* | -*cônâlli* | -*âxta*. *Verg. A. 4, 64.*

This occurs chiefly in hexameter verse.

**REM 2.** *Cæsura* of the foot and of the verse do not of themselves lengthen a short syllable, but they often coincide with that of the rhythm.

3. *Cæsura* of the verse is such a division of a line into two parts, as affords to the voice a convenient pause or rest, without injury to the sense or harmony.

**REM 3.** The *cæsura* of the verse is often called the *cæsural pause*. In several kinds of verse, its place is fixed; in others, it may fall in more than one place, and the choice is left to the poet. Of the former kind is the pentameter of the latter the hexameter.

The proper place of the *cæsural pause* will be treated of, so far as shall be necessary under each species of verse.

**REM 4.** The effect of the *cæsura* is to connect the different words harmoniously together, and thus to give smoothness, grace, and sweetness, to the verse.

## DIFFERENT KINDS OF METRE.

### DACTYLIC METRE.

§ 310. I. A *hexameter* or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyl, the sixth a spondee, and each of the other four either a dactyl or a spondee; as,

At tūba | tērritī- | lēm sōnī- | tūm prēcūl | ærē cā- | -nōrē. *Virg. A. 9, 508.*  
 Intōn- | -et cri- | -nēs lōn- | gā cēr- | -vīcō flū- | ēbānt. *Tibull. 3, 4, 27.*  
 Lātērē | quē vōl- | -lēm cālā- | -mō pēr- | -misit ā- | -grēstī. *Virg. E. 1, 10.*

1. The fifth foot is sometimes a spondee, and the verse in such case is called *spondaic*; as,

Cārē dē- | -im sōbē- | -lēs māg- | -nūm Jōvis | Inerē- | -mētūm. *Virg. E. 4, 49.*

REMARK 1. In such verses, the fourth foot is commonly a dactyl, and the fifth should not close with the end of a word. Spondaic lines are thought to be especially adapted to the expression of grave and solemn subjects.

2. A light and rapid movement is produced by the frequent recurrence of dactyls; a slow and heavy one by that of spondees; as,

Quādrupē- | -dantē pū- | -trēm sōnī- | -tā quātīt | ūngulā | cāmpum. *Virg. A. 8, 598.*  
 Illī in- | -tēr sē- | -sē māg- | -nā vī | brāchiā | tēllunt. *Id. A. 8, 452.*

REM. 2. Variety in the use of dactyls and spondees in successive lines, has an agreeable effect. Hexameter verse commonly ends in a word of two or three syllables, and a monosyllable at the end of a line is generally ungraceful, but sometimes produces a good effect; as,

Stērnitūr, | ēxānī- | -mīquē, trē- | -mēns prō- | -cūmbit hū- | -mī bōs. *Virg. A. 5, 481.*  
 Pārtūrī- | -ūt mōn- | -tēs nās- | -cētūr rīdiōū- | -lās mūs. *Hor. A. P. 139.*

3. The beauty and harmony of hexameter verse depend much on due attention to the *cæsura*. (See § 309.) A line in which it is neglected is destitute of poetic beauty, and can hardly be distinguished from prose; as,

Rōmāē | mōnīā | tērrūt | Impīgēr | Hānnibāl | āruis. *Enn.*

4. The cæsural pause most approved in heroic poetry is that which occurs after the *penhemimēris*, i. e. after the arsis in the third foot. This is particularly distinguished as the *heroic cæsura*. Thus,

Āt dōmūs | intēri- | -ōr || rē- | -gālī | splēndidā | lūxū. *Virg. A. 1, 687.*

5. Instead of the preceding, a cæsura in the thesis of the third foot, or after the arsis of the fourth, was also approved as heroic; as,

Infān- | -dūm rē- | -gīnā || jū- | -bēs rēnō- | -vārē dō- | -lōrem. *Virg. A. 2, 3.*  
 Indē tē- | -rō pātēr | -Ænē- | -ās || sic | ōrēs āb | -altō. *Id. A. 2, 2.*

REM. 3. When the cæsural pause occurs, as in the latter example, after the *hephthemimēris*, i. e. after the arsis of the fourth foot, another but slighter one is often found in the second foot; as,

Primā tē- | -nēt, || plāū- | -sūquē vō- | -lāt || frēmī- | -tūquē sē- | -cūndo. *Virg. A. 5, 398.*

6. The cæsura after the third foot, dividing the verse into exactly equal parts, was least approved; as,

Cui nōn | dictūs Hī- | -lās pūr || ēt Lā- | -tōnīā | Dēlos. *Virg. 3, 2, 6.*

REM. 4. The cæsural pause between the fourth and fifth feet was considered as peculiarly adapted to pastoral poetry, particularly when the fourth foot was a dactyl, and was hence termed the *bucolic cæsura*; as,

Stānt vitū- | -lī ēt tēnē- | -ris mū- | -gtitibūs || āērā | cōmplēt. *Nemes.*

NOTE 1. The cæsura after the arsis is sometimes called the *masculine* or *syllabic cæsura*; that in the thesis, the *feminine* or *trochaic*. as a trochee immediately precedes. When a cæsura occurs in the fifth foot it is usually the trochaic cæsura, unless the foot is a spondee; as,

Frāxinūs | in sil- | -vis pūl- | -chērrimā, | pinūs in | hōrtis. *Virg. E. 7, 65.*

(a.) It is to be remarked that two successive trochaic cæsuras in the second and third feet are, in general, to be avoided, but they are sometimes employed to express irregular or impetuous motion; as,

Una Eu- | -rāsque Nō- | -tāsque rā- | -ant orē- | -bōrque prō- | -cēllis. *Virg.* A. 1. 85.

(b.) Successive trochaic cæsuras are, in like manner, to be avoided in the *third* and *fourth* feet, but are approved in the *first* and *second*, in the *fourth* and *fifth*, and in the *first*, *third* and *fifth*. See *Virg.* A. 6, 651: 1, 94: and 6, 522.

NOTE 2. In the principal cæsura of the verse poets frequently introduce a pause in the sense, which must be attended to in order to determine the place of the cæsural pause. For in the common place for the cæsura in the third foot there is often a cæsura of the foot; while, in the fourth foot, a still more marked division occurs. In this case, the latter is to be considered as the principal cæsura, and distinguished accordingly; as,

Belli | ferrā- | -tōs pō- | -tes, | pō- | -tāsque rō- | -frēgit. *Hor.* S. 1, 4, 61.

II. The *Priapēan* is usually accounted a species of hexameter. It is so constructed as to be divisible into two portions of three feet each, having generally a trochee in the first and fourth place, but often a spondee and rarely a dactyl; in the second, usually a dactyl; and an amphimacer and more rarely a dactyl in the third; as,

Ō cō- | -lōnīā | quæ cūpis | pōntē | lūdērē | lōngō. *Catull.* 17, 1.

It is, however, more properly considered as choriambic metre, consisting of alternate Glyconics and Pherecratics. See § 316, IV. V. Thus,

Ō cō- | -lōnīā, quæ | cūpis  
Pōntē | lūdērē lōn- | -go.

NOTE. A regular hexameter verse is termed *Priapēan*, when it is so constructed as to be divisible into two portions of three feet each; as,

Tērtiā | pārs pā- | -tri datā | pārs datā | tērtiā | mātri. *Catull.* 62, 64

See above, 6.

### § 311. III. A *pentameter* verse consists of five feet.

REMARK 1. It is generally, however, divided, in scanning, into two hemistichs, the first consisting of two feet, either dactyls or spondees, followed by a long syllable; the last, of two dactyls, also followed by a long syllable; as,

Nātū- | -rē sequi- | -tūr || sēmīnā | quēque sū- | -m. *Prop.* 3, 7, 20.  
Cārminī- | -būs vī- | -vēs || tēmpūs in | omnē mē- | -is. *Ovid.*

1. According to the more ancient and correct mode of scanning pentameter verse, it consists of five feet, of which the first and second may each be a dactyl or a spondee; the third is always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth are anapæsts; as,

Nātū- | -rē sequi- | -tūr || sēm- | -inā quē- | -que sūm.  
Cārminī- | -būs vī- | -vēs || tēm- | -pūs in om- | -nē mēis.

2. The cæsura, in pentameter verse, always occurs after the penthemimeris, i. e. at the close of the first hemistich. It very rarely lengthens a short syllable.

3. The pentameter rarely ends with a word of three syllables. In *Ovid*, it usually ends with a dissyllable.

REM. 2. This species of verse is seldom used, except in connection with hexameter, a line of each recurring alternately. This combination is called *legiac* verse. Thus,

Flēbilis Indignōs, Mēgēnā, solvō cāpillōs.

Ah nimis ex vēro nūc tibi nōmēn erit! *Ovid.* Am. 3, 9, 2.

§ 312. IV. The *tetrameter a priore*, or *Alcmanian dactylic tetrameter*, consists of the first four feet of a hexameter, of which the fourth is always a dactyl; as,

Gärrülä | për rä- | -mäe, ävis | öbätröpît. *Sen. Oed.* 454.

V. The *tetrameter a posteriore*, or *spondaic tetrameter*, consists of the last four feet of a hexameter; as,

Ïbimäs, | Ö söel- | -i, ööml- | -täsque. *Hor. Od.* 1, 7, 26.

REMARK. The penultimate foot in this, as in hexameter verse, may be a spondee, but in this case the preceding foot should be a dactyl; as,

Mänsö- | -räm ööhl | -bënt Ar- | -chýtä. *Hor. Od.* 1, 28, 2.

VI. The *dactylic trimeter* consists of the last three feet of a hexameter; as,

Grätö | Pÿrrhä süb | äntro. *Hor. Od.* 1, 5, 8.

REMARK. But this kind of verse is more properly included in choriambic metre. See § 316, V.

VII. The *trimeter catalectic Archilochian* consists of the first five half feet of a hexameter, but the first and second feet are commonly dactyls; as,

Pälvis ät | ämbrä sä- | -mus. *Hor. Od.* 4, 7, 16.

VIII. The *dactylic dimeter*, or *Adonic*, consists of two feet, a dactyl and a spondee; as,

Riist Ä- | -pöllo. *Hor. Od.* 1, 10, 12.

IX. The *Æolic pentameter* consists of four dactyls preceded by a spondee, a trochee, or an iambus. Thus

— — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — —

X. The *Phalæcian pentameter* consists of a dactylic penthimimeris and a dactylic dimeter; as,

Visö- | -bät göll- | -däe | äldérä | brüms. *Boëthius.*

REMARK. A trochee is sometimes found in the first place and an iambus in the first and second places.

XI. The *Tetrameter Meiurus*, or *Faliscan* consists of the last four feet of a hexameter, except that the last foot is an iambus instead of a spondee; as,

Ut növä | frögé grä- | -vis Cérés | äat. *Boëthius.*

XII. The *Tetrameter Catalectic* consists of the tetrameter a priore wanting the latter half of the concluding dactyl; as,

Ömne höml- | -näm gönds | In tär- | -ris. *Boëthius.*

#### ANAPÆSTIC METRE.

§ 313. I. The *anapæstic monomæter* consists of two anapæsts; as,

Ulälä- | -ö öänds. *Sen.*



II. The *anapæstic dimeter* consists of two measures, or four anapæsts; as,

Phædræ- | -quæ grævæ | dātē aæ- | -vā fērō.... Sen.

REMARK 1. The first foot in each measure of anapæstic metre was very often changed to a dactyl or a spondee, and the second foot often to a spondee, and, in a few instances, to a dactyl.

REM. 2. Anapæstic verses are generally so constructed that each measure ends with a word, so that they may be written and read in lines of one, two, or more measures.

## IAMBIC METRE.

§ 314. I. 1. The *iambic trimeter*, or *senarius*, consists of three iambic measures, or six iambic feet; as,

Phæd- | -lūs II- | -lē, I quēm | vīdē- | -tīs hōe- | -pītēs.... Catull. 4. 1.

2. The cæsura commonly occurs in the third but sometimes in the fourth foot.

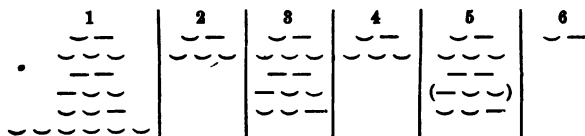
3. The pure iambic measure was seldom used by the Latin poets, but to vary the rhythm spondees were introduced into the first, third, and fifth places. In every foot, also, except the last, which was always an iambus, a long syllable was often changed into two short ones, so that an anapæst or a dactyl was used for a spondee, and a tribrach for an iambus, but the use of the dactyl in the fifth place was very rare; as,

Quō, quō | scēlēs- | -tī rūi- | -tīs? sūt | cūr dēx- | -tēris.... Hor. Epod. 7. 1.

Alitī- | -būs āt- | -quē cāni- | -būs hōmī- | -cīdam Hēc- | -tōrēm.... Id. Epod. 17, 12.

4. Sometimes, also, a proceleusmatic, or double pyrrhic, was used in the first place for a spondee. The writers of comedy, satire, and fable, admitted the spondee and its equivalents (the dactyl and anapæst) into the second and fourth places, as well as the first, third, and fifth.

5. The following, therefore, is the scale of the Iambic Trimeter:—



6. In the construction of the Iambic Trimeter an accent should fall on the second syllable of either the third foot or both the second and fourth feet; as,

Ibis | Libūr- | -nis īn- | tēr āl- | -tā nā- | -vīum |.

Utrūm- | -nē fūe- | -si pēr- | -sēquē? | -mūr ē- | -tium. |

II. The *scazon*, or *choliambus* (lame iambic), is the iambic trimeter, with a spondee in the sixth foot, and generally an iambus in the fifth; as,

Cūr īn | thēā- | -trūm, Cātō | sēvē- | -rē, vē- | -nistī?

An Idē- | -ō tām- | -tūm vēm- | -ērās, | ūt ēx- | -irēs? Mart. Ep. 1, 1, 8.

This species of verse is also called *Hipponactic* trimeter, from its inventor Hippônax.

III. The *iambic tetrameter* or *quadrātus*, called also from the number of its feet *octonarius*, a measure used by the comic poetz, consists of four iambic measures, subject to the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I.); as,

Nūc hīc | diēs | aliām | vitam ōf- | -fērt, ali- | -ōs mō- | -rēs pō- | -tūlat. Ter. A. 1, 2, 18.

REMARK. The cæsura regularly follows the second measure.

IV. The *iambic tetrameter catalectic* or *Hipponactic*, is the iambic tetrameter, wanting the last syllable, and having always an iambus in the seventh place, but admitting in the other places the same variations as the trimeter and tetrameter; as,

Dēprēn- | -ā nā- | -vis in | mārī, | vēsā- | -niēn- | -tē vēr- | -to. Catull. 25, 18.

V. The *iambic trimeter catalectic* or *Archilochian*, is the iambic trimeter (I.), wanting the final syllable. Like the common iambic trimeter, it admits a spondee into the first and third places, but not into the fifth; as,

Vocā- | -tūs āt- | -quē nōn | vocā- | -tūs āt- | -dit. Hor. Od. 2, 18, 40.

Trāhūt- | -quē sic- | -cās mäch- | -inē | cārī- | -nas. Id. Od. 1, 4, 2.

VI. The *iambic dimeter* consists of two iambic measures, with the same variations as the iambic trimeter (I.); as,

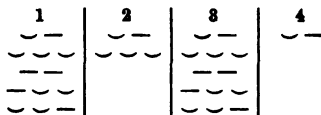
Fōrtī | sēquē- | -mūr pē- | -tōre. Hor. Epod. 1, 14.

Cāndī- | -ā trāc- | -tāvīt | dāpēs. Id. Epod. 3, 8.

Vidē- | -rē prōpē- | -rāntēs | dōmum. Id. Epod. 3, 62.

REMARK. The iambic dimeter is also called the *Archilochian dimeter*.

The following is its scale:—



VII. The *iambic dimeter hypermeter*, called also *Archilochian*, is the iambic dimeter, with an additional syllable at the end; as,

Rēdē- | -gīt in | vērōs | timō- | -rēs. Hor. Od. 1, 37, 15.

REMARK. Horace always makes the third foot a spondee.

VIII. The *iambic dimeter acephalous* is the iambic dimeter, wanting the first syllable; as,

Nōn | ēbūr | nēque āt- | -rēm... Hor. Od. 2, 18, 1.

REMARK. This kind of verse is sometimes scanned as a catalectic trochaic dimeter. See § 315, IV.

IX. The *iambic dimeter catalectic*, or *Anacreontic*, is the iambic dimeter, wanting the final syllable, and having always an iambus in the third foot; as,

Ut tī- | grīs ōr- | -bā gnā- | -tis. Sen. Med. 863.

X. The *Galliambus* consists of two iambic dimeters catalectic, the last of which wants the final syllable.

REMARK 1. It was so denominated from the *Galli* or priests of Cybele, by whom it was used.

**REM. 2.** In the first foot of each dimeter the anapaest was generally preferred to the spondee. The catalectic syllable at the end of the first dimeter is long, and the second foot of the second dimeter is commonly a tribrach; as,

Sūpēr āl- | -tā vēc- | -tūs A- | -tys | oēlēri | rātē mā- | -rīs. *Catull*, 68, 1.

**REM. 3.** The cæsura uniformly occurs at the end of the first dimeter.

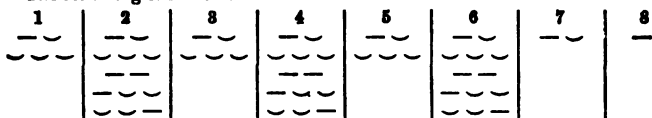
### TROCHAIC METRE.

**§ 315.** 1. Trochaic verses bear a near affinity to iambs. The addition or retrenchment of a syllable at the beginning of a pure iambic verse, renders it pure trochaic, and the addition or retrenchment of a syllable at the beginning of a pure trochaic line, renders it pure iambic, with the deficiency & redundancy of a syllable in each case at the end of the verse.

I. The *trochaic tetrameter catalectic* consists of seven feet, followed by a catalectic syllable. In the first five places and very rarely in the sixth, it admits a tribrach, but in the seventh a trochee only. In the *even* places, besides the tribrach, it admits also a spondee, a dactyl, an anapæst, and sometimes a proceleusmatic; as,

Jūsūs | ēst in | ērnīs | Irē : | pūrūs | Irē | jūsūs | ēst. *Auct. P. Vēn.*  
 Rēmū | lēmās | Ipā | fēcīt | cūm Sā- | binīs | nūpti- | ēs. *Id.*  
 Dānāi | dēs, cō- | Itē; | vēstrās | hīc dī- | ēs quā- | rit mā- | nās. *Sen.*

The following is its scale:—



**REMARK 1.** The *pure* trochaic verse was rarely used, and the dactyl very rarely occurs in the fourth place. The cæsural pause uniformly occurs after the fourth foot, thus dividing the verse into a complete dimeter and a catalectic dimeter. The comic writers introduced the spondee and its equivalent feet into the odd places.

**REM. 2.** The complete trochaic tetrameter or *octonarius* properly consists of eight feet, all trochees, subject, however, to the same variations as the catalcetic tetrameter: as.

**Iosē | sūmmis | sāxis | fixūs | aspē- | -ris, ē- | -viscē- | -rātūs. Enn.**

II. The *Sapphic* verse, invented by the poetess Sappho, consists of five feet—the first a trochee, the second a spondee, the third a dactyl, and the fourth and fifth trochees; as,

Intē- | -gēr vī- | -iē, | scēlō- | -risquē | pūrūa. *Hor. Od. 1, 22, 1.*

1. Sappho, and, after her example, Catullus, sometimes made the second foot a trochee.

2. Those Sapphics are most harmonious which have the cæsure after the fifth semi-foot.

**NOTE 1.** In the composition of the Sapphic stanza, a word is sometimes divided between the end of the third Sapphic, and the beginning of the Adonic which follows: as,

Lābi- | -tūr ri- | -pā Jōvē | nōn prō- | -bānte uz-  
 ōriūs | āmnis. *Hor. Od. 1, 2, 19.*

It has been thought by some that such lines should be considered as one Sapphic verse of seven feet, the fifth foot being either a spondee or a trochee.

NOTE 2. This verse is sometimes scanned as epichoriambic, having an epitríte in the first place, a choriambus in the second, and ending with an iambic syzygy catalectic; thus,

Intéger ví- | -tē, scélérís- | -quē púrís.

III. The *Phalæcian* verse consists of five feet—a spondee, a dactyl, and three trochees; as,

Nón ést | vivéré, | sód vā- | -léré | vitā. *Mart.*

REMARK 1. Instead of a spondee as the first foot, Catullus sometimes uses a trochee or an iambus. This writer also sometimes uses a spondee in the second place.

REM. 2. The *Phalæcian* verse is sometimes called *hendecasyllabic* as consisting of eleven syllables; but that name does not belong to it exclusively.

IV. The *trochaic dimeter catalectic* consists of three feet, properly all trochees, and a catalectic syllable, but admitting also in the second place a spondee or a dactyl; as,

Nón é | -búr nē- | -que súrē- | -um. *Hor. Od. 2, 18, 1.*

Lénis | -ác módí- | -cúm sú- | -éns

Aúrā, | -néc vér- | -gēns lá- | -tus. *Sen. Oed. 887.*

NOTE. This measure is the same as the acephalous iambic dimeter (see § 314, VIII.), and it is not important whether it be regarded as iambic or trochaic.

#### CHORIAMBIC METRE.

§ 316. (a.) In a pure choriambic verse each metre except the last is a choriambus, and the last an iambic syzygy.

NOTE. A spondee and iambus, i. e. a third epitríte, are sometimes used in place of the iambic syzygy.

(b.) An *epichoriambic* verse is composed of one or more choriambi with some other foot, especially a ditrochee or a second epitríte, joined with it.

I. The *choriambic pentameter* consists of a spondee, three choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Tū nē | quæsiérís, | sciré nēfās, | quēm mīhí, quēm tibi., *Hor. Od. 1, 11, 1.*

II. The *choriambic tetrameter* consists of three choriambi, or feet of equal length, and a Bacchius; as,

Omnē nēmūs | cūm súvils, | omnē cānāt | prǒfūdum. *Claud.*

2. In this verse Horace substituted a spondee for the iambus contained in the first choriambus; as,

Tē dēōs é- | -rē, Sýbārín | cūr prǒpérēs | -ámāndō. *Hor. Od. 1, 8, 2.*

3. Some scan this verse as an epichoriambic tetrameter catalectic, beginning with the second epitríte.

III. 1. The *Asclepiadic tetrameter* (invented by the poet Asclepiades) consists of a spondee, two choriambi, and an iambus; as,

Māōō- | -rās, ástavis | -éditē rēg- | -tibus. *Hor. Od. 1, 1, 1.*

2. This form is invariably observed by Horace; but other poets sometimes though rarely, make the first foot a dactyl.

3. The cæsural pause occurs at the end of the first choriambus.

4. This measure is sometimes scanned as a dactylic pentameter catalectic. See § 311, III. Thus,

Mācē- | -nas, ātā- | vīs | ēdītē | rēgībūs.

IV. 1. The *choriambic trimeter*, or *Glyconic* (invented by the poet Glyco), consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and an iambus; as,

Sic tē | divā pōtēs | Cypri... Hor. Od. 1, 3, 1.

2. The first foot is sometimes an iambus or a trochee.

3. When the first foot is a spondee, the verse might be scanned as a dactylic trimeter. Thus,

Sic tē | divā pō- | -tēs Cypri.

V. 1. The *choriambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Pherecratic* (so called from the poet Pherecrates), is the Glyconic deprived of its final syllable, and consists of a spondee, a choriambus, and a catalectic syllable; as,

Grātō, | Pŷrrhā, sūb ān- | -trō. Hor. Od. 1, 5, 3.

2. The first foot was sometimes a trochee or an anapest, rarely an iambus.

3. When the first foot is a spondee, this measure might be scanned as a dactylic trimeter. See § 312, VI.

4. The Pherecratic subjoined to the Glyconic produces the Priapean verse. See § 310, II.

VI. 1. The *choriambic dimeter* consists of a choriambus and a Bacchius; as,

Lŷdā dīo | pēr ōmnēs. Hor. Od. 1, 8, 1.

2. This verse is by some called the choriambic dimeter catalectic. Cf. § 316, (a.)

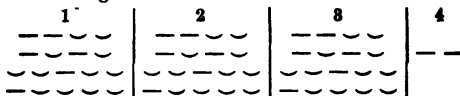
## IONIC METRE.

§ 317. I. The *Ionic a majore*, or *Sotadic*, (from the poet Sotades), consists of three greater Ionics and a spondee.

1. The Ionic feet, however, are often changed into ditrochees, and either of the two long syllables in those feet into two short ones; as,

Hās, cūm gēmī- | -nā cōmpēdē, | dēdicāt cā- | -tēnās,  
Sātūrnē, tī- | -bī Zōilūs, | ānūlōs pri- | -ōrēs. Mart.

2. Hence the following is its scale:—



NOTE. The final syllable, by § 301, note, may be short.

II. 1. The *Ionic a minore* consists generally of verses of three or four feet, which are all smaller Ionics; as,

Pār ālēs, | tībī tēlās, | ōpērōsē- | -quē Minērvē... Hor. Od. 3, 12, 4.

3. In this verse, as in the anapaestic, no place is assigned to the pause; because, since the metres, if rightly constructed, end with a word, the effect of a pause will be produced at the end of each metre.

# COMPOUND METRES.

§ 318. Compound metre is the union of two species of metre in the same verse.

I. The *dactylico-iambic* metre or *Elegiambus* consists of a dactylic penthemimēris (§ 312, VII.), followed by an iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Scribēre | vēratū- | -lēs || amō- | -rē pār- | -cūlām | grāvi. *Hor. Epod. 11, 2.*

II. The *iambico-dactylic* metre or *Iambelegus* consists of the same members as the preceding, but in a reversed order; as,

Nivēs- | -quē dē- | -ducūnt | Jōvēm : || nūc mārē, | nūc silvā- | -m. *Hor. Epod. 12, 2.*

NOTE. The members composing this and the preceding species of verse are often written in separate verses.

III. The *greater Alcaic* consists of an iambic penthemimeris, i. e. of two iambic feet and a long catalectic syllable, followed by a chor-iambus, and an iambus; as,

Vidēs | ūt āl- | -tā || stēt nivē cān- | -didum. *Hor. Od. 1, 9, 1.*

REMARK 1. The first foot is often a spondee.

REM. 2. The cæsura uniformly occurs after the catalectic syllable.

REM. 3. This verse is sometimes so scanned as to make the last two feet dactyls.

IV. The *dactylico-trochaic* or *Archilochian heptameter*, consists of the dactylic tetrameter *a priore* (§ 312), followed by three trochees; as,

Solvitur | æris hi- | -ems grā- | -tā vici || vēris | ēt Fi- | -voni. *Hor. Od. 1, 4, 1.*

REMARK. The cæsura occurs between the two members.

V. The *dactylico-trochaic tetrameter* or *lesser Alcaic*, consists of two dactyls, followed by two trochees, i. e. of a dactylic dimeter followed by a trochaic monometer; as,

Lēviā | pērsōnū- || -rē | sārā. *Hor. Od. 1, 17, 12.*

## COMBINATION OF VERSES IN POEMS.

§ 319. 1. A poem may consist either of one kind of verse only or of a combination of two or more kinds.

2. A poem in which only one kind of verse is employed, is called *carmen monocōlon*; that which has two kinds, *dicōlon*; that which has three kinds, *tricōlon*.

3. When the poem returns, after the second line, to the same verse with which it began, it is called *distrophon*; when after the third line, *tristrophon*; and when after the fourth, *tetastrophon*.

4. The several verses which occur before the poem returns to the kind of verse with which it began, constitute a *stanza* or *strophe*.

5. A poem consisting of two kinds of verse, when the stanza contains two verses, is called *dicōlon distrophon*, (see § 320, 3); when it contains three, *dicō-*

lon *tristrophon*, (Auson. Profess. 21); when four, *diclon tetrastrophon*, (§ 310, 2) and when five, *diclon pentastrophon*.

6. A poem consisting of three kinds of verse, when the stanza contains three verses, is called *triclon tristrophon*, (§ 320, 15); when four, *triclon tetrastrophon*, (§ 320, 1).

### HORATIAN METRES.

§ 320. The different species of metre used by Horace in his lyric compositions are twenty. The various forms in which he has employed them, either separate or in conjunction, are nineteen, arranged, according to the order of preference given to them by the poet, in the following

### SYNOPSIS.

1. Two greater Alcaics (§ 318, III.), one Archilochian iambic dimeter hypermeter (§ 314, VII.), and one lesser Alcaic (§ 318, v.); as,

Vidēs, ūt altā stēt nivē cāndidum  
Sōrictēs, nec jam sustinēant ōnūs  
Silvās labrāntēs, gēlūquē  
Flūminā cōstitērint acūto. (Lib. 1, 9.)

REMARK. This is called the Horatian stanza, because it seems to have been a favorite with Horace, being used in thirty-seven of his odes.

2. Three Sapphics (§ 315, II.) and one Adonic (§ 312, VIII.); as,

Jān estis tērris nivis atquē diras  
Grādinis mist pātēr, et, rūbentē  
Dextērā sacras jaculātūs arcēs,  
Terruit urbem. (Lib. 1, 2.)

3. One Glyconic (§ 316, IV.) and one Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.); as,

Sic tē Divā pōtēs Cypri,  
Sic frātēs Hēlōnē, lūcidā sidēra... (Lib. 1, 3)

4. One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

Ibis Liburnis inter altā nāvium,  
Amicē, prōpugnācula. (Epod. 1.)

5. Three Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.) and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.); as,

Scribēris Vario fortis, et hostium  
Victor, Mæonii carminis aliti,  
Quām rēm cūmqū ferox nāvibus aut equis  
Miles, tē ducē, gēsserit. (Lib. 1, 6.)

6. Two Asclepiadics (§ 316, III.), one Pherecratic (§ 316, v.), and one Glyconic (§ 316, IV.); as,

Diānam, tēnērē, dicite virgines:  
Intōnsūm, pūerī, dicite Cynthium,  
Lātōnāmqū supremo  
Dilēctām pēnitās Jōvi. (Lib. 1, 21)

7 The Asclepiadic (§ 316, III.) alone; as,  
Mæonās atavis editis regibus. (Lib. 1, 1.)

8. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic tetrameter *a posteriore* (§ 312, v.); as,

*Lædébant illi ciliâs Rhodên, sicut Mitylênas,  
Aut Ephésium, dimârisvê Corinthi...* (Lib. 1, 7.)

9. The choriambic pentameter (§ 316, I.) alone; as,  
*Tu nê quâstoria, scirê nêfâs, quâm mihi, quâm tibi...* (Lib. 1, 11.)

10. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

*Nix erat, et celsâ fulgebât lûmâ sôrêno  
Inter minêrâ mîdêra.* (Epid. 15.)

11. The iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.) containing spondees; as,  
*Jâm jam effîcaci dâ mânus sciéntiâ.* (Epid. 17.)

12. One choriambic dimeter (§ 316, VI.) and one choriambic tetrameter (§ 316, II.) with a variation; as,

*Lýdâ, dic, pâr omnes  
Tê Dêos örô, sýbarin cûr pröpörâs îmândo...* (Lib. 1, 8.)

13. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one iambic trimeter without spondees (§ 314, I.); as,

*Altêrâ jâm têritûr bellis civilibûs Itas;  
Suis ipse Rômâ viribûs ruit.* (Epid. 16.)

14. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.) and one dactylic penthemimeris (§ 312, VII.); as,

*Diffûgêrê nivês: rêdêunt jâm grâminâ câmpis,  
Arbôrîbûsquê cômæ.* (Lib. 4, 7.)

15. One iambic trimeter (§ 314, I.), one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 312, VII.), and one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.); as,

*Pêtti, nihîl mê, alcût antêâ, jûvat  
Scribêrê vêrsiculôs,  
Amôrê pêrculsûm grâvi.* (Epoa. 11.)

NOTE. The second and third lines are often written as one verse. See § 318, 1.

16. One dactylic hexameter (§ 310, I.), one iambic dimeter (§ 314, VI.), and one dactylic penthemimeris (§ 312, VII.); as,

*Hôrridâ têmpêstâs cœlûm côntraxît; et imbres  
Nivêsquê dêducunt Jovem:  
Nunc mârê, nunc silvæ...* (Epid. 18.)

NOTE. The second and third lines of this stanza, also, are often written as one verse. See § 318, II.

17. One Archilochian heptameter (§ 318, IV.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, v.); as,

*Solvitûr acris hiêms grâtâ vicê vêris et Fâvônî,  
Trâhûntquê siccâs machinæ cârinas.* (Lib. 1, 4.)

18. One iambic dimeter acephalous (§ 314, VIII.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 314, v.); as,

*Nôn êbûr nêque aurêum  
Mêâ rênidêt in dômô lædûnar.* (Lib. 2, 18.)

19. The Ionic *a minore* (§ 317, II.) alone; as,  
*Mistrârur: et nêque amôrî dârê lædûm, nêquê dâlot...* (Lib. 3, 12.)



[321. A METRICAL KEY TO THE ODES OF HORACE

*Containing, in alphabetic order, the first words of each, with a reference to the numbers in the preceding Synopsis, where the metre is explained.*

<i>Alti vetusto</i> .....	No. 1	<i>Mollis inertia</i> .....	No 10
<i>Æquam memento</i> .....	1	<i>Motum custos</i> .....	2
<i>Albi, ne doleas</i> .....	6	<i>Motum ex Metello</i> .....	1
<i>Altera jam teritur</i> .....	13	<i>Musis amicus</i> .....	1
<i>Angustam, amice</i> .....	1	<i>Natis in usum</i> .....	1
<i>At, O deorum</i> .....	4	<i>Ne forte credas</i> .....	1
<i>Audivære, Lyce</i> .....	6	<i>Ne sit ancillæ</i> .....	2
<i>Bacchum in remōtis</i> .....	1	<i>Nolis longa feræ</i> .....	5
<i>Beatus ille</i> .....	4	<i>Nondum subacta</i> .....	1
<i>Cœlo supinas</i> .....	1	<i>Non ebur neque aureum</i> .....	15
<i>Cœlo tonantem</i> .....	1	<i>Non semper imbres</i> .....	1
<i>Cur me querelis</i> .....	1	<i>Non usitatâ</i> .....	1
<i>Delicta majorum</i> .....	1	<i>Non vides, quanto</i> .....	2
<i>Descende cœli</i> .....	1	<i>Nox erat</i> .....	10
<i>Diânam, tenêræ</i> .....	6	<i>Nullam, Vare, sacrâ</i> .....	9
<i>Diffugere nives</i> .....	14	<i>Nullus argento</i> .....	2
<i>Dive, quem proles</i> .....	2	<i>Nunc est bibendum</i> .....	1
<i>Divis orte bonis</i> .....	5	<i>O crudelis adhuc</i> .....	2
<i>Donârem patêras</i> .....	7	<i>O diva, gratum</i> .....	1
<i>Donec gratus eram tibi</i> .....	3	<i>O fons Bandusis</i> .....	6
<i>Eheu! fugâces</i> .....	1	<i>O matre pulchrâ</i> .....	1
<i>Est mihi nonum</i> .....	2	<i>O nata mecum</i> .....	1
<i>Et ture et fidibus</i> .....	3	<i>O navis, referent</i> .....	4
<i>Exegi monumentum</i> .....	7	<i>O sæpe mecum</i> .....	1
<i>Extremum Tanaim</i> .....	5	<i>O Venus, regina</i> .....	2
<i>Faune, nympharum</i> .....	2	<i>Odi profanum</i> .....	1
<i>Festo quid potius die</i> .....	3	<i>Otiwm Divqs</i> .....	2
<i>Herculis ritu</i> .....	2	<i>Parcus junctas</i> .....	2
<i>Horrida tempestas</i> .....	16	<i>Parcus Deorum</i> .....	1
<i>Ibis Liburnis</i> .....	4	<i>Parentis olim</i> .....	4
<i>Icci, beatis</i> .....	1	<i>Pastor quum traheret</i> .....	5
<i>Ille et nefasto</i> .....	1	<i>Percicos odi, puer</i> .....	2
<i>Impios parræ</i> .....	2	<i>Petti, nihil me</i> .....	15
<i>Inclusam Danâen</i> .....	5	<i>Phœbe, silvarumque</i> .....	2
<i>Intactis opulentior</i> .....	3	<i>Phœbus volentem</i> .....	1
<i>Intèger vitæ</i> .....	2	<i>Pindârum quisquis</i> .....	2
<i>Intermissa, Venus, diu</i> .....	3	<i>Poscîmur: si quid</i> .....	2
<i>Jam jam effîcaci</i> .....	11	<i>Quæ cura Patrum</i> .....	1
<i>Jam pauca arâtro</i> .....	1	<i>Qualem ministrum</i> .....	1
<i>Jam satis terris</i> .....	2	<i>Quando repostum</i> .....	4
<i>Jam veris comites</i> .....	5	<i>Quantum distet ab Inâcho</i> .....	3
<i>Iustum et tenâcem</i> .....	1	<i>Quem tu, Melpomène</i> .....	3
<i>Laudâbunt alii</i> .....	8	<i>Quem virum aut herôa</i> .....	2
<i>Lupis et agnis</i> .....	4	<i>Quid bellicosus</i> .....	1
<i>Lydia, dic, per omnes</i> .....	12	<i>Quid dedicatum</i> .....	1
<i>Mæcenas atâvis</i> .....	7	<i>Quid fles, Asterie</i> .....	6
<i>Malâ solûta</i> .....	4	<i>Quid immerentes</i> .....	4
<i>Martii cæiebs</i> .....	2	<i>Quid obserâtis</i> .....	11
<i>Mater sæva Cupidinum</i> .....	3	<i>Quid tibi vis</i> .....	3
<i>Mercûm, facunde</i> .....	2	<i>Quis desiderio</i> .....	5
<i>Mercûri, nam te</i> .....	2	<i>Quis multa gracilis</i> .....	6
<i>Miserarum est</i> .....	19	<i>Quo me, Bæache</i> .....	3

Quo, quo, scelesti ruitis.....	No. 4	Tu ne quæsiëris.....	No. 1
Quum tu, Lydia.....	3	Tvrrhëna regum.....	1
Rectius vives.....	2	Ulla si juris.....	1
Rogare longo.....	4	Uxor paupëris Ibÿci.....	1
Scribëris Vario.....	5	Velox amœnum.....	1
Septimii, Gades.....	3	Vides, ut altâ.....	
Sic te Diva potens.....	3	Vile potâbis.....	2
Solvitur acris hiems.....	17	Vitas hinnuleo.....	6
Te maris et terræ.....	3	Vixi puellis.....	1

The following are the single metres used by Horace in his lyrics compositions, viz :—

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Dactylic Hexameter.</li> <li>2. Dactylic Tetrameter <i>a posteriori</i>.</li> <li>3. Dactylic Trimeter Catalectic.</li> <li>4. Adonic.</li> <li>5. Trimeter Iambic.</li> <li>6. Iambic Trimeter Catalectic.</li> <li>7. Iambic Dimeter.</li> <li>8. Archilochian Iambic Dimeter Hypermeter.</li> <li>9. Iambic Dimeter Acephalous.</li> <li>10. Sapphic.</li> </ol> | <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>11. Choriambic Pentameter.</li> <li>12. Choriambic Tetrameter.</li> <li>13. Asclepiadic Tetrameter.</li> <li>14. Glyconic.</li> <li>15. Pherecratic.</li> <li>16. Choriambic Dimeter.</li> <li>17. Ionic <i>a minore</i>.</li> <li>18. Greater Alcaic.</li> <li>19. Archilochian Heptameter.</li> <li>20. Lesser Alcaic.</li> </ol> |
|---|--|

## APPENDIX.

### GRAMMATICAL FIGURES.

§ 322. Certain deviations from the regular form and construction of words, are called *grammatical figures*. These may relate either to Orthography and Etymology, or to Syntax.

#### I. FIGURES OF ORTHOGRAPHY AND ETYMOLOGY.

These are distinguished by the general name of *metaplasms*.

1. *Prosthesis* is the prefixing of a letter or syllable to a word; as, *gnātus*, for *nātus*; *tētuli*, for *tūli*. These, however, are rather the ancient customary terms, from which those now in use were formed by *aphæresis*.

2. *Aphæresis* is the taking of a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word; as, *'st*, for *est*; *rūbōnem*, for *arrābōnem*.

3. *Epenthesis* is the insertion of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *āltitum*, for *āltum*; *Māvora*, for *Mars*.

4. *Syncope* is the omission of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word; as, *delūm*, for *deōrum*; *meūm factūm*, for *meōrum factōrum*; *sæcla*, for *sæcula*; *flecti*, for *flectisti*; *repositus*, for *repositus*; *aspris*, for *asperis*.

5. *Crisis* is the contraction of two vowels into one; as, *cōgo*, for *cōdāgo*; *nīl*, for *nihil*.

6. *Paragoge* is the addition of a letter or syllable to the end of a word; as, *med*, for *me*; *claudier*, for *claudi*.

7. *Apocope* is the omission of the final letter or syllable of a word; as, *mēn'*, for *mēne*; *Antōni*, for *Antōniū*.

8. *Antithesis* is the substitution of one letter for another; as, *ollī*, for *illī*; *optimū*, for *optimus*; *afficio*, for *adfficio*. *O* is often thus used for *u*, especially after *v*; as, *vultus*, for *vultus*; *servom*, for *servum*. So after *qu*; as, *æquom*, for *æquum*.

9. *Metathesis* is the changing of the order of letters in a word; as *pistris*, for *priestis*.

#### II. FIGURES OF SYNTAX.

323. The figures of Syntax are *ellipsis*, *pleonasm*, *enallage*, and *hyperbāton*.

1. (a.) *Ellipsis* is the omission of some word or words in a sentence; as,

*Aiunt*, scil. *hōmīnes*. *Dārtus Hystaspis*, scil. *filius*. *Cōno*, scil. *ego*. *Quid multa?* scil. *dicam*. *Ex quo*, scil. *tempore*. *Ferina*, scil. *caru*.

(b.) *Ellipsis* includes *asyndeton*, *zeugma*, *syllipsis*, and *prolepsis*.

(1.) *Asyndeton* is the omission of the copulative conjunction; as, *abūt, exorant, erant*, scil. *et*. *Cic*. This is called in pure Latin *dissolutio*.

(2.) (a.) *Zeugma* is the uniting of two nouns or two infinitives to a verb which, as to its meaning, is applicable to only one of them; as, *Pācem an bellum gerens*: (Sall.) where *gerens* is applicable to *bellum* only, while *pācem* requires *agere*. *Semperne in sanguine, ferro, fugā versābimur?* (Id.) where the verb does not properly apply to *ferro*.

(b.) *Nēgo* is often thus used with two propositions, one of which is affirmative: as, *Nēgant Casārem mansurum, postulātāque interposita esse*, for *dicuntque postulāta*.... Cic. See § 209, Note 4.

(c.) When an adjective or verb, referring to two or more nouns, agrees with one, and is understood with the rest, the construction is also sometimes called *zeugma*, but more commonly *syllipsis*; as, *Et genus, et virtus, nisi cum re, vilior algā est*. Hor. *Cāper tibi salvus et hodi*. Virg. *Quamvis ille niger, quamvis tu candida esses*. Id.

(2.) *Syllipsis* is when an adjective or verb, belonging to two or more nouns of different genders, persons, or numbers, agrees with one rather than another, as, *Attoliti nōritāte pāvent Baucis, amidosque Phillēmon*. Ovid. *Prōcumbit atque prōnus hūmī, i. e. Deucālōn et Pyrrha*. Id. *Sustulimus manus et ego et Balbus*. Cic. So, *Ipse cum frātre ādesse jussi sūmus*. Id. *Prōjectisque dūcālo et litēris*. Curt. See §§ 205, R. 2, and 209, R. 12, (3.) and (7.)

(4.) *Prōlepsis* is when the parts, differing in number or person from the whole, are placed after it, the verb or adjective not being repeated; as, *Principes utrinque pugnam cēbant, ab Sabinis Mettius Curtius, ab Rōmānis Hostus Hostilius*. Liv. *Bōni quōniam convenimus ambo, tu cālamos inflāre, ego dicere versus*. Virg.

2. (a.) *Pleonasm* is using a greater number of words than is necessary to express the meaning; as,

*Sic ore locūta est*. Virg. *Qui māgis vēre vincēre quam diu impērare mālūt*. Liv. *Nemo unus*. Cic. *Forte fortunā*. Id. *Prūdēns sciens*. Ter.

(b.) Under *pleonasm* are included *parelcon*, *polysyndeton*, *hendiādys*, and *periphrasis*.

(1.) *Parelcon* is the addition of an unnecessary syllable or particle to pronouns, verbs, or adverbs; as, *egomet, agēdum, fortassean*. Such additions, however, usually modify the meaning in some degree.

(2.) *Polysyndeton* is a redundancy of conjunctions; as, *Una Eurūque Nōtusque ruunt creberque procellis Africus*. Virg.

(3.) *Hendiādys* is the expression of an idea by two nouns connected by *et*, *-que*, or *atque*, instead of a noun and a limiting adjective or genitive; as, *Pātēris libāmus et auro*, for *aureis patēris*. Virg. *Libro et silvestri subēre clausum* for *libro subēris*. Id. *Cristis et auro*. Ovid. Met. 3, 32.

(4.) *Periphrasis* or *circumlocutio* is a circuitous mode of expression; as, *Tēnēri factus ovium, i. e. agni*. Virg.

3. (a.) *Enallāge* is a change of words, or a substitution of one gender, number, case, person, tense, mood, or voice of the same word for another.

(b.) *Enallāge* includes *antimeria*, *heterōsis*, *antiptōsis*, *synēsis*, and *anacoluthon*.

(1.) *Antimēria* is the use of one part of speech for another, or the abstract for the concrete; as, *Nostrum istud vivēre triste*, for *nostra vita*. Pers. *Aliud cras*. Id. *Conjūgium vidēbit?* for *conjugem*. Virg.

(2.) *Heterōsis* is the use of one form of noun, pronoun, verb, etc., for another as, *Ego cuoque uno perco*, *quod mihi est cāriss*, for *qui mihi sum cārior*. Ter.

*Rōmānus praeio victor, for Rōmāni victōres.* Liv. Many words are used by the poets in the plural instead of the singular; as, *colla, co-da, ora*, etc. See § 98. *Me truncus illapso cerebro sustulērat, for sustulisset.* Hor. See § 259, R. 4.

(3.) *Antiphrasis* is the use of one case for another; as, *Cui nunc cognōmen Iūlo, for Iūlus.* Virg. § 204, R. 8. *Uxor invicti Jovis esse nescis, for te esse uxorē.* Hor. § 210, R. 6.

(4.) *Synesis*, or *synthesis*, is adapting the construction to the sense of a word, rather than to its gender or number; as, *Subeunt Tēgēa jūventus auxilio tardū.* Stat. *Concursus populi mirantium quid rei est.* Liv. *Pars in cruce acti.* Sall. *Ubi illic est scelus, qui me perdidit?* Ter. *Id mea minime refert, qui sum natus maximus.* Id. See § 206, R. 3, (1.) and (3.), and § 206, (12.)

(5.) *Andoclasis* is a disagreement in construction between the latter and former part of a sentence; as, *Nam nos omnes, quibus est alicunde aliquis objectus labor, omne quod est interea tempus, priusquam id rescitum est, lucro est.* Ter. In this example, the writer began as if he intended to say *lucro habemus*, and ended as if he had said *nobis omnibus*, leaving *nos omnes* without its verb.

4. (a.) *Hypērbaton* is a transgression of the usual order of words or clauses.

(b.) *Hypērbaton* includes *ānastrōphe*, *hystēron prōteron*, *hypoallage*, *synchysis*, *tmēsis*, and *pārenthēsis*.

(1.) *Anastrōphe* is an inversion of the order of two words; as, *Transtra per et rēmos, for per transtra.* Virg. *Collo dare brachia circum, for circumdare.* Id. *Nox erit uni super, for supererit.* Ovid. *Et facit are, for arefacit.* Lucr.

(2.) *Hystēron prōteron* is reversing the natural order of the sense; as, *Mordimus, et in media arma ruamus.* Virg. *Valeat atque vivit.* Ter.

(3.) *Hypoallage* is an interchange of constructions; as, *In nova fert animus mutatas dicere formas corpōra, for corpōra mutata in novas formas.* Ovid. *Dare classibus Austros, for dare classes Austris.* Virg.

(4.) *Synchysis* is a confused position of words; as, *Saxa vocant lūli, mediis quae in fluctibus, aras, for quae saxa in mediis fluctibus, lūli vocant aras.* Virg.

(5.) *Tmēsis* or *diacope* is the separation of the parts of a compound word; as, *Septem subjecta trioni gens, for septentrioni.* Virg. *Quae me cumque vocant terras.* Id. *Per mihi, per, inquam, grātum feceris.* Cic.

(6.) *Pārenthēsis* or *diālysis* is the insertion of a word or words in a sentence interrupting the natural connection; as, *Titire dum redeo, (brēvis est via,) pasce capellas.* Virg.

REMARK. To the above may be added *archaism* and *Hellenism*, which belong both to the figures of etymology and to those of syntax.

(1.) *Archaism* is the use of ancient forms or constructions; as, *aulā, for aulae; sēnāti, for sēnātis; fuit, for sit; prohibesso, for prohibuero; impetrassere, for impetraturum esse; fārter, for fāri; nēnu, for non; endo, for in;—Opērum abutitur, for opēra.* Ter. *Quid tibi hanc cūratio est rem?* Plaut.

(2.) *Hellenism* is the use of Greek forms or constructions; as, *Hēlēne, for Hēlēna; Antiphon, for Antīpho; aurās (gen.), for aurae; Pallādos, Pallāda, for P alladis, Pallādem; Trōāsin, Trōādas, for Trōādibus, Trōādes;—Abstīnēto irarum.* Hor. *Tempos desistere pugnae.* Virg.

§ 324. (1.) To the grammatical figures may not improperly be subjoined certain others, which are often referred to in philological works, and which are called

## TROPES AND FIGURES OF RHETORIC.

(2.) A rhetorical figure is a mode of expression different from the direct and simple way of expressing the same sense. The turning of a word from its original and customary meaning, is called a trope.

1. (a.) A *metaphor* is the transferring of a word from the object to which it properly belongs, and applying it to another, to which that object has some analogy; as, *Ridet ager*, The field smiles. Virg. *Ætus aurea*, The golden age. Ovid. *Naufragia fortune*, The wreck of fortune. Cic. *Mentis oculi*, The eyes of the mind. Id. *Virtus animum glorie stimulis concitat*. The harshness of a metaphor is often softened by means of *quasi*, *tanquam*, *quidam*, or *ut ita dicam*; as, *In una philosophia quasi tabernaculum vite sue collocarunt*. Id. *Opimum quoddam et tamquam adipatæ dictionis genus*. Id.

(b.) *Catæchresis* or *abusio* is a bold or harsh metaphor; as, *Vir grægis ipse oliver*. Virg. *Eurus per Siculas equitavit undas*. Hor.

2. *Metonymy* is substituting the name of an object for that of another to which it has a certain relation; as the cause for the effect, the container for what is contained, the property for the substance, the sign for the thing signified, and their contraries; the parts of the body for certain affections; the possessor for the thing possessed; place and time for the persons or things which they comprise, etc.; as, *Mortales*, for *hominēs*. Virg. *Amor duri Martis*, i. e. *belli*. Id. *Fruges Cere rem appellamus, vinum autem Liberi*. Cic. *Cypio vigiliam meam tibi tradere*, i. e. *meam curam*. Id. *Pallida mors*. Hor. *Hausit patetram*, i. e. *vinum*. Virg. *Vina coronant*, i. e. *patetram*. Id. *Necte ternos colores*, i. e. *tria fila diversi coloris*. Id. *Cedant arma togæ*, i. e. *bellum paci*. Cic. *Sæcula mitescent*, i. e. *hominēs in sæculis*. Virg. *Vivit Pæcunius vel Nestora totum*. Juv. *Doctrinâ Græcia nos superabat*, for *Græci superabant*. Cic. *Pægi centum Suevorum ad ripas Rheni consederant*, for *pægorum incolæ*. Cæs. *Tempora amicorum*, for *res adversæ*. Cic. *Claudius lege prædicatoris venalis pependit*, for *Claudius prædium*. Suet. *Vici ad Janum medium sedentes*, for *Janus vicum*. Cic.

3. *Synecdoche* is putting a whole for a part, a genus for a species, a singular for a plural, and their contraries; also the material for the thing made of it, a definite for an indefinite number, etc.; as, *Fontem feriebant*. Id. *Tectum*, for *dõmus*. Id. *Armato milite complent*, for *armatis militibus*. Id. *Ferrum*, for *gladius*. Id. *Qui Corinthiis operibus abundant*, i. e. *vasis*. Cic. *Urbem, urbem, me Kuse, cole*, i. e. *Rõmam*. Cic. *Centum puer artium*, i. e. *multarum*.

4. *Irony* is the intentional use of words which express a sense contrary to that which the writer or speaker means to convey; as, *Salve bone vir, caruisti probo*. Ter. *Egrégiam vero laudem, et spolia ampla refertis, tæque, puerque tuus*. Virg.

5. *Hyperbole* is the magnifying or diminishing of a thing beyond the truth as, *Ipse arduus, altæque pulsat sidera*. Virg. *Orior Euro*. Id.

6. *Métalepsis* is the including of several tropes in one word; as, *Post aliquot Aristas*. Virg. Here *aristas* is put for *messes*, and this for *annos*.

7. (a.) *Allegory* is a consistent series of metaphors, designed to illustrate one subject by another; as, *O nâris, referent in mare te novi fluctus*. Hor.

(b.) An obscure allegory or riddle is called an *ænigma*; as, *Dic, quibus in terra tres pateat celi spatium non amplius ulnas*. Virg.

8. *Antonomasia* is using a proper noun for a common one, and the contrary; as, *Irus et est subito, qui nudo Cræsus erat*, for *pauper* and *dives*. Ovid. So, by periphrasis, *potor Rhodani*, for *Gullus*. Hor. *Eversor Carthaginiæ*, for *Scipio*. Quint. *Eloquentia princeps*, for *Cicero*. Id. *Tyrides*, for *Diomædes*. Virg.

9. *Litotes* is a mode of expressing something by denying the contrary; as, *Non laudo*, I blame. Ter. *Non innocia verba*. Virg.

10. *Antiphrasis* is using a word in a sense opposite to its proper meaning, as, *Auri sacra fumes*. Virg.

11. *Euphemism* is the use of softened language to express what is offensive or distressing; as, *Si quid accidisset Cæsari*, i. e. *si mortuus esset*. Vell.

12. *Antanaclassis* or *punning* is the use of the same word in different senses; as, *Quis neget Anæce natum de stirpe Nerõnem? Sustulit hic matrem, sustulit ille patrem*. Epigr. *Amari jucundum est, si curatur ne quid insit amari*. Cic.

13. *Anaphōra* or *epānaphōra* is the repetition of a word at the beginning of successive clauses; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum praesidium palatii, nihil urbis vigilia, nihil timor populi*, etc. Cic. *Te, dulcis conjux, te, solo in litore secum, te veniente dixi, te, decedente, cānēbat*. Virg.

14. *Epistrophe* is the repetition of a word at the end of successive clauses, as, *Pavos populus Romanus iustitiā vicit, armis vicit, liberratiōe vicit*. Cic. In pure Latin this figure is called *conversio*.

15. *Symplōce* is the repetition of a word at the beginning, and of another at the end, of successive clauses, and hence it includes the anaphōra and the epistrophe; as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus: Quis majorem populi partem suffragiis privavit? Rullus: Quis comitiis praefuit? Idem Rullus*. Cic.

16. *Epānalepsis* is a repetition of the same word or sentence after intervening words or clauses. See Virg. *Geor. II. 4—7*.

17. *Anadiplosis* is the use of the same word at the end of one clause, and the beginning of another; as, *Sequitur pulcherrimus Astur, Astur equo fidens*. Virg. *A. 10, 180. Nunc etiam audes in horum conspectum venire, venire audes in horum conspectum?* Cic. This is sometimes called *epānastrōphe*.

18. *Epānadiplōsis* is the use of the same word both at the beginning and end of a sentence; as, *Crescit amor nummi, quantum ipsa pecunia crescit*. Juv.

19. *Anadōros* or *rēgressio* is the repetition of the same words in an inverted order; as, *Crūdēlis māter magis, an puer imprōbus ille? Imprōbus ille puer, crūdēlis tu quōque, māter*. Virg.

20. *Epizeuxis* is a repetition of the same word for the sake of emphasis; as, *Excitāte, excitāte eum ab infēris*. Cic. *Ah Cōrydon, Cōrydon, quae te dēmētia cepit?* Virg. *Ibimus, ibimus, utcumque praecedes*. Hor.

21. *Climax* is a gradual amplification by means of a continued anadiplosis, each successive clause beginning with the conclusion of that which precedes it; as, *Quae reliqua spes manet libertatis, si illis et quod libet, licet; et quod licet, possunt; et quod possunt, audent; et quod audent, vobis molestum non est?* Cic. This, in pure Latin, is called *gradatio*.

22. *Incrēmentum* is an amplification without a strict climax; as, *Faciens est, vinciri civem Romanum; scelus, verbēdari; prope parricidium, necari; quid dicam in crucem tolli?* Cic.

23. *Pōlyptōton* is the repetition of a word in different cases, genders, numbers, tenses, etc.; as, *Jam clipeus clipeis, umbōne rēpellitur umbo; ense minacis ensis, pede pes, et cuspide cusps*. Stat.

24. *Paregmēnon* is the use of several words of the same origin, in one sentence; as, *Abesse non potest, quin ejusdem hominis sit, qui imprōbos prōbet, prōbos imprōbāre*. Cic. *Istam pugnam pugnābo*. Plaut.

25. *Pārōnōmāsia* is the use of words which resemble each other in sound as, *Amor et melle et felle est fecundissimus*. Plaut. *Civem bonūrum artium bonūrum partium*. Cic. *Amantes sunt āmentes*. Ter. This figure is sometimes called *agnōminatio*.

26. *Hōmaeoprōphēron* or *alliteration* is the use in the same sentence of several words beginning with the same letter; as, *O Tite, tute Titi, tibi tanta, tyrranne, tulisti*. Enn. *Neu patria vāldas in viscēra vertile vires*. Virg.

27. *Antithēsis* is the placing of different or opposite words or sentiments in contrast; as, *Hujus orationis difficilius est exitum quam principium invenire*. Cic. *Cæsar beneficiis ac munificentia magnus habebatur; integritate vitæ*. Cato. Sall.

28. *Oxymōron* unites words of contrary significations, thus producing a seeming contradiction; as, *Concordia discors*. Hor. *Quum tacent, clamant*. Cic.

29. *Synonymia* is the use of different words or expressions having the same import; as, *Non feram, non patiar, non sinam*. Cic. *Prōmittō, rē-ipo, spondeo*. Id.

30. *Părăbōla* or *Simile* is the comparison of one thing with another; as, *Rē vende te, tamquam serpens e lātībālīs, dēcūlīs ēminentībūs, inflāto collo, timidus cervicībūs, intūlisti.* Cic.

31. *Erōtēsis* is an earnest question, and often implies a strong affirmation of the contrary; as, *Crēditis āvēctos hostes?* Virg. *Hēu! quā me aqūora possunt accipere?* Id.

32. *Epimorthōsis* or *Correctio* is the recalling of a word, in order to place a stronger or more significant one in its stead; as, *Filiū unicūm adolescentūlū hābeo: ah! quid dāzi? me hābere? Imo hābui.* Ter.

33. *Apōsiōpēsis*, *Rētūcentia*, or *Interruptio*, is leaving a sentence unfinished in consequence of some emotion of the mind; as, *Quos ego—sed mōtos prastat componere fluctus.* Virg.

34. *Prōsōpōpia* or *personification* represents inanimate things as acting or speaking, and persons dead or absent as alive and present; as, *Quas (patria) tecum, Cātūlina, sic agit.* Cic. *Virtus sūmit aut pōnit sēcures.* Hor.

35. *Apostrōphe* is a turning off from the regular course of the subject, to address some person or thing; as, *Vī pōtūtur; quid non mortālīa pectōra cōgia, auri sacra fāmes!* Virg.

36. *Părăleipsis* is a pretended omission of something, in order to render it more observed. See Cic. Cat. 1, 6, 14.

37. *Epiphōnēma* or *Acclimatio* is an exclamation or grave reflection on something said before; as, *Tantā mōlis erat Rōmānam condere gentem.* Virg.

38. *Ephōnēsis* or *Exclāmatio* shows some violent emotion of the mind; as, *O tempōra! O mōres!*

39. *Apōria*, *Diapōrēsis*, or *Dūbtatio*, expresses a doubt in regard to what is to be said or done; as, *Quos accēdam, aut quos appellem?* Sall.

40. *Prōlepsis* is the anticipation of an objection before it is made, or of an event before it occurs; as, *Vērū anceps pugna fūerat fortūna. Fūisset: Quem mētui mōritūra?* Virg.

§ 325. To the figures of rhetoric may be subjoined the following terms, used to designate defects or blemishes in style:—

1. *Barbarism* is either the use of a foreign word, or a violation of the rules of orthography, etymology, or prosody; as, *rigōrōsus*, for *rigidus* or *sēvērus*; *dominūsus*, for *dōminūs*; *davi*, for *dēdī*.

2. *Solecism* is a violation of the rules of syntax; as, *Vēnus pulcher; vos invēdēnus.*

3. *Neoterism* is the use of words or phrases introduced by authors living subsequently to the best ages of Latinity; as, *murdram*, a murder; *constabulārius*, a constable.

4. *Tautology* is a repetition of the same meaning in different words; as, *Jam vos āciem, et prōlia, et hostem poscitis.* Sil.

5. *Amphibōlia* is the use of equivocal words or constructions; as, *Gallus*, Gaul, or a cock. *Aio te, Elācida, Rōmānos vincere posse.* Quint.

6. *Idiotism* is a construction peculiar to one or more languages: thus, the ablative after comparatives is a Latinism. When a peculiarity of one language is imitated in another, this is also called *idiotism*. Thus, *Mitte mihi verbum* instead of *Fac me certiorē*, is an Anglicism.



## ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING.

### I. OF TIME.

#### 1. *The Roman Day.*

§ 326. (1.) With the Romans, as with us, the day was either *civil* or *natural*. Their civil day, like ours, extended from midnight to midnight. The natural day continued from sunrise to sunset, as, on the other hand, the night extended from sunset to sunrise. The natural day and night were each divided into twelve equal parts or *hours*, which were consequently of different length, according to the varying length of the days and nights in the successive seasons of the year. It was only at the equinox that the diurnal and nocturnal hours of the Romans were equal to each other, as each was then equal to the twenty-fourth part of the civil day.

(2.) In the Roman camp the night was further divided into four watches (*vigiliæ*), consisting each of three Roman hours, the second and fourth watches ending respectively at midnight and at sunrise

#### 2. *The Roman Month and Year.*

(1.) The calendar of the Romans, as rectified by Julius Cæsar, agreed with our own in the number of months, and of the days in each, according to the following table:—

Jānuārius . 31 days.	Maius . . 31 days.	September 30 days.
Februārius 28 or 29.	Jūnius. 30 "	Octōber . . 31 "
Martius. . . 31 days.	Quintilis 31 "	Nōvember 30 "
Aprīlis . . . 30 "	Sextilis . 31 "	Dēcember 31 "

In early times the Roman year began with March, and the names *Quintilis*, *Sextilis*, *September*, etc., indicated the distance of those months from the commencement of the year. *Quintilis* and *Sextilis* were afterwards called *Jūlius* and *Augustus* in honor of the first two emperors. The Romans, instead of reckoning in an uninterrupted series from the first to the last day of a month, had in each month three points or periods from which their days were counted—the *Calends*, the *Nones*, and the *Ides*. The *Calends* (*Cālendæ*), were always the *first* day of the month. The *Nones* (*Nōnæ*), were the *fifth*, and the *Ides* (*Idus*), the *thirteenth*; except in March, May, July, and October, when the *Nones* occurred on the *seventh* day, and the *Ides* on the *fifteenth*.

(2.) They always counted forward, from the day whose date was to be determined, to the next *Calends*, *Nones*, or *Ides*, and designated the day by its distance before such point. After the first day of the month, therefore, they began to reckon so many days before the *Nones*; after the *Nones*, so many days before the *Ides*; and after the *Ides*, so many before the *Calends*, of the next month.

Thus, the second of January was denoted by *quarto Nōnas Jānuārius*, or *Jānuārii*, scil. *die ante*: the third, *tertio Nōnas*; the fourth, *pridie Nōnis*, and the fifth, *Nōnis*. The sixth was denoted by *octavo Idus*; the seventh

*septimo Idus*; and so on to the thirteenth, on which the Ides fell. The fourteenth was denoted by *undevigésimo Calendas Februarias*, or *Februarii*; and so on to the end of the month.

(3.) The day preceding the Calends, Nones, and Ides, was termed *pridie Calendas*, etc., scil. *ante*: in designating the other days, both the day of the Calends, etc., and that whose date was to be determined, were reckoned; hence the second day before the Calends, etc., was called *tertio*, the third *quarto*, etc.

(4.) To reduce the Roman calendar to our own, therefore, when the day is between the Calends and the Nones or between the Nones and the Ides, it is necessary to take one from the number denoting the distance of the given day from the Nones or the Ides, and to subtract the remainder from the number of the day on which the Nones or Ides fell in the given month.

Thus, to determine the day equivalent to *IV. Nonas Januariæ*, we take 1 from 4, and subtract the remainder, 3, from 5, the day on which the Nones of January fell (i. e.  $4-1=3$ , and  $5-3=2$ ): this gives 2, or the second of January, for the day in question. So *VI. Idus Aprilis*: the Ides of April falling upon the 18th, we take ( $6-1$ , i. e.) 5 from 18, which leaves 8 (i. e.  $6-1=5$ , and  $18-5=13$ ): the expression, therefore, denotes the 8th of April.

(a.) In reckoning the days before the Calends, as they are not the last day of the current month, but the first of the following, it is necessary to subtract two from the number denoting the distance of the given day from the Calends of the following month, and to take the remainder from the number of days in the month.

Thus, *XV. Cal. Quintiles* is  $15-2=13$ , and  $30-13=17$ , i. e. the Roman date *XV. Cal. Quint.* is equivalent to the 17th of June.

(b.) To reduce our calendar to the Roman, the preceding method is to be reversed. Thus when the given day is between the Calends and the Nones or between the Nones and the Ides, (unless it be the day before the Nones or the Ides), we are to *add* one to the number denoting the day of the month, according to our reckoning, on which the Nones or Ides fell. But if the day is after the Ides, (unless it be the last day of the month), we must add *two* to the number of days in the month, and then subtract the number denoting the day of the month as expressed in our reckoning. The remainder will be the day before the Nones, Ides or Calends.

Thus to find the Roman date corresponding to the third of April, we have  $5+1-3=3$ ; the required date, therefore, is *III. Non. Apr.*—To find the proper Roman expression for our tenth of December we have  $13+1-10=4$ ; the date, therefore, is *IV. Id. Dec.*—The Roman expression for the 22d of August, in pursuance of the above rule, is found thus,  $31+2-22=11$ , and the date is *XI Cal. Sept.*

(5.) In leap year, both the 24th and 25th of February were called the sixth before the Calends of March. The 24th was called *dies Viesztus*, and the year itself *annus bisextus*, bissextile or leap year.

(a.) The day after the Calends, etc., was sometimes called *postridie calendas*, etc.

(b.) The names of the months are properly adjectives, though often used as nouns, *mensis* being understood

(6.) The correspondence of our calendar with that of the Romans is exhibited in the following

TABLE.

<i>Days of our months.</i>	MAR. MAI. JUL. OCT.	JAN. AUG. DEC.	APR. JUN. SEPT. NOV.	FEBR.
1	Calendæ.	Calendæ.	Calendæ.	Calendæ.
2	VI. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.	IV. Nonas.
3	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
4	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
5	III. "	Nonas.	Nonas.	Nonas.
6	Pridie Non.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.	VIII. Idus.
7	Nonas.	VII. "	VII. "	VII. "
8	VIII. Idus.	VI. "	VI. "	VI. "
9	VII. "	V. "	V. "	V. "
10	VI. "	IV. "	IV. "	IV. "
11	V. "	III. "	III. "	III. "
12	IV. "	Pridie "	Pridie "	Pridie "
13	III. "	Idus.	Idus.	Idus.
14	Pridie Id.	XIX. Cal.	XVIII. Cal.	XVI. Cal.
15	Idus.	XVIII. "	XVII. "	XV. "
16	XVII. Cal.	XVII. "	XVI. "	XIV. "
17	XVI. "	XVI. "	XV. "	XIII. "
18	XV. "	XV. "	XIV. "	XII. "
19	XIV. "	XIV. "	XIII. "	XI. "
20	XIII. "	XIII. "	XII. "	X. "
21	XII. "	XII. "	XI. "	IX. "
22	XI. "	XI. "	X. "	VIII. "
23	X. "	X. "	IX. "	VII. "
24	IX. "	IX. "	VIII. "	VI. "
25	VIII. "	VIII. "	VII. "	V. "
26	VII. "	VII. "	VI. "	IV. "
27	VI. "	VI. "	V. "	III. "
28	V. "	V. "	IV. "	Pridie " Mar
29	IV. "	IV. "	III. "	
30	III. "	III. "	Pridie Cal.	
31	Pridie Cal.	Pridie Cal.		

(7.) In leap-year the last seven days of February were reckoned thus:—

- |                                   |                              |
|-----------------------------------|------------------------------|
| 23. VII. <i>Calendas Martias.</i> | 27. IV. <i>Cal. Mart.</i>    |
| 24. <i>bisexto Cal. Mart.</i>     | 28. III. " "                 |
| 25. VI. <i>Cal. Mart.</i>         | 29. <i>pridie Cal. Mart.</i> |
| 26. V. " "                        |                              |

(a.) Hence in reducing a date of February in leap-year to the Roman date, for the first 23 days we proceed according to the preceding rule in 4, (b), as if the month had only 28 days. The 24th is marked as *bisexto Cal. Mart.*, and to obtain the proper expression for the remaining five days we regard the month as having 29 days. Thus the 27th of February in leap-year is  $29+2-27=4$ , and the proper Roman expression is *IV. Cal. Mart.*

(b.) On the other hand, to reduce a Roman date of February in leap-year to our date we reverse the above process, and during the Nones and Ides and until the *VII. Calendas Martias* we reckon the month to have only 28 days:—*bisexto Cal. Mart.* is set down as the 24th, and for the remaining days designated as *VI. V. IV. III.* and *pridie Cal. Mart.* we reckon the month to have 29 days. Thus *III. Cal. Mart.* is  $28-2=26$ , and  $29-1=28$ , and the given day is equivalent to the 28th of February.

(8.) The Latins not only said *tertio*, *pridie*, etc., *Clendas*, etc., but also *ante diem tertium*, etc., *Clendas*, etc.; and the latter form in Cicero and Livy is far more common than the former, and is usually written thus, *a. d. III Cal.*, etc.

(9.) The expression *ante diem* was used as an indeclinable noun, and is joined with *in* and *ex*; as, *Consul Latinus fērias in ante diem tertium Idus Sextilis edixit*. The consul appointed the Latin festival for the third day before the Ides of August. Liv. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum Idus Octōbris*. Id. So, *Ad pridie Nōnas Maias*. Cic.

(10.) The week of seven days (*hebdōmas*), was not in use among the Romans under the republic, but was introduced under the emperors. The days of the week were then named from the planets; *dies Sōlis*, Sunday; *dies Lūnæ*, Monday; *dies Martis*, Tuesday; *dies Mercūrī*, Wednesday; *dies Jovis*, Thursday; *dies Veneris*, Friday; *dies Saturni*, Saturday.

(11.) The term *nundina* (from *nōvem*—*dies*) denotes the regular market day at Rome when the country people came into the city; but it is not used for the purpose of denoting the period of eight days intervening between two successive market days.

(12.) The year at Rome was designated by the names of the consuls for that year. Thus Virgil was born, *M. Licinio Crasso et Cn. Pompeio Magno consulibus*, i. e. in the year of the consulship of Crassus and Pompey. But in Roman authors events are often dated from the year in which Rome was founded, which, according to Varro, was in the 753d year before the birth of Christ. This period was designated as *anno urbis conditæ*, and by abbreviation, *a. u. c.*, or simply *u. c.*, and sometimes by *a.* alone, before the numerals.

Thus the birth of Virgil was *a. u. c. 684*. To reduce such dates to our reckoning, if the given number is less than 754, we subtract it from the latter number, and the difference is the required year before Christ. The birth of Virgil therefore is  $754 - 684 = 70$  before Christ.—But if the number of the Roman year exceeds 753, we deduct 753 from the given number, and the remainder is the year after Christ. For example, the emperor Augustus died *a. u. c. 767*, and the corresponding year of our era is  $767 - 753 = 14$ .

## TABLES OF MONEY, WEIGHT, AND MEASURE.

### OF THE AS.

#### § 327.

The Romans used this word (*As*) to denote, I. The copper coin, whose value (in the time of Cicero) was about one cent and a half of our money. II. The unit of weight (*libra*), or of measure (*jūgērū*). III. Any unit or integer considered as divisible; as, of inheritances, interest, houses, etc.; whence *ex asse heredes*, one who inherits the whole. The multiples of the *As* are, *Dipondius* (*duo pondus*; for the *As* originally weighed a pound), i. e. 2 Asses; *Sestertius* (*sesqui tertius*), i. e.  $2\frac{1}{3}$  Asses; *Tressis*, i. e. 3 Asses; *Quatrussis*, i. e. 4 Asses; and so on to *Centussis*, i. e. 100 Asses. The *As*, whatever unit it represented, was divided into twelve parts or *uncie*, and the different fractions received different names, as follows:

	Uncia.		Uncia
As.....	12	Quincunx .....	5
Denarius.....	11	Triens.....	4
Deutrans.....	10	Quadrans, or Tētruncius.....	3
Dodrans.....	9	Sextans.....	2
Bes.....	8	Uncia.....	1
Septunx.....	7		
Quintus.....	6	Sescuncia.....	$1\frac{1}{2}$

The *Uncia* was divided in the following manner:—

1 <i>Uncia</i> contained	2 <i>Sēmunciae</i> .
"	" 8 <i>Duellæ</i> .
"	" 4 <i>Sicillæ</i> .
"	" 6 <i>Sextulæ</i> .
"	" 8 <i>Drachmæ</i> .
"	" 24 <i>Scrāpula</i> .
"	" 48 <i>Oboli</i> .

#### ROMAN COINS.

These were the *Tēruncius*, *Sembella*, and *As* or *Libella*, of copper; the *Sestertius*, *Quinārius* (or *Victōriānus*), and *Dēnārius*, of silver; and the *Aureus*, of gold.

		§	Cts.	M.
The <i>Tēruncius</i> .....		0	0	3.9
2 <i>Tēruncii</i> make 1 <i>Sembella</i> .....		0	0	7.8
2 <i>Sembellæ</i> " 1 <i>As</i> or <i>Libella</i> ....		0	1	5.6
2½ <i>Asses</i> * " 1 <i>Sestertius</i> .....		0	8	9
2 <i>Sestertii</i> " 1 <i>Quinārius</i> .....		0	7	8
2 <i>Quinārii</i> " 1 <i>Dēnārius</i> .....		0	15	6
25 <i>Dēnārii</i> " 1 <i>Aureus</i> .....		3	90	0

\* Sometimes also (in copper) the *triens*, *sextans*, *uncia*, *sextula*, and *dūpōndius*.

#### ROMAN COMPUTATION OF MONEY.

##### *Sestertii Nummi.*

	§	Cts.	M.
<i>Sestertius</i> (or <i>nummus</i> ).....	0	8	9
<i>Dēcem sestertii</i> .....	0	89	0
<i>Centum sestertii</i> .....	8	90	0
<i>Mille sestertii</i> (equal to a <i>sestertium</i> ).....	89	0	0

##### *Sestertia.*

<i>Sestertium</i> (equal to <i>mille sestertii</i> ).....	89	0	0
<i>Dēcem sestertia</i> .....	390	0	0
<i>Centum, centum sestertia</i> , or <i>centum millia sestertiūm</i> .....	3900	0	0
<i>Dēcies sestertiūm</i> , or <i>dēcies centēna millia nummūm</i> .....	39000	0	0
<i>Centies</i> , or <i>centies H. s.</i> .....	390000	0	0
<i>Millies H. s.</i> .....	3900000	0	0
<i>Millies centies H. s.</i> .....	4290000	0	0

N. B.—The marks denoting a *Sestertius nummus* are IIS., LLS., HS., which are properly abbreviations for 2 1-2 *asses*. Observe, also, that when a line is placed over the numbers, *centēna millia* is understood, as in the case of the numeral adverbs; thus, H S <sup>—</sup> is *millies centies HS.*; whereas HS <sup>—</sup> is only 1100 *Sestertii*.

#### ROMAN CALCULATION OF INTEREST.

The Romans received interest on their loans monthly, their highest rate being one per cent. (*centesima*), a month, i. e. 12 per cent a year. As this was the highest rate, it was reckoned as the *as* or unit in reference to the lower rates, which were denominated, according to the usual division of the *as*, *sēmisses*, *triēntes*, *quadrantes*, etc., i. e. the half, third, fourth, etc., of the *as* or of 12 per cent. according to the following table:—

	Per cent. a year
Asces āsūras or centēsimas.....	12
Sēmisses āsūras.....	6
Trientes āsūras.....	4
Quadrantes āsūras.....	3
Sextantes āsūras.....	2
Unciæ āsūras.....	1
Quincunces āsūras.....	5
Septunces āsūras.....	7
Beases āsūras.....	8
Dodrantes āsūras.....	9
Dextantes āsūras.....	10
Deunces āsūras.....	11

## ROMAN WEIGHTS.

		Os.	Dwt.	Gr.
Siliqua.....		0	0	3.086
3 Siliquæ make 1 Obolus.....		0	0	9.107
2 Oboli " 1 Scrupulum....		0	0	18.214
3 Scrupula " 1 Drachma.....		0	2	6.643
1½ Drachmæ " 1 Sextula.....		0	3	0.867
1½ Sextula " 1 Sticlicus.....		0	4	18.286
1½ Sticlicus " 1 Duella.....		0	6	1.714
3 Duellæ " 1 Unciæ.....		0	18	5.143
12 Unciæ " 1 Libra* (As)...		10	18	18.714

\* The Libra was also divided, according to the fractions of the As, into Deunx, etc.

## ROMAN MEASURES FOR THINGS DRY.

English Corn Measures.				
	Peck.	Gal.	Pint.	Sol. in
Ligula.....	0	0	0 1-48	0.01
4 Ligulæ make 1 Cyathus.....	0	0	0 1-12	0.04
1½ Cyathus " 1 Acetabulum....	0	0	0 1-8	0.06
4 Acetabula " 1 Hēmina.....	0	0	0 1-2	0.24
2 Hēminæ " 1 Sextarius.....	0	0	1	0.48
16 Sextarii " 1 Modius.....	1	0	0	7.68

## ROMAN MEASURES FOR THINGS LIQUID.

English Wine Measures.				
	Galls.	Pints.	Sol. in	
Ligula.....	0	0 1-48	0.117	
4 Ligulæ make 1 Cyathus.....	0	0 1-12	0.469	
1½ Cyathus " 1 Acetabulum.....	0	0 1-8	0.704	
2 Acetabula " 1 Quartarius.....	0	0 1-4	1.408	
2 Quartarii " 1 Hēmina.....	0	0 1-2	2.876	
2 Hēminæ " 1 Sextarius*.....	0	1	5.636	
6 Sextarii " 1 Congius.....	0	7	4.942	
4 Congii " 1 Urna.....	8	4 1-2	5.33	
2 Urnæ " 1 Amphōra (or Quadrantal).	7	1	10.66	
20 Amphōræ " 1 Cūlus.....	148	3	11.095	

\* The *Sextarius* was also divided into twelve equal parts, called *cyathi*, and therefore the cūlus were denominated *sextantes*, *quadrantes*, *trientes*, according to the number of *cyathi* which they contained.

N. B.—*Cūlus*, *congiarius*, and *dōlium*, are the names of certain vessels, not measures, of capacity.

ROMAN MEASURES OF LENGTH.

			English paces.	Feet.	Inch. Dec.
	Digitus transversus .....		0	0	0.725 1-4
1 1-5	Digitus make 1 Uncia .....		0	0	0.987
8	Unciæ " 1 Palmus minor .....		0	0	2.901
4	Palmi minores " 1 Pes .....		0	0	11.804
1 1-4	Pes " 1 Palmipes .....		0	1	2.505
1 1-5	Palmipes " 1 Cūbitus .....		0	1	5.408
1 2-3	Cūbitus " 1 Grādus .....		0	2	5.01
3	Grādus " 1 Passus .....		0	4	10.02
125	Passus " 1 Stādium .....		120	4	4.5
6	Stādia " 1 Milliārium .....		967	2	0

ROMAN SQUARE MEASURES.

	Roman sq. feet.	English rods.	Sq. pls.	Sq. feet.
Jūgērūm (As) .....	28,800	2	18	250.05
Deunx .....	26,400	2	10	188.85
Dextans .....	24,000	2	02	117.64
Dodrans .....	21,600	1	84	51.42
Bes .....	19,200	1	25	257.46
Septunx .....	16,800	1	17	191.25
Sēmis .....	14,400	1	09	125.08
Quincunx .....	12,000	1	01	58.82
Triens .....	9,600	0	82	264.85
Quādrans .....	7,200	0	24	198.64
Sextans .....	4,800	0	16	132.48
Uncia .....	2,400	0	08	66.21

REMARK 1. The Romans reckoned their copper money by *asses*, their silver money by *sestertii*, and their gold money by *aurei* and sometimes by Attic *talents*.

REM. 2. The *as*, as the unit of money, was originally a pound of copper, but its weight was gradually diminished, until, in the later days of the republic, it amounted to only 1-24th of a pound.

REM. 3. (a.) The *dēnārius* was a silver coin, originally equal in value to ten *asses*, whence its name; but, after the weight of the *as* was reduced, the *dēnārius* was equal to eighteen *asses*.

(b.) The *sestertius*, or sesterce, was one fourth of the *dēnārius*, or two *asses* and a half (*semistertius*). The *sestertius* was called emphatically *nummus*, as in it all large sums were reckoned after the coining of silver money.

(c.) The *aureus* (a gold coin), in the time of the emperors, was equal to 25 *dēnārii*, or 100 sesterces.

REM. 4. In reckoning money, the Romans called any sum under 2000 sesterces so many *sestertii*; as, *decem sestertii*, ten sesterces; *centum sestertii*, a hundred sesterces.

REM. 5. Sums from 2000 sesterces (inclusive) to 1,000,000, they denoted her by *mille, millia*, with *sestertiūm* (gen. plur.), or by the plural of the uter noun *sestertium*, which itself signified a thousand sesterces. Thus they said *quadrāginta millia sestertiūm*, or *quadrāginta sestertia*, to denote 40,000 sesterces. With the genitive *sestertiūm, millia* was sometimes omitted; as *sest. .um centum*, scil. *millia*, 100,000 sesterces.

REM. 6. To denote a million, or more, they used a combination; thus, *decies centēna millia sestertiūm*, 1,000,000 sesterces. The words *centēna millia*, however, were generally omitted; thus, *decies sestertiūm*, and sometimes merely *decies*. See § 118, 5. So, *centies*, 10 millions; *millies*, 100 millions.

REM. Some suppose that *sestertium*, when thus joined with the numeral adverbs, is always the neuter noun in the nominative or accusative singular. The genitive and ablative of that noun are thus used; as, *Decies sestertii dote*, With a dowry of 1,000,000 sesterces. *Tuo*, *Quinquagies sestertio*, 5,000,000 sesterces. *Id.* But this usage does not occur in Cicero.

## ABBREVIATIONS.

§ 328. The following are the most common abbreviations of Latin words:—

A., <i>Aulus</i> .	M. T. C., <i>Marcus Tullius</i>	Q., or Qu., <i>Quintus</i> .
C., <i>Caius</i> , or <i>Gaius</i> .	<i>Cicero</i> .	Ser., <i>Servius</i> .
Cn., <i>Cneius</i> .	M., <i>Manius</i> .	S., or Sex., <i>Sextus</i> .
D., <i>Decimus</i> .	Mam., <i>Mamercus</i> .	Sp., <i>Spurius</i> .
L., <i>Læcius</i> .	N., <i>Numerius</i> .	T., <i>Titus</i> .
M., <i>Marcus</i> .	P., <i>Publius</i> .	Tl., or Tib., <i>Tiberius</i> .

---

A. d., <i>ante diem</i> .	F., <i>Filius</i> ; as, M. F., <i>Pont. Max.</i> , <i>pontifex</i>	<i>maximus</i> .
A. U. C., <i>anno urbis conditæ</i> .	<i>Marci filius</i> .	Pr., <i>prætor</i> .
Cal., or Kal., <i>Calenda</i> .	Ictus, <i>iurisconsultus</i> .	Proc., <i>proconsul</i> .
Cos., <i>Consul</i> .	Id., <i>Idus</i> .	Resp., <i>respublica</i> .
Coss., <i>Consules</i> .	Imp., <i>impérator</i> .	S., <i>sacrum</i> , or <i>sénatus</i> .
D., <i>Divus</i> .	J. O. M., <i>Jovi, optimo maximo</i> .	S. D. P., <i>sacrum dicit plurimam</i> .
D. D., <i>dono dedit</i> .	N., <i>nepos</i> .	S. P. Q. R., <i>Sénatus populusque Romanus</i> .
D. D. D., <i>dat, dicat, dedicat</i> , or <i>dono dicat, dedicat</i> .	Non., <i>Nona</i> .	S. C., <i>sénatus consultum</i> .
Des., <i>designatus</i> .	P. C., <i>patres conscripti</i> .	Tr., <i>tribunus</i> .
D. M., <i>diis manibus</i> .	Pl., <i>plebis</i> .	
Eq. Rom., <i>eques Romanus</i> .	Pop., <i>populus</i> .	
	P. R., <i>populus Romanus</i> .	

To these may be added terms of reference; as, *c.*, *caput*, chapter; *cf.*, *confer* compare; *l. c.*, *loco citato*; *l. l.*, *loco laudato*, in the place quoted; *v.*, *versus*, verse.

## DIFFERENT AGES OF ROMAN LITERATURE.

§ 329. 1. Of the Roman literature for the first five centuries after the foundation of the city, but few vestiges remain. The writers of the succeeding centuries have been arranged in four ages, in reference to the purity of the language in the period in which they flourished. These are called the *golden*, *silver*, *brazen*, and *iron* ages.

2. The golden age is reckoned from the time of Livius Andronicus, about A. U. C. 514, to the death of Augustus, A. U. C. 767, or A. D. 14, a period of a little more than 250 years. The writers of the early part of this age are valued rather on account of their antiquity, and in connection with the history of the language, than as models of style. It was not till the age of Cicero, that Roman literature reached its highest elevation. The era comprehending the generation immediately preceding, and that immediately succeeding, that of Cicero, as well as his own, is the period in which the most distinguished writers of Rome flourished; and their works are the standard of purity in the Latin language.



3. The silver age extended from the death of Augustus to the death of Trajan, A. D. 118, a period of 104 years. The writers of this age were inferior to those who had preceded them; yet several of them are worthy of commendation.

4. The brazen age comprised the interval from the death of Trajan to the time when Rome was taken by the Goths, A. D. 410. From the latter epoch commenced the iron age, during which the Latin language was much adulterated with foreign words, and its style and spirit essentially injured.

5. The body of Latin writings has been otherwise arranged by Dr. Freund, so as to be comprised in three main periods,—the *Ante-classical*, *Classical*, and *Post-classical*. The ante-classical extends from the oldest fragments of the language to Lucretius and Varro; the classical from Cicero and Cæsar to Tacitus, Suetonius, and the younger Pliny inclusive; the post-classical from that time to the fifth century of our era. The classical Latinity is subdivided into (a.) *Ciceronian*, (b.) *Augustan*, (c.) *post-Augustan*, and to the language of the fourth and fifth centuries he has given the title of *late Latin*.

## LATIN WRITERS IN THE DIFFERENT AGES

(From the Lexicon of Facciolatus.)

### WRITERS OF THE GOLDEN AGE.

Livius Andronicus.	L. Cornelius Sisenna.	Q. Novius.
Lævius.	P. Nigidius Figulus.	C. Q. Atta.
C. Nævius.	C. Decius Laberius.	L. Cassius Hemina.
Statius Cæcilius.	M. Verrius Flaccus.	Fenestella.
Q. Ennius.	Varro Attacinus.	Q. Claud. Quadrigarius.
M. Pacuvius.	Titinius.	Coelius Antipater.
L. Accius.	L. Pomponius.	Fabius Pictor.
C. Lucilius.	C. Sempronius Asellio.	Cn. Gellius.
Sex. Turpilius.	Cn. Matius.	L. Piso, and others.
L. Afranius.		

Of the works of the preceding writers, only a few fragments remain.

M. Porcius Cato.	Sex. Aurelius Propertius.	P. Ovidius Naso.
M. Accius Plantus.	C. Sallustius Crispus.	Q. Horatius Flaccus.
M. Terentius Afer.	M. Terentius Varro.	C. Pedo Albinovannus.
T. Lucretius Carus.	Albius Tibullus.	Gratius Faliscus.
C. Valerius Catullus.	P. Virgilius Maro.	Phædrus.
P. Syrus.	T. Livius.	C. Cornificius.
C. Julius Cæsar.	M. Manilius.	A. Hurtius, or Oppius.
C. Cornelius Nepos.	M. Vitruvius.	P. Cornelius Severus.
M. Tullius Cicero.		

To these may be added the following names of lawyers, whose opinions are found in the digests:—

Q. Mutius Scævola.	M. Antistius Labeo.	Masurius Sabinus.
Alfenus Varus.		

Of the writers of the golden age, the most distinguished are Terence, Catullus, Cæsar, Nepos, Cicero, Virgil, Horace, Ovid, T. Livy, and Sallust.

## WRITERS OF THE SILVER AGE.

A. Cornelius Celsus.	M. Annæus Lucānus.	M. Fabius Quintiliānus.
P. Velleius Paternūlus.	T. Petronius Arbitr.	Sex. Julius Frontinus.
L. Junius Moderātus	C. Plinius Secundus.	C. Cornelius Tacitus.
Columella.	C. Silius Italicus.	C. Plinius Cæcilius Se-
Pomponius Mela.	C. Valerius Flaccus.	cundus.
A. Persius Flaccus.	C. Julius Solinus.	L. Annæus Florus.
A. Asconius Pediciānus.	D. Junius Juvenālis.	C. Suetonius Tranquil-
M. Annæus Seneca.	P. Papinius Statius.	lus.
L. Annæus Seneca.	M. Valerius Martiālis.	

The age to which the following writers should be assigned is somewhat uncertain:—

Q. Curtius Rūfus.	Scribonius Largus.	L. Fenestella.
Valerius Prōbus.	Sulpitia.	Atteius Capito.

Of the writers of the silver age, the most distinguished are Celsus, Velleius Columella, the Senecas, the Plinies, Juvenal, Quintilian, Tacitus, Suetonius and Curtius.

## WRITERS OF THE BRAZEN AGE.

A. Gellius.	Vulcatius Gallicānus.	Ammiānus Marcel-
L. Apuleius	Trebellius Pollio.	linus.
Q. Septimius Tertullia-	Flavius Vopiscus.	Vegetius Renātus.
nus.	Cælius Aureliānus	Aurel. Theodōrus Macro-
Q. Serēnus Sammoni-	Flavius Eutropius.	bius.
cus.	Rhemnius Fannius.	Q. Aurelius Symmachus
Censorinus.	Arnobius Afer.	D. Magnus Ausonius.
Thascius Cæcilius	L. Cælius Lactantius.	Paulinus Nolānus.
Cypriānus.	Ælius Donātus.	Sex. Aurelius Victor.
T. Julius Calpurnius.	C. Vettus Juvenus.	Aurel. Prudentius Clē-
M. Aurelius Nemesiānus.	Julius Firmicus.	mens.
Ælius Spartiānus.	Fab. Marius Victorinus.	Cl. Claudianus.
Julius Capitolinus.	Sex. Rūfus, or Rūfus	Marcellus Empiricus
Ælius Lamprius.	Festus.	Falconia Prōba.

*Of an Age not entirely certain.*

Valerius Maximus.	Terentiānus Maurus.	Sosipāter Charisius.
Justinus.	Minutius Fēlix.	Flavius Avianus.

The opinions of the following lawyers are found in the digests:—

Licinius Procūlus.	Herennius Modestinus.	Julius Paulus.
Neratius Priscus.	Salvius Juliānus.	Sex. Pomponius.
P. Juventius Celsus.	Caius.	Venuleius Saturninus.
Priscus Jabolēnus.	Callistrātus.	Ælius Marciānus.
Domitius Ulpianus.	Æmilius Papiniānus.	Ælius Gallus, and others

Of the writers of the brazen age, Justin, Terentianus, Victor, Lactantius and Claudian, are most distinguished.

The age to which the following writers belong is uncertain. The style of some of them would entitle them to be ranked with the writers of the preceding ages, while that of others would place them even below those of the iron age.

Palladius Rutilius Taurus Emiliānus.	Auctōres Priapeiorum.	Interpres Darētis Phrygii, et Dictyos Cretenſis.
Emilius Mācer.	Catalecta Virgīlii et Ovidii.	Scholiastæ Vetēres.
Messāla Corvinus.	Auctor oratiōnis Sallustii in Cic. et Cicerōnis in Sall.; item illius <i>Antiquum tractat in cæsibus</i> .	Grammatici Antiqui.
Vibius Sequester.	Auctor Epistolæ ad Octavianum.	Rhetōres Antiqui.
Julius Obséquens.	Auctor Panegyrici ad Pisōnem.	Medici Antiqui.
L. Ampelius.	Declamatiōnes quæ tribuuntur Quintiliāno, Porcio Latrōni, Calpurnio Flacco.	Catalecta Petroniāna.
Apicius Cœlius.		Pervigilium Venēris.
Sex. Pompeius Festus.		Poemata et Epigrammata vetēra a Pithæo collecta.
Prōbus (auctor Notarum.)		Monumentum Ancyranum.
Fulgentius Planciādes.		Fasti Consulāres.
Hyginus.		Inscriptiōnes Vetēres.
C. Cæsar Germanicus.		
P. Victor.		
P. Vegetius.		

## WRITERS OF THE IRON AGE.

Cl. Rutilius Numatiānus.	Latinus Pacātus.	Ruf. Festus Axiānus.
Servius Honorātus.	Claudius Mamertinus, et alii, quorum sunt Panegyrici vetēres.	Arātor.
D. Hieronȳmus.	Alcimus Avitus.	M. Aurelius Cassidōrus.
D. Augustinus.	Manl. Severinus Beathius.	Fl. Cresconius Corippus.
Sulpicius Sevērus.	Prisciānus.	Venantius Fortunātus.
Paulus Orosius.	Nonius Marcellus.	Isidōrus Hispalensis.
Cœlius Sedulius.	Justiniani Institutiones et Codex.	Anonȳmus Ravennas.
Codex Theodosiānus.		Aldhelmus or Althelmus.
Martiānus Capella.		Paulus Diaconus.
Claudius Mamertus.		
Sidonius Apollināris.		

# INDEX.

The figures in the following Index designate the Sections and their divisions: *a* stands for remark, *n* for *note*, *e* for *exception*, *w* for *with*, and *pr.* for *prosody*.

*A*, sound of, 7 and 8; nouns in, of 1st decl., 41; gender of, 41; of 3d decl. gender of, 66; genitive of, 68, 2; in acc. sing. of masc. and fem. Greek nouns, 79 and 80; in nom. acc. and voc. plur. of all neuter nouns, adjectives and participles, 40, 8; 83, 1; 85; 87; 105, 2; verbals in, 102, 6, (c.); change of in compd. verbs, 189; increment in, 3d decl., 287, 8; in plur., 288; of verbs, 290; ending the first part of compds., 285, *a*, 4; final, quantity of, 294.

*A*, *ab*, *abs*, how used, 195, *a*, 2, and 10; in composition, 196, 1, 1; before the abl. of distance, 236, *a*, 6; *ab*, *de*, or *ex*, with abl. of depriving, etc., 251, *a*, 1.

Abbreviations, 328.

*Abdico*, constr. of, 251, *a*, 2.

*Abest mihi*, 226, *a*, 2; *non multum abest quin*, 262, *n*, 7.

*Abhinc*, 253, *a*, 2.

Ablative, 87; sing. 3d decl., 82; of adjs. of 3d decl., 113; plur. 1st decl., 40, *a*, 6, and 43; 2d decl., 40, *a*, 6; 3d decl., 84; 4th decl., 89, 5; used adverbially, 192, 1, *n*; of character, quality, etc., 211, *a*, 6; after prepositions, 241; after compd. verbs, 242; after *opus* and *usus*, 243; after *dignus*, etc. 244; after *utor*, etc., 245, 1; after *mitor*, etc., 245, *u*; after parts denoting origin, 248; of cause, etc., 247; of means and agent, 248; of means, 249, 1; of accordance, 249, *u*; of accompaniment, 249, *u*; denoting in what respect, 250; after adjectives of plenty or want, 250, 2, (1.); after verbs of abounding, etc., 250, 2, (2.); after *fario* and *sum*, 250, *a*, 3; after verbs of depriving, etc., 251; of price, 252; of time when, 253; of place where, 254; of place whence, 255, 1; of place by or through which, 255, 2; after comparatives, 256; of degree of difference, 256, *a*, 16; abl. absolute, 257; how translated, 257, *n*, 1; equivalent to what, 257, *a*, 1; only with pres. and perf. parts., 257, *a*, 2; without a participle, 257, *a*, 7; with a clause, 257, *a*, 8; how it marks the time of an action, 257, *e*, 4; noun wanting, 257, *a*, 9.

Abounding and wanting, verbs of, with *abl.* 250 with *gen.* 220, (3.)

"About to do," how expressed, 162, 14, "about to be done," how expressed, 162, 14, *a*, 4.

*Abstineo*, *w*, *abl.*, 251, *n*; *vix* or *agere abstinco*, *quin*, 262, *n*, 7.

Abstract nouns, 26; formation from adjs. 101; their terminations, 101, 1 and 2, (3.); from verbs, 102.

*Abundo*, 250, (2.) *a*, 1.

*-abus*, *dat.* and *abl.* plur. in, 43.

*Ac* or *atque*, 196, 1, *a*, (b.) and 3, *a*; in stead of *quam*, 256, *a*, 15; *ac si* with subj., 263, 2, and *a*.

Acatalectic verse, 304, 3, (1.)

Accent in English, 16; place of secondary accent, 16, 1 and 2; in Latin, 14 and 15 of dissyllables, 14, 4; of polysyllables, 14, 5, and 15—written accents, 5, 2, and 14, 2. Accentuation, 14—16.

Accidents of nouns, 28, 7; of verbs, 141.

*Accipio*, *w*, part. in *dus*, 274, *a*, 7.

Accompaniment, *abl.* of, 249, *u*.

Accordance, *abl.* of, 249, *u*.

*Archicor* for *Archicorum*, 53.

*-acis*, genitives in, 78, 2, (1.)

Accusative, 87; sing., terminal letter of in masculines and feminines, 40, 2; plural, terminal letter of in *do.*, 40, 7; of 3d decl., 79; of Greek nouns, 80; plur. 3d decl., 85; *do.* of adjs. of 3d decl., 114; neuter in all declensions, sing. and plur., 40, 8; in *em* and *im*, 79; of Greek nouns in *im*, *in*, or *a*, 79, (b.) and 80; in *idem*, 80, *a*, 1. In *yn* or *yn*, 80, *u*; in *ea*, 80, *u*; in *ierm*, *eia*, *em*, or *en*, 80, *u*; neuter used adverbially, 192, *u*, 4, and 205, *a*, 10; acc. after verbs, 229—234; omitted, 229, *a*, 4; inf. or a clause instead of, 229, *a*, 5; of a person after *miseret*, etc., 229, *a*, 6; after *jurai*, etc., 229, *a*, 7; after neuter verbs, 232; after compound verbs, 233; after verbal nouns and verbal adjs., 233, *n*; of part affected, 234, *u*; a limiting acc. instead of the *abl.* in *partim*, *vicem*, *cetera*, etc., 234, *u*, *a*, 3; after prepositions, 235; of time and space, 236; of place, 237; after adverbs and interjections, 238; acc. as subject, 239; acc. of the thing supplied by the inf., 270, *n*; acc. *w* inf., 272; *do.* exchanged for the subjunctive

278, 8.—two accusatives after certain verbs, 230 and 231; acc. of thing retained in passive voice, 234; places supplied by infinitives, 229, n. 2; pred. acc. how supplied, lb. n. 4.

Accusing and acquitting, verbs of, constr., 217, and a. 4.

*Accuso*, constr., 217, and a. 2—5.

Acephalous verse, 304, 3, (8.)

*Acer*, declined, 108, 1.

*Achilles*, declined, 86.

*Acquiesco*, 245, II., 3.

Acute accent, 5, 2, and 14, 2; when used, 11, 8.

Active voice, 141.

Activo verb, 141; used impersonally, 184, 2. Object of act. verb, 229; two cases after, 229, n. 1; verb omitted, 229, n. 3.

*Ad*, how used, 195, n. 5; in composition, 196, 1, 2; construction of verbs compounded with, 224; *ad* used for *in*, 224, n. 4.

*Adile quod*, 273, n. 8.

Additions to simple subject, 202, 6, etc.; to simple predicate, 203, 5, etc.

*Adeo*, adv., 191, n. 5; *adeo non*, 277, n. 14.—verb, constr., 233, 3, and n.

*-ades*, patronymics in, 100, 1, (a.)

*Adest*, *qui*, with subj., 264, 6.

*Adhuc locorum*, 212, n. 4, n. 4.

*Adipisco*, w. gen., 220, 4 *fin*.

Adjectives, 104—131; classes of, 104, 1—15; declension of, 105; of 1st and 2d decls. 106—107; of 3d declension, 108—114; of three terminations, 108; of two terminations, 109, 110; of one termination, 111; their gen. sing., 112; their abl. sing. 113; their nom., acc., and gen. plur., 114; irregular, 115—116; defective, 115; redundant, 116; numeral, 117—121; cardinal, 117, 118; ordinal, 119, 120; multiplicative, 121, 1; proportional, 121, 2; temporal, 121, 3; interrogative, 121, 5; comparison of, 122—127; irregular comparison, 125; defective comparison, 126; derivation of, 128—130; composition of, 131; amplificative, 128, 4; patial, 128, 6; verbal, 129; participial, 130; composition of 131;—how modified, 202, II., 1, (2.); agreement of, 205; qualifying and limiting, 205, n. 1; modifiers or predicates, 205, n. 2; with two or more nouns, 205, n. 2; with a collective noun, 205, n. 3; sing. with a plur. noun, 205, n. 4; dat. of. for acc. in the predicate of acc. with the inf., 205, n. 6; without a noun, 205, n. 7; with infinitive, a clause, etc., 205, n. 8; in the neuter with gen. of their noun, 205, n. 9, and 212, n. 3; neuter adjs. used adverbially, 205, n. 10; gender of, when used partitively, 205, n. 12; in genitive with possessive adj. or pronoun, 205, n. 13; agreeing with the governing noun instead of the genitive, 205, n. 14; two or more with one noun, 205, n. 16; instead of an adverb, 205, n. 15; first, last, etc. part expressed by the adj. alone, 205, n. 17; agreeing with relative instead of its antecedent, 206, (7.); with gen. 218; w. gen. or abl., 213, n. 5; w. dat., 222; w. gen. or dat., 213, n. 6, and 222, n. 2; of

plenty or want with abl., 250, w. inf. 270, n. 1; place of, 279, 7.

Adjective pronouns, 134—139; nature of, 132, 5; classes, 134; agreement, 205.

Adjective clauses, 201, 7; how connected, 201, 9.

Adjective pronoun, 135, n. 1.

*Adjuvo* and *adjuvo*, constr., 223, n. 2, (2.) Admonishing, verbs of, w. gen. 218; their constructions, 218, n. 1 and 2; 278, n. 4.

*Adolescent*, its gender, 30; as a-j. how compared, 126, 4.

Adorning, verbs of, w. abl., 249.

Adonic verse, 312.

*Adulari*, constr., 223, n. 2, (b), and (1), (a.)

Adverbial correlatives, 191, n. 1;—clauses, 201, 7, 9.

Adverbs, 190, 2—194; primitive, 191; of place and order, 191, 1; correlative, 191, n. 1; of time, 191, II.; of manner, quality, degree, 191, III.; division of, 191, n. 2;—derivation of, 192; numeral, 192, II., 8, and 119; diminutive, 192, IV., n.; composition of, 193; signification of some adverbs of time and manner, 193;—comparison of, 194;—how modified, 277, 1; used as adjectives, 205, n. 11; w. gen., 212, n. 4; w. dat., 223, (1.); w. acc., 238; use of, 277; two negatives, force of, 277, n. 3—5; equivalent to phrases, 277, n. 8; of likeness, as connectives, 278, n. 1; place of, 279, 15.

Adversative conjunctions, 198, 9

*Adversus*, how used, 195, n. 7.

*Æ*, how pronounced, 9.

*Æqualis*, construction of, 222, n. 1.

*Æque* with abl., 241, n. 2; *æque ac*, 196, 3, n.

*Æqui boni facio* or *consulo*, 214, n. 1.

*Æquo* and *adæquo*, construction of, 214;

*æquo*, adj. w. comparatives, 256, n. 9.

*Ær*, acc. of, 80, n.; pr. 299, n. 3.

*Æolic* pentameter, 312, ix.

*Æs*, gender of, 61, 2; gen. of, 73, n. 2.

*Æstimo*, constr., 214.

*Æther*, acc., 80, n.; pr. 299, n. 3.

*-eus*, adjs. in, 128, 6, (h.)

*Æquum est*, ut, 262, n. 3, n. 3; *æquum erat*, indic. instead of subj., 259, n. 3; *æquum est*, with inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.

*Ætatim*, w. genitive, 212, n. 4.

*Æffluo*, constr., 250, 2, n. 1.

*Æfficio*, constr., 249, n. 1.

*Æfinis*, constr., 222, n. 2, (a.)

*Æger*, declined, 46.

Agent, verbal nouns denoting, 102, 6; dative of, 225, III., n. 1; 243, n. 1; abl. of, 248.

Agos of Roman literature, 329.

*Agnitus*, pr. 285, 1, n. 1.

*Agnominatio*, 324, 25.

*Ago* w. gen. of the crime, 217, n. 1;—age w. plur. subject, 183, 10;—*id agere* ut, 273, n. 1.

Agreement defined, 203, III., 6; of adjs., etc., 205; of relatives, 206.

*ai*, how pronounced, 9, 1.—*ai*, old gen. in, 43; quantity of the *a* in do., 283, n. 8.

*Aio*, conjugated, 183, 4; *ain* for *aisme*, 183, 4, n. 4; *ai*, ellipsis of, 209, n. 4; its place in a sentence, 279, 6.

*-al*, abl. of nouns in, 82; increment of, 287, n. (A.) 1.  
*Alcaic verse*, 304, 2;—greater, 318, III.; lesser, 318, IV.  
*Alcmanian verse*, 304, 2;—dactylic tetrameter, 312.  
*Alec.* gender of, 66; genitive, 70.  
*Ales.* gender of, 30 and 61, 2; genitive sing., 73, 2; gen. plur., 83, II., n. 2.  
*Alex.* gender of, 65, 2.  
*Alieno*, and *abalieno*, constr., 251, n. 3, and n.  
*Alienus*, constr., 222, n. 1 and 6.  
*Aliquanto*, 127, 2; 256, n. 16, (2).  
*Aliquantum*, 256, n. 16, n.  
*Aliquis*, declined, 138; how used, 138, 2, 207, n. 30.  
*Aliquo*, w. gen., 212, n. 4, n. 2.  
*Aliquot*, indeclinable, 115, 4; correlative, 121, 5.  
*Aliquoties*, correlative of *quoties*, 121, 5.  
*-alis*, adjs. in, 128, 2; how compared, 126, 4; *alis*, old adj., for *alius*, 192, II., 2.  
*Aliter*, from *alis* for *alius*, 192, II., 2.  
*Alius*, how declined, 107; how used, 207, n. 32; *alius—alius*, with plur. verb, 209, n. 11, 4; refers to more than two, 212, n. 2, n. 1, (b.); w. abl., 256, n. 14; pr. 283, 1, n. 4.  
*Allegory*, 324, 7.  
*Alliteration*, 324, 26.  
*Alphabet*, 2, 1.  
*Alter*, how declined, 105, 3; 107, and n. 2; gen. *alterius*, quantity of 283, I., n. 4, (b.); used for *secundus*, 120, 1; answers to *uter*, 139, 5, (1.), (b.);—*altero tanto*, w. comparatives, 256, n. 16.  
*Alteruter*, 107; 139, 5, (1.), (b.);—*alterutroque*, 107.  
*Altus* and *alto*, w. acc. of space, 236, and n. 2.  
*Ambi*, *amb*, *am*, or *an*, 196, (b.) and 1.  
*Ambio*, how conjugated, 182, n. 3.—*ambitus*, pr. 285, 2, n. 2.  
*Ambo*, how declined, 118, n. 1.  
*Amicus*, constr., 222, n. 2, (c).  
*Amo*, conjugated, 155, 156.  
*Amphibolia*, 325, 5.  
*Amplificatives*, nouns, 100, 4, (a.); adjectives, 104, 12; 128, 4.  
*Amplius*, with or without *quam*, 256, n. 6.  
*An*, 198, 11; use of, 198, 11, n. (d.), (e.); in double questions, 265, n. 2; *dubito an*, etc., 265, n. 3; *an—an*, 265, n. 2. *fin*.  
*Anacoluthon*, 323, 3, (b).  
*Anacreontic verse*, 304, 2;—iambic dimeter, 314, IX.  
*Anadiplotis*, 324, 17.  
*Analysis* of sentences, 281.  
*Anapaestic metre* 313; 303;—monometer, 313, I.;—dimeter, 313.  
*Anaphora*, 324, 13.  
*Anastrophe*, 323, 4, (1.).  
*Anas*, gen. of, 72, n. 1; pr. 300, n. 1.  
*Aneps*, gen. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 113, n. 8.  
*Anicle*, 93, 2.  
*Androgeos*, declined, 54, 1.  
*aneus*, adjs. in, 128, 3.  
*angor*, constr., 273, 6, n. 6.  
*Animal*, declined, 57.

*Animans*, gender of, 84.  
*Animo*, 250.—*animi* for *animo*, 220, 1; 213, n. 1, (a.)  
*Anio*, genitive of, 69, n. 2.  
*Anne*, in double questions, 265, n. 2;—*anne*, 1b.  
*Annus*, compds. of, 121, 3.  
*Antanaciasis*, 324, 12.  
*Ante*, w. superlatives, 127, 6; in composition, 196, I., 3; construction of verbs compounded with, 224; with titles, 255, n. 2; with comparatives, 256, n. 13, (b.);—*ante* and *post* w. acc. and abl. of time, 253, n. 1; w. *quam* and a verb, 253, n. 3; for *abinc*, 253, n. 2.  
*Antecedent*, 136; ellipsis of, 206, (3.), (4.), its place supplied by a demonstrative, 206, 3, (a.); in the case of the relative, 206, (6.), (b.); implied in a possessive pronoun, 206, (12); may be a proposition, 206, (13).  
*Antecedo* and *antecello*, constr., 256, n. 16, (3).  
*Antepenult*, 13; quantity of, 292.  
*Antequam*, constr., 263, 3.  
*Antimeria*, 323, 3, (1.).  
*Antiphrasis*, 324, 10.  
*Antiptosis*, 323, 3, (3).  
*Antithesis*, 322; 324, 27.  
*Antonomasia*, 324, 8.  
*-anus*, adjs. in, 128, 6.  
*Aorist tense*, 145, IV., n.  
*Apage*, 183, 10.  
*Aperitum est*, w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.  
*Aphæresis*, 322, 1, 2.  
*Apscior* and *adipiscor*, w. gen., 220.  
*Aplustræ*, nom. plur. of, 83 and 94, 4.  
*Apocope*, 322, 1, 7.—*Apodæsis*, 261.  
*Apollo*, gen. of, 69, n. 2.  
*Aposiopesis*, 324, 33.  
*Apostrophe*, 324, 35.  
*Apparet*, w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.  
*Appellative nouns*, 26, 3.  
*Appello*, constr., 230, n. 1.  
*Appetens*, w. gen., 213, n. 1, (2).  
*Appendix*, 322—329.  
*Apposition*, 204; to two or more nouns, 204, n. 5; to nouns connected by *cum*, 204, n. 5, (1.); to proper names of different genders, 204, n. 5, (2.); genitive instead of, 204, n. 6; 211, n. 2, n.; abl. with gen., 204, n. 7; of a proper name with *nomen*, etc., 204, n. 8; of a clause, 204, n. 9; of parts with a whole, 204, n. 10; 212, n. 2, n. 5; place of nouns in apposition, 279, 9.  
*Apprime*, 127, 2; 193.  
*Aptotes*, 94.  
*Apus*, constr., 222, n. 1 and 4, (1.); *apuis qui*, w. subj., 264, 9; w. gerund, 275, n. 1 and 3.  
*Apud*, 196, n. 6.  
*-ar*, nouns in, gender of, 66, 67; genitive of, 70, 71; abl. of, 82, increment of, 287, n. (A.) 1.  
*Arbitror*, in imperf. subj., 260, n. 2.  
*Arbor* (-os), gender of, 61.  
*Arceo*, w. abl., 251, n. 1.  
*Arcesso*, constr., 217, n. 1.  
*Archaism*, 323, n. (1).  
*Archilochian verse*, 304, 2;—penthemimeris, 312;—iambic trimeter, 314, v.; de

**Immeter, 314, VII.:**—heptameter, 318, IV.  
*Arena*, as gen. of place, 221, n. 3, (4.)  
*Argo*, genitive of, 69, n. 3.  
*Argos* (-*ei*), 92, 4.  
*Arguo*, constr., 217, n. 1.  
 Aristophanic verse, 304, 2.  
 -*arium* and -*arius*, nouns and adjs. in  
 110, 8; 123, 3; 121, 4.  
 Arrangement of words, 279; poetical, 279,  
 n. 4; of clauses, 230.  
*As*, declined, 57.  
*Asis* and thesis, 308.  
 Article, wanting in Latin, 41, n.  
 -*as*, genitives in, 43; nouns in of 3d decl.,  
 gender of, 62; genitive of, 72; gen. plur. of,  
 83, II., 4; in acc. plur. of Greek nouns of  
 3d decl., 85, n. 2.—*-as* and -*anus*, adjs. in,  
 125, 6; —*-as* final, quantity of, 300.  
*As*, value of, 327; how divided, 327;—  
 gender of, 62, n. 1; 72, n. 1; gender of parts  
 ending in *as*, 64, 2; *assis non habere*, 214,  
 n. 1.  
 Asclepiadic verse, 304, 2;—tetrameter,  
 316, III.  
 Asking, verbs of, with two accs., 231;  
 constr. in the pass., 234, I.  
*Aspergo*, 240, I. and n. 1 and 3.  
 Aspirate, 3, 1.  
*Asse pur*, ut, 273, n. 2.  
*-asse* for -*avero*, 162, 9.  
*assuesco* and *assuefacio*, w. abl., 245, II.;  
 w. dat., 245, II., n. 1.  
 Asyndeton, 323, I., (1.)  
 -*at*, roots of nouns in, 56, II., n. 5.  
*At*, conj., 198, 9; *at enim*, *atque*, 198,  
 9, (b.)  
 -*atim*, adverbs in, 192, I., 1.  
*Atque*, composition and meaning, 198, 1,  
 n. (b.) See *ac*.  
 Attraction, 206, (6.); 209, n. 6 and n. 8;  
 210, n. 6; 272, n. 3.  
*Attribuo*, w. participle in *duo*, 274, n. 7.  
 -*atus*, adjs. in, 128, 7.  
*Au*, how pronounced, 9, 2 and n. 2.  
*Audeo*, how conjugated, 142, 2.  
*Audio*, conjugated, 160; used like *appel-*  
*lor*, 210, n. 2; constr., 272, n. 1; *audes* for  
*audies*, 183, n. 3;—*audiens*, constr., 222,  
 n. 1.  
 -*aus*, nouns in gender of, 62; genitive  
 of, 76, n. 4.  
*Ausculto*, constr., 222, n. 2, (t), and (1.),  
 (a.)  
*Ausim*, 153, n. 1.  
*Aut* and *vel*, 198, 2, n. (a.); *aut* and *et*,  
 198, 2, n. (d.); *aut—aut*, 198, 2, n. (e.);  
*aut* with the singular, 209, n. 12, (b.)  
*Autem*, 198, 9; its position, 279, 3, n. 1;  
 allipsis of, 278, n. 11.  
 Authority, in prosody, 282, 4.  
 Auxiliary verb, 153.  
 -*ar* and -*at* in the 2d and 3d roots of  
 verbs 164.  
*Ava-us*, with gen., 213, n. 1.  
*Ave*, 183, 8.  
*Avidus*, with gen. 213, n. 1; w. gen. of  
 gerund. 275, (2.); w. inf. poetically, 270,  
 n. 1.  
*-ac*, nouns in, gen. of, 78, 2, (1.); adjs.  
 in, 179, 6; verbals in with gen., 213, n. 1.

## B.

*B*, roots of nouns ending in. 56, I.,  
 changed to *p*., 171, 2.  
*Balnearum*, plur. -*ea* or -*as*, 92, 6.  
 Barbarism, 325, 1.  
*Barbiton*, declined, 54, 1.  
*Belle, bellissime*, 192, IV. n.  
*Belli*, construed like names of towns, 221,  
 n. 3, *bello*, 253.  
*Bene*, derivation, 192, II., 1; constr. of  
 its compounds, 225, I.; *bene est*, w. dat.,  
 228, 1; *bene*, w. acc., 238, n. 2; with verbs  
 of price, 252, n. 3.  
 -*ber*, names of months in, how declined,  
 71 and 108.  
*Bes*, gen. of, 73, n. 2.  
*Bibi*, pr., 284, n., (1.)  
*Bicorpor*, abl. of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
*Biduum, triduum*, etc., *biennium*, etc.,  
 121, 2.  
 -*bitis*, adjs. in, 129, 4; how compared,  
 126, 4; with dative, 222, n. 1.  
*Bimestris*, 113, n. 1.  
*Bipes*, genitive of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113,  
 n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
*Bonus*, declined, 105, 2; compared, 125,  
 5; *boni consulo*, 214, n. 1.  
*Bos*, dat. and abl. plur. of, 84, n. 1; 236,  
 5; gender of, 30; genitive of, 76, n. 1; gen.  
 plur., 83, II., n. 1.  
 -*br*, roots of nouns in, 56, II., R. 3.  
 Brachycatalectic verse, 304, 3, (2.)  
 Brazen age of Roman literature, 329, 4.  
 -*brum*, verbals in, 102, 5.  
 Buccic caesura, 310, 6, n. 4.  
 -*bulum*, verbals in, 102, 5.  
 -*bundus*, adjs. in, 129, 1; comparison of  
 126, 5; with acc., 233, n.

## C.

*C*, sound of, 10; before *s* in roots of  
 nouns, 56, I., n. 2; in roots of verbs, 171, 1;  
 gender of nouns in, 66; genitive of, 70;  
 c final, quantity of, 299, 4; C for *Caius*,  
 I. q. *Gaius*, 323.  
*Celebs*, 112, 2; in abl. sing., 113, n. 2;  
 115, 1, (a.)  
*Cæsura*, 309; kinds of, 309; in hexameter  
 verse, 310, 3; caesural pause, 309, 3; in  
 hexameter verse, 4—6; in pentameter verse,  
 311, 2; in iambic verse, 314, I. and n.; in  
 trochaic verse, 315, 1; in choriambic verse,  
 316, III.  
*Calco*, change of *a* to *u* in its compds.,  
 189, n. 3.  
 Calendar, Roman, 326, 6.  
 Calends, 326.  
*Callidus*, 270, n. 1; 213, n. 1.  
*Canalis*, abl. of, 82, 5, (c.)  
*Cano recepui*, 227, n. 2.  
*Capaz*, w. genitive, 213, n. 1, (1.), and  
 n. 5, (1.)  
*Capio*, conjugated, 159; adjs. compound-  
 ed of, 112, 2.  
 Capital letters, how used by the Romans  
 2, 2; as numerals, 118, 7.  
*Caput* declined, 57; *capitis* and *capite*  
*damnare, accusare*, etc., 217, n. 3.

*Cardus* plur. -i and -a, 92, d.  
 Cardinal numbers, 117 and 118.  
*Careo*, 250, 2, r. 1.  
*Carmen*, declined, 67.  
*Caro*, gender of, 59, 8; gen. of, 69, s. 2;  
 gen. plur., 83, iii., 5.  
*Carthagini*, in abl. of the place where, 82,  
 s. 5. (c.)  
 Case-endings, table of, 89.—Cases of nouns,  
 86 and 87.—*Casus recti* and *obliqui*, 37, r.  
*Catachresis*, 34, 1. (b.)  
*Causa*, *gratia*, etc. with *mea*, etc., 247,  
 s. 2; their place with genitive, 279, s.  
 Causal conjunctions, 198, 7.  
*Cause*, abl. of, 247; after active verbs,  
 247, s. 2; acc. of with prepositions, 247,  
 s. 1.  
*Causo*, change of *as* in its compounds,  
 189, s. 3.  
*Cave* or *cave ne*, w. subj., 267, s. 3; 262,  
 s. 6.  
 -ce and -cine, enclitic, 134, s. 4.  
*Cedo*, constr., 223, s. 2, (1), (d.)  
*Cedo*, imperative, 188, 11.  
*Celer*, how declined, 108; gen. plur., 114,  
 s. 2.  
*Celo*, with two accs., 231; w. *de*, 231, s. 3.  
*Censo*, 273, s. 4.  
*Centena* millia, ellipsis of, 118, 5.  
*-ceps*, nouns in, gen. of, 77, s.; adjs. in,  
 genitive of, 112, 2; abl. of, 118, s. 2; s. 3.  
*Ceres*, genitive of, 73, s. 2.  
*Certe* and *certo*, 192, s. 1.  
*Certus*, 213, s. 1; 275, iii., (2); 270, s. 1.  
*Cetera* and *religua* for *ceteris*, 224, ii., s. 3.  
*Ceterum*, 199, 8, s., (b.)  
*Ceu*, w. subj., 263, 2.  
*Ch*, sound of, 10, 1; when silent, 12, s.;  
 in syllabication, 13, 2.  
 Character or quality, gen. of, 211, s. 6.  
*Chaos*, 61, s. 3.  
*Chelys*, declined, 86.  
*Choliambus*, 314, ii.  
 Choriambic metre, 316; 303;—pentame-  
 ter, 316, i.;—tetrameter, 316, ii.;—trime-  
 ter, 316, iv.;—trimeter catalectic, 316, v.;—  
 dimeter, 316, vi.  
*Cicur*, gen. plur. of, 114, s. 2.  
*Circum*, in composition, 196, 4.  
*Circumdo* and *circumfundo*, 249, s. 3.  
*Circumflex* accent, 5, 2, and 14; how  
 used, 14, 3.  
*Cis* and *citra*, constr., 235, s. 1.  
*Citior*, compared, 126, 1.  
*Citum*, pr., 284, s. 1, (2.)  
*Clam*, constr., 235, (5.)  
*Clanculum*, 192, iv., s.; 235, (5.)  
*Claudo*, its compounds, 189, s. 3.  
*Clause*, 201, 13; as the subject of a pro-  
 position, 202, iii., s. 2; as an addition to  
 the predicate, 203, ii., s. 3; its gender, 34, 4;  
 as the object of a verb, 229, s. 5; in abl.  
 absolute, 257, s. 8; connection of clauses,  
 198, i. and ii.; 278, s. 1; 280, iii.; arrange-  
 ment of, 280; similar clauses, 278, s. 1.  
*Climax*, 324, 21.  
 Clothing, verbs of, 249, i.  
*Celestis*, abl. of, 113, s. 1; gen. plur. of,  
 114, s. 3.  
*Calum*, plur. *cali*, 92, 4.

*Caus*, w. gen. of price, 214, s. 1, (b.)  
*Cepit* and *cepit sum*, 188, 2.  
 Cognate object, 232;—subject, 234, iii.  
*Cognitus*, pr., 285, 2, s. 1.  
*Cognomen* follows the gentile name, 279,  
 9, (b.)  
*Cognominis*, abl. of, 113, s. 1.  
*Cogo*, 273, s. 4.  
 -cola compounds in, gen. plur. of, 43, 2.  
 Collective nouns, 26, 4; number of *thai*  
 verbs, 209, s. 11.  
*Com* for *cum* in composition, 196, 5,  
 197, 5.  
*Comitis*, as abl. of time, 263, s. 1.  
 Common, nouns, 26, 3;—gender, 30;—  
 syllables, 292, 2; 283, iv., s. 2.  
*Commoneo* and *commonefacio*, constr.,  
 218; 273, s. 4.  
*Communis*, constr., 222, s. 2, (a.) and s.  
 6, (a.)  
*Commuto*, constr., 252, s. 5.  
*Compar.*, gen. plur. of, 114, s. 2.  
*Comparo*, constr., 224, s. 1, 3.  
 Comparative conjunctions, 198, 3.  
 Comparative degree, 122, 5; uses of, 122,  
 s. 1, 2, 3; formation of, 124; by *magis*,  
 127, 1.—comparatives declined, 110; abl.  
 sing. of, 113, 2; w. gen., 212, s. 2; denot-  
 ing of two, 212, s. 2, s. 1; w. abl., 256;  
 used pleonastically, 256, s. 12, 13.  
 Comparison, 25; of adjs., 122—127; de-  
 grees of, 122, 3; terminal, 124;—irregular,  
 125; defective, 126; by *magis* and *maxime*,  
 127;—of adverbs, 194.  
 Complex subject, 202, 1, 3, 6; complex  
 predicate, 203, 1, 3, 5; complex sentence,  
 201, 11.  
*Complures*, how declined, 110.  
*Compono*, constr., 224, s. 1, 3, and s. 4.  
*Compos* and *impos*, gen. of, 112, 2; abl.  
 of, 113, s. 2; 115, 1, (a.); pr. 300, s. 3.  
 Composition of nouns, 103;—of adjs.,  
 131;—of verbs, 188;—of adverbs, 193.  
 Compound verbs, how conjugated, 163,  
 4;—subject, 202, 4;—predicate, 203, 4;—  
 sentence, 201, 12;—metres, 318;—words, in  
 syllabication, 23;—nouns, declension of,  
 91; how formed, 103; quantity of compd.  
 words, 285.  
*Con*, adjs. compd. with w. dat., 222, s. 1;  
 verbs compd. with, w. dat., 224; w. *cum*,  
 224, s. 4.  
*Concedo*, constr., 273, s. 5; 274, s. 7.  
 Concessive conjunctions, 198, 4.  
*Concoro*, and *discors*, gen. of, 112, 2; abl.  
 of, 113, s. 2.  
 Concrete, nouns, 26, s. 2;—adjs., 171,  
 s.; used for abstracts, in expressions of  
 time, 253, s. 6.  
*Conditio*, in abl., 249, ii.  
 Conditional conjunctions, 198, 5.  
*Conduco*, with part. in *du*, 274, s. 7.  
 Condemning, verbs of, w. gen., 217.  
*Confero*, w. dat., 224, s. 1, 3.  
*Confuto*, w. abl., 245, ii.; w. dat., 245, s. 1.  
*Confiti*, 183, 12; 180, n.  
*Confinis*, 222, s. 1.  
*Congruo*, 224, s. 1, 3, and s. 4.  
 Conjunction, 25; 149, first, 155, 156  
 second, 157; third, 158, 159; fourth, 160



of deponent verbs, 161; periphrastic, 162; general rules of, 163; of irregular verbs, 178—182; of defective verbs, 183; of impersonal verbs, 184; regular and irregular verbs in the four conjugations, 184—177.—conjugations, how characterized, 149; remarks on, 162.

Conjunctions, 198; classes of, 198; coördinate, 198, 1.; subordinate, 198, 2.; enclitics, 198, 3.; copulative and disjunctive, their use, 278; use of coördinate and subordinate conj., 193, 1.; repeated, 278, 2.; when omitted between adjs., 206, 2. 18;—between words opposed, 278, 2. 6.

*Conjungo*, 224, 2. 1, 3, and 2. 4.

*Conjunctus*, 222, 2. 6.

*Coniur*, gender of, 30; gen. of, 78, 2, (5.)

Connecting vowel, 150, 5; omitted in 2d root, 163, 2; in verbal nouns, 102, 5, (b.); in verbal adjs., 129, 1 and 4, (b.); in compd. nouns and adjs., 103, 2. 1.; 131, 2.

Connection of tenses, 258;—of words by conjunctions, 278;—of clauses by do., 278, 2. 3.

Connectives, 201, 8, 9; place of, 279, 3.

*Conor*, 271, 2. 1.

*Consciis*, 213, 2. 1; 275, III., (2.)

*Consentaneus*, w. dat., 222, 2. 1, w. abl., 222, 2. 6; *consentaneum erat*, the indic. instead of the subj., 259, 2. 3, (a.); with inf. as subject, 269, 2. 2.

*Consentio*, w. dat., 224, 2. 1, 3.

*Consequor*, ut, 273, 2. 2.

*Conso*, 241, 2. 5.

Consonants, 3, 1; division of, ib.; double, 3, 1, 2; sounds of, 10—12.

*Consors*, 213, 2. 1.

*Constat*, w. inf. as subject, 269, 2. 2.

*Constituo*, 272, 2. 1.

*Obsto*, w. abl., 245, II., 5.

*Consuetudo est*, constr., 262, 2. 3, 2.

*Consuesco*, 245, II., 3.

*Contendo*, 273, 2. 1.

*Contentus*, w. abl., 244; w. perf. inf., 268, 2. 2.

*Conterminus*, w. dat., 222, 2. 1, (a.)

*Continens*, abl. of, 82, 2. 4, (a.)

Continental pronunciation of Latin, 6.

*Contingit*, conjugation, 184; w. ut, 262, 2. 8; w. dat. and inf., 262, 2. 3, 2. 1.

*Continuo*, 193, II., 1.

*Contra*, how used, 196, 2. 7.

Contracted syllables, quantity of, 283, III.

Contractions in 2d root of verbs, 162, 7.

*Convenerio*, 233, 2.

*Convenit*, the indic. for the subj., 259, 2. 8; w. inf., 269, 2. 2.

*Convincio*, 217, 2. 1.

*Copia est*, w. inf., 270, 2. 1, (c.)

Copula, 140, 4.

Copulative conj., 198, 1; repeated, 198, 2. (c.)

*Cor*, gender of, 61; genitive of, 71, 2. 2; compounds of, 112, 2.

Correlative adjs., 139, (2.), (3.); 104, 14;—adverbs, 191, 2. 1.

*Corvus*, declined, 87.

*Crasis*, 306, (5.) and 322.

*Crater*, genitive of, 71.

*Crede*, 272, and 2. 6;—*credere*, in the

sense of a pluperfect, 260, II., 2.;—*cre-*  
*dendum est*, 271, 2. 2.

*Creo*, *nascor*, etc., 246, 2. 1.

Crime, in genitive after verbs, 217.

*Crimine*, without a preposition, 217, 2. (b.)

Crude form or root, 40, 10.

*-crum*, verbals in, 102, 5.

*Ct*, initial, 12, 2.

*Cui* and *huic*, how pronounced, 9, 5; pr. 306, 2. 2.

*Cujus*, how declined, 139, 4, (b.)

*Cujus*, how declined, 137, 5; *cuiusmodi*, etc., 134, 2. 5.

*-culum*, verbals in, 102, 5; contracted to *-clum*, 102, 5, (b.)

*-culus*, a, um, diminutives in, 100, 3, and 2. 1, 2; 128, 5.

*Cum*, prep., affixed to abl., 241, 2. 1; 133, 2. 4; 136, 2. 1; how used, 196, 2. 11; w. abl. of manner, 247, 2; in composition, 196, 6.

*Cum* or *quum*, mood of the verb following it, 263, 5.

*Cum*, 'while,' 263, 5, 2. 3.

*-cumque*, used to form general indefinites, 191, 2. 1, (b.); 139, 5, 2.; composition and meaning, 139, 5, 2. 1; sometimes separated from *qui*, etc., 323, 4, (5.)

*Cumprimis*, its meaning, 133, II., 2.

*Cuncti* and *omnes*, w. gen. plur. 212, 2. 2, 2. 6.

*-cundus*, adjs. in, 129, 1.

*Cupido*, gender of, 59, 2. 2.

*Cupidus*, constr., 213, 2. 1; 275, (2.); 270, 2. 1.

*Cupio*, 271, 2. 4; *cupiens*, 213, 2. 1, (2.)

*Curo*, 273, 2. 1; 274, 2. 7; *cura ut*, 267, 2. 3.

*Curriur*, conjugated, 184, 2.

*Custos*, gender of, 30; 61, 3, genitive, 75, 2. 1.

## D.

*D* final in prosody, 239, 2; before *s* in roots of nouns, 56, 2. 1; in roots of verbs, 171, 3, and 2. 5.

*Da*, pr., 284, 2. 3, (b.)

Dactylic metre, 310 and 303;—trimeter, 312, vi.;—dimeter, 312, vii.;—hexameter, 310, i. Dactylic-iambic meter, 318, i.; dactylic-trochaic heptameter, 318, iv.;—tetrameter, 318, v.

*Dama*, gender of, 42, 2.

*Damni infecti satisdo*, etc., 217, 2. 3.

Dative, 37; sing. of 3d decl., 79. *plus* always like abl., 40, 6; exceptions in do 1st decl., 43; of 3d decl., 84; of 4th decl., 89, 5; used for predicate nom., 210, 2. 3; for gen., 211, 2. 5; *commodi et incommodi*, 222, 1 and 2; dative of the end, 227; dat. of the object, after adjs., 222; different constructions instead of, 222, 2. 4 and 6; after *idem*, 222, 2. 7; after verbs, 223—227; after verbs compounded with *ad*, *ante*, etc., 224; with *ab*, *ex*, *de*, *circum* and *contra*, 224, 2. 1 and 2; with *dis*, 224, 2. 3; with *satis*, *bene* and *male*, 225, 1.; dat. of the agent, 226, 2.

- and III.; of the possessor after *est*, 226; after particles, 228; dat. with the acc., 228, (1.); two datives after *sum*, etc., 227; wanting, 225, III., n.; *dativus ethicus*, 228, n.
- Datum*, pr., 224, n. 1, (2.)
- De*, 196, n. 12; with abl. instead of acc., 229, n. 5, (b.); 231, n. 8.
- Dea*, dat. and abl. plur. of, 43.
- Decebat*, indic. instead of subj., 259, n. 3.
- Decedo*, w. abl., 251.
- Decerno*, 273, n. 1 and 4.
- Decet*, conjugated, 184; its construction, 239, n. 7; 223, n. 2, (b.); indic. for subj., 259, n. 3.
- Declarative sentences, 200, 3.
- Declaro*, 230, n. 1.
- Declension, 38; parts of speech declined, 25, 3; of nouns, 38—40; rules of, 40; first, 41—45; exceptions in do., 43; paradigms of, 41;—second, 46—64; paradigms of, 46; exceptions in do., 52; third, 55—86; paradigms of, 57; exceptions in do., 68—85; fourth, 87—89; paradigms of, 87; exceptions in do., 89; formed by contraction, 89; fifth, 90; paradigms, 90; exceptions in, 90;—of adjs., 1st and 2d, 106—107; third, 108—111;—declensions, how distinguished, 88; tabular view of, 39.
- Dei*, pr., 224, 2, n. 1.
- Deest mihi*, 226, n. 2; pr., 306, 1, n. 1, (1.)
- Defective nouns, 94—96;—adjs., 115;—verbs, 183.
- Defendo*, 251, n. 2.
- Defero*, w. gen. of the crime, 217, n. 1.
- Deficior*, w. abl., 250, 2, n. 1.
- Defit*, 183, 13, and 180, n.; 226, n. 2.
- Deflecto*, 229, n. 4.
- Defungor*, 245, 1.
- Degree, acc. of, 231, n. 5; 232, (3.)
- Degrees of comparison, 122 and 123; inferior degrees, 123, 1; equal degrees, 123, 3; a small degree, 123, 2; superior degrees variously expressed, 127, 2, 3, 4.
- Dejoro*, 189, n. 3; pr., 285, 2, n. 1.
- Dein*, *deinceps*, *deinde*, pr., 306, 1, n. 1, (1.)
- Delectas*, conjugated, 184; its construction, 229, n. 7; 223, n. 2.
- Delector*, w. *quod*, 273, n. 6.
- Deligo*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1.
- dem*, enclitic, 134, n. 6.
- Demonstrative adjs., 104, 15; 139, 5, n.;—pronouns, 134; constr. of, 207; in apposition to a clause, 207, n. 22; 206, (3.); used when the reference is not to the subject, 208, (6.); place of, 279, 7; ellipsis of demonstratives before their relatives, 206, (3.), (a.); constr. of dem. adjs., 206, (16.); dem. advs. for dem. pronouns, 206, (20.); dem. pronouns *is*, etc., used for the oblique cases *him*, *her*, etc., 207, n. 20; redundant, 207, n. 21; dem. prons. and advs. announcing a proposition, 207, n. 22.
- Demoveo*, w. abl., 251, n.
- Denarius*, value of, 327, n. 3; divisions of, 1b.
- Denique*, its use, 277, 1, n. 13.
- Denominatives, adjs., 128;—verbs, 187, 1.
- Dens*, gender of, 64, 1; compds. of, 64, 1.
- Depello*, w. abl., 251, n.
- Dependence, defined, 208, III, 8; of tenses, 258.
- Dependent or subordinate propositions, 331, 6.
- Deponent verbs, 142, n. 4; conjugated, 161; participles of, 162, 17; lists of in lat. conj., 166; 2d conj., 170; 3d conj., 174 4th conj., 177; increment of, 289, 8.
- Deposco*, 274, n. 7.
- Depriving, verbs of, w. abl., 251.
- Derivation of nouns, 100;—of adjs., 128—of verbs, 187;—of advs., 192.
- Derivative words, quantity of, 234.
- Deses*, gen. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, n. 2 defective, 115, 2; compared, 123, 4.
- Desiderative verbs, 187, II., 8; 176, n. quantity of the u in, 284, n. 3.
- Designo*, with two accs., 230, n. 1.
- Despero*, constr., 224, n. 1.
- Desuper* and *insuper*, 235, n. 8.
- Deterior*, compared, 126, 1.
- Detereo*, *quis*, *ne*, or *quominus*, 262, n. 11; w. inf. ib. n.
- Deturbo*, w. abl., 251, n.
- Dezter*, how declined, 106; how compared, 125, 4.
- Deus*, declined, 53; *deum* for *deorum*, 53
- Di* or *dii*, 53; ellipsis of, 205, n. 7.
- di* or *-dis*, see *-dis*.
- Diacresis, 306, 2; mark of, 5, 2.
- Dialysis, 306, 2, n.
- Diana*, pr. 283, 1, n. 5.
- Diastole, 307, 2.
- Dico*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1; ellipsis of, 229, n. 3, 2; 209, n. 4; 270, n. 2, (b.); w. inf. and acc., 272, n. 1; w. ut, 273, 2, (c.); *dicunt*, 'they say', 209, n. 2, (2.); *dicor*, w. predicate nominative, 210, n. 3, (3.), (a.) and n. 1, cf. 271, n. 2; 272, n. 6; *dic*, imperative, 162, 4.
- Dicolon, 319, 2.
- Dicto audiens*, w. dat., 222, n. 1; *dicte* w. comparative, 256, n. 9.
- dicus*, words ending in, pr., 285, 2, n. 1.
- Dido*, declined, 86; genitive of, 69, n. 3.
- Dies*, declined, 90; its gender, 90, n. 1, compds. of with numerals, 121, 3; quantity of, 285, n. 4, n. 3, (6.)
- Difference, degree of, how expressed, 256, n. 16.
- Differo*, constr., 251, n. 3, n.; 229, n. 4, 1.
- Differing, verbs of, 251, n. 3.
- Difficile est*, the indic. for the subj., 259, n. 4, (2.); with an inf. as subject, 269, n. 2; with supine in *u*, 276, III., n. 1; w. *ad* and *a gerund*, 276, III., n. 4.
- Digne*, w. abl., 244, n. 1.
- Dignor*, w. abl., 244, n. 1; w. acc. of the person, ib.; w. inf., ib.; w. two accs., ib.
- Dignus*, w. abl. of the thing, 244; w. gen., 244, n. 2, (a.); w. acc. of neut. pron. or adj., 244, n. 2, (a.); w. inf. or a subj. clause, 244, n. 2, (b.); with relative and subj., 264, 9; w. supine in *u*, 276, III., n. 1
- Dimeter, 304, 2.
- Diminutive nouns, 100, 8;—adjs., 104, 11 128, 5;—verbs, 187, II., 4;—adverbs, 192, n.
- Diphthongs, 4; sounds of, 9; quantity of, 1P 4; 233, II.
- Diptotes, 94.

*Dis* for *dis*, 196, (b.), 2.  
*Dis* or *dis*, inseparable prep., 196, (b.), 2; construction of some verbs compounded with, 251, n. 3, n.; pr., 285, 2, n. 2.  
*-dis*, genitives in, 77, n. 1; *dis*, adj., gen. plur. of, 114, n. 3.  
*Discerno*, 251, n. 3, n.; in imperf. subj. for pluperf., 260, n., n. 2.  
*Discolor*, abl. of, 113, n. 2.  
*Discordo* and *discrepo*, 251, n. 3, and n.  
*Disertus*, pr., 284, n. 6, 2, n. 1.  
*Disjunctive conj.*, 196, 2.  
*Disideo*, constr., 251, n. 3, and n.  
*Disimilis*, 222, n. 1, and n. 2.  
*Distich*, 304.  
*Distinguo* and *disto*, 251, n. 3, and n.  
*Distributive numbers*, 119, 120; gen. plur. of, 105, n. 4; used for cardinal numbers, 120, 4;—for multiplicatives, 120, 4, (b.)  
*Distrophon*, 319, 8.  
*Dux*, compared, 194, 5.  
*Dves*, gen. sing. -112, 1; gen. plur., 114, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
Division of words into syllables, 17—23.  
*Do*, 149, n.; w. perf. participles, 274, n. 4; w. participles in *dux*, 274, n. 7; increment of, 290, n.; 284, n. 4.  
*-do*, nouns in, gender of, 59, 2; genitive of, 69, n. 1.  
*Docco*, 231, n. 1; w. gen. of price, 214, n. 1.  
*Doleo*, w. *quod*, etc., 273, n. 7.  
*Dominus*, declined, 46.  
*Domus*, declined, 89; different use of *domus* and *domi*, 89, (a.); constr. of gen., 221, n. 3; of acc., 237, n. 4; of abl., 255, n. 1; 254, n. 2.  
*Donec*, w. subj., 263, 4; pr., 299, 4, n.  
*Dono*, w. abl., 249, i., n. 1; w. two datives, 227, n. 1.  
*Dos*, gen. of, 61, 8; *dote dicare*, 227, n. 2.  
Double consonants, 3, 1.  
Doubtful gender, 30.  
*Dubito* and *non dubito*, 262, n. 7 and 8; *tubito an*, 193, 11, (e.); *dubito sit ne*, etc., 362, n. 8.  
*Duco*, constr., 214; 227, n. 1; 230, n. 1; in *numero*, or in *loco*, 230, n. 4; *duc*, imperat., 162, 4.  
*Dudum* and *jamdudum*, 191, n. 6.  
*Dum*, *duis*, etc., 162, 1.  
*Dum*, w. subj., 263, 2; *dum ne* and *dummodo ne*, 263, 2, n.; *dum*, 'until', 263, 4, (1.);—'while', 263, 4, (2.)—compounded with a negative, 277, n. 16.  
*Dumtaxat*, 193, n., 3.  
*Duo*, declined, 112; *duum* for *duorum*, 118, n. 1.  
*-dus*, participle in, how declined, 105, n. 2; of neuter deponent verbs, 161; with *sum*, 162, 15, neuter in *dum* with *est*, 274, n. 11; w. dat. of person, 162, 15, n. 6; 225, n.; of dep. verbs, 162, 17, (b.); w. acc., 234, n. 2; its signification, 274, 2, n. 7 and 8; used for a gerund, 275, 11.  
E.

66; genitive of, 63; abl. of, 83; old dat. in 79; acc. plur. in, 64, 5; nom. plur. in, 83, 1, 1; voc. in, 81, n.; in gen. and dat. sing. 5th decl., 90, n. 2; of 40, 11; advs. in, 102, 11; syncope in imperf. of 4th conj., 162, 2; increment in e of 3d decl., 287, 3; plur., 288; of verbs, 290; e ending the first part of a compound word, 235, n. 4; e final, quantity of, 295.—e or ex, prep., see ex.  
*-ea*, Greek acc. sing. ending in, 54, 5, and 80, 11.  
*Eapae*, etc., 185, n. 3.  
*Ecce*, compounded with demonstrative pronouns, 184, n. 2; w. nom., 209, n. 13; w. acc., 238, 2.  
*Eccum*, *eccillum*, *eccistam*, etc., 184, n. 2; 238, 2.  
*-ecis*, gen. in, 78, (2.)  
*Ecquis* and *ecqui*, how declined, 187, 3, and n. 3; *ecquae* and *ecqua*, 187, 3, n. 4; *ecquis est qui*, 264, 7, n. 2; *ecquid*, interrog. particle, 198, 11, and n. 3 and b.  
*Equisnam*, 137, 4.  
*Ectasis*, 307, 2, (3.)  
*Ecthipela*, 305, 2.  
*Edepo*, 199, n. 3.  
*Edico*, 273, n. 4.  
*Edim*, *edis*, etc., 162, 1.  
*-edis*, gen. in, 78, n. 1 and 112, 1.  
*Editus*, w. abl., 246.  
*Eto*, 'to eat,' conjugated, 181; compounds of, 181, n.  
*-eto*, abstracts in, 101, 1.  
*Edoceo*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1.  
*Efficio*, 273, n. 2;—*efficiens*, w. gen., 212, n. 1, (2.);—*efficitur*, w. ut, or the acc. with the inf., 262, n. 3, n. 2.  
*Effugio*, w. acc., 233, n. 1.  
*Egeo* and *indigeo*, 250, 2, n. 1; 220, 3.  
*-egis*, genitives in, 78, 2.  
*Ego*, declined, 133.  
*Eheu*, pr., 283, i., n. 5.  
*Ei*, how pronounced, 9, 1, and n. 1; genitive in, 73, n.; pr., 283, i., n. 6, (1.)  
*-eia*, verbals in, 102, 3.  
*-eis*, fem. patronymics in, 100, 1, (b.)—acc. plur. in, 85, n. 1, and 114, 2.  
*-eius*, pr., 283, i., n. 6, (3.)  
*Ejus*, use of, 208, (6.)  
*Ejusmodi* and *ejusdemmodi*, 139, 5, n. 2  
*-ela*, verbals in, 102, 3.  
*Elegiac verse*, 311, n. 2.  
*Ellipsis*, 323; of pronoun in case of apposition, 204, n. 4; of the noun of an adj., 205, n. 7; 252, n. 8; of the antecedent 206, (3.) and (4.); of *meus*, etc., 207, n. 36; of nom., 209, n. 2 and 3; of verb, 209, n. 4; 229, n. 3; of a noun limited by a genitive, 211, n. 8; of gen., 211, n. 9; of a partitive, 212, n. 2, n. 3; of subject acc., 239, 209, n. 1; of acc. after transitive verb, 229, n. 4; of prep., 232, (2.); 235, n. 5; 241, n. 4; 243, n. 3; of voc., 240; of *quam*, 256; of participle, in abl. absol., 257, n. 7; of ut w. subj., 262, n. 4; of ne after *cave*, 262, n. 6; of *non* after *non mod.*, etc., 277, n. 6; of conjunctions, 278, n. 6; of j in composition, 307 of *centena millia*, 227, n. 6.  
*-ellus*, a, um, diminutives in, 100, 3 n. 3.

- em* and -*es*, accs. in 45. 1: 80, iv.; -*em* in acc. sing. 3d decl., 79, 80.  
*Em*, 252, n. 1.  
*em* hatic word, its place in a sentence, 279, 2 and 16.  
*En*, interrogative particle, 198, 11, and n. (a.); 187, n. 3; *en*, interjection, 199; w. nom., 200, n. 13; w. acc. 238, 2; -*en*, acc. in 46, 1; 80, iv.  
*Enallage*, 323, 8.  
*Enclitics*, in accentuation, 15, 3; -*enclitics*, 198, n. 1.  
*Endeavoring*, verbs of, 273, 1, (a.)  
*-endus* and -*undus*, 162, 20.  
*English pronunciation of Latin*, 6.  
*Anim* and *nam*, 198, 7, and n.; 279, 2, (a.) and (c.)  
*Enimvero*, 198, 9, n. (a.)  
*Ennehemimeris*, 304, 5.  
*Ens*, participle, 154, n. 1.  
*ensis*, adjs. in 128, 6, (a.)  
*entissimus*, superlatives in 125, 3  
*-enus*, adjs. in 128, 1, (c.)  
*Eo*, conjugated, 182; compds. of, 182, a. 3; w. supine in *um*, 216, 11, n. 2; w. two latives, 227, n. 1.  
*-eo*, verbs in of 1st conj., 165, n. 3.  
*Eo*, pron. w. comparatives, 256, n. 16.  
*Es* adverb of place. w. gen., 212, n. 4, n. 2, (b.)—of degree, w. gen., 212, n. 4, n. 3. As an illative conj., 198, 6.  
*Eodem*, w. gen., 212, n. 4, n. 2.  
*eos*, Greek gen. in, 76, n. 7; 54, 5; pr., 238, 1, n. 6, (2.)  
*Epanadiplosis*, 324, 18.  
*Epanados*, 324, 19.  
*Epanalepsis*, 324, 16.  
*Epanaphora*, 324, 13.  
*Epanastrophe*, 324, 17.  
*Epanorthosis*, 324, 32.  
*Epenthesis*, 322, 3.  
*Epicene nouns*, 33.  
*Epistrophe*, 324, 14.  
*Epizeuxis*, 324, 20.  
*Epulor*, with abl., 245, 11, 4.  
*Epulum*, 92, 6.  
*Equality*, how denoted, 123, 8.  
*Eques*, gender of, 81, 2; used collectively, 209, n. 11, (1.), (c.)  
*Equidem*, its composition and use, 191, a. 4.  
*-er*, nouns in, of 2d decl., 46—syncopated, 43, 1; of 3d decl., gender of, 58 and 60; genitive of, 70 and 71; syncopated, 71;—adjectives in, superlative of, 125; annexed to pres. infn. pass., 162, 6.  
*Erga*, how used, 196, n. 7.  
*-ere*, in 3d pers. plur. of perf. indie. active, 162, 8.  
*-eris*, genitives in, 76; 73, n. 2; 74, n. 1; and 112, 1 and 2.  
*Ergo*, w. gen., 247, n. 2, (a.)  
*Erotesis*, 324, 31.  
*-erimus*, superlatives in, 125, 1.  
*-es*, proper names in, 44, 1; -*es* and -*e* in v. nouns changed to a, 46, 3; nouns in of 3d decl. increasing in genitive, gender of, 58; 61; genitive of, 73; genitive of adjs. in, 112; not increasing, gender of, 62; genitive of, 73; in num., acc., and voc. plur. of masc. and fem. nouns of 3d decl., 83, 1; 85 final, sound of, 3, n. 2; quantity of, 306.  
*Escit*, 154, n. 4.  
*Ese* and *uisse*, ellipsis of, 270, n. 3.  
*-esso*, -*isso* or -*so*, intensives in, 187, n., b.  
*Est*, w. dat. of a possessor, 226; *est*, *quis*, with subj., 264, 6; so *est*, *unde*, *ubi*, *cur*, *quid*, *ut*, 264, 6, n. 3.  
*Et* and *que*, 198, 1, n. (a.); *et ipse*, 207, n. 27, (b.); ellipsis of *et*, 273, n. 6, (b.); *etia*, *et id*, *et id quidem*, 207, n. 26, (c.); *et—et*—*que*, *et—neque* or *acc*, 198, 1, n. (a.) *et nom*, 198, 1, (c.)  
*Etenim*, 198, 7, n. (a.)  
*Etiā*, 198, 1, n. (d.); with comparatives 256, n. 9, (b.); 127, 3; *etiānum*, *etiānum*, 191, n. 7.  
*-itis*, genitive in, 73; 112, 1.  
*Etiā* and *etiānum*, constr., 271, n. 2.  
*-etum*, derivative nouns in, 100, 7.  
*Etymology*, 24—199.  
*Eu*, the diphthong, 9, 3; when not a diphthong, 9, 3, n. 3; in voc. sing. of Greek nouns in *eus*, 81.  
*Euphemism*, 224, 11.  
*Eus*, nouns in of 2d decl., 54, 5;—adjs. in, 128, 1 and 2; Greek proper names in, 238, n. 2; gen. of, 76, n. 7; acc. of, 80, 111.  
*-ev* and -*etv*, in 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 167.  
*Evado*, constr., 251, n.  
*Evenit*, conjugated, 184; *evenit ut*, 203, n. 3.  
*Ex* and *e*, prep., how used, 195, n. 2 and 18;—used with participles instead of the genitive, 212, n. 4; sometimes omitted, 251, and n. 1; *ex quo*, *scilicet tempore*, 253, n. 4.  
*-ex*, gender of nouns in, 65, 2.  
*Exalversus*, w. acc., 195, n. 3.  
*Excello*, w. acc., 233, (8), n.  
*Excello*, constr., 256, n. 16, (8.)  
*Excito*, w. ut, 273, n. 4.  
*Excludo*, constr., 251, n.  
*Exeo*, constr., 251, n.  
*Existimo*, w. gen., 214; w. two accs., 230, n. 1; *existimor*, constr., 271, n. 2.  
*Exlez*, 112, 2; 196, 1, 6.  
*Eros*, genitive of, 112, 2.  
*Erosus*, 183, 1, n.  
*Existens* *quis*, w. subj., 264, 6.  
*Exter*, 106, 3, and n.; comparison of, 125, 4.  
*Expedio*, 251, n.; *expedit*, w. dat., 233, n. 2, (b.)  
*Exterior* *si*, 198, 11, (c.)  
*Expers*, w. gen., 213, n. 1, (8.), and n. 5, (2.)  
*Exemplo*, 198, 4, and 11, 1.  
*Extrema*, how compared, 125, 4; *extremum*, how used, 206, n. 17; *extremum est*, ut, 262, n. 3.  
*Exuo*, constr., 224, n. 2; *exuor*, 234, 1, n. 1.  

F.

*Fabula*, ellipsis of, 29, 2.  
*Fac*, imperative, 132, 4; *fac ut* or *ne*, 237, n. 3; *fac*, 'suppose or granting,' w. acc. and inf., 273, n. 3; pr., 299, n. 4.

*Muile*, adv 192, 4. (b.); w. superlatives, etc., 277, R. 7.

*Facilis*, constr., 276, III., R. 4; 222, R. 1. (a.)

*Fario* and compds., passive of, 180 and n.; shanges of in the compds., 189, n. 1. w. gen. of value, 214, R. 2; w. two accs., 230, n. 1; w. abl., 250, R. 3; w. *ut* and subj., 273, 1, n. 2 and 3; w. participle, 273, 1; w. *de*, etc., 250, R. 3; *facere non possum* quin, 262, 2; *facere quod*, 273, n. 8; ellipsis of, 209, R. 4; *facere certiorum*, 230, n. 8.

Faliscan verse, 312, xi.

*Fallit me*, 229, R. 7.

*Familia* with *pater*, etc., gen. of, 43, 2.

*Familiaris*, w. dat., 222, R. 1. (a.); with gen., 222, R. 2. (c.)

*Fas*, its root, 56, II., R. 6; gen. of, 71, R. 2; abl., 82, R. 1. (b.); 94 and 96.

*Fas*, gender of, 62, R. 2; 94; *fas erat*, the indic. instead of the subj., 259, R. 3; *fas est*, w. supine in *u*, 276, III., R. 2.

*Fazo*, *fazim* and *fazem*, 162, 9, and 183, R. 1.

*Fauz*, geritive of, 78, 2. (5.); but cf. 94, p. 50, gen. plur., 83, II., 3.

*Favetur*, conjugated, 184, 2. (b.) constr., 223.

Fearing, verbs of, w. *ut* and *ne*, 262, R. 7. *Febris*, ellipsis of, 205, R. 7. (1.)

*Fecundus*, w. gen. or abl., 213, R. 5. (3.)

Feet, in poetry, 302; isochronous, 302, R. *Fel*, its root, 56, II., R. 6; its genitive, 70, R.; 94.

*Felix*, declined, 111; 213, R. 4. (1.)

*Femina*, added to epicene nouns, 33, n.

Feminine nouns, of 1st decl., 41; of 2d decl., 49—51; of 3d decl., 62; exceptions in, 62—65.

*Femur*, genitive of, 71, 3.

*Fer*, 162, 4; quantity of, 299, R. 4.

*Fero*, conjugated, 179; its compds., 172. (p. 134); *fertur*, constr. of, 271, R. 2.

*-ficus*, comparison of adjs. in, 126, 3. (a.)

*Fido*, how conjugated, 142, R. 2; w. abl., 245, II.; w. dat., 245, II., R. 1; 223, R. 2.

*Fidi*, (from *findo*), pr., 284, R. 1. (1.)

Figures of prosody, 305—307; of orthography and etymology, 322; of syntax, 323; of rhetoric, 324.

*Filia*, dat. and abl. plur., 43.

*Filius*, voc. sing., 52.

Filling, verbs of, w. abl., 249, I.; w. gen., 20, 3.

Final syllables, quantity of, 294—301;—conjunctions, 193, 8.

*Finimus*, w. dat., 222, R. 1. (a.)

*Fio*, conjugated, 180; w. gen. of value, 114, R. 2; w. two datives, 227, R. 1; *fit* and *feri non potest* ut, 262, R. 3; *fit per me*, 103, R. 11; quantity of in *fio*, 283, R. 1.

*Flagito* w. two accs., 231, R. 1; w. *ut*, 173, R. 4.

*Flecto*, used reflexively, 229, R. 4, 1.

*Flicci habere*, etc., 214, R. 1.

*Fluo* and *struo*, 2d and 3d roots of, 171, n.

Follow, in what sense used, 203, 9.

*Fons*, gender of, 64, 1.

*Foras* and *foris*, 237, n. 5. (c.)

*Forem*, *fore* etc., 154 R. 3; 162, 12, (1.); v two datives, 227, R. 1.

Fractional expressions, 121, 6.

Freeing, verbs of, 251.

*Frenum*, plur. *freni* and *frena*, 92, 5.

*Frequens*, w. gen. or abl., 213, R. 5. (4.); cf. R. 4. (1.)

Frequentative verbs, 187, II., 1; quantity of in, 284, R. 4.

*Fretus*, w. abl., 244; w. dat., 222, R. 6; w. inf., 244, R. 2. (b.)

*Fructus*, declined, 87.

*Frugi*, 115, 4; comparison of, 125, 5.

*Fruor*, w. abl., 245, I.; w. acc., 245, I. n.

*Fruz*, genitive of, 78, 2. (5.); 94.

*Fugio*, constr., 225, IV.; 210, R. 3, (2.), *fuge*, poetically, w. inf., 271, n. 3; *fugit me*, 229, R. 7.

*Fui*, etc., in compound tenses, 162, 12. (1.); *fuisse*, w. perf. pass. participle, 263, R. 1. (b.)

*Fungor*, w. abl., 245, I.; w. acc., 245, R., 275, II., R. 1.

*Fuo*, root of *fui*, 154, R. 2 and 3; *futurum*, pr., 284, R. 1. (2.) (b.)

*Furo*, 183, R. 2.

*Furor*, w. dat. or abl., 224, R. 2.

Future tense, 145, III.; how supplied in the subj., 290, R. 7; future perfect tense, 145, VI.; old form in *so*, 162, 9 and 10; future indic. for imperative, 267, R. 2; 259, R. 1. (4.); fut. imperative, 267, (2.), (3.); future pass. part. w. acc., 234, I., R. 2, fut. perf. for fut., 259, R. 1. (5.)

*Futurum esse* or *fore*, w. subj., 266 R. 4. (b.); *futurum fuisse*, *ut*, 268, R. 5.

## G.

G, sound of, 10; before s in roots o nouns, 56, R. 2; in roots of verbs, 171, 1 and R. 5.

Galliambus, 314, x.

*Gaudro*, how conjugated, 142, R. 2; with abl., 247, 1. (2.); w. acc., 232, n. 1; with *quod*, etc., 273, n. 6.

*Gemo*, w. acc., 232, n. 1.

Gems, gender of names of, 29.

*-gena*, compounds in, 43, 2.

*Gener*, declined, 46.

General relatives, 189, 5, R.; how used, 207, R. 29.

General indefinites, 139, 5, R.

Gender, 26, 7 and 27; its divisions, 27; general rules of, 27—34; natural and grammatical, 27; masc. from signification, 28; fem. from do., 29; common and doubtful, 30; epicene, 33; neuter appellatives of persons, 32, 2; of Greek nouns, 34, R. 1; neuter, 34; of 1st decl., 41; exes in 1st decl., 42; of 2d decl., 46; exes in 2d decl., 49; of 3d decl., 58, 62, and 66; exes in 3d decl., 59—67; of 4th decl., 87; exes in 4th decl., 88; of 5th decl., 90; exes in 5th decl., 90, gender of adjs., 205.

*Genero*, w. abl., 246, R. 1; *generatus*, w. abl., 246.

Genitive 37; sing., 1st decl., exes in, 43; of 3d decl., 68; of adjectives, 3d decl., 112 plur., 1st decl., contracted, 43; 2d decl., do., 53; 3d decl., 83; terminal letters in all the declensions, 40, 5; of adjectives, 3d

decl., 112 and 114; after nouns, 211; its place 279. *n.*: what relations it denotes. 211. *a.* 1; subjective and objective. 211. *a.* 2; of substantives pronouns objective. 211. *a.* 3; possessive adjective used for, 211. *a.* 4; dative used for, 211. *a.* 5; of character or quality. 211. *a.* 6; of measure, 211. *a.* 6, and (8.) and (6.). noun limited by, omitted, 211. *a.* 7; wanting, i.e. the predicate after *sum*, 211. *a.* 8; in other cases, 211. *a.* 8, (4.); omitted, 211. *a.* 9; two genitives, 211. *a.* 10; gen. after *opus* and *usus*, 211. 11; how translated, 211. *a.* 12; after participles, 212; after a neuter adjective or adj. pronoun, 212. *a.* 3; its place, 279. 10; after adverbs, 212. *a.* 4; after adjectives, 213; of *causa* or *rescra*, 213. *a.* 2; different constructions instead of, 213. *a.* 4; after *dignus* and *indignus*, 244. *a.* 2; after verbs, 214—220; after *sum*, and verbs of valuing, 214; of crime, 217; after verbs of admonishing, 218; after verbs denoting an affection of the mind, 220; instead of abl. after verbs of abounding, etc., 220, 3; instead of predicate acc., 230. *n.* 4; of place, 221; after particles, 221. *ii.*, *iii.*; of gerunds, 275. *iii.*, *a.* 1; plur. depending on a gerund, 275. *a.* 1, (3.); place of, after neuter adjectives, 279, 10.

Genitives, two, limiting the same noun, 211. *a.* 10.

*Genitus*, w. abl., 246.

*Genius*, voc. sing., 52.

*Gentium*, 212, *a.* 4, *n.* 2.

*Genus*, in acc. instead of the gen. or abl., *ns.* *id genus, omne genus*, etc., 234. *ii.*, *n.* 2; *fin.*: 211, *a.* 6, (4.); 231, *a.* 6; used with the genit. instead of an apposition, 211, *a.* 2. *n.*

*Georgicon*, 54, 4.

*Gerro* and *fero*, compounds of, in nouns of 2d decl., 47; in adjs. of 1st and 2d decls., 106. 3; not compared, 127, 7.

Gerundives, defined, 275, *a.* 2; how used, 275. *ii.*

Gerunds, 25, and 148. 2; by what cases followed, 275; and gerundives, genitive of, 275. *iii.*, *n.* 1; nouns which they follow, *ib.* 1.; adjectives, *ib.* (2.); after *sum* denoting tendency, 275. (5.); instead of a noun in apposition 211. *n.* 2, *n.*: dat. of, 275, *a.* 2; acc. of, 275, *a.* 3; abl. of, 275, *a.* 4; infin. for. after adj., 270, *a.* 1. (*a.*)

*Gigno*, pr., 284, *n.* 3.

*Gl.* *it*, and *thl.* in syllabication, 18, 3.

*Glorior*, with abl., 247, 1, (2.); w. acc., 282, *n.* 1, and (3.)

Glyconic verse, 304. 2; 316, *iv.*

*Gn.* initial, 12, *n.*

*Gnarus*, w. gen., 213, *a.* 1; cf. *n.* 4. (1.)

*Go.* nouns in, gender of, 59, 2; genitive *vi*, 59, *n.* 1.

Golden age, of Roman literature, 329, 2.

Government defined, 203, 7.

Grammatical subject, 202, 2; cases of, 202. *a.* 4; predicate, 203, 2; figures, 322.

*Gratia*, w. gen., 247, *a.* 2; its place, 279, *n.*; *gratias ago*, constr., 273, *n.* 6.

*Gratum mihi est, quod*, 273, *n.* 6.

*Gratulator*, constr., 273, *n.* 7.

Grave accent, 5, 2, and 4, 2; 15. *n.* 8.

*Gravidus* and *gravis*, w. gen. or abl. 213, *a.* 5, (3.)

Greek nouns, gender of, 34, *n.* 1; terminal nations of in 1st decl., 44; in 2d decl., 54 terminations of in 3d decl., 55, *n.*; acc. of, in 3d decl., 80; declension of, in do., 86

Greek or limiting acc., 234, *a.* 2

*Grex*, gender of, 65, 2; genitive of 73, 2, (2.)

*Grus*, gender of, 30; genitive of, 73, *n.* 3  
Guilt and innocence, adjectives of, with gen., 217, *n.* 1.

## H.

*H.*, its nature, 2, 6; its place in syllabication, 18, 1; before *s* in verbal roots, 171 1; in prosody, 283, *i.*, (b.)

*Habeo*, with two accs., 230, *n.* 1; *habere* in *numeri* or in *loco*, 230, *n.* 4; w. gen. of value, 214, *i.* 2; w. abl. of price, 252, *n.* 1; w. two datives, 227, *n.* 1; w. participle *perip.* pass., 274, *n.* 4; w. participle in *ius*, 274, *n.* 7, (*a.*); *habeo, non habeo, or nihil habeo quod*, w. subj., 264, *n.* 3; *haberi*, w. predicate nom., 210, *n.* 3, (3.), (*c.*); 271, *n.* 2 and *n.* 4.

*Habito*, w. gen. of price, 214, *n.* 1; w. abl. of, price, 252, *n.* 1.

*Hac* in answer to *qua*? 191, *a.* 1, (*c.*)

*Hactenus*, adv. of place and time, 191 *n.* 1, (*g.*)

*Hadria*, gender of, 42, 2.

*Hæc*, for *hæ*, 134, *n.* 1.

*Haud*, signification and use, 191, *n.* 3; *haud multum abest quin*, 262, *n.* 7; *hausa scio an*, 198, 11, *n.* (e.)

*Hebes*, gen. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, *a.* 3; defective, 115, 2.

*Hei mihi*, 223, 3.

*Hellenism*, 323, *n.* (2.)

*Hem.* w. dat., 228, 3; w. acc., 238, 2; w. voc., 240, *n.* 1.

Hemistich, 304.

Hemiolius, 304, 5.

Hendiadys, 323, 2, (8.)

*Hepar*, genit. of, 71; abl. of, 82, *n.* 1, (b.)

Hepththemimeris, 304, 5.

*Heres*, gender of, 31, 2; genitive, 73 *n.* 1.

Heroic caesura, 310, 4 and 5.

*Heros*, genitive, 75, 2; acc., 80, *n.*: 1st plur., 84; acc. plur., 85, *n.* 2; declined, 30

Heteroclitc nouns, 93.

Heterogeneous nouns, 34, *n.* 2; 92.

Heterosia, 323, 3, (2.)

Hexameter verse, 310; Priapean, 310, *ii.*

H hiatus, 279, 13.

*Hibernus*, pr., 284, *n.* 5. *n.* 2.

*Hic*, pron., declined, 184; distinguished from *ille*, 207, *n.* 23; *hic-hic*, for *hic-ille*, 207, *n.* 23, (b.); related in time like *num* and *tunc*. *ib.* (c.)

*Hic*, adv. of place, *hic, hinc, huc*, etc. referring to the place of the speaker, 191, *n.* 1, (c.); w. gen., 212, *n.* 4, *n.* 2, (b.); adv. of time, 191, *n.* 1, (*g.*)

Him, her, etc., how expressed in Latin 207, *n.* 20.

**Hipponactic trimeter**, 314, i.; **tetrameter**, 314, iv.  
**Historical present**, 145, i., 8; **perfect**, 145, iv., r.; for the pluperfect, 259, r. 1, (d.); **infinitive**, 209, r. 5; **tenses**, 258.  
*Hoc*, pleonastic, 207, r. 21 and 22; *hoc* w. *putative gen.*, 212, r. 3, n. 1; *hoc* with *comparatives*, 256, r. 16.  
*Hodie*, pr., 285, 2, n. 1.  
*Homo*, gender of, 31, 2; **genitive**, 69, r. 2; *homo, homines*, ellipsis of, 209, r. 2, (2.); 106, r. 7, (1.); 229, r. 4.  
**Homoeopropheron**, 324, 26.  
*Honor*, (-os), declined, 57.  
**Horace**, key to the odes of, 321.  
**Horatian metres**, 320.  
*Horreo*, w. *inf.*, 271, n. 1.  
*Hortor*, w. *ad.*, 225, r. 1; w. *ut, ne*, etc., 78, 2; without *ut*, 262, r. 4.  
*Hospes*, gender of, 30; **formation of nom.** sing., 56, i., r. 3; **genitive**, 73, 2; **abl.**, 113, a. 2; as an adj., 129, 8.  
*Hostis*, w. *gen.* or *dat.*, 222, r. 2, (c.)  
 'However' w. a relative, how expressed in Latin, 280, III., (3.)  
*Huc*, w. *genitive*, 212, r. 4, n. 2, (b.); *hucine rerum*, 212, r. 4, n. 3.  
*Humi*, constr., 221, r. 3; *humo*, 254, r. 2; 255, r. 1.  
*Huius*, pronunciation of, 9, 5; pr., 306, r. 2.  
*Huius non facio*, 214, r. 1.  
*Huiusmodi*, 134, r. 5; w. *qui* and the subj., 264, 1, n.  
**Hypallage**, 323, 4, (3.)  
**Hyperbaton**, 323, 4.  
**Hyperbole**, 324, 5.  
**Hypercatalectic or hypermeter verse**, 304, 2, (4.)  
**Hypothetical sentences**, 259, r. 3, (c.), (d.), and r. 4; 260, II.; in the *inf.*, 268, r. 4—r. 6.  
**Hysteron proteron**, 323, 4, (2.)

I.

*I*, its sound, 7 and 8; *i* and *j* but one character, 2, 3; *i* for *ii* in *gen.* of 2d decl., 52; *i* changed to *e* in forming certain nouns., 56, i., r. 3; nouns in *i*, gender of, 66; **genitive of**, 68; **genitive of Greek nouns** in, 73, r.; **dat. of 3d decl.** in, 79; **abl. sing.** in, 82; 113; in *gen.* and *dat. sing.* of 5th decl., 90, k. 2; *i* ending the former part of a compound noun or adj., 103, r. 1; 131, n.; in *dat. sing.* of nine adjs. in *us* and *er*, 107; in 1st person *sing.* of the *perf. act.*, 147, 3; *i* the characteristic vowel of the 4th conj., 149, 2; cf. 150, 5; *i* or *e* for the Greek *u*, 283, r. 6, (1.); **increment in 3d decl.**, 287, 3; **plur.**, 288; of verbs, 290; *i* final quantity of, 285, r. 4; 296.  
*-ia*, abstracts in, 101, 3; in *nom.*, acc. and *voc. plur.*, 83; 85.  
*-iacus*, adjs. in, 128, 1, (d.)  
**Iambic metre**, 314; 303; **tetrameter**, 314, II; **trimeter**, 314, i.; **catalectic**, 314, iv.; **trimeter**, 314, vi.; **hypermeter**, 314, vii.; **scaphalous**, 314, viii.; **catalectic**, 314, ix.; **ambico-dactylic metre**, 318, II.

*-ianus*, adjs. in, 128, 6, (f.)  
*-ias*, fem. patronymics in 100, 1, (b).  
*Ibi*, ellipsis of before *ubi*, 206, (3.), (a.)  
*-icis*, **genitive in**, 78, 2, (2.), *init.*, and (3.), *init.*  
*-icius*, adjs. in, 128, 2; *-icius* or *-itus* verbal *adj.* in 129, 5.  
*Ictus*, 308, 3.  
*-iculus, a, um*, diminutives in, 100, 3, r. 1  
*-icus*, adjs. in, 128, 1, (d.), and 2, (a.) and 6, (i.)  
*Id*, before a relative pron., 206, (13.); w. *gen.*, 212, r. 3; *id temporis, etatis*, *id genus*, etc., 231, II., r. 3; 253, r. 3; *id ago*, constr., 273, n. 1; 207, r. 22; *id quod* instead of *quod*, 206, (13.), (b.); as acc. of degree, etc., 232, (3.)  
*Idem*, declined, 134, r. 6; how used, 207, r. 27; w. *gen.*, 212, r. 3; w. *dat.*, 222, r. 7; 207, r. 27, (d.); supplying the place of *item, etiam*, or *tamen*, 207, r. 27; *idem qui, ac, atque, ut, cum*, etc., 207, r. 27, (d.); 222, r. 7; *idem—idem*, 'at once,' 207, r. 27, (c.); as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)  
*Ides*, 326, 2.  
*-ides* and *-iades*, patronymics in, 100, 1, (a.); pr., 291, 4.  
**Idiotism**, 326, 6.  
*-idis*, **genitives in**, 73, r. 1; 74, r. 2.  
*Idoneus*, *qui*, 264, 9; 270, r. 1.  
*-idus*, adjs. in, 129, 2.  
*-iei* in 5th decl., quantity of the *e*, 263, I., r. 2.  
*-ies*, advs. in, 192, II., 3.  
*Igitur*, 198, 6; its place, 279, 3, (b.) equivalent to 'I say,' 278, r. 10.  
*Ignarus*, w. *genitive*, 213, r. 1; 275, III, r. 1, (2.)  
*-ii* in *genitive* contracted, 52; how accented, 14, r.  
*-ile*, derivative nouns in, 100, 9.  
*-ilis*, *adj.* in, 129, 4; 128, 2.  
*Illac*, in answer to *qua?* 191, r. 1, (d.)  
*Illacrima*, w. *dat.*, 224, n. 1, 4.  
**Illative conjunctions**, 198, 6.  
*Ille*, declined, 134; its uses, 207, r. 20—26; w. *quidem*, redundant, 207, r. 21; its relation to time, 207, r. 23, (c.); as a pron. of the 3d pers., 207, r. 20; relation of *hic* and *ille*, 207, r. 23; *ille, qui*, w. subj., 264, 1, n.  
*Illic*, pron., how declined, 134, r. 3; *illic, illuc, illuc*, advs., their reference, 191, r. 1, (e.)  
*-illimus*, superlatives in, 126, 2.  
*Illiusmodi*, 134, 5.  
*-illo*, verbs in, 187, II., 4.  
*Illud*, w. *geriv.*, 212, r. 8, n. 1, (a.)  
 pleonastic, 207, r. 22; as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)  
*Illudo*, w. *dat.*, 274, 4.  
*-illus, a, um*, derivatives in, 100, 3, r. 3  
*-im* in acc. sing. 3d decl., 79, 80; *im* for *eum*, 134, r. 1; *-im, is*, etc., in *pres. subj.* 162, 1; adverbs in, 192, I. and II.  
*Imbecillus*, pr., 284, 2, n. 3.  
*Imbuo*, constr., 231, r. 4  
 Imitative verbs, 187, 3  
*Immemor*, *gen.* of, 112, 3; **abl.**, 113, r. 3  
**gen. plur.**, 114, r. 2.

- Immo*, 191, n. 3.  
*Immodicus*, w. gen. or abl., 218, n. 5, (3.)  
*Immunis*, w. gen. or abl., 218, n. 5, (3.)  
 cf. 251, n.  
*-imonium*, deriv. nouns in, 100, 6;—and  
*-imonia*, verbals in, 102, 3.  
*Impatiens*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (2.)  
*Impavidus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.)  
*Impedio*, w. quin., 232, n. 7; w. *quom-*  
*-us*, 262, n. 11; w. inf., 262, n. 11, n.  
*Impello*, 273, n. 4.  
*Imperative*, 143, 3; its tenses, 145, n. 3;  
 how used, 267, (1.), (2.); irregular, 162, 4  
 and 5; subj. for imperative 267, n. 2; sing.  
 for plur., 209, n. 2 used as a noun, 205,  
 n. 8.  
*Imperfect tense*, 145, n.: w. *oportet*, etc.,  
 259, n. 3; the imperf. indic. for plup. subj.,  
 259, n. 4.  
*Imperitus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.); of  
 gerund, 275, III., n. 1, (2.)  
*Impetro*, constr., 273, n. 4; 262, n. 4; w.  
 dat. and acc., 223, n. 2, (1.)  
*Impersonal verbs*, 184; subject of, 184, 2;  
 list of in 2d conj., 169; 184, n. 1; in 1st,  
 8d. and 4th conj., 184, n. 1; constr. w. gen.,  
 215, (1); 219; w. dat., 223, n. 2, n. (b.); w.  
 acc., 223, n. 6 and 7.  
*Impertio*, 249, I., and n. 3; 225, n. 1, (b.)  
*Impetro*, ut. 273, n. 2.  
*Impleo*, 249, n. 1; 220, 3.  
*Impono*, 241, n. 6.  
*Impos* and *impotens*, w. genit., 213, n. 1,  
 (3.)  
*Imprimis*, 193, II., 2.  
*Imprudens*, *improvidus*, w. genit., 213,  
 n. 1.  
*Impubes*, genitive, 112, 1; abl., 113, n. 2;  
 115, I., (a.)  
*Impulsus*, w. abl. of cause, 247, n. 2. (b.)  
*-is*, roots of nouns in, 66, II., n. 1 and 2;  
 in acc. sing., 79.  
*In*, prep., constr., 235, (2.); signification  
 and use, 195, n. 14; in composition, 196, 7;  
*in* with abl. instead of predicate acc., 230,  
 n. 4; constr. of verbs compd. with, 224;  
 w. abl. after verbs of placing, holding, regard-  
 ing, assembling, etc., 241, n. 5; ellipsis  
 of with some ablatives of place, 254 and n.;  
 with ablatives of time, 253, n. 1, and n. 5;  
 with names of towns, 254, n. 2 and n. 3.  
*Inanis*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.)  
*Incassum*, 193, II., 4.  
*Incedo*, 233, (3.), n.; 210, n. 3, (2.)  
*Inceptive verbs*, 187, II., 2; list of, 173.  
*Incertus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1; *incertum*  
 an, 198, II., n. (c.); 265, n. 3.  
*Inchoatives*, see inceptive verbs.  
*Incidit ut*, 262, n. 3.  
*In cito*, constr., 225, n. 1; *incitatus*, w. abl.  
 of cause, 247, n. 2, (b.)  
*Incipio*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Inclino*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1; 225, IV.  
*Incommodo*, w. dat., 223, n. 2, n. (b.)  
*Increment of nouns*, 236; sing. num.,  
 237; plur. num., 238; of verbs, 239.  
*Incrementum*, 824, 22.  
*Increpo* and *incepio*, w. gen., 217, n. 1.  
*Incumbo*, w. dat., 224, 4; w. ad, 224, n. 4.  
*Incupe*, w. genit., 217, n. 1.  
*Inde*, ellipsis of before *unde*, 206, (3.) (a.)  
*inde loci*, 212, n. 4, n. 4.  
*Indeclinable nouns*, 34; 94;—*adjectives*,  
 115, 4.  
*Indefinite adjectives*, 104; 139, 5, n.;—  
 pronouns, 133;—*adverbs*, 191, n. 4.  
*Indicative mood*, 143, 1; its tenses, 145  
 how used, 259; tenses used one for another  
 259, n. 1—4; indic. of the preterites with  
*oportet*, etc., 259, n. 3; in inserted clauses  
 268, 2, n. 3 and 5; 266, 1, n. 1.  
*Indico*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Indigeo*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2.); w. genit.  
 220, 3.  
*Indignor*, constr., 273, 5, n. 6.  
*Indignus*, w. abl., 244; w. genit., 244,  
 n. 2; *indignus qui*, w. subj., 264, 9; w. su-  
 pine in u, 276, III., n. 1.  
*Indigus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (2.)  
*Indirect questions*, subj. in, 235;—*indirect*  
*reference*, 236, 3;—*indirect discourse*,  
 266, 1, n. and 2.  
*Induco*, *id animum inducere*, 233, (1.);  
 pass. w. acc., 234, n. 1; *inductus*, w. abl.  
 of cause, 247, n. 2, (b.)  
*Indulgeo*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)  
*Intuo*, w. dat. and acc., 224, 4; w. abl.  
 and acc., 249, I., n. 1; cf. 224, n. 1, (b.)  
*Induo* and *exuo*, constr. in pass., 234, n. 1.  
*-inor* or *-ione*, fem. patron. mica in, 100, I., (b.)  
*Inro*, 182, n. 3; *inire* : *insilia*, w. inf.  
 270, n. 1, (c.); 234, III.  
*Iners*, abl. of, 113, n. 3, and n. 1.  
*Inerptus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.  
*Infamo*, w. genit. of crime, 217, n. 1.  
*Infero*, 224, 4, and n. 4.  
*Inferus*, comparison of, 125, 4;—*inferior*  
 w. dat., abl., or *quam*, 256, n. 10; *infirmus*  
 and *imus*, 205, n. 17.  
*Infinitive*, 143, 4; as a noun, 26, n.; 269;  
 its gender, 34, 4; 205, n. 8; its cases, 269,  
 (b.); as an acc., 223, n. 5; 270; as a verb,  
 269, (a.); its tenses, 145, n. 4; old inf. pres.  
 pass. in -er, 162, 6;—inf. as logical subj.,  
 202, n. 2; 269; how modified, 203, III., 5;  
 with subject nom., 209, n. 5; for the gen-  
 itive, 213, n. 4; its subjetc. 239; w. dat. in-  
 stead of acc., 227, n.; construction and  
 meaning of its tenses, 268; inf. as subject  
 of inf., 269, n. 3; as predicate nom., 269,  
 n. 4; *esse*, etc., with *liet* and a predicate  
 noun or adj., case of such predicate, 269,  
 n. 5; poetically after what verbs, 271, n. 3;  
 depending on a verb, 270; 229, n. 5; on an  
 adj. or noun, 270, n. 1; 275, II., n. 1, n. 1;  
 absolute, 270, n. 2; ellipsis of, 270, n. 3;  
 inf. without a subject after what verbs  
 used, 271; with a subject, after what verbs,  
 272; 273; how translated, 272, n. 3; used  
 like a noun, 273, n. 9; its place, 279, 11;  
 inf. pres. for inf. perfect, 268, n. 1; inf.  
 perf. for present, 268, n. 2; pres. for future,  
 268, n. 3; poet. to denote a purpose, 274,  
 n. 1, (b.)  
*Infinitum est*, the indic. for the subj.  
 259, n. 4, (2.)  
*Infirmus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.)  
*Infi*, 183, 14 190, n.  
*Inflection*, 25; parts of speech inflected  
 24, 4.



*Agere*, abl. of, 113, n. 3.  
*amicus*, w. dat., 222, n. 1; w. genit., 222, n. 2, (c.)  
*-ius*, genitives in, 69, n. 1 and 2.  
*Initio*, "at first," 268, n. 1.  
*Innitor*, 224, n. 4. See also *nitōr*.  
*Innocens* and *innocens*, w. genit. 213, n. 1.  
*Insatiabilis*, w. genit., 213, n. 5, (1.)  
*Inscius*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (8.)  
*Inscrito*, *insculbo*, and *insero*, constr., 211, n. 5.  
*Insimulo*, w. genit., 217, n. 1.  
*Insolens* and *insolitus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1.  
*Inops*, abl. of, 113, n. 3; 115, 1. (a.); w. genit., 213, n. 1; cf. n. 4, (1.); w. abl., 250, n. 1, (1.)  
*Inquam*, 173, 5; ellipsis of, 209, n. 4; its position, 289, 6.  
 Inserted clauses, 266.  
*Insinuo*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1.  
*Insons*, genit. plur. of, 114, n. 8; 115, 1, (a.); w. genit., 213, n. 1.  
*Inspingo*, 249, 1, n. 1 and n. 3.  
*Instar*, a diptote, 94.  
*Institutio*, 273, n. 4; 230, n. 1; 231, n. 4; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Instrument*, abl. of, 247, and n. 5; w. verbs of teaching, 231, n. 3, (c.)  
*Instruo*, 231, n. 4.  
*Insumere tempus*, 275, n. 2.  
*Invenio*, w. dat. or abl. of the thing, 245, n. 3; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Invenietur*, 213, n. 1, (3.); 222, n. 2, (a.); 275, III., (2.); 270, n. 1; 275, III., n. 1, (2.)  
*Insuper*, w. acc. or abl., 235, n. 3.  
*Integer*, w. genit., 213; *integrum est ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 8.  
*Intelligo*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; *intelligitur*, w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.  
 Intention denoted by participle in *rus* with *sum*, 162, 14; 274, n. 6.  
*Intentus*, w. acc. *nihil*, 232, (3.); *intentum esse*, w. dat. of gerund, 275, III., n. 2, (1.)  
*Inter*, use of, 235, 1, n. 2; in composition, 196, 1, 8;—w. *se* or *ipse*, 208, (5.); w. gerunds, 275, III., n. 3; instead of partitive gen., 212, n. 2, n. 4; construction of its compds., 224; repeated by Cicero after *interesse*, 277, II., 4.  
*Intercedo*, w. *quin*, *ne*, or *quominus*, 262, n. 11.  
*Intercludo* and *interdico*, 251, n. and n. 2.  
*Interdico*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Interdus* or *die*, 253, n. 1.  
*Interea loci*, 212, n. 4, n. 4.  
*Interest*, Roman computation of, 327.  
*Interest*, w. genit., 219; w. *mea*, etc., 219, n. 1; subject cf. 219, n. 4; degree of interest how expressed, 219, n. 5.  
*Interior*, comparison of, 126, 1; *intimus*, 206, n. 17.  
 Interjections, 199; w. nom., 209, n. 13; w. dat., 228, 3. w. acc., 238, 2; w. voc., 240; *O*, *heu*, etc., not elided, 305.  
*Intermitto*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Interpres*, gender of, 30: 61 2; genit. of, 3, 8.  
*Interstis*, w. genit., 213, n. 1 and 2.

Interrogative particles, 196, 11;—adjs. 104, 14; 121, 5; 139, 5, 3;—pronouns, 137 in indirect questions, 137, n.; 265, n. 2;—sentences, 200, 3.  
*Interrogo*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1; constr. in pass., 234, 1; w. genit. of the clause, 217, n. 1.  
*Intersum*, w. dat., 224, 5.  
*Intus*, w. acc., 233, 1, (b.)  
*Intra*, how used, 195, n. 8; 253, n. 4 (b.)  
 Intransitive verb, 141, II.; used impersonally in pass. w. dat., 223, n. 2, (c.)  
*-inus*, adjs. in, 128, 1, 2, and b.  
*Invaso*, 233, (3.), n.  
 Invariable adjs., 122; specified, 127, 7.  
*Invenio*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1; *invenitur*, *qui*, w. subj., 264, 6.  
*Invideo*, constr., 223, (1.), (c.); 226, 1 *invidetur mihi*, 223, n. 2, n. (c.)  
*Inventus*, w. dat. of the person, 226, n. 3, *invidia Minerva*, 257, n. 7.  
 Involuntary agent of pass. verb, 248, II., and n.  
*-io*, nouns in, gender of, 59, 1; personal appellatives in, 100, 4, (b.); verbals in, 102, 7; verbs in of 3d conj., 159.  
 Ionic metre, 317; 303;—a *maiore*, 317, 1;—a *minore*, 317, II.  
*-ior*, *-ius*, in terminational comparatives, 124, 2.  
*Ipsa*, declined, 135; how used, 135, n. 1; 207, n. 28; used reflexively, 203, (4.); 207, n. 28, (c.); w. *inter*, 208, (5.); *et ipse*, 207, n. 27, (b.); *ipse*, with the inf., 273, n. 9, (a.); *nunc ipsum* and *tum ipsum*, 191, n. 7.  
*Ipsus* and *ipsissimus*, 135, n. 2.  
*Irascor*, w. dat., 223, n. 2, n., (b.)  
*Iri*, w. supine in *um*, 276, II., n. 3.  
 Iron age of Roman literature, 329, 4.  
 Irony, 324, 4.  
 Irregular nouns, 92;—adjs., 115;—verbs, 178—182.  
*-is*, nouns in, gender of, 62; 63; genitive of, 74;—*is* or *-eis* instead of *-is* in acc. plur. of 3d decl., 85, n. 1; abl. of adjs. in *is* used as nouns, 82, n. 4;—used as proper names, 82, n. 4, (b.);—*is* for *-us* in genitive of 4th decl., 89, 2; fem. patronymics in, 100, 1, (b.); ellipsis of in 2d root of verbs, 162, 7, (c.)  
*Is*, pron., declined, 134; how used, 207, n. 26; referring to a clause, 206, (13.); *is* and *ille* with *quidem* used pleonastically, 207, n. 21; *is* for *talīs*, 207, n. 26, (b.); 264, 1, n.; *et is*, *atque is*, *isque*, *et is quidem*, 207, n. 26, c.; ellipsis of *is*, 207, n. 26, (d.); *is-qui*, 264, 1, n.  
 Islands, gender of, 29; constr. of names of, 237, n. 5, (b.)  
*-issimus*, a, *um*, the terminational superlative, 124, 2.  
*-isso*, verbs in, 197, II., 5.  
*Iste*, how declined, 134; how used, 207, n. 25; *iste qui*, w. subj., 264, 1, n.  
*Istic*, pron., declined, 134, n. 3.  
*Istic*, adv., *istinc*, *istuc*, their reference, 191, n. 1, (c.)  
*Istiusmodi*, 134, n. 5.  
*-it*, roots of nouns in, 58, II., n. 5; in 3d root of 4th conj., 175, of certain verbs of 3d conj., 171, n. 7.

*ha*, 191, n. 5; 277, n. 12. (a.); *its* *nom*, 277, n. 14.

*haque*, *its* meaning, 198, 6, n.; *its* place, 279, 3, (b.)

*her*, declined, 57; 71, 2; with *sum* and acc. of place, 287, n. 1; increments of, 286, 2.

*-iter* and *-ter*, advs. in, 192, II. and IV.  
*-itas*, *-ia*, *-itia*, *-ities*, *-itudo*, and *-itus*, abstracts in, 101, 1.

*-iti*, genitive in, 73; 78, 1; 112, 1.

*-ito*, frequentatives in, 187, II., 1.

*-ivus* or *-ivus*, adjs. in, 129, 5.

*Itum*, sup., in prosody, 284, n. 1, (2.)

*-itus*, advs. in, 192, I. and II.; adjs. in, 128, 7.

*-ium*, verbals in, 102, 2; *-ium* or *-itum*, nouns in, 100, 5.

*-ius*, genitives in, place of English accent, 15; in what adjs., 107; quantity of the *i*, 268 I., n. 4:—adjs. in, 128, 1, 2, and 5; v.c. sing. of patris and possessives in, 52.

*-iv*, in 2d roots of verbs, 175; 171, n. 3.

*-ivus*, adjs. in, 129, 7.

# J.

*J*, vowel before, in prosody, 268, IV., n. 1.

*Jaceo*, 210, n. 8. (2.); 233, (3.), n.

*Jam*, with a negative, 191, n. 6; *jamtu-*  
*sum*, ib.

*Jecur*, genitive of, 71, 3; increments of, 286, 2.

*Jejunus*, w. gen. or abl., 218, n. 5, (8.)

*Jesus*, decl. of, 53.

*Jocus*, plur. *joci* and *joca*, 92, 2.

*Jubar*, abl. of, 82, n. 1, (b.)

*Jubeo*, constr., 223, (2.); 273, 2, (d.); 272, n. 6; 262, n. 4; ellipsis of *jubeo valere*, 288, n. 2; *jubeor*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.

*Jucundus*, constr., 276, III., n. 1 and 4;

*jucundum est*, w. *quod*, 278, 5, n. 6.

*Judico*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; in pass., 210, n. 3, (3.), (c.); *judicari* w. predicate nominative, 271, n. 2.

*Jugerum*, 93, 1; 94.

*Jugum*, quantity of its compds., 283, IV., n. 1.

*Jungo*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1.

*Junctus* and *conjunctus*, constr., 222, n. 6, (c.)

*Jupiter*, genitive of, 71; declined, 85.

*Jure aliquid facere*, without *cum*, 247, 2.

*Juro*, its compds., 189, n. 3:—*juratus*, with active meaning, 162, 16:—*juro*, poet. w. inf., 271 n. 3.

*Jucyendum*, declined, 91.

*Justum erat*, indie. for subj., 259, n. 8, *ustum est* with inf. as subject, 269, n. 2;

*justo* after comparatives, 256, n. 9; *its* place 279, n. 1.

*Juven*, w. acc., 229, n. 7.

*Juvenalis*, abl. of, 82, n. 4, (b.)

*Juvenis*, abl. of, 82, n. 4, (b.); 118, n. 2; comparison of, 126, 4; 115, 1, (a.); for *in juvenute*, 263, n. 6.

*Juxta* as an adv., 196, n. 4; *juxta* ac or *sequ*, 193, 2, n.

# K.

*K*, *its* use, 2, 4.

Key to the Odes of Horace, 331.

Knowing, verbs of, their construction, 272

# L.

*L*, roots of nouns in, 56, II.; gender of nouns in, 66; genitive of, 70:—final, quantity of, 299, 2.

*Labore*, constr., 273, n. 1; poet. w. inf. 271, n. 8.

Labials, 3, 1.

*Lac*, gender of, 66, n.; genitive of, 70.

*Lacesso*, constr., 225, n. 1.

*Lator*, w. abl., 247, 1, (2.); acc., 233, (3.)

*Latius*, w. abl. or gen., 218, n. 5, (4.);

cf. n. 4, (1.)

*Lampas*, declined, 86.

*Lapis*, declined, 57.

*Lar*, pr., 284, n. 1.

*Largus*, w. gen. or abl., 218, n. 5, (3.);

cf. n. 4, (1.)

*Lars*, genitive of, 71.

*Lassus*, w. genit., 218, n. 2.

*Lateo*, w. dat. or acc., 223, n. 2, n., (b.), and (1.), (a.)

Latin grammar, its divisions, 1.

*Latinis*, for *ludis Latinis*, 263, n. 1.

*Latius*, *altius*, and *longus*, w. acc. of space, 286.

*Lavo* and *lazo*, scil. *se*, 229, n. 4, 1; *lave*, w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1.

*Lazo*, w. abl., 251, n.

Leading clause, subject, and verb, 201, 13

*Lego* (*ere*), its form in the compds., 189, n. 2; constr., 230, n. 1.

*Lenio*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1.

*Lenius*, adjs. in, 128, 4.

Letters, 2: division of, 3; sounds of, 7 numeral, 118, 7; capital, 2, 2; silent, 12, a terminal in 8d decl., 55.

*Leco*, w. abl., 251, n.; w. gen. poet. 220, 2.

*Lex*, gender, 65, 2; genitive, 78, 2, (2.):—*legem dare*, constr., 273, 2, n. 4;—*lege*, abl. of manner, 247, 2.

*Liber*, w. abl. or gen., 218, n. 5, (4.); of 220, 2; and 251, n.; w. genit., 218, n. 5, (4.);

cf. n. 4, (1.)

*Libero*, w. abl., 251, n.; poetically. w. genit., 220, 2.

*Liberalis*, w. genit., 218, n. 5, (1.)

*Libram* and *libras*, 286, n. 7.

*Libro*, abl. w. adj. without prep., 254, n. 2.

*Licentia*, w. genit. of gerund, 275, III., n. 1, (1.)

*Liero*, w. genit. of price, 214, n. 3, w. abl., 252, n. 1.

*Licet*, w. dat., 223, n. 2; w. subj. the acc. with the inf., or the inf. alone, 273, 4: 262

n. 1; w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 3; case of the predicate after *licet esse*, etc., 269, n. 5;

w. indicative instead of subj., 259, n. 3, (a.)

*-licet*, conj. w. subj., 263, 2.

Limiting acc., 234, n.:—abl., 250 and n.

*-limus*, superlatives in, 126, 2.

Linguals and liquids, 3, 1.

*Liquidus*, pr., 284, s. 5., s. 3.  
*-is*, adjs. in comparison, 125, 2.  
*Litteras dare, scribere or mittere*, 225, iv., s. 4; ellipsis of, 229, s. 4; 2; *litteras or literas*, after verbs of teaching, 231, s. 3, (c.)  
*Litotes*, 324, 9.  
*Litum*, pr., 284, s. 1, (2.)  
 Loading, verbs of, w. abl., 249, i.  
*Locuples*, genitive of, 112, 1; abl., 118, s. 2; gen. plur., 114, s. 3; 115, 1, (a.); w. abl. or gen., 213, s. 5, (4.)  
*Locus*, plur. *loci* and *loca*, 92, i., 2; *loco* and *loris*, abl. of place without a preposition, 254, s. 2; *loco*, w. gen. for predicate nom., 210, s. 3; for predicate acc., 230, s. 1; *loci* and *locorum*, 212, s. 4, s. 2 and s. 4; *locus* in apposition to names of towns, 237, s. 2; *loco*, w. gen. of price, 241, s. 5; w. abl. of price, 252, s. 1; w. participles in *duis*, 274, s. 7; w. genitive of gerunds, 275, iii., s. 1, (1.)  
 Logical subject, 202, 3, —predicate, 203, 3.  
 Long syllable, 232, 2.  
*Longe*, w. comparatives and superlatives, 127, 3; 253, s.; w. acc. of space, 236, s. 2; *longe gentium*, 212, s. 4, s. 2, (b.); *longius* without *quam*, 256, s. 6.  
*Longitudine*, w. genit. of measure, 211, s. 6, (6.)  
*Longus*, w. acc. of space, 236; *longum est*, the indicative instead of the subjunctive, 259, s. 4, (2.)  
*-is*, genitive of nouns in, 77, 2, (2.)  
*Ludis*, for *in tempore ludorum*, 253, s. 1; 257, s. 9, (2.)  
*Luo*, w. abl., 252, s. 1.

## M.

*M*. roots of nouns ending in, 56, i.; before *d* changed to *n*, 134, n. 1; dropped in the 3d root of certain verbs, 171, s. 6; final, quantity of, 299, 3; elided, 305, 2.  
*-ma*, Greek nouns in, genitive plur. of, 14, s. 2.  
*Mactus*, 115, 5; *macte*, w. abl., 247, 1, s. 2; w. genit., 213, s. 5, (4.)  
*Magis* and *maxime*, use of in forming comparatives and superlatives, 127, 1; pleonastic with *malle*, etc., 256, s. 13.  
*Magnus*, compared, 125, 5; w. supine in *u*, 246, iii., s. 1; *magnam partem*, 234, ii., s. 3; *magni, parvi*, etc., w. verbs of valuing, 214, s. 1; *magno, parvo*, etc., w. verbs of buying, etc., 252, s. 3.  
*Male-*, constr. of its compounds *malefacio*, *maleficio*, etc., 225, i.; *male*, instead of abl. of price, 252, s. 3; *male, bene*, or *prudenter facio*; *male or bene fit*, w. *quod*, 273, 5, (1.)  
*Malo*, conjugated, 173, 3; constr., 273, 4; 262, s. 4; *mallem* n. aning of, 260, ii., s. 2; constr. w. abl. like a comparative, 256, s. 13, (3.)  
*Mulus*, compared, 125, 5.  
*Mando*, constr., 223, s. 2, and (1.), (b.); 173, s. 4; 274, s. 7, (a.); 262, s. 4.  
*Mase*, 94; 192, 3.  
*Maseo*, 210, s. 3, (2.); compds of, 238, s., n.  
*Manifestus*, w. genit., 213, s. 1.

*Manner*, advs. of, 191, i., i., abl. of, 247 with *cum*, 247, 2; w. *de* or *ex*, 247, s. 3.  
*Manus*, gender of, 83; ellipsis of, 206, s. 7, *manum injicere*, 233, (1.)  
*Mare*, abl. of, 82, s. 1, (b.); ellipsis of, 205, s. 7.  
*Mar*, gender of, 62, s. 1; genitive, 72, s. 1; genit. plur., 83, ii., s. 2; used to distinguish the sex of episcopes, 33, n.  
 Masculine nouns of 3d decl., 53; exceptions in, 59—61; —masculine caesura, 310, n. 1.  
*Materfamilias*, declined, 91  
*Materia*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, iv., s. 1, (1.)  
 Material nouns, 26, 6; —adjs., 104, 8  
*Mutuo*, accl. *se*, 229, s. 4, 1; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Me* and *mi* for *mihī*, 133, s. 1.  
*Mea, tua*, etc., w. *referre* and *interest*, 219, s. 1 and 2.  
 Means, abl. of, 247; when a person, 247, s. 4; w. passive verbs, 248.  
 Measure or metre, 303; Roman measures of length, etc., 327.  
*Me-deor*, w. dat., 223, s. (b.); its gerundive, 275, ii., s. 1.  
*Medior*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)  
*Medior*, constr., 273, n. 1.  
*Medius*, how translated, 205, s. 17; w. genit., 213; w. *inter*, 218, s. 4, (2.); w. abl., 213, s. 4, (5.); its place, 279, 7, (b.)  
*Mel*, genitive of, 70, s.; 56, ii., s. 6; abl., 82, s. 5, (b.); 94.  
*Melas*, genitive of, 72, s. 2.  
*Melius fuit* and *erat* instead of subj., 259, s. 3; *melius est*, w. dat., 223, 1; *melius erit*, w. perf. inf., 263, s. 2.  
*Melos*, nom. plur. of, 83, 1; 94.  
*Meme* and *mepte*, intensive, 133, s. 2.  
*Memini*, 183, 3; constr., 216; w. present inf., 268, s. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, s. 1; *memento*, poet. w. inf., 271, s. 3.  
*Memor*, w. genit., 213, s. 1, (3.); w. subj., 213, s. 4.  
*Memoro*, constr., 272, s. 6.  
*-men*, nouns in, gender of, 61, 4, and 6b; genitive, 71, 1; *-men* or *-mentum*, verbals in, 102, 4.  
*Mens*; in *mentem venit*, constr., 216, s. 3.  
*Mercor*, w. abl. of price, 252, s. 1.  
*-met*, enclitic, 133, s. 2; 139, s. 1.  
 Metalepsis, 324, 6.  
 Metaphor, 324, 1.  
 Metaphras, 322, 1.  
 Metathesis, 322, 9.  
*Meto*, 171, s. 2.  
 Metonymy, 324, 2.  
 Metre, 303; how divided, 303, 3; different kinds, 310—317.  
 Metres, compound, 318; Moratian, 320.  
*-metros*, Greek nouns in, 49, 2.  
*Metuo*, w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, s. 7; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Meus*, voc. sing. masc., 105, s. 3; 139, 1 used reflexively, 139, s. 2; how declined, 139; *meum est*, 211, s. 8, (3.), (a.)  
*Mi*, for *mihī*, 133, s. 1.  
 Middle voice in Greek, 243, s. 1, (2.)

Mile, Roman, 327.  
*Miles*, declined, 57; gender, 30; 61, 2; genitive, 73, 2; used collectively, 209, R. 11, 1, (c.); ellipsis of, 206, R. 7.  
 Military expressions without *cum*, 249, III., R.  
*Militiae*, construed like names of towns, 221, R. 3.  
*Mille*, how used, 118, 6; ellipsis of, 327, R. 5.  
 Million, how expressed, 118, 5, (a.); a million *esterces*, 327, R. 4.  
*Min'* for *minime*, 133, R. 1.  
*mino*, in old imperatives, 162, 5.  
*Minor* and compds. w. acc. and dat., 223, (1) (b.)  
*Ministrus*, w. dat., 223, R. 2; and (1.), (b.)  
*Minus* and *minimum*, w. genit., 212, R. 3, R. 1; *minus*, for *non*, 277, I., R. 14; *minus* without *quam*, 256, R. 6.  
*Mirror*, conjugated, 161 w. genit. post., 220, 1; constr., 273, R. 6.  
*Mirum est ut*, 262, R. 3, R. 3; *mirum quam*, *quantum*, etc., 265, R. 4.  
*Misceo*, how construed, 246, II., 2, and R. 1; 224, R. 3.  
*Misereror*, *miseresco*, *miseret*, *miseritum est*, and *miserescit*, w. gen. of the thing, 215; *miseret*, etc., w. acc. of the person, 215, R. 3; 229, R. 6; and w. acc. of the thing, 215, R. 2; w. acc. of degree, 215, R. 3.  
*Mitis*, declined, 109.  
*Mitto*, w. *ad* or *in*, 225; w. two dat., 227; 273, 2, (c.); w. participle in *dus*, 274, R. 7; w. inf., 271, R. 3; w. *quod*, 273; *missum facio*, 274, R. 4.  
*Mn.* Initial, 12, 2, R.  
*Mobilis*, pr., 284, R. 5, R. 1.  
*Moderor*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)  
*Modi* annexed to pronouns, 134, R. 5; its use, 211, R. 6, (5.)  
*Modicus*, w. genit., 213, R. 5, (1.)  
 Modified subject, 202, 6; itself modified, 202, III., R. 1;—predicate, 203, 5.  
 Modify or limit, in what sense used, 202, I, R.  
*Modo* as abl. of manner, 247, 2.  
*Modo*, conditional conj., 198, 5; w. subj., R. 3, 2; *modo*, adv., 193, II., 3; *modo ne*, 163, 2, R. 1; *modo—modo*, 277, R. 8.  
*Motus*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., R. 1, (1.)  
*Molio*, 229, R. 4, 1.  
*Molestie*, *agere* or *gravier fero*, w. *quod*, 273, R. 6.  
*Monco*, conjugated, 157; constr., 218, and R. 1, 2; 273, R. 1; without *ut*, 262, R. 4; w. acc. and inf., 273, R. 4, (e.); in pass., 234, 1.  
*Monay*, Roman, 327, pp. 370—372.  
 Monoclon, 319, 2.  
 Monometer, 304, 2; 313, 1.  
 Monoplates, 94.  
 Monosyllables, quantity of, 294, (a.); 293, 1; their place, 279, 3.  
*Mons*, gender of, 64, 1.  
 Months, Roman, 326, 2; names of, 326; division of, 326, 1; gender of names of, 23; 1, 3; abl. of names in *er* and *is*, 82, R. 2, a.)

Moods, 143.  
*Mora*, in prosody, 232, 2.  
*Mos* or *moris est*, constr., 262, R. 3; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., R. 1, (1.), *mos* as abl. of manner without *cum*, 247, 2.  
 Motion or tendency, verbs of, constr. 225, IV.; 237, R. 3.  
*Motum*, pr., 284, R. 5, R. 1.  
 Mountains, gender of names of, 23, 3.  
*Moreo*, constr., 229, R. 4, 1; 251, R.  
*Motus*, w. abl. of cause, 247, R. 2, (b.)  
*-ms*, nouns in, genitive of, 77, 2, (1.)  
 Multiplicatives, 121, 1.  
*Multo*, (are), constr., 217, R. 5.  
*Multus*, compared, 125, 5; *multi et*, how used, 278, R. 5; *multo*, w. comparatives, etc., 127, 3; 256, R. 16; so *multum*, ib., R.; *multum*, w. genitive, 212, R. 3, R. 1; ad acc. of degree, 212, (2.); *multus* instead of an adverb, 206, R. 15.  
*Mus*, gender of, 30; 67, 4; genitive, 76, R. 3; genit. plur., 83, II., 3.  
*Munificus*, w. genit., 213, R. 5, (1.)  
 Mutes, division of, 3, 1; a mute and a liquid in prosody, 283, IV., R. 2.  
*Mutilus*, w. abl., 213, R. 5, (5.)  
*Muto*, constr., 252, R. 5; 229, R. 4, 1.

## N.

N, roots of nouns in, 56, II.; nouns in, gender of, 58; 61; genitive of, 70; 71; final quantity of, 299, 2; dropped in the 3d root of certain verbs, 171, R. 6.  
*-nactis*, genitive of Greek names in, 78, 2, (1.)  
*Nam* and *enim*, 196, 7, R., (a.); place of, 279, 3, (a.) and (c.)  
 Names of persons, their order, 279, 3, (b.); of nations instead of those of countries, 254, R. 3; 237, R. 5.  
*Narro*, w. acc. and inf., 272, R. 1, and R. 6; *narror*, constr., 271, R. 2.  
*Nascor*, w. abl., 246, R. 1; *nascitur*, w. subj., 262, R. 3, R. 2.  
*Nato*, 232, (2.), R. 1; constr. of compds., 233, (3.), R.  
*Natura fert*, constr., 262, R. 3, R. 3.  
*Naturale est*, w. *ut* and the subj., 262, R. 3, R. 3.  
*Natus*, w. abl., 246; *natus*, 'old,' w. acc., 236, R. 3; poet. w. inf., 271, R. 3.  
*Natu*, 94; 250, 1; 126, 4.  
*Nauci habere*, 214, R. 1.  
*-ne*, enclitic conjunction, 198, 11; quantity of, 295, R.; as an interrogative particle, 198, 11, R., (c.); its place, 279, 3, (c.)  
*Nē*, adv., the primitive negative particle, 191, III., R. 3, p. 158; w. *quidem*, ib.; 279, 3, (d.); w. subjunctives used as imperatives, ib.; in wishes, asseverations and concessions, ib.; 260, R. 6, (b.) with the imperative, 267, R. 1; *ne multa*, *ne plura*, etc., 229, R. 3, 2;—in intentional clauses, 262, R. 5; *ne non*, for *ut*, 262, R. 4; ellipsis of, 262, R. 6; *ne*, for *nedum*, 262, R. 5.  
*Nec* or *neque*, 198, 1; *nec non* or *neque non*, ib.; *nec—nec*, with the singular, 209, R. 12, (5.), (a.); *neque*, for *et ne*, after *ut* and *ne*, 262, R. 6, R. 4;—*nec ipse*, 207, R. 27.

(*o.*); *nec* *ut*, 207, *r.* 26, (*c.*); *necne* or *annon*, 266, *r.* 2; *necdum*, 277, *i.*, *r.* 16; its place, 279, 3, (*a.*)

*Necesse*, defective adj., 115, 5; *necesse est* *ut*, etc., 262, *r.* 3, *n.* 3; without *ut*, 262, *r.* 4; *necesse fuit*, the indic. for the subj., 269, *r.* 3; *w. inf.* as subject, 269, *r.* 2; *w. ardicat* *dat.*, 269, *r.* 5; 273, 4.

*Necessity*, how expressed, 162, 15.

*Necessario*, after comparatives, 256, *r.* 9.

*Nedum*, *w. subj.*, 262, *n.* 5; without a verb, *ib.*

*Nefas*, gender of, 62, *r.* 2: 94; *w. supine* in *u*, 276, *iii.*, *r.* 2.

*Negativus*, two, their force, 277, *r.* 3—5; negative joined to the conjunction, *as*, *nec quisquam*, *nec ullus*, etc., instead of *et nemo*, *et nullus*, etc., 278, *r.* 9.

*Negligens*, constr., 218, *r.* 4, (2.)

*Nego*, instead of *non dico*, 279, 15, (*b.*); *w. acc.* and *inf.*, 272, *n.* 1, and *a.* 6; *negor*, *w. inf.*, 271, *n.* 1.

*Negotium*, ellipsis of, 211, *r.* 8, *n.*

*Nemo*, 94 and 95; for *nullus*, 207, *r.* 81; *nemo est qui*, 264, 7, *n.* 2; *nemo non*, 'every one', 277, *r.* 5, (*c.*)

*Nempe*, 191, *r.* 4; 198, 7, *r.*, (*a.*)

*Neoterism*, 325, 3.

*Nequa* and *nequus*, 188, 2.

*Nequam*, indeclinable, 115, 4; compared, 125, 5.

*Neque*, *see nec*; for *et non*, 198, 1, (*c.*); *neque—neque*, or *nec—nec*, *neque—nec*, *nec—neque*, 198, 1, (*c.*); *neque—et*, *ib.*; *neque w. general negatives*, 279, 15, (*b.*); *neque non*, 277, *r.* 3; *neque quisquam*, *ullus*, *unquam*, etc., 278, *r.* 9.

*Nequeo*, how conjugated, 182, *n.*; *w. inf.*, 271, *n.* 1.

*Ne quis* or *nequis*, how declined, 138, 2; *ne quis*, instead of *ne quisquam*, 207, *r.* 31; 278, *r.* 9.

*Nerio*, genitive of, 69, *r.* 2.

*Nescio an*, 198, 11, *r.*, (*c.*); 265, *r.* 3; *nescio quis*, 265, *r.* 4; *nescio quomodo*, *ib.*; *w. acc.* and *inf.*, 272, *n.* 1.

*Nescius*, *w. genit.*, 213, *r.* 1, (3.)

*-neus* and *-nus*, adjs. in. 128, 1, (*b.*)

*Neuter*, nouns, 34; not found in 1st and 5th decls., 40, 9; of 2d decl., 46; 54: of 3d decl., 66; excls. in. 66; 67; adjs. used adverbally, 205, *r.* 10, adjs. and adj. prons, *w. genit.*, 212, *r.* 3; acc. of denoting degree *w. another acc.* after transitive verbs, 231, *r.* 5; verbs, 141; form *cf.*, 142, 1; neuter passives, 142, 2; neuter verbs with cognate, etc., subjects, 234, *iii.*; *w. cognate acc.*, 232, (1.); *w. acc.* of degree, etc., 232, (3.); *w. abl.* of agent, 248, *r.* 2; used impersonally, 184, 2; in the passive voice, 142, *r.* 2; participles of. 162, 18; neuters of possessive pronouns and adjs. instead of the genitive of their personal pronouns, or of a corresponding noun, 211, *r.* 8, (3.), (*a.*) and (*b.*)

*Neutral* passive verbs, 142, 8.

*Neve* or *neu*, 198, 8; after *ut* and *ne*, 262, *v.* 4.

*Ni* or *nisi*, 198, 5, *r.*, (*b.*); *nisi*, 'except', 261, *r.* 6; 277, *r.* 16; *nisi quod*, *ib.*; *nisi vero*, and *nisi forte*, 'unless perhaps', *ib.*

*Nihil*, *nihilum*, 94; *w. genitive*, 213, *r.* 1; instead of *non*, 277, *r.* 2, (*b.*); 232 (3.); *nihil aliud quam* or *nisi*, 277, *r.* 16; *nihil* acc. *w. existimo* and *moror*, 214, *n.* 2 *nihil w. facio*, 214; as acc. of degree, 215, *n.* 232, (8.); *nihil est quod*, etc., 264, 7, *n.* 3; *nihil abest*, *quin*, 262, *n.* 7; *nihil antiquius habeo* or *duco quam*, *w. subj.*, 278, *n.* 1, *nihilum*, 277, *i.*, *r.* 16.

*Nimius*, *w. genit.* or *atl.*, 213, *r.* 5, (8.)

*Nimio*, *w. comparatives*, 266, *r.* 16; as *abl.* of price, 262, *r.* 3.

*-nis*, nouns in, gender of, 63, 1.

*Nitor*, *w. abl.*, 245, *ii.*; *w. in* or *ad*, 245 *ii.*, *r.* 2; *w. inf.* or *subj.*, 273, 1, *n.* 1.

*Nix*, 56, *r.* 2; *genit. sing.*, 78, (3.); *genit plur.*, 88, *iii.*, 3.

*No*, constr. of compds. of 233, (8.), *n.*

*Noctu* or *nocte*, 253, *n.* 1.

*Nolo*, conjugated, 178, 2; constr., 273, 4; *noli w. inf.*, paraphrasing the imperative, 267, *n.* and *a.* 3; *nollem*, meaning of, 260, *ii.*, *r.* 2.

*Nomen est*, constr., 226, *r.* 1; 211, *r.* 2, *n.*; *nomine*, without a prep. before the genitive following verbs of accusing, 217, *r.* 2, (*b.*); its place, 279, 9, (*b.*)

*Nominative*, 37; construction of, 209 210; ellipsis of, 209, *r.* 1 and 2; wanting, 209, *r.* 3; *w. inf.*, 209, *r.* 5; after interjections, 209, *r.* 18; formation in 3d decl. from the root, 66; plural, 3d decl., 88; of adjs. of 3d decl., 114. See Subject-nominative and Predicate-nominative.

*Nomino*, 220; pass., 210, *r.* 3, (3.)

*Non*, 191, *r.* 8; ellipsis of, after *non modo*, etc., followed by *ne quidem*, 277, *r.* 6; *non quo*, *non quod*, *non quin*, 262, *r.* 9; *non est quod*, *cur*, *quare*, or *quomobrem*, *w. subj.*, 264, 7, *n.* 3; *non* before a negative word, 277, *r.* 8;—before *ne quidem*, 277, *r.* 6; position of, 279, 15, (*b.*); *non*, rare with the imperative, 267, *r.* 1; difference between *non* and *haud*, 191, *r.* 8; *non nemo*, *non nulli*, *non nihil*, *non numquam*, different from *nemo non*, etc., 277, *r.* 5, (*c.*); *non nihil*, to some extent, 232, (3.); *nonne*, 198, 11, *r.*, (*c.*); *non modo—sed etiam*, and *non modo—sed*, equivalent to *non dicam—sed*, 277, *r.* 10; *non dubito*, *non est dubium*, *non ambigo*, *non procul*, *non abest*, *quin*, 262, 2, *n.* 7; *non quo non*, *non quod non*, or *non quia non*, instead of *non quin*; *non eo quod*, *non ideo quod*, for *non quod*, 262, *r.* 9; *non priusquam*, *non nisi*, *w. abl.* absolute 257, *n.* 4; *nonum*, 277, *i.*, *r.* 12; *non* i. the second member of alternative sentences without *et* or *vero*, 278, *r.* 11, *non nisi*, separated, 279, 3, (*d.*)

*Nonne*, 'the Nones', 326, 2.

*Nonnullus*, pronominal adj., 189, 5, (1.)

*Nos* for *ego*, 209, *r.* 7, (*b.*)

*Nosco*, 171, *r.* 6.

*Noster*, how declined, 189, 3.

*Nostras*, how declined, 139, 4, (*b.*)

*Nostrum*, how formed, 133, 3; different use of *nostrum* and *nostri*, 212, *r.* 2, *n.* 2.

'Not' and 'nor', how expressed with the imperative, 267, *r.* 1; with subj., 260, *r.* 6 (*b.*)

Nouns, 28-103; proper, common, abstract, collective, and material, 26; gender of, 27-34; number of, 35; cases of, 36, 37; declension of, 38-40; nouns of 3d decl., mode of declining, 55; compound, declension of, 91; irregular, 92; variable, 92; defective, in case, 94; in number, 95, 96; sing. and plur. having different meanings, 97; redundant, 99; verbal, 102; derivation of, 100-102; composition of, 103; how modified, 201, III., R. 1; used as adjs., 206, R. 11; extent given to the term noun, 24, a.

*Novum est ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 2.

*Nox*, declined, 57; genitive of, 78, 2, (4.); genit. plur., 82, II., 3.

*Noxius*, w. genit. of the crime, 218, R. 1, (3.); 217, R. 1, (a.); w. dat., 222, R. 1, (a.). -as, participles in, abl. of, 113, 2; when used as nouns, 82, R. 4; nouns in, genit. plur. of, 83, II., 4; genit. sing. of, 77, 2, (2.) and R. 1; participals and participles in, construction of, 213, R. 1 and 3.

*Nubilo*, scil. *calo*, 257, R. 9, (2.)

*Nubo*, w. dat., 223; quantity of *u* in compds. of, 285, 2, R. 3.

*Nulo*, w. abl., 251, n.

*Nudus*, w. abl. or genit., 213, R. 5, (4.); 250, R. 1, (1.); w. acc., 213, R. 4, (3.)

*Nullus*, how declined, 107; a pronominal adj., 139, 5, (1.); for *non*, 205, R. 1; refers to more than two, 212, R. 2, N., (b.) *nullus est, qui*, w. subj., 264, 7, N. 2; *nullus non*, 277, R. 5, (c.); *nullius* and *nullo*, instead of *neminis* and *nemine*, 207, R. 31, (c.); *nul-lus-tum*, 277, I., R. 18.

*Num*, with its compounds, meaning of, 198, 11, R., (b.); *num-an*, used only in direct questions, 265, R. 2.

Number, 26, 7; of nouns, 35; of verbs, 146; of the verb when belonging to two or more subjects, 209, R. 12; when belonging to a collective noun, 209, R. 11.

Numbers, cardinal, 117, 118; ordinal, 119, 120; distributive, 119, 120; w. genit. plur., 212, R. 2, (4.)

Numerals, adjs., 104, 5; classes of, 117; placed in the relative clause, 206, (7.), (b.); w. genit. plur., 212, R. 2, (4.); letters, 118, 7; adverbs, 119; 192, 3; multiplicative, 121; proportional, temporal, and interrogative, 121.

*Nimmus*, 327, R. 3, (b.)

*Numquam non*, and *non numquam*, 277, R. 5, (c.)

*Numquis*, *num quis*, or *numqui*, etc., how declined, 137, 3; *numquis est qui*, 264, 7, N. 2; *numqua* and *numqua*, 137, R. 4; *numquid*, as an interrogative particle, 198, 11.

*Numquismam*, 137, 4.

*Nunc*, use of, 277, R. 15; *nunc-nunc*, 277, R. 8; *nunc* and *etiamnunc*, w. imperfect and perfect, 259, R. 1, (2) (b.)

*Nuncupo*, w. two accs., 230, R. 1; *nuncu-por*, 210, R. 3, (3.)

*Nundinae*, 326, 2, (11.)

*Nuntio*, 273, 2, (c.); 272, R. 1; pass. w. inf., 271, R. 1; *nuntiat*, constr., 271, R. 2.

*Nuper*, *modo* and *mox*, 191, R. 6.

*Nusquam*, w. genit. 212, R. 4, N. 2, (b.)

*Nux*, pr. 284, R. 5, R. 2.

-az, nouns in, genitive of, 65, 6, 7.

## O.

O, sound of, 7, 8; changed to *u* in forming certain nominatives from the root, 56 I., R. 4. and II., R. 4; nouns in, gender of, 58, 59; genitive of, 69; Greek nouns in, gender of, 69, R. 3; genitive of, 69, R. 3; amplificatives in, 100, 4, (a.); verbals in, 102, 6, (c.); adverbs in, 192; increment in, of 3d decl., 237, 3; of plur., 238; of verbs, 290; final, quantity of, 285, R. 4; 297; sometimes used for *u* after *v*, 322, 8; 53; 178, 1, n.

O, interj. w. nom., 209, R. 13; w. acc., 238, 2; w. voc., 240, R. 1; O si, w. subj., 263, 1.

Ob, government of, 195, 4; 275, III., R. 3; in composition, 195, I., 9; construction of verbs compounded with, 224; of adjs., 222, R. 1, (b.)

*Obedio*, how formed, 189, N. 3.

*Obequo*, constr., 238, (3.)

*Obro*, constr., 233, (3.), n.; pass., 234, III.

Object, of an active verb, 229; the dative of the remote object, 223, n.

Objective genitive, 211, R. 2; after adjs., 213; dat. for objective genitive, 211, R. 5; —propositions after what, 273, R. 8.

Oblique cases, 37; their place, 279, 10 and 2.

*Obliviscor*, w. genitive or acc., 216; w. acc. and inf., 272, R. 1.

*Obnoxius*, w. dat., 222, R. 1, (b.)

*Obruo*, w. abl., 249, I., R. 1.

*Obsecro*, w. two accs., 231, R. 1.

*Obsequor*, *obtempero*, and *obrecto*, w. dat., 223, R. 2.

*Obseruo*, w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, R. 3.

*Obses*, gender of, 30; genitive of, 73, R. 1

*Obscuro*, w. abl. of price, 252, R. 1.

*Obsto*, and *obstisto*, *quominus*, etc., 262, R. 11.

*Obtemperatio*, w. dat., 222, R. 3.

*Obrector*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)

*Obrius*, w. dat., 222, R. 1, (b.)

*Obviam*, w. dat., 223, 1.

*Ocrasio*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III, R. 1, (1.)

*Occumbo*, w. dat., 224; w. acc., 234, R. 5

*Occurro*, w. dat., 224; w. acc., 233, (L.) *occurrit ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 1.

*Oci*, comparison of, 128, 1.

-ocis, genitive in, 78, (4.); 112, 2.

*Octonarius*, 304, 2; —iambic, 314, III.

*odi*, 183, 1.

-odis, genitives in, 76, R. 5; 75, R. 1

-odus, Greek nouns in, 9, 2.

OE, how pronounced, 9 in nom. plur. 2d decl., 54, 2.

*Elipus*, genitive of, 76, R. f.

*Elia*, gender of, 42.

*Officio*, w. *quominus*, etc., 262, R. 11.

*Ohe*, pr., 233, I., R. 5; 236, R. 5.

Oi, how pronounced, 9, 1.

-ois, genitives in, 76, I. 2; words in, pr 233, I., R. 6, (3.)

Old, how expressed in Latin, 232, n. 3.  
*(Neo and redoleo, w. acc., 232, (2).)*  
*Olius, for ille, whence olii, masc. plur. for illi, 134, n. 1.*  
*-olus, a, um, diminutives in, 100, 3, a. 2.*  
*-om, for -um, 53.*  
 Omission of a letter or syllable. see syncope—of a word, see ellipsis.  
*Omnēs, w. genitive plur., 212, n. 2, n. 6;*  
*omnium, w. superlatives, 127, 4, n. 2;*  
*omnia, acc. of degree, 232, (3.)*  
*-on, Greek nouns in, 54, 1; -on for -orum, 54, 4; -on, roots in, of 3d decl., 56, 11, n. 1;*  
*nouns in, of 3d decl., 58 and 61, 5; genit. plur. in, of Greek nouns, 83, 11, 6; -on and -on, nouns in, of 2d decl., changed to -us and -um, 54, 1.*  
*(Inustus, w. abl. or genit., 213, n. 5, (4).)*  
*Operam dare, w. ut, 273, n. 1; w. dat. of gerund, 275, 111, n. 2, (1.); w. acc. id., 232, (3.);—opera mea, equivalent to per me, 247, n. 4.*  
*Opinio est, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1;*  
*opinionē after comparatives, 256, n. 9; its place, 279, n. 1.*  
*Opior, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.*  
*Oporet, w. inf. as its subject, 269, n. 2;*  
*w. inf., acc. with the inf., or the subj., 273, n. 5; without ut, 262, n. 4.*  
*Opotebat, oportuit, the indic. instead of the subj., 259, n. 3, (a.)*  
*Oppido, w. adjs., 127, 2.*  
*Oppidum, in apposition to names of towns, 237, n. 2, (b.)*  
*Oppleo, w. abl., 249, 1, n. 1.*  
*Optabilis erat, the indic. instead of the subj., 259, n. 3.*  
*Optime, instead of abl. of price, 252, n. 3.*  
*Opto, 271, n. 4; 273, 4; opto, w. subj., without ut, 262, n. 4.*  
*Opulentus w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.)*  
*Opus, work, declined, 57; opus, need, w. genit. and acc., 211, n. 11; w. abl. of the thing, 243; as subject or predicate of est, 243, n. 2; 210, n. 5; w. perfect participle, 243, n. 1; w. supine in u, 276, 111, n. 2; opus est, w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.*  
*-or, nouns in, gender of, 58; 61; genit. of, 70; 71; verbals in, 102, 1; 102, 6.*  
*Oratio obliqua, 266, 1, n., and 2; 273, 3; tense in, 266, n. 4.*  
*Orbo, w. abl., 251, n.*  
*Orous, w. abl., 250, 2, (1.); or genit., 213, n. 5, (4.)*  
 Order, advs. cf. 191, 1.  
 Ordinal numbers, 119, 120; in expressions of time, 236, n. 2.  
 Origin, participles denoting, w. abl., 246; from a country expressed by a patril, 246, n. 3.  
*-oris, genitives in, 76; 112, 2; -oris, genit. in, 75.*  
*-orium, verbals in, 102, 8.*  
*Oriundus, constr., 248.*  
*Orn, w. two accs., 231, n. 1; w. ut, ne, or inf., 273, 2, n. 4; without ut, 262, n. 4.*  
 Orthoepy, 6—23.  
 Orthography, 2—5; figures of, 322.  
*Ortus, w. abl., 246.*  
*, nouns in, of 2d decl., 54, 1; of 3d*

decl., gender of 58 and 61, 3; genit. of, 75.  
 Greek genitives in, 68, 1; dual in plural accs., sound of, n. 3; quantity of, 300.  
*Os, (oris), genit. of, 61, 3; genit. of, 75; wants genit. plur., 94.*  
*Os, (ossis), gender of, 61, 3; genit. of, 75, n. 1.*  
*Ossa, gender of, 42, 1.*  
*Ostendo, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.*  
*-osus, adjs. in, 128, 4.*  
*-otus, genit. in, 75; 112, 2.*  
 'Ought' or 'should,' expressed by indic. of *debeo*, 259, n. 4, (2.)  
*-ox, nouns in, genit. of, 78, 2, (4.)*  
 Oxymoron, 324, 23.

## P.

*P, roots of nouns ending in, 56, 1; when inserted after m in 2d and 3d roots of verbs, 171, 3.*  
*Pace or in pace, 258, n. 1; 257, n. 9, (2.)*  
 Palatal, 3, 1.  
*Palleo, w. acc., 232, n. 1.*  
*Pan, acc. of, 80, n.*  
*Panthus, voc. of, 54, 5.*  
*Par. abl. of, 82, n. 1, (b.); 113, n. 3; superlative of, 126, 2; w. dat. or genit., 222, n. 2, (a.); w. cum and the abl., 222, n. 6; par erat, indic. instead of subj., 259, n. 3, (a.); pr., 234, n. 1; par ac, 198, 3.*  
*Parabola, 324, 30.*  
 Paradigms, of nouns, 1st decl., 41, 2d decl., 46; 3d decl., 57; 4th decl., 87; 5th decl., 90;—of adjs. of 1st and 2d decl., 106—107; 3d decl., 108—111;—of verbs, 2nd, 153; 1st conj., 155, 156; 2d conj., 157; 3d conj., 158, 159; 4th conj., 160; deponent, 161; periphrastic, conj., 162; defective, 188; impersonal, 184.  
 Paragoge, 322, 6.  
*Paratus, constr., 222, n. 4, (2.)*  
*Parco, w. dat., 223, n. 2, n., (a.); paratur mihi, ib., (c.); w. inf., 271, n. 3*  
*Parcus, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (2.); w. in, 213, n. 4, (2.)*  
 Paregmenon, 323, 24.  
 Pareicon, 323, 2, (1.)  
 Parenthesis, 324, 4, (6.)  
*Pariter ac, 198, 3.*  
*Paro, constr., 273, n. 1; w. inf., 271, n. 1.*  
*Paroemia verse, 304, 2.*  
 Paronomasia, 324, 25.  
*Paria, compis. of, 163, n. 4.*  
 Parsing, 231, 111.  
*Pars, acc. of, 79, 4; abl. of, 72, n. 5, (a.); ellipsis of, 205, n. 7; its use in fractional expressions, 121, 6; magnam and maximam partem, 224, 1, n. 3; multis partibus, 256, n. 16, (3.)*  
 Part, acc. of, 234, 11.  
*Particeps, genit. of, 112, 2; genit. plur. of, 114, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)—w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.)*  
 Participial adjs., 130;—of perfect tense, meaning of, with tenses of sum, 162, 12, (2.); w. genit., 213, n. 1, (2.)  
 Participles, 25 and 148, 1; in us, how declined, 105, n. 2; in as, do, 111; a bl. sing. of, 118, 2; participles of active verbs, 148

1. (2.); of neuter verbs, 163, 1. (3.); 163, 16; of deponent verbs, 163, 17; of neuter passive verbs, 162, 18; in -rus, genit. plur. of, 162, 19. pres. and perf. compounded with *ix*, 162, 21; when they become adjs. or nouns, 162, 22; cases of in compd. tenses, 162, 12, 13. sometimes with *esse* indeclinable, 162, 13. (1.); in -rus with *sum*, force of, 162, 14; how modified, 202, II., (3.); agreement of, 205; agreement with a predicate noun. instead of the subject, 205, a. 5; gender when used impersonally, 205, a. 18; perfect denoting origin, with abl., 246; in att. absolute, 257;—passive of naming etc., with predicate abl., 257, a. 11; their government, 274; their time how determined, 274, 2, and 8; perfect in circumlocution, for abl. of cause, 247, 1. a. 2. (b.); with *habeo*, etc., 274, 2, a. 4; for a verbal noun, 274, 2, a. 5; for clauses, 274, 3.

*Participio*, poetically, w. genit., 220, 2.

*Particles*, 190, 1.

*Partiri*, 79, 4; *partiri*, w. genit., 212, a. 4; *partiri*—*partiri*, w. genit. or ex, 277, a. 8.

Partitive nouns, 212, a. 1;—adjs., 104, 9;—partitives with plur. verbs, 209, a. 11; 211, a. 1; w. genit. plur., 212; ellipsis of, 212, a. 2, n. 3; w. acc. or abl., 212, a. 2, n. 4; genit. sing. after neuter adjs. and pronouns, 212, a. 3.

Parts of speech, 24, 2 and 3.

*Parum*, its meaning, 191, III.; compared, 194, 4; w. genit., 212, a. 4.

*Parumper*, its meaning, 191, II.

*Parvus*, compared, 125, 5; *parvi*, w. verbs of valuing, 214, a. 1. (a.), (1.); *parvo*, with comparatives, 256, a. 16; after *estimo*, 214, a. 2, n. 2; as abl. of price, 252, a. 3.

*Pasco*, 171, a. 6.

Passive voice, 141, 2; construction of, 23., passive voice with a reflexive pronoun understood as the agent equivalent to the middle voice in Greek, 248, a. 1, (2.); with acc. of the thing, 234, 1.

*Pateo*, w. two dat., 227, a. 1.

*Pater*, declined, 57.

*Pater-familias*, etc., how declined, 43, 2.

Pathetic or emotive word, 279, 2. (c.)

*Pattor*, 273, 4; 262, a. 4; *patinus*, w. gen., 213, a. 1, (2.); w. inf., 271, n. 3.

Paternal nouns, 100, 2; in *o*, genitive of, 69, n.;—adjs., 104, 10; 123, 6. (a.); ellipsis of their substantive, 205, a. 7; pronouns, 139, 4.

*Patrocinor*, w. dat., 223, a. 2.

Patronymics, 100, 1; in -es, genit. plur. in *un* instead of -*orum*, 43, 2; in *as* and *is* used as adjs., 205, a. 11; quantity of their penult, 291, 4 and 5.

*Pruca*, acc. of degree, 232, (3.)

*Paulisper*, its meaning, 191, II.

*Paulo*, w. comparatives, 256, a. 16; *paulum* *abest* *quin*, 262, a. 7.

*Phuper*, abl. of, 113, a. 2; defective, 115, 1. (c.); w. genit. or abl., 213, a. 5, (2.)

*Pavidus*, w. genit., 213, a. 1

*Paror est* *ne*, etc., 262, a. 7, n. 3.

*Pecus*, (-*udis*), gender of, 67, a. 3.

*Peculiaris*, 222, a. 2. (a.)

*Pedes*, gender of, 31, 2; genit. of, 73, 2 for *pedies*, 219, a. 11, (1.), (c.)

*Pejero*, pr., 285, 2, a. 1.

*Pelagus*, gender of, 51; acc. plur. of, 54, 5; 94.

*Pello*, 171, a. 1, (b.); 251, n.

*Pendo*, w. genit. of value, 214; w. abl. of price, 252, a. 1.

*Pensi* and *pili habere*, 214, a. 1.

Pentameter verse, 304, 2; 311; 312, IX., x

Penthemimeris, 304, 5.

Penult, 13; quantity of, 291; of proper names, 233.

*Per*, its uses, 136, a. 9; 247, 1, a. 1. w. the means when a person, 247, 3, a. 4; in adjurations, 279, 10. (c.); in composition, 196, 1, 10; *per* compounded with adjectives strengthens their meaning, 127, 2.

Perceiving, verbs of, their construction, 272.

*Percipio*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; *perceptum habeo*, instead of *percepi*, 274, a. 4.

*Percontor*, w. two accs., 231, a. 1.

*Perennis*, abl. of, 113, a. 1.

*Perdo*, w. *capitis*, 217, a. 3; *perditum ire* for *perdere*, 276, II., a. 2.

*Perduim*, for *perdam*, 162, 1.

Perfect tense, 145, IV.; definite and in definite, 145, IV., a.; old form in *sim*, 163, 9; quantity of dissyllabic perfects, 284, a. 1 perfect participles translated actively, 163, 16; both actively and passively, 162, 17, (a.);—of neuter verbs, 162, 18; of impersonal verbs, 184, a. 2; the perf. subj., 260, II., a. 1, (3.); in the connection of tenses, 258; signification of perf. definite, 259, a. 1, (2.), (a.); of perf. indefinite, ib. (b.)—(d.); perf. subj., signification of, 260, II., a. 1, (3.), and a. 4 and 6; in the protasis, 261, 2 and a. 2 and 3; 263, a.; perf. subj. for imperative, 267, a. 2; perf. inf., how used, 268, a. 1. (a.); perf. participle, 274, 2 and n.; supplies the place of a pres. pass. participle, 274, a. 3, (a.); perf. part. of a preceding verb used to express the completion of an action, ib., (b.); w. *habeo*, 274, a. 4; w. *do*, *reddo*, *curo*, etc., ib.; supplies the place of a verbal noun, 274, a. 5; used in circumlocution for abl. of cause, 247, a. 2, (b.); neuter perf. pass. participle used as the subject of a verb, 274, a. 5, (b.)

*Perficio ut*, 273, n. 2.

*Pergo*, constr., 225, IV.; w. inf., 271, n. 1

*Perhibeo*, 230, n. 1; 272, n. 1. and a. 6; *perhibeor*, 210, a. 3, (3.); w. inf., 271, n. 1

*Periclitor*, *capitis* or *capie*, 217, a. 3.

Period, 230.

*Perinde*, 191, III.;—*ac* or *atque*, 196, 3, a Periphrasis, 323, 2. (4.)

Periphrastic conjugations, 162, 14 and 15

*Peritus*, 213, a. 1, (3.) and a. 4;

270, a. 1; w. ad., 213, a. 2, (2.); 275, III a. 1. (2.)

*Permisceo*, 245, II., 2, and a. 1 and 2.

*Permitto*, 273, 4; w. part. fut. pass., 274 a. 7; w. subj. without *ut*, 262, a. 4

*Permuto*, 252, a. 5

*Pernox*, genit. of, 112, 2.

*Perosus*, 183, 1, n.



*Periplo*, 273, n. 4.  
*Perpes*, in genit. sing., 112, 1; 115, 2.  
*Persevero*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
 Personal pronouns, 132, 4; ellipsis of as subject-nominatives, 209, n. 1; expressed in infinitive, 272, n. 4;—personal terminations of verbs, 147, 3.  
 Personification, 324, 34.  
 Person of a noun or pronoun, 85, 2; 132, 1; of a verb, 147; used in the imperative, 147, 1; 1st and 2d persons used indefinitely, 240, n. 7; of verbs with nominatives of different persons, 209, n. 12.  
*Perspectum habeo*, instead of *perspezi*, 244, n. 4.  
*Persuadeo*, w. dat., 223, n., (b.); *hoc persuasur mihi*, 223 n., (c.);—*persuasum accepi habeo*, 274, n. 4.  
*Pertusum est*, constr., 229, n. 6; 215, (1.) and n. 2.  
*Pertineo*, ellipsis of, 209, n. 4.  
*Peto*, constr., 230, n. 2; 231, n. 4; *peto ut*, 273, n. 4; 262, n. 4.  
*Pes* and compounds, genit. of, 73, n. 1; 112, 1; abl. of, 113, n. 2; pr., 234, n. 1; 300, n. 2, (b.).  
*Ph*, in syllabication, 18, 2; when silent, 12, n.  
 Phalæcian verse, 304, 2; pentameter, 312, x.  
*Piger*, declined, 106; constr., 222, n. 4, (2.).  
*Piget*, w. genit., 215; w. acc., 229, n. 6; participle and gerund of, 184, n. 3.  
*Pili habere*, etc., 214, n. 1.  
 Place, advs. of, 191, i.; 192, iii.; genit. of, 221; acc. of, 237; dat. of, 237, n. 3; place where, abl. of, 254;—whence, abl. of, 255; through which, 255, 2; place of a foot in verse, 304, n.  
 Plants, gender of their names, 29.  
*Plauto*, change of *au* in its compounds, 189, n. 3.  
 Plenty or want, adjs. of, w. abl., 250.  
*Plenus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.); 250, 2, (1.).  
 Pleonasm, 323, 2.  
*plex*, adjs. in, abl. of, 113, n. 3; how declined, 121, 1.  
*Plurique*, w. genit. plur., 212, n. 2, (1.).  
 Pluperfect tense, 145, v.; old form in *sem*, 62, 9; for the historical perfect, 259, n. 1 (3.).  
 Plural number, 35, 1; when wanting, 95; nouns only plur., 95; plur. of Greek nouns of 1st decl., 45, 2; do. of 2d decl., 54, 2;—nouns used for singular, 98; *nos* for *ego*, 219, n. 7, (b.); of verbs with collective nouns, 219, n. 11; the plur. of abstract nouns, 95, n.; plur. nouns in apposition to two or more nouns in the singular, 204, n. 5.  
*Plurimum*, w. genit., 212, n. 3; *plurimi* and *plurimo* after verbs of buying, etc., 114, n. 1, (1.), and n. 3, n. 2; *plurimo*, abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
*Plus*, declined, 110; w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1, (a.); with numerals, etc., with or without *quam*, 256, n. 6; *plus* for *magis*, 177, n. 12; *plure*, abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
*Poenus*, declined, 57.  
 Poems, gender of names of, 29

*Poenus*, w. genit., 215; w. subj., 215, n. w. acc., 229, n. 6; participles of, 164, n. 3 w. *quod*, 273, n. 6.  
*Poesis*, declined, 86.  
 Poetical arrangement of words, 279, 3 (c.); and 10, n. 4.  
*Politanus*, adjs. in, 128, 6, (g.).  
*Pollens*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (4.); cf. n. 4, (1.).  
*Polliceor*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
 Polypoton, 324, 23.  
 Polysyndeton, 323, 2, (2.).  
*Pondo*, indeclinable, 94; *pondo libram et libras*, 211, n. 6, (4.); 236, n. 7.  
*Pono*, 171, n. 2; 230, n. 2; 241, n. 6; pr., 284, n. 2, (c.); 229, n. 4, 1.  
*Posco*, w. two accs., 231; 230, n. 2; w. *ut*, etc., 273, n. 4; in pass., 234, 1.  
 Position in prosody, 233, iv.  
 Positive degree, 122, 4.  
 Possessive, adjs., 104; pronouns, 139; *te* what equivalent, 132, 6; how used, 207, n. 36; 211, n. 3; ellipsis of when reflexive, 207, n. 36; used for subjective and possessive genit., 211, n. 3, (b.), and n. 3, (3.), (a.); for objective genit., 211, n. 3, (c.); so possessive adjectives, 211, n. 4, and n. 3, (3.), (b.); *mea*, *tua*, etc., after *refert* and *intendit*, 219, n. 1.  
*Possideo*, w. perf. pass. part., 274, n. 4.  
*Possum*, conjugated, 154, n. 7; with superlatives, 127, 4; w. inf., 271, n. 1; *poterat*, the indic. for the subj., 259, n. 3; *possum* for *possem*, 259, n. 4, (2.).  
*Post*, *postquam*, etc., how pronounced, 8, n. 4; *post*, its case, 195, 4; *post* in composition, 196, 11; 197, 14; constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; with concrete official titles, 235, n. 3; w. acc. and abl. of time, 253, n. 1; ellipsis of, 257, n. 8; w. abl. like a comparative, 256, n. 16, (3.).  
*Postea* *lori*, 212, n. 4, n. 4.  
*Postera*, defective, 115, 5; compared, 125, 4; derivation, 130, v.  
*Posterior* and *postremus*, instead of *posterius* and *postremum*, 205, n. 15.  
*Postquam* and *posteaquam*, w. historical perfect instead of pluperfect, 259, n. 1, (2.), (d.).  
*Postulo*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1; w. acc. and genit., 217, n. 1; w. *de* or the simple abl., 217, n. 2; w. subj., without *ut*, 232, n. 4.  
*Potens*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.); w. *in* or *ad* and acc., 213, n. 4, (2.).  
*Potior*, w. abl., 245, 1.; w. acc., 245, 1., n.; w. genit., 220, (4.); *potiusdus*, 162, 20; 275, n., n. 1.  
*Potius*, defective, 115, 5.  
*Potius*, compared, 194, 4; used pleonastically, 256, n. 13.  
*Potus*, translated actively, 162, n.  
*Præ*, in composition w. adjs., 127, 2; w. verbs, 197; before adjs., 127, 6; constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; *præ*, with comparatives, 127, 6; 256, n. 13, (b.).  
*Præbeo*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1.  
*Præcedo*, constr., 233, (3.), and n. 234, n. 5.  
*Præcello*, *præse*, etc., 224, 3, and n. 5.

- Præcept*, abl. of, 118, n. 2, and n. 1.  
*Præcipio*, constr., 228. (1.), (b.)  
*Præcipito*, 228, n. 4, 1.  
*Præcipue*, *præsertim*, etc., 193, II. 2.  
*Præcuro*, constr., 224, 8, and n. 6.  
*Præteritum*, ellipsis of, 255, n. 8.  
*Prædixit*, w. abl., 244.  
*Prænest*, gender of, 66, n., and 29, n.  
*Prænomen*, its place, 279, 9. (b.)  
*Præpes*, genit. sing. of, 112, 1; genit. plur., 114, n. 2.  
*Præscribo*, w. *ut*, etc., 273, 2, n. 4.  
*Præsens*, declined, 111; abl. of, 118, n. 2.  
*Præses*, gender of, 80; 61, 2; genit. of, 78, n. 1.  
*Præsto*, 233. (8.), and n.; 230, n. 1; 224, 8, and n. 5; 256, n. 16. (8.);—*præsto*, adv., w. dat., 228, 1;—*præsto sunt*, *qui*, w. subj., 264, 6, n. 1.  
*Præstolor*, w. dat., 223, n. 2, n.; w. acc., 223. (1.), (a.)  
*Præter*, w. adjs., 127, 6; w. comparatives, 256, n. 13. (b.); as an adverb, 191, III.  
*Prætereo*, w. *quod*, 273, 5. (1.)  
*Præterit*, constr. of, 229, n. 7.  
*Præterquam* *quod*, 227, n. 16.  
*Præteritoko*, 223. (2.)  
*Prætor*, w. dat., 224, 8 and n. 5.  
*Prætor*, w. two accs., 281; w. *ut*, 273, n. 4; *ut* omitted, 262, n. 4.  
*Predicate*, 201; 208;—predicate-nominative, 210; differing in number from the subject-nominative, 210, n. 2; instead of dat. of the end, 227, n. 4; after what verbs, 210, n. 3 and 4; pred. adjs., 210, n. 1; after *esse*, *haberi*, *iudicari*, *videri*, etc., 271, n. 2;—predicate-accusative, 210, (b.); dative, 210, (c.); abl., 210, (d.); 257, n. 11.  
*Prepositions*, 195—197; in composition, 196; with nouns, 103; with adjs., 131, 11—13; with verbs, 196; change of in composition, 103, n. 2; 131, n.; 196, (a.); inseparable, 196, (b.); w. acc., 195, 4; 235; w. abl., 195, 5; 241; w. acc. and abl., 195, 6; 235, (2)—(5.); used as adverbs, 195, n. 4; how modified, 202, II. n. 2; verbs compounded with, w. dat., 224; w. acc., 233; w. abl., 242; compds. of *ad*, *con*, and *in*, with acc., 224, n. 4; repeated after compds., 224, n. 4; 233, n. 2; how interchanged, *ib.*; compds. of *ad*, *ante*, etc., with neuter verbs of motion, 224, n. 5; 233, n. 1; repetition of prepositions, 233, n. 2; 277, II., 3 and 4; prepositions of one syllable, *pr.*, 285, 2, n. 1, and n. 5; ellipsis of, 222, (2.); 236, n. 11; ellipsis of their case, 235, n. 10; their place, 279, 10; quantity of *di*, *se* and *red*, 285, n. 2 and 13; put after their case, 279, 10, n., (*f.*); repeated, 277, II., 4.  
*Present tense*, 145, I.; a principal tense, 258, a.; indicative pres. for historical perf., 259, n. 1, (a.); for the fut., 259, n. 1, (b.); for imperf. or perf. w. *dum*, 259, n. 1, (c.); subj. pres., use of, 260, II., n. 1, (1.); used to soften an assertion, 260, II., n. 4; to express a wish, command, etc., 260, n. 6; 267, n. 2; imperative pres., how used, 145, n. 3; 267, (1.); infinitive pres., how used, 268, n. 1, (a.), and n. 3.; 272, n. 4 and 5; participle pres., how declined, 111, n.; what it denotes, 274, 2 and n.; denoting something as about to be done, 274, n. 1; also a purp. a. 274, n. 2, (a.); and a state or condition, 274, n. 2, (b.); present pass. participle, how supplied, 274, n. 9.  
*Preterites*, 145, n. 2; 258, n.; preterites of the indicative used for the pluperfect subjunctive, 259, n. 4, (1.)  
*Preteritive verbs*, 183, I.  
*Preterit* and *pretio*, 214, n. 2, n. 8; ellipsis of, 252, n. 3.  
*Priapean verse*, 310, II.  
*Price*, ablative of, 252; genitive of *tantis*, etc., 214, n. 1.  
*Pridie*, w. genit., 212, n. 4, n. 6; w. acc., 238, 1.  
*Primus*, *medius*, etc., how translated, 205, n. 17; their place, 279, 7; *prior*, *præmus* for *primus*, *primum*, 205, n. 15.  
*Princeps*, genit. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 112, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.); used instead of an adverb of time, 205, n. 15.  
*Principal parts of a verb*, 151, 4;—propositions, 201, 5;—parts of a proposition, 272, 5; tenses, 258, A.  
*Principio*, abl. of time, 258, n. 1.  
*Prisquam*, with what mood, 263, 8.  
*Privo*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Pro*, constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; w. abl. for predicate nom., 210, n. 8; for predicate acc., 230, n. 4; in composition, quantity of, 285, n. 5, and n. 7; *pro nihilo* *duco*, etc., 214, n. 2, n. 2; *pro eo* and *proinde* ac, 198, 3, n.  
*Proclivis*, 222, n. 4, (2.); 276, III., n. 1.  
*Procul*, w. abl., 195, n. 3; 241, n. 2.  
*Prodigus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (2.) w. *in*, 213, n. 4, (2.)  
*Prodo*, w. acc and inf., 272, n. 1, and n. 6.  
*Proditor*, constr., 271, n. 2.  
*Proficiscor*, w. two datives, 227, n. 1.  
*Prohibeo*, 251, n. 2; w. *quominus*, 262, n. 11; 273, 4; w. genit., 220, 2; w. abl., 251, n. w. dat. or abl., 224, n. 2; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 6.  
*Proinde*, adv., 191, III.; *proinde* ac, 196, 3, n.  
*Prolepsis*, 323, 1, (b.) and (4.)  
*Promitto*, constr., 272, n. 4; 217, n. 3, (c.)  
*Pronouns*, 182—139; simple, 132, 2; neuter w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1.  
*Pronominal adjs.*, 139, 6.  
*Pronunciation of Latin*, 6.  
*Pronus*, constr., 222, n. 4, (2.)  
*Prope* est, w. *ut* and the subj., 262, n. 3, n. 1.  
*Proper nouns*, 26, 2; found only in 1st, 2d, and 3d decls., 40, 9.  
*Proprio*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Propinquo*, 225, IV., n. 2.  
*Propinquus*, w. the dat. or genit., 222, n. 2, (a.)  
*Prior*, how compared, 126, 1; *propius* and *proximus* w. dat., 222, n. 1; w. acc., 222, n. 5; 238, 1; instead of *propius*, *proxime*, 205, n. 15; *proximum est*, w. *ut* and the subj., 262, n. 3, n. 1.  
*Propius* and *proximus*, constr., 222, 1 and n.

*Proportional*, adj., 121, 2.  
*Proposition*, 201, 1. analysis of, 281  
*Proprius*, constr., 229, n. 2, (a.)  
*Prorumpo*, constr., 226, n. 4, 1.  
*Prooediac* verse, 304, 2.  
*Proseody*, 282–321; figures of, 305–307.  
*Proseopoeia*, 324, 34.  
*Prosper* and *prosperus*, 106, n.; w. genit.  
 n. abl., 213, n. 5, (2.)  
*Prosthesis*, 322, 1.  
*Prosto*, w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1.  
*Prosum*, 164, n. 6.  
*Provideo*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)  
*Protasis* and *apodosis*, 261; import of the  
 different tenses in the *protasis* and *apodo-*  
*sis*, 261, 1 and 2.  
*Privus*, w. genit., 218, n. 1, (3.)  
*Prutens*, w. genit., 213, n. 1, (3.)  
*Ps*, initial, 12, n.; *-ps*, nouns in genit.  
 of, 77, 2, (1.)  
*-pse*, enclitic, 135, n. 3.  
*Pt*, initial, 12, n.  
*-pie*, enclitic, 133, n. 2; 139.  
*Pubes* and *impubes*, genit. of, 112, 1; abl.  
 of, 113, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)  
*Pudet*, w. genit., 215; w. inf., 215, n.; w.  
 acc., 229, n. 6; w. perf. inf., 268, n. 2; w.  
 sup. in *v*, 276, III., n. 2; participle in *du*s,  
 and gerund of, 184, n. 3.  
*Puer*, instead of *in pueritia*, 253, n. 6.  
*Pueritia*, how used in the abl., 253, n. 1.  
*Pugnā*, for *in pugnā*, 253, n. 1; *pugnam*  
*pugnare*, 232, (1.)  
*Pugnatur*, conjugated, 184, 2.  
*Pulchre*, instead of abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
*Punctuation*, 5.  
*Punio*, constr., 217, n. 5.  
*Punishment*, constr. of words denoting,  
 217, n. 3.  
*Purgo*, w. genit., 217, n. 1; 220, 2; w.  
 abl., 251, n.  
*Purpose*, denoted by *ut*, etc., with the  
 subj., 262; by participles, 274, 2, n. 2, 6  
 and 7; by inf., 271; 273, n. 4, (b.); by  
 gerund, 276, III., n. 2, and (1.), (2.); by  
 supine in *-um*, 276, II.  
*Purus*, w. genit. or abl., 218, n. 5, (3.);  
 cf. 251, n.  
*pus*, Greek nouns in, genit. of, 76, n. 5.  
*Puto*, w. genit. of value, 214; w. abl. of  
 price, 252, n. 1; w. two accs., 280, n. 1,  
 and n. 4; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1; *puta-*  
*re*, 260, II., n. 2; *putor*, 210, n. 3, (3.), (c.);  
 e. in: 271, n. 1.

## Q.

*Qu* before *s* in verbal roots, 171, 1  
*Quā*, adverbial correlative, 191, n. 1.  
*Quā-quā*, for *et-et*, 277, n. 8.  
*Quero*, constr., 231, n. 4; poet. w. inf.,  
 271, n. 3.  
*Quæso*, 183, 7; constr., 262, n. 4.  
*Qualis*, 139, 5, (3.); w. comparatives, 256,  
 n. 10, (b.)  
*Qualisqualis* or *qualiscumque*, 189, 5;  
 307, n. 29.  
*Qualis-talis*, 206, (16.)  
*Quam*, w. comparatives, 256; w. the su-  
 perlative, with or without *possum*, 127, 4;

ellipsis of after *plus minus, amplius*, etc.  
 256, n. 6 and 7; *quam*, *qui* and superlative  
 after *tam*, 206, (21.); *quam pro*, w. compar-  
 atives, 256, n. 11; *quam non*, 277, n. 14,  
*quam* and a verb after *ante* and *post*, 253,  
 n. 1, n. 3; *quam qui*, w. comparatives and  
 the subjunctive, 264, 4.

*Quamquam*, peculiar use of, 198, 4, n.  
 constr., 263, 2, (4.); used to connect an  
 abl. absolute, 257, n. 10.

*Quantis*, constr., 263, 2, and (2.), (3.)  
*Quando*, *quando-quidem*, 198, 7, n., (b.)

*Quantity*, adj. of, 104, 4; w. genit., 212,  
 n. 3, n. 1; after *sum* and verbs of valuing,  
 214; adverbs of, w. genit., 212, n. 4.

*Quantity*, in prosody, 13, 1; marks of,  
 5, 1; general rules of, 13; 283; special rules  
 of, 284; of penults, 291; of antepenults,  
 292; of penults of proper names, 283; of  
 final syllables, 294–301; of final vowels,  
 294–298; of final consonants, 299; of de-  
 rivative words, 294; of compound words,  
 285; of increments, 286–290; of Greek  
 words, 283, n. 6.

*Quantus*, pronom. adj., 139, 5, (3.);  
*quantus* for *quam*, with *posse* and superla-  
 tives, 127, n. 1; constr., 206, (16.); *quanto*,  
 w. comparatives, 256, n. 16; *quantum*, w.  
 genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1; in acc. of degree,  
 231, n. 5; 232, (3.); 256, n. 16, n.; *quan-*  
*tum possum*, w. indicative, 264, 3 *fin.*  
*Quantus-tantus*, 206, (16.)

*Quantuscumque*, *quantusquantus*, *quan-*  
*tuluscumque*, 189, 5, (3.); w. indicative, 259,  
 n. 4, (3.); *quantiscumque*, 207, n. 29.

*Quasi*, w. subj., 263, 2.

*Quatio*, constr., 229, n. 4, 1; how changed  
 in its compounds, 189, n. 3.

*-que*, its use, 198, 1, n., (a.); *que-et*, *et*  
*-que*, *que-que*, 198, n., (e.); its place,  
 273, 3, (c.)

*Quis* and *quis*, for *quibus*, 186, n. 2.

*Queo*, how conjugated, 182, n.; w. inf.,  
 271, n. 1.

*Queror*, w. acc., 232, n. 1; w. *quod*, 273,  
 n. 6.

*Qui*, declined, 136; *qui* in abl., 136, n. 1;  
 137, n. 2; interrogative, 137; difference be-  
 tween *qui* and *quis*, 137, 1; person of *qui*,  
 209, n. 6; w. subj., 264; when translated  
 like a demonstrative, 206, (17.); with *sum*  
 instead of *pro*, 206, (18.); *quicum*, when  
 used, 136, n. 1 *fin.*; *qui vero*, *qui autem*,  
 280, III., (8.); *ex quo*, for *postquam*, 268,  
 n. 4.

*Quia*, *quod*, and *quoniam*, 198, 7, n., (b.)

*Quicque* and *quicquam*, 138, 3, (a.)

*Quicquid*, 138, n. 4; acc. of degree,  
 232, (3.)

*Quicumque*, how declined, 136, 3; how  
 used, 207, n. 29; w. indic., 259, n. 4, (8.);  
 for *omnis*, *quivis*, or *quilibet*, 207, n. 29.

*Quid*, 137; w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1  
 (a.); acc. of degree, 231, n. 5, (a.); 232,  
 (3.); *quid?* why? 235, n. 11; *quid sibi vult?*  
 228, n., (b.); *quid est quod?* w. subj., 264,  
 7, n. 2; *quid est cur?* etc., 264, 7, n. 3; *quid*  
*aliud quam?* 209, n. 4; *quid?* *quid vero?*  
*quid igitur?* *quid ergo?* *quid enim?* *quid*  
*multa?* *quid plura?* 229, n. 8, 2.

*Quidam*, *hæc* declined, 188, 5; how used, 207, n. 83.  
*Quidem*, its meaning, 191, n. 4; its place, 179, 3, (d.)  
*Quilibet*, how declined, 188, 5; how used, 207, n. 34.  
*Quies* and compds., gender, 61, 1; genit., 78, 4; 96.  
*Quin*, 198, 8; w. subj., 262, n. 10; for a relative with *non*, *ib.*, 1 and n. 6; for *ut non*, *ib.*, 2; after *non dubito*, etc., *quin?* why not? w. indic., *ib.*, n. 9.  
*Quippe*, 198, 7, n., (b.); *quippe qui*, w. subj., 264, 8, (2.)  
*Quippiam*, 188, 3, (a.)  
*Quiqui*, 186, n. 4.  
*Quis*, genit. sing., 74, n. 4; genit. plur., 86, 11, 5.  
*Quis*, declined, 187; difference of *quis* and *qui*, 187, 1; between *quis* and *uter*, 212, n. 2, n. 1; *quis est qui?* w. subj., 264, 8, (2.); between *quis* and *aliquis*, 207, n. 30, (b.)  
*Quisnam*, *quinam*, how declined, 137, 2.  
*Quispiam*, how declined, 188, 3; how used, 207, n. 30; *quippiam*, w. genit., 212, n. 3, n. 1.  
*Quisquam*, how declined, 188, 3; how used, 207, n. 81; *quisquam* and *quidquam*, w. genit., 212, n. 8; acc. of degree, 231, n. 5, (a.); 232, (3.)  
*Quisque*, how declined, 188, 3; how used, 207, n. 35; with plur. verb, 209, n. 11, (4.); its place, 279, 14; w. a superlative, 207, n. 85, (b.); in apposition, 204, n. 10.  
*Quisquis*, declined, 186, 4; its use, 207, n. 29; difference between *quisquis* and *quiscumque*, 207, n. 29; w. indic., 259, n. 4, (3.)  
*Quivis*, how declined, 138, 5; how used, 207, n. 34.  
*Quo*, the correlative adv., 191, n. 1; *quo*, w. a comparative, 256, n. 16, (2.); for *ut eo*, w. subj., 262, n. 9; as adv. of place, w. genitive, 212, n. 4, n. 2, (b.); *quo mihi hanc rem*, 209, n. 4; 227, n. 5; *quo secius*, 262, n. 11, n.; *quo ne*, 262, n. 5.  
*Quoniam*, w. subj., 268, 4; w. *ejus*, 212, n. 4, n. 5.  
*Quocum*, *quacum*, etc., instead of *cum* *quo*, etc., 241, n. 1.  
*Quod*, causal conj., 198, 7; construction of, 273, 5; refers to past time, 273, (6.); w. subj. of *dirō*, *putō*, etc., 266, 3, n.; *quod sciam*, etc., 264, 3; *quod*, referring to a preceding statement, 206, (14); 273, 6, (a.); w. genit., 212, n. 3; before *si*, *nisi*, etc., 206, (14); as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)  
*Quous* and *quoui*, for *cujus* and *cui*, 186, n. 2.  
*Quoque* and *etiam*, difference between, 126, 1, n., (d.); place of *quous*, 279, 3, (d.)  
*Quis*, indecl., 115, 4; interrogative, 121, 5; 139, 5, (3.); constr., 206, (16); *quot sunt*, *qui?* 264, 7, n. 2; *quotquot*, w. indic., 259, n. 4, (3.)  
*Quoteni* and *quotus*, interrogative, 121, 5.  
*Quoties*, interrog. adv., 121, 5.  
*Quous-quisque*, its meaning, 207, n. 35, (a.)  
*Quum*, correlative of *tum*, 191, n. 7; instead of *perquam*, 253, n. 4; — conj., 198, 10; *omnæ*, 263, 5 and n. 1—4.

## R.

*R*, before *s* in roots of nouns *i*6, n. 1 nouns in *r*, genitive of, 70, 71; changed to *s* before *s* and *t*, 171, 3; *r* final, quantity of, 299, 2.  
*Rapio*, w. dat. or abl., 224, n. 2.  
*Rarum est*, *ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 3.  
*Rastrum*, plur. *rastri* or *rastra*, 92, 5.  
*Ratio*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, 111, n. 1 (1.); *rationes*, as abl. of manner, with *cum*, 247, 2.  
*Rotum est*, *ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 3; *rotum* pr., 284, n. 1, (2.)  
*-re* in 2d person sing. of passive voice, 162, 3.  
*Re* or *red*, inseparable prep., 196, (b.) 197, 18; quantity of, 285, n. 3, (a.)  
*Reapse*, 135, n. 3.  
*Recent*, abl. of, 113, n. 3 and n. 1; also adverb, 192, 4, (b.)  
*Receptio*, constr., 233, n. 2, n.  
*Recingor*, w. acc., 234, n. 1.  
*Recordor*, w. genit. or acc., 216; w. pres. inf., 268, n. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Recte*, instead of abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
*Reckoning*, Roman mode of, 326, 327.  
*Rectum est*, *ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 3.  
*Recuso quin*, and *quominus*, 262, n. 7 and n. 11; w. *ne*, 271, n. 1; w. inf., *ib.*, n., and 271, n. 1.  
*Reddo*, w. two accs., 230, n. 1; pass. 210, n. 3, (3); (b.); w. perf. pass. part., 274, n. 4.  
*Redoleo*, w. acc., 232, (2.)  
*Redundant nouns*, 99; *adjs.*, 116; 140, n.; 111, n.; verbs, 185.  
*Redundo*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2.)  
*Reduplication*, 163, n.; of compound verbs, 163, n. 1; of verbs of 1st conj., 165, n. 2; of 2d conj., 168, n. 2; of 3d conj., 171, n. 1, (b.); quantity of, 284, n. 2.  
*Refero*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Referit* and *interest*, w. genit., 214; 219; w. the adj. pronouns *mea*, etc., 219, n. 1; w. *ad*, etc., 219, n. 3; *refert*, pr. 285, n. 3.  
*Refertus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (3.)  
*Reflexive pronouns*, 132, 4; 139, n. 2; *hæc* used, 208; for demonstratives, 208, (6.); ellipsis of, 229, n. 4; in oratio obliqua, 266, n. 3.  
*Reformido*, w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Regno*, w. genit., 220, 4.  
*Regnum*, declined, 46.  
*Rego*, conjugated, 158.  
*Relative adjs.*, 104, 13; 139, n.; government of, 213, n. 1; 222, 3; adverbs w. subj., expressing a purpose, 264, 5, n. 2; used in definitely, w. subj., 264, n. 3.  
*Relative pronouns*, 136; agreement of, 206, n. 19; ellipsis of, 206, (6.); in the case of the antecedent, 206, (6.), (a.); referring to nouns of different genders, 206, (9.); — to a proposition, 206, (13.); agreeing with a noun implied, 206, (11); number and gender of, when referring to two or more nouns, 206, (15); — relative clauses used as circumlocutions and to express the English 'so called,' 206, (19); relative adverbs for relative pronouns, 206, (20); the relative *adjs.* *quot*, *quantus*, etc., construction of

206, (16); *qui* with *sum*, instead of *pro*, 206, (18); person of, 209, R. 6; 206, R. 19;—w. subj., 264; their place, 279, 13; 280, III., (2.); relatives as connectives, 280, III., (1.); 196, II.

Resolving, verbs of, 278, I., (a.)

*Relinquo*, w. two datives, 227, R. 1; w. part. in *dus*, 274, R. 7; *relinquitur*, w. ut and the subj., 262, R. 3, N. 1.

*Reliqua*, acc., 234, II., R. 3; *reliquum est* ut, 262, R. 3.

*Reminiscor*, constr., 216.

*Remitto*, 229, R. 4, I.

Removing, verbs of, w. abl., 261.

*Remunor*, w. abl., 249, I., R. 1.

*Renuncio*, w. two accs., 230, N. 1; pass., 210, R. 3, (3.), (b.)

Repeated words, their place, 279, 4.

*Repens*, abl. of, 113, R. 3.

*Reperio*, w. two accs., 230, N. 1;—*reperi-*or, 210, R. 3, (3.), (c.); 271, R. 2;—*reperi-*untur, *qui*, w. subj., 264, 6.

*Repo*, constr. of compds. of, 238, (3.), w.

*Repono*, 241, R. 5.

*Reposco*, w. two accs., 231, R. 1.

*Repugno*, with *quominus* or *ne*, 262, R. 11.

*Res*, declined, 90; use of, 205, R. 7, (2.), N. 1.

*Reses*, genit. sing. of, 112, 1; defective, 115, 2.

*Resipio*, w. acc., 232, (2.)

Responsive, case of, 264, R. 11.

*Respublica*, declined, 91.

*Restat*, ut, 262, R. 3, N. 1.

*Retr*, abl. of, 82, E. 1, (b.)

*Retracto*, constr., 229, R. 4, I.

*Reus*, w. genit., 213, R. 1, (3.); *reum agere* or *facere*, w. genit., 217, R. 1.

Rhetoric, figures of, 324.

*Rhus*, genit. of, 76, R. 3; acc. of, 80, II.

Rhythm, 308, (1.)

*Rideo*, w. acc., 232, N. 1.

*-rimus*, *-ritus*, quantity of, 290, E., (c.), 5.

*-rimus*, superlatives in, 125, 1.

*Ritu*, as abl. of manner without *cum*, 217, 2.

Rivers, gender of names of, 28.

*-rix*, verbals in, 102, 6, (a.) See *tor* and *triz*.

*Rogo*, w. two accs., 231, R. 1; w. ut, 273, R. 4; 274, R. 7; without ut, 262, R. 4; constr. in pass., 234, I.

Roman day, 326, 1;—hour, ib.;—month, 326, 2;—names of the months, 326, 2, (1);—calendar table of, 326, 2, (6), p. 369;—week, 326, 2, (10); names of the days of the week, ib.;—year, how designated, 326, 2, (11);—money, weights and measures, 327;—tables of weights, etc., 327, pp. 370–373;—coins, 327, p. 371;—interest, how computed, ib.

Root or crude form of words inflected, what and how found, 40, 10; formation of nominative sing. from in 3d decl., 56, I. and II.

Roots of verbs, 150; general, 150, 1; special, 150, 2; second and third, how formed, 150, 3 and 4; third, how determined when there is no supine, 151, N.; first, & derivatives, 151, 1; irregularities in

tenses formed from, 162, 1–6; second, do, 151, 2; irregularities in tenses formed from, 162, 7–10; third, do., 151, 3; second and third, formation of, 1st conj., 164–166; 2d conj., 167–170; 3d conj., 171–174; 4th conj., 175–177; second and third irregular, 1st conj., 165; 2d conj., 168; 4th conj., 176.

*-rs* nouns in, genitive sing. of, 77, 2 (2.); genit. plur. of, 83, II., 4.

*Rudis*, 213, R. 1, and R. 4, (2.); 275, III.

R. 1, (2.)

*Rupes*, declined, 57.

*Rus*, construed like names of towns, in acc., 237, R. 4; in abl., 254; 255; cf. *rs*, E. 5, (b.); *rure*, not *ruri* with an adj., 255, R. 1.

*-rus*, participle in, how declined, 106, R. 2; its signification, 162, 14; 274, 2, R. 6; with *sim* and *essem* serving as future subjunctives, 162, R. 3; with *esse* and *fuisse*, 162, 14, R. 3; 268, R. 4; genitive plur. of, 162, 19; denotes intention, 274, R. 6; used for an English clause connected by 'since, when,' etc., ib.; as an apodosis, ib.

*Rutum*, pr., 284, R. 1, (2.)

## S.

*S*, sound of, 11; added to some roots of nouns of 3d decl., 56, I.; added to roots of verbs ending in a consonant, 171; used instead of *t* in the 3d root of some verbs, 171, R. 5; inserted in some verbals, 102, 5, (b.); *s* preceded by a consonant, nouns in, gender of, 62; 64; genit. of, 77; final, elided, 305, 2.

*Sacer*, w. genit. or dat., 222, R. 2, (a.)

*Sacerdos*, gender of, 30; 61, 3.

*Sepe*, comparison of, 194, 5.

*Sal*, 82, E. 1, (b.), and 66, E.; 95; pr., 284, N. 1.

*Salio*, constr. of compds. of, 238, (3.), N.

*Saltem*, 193, II., 3.

*Saluto*, w. two accs., 230, N. 1; *salutor*, w. two nominatives, 210, R. 3, (3.)

*Salve*, 183, 9.

*Samnis*, genit. sing., 74, R. 4; genit. plur., 83, II., 5.

*Sapio*, w. acc., 232, (2.)

Sapphic verse, 304, 2; 315, II.

*Sat*, indecl., 115, 4; *satis*, w. genit., 212, R. 4; *satis esse*, w. dat. of gerund, 275, III., R. 2, (1); *satis habeo*, and *satis mihi est*, w. perf. infin., 268, R. 2; *satis erat*, indio, instead of subj., 259, R. 3; degrees of comparison, 126, 4.

*Satago*, w. genit., 215, (2.)

*Satelles*, gender of, 30; 61, 2.

*Satiatus*, w. abl. or genit., 213, R. 5, (3.)

*Satisdo*, w. *damni infecti*, 217, R. 3, (c.) w. dat., 225, I.

*Satisfacio*, w. dat., 225, I.

*Satum*, pr., 284, R. 1, 2.

*Saturnalibus*, for *ludiis Saturnalibus*, 258, N. 1

*Satur*, how declined, 106, R. 1; w. genit. or abl., 213, R. 5, (3.)

*Sature*, w. abl., 249, I., R. 1; w. genit. poet., 220, 3

- Sensus* w. abl., 246.  
 Saying, verbs of, constr., 272; ellipsis of, 170, R. 2, (b.) and 3; implied, 278, 2, (b.); used in the passive, 272, R. 6.  
*Scanto* compds. of, 233, (3.), n.  
 Scanning, 304, 6.  
*Satro*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2.), R. 1; with genit. poet., 220, 2.  
 Scaxon, 314, 11.  
*Scudi*, pr., 284, R. 1, (1.).  
*Scilicet*, 198, 7, R. (a.).  
*Scito*, w. acc. and inf., 272, R. 1; *scito*, 162, 4.  
*Scitor* and *sciscitor*, constr., 231, R. 4.  
*-sc-* verbs in, 187, 11., 2; drop *sc* in 2d and 3d root before *t*, 171, R. 6.  
*Scribo*, 273, 2, (c.); w. two accs., 230, R. 1; w. acc. and inf., 272, R. 1, and R. 6; in pass. w. predicate nominative, 210, R. 3, (3); *scribit*, w. pres. inf. instead of perf., 298, R. 1, (a.).  
*Se*, inseparable prep., 196, (b.).  
*Se*, w. inter., 208, 5. See *int.*  
*Scerno*, 251, R. n., and R. 2, n.  
*Secus*, for *sezus*, 88, 1; 94; 211, R. 6, (4.); 231, R. 6; adv., 191, 11.; w. acc., 196, R. 3.  
*Sed*, 198, 9, R. (a.); its place, 279, 3, (a.); *sed, sed quod, sed quia*, 262, R. 9; *sed, sed tamen*, 278, R. 10; *sed et*, 198, 1, (11.).  
*Sedeo*, 210, R. 3, (2.); compds. of, 233, (3), n.  
*Sedile*, declined, 57.  
*Sedo*, constr., 229, R. 4, 1.  
*-sem*, old termination of plup. indic. active, 162, 9.  
 Semi-deponent verbs, 142, 2.  
*Senarius*, 304, 2; Iambic, 314.  
*Senex*, its degrees of comparison, 126, 4; gender of, 65, 2; genitive of, 78, 2, (2); abl. of, 113, R. 2; 115, 1; for in *senectute*, 253, R. 6.  
 Sentences, 200; analysis of, 281.  
 Sentiments of another, in dependent clauses, 266, 3.  
*Sentio*, w. acc. and inf., 272, R. 1.  
 Separating, verbs of, w. abl., 251.  
*Sepero*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Sequitur*, constr. 262, R. 3, R. 1.  
*-sere*, future infin. in, 162, 10.  
*Sereno*, scil. *calo*, 257, R. 9, (2.).  
*Sermo*, declined, 57.  
*Serpens*, gender of, 64, 8.  
*Sese*, intensive, 133, R. 2.  
*Servitutum servire*, 232, (1.).  
*Sestertius*, its value, 327, R. 3, (b.); how denoted, ib.; mode of reckoning, ib.; *sestertium*, ib., R. 5—7.  
*Seu*, or *sive*, 198, 2, R., (c.).  
 Ships, gender of their names, 29.  
 Short syllable, 282, 2.  
 Showing, verbs of, constr., 272, R. 6.  
*Si*, how pronounced, 11, R. 1.  
*si* or *-sin*, Greek datives in, 84.  
*Si*, conj., 198, 5; *si* for *num*, 198, 11, R., (3.); *si minus*, *sin minus* or *sin aliter*, 198, R. n., (b.); 277, R. 14; ellipsis of in the *protasis*, 261, R. 1; *si* with the imperfect subj., instead of the pluperfect, 261, R. 5; *nihil aliud*, 209, R. 4; *si quisquam* and *si nullus*, 207, R. 30, (b.); *si non*, 232, R. 5.  
*Sibi suo*, 238, R. (a.).  
*Sic*, 191, R. 5; 277, R. 12, R. (a.); *plonas tically*, 207, R. 22.  
*Sicuti*, w. subj., 263, 2, (1.).  
 Significant word, in a preposition, 279, 2, (c.).  
*Siem*, *sies*, etc., 154, R. 4.  
*Silentio praterire* or *facere aliquid*, with *out cum*, 241, 2.  
*Sileo*, w. acc., 232, R. 1; pass., 224, 111.  
 Silver age of Roman literature, 229, 1.  
*-sim*, old termination of perfect indic. active, 162, 9.  
 Similar constructions, 278, R. 1 and 2.  
 Simile, 224, 30.  
*Similis*, w. genit. or dat., 222, R. 2, (a.) w. dat. in imitation of the Greek, 222, R. 7; *similes*, w. inter., 222, R. 4, (4.); w. *ac* and *atque*, 222, R. 7, fin.  
 Simple, subject, 202, 2;—predicate, 203, 2;—sentences, 201, 10.  
*Simul*, w. abl., 196, R. 3; 241, R. 2; *simul—simul*, 277, R. 8.  
*Sin*, 193, 5; its place, 279, 3, (a.); *sin minus*, 277, R. 14.  
 Singular number, 35, 1; sing. for plur., 209, R. 11, 1, (b.).  
*Singularis est ut*, 262, R. 3, n. 3.  
*Singuli*, 119.  
*Sino*, 273, 4; 262, R. 4.  
*Siquidem*, 196, 7, R., (b.).  
*Siquis*, how declined, 133, 2; *siquis* and *siquid*, how used, 133, 2, (a.) and (b.); 207, R. 29; *si quis est, qui*, w. subj., 264, 6.  
*Sis* for *si vis*, 183, R. 3.  
*Sisto*, constr., 229, R. 4, 1.  
*Situm*, pr., 234, R. 1, (2.).  
*Sive* or *seu*, 198, 2, R.; 278, R. 8; its place, 279, 3, (a.); *sive—sive*, w. verb in the indic., 259, R. 4, (3.).  
*-so*, *-sim*, *-sem*, old verbal terminations, 162, 9.  
*Socius*, w. genit. or dat., 222, R. 2, (a.).  
*Sodes*, for *si audes*, 183, R. 3.  
 Solecism, 326, 2.  
*Soleo*, how conjugated, 142, R. 2; w. inf., 271, R. 1.  
*Solitus*, 274, R. 3; *solito*, after comparatives, 256, R. 9; its place, 279, R. 1.  
*Solum*, *solummodo*, 198, 11., 3.  
*Solus*, how declined, 107; w. relative and subj., 264, 10; for *solum*, 205, R. 15.  
*Solutus*, w. genit., 213; w. abl., 251, R.; *solutum*, pr., 284, R. 3.  
*Solveo*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Sons*, genit. plur. of, 114, R. 3; 115, 1, (a.).  
*Sospes*, genit. of, 112, 1; abl. of, 113, R. 2; 115, 1, (a.); 126, 5, (b.).  
 Sotadic verse, 304, 2; 317, 1.  
 Sounds of the letters, 7—12; of the vowels, 7 and 8; of the diphthongs, 9; of the consonants, 10—12.  
 Space, acc. and abl. of, 236; ellipsis of, 236, R. 3.  
*Spatium*, w. genit. of gerund, 275, 111.  
 R. 1, (1); *spatio* as abl. of space, 236, R. 4.  
*Specto*, constr., 225, 111, R. 1.  
*Spectus*, 88, 1.  
*Spero*, w. acc. and inf., 272, R. 1.  
*Spes est*, w. acc. and inf., 272, R. 1.

*pes*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, II., n. 1, (1.); *spe*, after comparatives, 256, n. 9; its place, 279, n. 1.

*Spolio*, w. abl., 251, n.

*Spondiae* verse, 310; tetrameter, 312.

*Spondio*, 163, n.; w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.

*Stanza*, 319, 4.

*Statim*, 193, II., 1.

*Statuo*, 241, n. 5; 278, n. 1; 271, n. 1, 272, n. 1; *statutum habeo*, 274, n. 4.

*Statum*, pr., 234, n. 1, (2.)

*Sterilis*, w. genit. or abl., 218, n. 5, (2); w. *ad*, 218, n. 4, (2.)

*Stili*, and *stili*, pr., 284, n. 1, (1.)

'Still,' w. comparatives, how expressed in Latin, 256, n. 9, (b.)

*Stipulator*, 217, n. 3, (c.)

*Sto*, 163, n.; w. genit. of price, 214, n. 3; w. pred. nom., 210, n. 3, (2.); w. abl., 245, n. 5, and n. 2; *stat per me*, construction of, 262, n. 11; compds. of, 233, (3.), n.

*Strophe*, 319, 4.

*Studeo*, w. dat., 223, n. 2; with gerund, 275, III., n. 2, (1.); with the inf. with or without an accusative, 271, n. 4; w. *ut*, 273, 4, (a.); w. acc. *id*, 232, (3.)

*Studiosus*, w. genit., 213, n. 1; 275, III., n. 1, (2.)

*Studium*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., n. 1, (1.)

*Styze*, gender of, 23, n.

*Suadeo*, constr., 273, n. 4; 262, n. 4.

*Sub*, in composition, force of, 197; government of, 235, (2); constr. of verbs compounded with, 224; of adjs., 222, n. 1, (b.)

Subject of a verb, 140; of a proposition, 201; 202; simple, complex, and compound, 202; its place in a sentence, 279, (b.) subject of a dependent clause made the object of the leading verb, 229, n. 5, (a.)

Subject-nominative, 209; ellipsis of, 209, n. 1 and 2; when wanting, 209, n. 3; w. inf., 209, n. 5; 239, n. 1; two or more in the singular with a plural verb, 209, n. 12; (2.)

Subject-accusative, 239; ellipsis of, 239, n. 1—3; considered also as the accusative of the object after verbs of saying, showing, and believing, 272, n. 6.

Subjective genitive, 211, n. 2; possessive pronoun used instead of, 211, n. 8.

*Subjectus*, w. dat., 222, n. 1, (b.)

Subjunctive, 143, 2; its tenses, 145, n. 2; how used, 260—266, and 273; various uses of its tenses, 260; how translated, 260, I. and II., n. 1; for imperative, 260, n. 6; in impersonal verbs, 184, n. 2; in conditional clauses, 261; after particles, 262 and 263; after *qui*, 264; after relative advs., 264, n. 2; indefinite subj., 264, 12 and n.; in indirect questions, 265; in inserted clauses, 266; in oratio obliqua, 266, 1 and 2; after what verbs used, 273; after adjectives, 213, n. 4; exchanged for acc. w. inf., 273, 3, (b.); subjunctive in doubtful questions, 260, n. 5; in repeated actions after relative pronouns and adverbs, 264, 12

*Subito*, 198, II., 1.

Subordinate conjunctions, 198, II.; —prepositions, 201, 6 and 7.

Substantive 26—103; substantive pronouns, 132, 133, their gender, 132, 8; declined, 133; as subject nominative, ellipsis of, 209, n. 1; dat. of, redundant, 228, n.; substantive verb, 153; substantive clauses, 201, 7 and 8; 229, n. 5; 231, n. 8, (b.); substantive clause instead of the abl. after *opus est*, 243, n. 1; and after *dignus* and *invidius*, 244, n. 2, (b.)

*Subter*, constr., 235, (4.)

Subtractive expressions in numerals, 119, 4; 120, 2, 8, and 5.

*Succenseo*, 223, n. 2; w. *quod*, 273, n. 6

*Sufficio*, w. dat. of gerund, 275, III., n. 2, (1.)

*Sui*, signification of, 132, 4; declined, 133; use of, 208; 266, n. 3; 275, III., n. 1, (4.)

*Sultis* for *si cultis*, 183, n. 8.

*Sum*, why called an auxiliary, 153; why substantive, ib.; why the copula, 140, 4; conjugated, 153; compds. of, 154, n. 5—n. 7; w. a genit. of quality, 211, n. 6, (7); in expressions denoting part, property, duty, etc., 211, n. 8, (3); 275, n. 1, (5); denoting degree of estimation, 214; w. dat., 226; with two datives, 227; how translated, 227, n. 8; w. abl. denoting in regard to, 250, n. 8; w. an abl. of place, manner, etc., in the predicate, 210, n. 3, (1); w. dat. of gerund, 275, n. 2, (1); w. abl. of price, 252, n. 1; w. genit. of value, 214; *sunt qui*, w. subj., 264, 6; *sunt quidam*, *nonnulli*, etc., 264, 6, n. 4; ellipsis of as copula, 209, n. 4 *fin.*; of *esse* and *fuisse*, 270, n. 3; *sum* w. predicate nom., etc., 210, n. 3, (1); *esse* w. predicate nom., 271, n. 2, and n. 4.

*Sumo*, w. two accs., 230, n. 3; poet. w. inf., 271, n. 3.

*Supellex*, genitive of, 78, 2, (2); abl. of, 82, n. 5, (a.)

*Super*, constr., 235, (3); of verbs compounded with, 224; of adjs., 222, n. 1, (b.)

*Superfluo*, w. abl., 250, 2, (2), n. 1.

*Superjacio*, constr., 233, (1.)

Superlative degree, 122, 6; particular use of, 122, n. 4; formation of, 124; by *maxime*, 127, 1; superlative with *quisque*, 207, n. 35; w. partitive genit., 212, n. 2, and n. 4, n. 7; place of, 279, (7), (b.)

*Supero*, w. abl., 256, n. 16, (3)

*Supersedeo*, w. abl., 242.

*Superstes*, genit. of, 112, 2; abl. of, 118, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.); 126, 5, (b.); w. genit. o. dat., 222, n. 2, (a.)

*Supersum*, w. dat., 224, 11; *superest* *ut*, etc., 262, n. 3, n. 1.

*Superus*, its degrees of comparison, 126, 4; *supremus* or *summus*, 205, n. 17; *sumum* used adverbially, 205, n. 10; 234, II., n. 3.

Supines, 25 and 143, 8; few in number, 162, 11; in *um*, by what cases followed, 276, 1; or what verbs dependent, 276, II. w. *co*, 276, II., n. 2 and 3; supines in *u* after what adjs., 276, III., and n. 1; after *fas*, *nefas*, and *opus*, 276, III., n. 2; of two syllables, quantity of, 284, n. 1.

Nouns, 26—108; proper, common, abstract, collective, and material, 26; gender of, 27—34; number of, 35; cases of, 36, 37; declension of, 38—40; nouns of 3d decl., mode of declining, 55; compound, declension of, 91; irregular, 92; variable, 92; defective, in case, 94; in number, 95, 96; singular and plur. having different meanings, 97; redundant, 99; verbal, 102; derivation of, 100—102; composition of, 103; how modified, 201, III., R. 1; used as adjs., 205, R. 11; extent given to the term noun, 24, a.

*Novum est ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 2.

Nox, declined, 57; genitive of, 78, 2, (4.); genit. plur., 82, II., 3.

Noxius, w. genit. of the crime, 213, R. 1, (3.); 217, R. 1, (a.); w. dat., 222, R. 1, (a.) —as, participles in, abl. of, 113, 2; when used as nouns, 82, R. 4; nouns in, genit. plur. of, 83, II., 4; genit. sing. of, 77, 2, (2.) and R. 1; participials and participles in, construction of, 213, R. 1 and 3.

*Nubilo*, scil. *calo*, 257, R. 9, (2.)

Nubo, w. dat., 223; quantity of *u* in compds. of, 285, 2, R. 3.

Nulo, w. abl., 251, N.

Nudus, w. abl. or genit., 213, R. 5, (4.); 250, R. 1, (1.); w. acc., 213, R. 4, (3.)

Nullus, how declined, 107; a pronominal adj., 139, 5, (1.); for *non*, 205, R. 1; refers to more than two, 212, R. 2, N., (b.) *nullus est, qui*, w. subj., 264, 7, N. 2; *nullus non*, 277, R. 5, (c.); *nullius* and *nullo*, instead of *neminis* and *nemine*, 207, R. 31, (c.); *nulustum*, 277, I., R. 16.

Num, with its compounds, meaning of, 198, II., R., (b.); *num—an*, used only in direct questions, 265, R. 2.

Number, 26, 7; of nouns, 35; of verbs, 146; of the verb when belonging to two or more subjects, 209, R. 12; when belonging to a collective noun, 209, R. 11.

Numbers, cardinal, 117, 118; ordinal, 119, 120; distributive, 119, 120; w. genit. plur., 212, R. 2, (4.)

Numerals, adjs., 104, 5; classes of, 117; placed in the relative clause, 206, (7.), (b.); w. genit. plur., 212, R. 2, (4.); letters, 118, 7; adverbs, 119; 192, 3; multiplicative, 121; proportional, temporal, and interrogative, 121.

*Nunquam*, 327, R. 3, (b.)

*Nunquam non*, and *non nunquam*, 277, R. 5, (c.)

*Numquid*, *num quis*, or *numqui*, etc., how declined, 137, 3; *numquis est qui*, 264, 7, N. 2; *numqua* and *numqua*, 137, R. 4; *numquid*, as an interrogative particle, 198, II.

*Numquidnam*, 137, 4.

Nunc, use of, 277, R. 15; *nunc—nunc*, 277, R. 3; *nunc* and *etiamnunc*, w. imperfect and perfect, 259, R. 1, (2) (b.)

*Nuncupatio*, w. two accs., 230, R. 1; *nuncupor*, 210, R. 3, (3.)

*Nuncinam*, 328, 2, (11.)

*Nuntio*, 273, 2, (c.); 272, N. 1; pass. w. inf., 271, N. 1; *nuntiatur*, constr., 271, R. 2.

*Nuper, modo* and *mox*, 191, R. 6.

*Nusquam*, w. genit. 212, R. 4, N. 2, (b.)

*Nux*, pr., 284, R. 5, R. 2.

—az, nouns in, genitive of, 65, 6, 7.

## O.

O, sound of, 7, 8; changed to *u* in forming certain nominatives from the root, 56, I., R. 4, and II., R. 4; nouns in, gender of, 58, 59; genitive of, 69; Greek nouns in, gender of, 69, R. 3; genitive of, 69, R. 3; amplificatives in, 100, 4, (a.); verbals in, 102, 6, (c.); adverbs in, 192; increment in, of 3d decl., 237, 3; of plur., 238; of verbs, 290; final, quantity of, 235, R. 4; 237; sometimes used for *u* after *v*, 322, 8; 53; 178, I., N.

O, interj. w. nom., 209, R. 13; w. acc., 238, 2; w. voc., 240, R. 1; *O si*, w. subj., 263, I.

Ob, government of, 195, 4; 275, III., R. 3; in composition, 195, I., 9; construction of verbs compounded with, 224; of adjs., 222, R. 1, (b.)

*Obedio*, how formed, 189, N. 8.

*Obequo*, constr., 233, (3.)

*Obro*, constr., 233, (3.), N.; pass., 234, III.

Object, of an active verb, 229; the dative of the remote object, 223, N.

Objective genitive, 211, R. 2; after adjs., 213; dat. for objective genitive, 211, R. 5; —propositions after what, 273, N. 8.

Oblique cases, 37; their place, 279, 10 and 2.

*Obliviscor*, w. genitive or acc., 216; w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1.

*Obnoxius*, w. dat., 222, R. 1, (b.)

*Obruo*, w. abl., 249, I., R. 1.

*Obscuro*, w. two accs., 231, R. 1.

*Obsequor, obtempero*, and *obrecto*, w. dat., 223, R. 2.

*Observeo*, w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, N. 3.

*Obses*, gender of, 30; genitive of, 73, R. 1

*Obscoror*, w. abl. of price, 252, R. 1.

*Obsto*, and *obsisito*, *quominus*, etc., 263, R. 11.

*Obtemperatio*, w. dat., 222, R. 3.

*Obrector*, constr., 223, (1.), (a.)

*Obruius*, w. dat., 222, R. 1, (b.)

*Obviam*, w. dat., 223, I.

*Occasio*, w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III.

R. 1, (1.)

*Occumbo*, w. dat., 224; w. acc., 224, R. 5

*Occurro*, w. dat., 224; w. acc., 233, (1.)

*occurrit ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 1.

*Ocius*, comparison of, 126, I.

—ocis, genitive in, 78, (4.); 112, 2.

*Octouarius*, 304, 2; —iambic, 314, III.

*Odii*, 183, I.

—adis, genitives in, 76, R. 5; 75, R. 1

—odus, Greek nouns in, —9, 3.

OE, how pronounced, 9 in nom. plur. 2d decl., 54, 2.

*Oelipus*, genitive of, 76, R. 7.

*Oeta*, gender of, 42.

*Officio*, w. *quominus*, etc., 262, R. 11.

*Offe*, pr., 233, I., R. 5; 236, R. 5.

Oi, how pronounced, 9, 1.

—ois, genitives in, 76, R. 2; words in, pr

233, I., R. 6, (3.)



Old, how expressed in Latin, 232, n. 3.  
*Uleo* and *redoleo*, w. acc., 232, (2.)  
*Ullus*, for *ille*, whence *olli*, masc. plur. for  
*illi*, 134, n. 1.  
*-olus*, a, um, diminutives in, 100, 3, a. 2.  
*-om*, for *-um*, 53.  
Omission of a letter or syllable. see syn-  
cope of a word, see ellipsis.  
*Omnēs*, w. genitive plur., 212, n. 2, n. 6;  
*omnium*, w. superlatives, 127, 4, n. 2;  
*omnia*, acc. of degree, 232, (3.)  
*-on*, Greek nouns in, 54, 1; *-on* for *-orum*,  
54, 4; *-on*, roots in, of 3d decl., 56, 11, n. 1;  
nouns in, of 3d decl., 58 and 61, 5; genit.  
plur. in, of Greek nouns, 83, 11, 6; *-os* and  
*-on*, nouns in, of 2d decl., changed to *-us*  
and *-um*, 54, 1.  
*Opustus*, w. abl. or genit., 213, n. 5, (4.)  
*Operam dare*, w. ut, 273, n. 1; w. dat. of  
ground, 275, 111, n. 2, (1.); w. acc. id., 232,  
(8.);—*operā mea*, equivalent to *per me*, 247,  
n. 4.  
*Opinio est*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1;  
*opinionē* after comparatives, 256, n. 9; its  
place, 279, n. 1.  
*Opinor*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*Oporet*, w. inf. as its subject, 269, n. 2;  
w. inf., acc. with the inf., or the subj., 273,  
n. 5; without ut, 262, n. 4.  
*Opotebat*, *oportuit*, the indic. instead of  
the subj., 259, n. 3, (a.)  
*Oppido*, w. adjs., 127, 2.  
*Oppidum*, in apposition to names of  
towns, 237, n. 2, (b.)  
*Opuleo*, w. abl., 249, i., n. 1.  
*Optabilis erat*, the indic. instead of the  
subj., 259, n. 3.  
*Optime*, instead of abl. of price, 252, n. 3.  
*Opto*, 271, n. 4; 273, 4; *opto*, w. subj.,  
without ut, 262, n. 4.  
*Opulentus* w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (8.)  
*Opus*, work, declined, 57; *opus*, need,  
w. genit. and acc., 211, n. 11; w. abl. of  
the thing, 243; as subject or predicate of  
est, 243, n. 2; 210, n. 5; w. perfect par-  
ticiples, 243, n. 1; w. supine in u, 276, 111,  
n. 2; *opus est*, w. inf. as subject, 269, n. 2.  
*-or*, nouns in, gender of, 58; 61; genit.  
of, 70; 71; verbals in, 102, 1; 102, 6.  
*Oratio obliqua*, 266, 1, n., and 2; 273, 3;  
tenses in, 266, n. 4.  
*Orho*, w. abl., 251, n.  
*Ortus*, w. abl., 250, 2, (1.); or genit., 213,  
n. 5, (4.)  
Order, advs. cf., 191, 1.  
Ordina, numbers, 119, 120; in expressions  
of time, 236, n. 2.  
Origin, participles denoting, w. abl., 246;  
from a country expressed by a patril, 246,  
n. 3.  
*-oris*, genitives in, 76; 112, 2; *-oris*, genit.  
in, 75.  
*-orium*, verbals in, 102, 8.  
*Oriundus*, constr., 246.  
*Orn*, w. two accs., 231, n. 1; w. ut, ne, or  
inf., 273, 2, n. 4; without ut, 262, n. 4.  
Orthoepy, 6—23.  
Orthography, 2—5; figures of, 122.  
*Ortus*, w. abl., 246.  
*-us*, nouns in, of 2d decl., 54, 1; of 3d

decl., gender of 58 and 61, 3; genit. of, 75;  
Greek genitives in, 63, 1; final in plural  
accs., sound of, n. 3; quantity of, 300.  
*Os*, (*oris*), gender of, 61, 3; genit. of, 75;  
wants genit. plur., 84.  
*Os*, (*ossis*), gender of, 61, 3; genit. of, 75,  
n. 1.  
*Ossa*, gender of, 42, 1.  
*Ostendo*, w. acc. and inf., 272, n. 1.  
*-osus*, adjs. in, 123, 4.  
*-otus*, genit. in, 75; 112, 2.  
'Ought' or 'should,' expressed by indic.  
of *debeo*, 259, n. 4, (2.)  
*-oz*, nouns in, genit. of, 78, 2, (4.)  
Oxymoron, 324, 23.

P.

*P*, roots of nouns ending in, 56, i.; when  
inserted after *m* in 2d and 3d roots of verbs,  
171, 3.  
*Pace* or in *pace*, 253, n. 1; 257, n. 9, (2.)  
Palatals, 3, 1.  
*Palleo*, w. acc., 232, n. 1.  
*Pan*, acc. of, 80, n.  
*Panthus*, voc. of, 54, 5.  
*Par*, abl. of, 82, n. 1, (b.); 113, n. 8; su-  
perlative of, 126, 2; w. dat. or genit., 222,  
n. 2, (a.); w. cum and the abl., 222, n. 6;  
*par erat*, indie. instead of subj., 259, n. 3,  
(a.); pr., 284, n. 1; *par ac*, 198, 3.  
Parabola, 324, 30.  
Paradigms, of nouns, 1st decl., 41, 2d  
decl., 46; 3d decl., 57; 4th decl., 87; 5th  
decl., 90;—of adjs. of 1st and 2d decl., 106  
—107; 3d decl., 108—111;—of verbs, *sum*,  
153; 1st conj., 155, 156; 2d conj., 157; 3d  
conj., 158, 159; 4th conj., 160; deponent,  
161; periphrastic, conj., 162; defective, 188;  
impersonal, 184.  
Paragoge, 322, 6.  
*Paratus*, constr., 222, n. 4, (2.)  
*Parco*, w. dat., 223, n. 2, n., (a.); *paret-*  
*ur mihi*, ib., (c.); w. inf., 271, n. 3.  
*Parvus*, w. genit. or abl., 213, n. 5, (2.);  
w. in, 213, n. 4, (2.)  
Pargmenon, 323, 24.  
Pareicon, 323, 2, (1.)  
Parenthesis, 324, 4, (6.)  
*Parter* ac, 198, 3.  
*Paro*, constr., 273, n. 1; w. inf., 271, n. 1.  
*Paromias* verbe, 304, 2.  
Paronomasia, 324, 25.  
*Pario*, compo. of, 163, n. 4.  
Parsing, 231, 111.  
*Pars*, acc. of, 79, 4; abl. of, 72, n. 5, (a.);  
ellipsis of, 205, n. 7; its use in fractional  
pressions, 121, 6; *magnam* and *maxi-*  
*mam partem*, 221, 11, n. 3; *multis partibus*,  
256, n. 16, (3.)  
*Part*, acc. of, 234, 11.  
*Particeps*, genit. of, 112, 2; genit. plur.  
of, 114, n. 2; 115, 1, (a.)—w. genit., 213,  
n. 1, (3.)  
Participial adjs., 130;—of perfect tenses,  
meaning of, with tenses of *sum*, 162, 12, (2.);  
w. genit., 213, n. 1, (2.)  
Participles, 25 and 148, 1; in us, how de-  
clined, 105, n. 2; in us, do., 111; abl. sing.  
of, 113, 2; participles of active verbs, 148

in genit. plur. 3d decl., 83; 114;—adv. in, 192, 1. 4. (b.)

*Unca*, 327, p. 872.

*-unus*, participles in, 162, 20.

*Unde domo*, 255, n. 1.

*Unquam*, 191, 1.; *unquam*, *usquam*, *usque*, *uspiam*, 191, n. 6.

*-untis*, in genit. of Greek nouns, 76, n. 6.

*Unus*, declined, 107; when used in plur., 118, n. 2; added to superlatives, 127, n. 2; *unus et alter*, with verbs singular, 209, n. 12; w. relative and subj., 284, 10; for *solum*, *tantum*, etc., 205, n. 15. (b.); *unum*, as acc. of degree, 232, (3.)

*Unusquisque*, how declined, 138, 4.

*-ur*, nouns in, gender of, 66, 67; genit. of, 70, 71.

*-urn*, verbals in, 102, 7, n. 2.

*Urbs*, in apposition to names of towns, 237, n. 2, (b.)

*-urio*, verbs in, 187, n. 1.

*-uris*, genitives in, 76, n. 3.

*-us*, nouns in, of 2d decl., 46; exceptions in, 49—61; voc. sing. of, 46, n. and 52; of 3d decl., gender of, 66; 67; genitive of, 76; Greek genit. in, 69, n. 3; nouns in of 4th decl., 87—89; participles in, how declined, 105, n. 2; verbals in, 102, 7; final, quantity of, 301.

*Usitatum est*, *ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 8.

*Usquam*, *usquam*, *usque*, 191, n. 6; *usquam*, w. genit., 212, n. 4, n. 2; *usque*, w. acc., 196, n. 3; 235, n. 9.

*Usum*, w. abl., 243; *usum venit*, *ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 1; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III., n. 1. (1.)

*Ut* or *uti*, a conj., 198, 8; *ut non* and *ut ne*, ib.; w. subj., 262; its correlatives, 262, n. 1; ellipsis of, 262, n. 4; its meaning after *metuo*, etc., 262, n. 7; *ut non*, 262, n. 5, and n. 6, 2; *ut—ita* or *sic*, 277, n. 12, (b.); *ut*, 'as,' ellipsis of, 277, n. 17; *ut*, 'even if,' and *ut non*, w. subj., 262, n. 2; *ut* with certain impersonal verbs and subj., 262, n. 3; in questions expressing indignation, 270, n. 2, (a.); *ut*, *ut primum*, etc., with the historical perf., 'indic.', instead of the pluperf., 259, n. 1, (d.); its place, 279, 8, (b.); *ut* after *est* with a predicate adj., 262, n. 3, n. 4; *ut credo*, *ut puto*, etc., in interposed clauses, 277, 1., n. 17; *ut*, 'because,' 277, 1., n. 12, (b.); *ut qui*, 264, n. 2; *ut si*, w. subj., 263, 2; *ut ita dicam*, 207, n. 33, (b.) *fin.*; *ut*, 'as if,' w. abl. absolute, 267, n. 4; *utut*, w. indic., 259, n. 4, (3); ellipsis of *ut* when *ne* precedes and *et*, etc., follow, 278, n. 6, (c.)

*Utumque*, w. indic., 259, n. 4, (3.)

*Uter*, how declined, 107; w. dual genit., 212, n. 2, n. 1.

*Utrumque*, how declined, 107.

*Uterlibet*, *utrumque*, and *utervis*, their meaning and declension, 107; 139, 5, (1), (b.); w. *erque*, use of, 207, n. 32; *utrumque*, w. plur. verb, 209, n. 11, (4.)

*Utilis*, w. dat., 222, n. 1; 275, III., n. 2; n. 22, 222, n. 4, (1.); *utile est* *ut*, 262, n. 3, n. 3; *utilis*, w. inf. poetical y, 270, n. 1, (b.); 275, n. 2; *utilius fuit*, indic. instead of subj., 259, n. 3; w. supine in *u*, 276, III., n. 1.

*Utinam* and *uti*, w. subj., 263, 1.

*-utis*, genitives in, 76, n. 2; 112, 2.

*Utor*, w. abl., 245; w. acc., 245, 1. n. w. two ablatives, 245, n.; *utor*, *frutor*, etc. their gerundives, 275, II., n. 1.

*Utpote qui*, w. subj., 264, 5, (2.)

*Utrique*, how used, 20, n. 32, (c.)

*Utrum* and *utrumne*, 198, 11.

*-utus*, adjectives in, 128, 7.

*-us*, adjectives in, 129, 3.

*-uz*, nouns in, genit. of, 78, 2, (5.)

*Uzor*, ellipsis of, 211, n. 7.

## V.

*V*, changed to *u*, 163, 2; sometimes dropped in forming the 2d root of verbs of the 3d conj., 171, n. 4.

*Vaco*, 250, 2, n. 1.

*Vacuum*, w. genit. or abl., 218, n. 5, (3.) cf. 251, n.

*Vado*, constr., 225, IV.; 232, n. 1; 233 (3), n. 1.

*Vae*, w. dat., 228, 3; w. acc., 238, 2.

*Valde*, 127, 2.

*Valen*, w. abl., 250, 2, n. 1; 252; w. acc., 252, n. 4; *valere* or *vale dico*, w. dat., 225 1., n.; w. inf., 271, n. 1.

*Validus*, 213, n. 5, (4.)

*Valuing*, verbs of, 214, n. 2; w. genit., 214; w. abl., 252, n. 1.

*Vapulo*, 142, n. 8.

*Variable* nouns, 92; *adjs.*, 123.

*Vas*, genit. of, 72, n. 1; gender of, 62, n. 1, and n. 2; 98, 2.

*-ve*, 198, 2, and n. 1, p. 176; place of, 279 3, (c.)

*Vehor*, compds. of, 233, (3), n.

*Vel*, 198, 2; difference between *vel* and *aut*, ib., n.; *vel* w. superlative degree, 127, 4; w. comparatives, 256, n. 9, (b.)

*Velim*, w. subj. without *ut*, 260, n. 4; 262, n. 4.

*Vellem*, how used, 260, n. 2.

*Velox*, constr., 222, n. 4, (2.)

*Velut*, *velut si*, *veluti*, w. subj., 263, 7; *velut*, 'as if,' w. abl. absolute, 257, n. 4.

*Venalis*, w. abl. of price, 252.

*Vendo*, w. abl., 252; w. genit., 214, n. 3, n. 1.

*Veneo*, 142, n. 3; 252; 214, n. 3, n. 1.

*Venio*, w. two datives, 227, n. 1; w. *ad* or *in*, 226, IV.; w. dat., 225, n. 2; *veni mihi in mentem*, constr., 211, n. 5, (5) 216, n. 3.

*Venitur*, conjugated, 184, 2, (c.)

*Verbal* terminations, 152; nouns, 102, w. acc., 233, n. 2, n.; of place, 237, n. 1; w. dat., 222, n. 8; w. abl. of place, 255 w. genit. of personal pronouns, 211, n. 3, (a.); verbal *adjs.*, 129.

Verbs, 140—189; subject of, 140, 1 active or transitive, 141, 1; neuter or intransitive, 141, II.; neuter passive, 142, 2; neutral passive, 142, 3; deponent, 142, 4 common, 142, 4, (b.); principal parts of 151, 4; neuter, participles of, 162, 16; inceptive, 173; desiderative, 187, II., 8; 176 n.; irregular, 178—182; defective, 183; *ne*

dundant, 185; verbs spelled *auke*, or having the same perfect or supine, 186; derivation of, 187; imitative, 187, 3; frequentative, 187, II., 1; incentive, 187, II., 2; desiderative, 187, II., 3; diminutive, 187, II., 4; intensive, 187, II., 5; 187, II., 1, (s.); composition of, 188; changes in composition, 189; compounds from simples not in use, 189, N. 5; agreement of, 209, (b.); ellipsis of, 209, R. 4; person of with *qui*, 209, R. 6; agreeing with predicate nominative, 209, R. 9; with collective nouns, 209, R. 11; plural with two or more nominatives, 209, R. 12; after *uterque*, etc., 209, R. 11, (4); after a nominative with *cum* and the abl., 209, R. 12, (6); after nominatives connected by *aut*, 209, R. 12, (5); their place in a sentence, 279, (b.) in a period, 280.

*Vere* and *vero*, 192, 4, N. 1.

*Vereor*, w. genit. poet., 220, 1; w. *ut* or *ae*, 262, R. 7; w. inf., 271, N. 1.

*Verisimile est ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 3; w. inf. as subject, 269, R. 2.

*Veritum est*, w. acc., 229, R. 6.

*Vero*, use of in answers, 192, 4, N. 1; 198, 3, R., (a.); ellipsis of, 273, R. 11; its place, 279, 3, (c.)

Verses, 304; combinations of in poems, 319.

Versification, 302.

*Versus*, w. acc., 195, R. 3; 235, R. 9; place of, 279, 10, (f.)

*Verbo*, constr., 225, IV.; w. two datives, 227, R. 1; 229, R. 4, 1.

*Verum est, ut*, 262, R. 3, N. 3; w. inf. as subject, 269, R. 2; *verum*, conj., 198, 9; its place, 279, 3; *verum* and *verum-tamen*, 'I say,' 278, R. 10; *verum enimvero*, 198, 9, R., (a.); *vero* after comparatives, 256, R. 9.

*Vescor*, with abl., 245, I.; with acc., 245, I., R.

*Vespere*, or *-ri*, 253, N. 1.

*Vester*, how declined, 139, 1; *vestrūm*, 133, 3; used after partitives, 212, R. 2, N. 2.

*Vestio*, 229, R. 4, 1.

*Veto*, 273, 2, (d.); 262, R. 4; w. acc. and inf., 272, R. 6.

*Vetus*, declension of, 112, 2; its superlative, 125, 1; 126, 3.

*Via*, abl. of place without *in*, 254, R. 3.

*Vicem* for *vice*, 247, 1, N. 3.

*Vicina*, genit. of place, 221, R. 3, (4.); 212, R. 4, N. 2, (b.)

*Vicinus*, w. dat. or genit., 222, R. 2, (a.)

*Victrix*, 115, 1, (b.); how declined as an adj., 129, 8.

*Videlicet* and *scilicet*, 193, 7, R., (a.); *pr.*, 235, R. 4, N. 2.

*Video*, w. acc. and inf., 272, N. 1; w. *ut* or *ne*, 262, N. 3; *videris*, 260, R. 2; *video* for *curo*, w. *ut*, 273, N. 1; *videor*, constr., 271, R. 2; 272, R. 6.

*Viduus*, constr., 213, R. 5, (4); 250, 2, (1)

*Vigro*, w. abl., 250, 2, R. 1.

*Vigil*, abl. of, 113, R. 3; genit. plur. of, 114, R. 2; 115, 1, (n.)

*Vigilia*, 326, 1, (2.)

*Vigilias*, *vigilare*, 232

*Vilis*, w. abl. of price, 252.

*Vir*, how declined, 48, 2.

*Virgilius*, voc. of, 52; accent of, 14, R.

*Virgo*, declined, 57.

*Virus*, gender of, 51.

*Vis*, declined, 85; acc. sing. of, 79, 2 abl. sing., 82, R. 2; genit. plur., 83, II., 8 94; *vi* and *per vim*, difference between, 247, 3, R. 4; w. genit. of gerunds, 275, III. R. 1, (1.)

*Vitabundus*, w. acc., 233, R. 2, N.

*Vitam vivere*, 232, (1.)

*Vitio creati magistratus*, 247, 2.

*Vivo*, w. abl., 245, II., 4; w. pred. nom., 210, R. 3, (2); *tertia vivitur aetas*, 234, III.

*Vix*, with part. fut. pass., 274, R. 12, *vixitum*, 277, I., R. 16.

Vocative, 37; sing., its form, 40, 3; plur., 40, 4; ellipsis of, 240, R. 2.

*Voco*, constr., 225, R. 1; 230, N. 1; pass., 210, R. 3, (3.)

Voices, 141.

*Volucer*, in genit. plur., 108, R. 2.

*Volo*, (are), compds. of, 233, (3), N.

*Volo*, conjugated, 173, 1; w. perf. inf., 268, R. 2; w. perf. part., and ellipsis of *esse*, 270, R. 3; its construction, 271, R. 4, and N. 4; 273, 4; 262, R. 4; *volens*, w. dat. of person, 226, R. 3, *volo bene* and *male alicui*, 225, I., N.; *volo*, w. reflexive pron., 228, N., (b.)

Voluntary agent of pass. verbs, 248, I.; ellipsis of, 141, R. 2; 248, I., R. 1; when expressed by *per* and acc., 247, N. 4; of neuter verbs, 248, R. 2; dative of voluntary agent, 225, II. and III.

*Voluntum*, *pr.*, 234, R. 3.

*Vos*, see *tu*, 133.

*Voti* and *rotorū damnati*, 217, R. 3.

Vowels, 3, 1; sounds of, 7 and 8; vowel, before a mute and liquid, its quantity, 13, 6, and 283, IV., R. 2; before another vowel, quantity of, 13, 3, and 283, I.; in Greek words, 283, R. 6; before two consonants, 13, 5, and 283, IV.; ending first part of a compound, quantity of, 285, R. 4.

*Vulgus*, gender of, 51; 95.

*Vultur*, gender of, 67.

## W

*W*, not used in Latin, 2, 4.

Weight, acc. of, 236, R. 7; weights, Roman, 327.

Willingness, verbs of, constr., 273, 4

Winds, gender of names of, 25.

Wishing, verbs of, constr., 271, R. 4.

Words, division of, 17-23; arrangement of, 279; gender of as mere words, 34, 2.

Writers in different ages, 329.

## X

*X*, sound of, 12; its equivalents, 3, 2; R. 2; 171, 1; in syllabication, 18, 4; not in, gender of, 32 and 66; genitive 78, 2.

- Y, found only in Greek words, 2, 5;  
 sound of, 7, n. 2; 8, n. 5; nouns in, gender  
 of, 62; genitive of, 69; increment in, 3d  
 decl., 287, 3; final. quantity of, 298; 285,  
 n. 4.  
 -ychis, in genitive 78, 2, (6.)  
 -ycis, genitives in, 78, 2, (6.)  
 ydis, genitives in, 77, 1.  
 Yi, how pronounced, 9, 1; abl. in. 82.  
 n. 6.
- ygis, genitives in, 78, 2, (6.)  
 -ynos, Greek genitive in, 71, 2.  
 -ys, nouns in, gender of, 62, 63, n.; gen-  
 itive of, 77; acc. of, 80, 11.; abl. of, 82, n. 6  
 final, quantity of, 301.  
 -yz, nouns in, gender of, 65, 6.

## Z.

- Z, found only in words derived from the  
 Greek, 2, 5; its equivalents, 2, 2  
 Zeugma 823, 1 (b.) and 2.)







This book is under no circumstances to be taken from the Building

[illegible]































**This book is under no circumstances to be  
taken from the Building**

[illegible]

